

# ABORIGINAL LAW

prepared by  
Kerry Wilkins, B.A. (Utah), M.A. (Michigan), LL.B., LL.M.  
(Toronto)  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Treaties and Agreements**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. The Sovereignty of the Crown</b> .....                      | \$1  |
| <b>II. The Division of Legislative Authority</b> .                | \$5  |
| 1. Federal Authority: Constitution Act, 1867, Section 91¶24. .... | \$5  |
| (a) General .....   | \$5  |
| (b) “Indians” .....   | \$7  |
| (i) What are “Indians”?.....                                      | \$7  |
| (ii) Core of the Power.....                                       | \$9  |
| (iii) Reach of the Power .....                                    | \$11 |
| (c) “Lands Reserved for the Indians”.....                         | \$13 |
| (i) Which Lands are “Reserved”?.....                              | \$13 |
| (ii) Core and Scope of Power.....                                 | \$16 |
| (d) Limits on Federal Authority .                                 | \$17 |
| (i) No Proprietary Interest in “Lands Reserved” .                 | \$17 |
| A. General.....   | \$17 |
| B. Constitution Act, 1867, Section 109 .....                      | \$18 |
| C. Indian Lands Agreements, 1924 and 1986 .....                   | \$25 |
| D. Natural Resources Transfer Agreements.....                     | \$28 |
| (ii) Constitution Act, 1982, Section 35 .....                     | \$34 |
| 2. Provincial Legislative Authority and Aboriginal Peoples. ....  | \$35 |
| (a) General .   | \$35 |

## ABORIGINAL LAW

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (b) Validity .....  | §37        |
| (i) General Principles .....  | §37        |
| (ii) Specific Restrictions.....   | §40        |
| (c) Applicability: Interjurisdictional Immunity .....                   | §44        |
| (i) General Principles .....  | §44        |
| (ii) Some Examples.....   | §51        |
| A. Aboriginal Rights .....  | §51        |
| B. Treaty Rights .....  | §56        |
| C. Indian Lands .....   | §57        |
| D. Other .....  | §61        |
| (iii) Exceptions .....  | §67        |
| A. Natural Resources Transfer Agreements.....                           | §67        |
| B. Other .....  | §70        |
| (d) Paramountcy: Compatibility with Valid Federal Law .....             | §72        |
| (e) Provincial Standards as Federal Law .....                           | §75        |
| (i) General.....  | §75        |
| (ii) Section 88 of the Indian Act .....                                 | §78        |
| A. General Principle.....   | §78        |
| B. Exceptions.....  | §85        |
| <b>III. Other Legal Means of Achieving Results .....</b>                | <b>§92</b> |
| <b>IV. Obligations to Aboriginal Peoples: Honour of the Crown .....</b> | <b>§96</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §96        |
| 2. The Fiduciary Obligation Toward Aboriginal Peoples .....             | §100       |
| (a) General Principles.....   | §100       |
| (b) The Federal Crown as Fiduciary .....                                | §108       |
| (i) When is the Crown a Fiduciary? .....                                | §108       |
| (ii) Limits on the Federal Fiduciary Obligation .....                   | §117       |
| (iii) Scope of the Federal Fiduciary Obligation.....                    | §120       |
| (c) Fiduciary Obligation and the Provincial Crown .....                 | §129       |
| (d) Remedy .....  | §134       |
| (i) Reasons not to Give a Remedy.....                                   | §134       |
| (ii) What Remedy When.....  | §138       |
| 3. The Duty to Consult .....  | §146       |



## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (a) General .....  | §146 |
| (b) Source and Anchorage of the Duty .....                     | §149 |
| (c) When the Duty Arises .....                                 | §151 |
| (i) General .....  | §151 |
| (ii) Knowledge of a Right’s Potential Existence .....          | §153 |
| (iii) Crown Conduct .....                                      | §159 |
| (iv) “Might Adversely Affect” .....                            | §161 |
| (d) When the Duty Does not Arise .....                         | §167 |
| (e) Who Owes the Duty .....                                    | §169 |
| (f) To Whom the Duty is Owed .....                             | §176 |
| (g) Scope of the Duty: “The Standard of Care” .....            | §182 |
| (i) General .....  | §182 |
| (ii) The Low End of the Consultation Spectrum .....            | §186 |
| (iii) The Midrange of the Consultation Spectrum .....          | §190 |
| (iv) The Upper End of the Consultation Spectrum .....          | §192 |
| (h) The Duty to Accommodate .....                              | §195 |
| (i) Appraising the Crown’s Consultation Efforts .....          | §203 |
| (i) The Standard of Review .....                               | §203 |
| (ii) Acknowledging that the Obligation Exists .....            | §206 |
| (iii) Ascertaining the Scope of the Obligation .....           | §207 |
| (iv) Timeliness of the Consultation .....                      | §209 |
| (v) Resort to Established Decision-making<br>Procedures .....  | §213 |
| (vi) Some Essential Features of a Consultation<br>Regime ..... | §218 |
| (vii) Financial Support for Aboriginal Participation?<br>..... | §222 |
| (viii) Is the Alleged Harm Compensable by<br>Money? .....      | §223 |
| (ix) Reciprocal Obligations of Good Faith .....                | §224 |
| (x) Can Failure to Consult be Justified? .....                 | §228 |
| (j) Jurisdiction to Enforce the Duty .....                     | §231 |
| (k) Remedy .....   | §235 |
| (i) General .....  | §235 |
| (ii) Declaration .....   | §236 |
| (iii) Ongoing Judicial Supervision .....                       | §237 |

ABORIGINAL LAW

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (iv) Interlocutory Injunction.....                              | §239        |
| A. At Behest of Aboriginal Community .....                      | §239        |
| B. At Behest of Non-aboriginal Third Party .....                | §243        |
| (v) Quashing or Setting Aside the Impugned<br>Decision .....    | §244        |
| (vi) Damages .....  | §247        |
| <b>V. Constitutional Protection for Aboriginal Peoples.....</b> | <b>§248</b> |
| 1. Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982.....                | §248        |
| (a) Overview .....  | §248        |
| (i) What Section 35 Protects.....                               | §248        |
| (ii) Why?.....  | §252        |
| (iii) What Protection it Affords .....                          | §257        |
| (iv) For Whom .....   | §267        |
| (v) Jurisdiction to Entertain Section 35 Claims.....            | §271        |
| (b) Aboriginal Rights .....                                     | §274        |
| (i) Nature of Aboriginal Rights .....                           | §274        |
| (ii) Proof of Aboriginal Rights .....                           | §286        |
| A. Burden of Proof .....  | §286        |
| B. Characterizing the Right Claimed .....                       | §287        |
| C. Continuity .....   | §295        |
| D. Evidentiary Issues .....                                     | §299        |
| E. Standard of Appellate Review .....                           | §302        |
| (iii) Kinds of Aboriginal Rights .....                          | §304        |
| A. Aboriginal Title.....  | §304        |
| B. Harvesting Rights .....                                      | §310        |
| 1. General .....  | §310        |
| 2. Domestic Use or Consumption .....                            | §312        |
| 3. Harvesting for Sale or Trade.....                            | §313        |
| C. Self-government Rights.....                                  | §316        |
| D. Other Aboriginal Rights.....                                 | §318        |
| E. Implied and Incidental Rights.....                           | §320        |
| (c) Treaty Rights .....   | §322        |
| (i) Nature of Treaty Rights .....                               | §322        |
| (ii) What is a Treaty?.....                                     | §329        |
| A. Nature of a Treaty.....                                      | §329        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| B. Identifying Treaties .....                                  | §332 |
| C. Capacity to Treat.....                                      | §337 |
| (iii) Principles of Treaty Interpretation .....                | §342 |
| A. General.....  | §342 |
| B. Historical Treaties .....                                   | §343 |
| C. Modern Treaties .....                                       | §349 |
| (iv) Kinds of Treaty Rights .....                              | §352 |
| A. Reserves.....   | §352 |
| B. Harvesting .....  | §356 |
| C. Self-government.....  | §359 |
| D. Other Explicit Rights .....                                 | §360 |
| E. Implied and Incidental Rights.....                          | §361 |
| (v) Internal Limits on Treaty Rights .....                     | §364 |
| A. Safety Constraints .....                                    | §364 |
| B. Geographic Limitations.....                                 | §366 |
| C. “Government of the Country” Clauses.....                    | §374 |
| (d) Extinguishment .....                                       | §377 |
| (i) General.....   | §377 |
| (ii) Aboriginal Rights .....                                   | §382 |
| (iii) Treaty Rights.....                                       | §385 |
| (e) Infringement.....  | §390 |
| (f) Justification.....   | §395 |
| (i) General.....   | §395 |
| (ii) Valid Legislative or Governmental Objectives.....         | §397 |
| (iii) Permissible Means of Realizing Valid<br>Objectives ..... | §402 |
| (g) Remedy .....   | §407 |
| 2. Section 35.1 of the Constitution Act, 1982.....             | §410 |
| 3. Protection from the Charter: Section 25.....                | §411 |

### Index

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Burial and Cremation; Constitutional Law; Crown; Damages; Equity; Evidence; Execution; Fish and Wildlife; Injunctions; Judgments and Orders; Liquor Control; Mines and Minerals; Municipal and School Taxation; Restitution; Timber; Trusts

# ADMINISTRATIVE LAW

prepared by  
David Philip Jones, Q.C., B.A.(Hons.) (McGill), B.C.L.,  
M.A. (Oxon.),  
Anne S. de Villars, Q.C., B.Sc (Southampton), LL.B. (Alberta)  
*and*  
Dawn M. Knowles, B.Admin. (Regina), LL.B. (Hons.) (Alberta)  
*all of de Villars Jones Barristers and Solicitors, Edmonton*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....   | §1  |
| <b>II. General Principles of Administrative Law</b> .....                  | §7  |
| 1. The Relationship Between Administrative Law and Constitutional Law..... | §7  |
| (a) Introduction.....  | §7  |
| (b) Administrative Law and the Division of Powers .....                    | §9  |
| (c) Delegates' Jurisdiction to Decide Constitutional Issues.....           | §25 |
| (d) Delegates' Jurisdiction to Grant Constitutional Remedies.....          | §30 |
| (e) The Impact of the Charter on Administrative Law .....                  | §34 |
| (i) To whom does the Charter apply? .....                                  | §34 |
| (ii) Examples of specific Charter provisions .....                         | §42 |
| A. Section 7.....  | §42 |
| B. Section 8.....  | §51 |
| C. Section 15.....   | §55 |
| 2. Statutory Delegation of Governmental Powers .....                       | §58 |
| (a) Three Institutions of Government.....                                  | §58 |

ADMINISTRATIVE LAW

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Three Functions of Government.....   | §64         |
| (c) Delegated Duties versus Discretionary Powers.....  | §67         |
| (d) Subordinate Legislation.....   | §72         |
| (i) General Principles .....   | §72         |
| (ii) Regulations .....   | §79         |
| (iii) Municipal by-laws.....   | §84         |
| (iv) Challenging Subordinate Legislation.....  | §88         |
| <b>III. Judicial Review and Statutory Appeals .....</b>  | <b>§101</b> |
| 1. Forum .....   | §101        |
| 2. Standing.....   | §112        |
| 3. Delay.....  | §115        |
| 4. Grounds for Judicial Review.....  | §120        |
| (a) Categories of Grounds for Judicial Review Generally<br>.....   | §120        |
| (b) The Meaning and Ambit of “Jurisdiction” .....  | §123        |
| (c) Errors which Prevent a Delegate from Acquiring<br>Jurisdiction.....  | §125        |
| (i) General.....   | §125        |
| (ii) Substantive ultra vires.....  | §126        |
| (iii) Improper Constitution of the Delegate .....  | §127        |
| A. Technical Requirements and Quorum.....  | §127        |
| B. Sub-delegation .....  | §138        |
| C. Appointment of Members of the Delegate .....  | §152        |
| (iv) Failure to Comply with Statutory Requirements<br>.....  | §153        |
| (v) Failure to Satisfy Preliminary or Collateral<br>Matters .....  | §156        |
| (d) Errors Which Cause a Delegate to Lose its<br>Jurisdiction.....   | §158        |
| (i) Abuse of Discretion .....  | §158        |
| A. General.....  | §158        |
| B. The Abuse of Improper Intention: Unautho-<br>rized or Ulterior Purpose, Bad Faith or Irrel-<br>evant Considerations ..... | §162        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| C. The Abuse of Acting on Inadequate Material: no Evidence; Ignoring Relevant Considerations.....                    | §168 |
| D. The Abuse of Improper Result: Unreasonable, Discriminatory, Retroactive or Uncertain Administrative Actions ..... | §171 |
| 1. General .....   | §171 |
| 2. Unreasonableness .....  | §172 |
| 3. Discrimination .....  | §175 |
| 4. Retroactivity .....   | §178 |
| 5. Uncertainty .....   | §180 |
| E. The Abuse of Misconstruing the law .....  | §181 |
| F. The Abuse of Fettering Discretion .....   | §182 |
| (ii) Breach of the Duty to be Fair .....   | §186 |
| A. Introduction .....  | §186 |
| B. The Right to hear the other side: Audi Alteram Partem.....  | §195 |
| 1. General .....   | §195 |
| 2. Pre-Hearing Procedures: Investigations, Notice and Disclosure .....   | §196 |
| 3. The Hearing: Form of Hearing and Procedural matters .....   | §219 |
| 4. Post-Hearing Processes .....  | §286 |
| 5. Rehearings, Functus Officio and Res Judicata .....  | §310 |
| C. The Rule Against Bias .....   | §318 |
| 1. General .....   | §318 |
| 2. Financial Interests .....   | §326 |
| 3. Personal Relationships .....  | §332 |
| 4. Outside Knowledge of or Previous Involvement with the Matter in Dispute .....                                     | §335 |
| 5. Inappropriate Comments/Behavior .....   | §340 |
| 6. Institutional Bias .....  | §347 |
| 7. Evidence of Bias .....  | §368 |
| 8. The Legal Effect of a Reasonable Apprehension of Bias.....  | §372 |
| 9. Waiver .....  | §374 |

ADMINISTRATIVE LAW

---

(e) Errors of Law on the Face of the Record.....§377

**IV. Standards of Review.....§398**

1. General Principles.....§398

2. Two Standards of Review: Reasonableness and Correctness.....§401

3. The Pushpanathan Factors .....§415

    (a) The First Pushpanathan Factor: Presence or Absence of Privative Clause .....§415

        (i) General.....§415

        (ii) Types of Privative Clauses .....§417

            A. Final and Binding Clauses.....§417

            B. Exclusive Jurisdiction Clauses.....§419

            C. No-certiorari Clauses.....§420

            D. “Full” or “true” privative clauses.....§424

            E. Elastic Jurisdiction Clauses.....§426

        (iii) Constitutional Limitations on Privative Clauses in Canada .....§427

        (iv) The Presence of an Appeal Provision.....§429

    (b) The Second “Pushpanathan” Factor: Expertise of Delegate .....§435

        (i) General.....§435

        (ii) Different Types of Expertise .....§436

        (iii) Relative Expertise .....§439

    (c) The Third “Pushpanathan” Factor: Purpose of Act as a Whole and Provision in Particular .....§443

    (d) The Fourth “Pushpanathan” Factor: Nature of the Problem.....§444

4. Distinction Between the Standard to be Applied by the Delegate at First Instance and the Standard of Review to be Applied by the Courts.....§445

5. Standard to be applied by Higher Court to Lower Court’s Choice of Standard.....§446

6. Different Judges May Select Different Standards or Apply Same Standard Differently.....§447

7. Different Standards of Review May Apply to Different Issues.....§448

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 8. The Application of the Standard of Review Analysis to Discretionary Decisions.....            | \$449        |
| 9. The Standard May Change Over Time.....  | \$450        |
| 10. Standards of Review and Administrative Appellate Bodies .....                                | \$451        |
| 11. The Distinction Between the Standard of Review and the Content of the Duty of Fairness ..... | \$455        |
| <b>V. Remedies .....</b>   | <b>\$457</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....  | \$457        |
| 2. Statutory Appeals.....  | \$458        |
| (a) No Right to Statutory Appeal.....  | \$458        |
| (b) Procedures for Statutory Appeals .....   | \$459        |
| (c) Multiple Forums .....  | \$468        |
| (d) Scope of Statutory Appeals .....   | \$472        |
| (e) Standing to Appeal.....  | \$476        |
| (f) Appeals of Discretionary Decisions .....   | \$477        |
| (g) Collateral Attacks .....   | \$478        |
| (h) Alternatives to Statutory Appeals.....   | \$484        |
| (i) Reconsideration or Reopening of Cases .....  | \$484        |
| (ii) Stating a Case.....   | \$496        |
| (iii) The Office of the Ombudsman .....  | \$500        |
| 3. Prerogative Remedies .....  | \$504        |
| (a) General .....  | \$504        |
| (b) Certiorari and Prohibition .....   | \$511        |
| (c) Mandamus.....  | \$523        |
| (d) Quo Warranto .....   | \$532        |
| (e) Habeas Corpus.....   | \$534        |
| (f) Standing to Apply for Prerogative Remedies.....  | \$539        |
| (g) The Discretionary Nature of Prerogative Remedies .....                                       | \$559        |
| 4. Private Law Remedies .....  | \$565        |
| (a) General .....  | \$565        |
| (b) Damages.....   | \$566        |
| (i) Introduction.....  | \$566        |
| (ii) Actions for Negligence .....  | \$573        |
| (iii) Actions for Misfeasance in a Public Office .....   | \$576        |



## ADMINISTRATIVE LAW

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (iv) Constitutional Claims for Damages.....   | §579 |
| (v) Vicarious Liability of Crown.....   | §581 |
| (vi) Crown Immunities.....  | §587 |
| (c) Injunctions. ....   | §594 |
| (i) General.....  | §594 |
| (ii) Forms of Injunctions. ....   | §602 |
| A. Mandatory Versus Prohibitory.....  | §602 |
| B. Structural Injunctions .....   | §603 |
| C. Final Versus Interim.....  | §604 |
| (iii) Procedural and Standing Issues.....   | §610 |
| (iv) Crown Immunity from Injunctive Relief .....  | §613 |
| (d) Declarations .....  | §617 |
| (e) Relator Actions .....   | §636 |
| 5. Costs . §638 (a) The Power of a Delegate to Award Costs at First Instance .....              | §638 |
| (b) The Power of Courts to Award Costs in Judicial Review Proceedings or Statutory Appeals..... | §644 |

### Index

*Related titles:* Animals; Arbitration; Associations and Not-For-Profit Corporations; Barristers and Solicitors; Constitutional Law; Contempt of Court; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Crown; Damages; Discovery; Education; Elections; Employment Law; Equity; Evidence; Extradition; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Human Rights; Immigration and Refugees; Injunctions; Judgments and Orders; Labour Law; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Municipal Corporations; Nuisance; Parties; Planning and Zoning; Prerogative Remedies; Prisons; Privacy and Freedom of Information; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Public Health and Welfare; Public Inquiries; Railways; References and Inquiries; Restitution; Securities and Stock Exchanges; Statutes; Telecommunications; Torts; Trials; War and Emergency; Workers' Compensation; Wrongful Dismissal

# AGENCY

prepared by  
G.H.L. Fridman, Q.C., F.R.S.C., M.A., B.C.L., LL.M.  
*of the Ontario Bar, and of the Middle Temple,  
Barrister-at-Law, Professor Emeritus,  
Faculty of Law, University of Western Ontario*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>I. The Meaning and Scope of Agency .....</b>  | <b>§1</b>  |
| <b>II. General and Special Agents.....</b>       | <b>§11</b> |
| <b>III. The Creation of Agency .....</b>         | <b>§15</b> |
| 1. General .....                                 | §15        |
| 2. Express Contract .....                        | §19        |
| 3. Implied Contract .....                        | §27        |
| 4. Ratification .....                            | §29        |
| 5. Agency by Estoppel.....                       | §44        |
| 6. Agency of Necessity .....                     | §52        |
| 7. Agency from Cohabitation .....                | §58        |
| <b>IV. The Authority of Agents.....</b>          | <b>§61</b> |
| 1. Actual Authority .....                        | §61        |
| (a) General .....                                | §61        |
| (b) Express Authority .....                      | §63        |
| (c) Implied Authority .....                      | §66        |
| 2. Apparent or Ostensible Authority .....        | §71        |
| <b>V. Significant Agents.....</b>                | <b>§83</b> |
| 1. Agents Acting Under a Power of Attorney ..... | §83        |

## AGENCY

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Lawyers .....                                | §95         |
| 3. Mercantile Agents .....                      | §97         |
| 4. Insurance Agents .....                       | §100        |
| 5. Real Estate Agents .....                     | §111        |
| <b>VI. The Duties of an Agent .....</b>         | <b>§124</b> |
| 1. Obedience .....                              | §124        |
| 2. Personal Performance .....                   | §135        |
| 3. Exercise Care and Skill .....                | §143        |
| 4. Loyalty .....                                | §150        |
| (a) To Act in Good Faith .....                  | §150        |
| (b) To Avoid Conflicts of Interest .....        | §157        |
| (c) To Make Full Disclosure .....               | §167        |
| (d) To Refrain from Making Secret Profits ..... | §174        |
| 5. Accountability .....                         | §186        |
| 6. Respect of Principal's Property .....        | §191        |
| <b>VII. The Rights of an Agent .....</b>        | <b>§199</b> |
| 1. Remuneration .....                           | §199        |
| (a) Of Agents in General .....                  | §199        |
| (i) Right to Commission .....                   | §199        |
| (ii) Disentitlement to Commission .....         | §203        |
| (iii) Time in Relation to Commission .....      | §206        |
| (iv) Effect of Principal's Conduct .....        | §212        |
| (b) Of Real Estate Agents .....                 | §218        |
| (i) At Common Law .....                         | §218        |
| A. Entitlement .....                            | §218        |
| B. Disentitlement .....                         | §223        |
| C. Must be Effective Cause of Sale .....        | §228        |
| D. Ready, Willing and Able Purchaser .....      | §244        |
| E. Special and General Employment .....         | §252        |
| F. Principal's Right to Sell .....              | §255        |
| G. Sale Not Carried Out .....                   | §259        |
| H. The Relevance of Time .....                  | §270        |
| I. Effect of Principal's Conduct .....          | §273        |
| (ii) Under Provincial Legislation .....         | §291        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| A. Provisions Common to Several Provinces .....                   | §291        |
| B. Provisions Applicable to Specific Provinces ....               | §299        |
| 2. Indemnification.....   | §309        |
| 3. Lien.....  | §315        |
| <b>VIII. Disclosed Principals and Third Parties .....</b>         | <b>§317</b> |
| 1. General Principles .....                                       | §317        |
| 2. Contracts Entered into by Agent.....                           | §322        |
| (a) Contracts Made by Deed.....                                   | §322        |
| (b) Contracts Not Made by Deed .....                              | §325        |
| (c) Payment of Agent by Third Party .....                         | §330        |
| (d) Effect of Misconduct by Agent .....                           | §337        |
| 3. Torts Committed by Agent.....                                  | §343        |
| (a) General Principles.....                                       | §343        |
| (b) Fraudulent Misrepresentation.....                             | §345        |
| (c) Negligence .....  | §352        |
| 4. Offences by Agent .....  | §354        |
| 5. Admissions by Agent.....                                       | §355        |
| 6. Attribution of Agent's Knowledge to Principal .....            | §358        |
| <b>IX. Agents of Disclosed Principals and Third Parties .....</b> | <b>§361</b> |
| 1. Contracts.....   | §361        |
| (a) Personal Liability of Agent.....                              | §361        |
| (b) Election .....  | §371        |
| 2. Implied Warranty of Authority .....                            | §373        |
| 3. Torts.....   | §380        |
| 4. Breach of Fiduciary Duty .....                                 | §389        |
| 5. Liability for Money Paid to Agent by Third Person .....        | §392        |
| 6. Liability of Third Person to Indemnify Agent .....             | §398        |
| <b>X. Undisclosed Principals .....</b>                            | <b>§401</b> |
| 1. Scope of Principal's Liability.....                            | §401        |
| 2. Limitations on Principal's Rights.....                         | §405        |
| 3. Rights and Liabilities of Agent.....                           | §410        |
| 4. Election.....  | §413        |
| 5. Set-off .....  | §418        |

AGENCY

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>XI. Termination of Agency</b> .....       | §422 |
| 1. Duration Generally .....                  | §422 |
| 2. Grounds for Termination .....             | §425 |
| (a) By Operation of Law .....                | §425 |
| (i) Death of Principal or Agent .....        | §425 |
| (ii) Incapacity of Principal .....           | §427 |
| (iii) Bankruptcy of Principal or Agent ..... | §429 |
| (iv) Frustration .....                       | §430 |
| (b) By Act of Parties .....                  | §431 |
| (i) Revocation by Principal .....            | §431 |
| (ii) Renunciation by Agent .....             | §434 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Bills of Exchange; Building Contracts; Business Corporations; Children; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Contracts; Criminal Law — Offences; Crown; Debtor and Creditor; Employment Law; Family Law — General; Family Law — Property; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Insurance; Landlord and Tenant; Mental Incapacity; Parties; Partnership; Patents of Invention; Personal Property; Professions and Occupations; Restitution; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land; Securities and Stock Exchanges; Specific Performance; Torts; Trade Marks and Industrial Designs; Trusts; Wrongful Dismissal (Western).

# AGRICULTURE

prepared by  
Kathleen Maragh, B.A., B.S.W., LL.B.,  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>I. Constitutional Jurisdiction .....</b>             | <b>§1</b>  |
| <b>II. Federal .....</b>                                | <b>§15</b> |
| 1. Administrative Agencies .....                        | §15        |
| 2. Agricultural Credit Programs .....                   | §21        |
| 3. Income Taxation .....                                | §34        |
| 4. Animals.....   | §38        |
| (a) Production .....                                    | §38        |
| (i) Pedigree .....                                      | §38        |
| (ii) Research.....                                      | §45        |
| (b) Animal Diseases .....                               | §46        |
| (i) General.....  | §46        |
| (ii) Compensation .....                                 | §50        |
| (iii) Criminal Liability.....                           | §54        |
| (c) Federal Grading and Inspection .....                | §59        |
| (d) Marketing.....                                      | §63        |
| (e) Interprovincial and Intraprovincial Marketing ..... | §66        |
| 5. Dairy .....  | §77        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §77        |
| (b) Marketing.....                                      | §81        |
| 6. Grains .....   | §84        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §84        |
| (b) Federal Regulation, Grading, and Inspection.....    | §95        |

## AGRICULTURE

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (c) Storage and Transportation .....                            | \$104        |
| (d) Marketing.....  | \$109        |
| 7. Horticulture.....  | \$114        |
| (a) General .....   | \$114        |
| (b) Production.....   | \$116        |
| (c) Federal Grading and Inspection .....                        | \$120        |
| (d) Marketing.....  | \$124        |
| (e) Research.....   | \$128        |
| 8. Land.....  | \$129        |
| 9. Pesticides .....   | \$131        |
| 10. Stabilization.....  | \$140        |
| <b>III. Provincial.....</b>                                     | <b>\$141</b> |
| 1. Land.....  | \$141        |
| (a) Preservation and Development of Agricultural Land .....     | \$141        |
| (b) Acquisition of Agricultural Land .....                      | \$145        |
| (i) General.....  | \$145        |
| (ii) Crop Payment Agreements .....                              | \$148        |
| (iii) Restrictions on Acquisition of Agricultural<br>Land ..... | \$154        |
| (c) Provincial Regulation .....                                 | \$157        |
| (d) Protection of Agricultural Lands .....                      | \$160        |
| 2. Agricultural Societies and Cooperatives .....                | \$176        |
| (a) Cooperatives.....   | \$176        |
| (i) General.....  | \$176        |
| (ii) Powers .....   | \$178        |
| (iii) Rights and Duties.....                                    | \$180        |
| (b) Other Provincial Institutes and Associations .....          | \$188        |
| 3. Agricultural Credit Programs .....                           | \$191        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | \$191        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                      | \$193        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | \$195        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | \$199        |
| 4. Production.....  | \$206        |
| (a) Livestock.....  | \$206        |
| (i) Brands .....  | \$206        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (ii) Regulation of Production .....                 | §210 |
| (iii) Grading and Inspection.....                   | §213 |
| (iv) Stabilization .....                            | §216 |
| (b) Dairy .....                                     | §218 |
| (i) General.....                                    | §218 |
| (ii) Alberta .....                                  | §219 |
| (iii) British Columbia .....                        | §221 |
| (iv) Manitoba .....                                 | §223 |
| (v) Saskatchewan.....                               | §224 |
| (c) Grains .....                                    | §226 |
| (i) Combining Contracts.....                        | §226 |
| (ii) Title to Grain.....                            | §236 |
| (iii) Executions .....                              | §238 |
| A. Property Subject to Seizure .....                | §238 |
| B. Priorities .....                                 | §244 |
| (iv) Thresher's Lien .....                          | §254 |
| A. General.....                                     | §254 |
| B. Waiver of Lien .....                             | §261 |
| C. Notice Requirements .....                        | §263 |
| D. Rights and Duties of Lienholder .....            | §266 |
| (v) Priorities of Competing Interests in Grain..... | §273 |
| (vi) Crop Payment Agreements .....                  | §281 |
| (vii) Stabilization .....                           | §291 |
| (d) Horticulture .....                              | §292 |
| (i) Provincial Regulation.....                      | §292 |
| A. Provincial Standards and Grading Systems .....   | §292 |
| B. General.....                                     | §295 |
| 5. Agricultural Machinery.....                      | §302 |
| (a) Agricultural Implements Acts .....              | §302 |
| (i) General.....                                    | §302 |
| (ii) Application of the Acts.....                   | §305 |
| (iii) Statutory Warranties .....                    | §312 |
| (b) Contracts .....                                 | §313 |
| (i) Warranties.....                                 | §313 |
| (ii) Form of Contract.....                          | §322 |
| (iii) Signing and Delivery .....                    | §326 |



## AGRICULTURE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (iv) Explaining Contract to Purchaser .....             | §330 |
| (v) Failure to Give Notice of Defects .....             | §331 |
| (vi) Assignment of Future Earnings .....                | §337 |
| (vii) Continued Use and Default .....                   | §339 |
| (viii) Delay by Vendor .....                            | §340 |
| (ix) Acceptance .....                                   | §342 |
| (x) Definitions .....                                   | §345 |
| A. “New” .....  | §345 |
| B. “Rebuilt Machine” .....                              | §348 |
| C. “Recently Built” .....                               | §349 |
| D. “Second-hand” .....                                  | §350 |
| (c) Remedies of Vendor and Purchaser .....              | §351 |
| (i) Action for Purchase Price or Damages .....          | §351 |
| (ii) Rescission and Damages .....                       | §358 |
| (iii) Repossession .....                                | §363 |
| (d) Testing and Development .....                       | §376 |
| 6. Labour .....   | §377 |
| 7. Marketing .....                                      | §379 |
| (a) Livestock .....                                     | §379 |
| (b) Dairy .....   | §386 |
| (c) Grain .....   | §394 |
| (i) Federal and Provincial Regulation .....             | §394 |
| (ii) General .....                                      | §399 |
| (iii) Offences .....                                    | §408 |
| (d) Horticulture .....                                  | §411 |
| 8. Liability .....                                      | §424 |
| (a) Nuisance .....                                      | §424 |
| (b) Pollution .....                                     | §425 |
| (c) Damage Caused to or by Livestock and Wildlife ..... | §426 |
| (d) Noxious Weeds and Weed Control .....                | §429 |
| (i) General .....                                       | §429 |
| (ii) Interpretation .....                               | §432 |
| (iii) Damages .....                                     | §435 |
| (iv) Assessments Against Land .....                     | §438 |
| (v) Railway Lines .....                                 | §439 |
| (e) Pesticides and Pest Control .....                   | §440 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Animals; Associations and Not-for-Profit Corporations; Bailment; Banking; Carriers; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Cooperatives; Drainage; Environmental Law; Fires; Fish and Game; Insurance; Landlord and Tenant; Liens; Mortgages; Nuisance; Partnership; Planning and Zoning; Public Health and Welfare; Railways; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Shipping; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada; War and Emergency; Weights and Measures

# ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases Table of Statutes Table of Rules Table of Regulations**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                       | §1   |
| <b>II. Arbitration</b> .....                       | §3   |
| 1. General .....                                   | §3   |
| 2. Arbitration and Valuation .....                 | §5   |
| 3. Arbitration and Conciliation .....              | §14  |
| <b>III. Arbitration Reference</b> .....            | §15  |
| 1. Submission to Arbitration .....                 | §15  |
| (a) Nature and Classification of Submission .....  | §15  |
| (i) General .....                                  | §15  |
| (ii) Intention of Parties .....                    | §23  |
| (iii) Limitation Periods .....                     | §31  |
| (iv) Ouster of Court's Jurisdiction .....          | §36  |
| (v) Application of Legislation .....               | §49  |
| (vi) Matters Which May be Referred .....           | §67  |
| (vii) Proceedings Classified as Arbitrations ..... | §78  |
| (viii) Effect of Arbitration Clause .....          | §83  |
| (ix) Parties .....                                 | §86  |
| (x) Form .....                                     | §97  |
| (xi) Construction .....                            | §102 |

ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (xii) Void Submissions.....                                | §114 |
| (b) Revocation of Submission .....                         | §118 |
| 2. Stay of Proceedings .....                               | §123 |
| (a) Application to Stay Action .....                       | §123 |
| (b) Time for Application.....                              | §138 |
| (c) Arbitration as Condition Precedent to Action.....      | §148 |
| (d) Validity and Enforceability of Arbitration Clause..... | §155 |
| (e) When Court Has Jurisdiction.....                       | §176 |
| (f) When Stay Granted.....                                 | §179 |
| 3. Arbitrator or Umpire.....                               | §187 |
| (a) Appointment.....                                       | §187 |
| (i) General.....   | §187 |
| (ii) Duty of Fairness and Impartiality .....               | §191 |
| (iii) Disqualification for Pecuniary Interest .....        | §202 |
| (iv) Other Grounds for Disqualification.....               | §203 |
| (v) Waiver of Right to Demand Arbitration.....             | §207 |
| (vi) Appointment by Parties.....                           | §208 |
| (vii) Appointment by Court .....                           | §215 |
| (viii) Appointment of Expert or Valuator .....             | §221 |
| (ix) Termination of Arbitrator’s Mandate .....             | §222 |
| (x) Third Arbitrator or Umpire.....                        | §225 |
| (b) Powers of Arbitrator or Umpire .....                   | §228 |
| (i) Extent of Powers .....                                 | §228 |
| (ii) Duration of Powers .....                              | §250 |
| (c) Rights and Liabilities of Arbitrator or Umpire .....   | §260 |
| (i) Remuneration.....                                      | §260 |
| (ii) Enforcement of Payment of Fees .....                  | §262 |
| (iii) Liabilities of Arbitrator.....                       | §269 |
| (iv) Removal of Arbitrator or Umpire .....                 | §273 |
| 4. Conduct of Reference .....                              | §277 |
| (a) General .....  | §277 |
| (b) Presence of Parties .....                              | §282 |
| (c) Procedure .....  | §289 |
| (d) Basis of Decision .....                                | §307 |
| (e) Responsibility of Arbitrator .....                     | §326 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(f) Arbitrator’s Duty of Full Consideration .....\$333

5. Questions of Law .....\$338

6. References Under Order of Court .....\$343

    (a) Power to Appoint Arbitrator for Reference .....\$343

    (b) Reference for Trial .....\$347

    (c) Powers of Referee Where Whole Action Referred.....\$353

**IV. Arbitration Awards .....\$357**

    1. Making the Award .....\$357

        (a) Time for Making .....\$357

        (b) Scope and Effect .....\$368

        (c) Publication .....\$375

        (d) Execution of Award .....\$382

        (e) Absence of Arbitrator.....\$387

        (f) Interpretation .....\$391

        (g) Arbitrators Exceeding Powers .....\$403

        (h) Correction of Errors .....\$414

        (i) Formalities of Award .....\$418

        (j) Costs .....\$425

        (k) Enforcement of Award.....\$442

        (l) Appeals from Decision of Arbitrator Referee .....\$464

    2. Remission or Setting Aside of Award .....\$473

        (a) Jurisdiction of Court.....\$473

        (b) Grounds for Setting Aside Award.....\$493

            (i) General.....\$493

            (ii) Error in Law.....\$511

            (iii) Arbitrator Proceeding on Wrong Principle.....\$531

            (iv) Misconduct of Arbitrator .....\$534

            (v) Not Taking Evidence on Oath.....\$553

            (vi) Not Disposing of Entire Reference .....\$554

            (vii) Admission of Mistake by Arbitrator .....\$557

            (viii) Fresh Evidence.....\$559

        (c) Waiver of Irregularities .....\$561

        (d) Time for Moving to Set Aside Award.....\$564

        (e) Remitting Award for Reconsideration.....\$568

ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (i) General.....   | \$568        |
| (ii) Discretion to Remit.....  | \$577        |
| (f) Costs .....  | \$579        |
| 3. Declaration of Invalidity.....  | \$580        |
| <b>V. Statutory Arbitration.....</b>   | <b>\$582</b> |
| 1. Compulsory References .....   | \$582        |
| (a) Generally .....  | \$582        |
| (b) Specific Statutes .....  | \$586        |
| 2. Reviewing Award .....   | \$593        |
| 3. Matters Considered on Appeal.....   | \$603        |
| 4. Review of Compensation Award .....  | \$606        |
| 5. Setting Aside Award.....  | \$612        |
| 6. Enforcing Award on Compulsory Arbitration .....                               | \$614        |
| <b>VI. International Commercial Arbitration and Foreign Arbitral Awards.....</b> | <b>\$615</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$615        |
| 2. Alberta .....   | \$617        |
| 3. British Columbia.....   | \$620        |
| 4. Canada .....  | \$624        |
| 5. Manitoba.....   | \$627        |
| 6. Ontario .....   | \$628        |
| 7. Saskatchewan .....  | \$642        |
| 8. Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards .....                                  | \$646        |
| <b>VII. Mediation.....</b>   | <b>\$651</b> |
| 1. Definition.....   | \$651        |
| 2. Mediation Restrictions .....  | \$652        |
| 3. Powers and Duties of Mediators .....  | \$657        |
| 4. Binding Mediation .....   | \$659        |
| 5. Limitation Periods.....   | \$661        |
| 6. Statutory Mediation.....  | \$662        |
| 7. Enforcement of Mediation.....   | \$665        |
| <b>VIII. Judicial Dispute Resolution.....</b>                                    | <b>\$667</b> |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1. Alberta .....  | §667        |
| (a) Court of Queen’s Bench Rules .....                    | §667        |
| (b) Family Law Act .....                                  | §677        |
| (c) Small Claims Rules .....                              | §678        |
| 2. British Columbia .....                                 | §679        |
| (a) Supreme Court Civil Rules .....                       | §679        |
| (b) Family Law Rules .....                                | §684        |
| (c) Small Claims Rules .....                              | §685        |
| 3. Manitoba .....   | §686        |
| (a) Court of Queen’s Bench Rules .....                    | §686        |
| (b) Family Proceedings .....                              | §690        |
| 4. Ontario .....  | §694        |
| (a) Rules of Civil Procedure .....                        | §694        |
| (b) Family Law Proceedings .....                          | §703        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                                     | §705        |
| (a) Queen’s Bench Rules .....                             | §705        |
| (b) Family Law Proceedings .....                          | §707        |
| (c) Small Claims Act .....                                | §708        |
| 6. Federal Court .....                                    | §709        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Statutory Alternative Dispute Resolution .....</b> | <b>§711</b> |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agency; Building Contracts; Children; Evidence; Expropriation; Family Law — General; International Law; Labour Law; Municipal Corporations; Practice; Prerogative Remedies; Railways; References and Inquiries

# ANIMALS

prepared by  
Charles N. MacDonald, LL.B., B.A.Sc. (B.A.)  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Classification of Animals</b> ..... | §1  |
| <b>II. Property in Animals</b> .....      | §7  |
| 1. General .....                          | §7  |
| 2. Progeny .....                          | §8  |
| 3. Bees .....                             | §9  |
| 4. Wild Animals .....                     | §10 |
| 5. Liens, Mortgages .....                 | §15 |
| 6. Seizure, Distress, Exemption .....     | §21 |
| 7. Insurance of Animals .....             | §26 |
| <b>III. Bailment</b> .....                | §30 |
| 1. General .....                          | §30 |
| 2. Liability of Bailor .....              | §31 |
| 3. Liability of Bailee .....              | §35 |
| 4. Stable Keepers' Liens .....            | §48 |
| 5. Agistment Contracts .....              | §55 |
| 6. Chattel Mortgagee in Possession .....  | §63 |
| 7. Carriage of Animals .....              | §64 |
| <b>IV. Sale of Animals</b> .....          | §67 |
| 1. Statutory Compensation Funds .....     | §67 |
| 2. Prohibited Transactions .....          | §73 |



ANIMALS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Inspection Laws . . . . .                                  | §75         |
| 4. Passing of Title or Property . . . . .                     | §77         |
| 5. Warranties and Conditions . . . . .                        | §81         |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §81         |
| (b) Implied Terms . . . . .                                   | §90         |
| (i) Merchantable Quality and Fitness for Purpose . . . . .    | §90         |
| (ii) Correspondence with Description . . . . .                | §95         |
| (iii) Obligations Respecting Title . . . . .                  | §96         |
| (c) Express Terms . . . . .                                   | §99         |
| (d) Risk of Loss during Warranty Period . . . . .             | §101        |
| 6. Remedies . . . . .   | §102        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §102        |
| (b) Damages . . . . .   | §104        |
| (c) Repudiation and Rescission . . . . .                      | §107        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>V. Pedigrees and Associations . . . . .</b>                | <b>§112</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §112        |
| 2. Animal Pedigree Associations . . . . .                     | §114        |
| (a) Purpose . . . . .   | §114        |
| (b) Incorporation . . . . .                                   | §115        |
| (c) Continuation . . . . .                                    | §119        |
| (d) By-laws . . . . .   | §121        |
| (e) Registration of Animals . . . . .                         | §128        |
| (f) Certificate of Identification . . . . .                   | §132        |
| (g) Canadian Livestock Records Corporation . . . . .          | §134        |
| 3. Offences . . . . .   | §135        |
| (a) Offences Relating to Pedigrees and Registration . . . . . | §135        |
| (b) Other Offences . . . . .                                  | §144        |
| (c) Consent to Prosecution . . . . .                          | §145        |
| (d) Penalty . . . . .   | §146        |
| (e) Limitation Period . . . . .                               | §148        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VI. Identification of Animals . . . . .</b>                | <b>§149</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §149        |
| 2. Canada . . . . .   | §151        |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .  | §154        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                        | §154        |
| (b) Methods of Identification . . . . .          | §157        |
| (c) Registration . . . . .                       | §159        |
| (d) Ownership . . . . .                          | §162        |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .                    | §164        |
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .                            | §171        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                        | §171        |
| (b) Registers of Animal Identification . . . . . | §174        |
| (c) Registration . . . . .                       | §175        |
| (d) Evidence of Ownership . . . . .              | §179        |
| (e) Expiry . . . . .                             | §183        |
| (f) Renewal . . . . .                            | §186        |
| (g) Change . . . . .                             | §188        |
| (h) Assignment . . . . .                         | §189        |
| (i) Cancellation . . . . .                       | §193        |
| (j) Game Production Animals . . . . .            | §195        |
| 6. Saskatchewan . . . . .                        | §198        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                        | §198        |
| (b) Registration and Licensing . . . . .         | §203        |
| (c) Evidence of Ownership . . . . .              | §214        |
| (d) Cancellation of Registration . . . . .       | §217        |
| (e) Errors . . . . .                             | §218        |
| (f) Other Matters . . . . .                      | §219        |
| (g) Domestic Game Farm Animals . . . . .         | §220        |
| 7. Ontario . . . . .                             | §226        |
| 8. Offences . . . . .                            | §235        |
| <b>VII. Diseases of Animals . . . . .</b>        | <b>§236</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                             | §236        |
| 2. Inspection and Reporting . . . . .            | §237        |
| 3. Identification of Animals . . . . .           | §243        |
| (a) Canada . . . . .                             | §243        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                   | §247        |
| 4. Infected Places and Control Areas . . . . .   | §248        |
| 5. Forfeiture and Removal . . . . .              | §250        |
| 6. Disposal of Animals . . . . .                 | §252        |

## ANIMALS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 7. Compensation . . . . .                             | §257        |
| 8. Offences and Civil Liability . . . . .             | §267        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §267        |
| (b) Sale of Diseased Animals . . . . .                | §273        |
| (c) Unlawful Importation . . . . .                    | §277        |
| (d) Other Offences . . . . .                          | §278        |
| (e) Liability in Tort or Contract . . . . .           | §279        |
| <b>VIII. Wild Birds . . . . .</b>                     | <b>§284</b> |
| <b>IX. Dogs . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§288</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                  | §288        |
| 2. Regulations of Dogs and Kennels . . . . .          | §289        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §289        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .                                 | §293        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                        | §294        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .                                | §297        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                            | §309        |
| (f) Ontario . . . . .                                 | §311        |
| 3. Police or Tracking Dogs . . . . .                  | §313        |
| 4. Guide Dogs . . . . .                               | §324        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                                 | §324        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                        | §329        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                                | §334        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                            | §336        |
| (e) Ontario . . . . .                                 | §337        |
| 5. Liability for Injuries Inflicted by Dogs . . . . . | §339        |
| (a) Responsibility . . . . .                          | §339        |
| (b) Scienter . . . . .                                | §340        |
| (c) Negligence . . . . .                              | §348        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                 | §348        |
| (ii) Dogs on Highways and Streets . . . . .           | §356        |
| (d) Cattle-Trespass . . . . .                         | §361        |
| (e) Assault . . . . .                                 | §363        |
| (f) Alberta . . . . .                                 | §365        |
| (g) British Columbia . . . . .                        | §367        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (i) Dog Owners' Liability . . . . .                | \$367        |
| (ii) Seizure of Dangerous Dogs . . . . .           | \$371        |
| (h) Manitoba . . . . .                             | \$376        |
| (i) Saskatchewan . . . . .                         | \$382        |
| (j) Ontario . . . . .                              | \$388        |
| (i) Dog Owners' Liability . . . . .                | \$388        |
| (ii) Search and Seizure . . . . .                  | \$398        |
| (iii) Pit Bulls . . . . .                          | \$406        |
| (iv) Protection of Livestock and Poultry . . . . . | \$418        |
| 6. Killing of Dogs . . . . .                       | \$421        |
| <b>X. Liability Regarding Animals . . . . .</b>    | <b>\$435</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                               | \$435        |
| 2. Negligence . . . . .                            | \$438        |
| (a) General . . . . .                              | \$438        |
| (b) Measure of Damages . . . . .                   | \$447        |
| 3. Scienter . . . . .                              | \$450        |
| (a) General . . . . .                              | \$450        |
| (b) Statutory Modification . . . . .               | \$458        |
| 4. Trespass or Running at Large . . . . .          | \$459        |
| (a) Liability at Common Law . . . . .              | \$459        |
| (b) Driving Away Trespassing Animals . . . . .     | \$467        |
| (c) Defences . . . . .                             | \$470        |
| (d) Measure of Damages . . . . .                   | \$472        |
| (e) Apportionment of Liability . . . . .           | \$475        |
| (f) Distress Damage Feasant . . . . .              | \$480        |
| 5. Animals on Highway . . . . .                    | \$492        |
| (a) General . . . . .                              | \$492        |
| (b) Rights and Duties of Animal Owners . . . . .   | \$503        |
| (c) Obligations of Motorists . . . . .             | \$507        |
| 6. Wild Animals . . . . .                          | \$511        |
| 7. Injuries to Trespassers . . . . .               | \$516        |
| <b>XI. Stray Animals . . . . .</b>                 | <b>\$518</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                               | \$518        |
| 2. Alberta . . . . .                               | \$520        |

## ANIMALS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. British Columbia . . . . .                             | §526        |
| 4. Manitoba . . . . .                                     | §538        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                                 | §538        |
| (b) By-laws . . . . .                                     | §540        |
| (c) Liability for Damages . . . . .                       | §542        |
| (d) Basis of Liability . . . . .                          | §544        |
| (e) Defences . . . . .                                    | §546        |
| (f) Impounding, Sale or Destruction . . . . .             | §549        |
| 5. Saskatchewan . . . . .                                 | §550        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                     | §550        |
| (b) Municipal By-laws . . . . .                           | §554        |
| (c) Liability . . . . .                                   | §555        |
| (d) Fencing Requirements . . . . .                        | §558        |
| (e) Restraint and Impoundment . . . . .                   | §561        |
| (f) Destruction of Strays . . . . .                       | §568        |
| (g) Offences . . . . .                                    | §572        |
| 6. Ontario . . . . .                                      | §576        |
| (a) Municipal By-Laws . . . . .                           | §576        |
| (b) Liability of Owner of Stray Animal . . . . .          | §580        |
| (c) Impounded Animals . . . . .                           | §583        |
| (d) Retained Animals . . . . .                            | §591        |
| (e) Sale of Animals . . . . .                             | §595        |
| (f) Livestock On A Highway . . . . .                      | §597        |
| (g) Liability of Landowner . . . . .                      | §602        |
| <b>XII. Offences Relating to Animals . . . . .</b>        | <b>§603</b> |
| 1. Causing Unnecessary Suffering . . . . .                | §603        |
| 2. Distress; Failing to Provide Necessaries . . . . .     | §612        |
| 3. Cockpits and Fighting . . . . .                        | §615        |
| 4. Injuring or Endangering Animals . . . . .              | §618        |
| 5. Strays, Brands and Cattle Theft . . . . .              | §626        |
| 6. Other Offences . . . . .                               | §631        |
| <b>XIII. Distress and Prevention of Cruelty . . . . .</b> | <b>§634</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                      | §634        |
| 2. Agencies and Powers . . . . .                          | §635        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                        | §635 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .               | §637 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                       | §640 |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                   | §641 |
| (e) Ontario . . . . .                        | §642 |
| 3. Animals in Distress . . . . .             | §644 |
| 4. Offences . . . . .                        | §648 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                        | §648 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .               | §652 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                       | §654 |
| (d) Ontario . . . . .                        | §658 |
| 5. Remedial Measures . . . . .               | §661 |
| 6. Inspection . . . . .                      | §664 |
| 7. Powers of Entry . . . . .                 | §666 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                        | §666 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .               | §668 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                       | §670 |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                   | §673 |
| (e) Ontario . . . . .                        | §674 |
| 8. Custody of Animals . . . . .              | §677 |
| 9. Cost of Care . . . . .                    | §679 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                        | §679 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .               | §680 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                       | §681 |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                   | §682 |
| (e) Ontario . . . . .                        | §684 |
| 10. Sale or Disposition of Animals . . . . . | §686 |
| 11. Destruction of Animals . . . . .         | §695 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                        | §695 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .               | §697 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                       | §700 |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                   | §706 |
| (e) Ontario . . . . .                        | §707 |
| 12. Protection from Liability . . . . .      | §708 |

### Index

## ANIMALS

---

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Auctions; Bailment; Carriers; Contracts; Criminal Law - Offences; Distress; Execution; Fish and Game; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Human Rights; Insurance; Municipal Corporations; Railways; Sale of Goods; Sheriffs and Bailiffs; Statutes.

# ANNUITIES

prepared by  
Dona Campbell, B.A., LL.B.  
Christel Francis, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Nature of Annuities</b> . . . . .                       | §1  |
| 1. Definition of Annuity . . . . .                            | §1  |
| 2. Creation of Annuity . . . . .                              | §4  |
| (a) Annuity by Contract . . . . .                             | §4  |
| (b) Annuity under Will . . . . .                              | §5  |
| 3. Distinction Between Rentcharge and Annuity . . . . .       | §7  |
| 4. Insurance and Annuities . . . . .                          | §10 |
| 5. Pension and Annuities . . . . .                            | §11 |
| 6. Canadian Government Annuities . . . . .                    | §12 |
| 7. Income Averaging Annuities . . . . .                       | §17 |
| 8. Commencement of Annuity . . . . .                          | §18 |
| 9. Duration of Annuity . . . . .                              | §19 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §19 |
| (b) Annuity for Lifetime of Annuitant . . . . .               | §20 |
| (c) Annuity for Other Specified Periods . . . . .             | §21 |
| (d) Perpetual Annuity . . . . .                               | §24 |
| 10. Annuity Granted Subject to Condition . . . . .            | §26 |
| 11. Nature of Interest Where Several Annuitants . . . . .     | §28 |
| 12. Setting Apart Trust Fund to Provide for Annuity . . . . . | §29 |
| 13. Right to Cash Value of Annuity . . . . .                  | §32 |



## ANNUITIES

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 14. Abatement Between Annuitants and Other Legatees . . . . .                             | §34        |
| 15. Satisfaction . . . . .  | §36        |
| 16. Annuity as Contingent Debt . . . . .  | §37        |
| 17. Execution or Attachment Against Annuity . . . . .                                     | §38        |
| <b>II. Annuities Charged on Property or Fund . . . . .</b>                                | <b>§39</b> |
| 1. Nature of Charge of Annuity . . . . .  | §39        |
| 2. Annuity Charged on Land . . . . .  | §42        |
| 3. Position of Purchaser Without Notice . . . . .   | §45        |
| 4. Merger of Annuity Charged on Land . . . . .  | §46        |
| 5. Annuity in Lieu of Dower . . . . .   | §47        |
| 6. Annuity Charged on Corpus Generally . . . . .  | §49        |
| 7. Annuity Charged to Appropriated Fund . . . . .   | §53        |
| 8. Surplus Income After Payment of Annuity . . . . .                                      | §54        |
| 9. Annuity Charged Solely on Income . . . . .   | §55        |
| 10. Annuity Chargeable on Income with Recourse to Corpus for<br>Deficiency . . . . .      | §57        |
| <b>III. Apportionment of Liability . . . . .</b>  | <b>§59</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §59        |
| 2. Ontario Apportionment Act . . . . .  | §60        |
| (a) Accrual from Day to Day . . . . .   | §60        |
| (b) Exceptions from Apportionment . . . . .   | §61        |
| (c) When Apportioned Part Payable . . . . .   | §64        |
| (d) Recovery of Apportioned Parts . . . . .   | §65        |
| 3. The Manitoba Apportionment Act . . . . .   | §67        |
| 4. Apportionment Between Life Tenant and Remainderman for<br>Payment of Annuity . . . . . | §72        |
| 5. Apportionment Between Capital and Income . . . . .                                     | §75        |
| <b>IV. Arrears of Annuity . . . . .</b>   | <b>§76</b> |
| 1. Recovery of Arrears . . . . .  | §76        |
| 2. Interest Generally . . . . .   | §80        |
| 3. Interest on Arrears of Annuity . . . . .   | §82        |
| 4. No Interest Chargeable Against Executors . . . . .                                     | §84        |
| 5. Release of Annuity Arrears . . . . .   | §85        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

6. Limitation of Action ..... §86

**V. Valuation and Taxation of Annuity ..... §87**

    1. Valuation Generally ..... §87

    2. Annuity Tables ..... §89

    3. Annuity Subject to Income Tax ..... §90

    4. Annuity Granted Free of Tax ..... §98

**Index**

*Related titles:* Contracts; Devolution Of Estates; Execution; Executors And Administrators; Family Law — General; Gifts; Income Tax; Insurance; Pensions And Retirement Benefits; Perpetuities And Accumulations; Real Property; Trusts; Wills

# ASSOCIATIONS AND NOT-FOR-PROFIT CORPORATIONS

prepared by  
Jeff Shulman, B.A.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Associations in General</b> . . . . .  | §1   |
| 1. Associations Defined . . . . .  | §1   |
| 2. Creation . . . . .  | §4   |
| 3. Status of Association . . . . .   | §10  |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §10  |
| (b) Status of Subordinate Lodges or Branches . . . . .                                       | §28  |
| 4. Objects and Powers of Association . . . . .   | §33  |
| 5. Rules of Society or Club; Alteration of Rules; Review by<br>Court . . . . .               | §53  |
| 6. Property Rights . . . . .   | §69  |
| 7. Property Rights on Dissolution . . . . .  | §76  |
| 8. Membership . . . . .  | §83  |
| 9. Election of Officers . . . . .  | §87  |
| 10. Expulsion of Members . . . . .   | §92  |
| 11. Expulsion for Non-payment of Dues . . . . .  | §94  |
| 12. Expulsion for Cause . . . . .  | §99  |
| 13. Suspension of Members . . . . .  | §109 |
| 14. Notice of Charge . . . . .   | §113 |
| 15. Hearing of Charge . . . . .  | §115 |
| 16. Resignation of Member . . . . .  | §119 |
| 17. Secession to Form New Association . . . . .  | §120 |
| 18. Clause Regarding Arbitration of Differences Between Mem-<br>bers and Executive . . . . . | §122 |

ASSOCIATIONS AND NOT-FOR-PROFIT CORPORATIONS

---

19. Association Establishing Tribunal; Domestic Forum . . . . .§124  
20. Merger . . . . .§127  
21. Dissolution of Association . . . . .§129

**II. Specific Types of Association . . . . .§137**

1. Religious and Philanthropic Societies . . . . .§137  
2. Commercial, Financial and Trade Organizations . . . . .§145  
3. Professional Associations . . . . .§146  
4. Agricultural Associations . . . . .§147  
5. Co-operative Societies . . . . .§148  
    (a) General . . . . .§148  
    (b) Powers . . . . .§152  
    (c) Rights and Duties of Societies and Members . . . . .§154  
6. Building Societies . . . . .§158  
    (a) Constitution and Powers . . . . .§158  
    (b) Liquidation . . . . .§163  
7. Clubs . . . . .§164

**III. Taxation . . . . .§170**

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agency; Agriculture; Business Corporations; Charities; Cooperatives; Courts; Employment Law; Injunctions; Parties; Partnership; Professions And Occupations; Religious Institutions; Sports; Torts; Trade And Commerce And Foreign Investment In Canada

# AUCTIONS

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of By-laws**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. “Auction”, “Auctioneer”</b> .....       | §1  |
| <b>II. Licensing</b> .....                    | §4  |
| 1. General .....                              | §4  |
| 2. Exemptions .....                           | §13 |
| 3. Application For Auctioneer’s License ..... | §24 |
| (a) Alberta .....                             | §24 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                    | §27 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                            | §28 |
| (d) Ontario .....                             | §29 |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....                        | §32 |
| 4. Obligations of Licensees .....             | §38 |
| (a) Alberta .....                             | §38 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                    | §43 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                            | §46 |
| (d) Ontario .....                             | §47 |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....                        | §49 |
| 5. Term and Transfer of Licenses .....        | §56 |
| (a) Alberta .....                             | §56 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                    | §58 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                            | §60 |
| (d) Ontario .....                             | §61 |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....                        | §62 |

## AUCTIONS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 6. Renewal of licenses . . . . .  | §64         |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .   | §64         |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .  | §67         |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .  | §68         |
| (d) Ontario . . . . .   | §69         |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §70         |
| 7. Suspension and Cancellation of licenses . . . . .                                | §72         |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .   | §72         |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .  | §73         |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .  | §74         |
| (d) Ontario . . . . .   | §75         |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §76         |
| 8. Regulation of Livestock Auction Sales . . . . .                                  | §80         |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §80         |
| (b) Ontario . . . . .   | §81         |
| (c) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §88         |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>III. Authority of Auctioneer . . . . .</b>                                       | <b>§90</b>  |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IV. Conduct of Sale . . . . .</b>  | <b>§116</b> |
| 1. Advertising . . . . .  | §116        |
| 2. Sale By Lots . . . . .   | §124        |
| 3. Puffing and Other Misconduct by Vendor or Auctioneer . . . . .                   | §125        |
| 4. Agreements Not To Bid At Public Auctions . . . . .                               | §132        |
| 5. Conclusion of Sale . . . . .   | §135        |
| 6. Right to Re-open Sale on Default by Purchaser . . . . .                          | §147        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §147        |
| (b) Contractual Power to Re-open . . . . .  | §148        |
| (c) Resale on Breach . . . . .  | §151        |
| 7. Liability for Failure to Conduct Sale in Accordance with<br>Conditions . . . . . | §159        |
| 8. Effect of Mistake or Misrepresentation . . . . .                                 | §170        |
| 9. Passing of Property and Removal of Goods . . . . .                               | §177        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>V. Terms of Contract of Sale . . . . .</b>                                       | <b>§181</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §181        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

2. The Deposit .....§185

**VI. Evidentiary Requirements .....§189**

**VII. Judicial Sales .....§193**

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Animals; Contracts; Estoppel; Execution; Mortgages; Municipal And School Taxation; Professions And Occupations; References And Inquiries; Sale Of Goods; Sale Of Land; Sheriffs And Bailiffs

# AVIATION

prepared by  
Laura M. Safran, B.A., LL.B., LL.M., Q.C.  
*of the Alberta Bar: September 2009*  
with the assistance of  
Kealy Lambert, B.A., LL.B., Jenelle Matsalla, B.A., LL.B.,  
Rachel Howie, B.A., LL.B., Jean Moore, B.A., J.D., and Matt  
Sudak, B.A., LL.B.  
*all of the Alberta Bar*  
based on the title prepared by  
J. Sanderson Graham  
*of the Ontario Bar: October 1998*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. International Conventions and Protocols</b> ..... | §1  |
| 1. General .....  | §1  |
| 2. International Civil Aviation.....                    | §2  |
| (a) Conventions in Force in Canada.....                 | §2  |
| (b) Conventions Not in Force in Canada.....             | §3  |
| 3. Liability for International Carriage by Air .....    | §4  |
| (a) Conventions in Force in Canada.....                 | §4  |
| (b) Convention Not in Force in Canada .....             | §5  |
| 4. Crimes in Relation to Aircraft and Airports.....     | §6  |
| 5. Interests in Mobile Equipment .....                  | §7  |
| <b>II. Constitutional Jurisdiction</b> .....            | §8  |
| 1. Aeronautics Generally.....                           | §8  |
| 2. Aerodromes .....                                     | §10 |
| 3. Aircraft Operation .....                             | §16 |
| 4. Air Traffic Control Language .....                   | §20 |
| 5. Civil Proceedings .....                              | §21 |



AVIATION

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 6. Labour Relations .....                                | §23        |
| 7. Taxation and Charges .....                            | §28        |
| <b>III. Regulation of Aeronautics .....</b>              | <b>§33</b> |
| 1. Introduction and Scope .....                          | §33        |
| 2. Minister of Transport .....                           | §34        |
| (a) Powers, Duties and Functions .....                   | §34        |
| (b) Delegation .....                                     | §37        |
| 3. Aeronautics Act .....                                 | §38        |
| (a) Introduction .....                                   | §38        |
| (b) Application .....                                    | §42        |
| (c) Regulations .....                                    | §45        |
| (d) Enforcement Powers .....                             | §55        |
| (i) Inspection and Investigation .....                   | §55        |
| (ii) Detention of Aircraft .....                         | §62        |
| (iii) Obstruction .....                                  | §63        |
| (e) Enforcement and Compliance Proceedings .....         | §64        |
| (i) Introduction .....                                   | §64        |
| A. General .....   | §64        |
| B. Defences .....  | §70        |
| (ii) Prosecution .....                                   | §71        |
| A. General .....   | §71        |
| B. Imprisonment .....                                    | §74        |
| C. Fines .....   | §75        |
| D. Forfeiture .....                                      | §77        |
| E. Prohibition .....                                     | §78        |
| (iii) Administrative Penalty Proceedings .....           | §79        |
| A. General .....   | §79        |
| B. Notice .....  | §82        |
| C. Payment and Review .....                              | §83        |
| D. Appeal .....  | §87        |
| E. Certificates .....                                    | §88        |
| (f) Suspension and Cancellation of Documents .....       | §90        |
| (i) General .....  | §90        |
| (ii) Suspension and Cancellation for Contravention ..... | §92        |
| (iii) Suspension for Immediate Threat to Safety .....    | §97        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (iv) Suspension or Refusal to Issue, Amend or Re-<br>new on Issue of Certificate..... | §100        |
| (v) Suspension and Cancellation for Lack of<br>Qualifications.....                    | §101        |
| (vi) Appeals .....  | §105        |
| (g) Miscellaneous Provisions .....  | §107        |
| 4. Canadian Air Transport Security Authority.....                                     | §111        |
| 5. Criminal Code .....  | §114        |
| 6. Transportation Appeal Tribunal of Canada Act .....                                 | §116        |
| 7. Other Statutes .....   | §125        |
| (a) Air Canada Public Participation Act .....   | §125        |
| (b) Airport Transfer (Miscellaneous Matters) Act.....                                 | §126        |
| (c) Canadian Transportation Accident Investigation and<br>Safety Board Act.....       | §128        |
| (d) Carriage by Air Act .....   | §129        |
| (e) Department of Transport Act.....  | §130        |
| (f) Canada Transportation Act.....  | §131        |
| (g) Canadian Human Rights Act .....   | §136        |
| (h) Prohibition of International Air Services Act .....                               | §138        |
| (i) Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act, 1992.....                                  | §139        |
| (j) Immigration and Refugee Protection Act .....                                      | §140        |
| (k) Civil Air Navigation Services Commercialization Act ...                           | §141        |
| (l) Canada National Parks Act.....  | §151        |
| <b>IV. Aerodromes and Airports.....</b>   | <b>§152</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §152        |
| (a) Definitions.....  | §152        |
| (b) Regulatory Authority.....   | §154        |
| 2. Operation of Aerodromes and Airports — Generally.....                              | §157        |
| 3. Operation of Aerodromes and Airports — Safety<br>Requirements .....                | §162        |
| (a) Operation of Aerodromes.....  | §162        |
| (b) Certification and Operation of Airports .....                                     | §163        |
| (c) Operation of Vehicles, Vessels and Aircraft.....                                  | §167        |
| (d) Marking and Lighting .....  | §170        |
| (e) Miscellaneous.....  | §172        |
| 4. Commercial Activities .....  | §178        |

## AVIATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 5. Occupiers Liability.....  | \$182        |
| 6. Use of Adjacent Land and Airspace.....  | \$184        |
| (a) Interests of Neighbouring Landowners.....                                      | \$184        |
| (b) Regulation of Noise.....   | \$187        |
| (c) Airport Zoning Regulations.....  | \$188        |
| <b>V. Air Carriers.....</b>  | <b>\$193</b> |
| 1. General.....  | \$193        |
| 2. Certification of Air Carriers.....  | \$197        |
| 3. Licensing of Domestic and International Carriers.....                           | \$203        |
| 4. Additional Requirements.....  | \$206        |
| <b>VI. Aircraft Defined.....</b>   | <b>\$213</b> |
| <b>VII. Airworthiness.....</b>   | <b>\$215</b> |
| 1. General.....  | \$215        |
| 2. Flight Authority.....   | \$218        |
| 3. Offences.....   | \$221        |
| 4. Identification of Aircraft and Aeronautical Products.....                       | \$225        |
| <b>VIII. Marking and Registration of Aircraft.....</b>                             | <b>\$227</b> |
| 1. General.....  | \$227        |
| 2. Criteria for Registration.....  | \$230        |
| 3. Leasing.....  | \$233        |
| <b>IX. Rules of the Air.....</b>   | <b>\$235</b> |
| 1. General.....  | \$235        |
| 2. Responsibilities of Operators, Pilot-in-Command and Flight<br>Crew Members..... | \$237        |
| 3. Additional Rules.....   | \$241        |
| <b>X. Air Navigation Services.....</b>   | <b>\$251</b> |
| 1. General.....  | \$251        |
| 2. Procedures.....   | \$255        |
| 3. Air Traffic Controllers.....  | \$261        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>XI. Personnel Licensing</b> .....                             | §263 |
| 1. General .....   | §263 |
| 2. Issue of Licences.....  | §265 |
| 3. Medical and Optometric Fitness .....                          | §268 |
| 4. Offences.....   | §273 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>XII. Security</b> .....                                       | §278 |
| 1. Regulations, Security Measures and Emergency Directions.....  | §278 |
| 2. Canadian Air Transport Security Authority.....                | §282 |
| 3. Provision of Information.....                                 | §287 |
| 4. Screenings and Other Security Requirements.....               | §293 |
| 5. Security Assessments .....                                    | §305 |
| 6. Responsibilities of Government Agencies .....                 | §307 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>XIII. Investigation of Accidents and Incidents</b> .....      | §309 |
| 1. General .....   | §309 |
| 2. Object of TSB .....   | §310 |
| 3. Application of Act .....                                      | §311 |
| 4. Establishment of TSB .....                                    | §312 |
| 5. Jurisdiction of Board.....                                    | §314 |
| 6. Investigations and Public Inquiries .....                     | §317 |
| (a) Powers and Duties of Investigators .....                     | §317 |
| (b) Public Inquiry .....   | §320 |
| (c) Investigation .....  | §321 |
| 7. Privilege.....  | §326 |
| 8. Regulations .....   | §328 |
| 9. Offences.....   | §329 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>XIV. Liability for Aircraft Accidents and Incidents</b> ..... | §330 |
| 1. General .....   | §330 |
| 2. Liability in Tort.....  | §331 |
| (a) Negligence .....   | §331 |
| (i) General.....   | §331 |
| (ii) Parties — Duty and Standard of Care.....                    | §338 |
| A. Aerodrome Operators.....                                      | §338 |
| B. Air Carriers and Aircraft Operators .....                     | §345 |

## AVIATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| C. Aircraft Owners .....  | §354 |
| D. Air Traffic Controllers .....                                | §356 |
| E. Crown .....  | §360 |
| F. Flight Crew Members .....                                    | §362 |
| G. Others .....   | §377 |
| (b) Nuisance .....  | §381 |
| (c) Strict Liability .....                                      | §384 |
| (d) Trespass .....  | §385 |
| 3. Liability in Contract .....                                  | §386 |
| 4. International Carriage by Air .....                          | §389 |
| (a) General .....   | §389 |
| (b) The Warsaw Convention .....                                 | §393 |
| (i) Application .....   | §393 |
| (ii) Jurisdiction .....   | §395 |
| (iii) Documents of Carriage .....                               | §397 |
| A. General .....  | §397 |
| B. Passenger Ticket .....                                       | §398 |
| C. Baggage Check .....  | §400 |
| D. Documentation Relating to Cargo .....                        | §401 |
| (iv) Liability of Carriers .....                                | §402 |
| A. General .....  | §402 |
| B. Death or Injury to Passengers .....                          | §405 |
| C. Loss or Damage to Baggage or Cargo .....                     | §407 |
| D. Delay .....  | §412 |
| E. Exceptions .....   | §413 |
| (c) The Montreal Convention .....                               | §417 |
| (i) Application .....   | §417 |
| (ii) Documents of Carriage .....                                | §422 |
| (iii) Liability of Carrier and Compensation for<br>Damage ..... | §428 |
| A. General .....  | §428 |
| B. Passengers and Baggage .....                                 | §434 |
| C. Cargo .....  | §438 |
| D. Delay .....  | §440 |
| E. Limits of Liability .....                                    | §441 |

### Index

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

*Related titles:* Carriers; Constitutional Law; Crown; Criminal Law — Offences; Environmental Law; International Law; Labour Law; Nuisance; Utilities; War and Emergency.

# BAILMENT

prepared by  
Andrew James, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the British Columbia Bar*

**Table of Cases**  
**Table of Statutes**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                             | §1   |
| 1. Definition and Characteristics .....             | §1   |
| 2. Classifications .....                            | §8   |
| (a) General .....                                   | §8   |
| (b) Bailment Distinguished from Sale of Goods ..... | §10  |
| (c) Bailment Distinguished from Licence .....       | §16  |
| (d) Bailment Distinguished from Agency .....        | §18  |
| (e) Requirement of Change in Possession .....       | §20  |
| (f) Mixed Property of Different Owners .....        | §27  |
| 3. Liabilities of Bailee to Bailor .....            | §30  |
| 4. Burden of Proof .....                            | §50  |
| 5. The Crown as Bailee .....                        | §63  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>II. Bailment for Benefit of Bailor</b> .....     | §67  |
| 1. Mandate .....                                    | §67  |
| 2. Deposit .....                                    | §70  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>III. Bailment for Benefit of Bailee</b> .....    | §84  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>IV. Lease or Hire of Chattels</b> .....          | §94  |
| 1. General .....                                    | §94  |
| 2. Duties of Bailor .....                           | §99  |
| 3. Duty of Bailee or Hirer .....                    | §102 |
| 4. Liability for Rent .....                         | §114 |

BAILMENT

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 5. Repairs by Bailee . . . . .   | §117        |
| <b>V. Storage and Warehousing . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>§120</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .   | §120        |
| 2. General . . . . .   | §121        |
| 3. Standard of Care of Warehouseman . . . . .                                | §135        |
| 4. Conditions Limiting Liability . . . . .                                   | §143        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §143        |
| (b) Limitation on amount of claim . . . . .                                  | §144        |
| (c) Scope of clause . . . . .  | §146        |
| (d) Fundamental Breach, Unconscionability and<br>Misrepresentation . . . . . | §147        |
| (e) Sub-bailees . . . . .  | §151        |
| (f) Claim by insurer . . . . .   | §152        |
| 5. Place of Storage and Movement of Goods . . . . .                          | §153        |
| 6. Perishable Goods . . . . .  | §157        |
| 7. Wrongful Delivery . . . . .   | §160        |
| 8. Unauthorized Use . . . . .  | §163        |
| 9. Insurable Interests . . . . .   | §165        |
| 10. Hotel And Lodging-House Keepers . . . . .                                | §166        |
| 11. Garagekeepers . . . . .  | §168        |
| 12. Patentee of the Crown . . . . .  | §170        |
| 13. Wharfingers . . . . .  | §171        |
| 14. Maritime Law . . . . .   | §175        |
| 15. Charges and Liens . . . . .  | §178        |
| <b>VI. Warehouse Receipts . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§199</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §199        |
| 2. Duty to Deliver . . . . .   | §207        |
| 3. Conclusiveness Of Negotiable Receipt . . . . .                            | §208        |
| 4. Description Of Goods . . . . .  | §211        |
| 5. Liability And Transfer . . . . .  | §212        |
| 6. Rights on Transfer . . . . .  | §216        |
| 7. Endorsement . . . . .   | §217        |
| 8. Fraud, Mistake, etc. . . . .  | §218        |
| 9. Vendor's Lien . . . . .   | §220        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>VII. Parking Lot Operators</b> .....  | §221 |
| 1. General .....   | §221 |
| 2. Exclusionary Clauses .....  | §223 |
| 3. Liability to Third Parties .....  | §224 |
| 4. Contents of Vehicle .....   | §225 |
| 5. Bailment or Licence .....   | §227 |
| <b>VIII. Carriage of Goods</b> .....   | §229 |
| 1. General .....   | §229 |
| (a) Common Carrier or Private Carrier .....  | §229 |
| (b) Characteristics of Common Carriers .....                                       | §231 |
| (c) Sub-Bailment .....   | §233 |
| (d) Particular Cases .....   | §235 |
| 2. Charges and Liens .....   | §244 |
| <b>IX. Hire of Work</b> .....  | §245 |
| 1. General .....   | §245 |
| 2. Charges and Liens .....   | §254 |
| <b>X. Rights and Duties of Bailor and Bailee in Respect of Third Persons</b> ..... | §258 |
| 1. General .....   | §258 |
| 2. Attornment .....  | §272 |
| 3. Title to Goods and Jus Tertii .....   | §275 |
| 4. Unlawfully Receiving .....  | §279 |
| 5. Executions .....  | §281 |
| 6. Personal Injuries .....   | §282 |
| 7. Unauthorized Sale by Bailee .....   | §284 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agriculture; Animals; Banking; Carriers; Conditional Sales; Contracts; Criminal Law; Crown; Damages; Estoppel; Evidence; Execution; Fraud And Misrepresentation; Hotels; Insurance; Landlord And Tenant; Liens; Negligence; Personal Property; Pleadings; Pledges; Real Property;

BAILMENT

---

Sale Of Goods; Secured Transactions In Personal Property; Shipping;  
Trespass

# BANKING

prepared by  
M.H. Ogilvie, B.A., LL.B., M.A., D. Phil., D.D., F.R.S.C.  
*of the Nova Scotia and Ontario Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....               | §1  |
| 1. Scope of Title.....                     | §1  |
| 2. Earlier Legislation.....                | §2  |
| 3. Statutory Interpretation.....           | §3  |
| 4. Application of Bank Act.....            | §4  |
| 5. Meaning of “Banking”.....               | §7  |
| <b>II. Incorporation</b> .....             | §10 |
| 1. Procedures for Incorporation.....       | §10 |
| 2. Name of Bank.....                       | §16 |
| 3. Legal Status and Powers of Bank.....    | §17 |
| 4. Changes in Incorporation.....           | §19 |
| 5. Foreign Banks.....                      | §20 |
| <b>III. Commencement Of Business</b> ..... | §21 |
| 1. Organization Meeting.....               | §21 |
| 2. Commencement of Business.....           | §23 |
| <b>IV. Directors and Officers</b> .....    | §28 |
| 1. Directors.....                          | §28 |
| (a) Control.....                           | §28 |
| (b) Qualifications and Numbers.....        | §29 |
| (c) Election and Tenure.....               | §32 |

## BANKING

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (d) Incomplete Elections and Director Vacancies .....          | §35         |
| (e) Meetings of Board.....                                     | §39         |
| (f) By-Laws .....  | §44         |
| (g) Duties .....   | §46         |
| 2. Officers .....  | §51         |
| 3. Validity of Directors’ and Officers’ Acts.....              | §54         |
| 4. Conflicts of Interest .....                                 | §55         |
| 5. Directors’ Liability.....                                   | §58         |
| 6. Directors’ and Officers’ Reliance .....                     | §61         |
| 7. Directors’ and Officers’ Indemnification and Insurance..... | §62         |
| <b>V. Shareholders.....</b>                                    | <b>§65</b>  |
| 1. Shareholders’ Meetings.....                                 | §65         |
| 2. Proxies .....   | §81         |
| 3. Access To Records .....                                     | §88         |
| 4. Shareholders’ Auditors .....                                | §90         |
| 5. Pre-Emptive Rights.....                                     | §104        |
| 6. Shareholder Liability.....                                  | §105        |
| <b>VI. Capital Structure .....</b>                             | <b>§106</b> |
| 1. Share Capital.....  | §106        |
| 2. Conversion Privileges .....                                 | §111        |
| 3. Holding Its Own Shares .....                                | §112        |
| 4. Reduction of Capital.....                                   | §115        |
| 5. Adjustment of Stated Capital Account .....                  | §116        |
| 6. Declaration of Dividend .....                               | §117        |
| 7. Subordinated Indebtedness .....                             | §118        |
| 8. Security Certificates and Transfers .....                   | §119        |
| <b>VII. Insider Trading .....</b>                              | <b>§144</b> |
| 1. “Insider” Defined .....                                     | §144        |
| 2. Insider Reporting.....                                      | §145        |
| 3. Insider Trading.....  | §147        |
| 4. Penalties.....  | §148        |
| <b>VIII. Prospectus.....</b>                                   | <b>§153</b> |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>IX. Going-Private Transactions and Squeeze-Out Transactions ...</b> | §156 |
| <b>X. Compulsory Acquisitions.....</b>                                 | §160 |
| <b>XI. Trust Indentures .....</b>                                      | §168 |
| <b>XII. Corporate Records .....</b>                                    | §175 |
| 1. Head Office .....   | §175 |
| 2. Corporate Records.....  | §176 |
| 3. Securities Registers .....  | §182 |
| 4. Corporate Name and Seal.....  | §183 |
| <b>XIII. Financial Statements .....</b>                                | §184 |
| 1. Financial Year .....  | §184 |
| 2. Annual Financial Statement.....                                     | §186 |
| 3. Subsidiary Financial Statements.....                                | §188 |
| <b>XIV. Returns .....</b>  | §189 |
| 1. Generally .....   | §189 |
| 2. Names of Directors and Auditors .....                               | §190 |
| 3. Other Documentary Returns .....                                     | §191 |
| 4. Superintendent's Duties .....                                       | §193 |
| 5. Bank's Duties .....   | §195 |
| <b>XV. Supervision .....</b>   | §196 |
| 1. Generally .....   | §196 |
| 2. Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions.....         | §198 |
| 3. Supervisory Duties and Powers.....                                  | §214 |
| <b>XVI. Fundamental Changes .....</b>                                  | §224 |
| 1. Generally .....   | §224 |
| 2. Amendments.....   | §225 |
| 3. Amalgamation .....  | §230 |
| 4. Transfer of Business .....  | §238 |

## BANKING

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>XVII. Remedial Actions</b> .....                  | §241 |
| <b>XVIII. Liquidation and Dissolution</b> .....      | §247 |
| 1. Generally .....                                   | §247 |
| 2. Superintendent Taking Control.....                | §248 |
| 3. Winding-Up .....                                  | §251 |
| 4. Simple Liquidation.....                           | §260 |
| 5. Court-Supervised Liquidation.....                 | §263 |
| 6. Claims in Liquidation .....                       | §278 |
| 7. Calls on Shares .....                             | §287 |
| <b>XIX. Ownership</b> .....                          | §290 |
| 1. Ownership of Banks .....                          | §290 |
| 2. Constraints on Ownership.....                     | §296 |
| 3. Additional Constraints on Ownership .....         | §310 |
| 4. Directions and Other Statutory Requirements ..... | §312 |
| <b>XX. Foreign Banks</b> .....                       | §316 |
| 1. Doing Business .....                              | §316 |
| 2. Prohibitions on Doing Business .....              | §322 |
| 3. Investment in Canadian Entities.....              | §329 |
| 4. Application of Investment Canada Act.....         | §336 |
| 5. Branches .....                                    | §337 |
| 6. Approvals .....                                   | §339 |
| <b>XXI. Authorized Foreign Banks</b> .....           | §340 |
| 1. Generally .....                                   | §340 |
| 2. Authorization .....                               | §341 |
| 3. Prohibition on Doing Business.....                | §344 |
| 4. Carrying on Business in Canada .....              | §345 |
| 5. Powers .....                                      | §350 |
| 6. Restrictions .....                                | §352 |
| 7. Deposit Requirements .....                        | §353 |
| 8. Financial Statements .....                        | §354 |
| 9. Auditors .....                                    | §355 |
| 10. Asset Maintenance .....                          | §361 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 11. Supervisory Intervention.....   | §362        |
| 12. Termination of Business in Canada.....  | §363        |
| 13. Application of Winding-up and Restructuring Act.....                          | §364        |
| <b>XXII. Bank Holding Companies.....</b>  | <b>§365</b> |
| 1. Generally.....   | §365        |
| 2. Continuance.....   | §366        |
| 3. Organization and Commencement.....   | §367        |
| 4. Transfer of Business.....  | §368        |
| 5. Liquidation and Dissolution.....   | §369        |
| 6. Constraints on Doing Business.....   | §372        |
| 7. Investments.....   | §373        |
| 8. Non-Bank Entities.....   | §374        |
| <b>XXIII. Administration and Sanctions.....</b>                                   | <b>§375</b> |
| 1. Administration.....  | §375        |
| 2. Court Appeals.....   | §383        |
| 3. Regulations.....   | §384        |
| 4. Delegation.....  | §385        |
| 5. Sanctions.....   | §386        |
| 6. Criminal Code Offences.....  | §394        |
| 7. Extradition Act Offences.....  | §395        |
| 8. Competition Act Offences.....  | §396        |
| 9. Proceeds of Crime (Money Laundering) and Terrorist Financing Act Offences..... | §397        |
| 10. Approvals.....  | §398        |
| <b>XXIV. Business and Powers of Banks.....</b>                                    | <b>§401</b> |
| 1. Main Business.....   | §401        |
| 2. Permitted Business Generally.....  | §403        |
| 3. Prohibited Business Generally.....   | §415        |
| 4. Public Accountability Statement.....   | §426        |
| <b>XXV. Loans.....</b>  | <b>§427</b> |
| 1. Background.....  | §427        |
| 2. Real Property.....   | §428        |

## BANKING

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Discounting.....   | §430        |
| 4. Lending Generally.....   | §436        |
| 5. Collateral Security.....   | §444        |
| 6. Prohibited Collateral Security.....  | §463        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XXVI. Loans on Hydrocarbons and Minerals .....</b>                               | <b>§468</b> |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XXVII. Warehouse Receipts and Bills of Lading .....</b>                          | <b>§471</b> |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XXVIII. “Special Security” .....</b>   | <b>§480</b> |
| 1. Generally .....  | §480        |
| 2. Eligible Recipients .....  | §481        |
| 3. Eligible Security.....   | §486        |
| 4. Rights Created by Special Security.....  | §490        |
| 5. Priorities .....   | §510        |
| 6. Conditions Under Which Security May Be Taken .....                               | §516        |
| 7. Appropriation of Payments to Secured Debt.....                                   | §522        |
| 8. Taking Possession and Sale.....  | §525        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XXIX. Goods, Wares and Merchandise .....</b>                                     | <b>§541</b> |
| 1. Generally .....  | §541        |
| 2. Dealing in Goods, Wares and Merchandise or Engaging in<br>Trade or Business..... | §542        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XXX. Deposits, Branches and Interest .....</b>                                   | <b>§547</b> |
| 1. Deposit Acceptance.....  | §547        |
| 2. Branches .....   | §549        |
| 3. Interest and Charges .....   | §555        |
| 4. Borrowing Costs .....  | §559        |
| 5. Interest-Fixing Agreements.....  | §571        |
| 6. Tied Selling .....   | §573        |
| 7. Deemed Loans.....  | §574        |
| 8. Unclaimed Balances.....  | §575        |
| 9. Liability of Bank.....   | §577        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XXXI. Capital Adequacy.....</b>  | <b>§578</b> |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>XXXII. Investments</b> .....                           | §579 |
| 1. Generally .....  | §579 |
| 2. Subsidiaries and Equity Investments.....               | §581 |
| 3. Portfolio Limits .....                                 | §589 |
| 4. Real Property.....                                     | §590 |
| 5. Equities .....   | §591 |
| 6. Aggregate Limit .....                                  | §592 |
| 7. Other .....  | §593 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XXXIII. Self-Dealing</b> .....                         | §596 |
| 1. Prohibited Related Party Transactions .....            | §596 |
| 2. Permitted Related Party Transactions .....             | §601 |
| 3. Restrictions on Permitted Transactions.....            | §607 |
| 4. Disclosure .....                                       | §608 |
| 5. Remedial Actions .....                                 | §609 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XXXIV. Canadian Payments Association</b> .....         | §610 |
| 1. Incorporation .....                                    | §610 |
| 2. Membership.....  | §611 |
| 3. Board of Directors .....                               | §613 |
| (a) Generally .....                                       | §613 |
| (b) Duties and Powers.....                                | §617 |
| 4. Role of Members .....                                  | §621 |
| (a) Generally .....                                       | §621 |
| (b) Rights and Duties of Members.....                     | §623 |
| 5. Electronic Meetings .....                              | §624 |
| 6. Insolvency.....  | §625 |
| 7. Other .....  | §627 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XXXV. Canadian Bankers' Association</b> .....          | §629 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XXXVI. Bank of Canada</b> .....                        | §633 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XXXVII. Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation</b> ..... | §650 |
| 1. Generally .....  | §650 |

## BANKING

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Deposit Insurance.....                             | §657        |
| 3. Restructuring .....                                | §673        |
| <b>XXXVIII. Taxation of Banks.....</b>                | <b>§687</b> |
| <b>XXXIX. Banker and Customer Relationship .....</b>  | <b>§689</b> |
| 1. Nature of Relationship.....                        | §689        |
| 2. Obligations of Bank.....                           | §697        |
| (a) Repayment of Deposits and Honouring Cheques ..... | §697        |
| (b) Collection of Cheques and Bills.....              | §717        |
| (c) Provision of Statements of Account.....           | §731        |
| (d) Secrecy.....                                      | §737        |
| 3. Appropriation and Set-Off.....                     | §745        |
| 4. Banker's Lien .....                                | §760        |
| 5. Termination of the Contract.....                   | §771        |
| 6. Proper Law of the Contract.....                    | §773        |
| <b>XL. Banker as Bailee .....</b>                     | <b>§774</b> |
| <b>XLI. Banker as Fiduciary .....</b>                 | <b>§777</b> |
| <b>XLII. Accounts.....</b>                            | <b>§789</b> |
| 1. General .....                                      | §789        |
| 2. Deposit Receipts .....                             | §797        |
| 3. Overdrafts .....                                   | §803        |
| 4. Limitation Periods.....                            | §805        |
| 5. Interest .....                                     | §807        |
| 6. Joint Accounts.....                                | §808        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §808        |
| (b) Garnishment of Joint Accounts .....               | §821        |
| 7. Trust Accounts .....                               | §822        |
| 8. Garnishment and Seizure of Deposits.....           | §837        |
| 9. Unclaimed Balances.....                            | §841        |
| <b>XLIII. Cheques .....</b>                           | <b>§845</b> |
| 1. General .....                                      | §845        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 2. Obligations of Drawee Bank to Payee and Others .....       | \$852        |
| 3. Bank as Holder of a Cheque .....                           | \$858        |
| 4. Postdated Cheques .....                                    | \$865        |
| 5. Certified Cheques.....                                     | \$868        |
| 6. Presentment for Payment.....                               | \$879        |
| 7. Countermand .....  | \$881        |
| 8. Crossed Cheques .....                                      | \$882        |
| 9. Liability as Between Banks.....                            | \$883        |
| 10. Forged Cheques.....                                       | \$884        |
| 11. Recovery of Money Paid by Mistake .....                   | \$900        |
| 12. Liability of Bank for Deceit or on Implied Warranty ..... | \$906        |
| 13. Lack of Authority .....                                   | \$911        |
| <b>XLIV. Guarantees .....</b>                                 | <b>\$919</b> |
| 1. Creation .....   | \$919        |
| 2. Vitiating .....  | \$920        |
| 3. Construction .....   | \$926        |
| 4. Determination of Liability .....                           | \$928        |
| 5. Rights of a Guarantor .....                                | \$941        |
| 6. Termination .....  | \$948        |
| 7. Letters of Credit.....                                     | \$952        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Agriculture; Bailment; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Bills of Exchange; Business Corporations; Children; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Cooperatives; Damages; Discovery; Estoppel; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Labour Law; Liens; Mortgages; Negligence; Oil and Gas; Partnership; Personal Property; Pledges; Receivers; Restitution; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Securities and Stock Exchanges; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada; Trusts.

# BANKRUPTCY AND INSOLVENCY

prepared by  
Janis Sarra, B.A., M.A., LL.B., LL.M., S.J.D: April 2010  
Updated by the legal editorial staff of Carswell: October 2012

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Office of the Superintendent  
of Bankruptcy Canada Directives**

**Table of Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act Forms**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                       | §1  |
| 1. Introduction .....                         | §1  |
| 2. Statute .....                              | §2  |
| 3. Constitutional Competence .....            | §4  |
| (a) Federal Jurisdiction.....                 | §4  |
| (b) Provincial Jurisdiction.....              | §9  |
| 4. Definitions .....                          | §13 |
| (a) Bankrupt.....                             | §13 |
| (b) Person.....                               | §14 |
| (c) Corporation .....                         | §16 |
| (d) Related Persons .....                     | §17 |
| (e) Insolvent Person .....                    | §21 |
| 5. Locality of Debtor.....                    | §24 |
| 6. Contracts with Debtor.....                 | §28 |
| <b>II. Insolvent Persons</b> .....            | §34 |
| 1. Voluntary and Involuntary Proceedings..... | §34 |
| (a) Assignments .....                         | §34 |
| (b) Bankruptcy Orders .....                   | §36 |

BANKRUPTCY AND INSOLVENCY

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Proposals .....  | \$38        |
| 2. Persons Exempt from Involuntary Proceedings.....                          | \$40        |
| (a) General .....  | \$40        |
| (b) Religious Bodies.....  | \$42        |
| (c) Personal Representatives .....   | \$43        |
| 3. Infants .....   | \$44        |
| 4. Mentally Incompetent Persons .....  | \$46        |
| <b>III. Partnership .....</b>  | <b>\$47</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$47        |
| (a) Limited Partnership .....  | \$47        |
| (b) Assignment in Bankruptcy of a Partnership .....                          | \$49        |
| (c) Profit-Sharing Agreements .....  | \$50        |
| (d) Syndicates .....   | \$51        |
| (e) Denial of Partnership.....   | \$52        |
| (f) Partner as Creditor .....  | \$53        |
| 2. Assignments .....   | \$54        |
| (a) Assets .....   | \$54        |
| (b) Authority of Partner .....   | \$58        |
| (c) Validity of Assignment .....   | \$59        |
| 3. Bankruptcy Orders in Respect of Partnerships.....                         | \$61        |
| (a) Application for Bankruptcy Order.....                                    | \$61        |
| (b) Assets of Partnerships .....   | \$62        |
| (c) Surplus of Estates in Partnership Bankruptcy.....                        | \$63        |
| 4. Parties to a Proceeding Regarding Partnership .....                       | \$65        |
| 5. Statement of Partnership Affairs .....                                    | \$66        |
| <b>IV. Corporations.....</b>   | <b>\$67</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$67        |
| (a) Corporations Subject to the Bankruptcy and Insol-<br>vency Act.....      | \$67        |
| (b) Corporations Not Subject to the Bankruptcy and In-<br>solvency Act ..... | \$71        |
| 2. Banks and Trust Companies.....  | \$72        |
| (a) General .....  | \$72        |
| (b) Relationship between Bank and Customer.....                              | \$74        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 3. Building Societies Having Share Capital.....                                | §76         |
| 4. Insurance Companies .....   | §77         |
| 5. Railway Companies .....   | §78         |
| 6. Directors and Officers.....   | §81         |
| (a) Property of Company .....  | §81         |
| (b) Duties on Insolvency.....  | §84         |
| (c) Claims against Directors .....   | §89         |
| 7. Share Capital.....  | §90         |
| (a) General .....  | §90         |
| (b) Liability of Shareholders of Bankrupt Corporation as<br>Contributors ..... | §91         |
| (c) Impairment of Capital .....  | §92         |
| 8. Allotment of Shares .....   | §95         |
| (a) Waiver of Notice .....   | §95         |
| (b) Cancellation .....   | §99         |
| (c) Repudiation of Subscription.....   | §102        |
| 9. Contributors .....  | §103        |
| (a) Liability .....  | §103        |
| (b) Procedure for Asserting a Claim Against a<br>Contributory.....             | §105        |
| (c) Personal Representatives .....   | §106        |
| (d) Notice of Dispute .....  | §107        |
| 10. Rights of Bondholders .....  | §109        |
| <b>V. Official Receivers .....</b>   | <b>§110</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §110        |
| 2. Duties and Responsibilities.....  | §115        |
| (a) Filing of Assignment.....  | §115        |
| (b) Appointment of Trustee .....   | §117        |
| (c) Examination of Bankrupt and Others .....                                   | §120        |
| (d) Investigation of Bankrupt.....   | §123        |
| <b>VI. Trustees .....</b>  | <b>§124</b> |
| 1. Licensing of Trustees.....  | §124        |
| 2. Trustee's Bond .....  | §130        |
| 3. Official Name.....  | §137        |

BANKRUPTCY AND INSOLVENCY

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 4. Appointment and Substitution of Trustee .....                            | §141 |
| (a) General .....   | §141 |
| (b) Procedure to be Followed by Substituted Trustee .....                   | §153 |
| 5. Duties and Powers .....  | §158 |
| (a) General .....   | §158 |
| (b) Delegation of Duties and Powers by Trustees and<br>Administrators ..... | §174 |
| (c) Duty of Trustee to Obey Court Orders .....                              | §175 |
| (d) Duties of Trustees and Receivers in Respect of<br>Wages .....           | §178 |
| (e) Obtaining Possession of Property of Bankrupt .....                      | §184 |
| (f) Disclaimer of Property .....  | §210 |
| (g) Conservatory Measures and Disposal of Perishable<br>Goods .....         | §211 |
| (h) Legal Proceedings .....   | §213 |
| (i) Civil .....   | §213 |
| (ii) Criminal .....   | §230 |
| (i) Insuring Assets .....   | §231 |
| (j) Sale of Assets .....  | §233 |
| (i) General .....   | §233 |
| (ii) Sale by Tender .....   | §256 |
| (iii) Sale by Auction .....   | §258 |
| (k) Carrying on Business of Bankrupt .....                                  | §260 |
| (l) Leasing Property of Bankrupt .....                                      | §263 |
| (m) Compromise and Settling of Debts .....                                  | §264 |
| (n) Employing Solicitor .....   | §266 |
| (o) Election to Retain Lease .....  | §269 |
| 6. Creditors' Meetings .....  | §273 |
| (a) First Meeting of Creditors .....  | §273 |
| (b) Adjournment of the Meeting .....  | §289 |
| (c) Notice to Creditors of Meeting Subsequent to First<br>Meeting .....     | §290 |
| (d) Removal of Trustee and Appointment of Substitute .....                  | §292 |
| (e) Partnership Bankruptcies .....  | §293 |
| (f) Meetings During Administration .....                                    | §296 |
| 7. Protection of Trustee .....  | §298 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General .....   | §298        |
| (b) Protection From Environmental Liability.....  | §307        |
| 8. Application for Directions .....   | §313        |
| (a) General .....   | §313        |
| (b) Trust Funds.....  | §320        |
| (c) Effect of Court Order Made on an Application for<br>Directions.....   | §322        |
| (d) Appeal from an Order on an Application for<br>Directions.....   | §323        |
| 9. Remuneration of Trustee .....  | §324        |
| (a) General.....  | §324        |
| (b) Payment of Trustee’s Remuneration .....   | §348        |
| (c) Interim Draws on Account of Trustee’s<br>Remuneration.....  | §350        |
| (d) Third Party Deposits and Guarantees.....  | §351        |
| (e) Trustee’s Remuneration in Proposals .....   | §352        |
| (f) Payment of Trustee’s Remuneration Where There<br>Have Been Successive Trustees.....                         | §357        |
| (g) Trustee’s Disbursements .....   | §359        |
| 10. Discharge of Trustee.....   | §364        |
| (a) General .....   | §364        |
| (b) Procedure to be Followed by the Trustee in Ob-<br>taining Its Discharge in an Ordinary Administration ..... | §373        |
| (c) Revoking Discharge of Trustee .....   | §379        |
| (d) Taking of Proceedings Without Leave Once Trustee<br>Discharged .....  | §382        |
| <b>VII. Receivers, Interim Receivers and Receiver-Managers.....</b>   | <b>§385</b> |
| 1. Interim Receivers .....  | §385        |
| 2. Receivers and Secured Creditors.....   | §391        |
| (a) Definition .....  | §391        |
| (b) Notice of Intention .....   | §404        |
| (c) Notice by Receiver .....  | §406        |
| (d) Statement and Reporting Requirements .....  | §407        |
| (e) Duty of Receiver .....  | §408        |
| (f) Powers of Court .....   | §409        |
| (g) Effect of Appointment of a Receiver.....  | §413        |



BANKRUPTCY AND INSOLVENCY

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (h) Statutory Protection .....   | \$416        |
| <b>VIII. Acts of Bankruptcy .....</b>                                    | <b>\$418</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$418        |
| (a) Introduction .....   | \$418        |
| (b) Act of Bankruptcy Occurring Within Six Months .....                  | \$422        |
| (c) Particular Acts of Bankruptcy.....                                   | \$428        |
| 2. Assignment of Property to Trustee for Benefit of Creditors .....      | \$440        |
| 3. Fraudulent Conveyance.....  | \$443        |
| (a) General .....  | \$443        |
| (b) Intent to Defeat, Hinder, Delay or Defraud Creditors or Others ..... | \$447        |
| 4. Fraudulent Preference .....   | \$455        |
| 5. Intent to Defraud, Defeat or Delay Creditors.....                     | \$457        |
| (a) Leaving Jurisdiction .....   | \$457        |
| (b) Disposal of Property.....  | \$458        |
| 6. Execution Against Debtor Remaining Unsatisfied.....                   | \$459        |
| 7. Notice to Creditors.....  | \$461        |
| (a) Inability to Pay Debts .....   | \$461        |
| (b) Suspension of Payment of Debts.....                                  | \$463        |
| 8. Ceasing to Meet Liabilities Generally .....                           | \$464        |
| <b>IX. Application for Bankruptcy Order .....</b>                        | <b>\$473</b> |
| 1. Who May Apply .....   | \$473        |
| 2. Place for Filing of Application .....                                 | \$489        |
| 3. Formalities of Application.....                                       | \$495        |
| (a) General .....  | \$495        |
| (b) Appointment of Trustee .....   | \$509        |
| (c) Affidavit of Verification.....                                       | \$510        |
| 4. Grounds for Application.....  | \$517        |
| (a) Act of Bankruptcy .....  | \$517        |
| (b) Debt Owing to Applicant Creditor .....                               | \$526        |
| (i) Liquidated Debt.....   | \$526        |
| (ii) Judgment.....   | \$534        |
| (iii) Seizure Under Execution .....                                      | \$544        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (iv) Spousal and Child Support .....                                 | \$545        |
| 5. Corporations: Winding-up and Restructuring Act Not Applying ..... | \$549        |
| 6. Estate of Deceased Bankrupt.....                                  | \$550        |
| 7. Amendment of Application .....                                    | \$551        |
| (a) Formal Defect .....  | \$551        |
| (b) Adding Party.....  | \$555        |
| 8. Authorized Assignment Subsequent to Filing of Application.....    | \$556        |
| 9. Stay of Application.....  | \$558        |
| 10. Hearing of Application .....                                     | \$561        |
| 11. Defences to Application .....                                    | \$567        |
| 12. Bankruptcy Order.....  | \$575        |
| 13. Bankruptcy Relating Back to Filing of Application .....          | \$582        |
| 14. Examinations .....   | \$585        |
| 15. Interim Receiver.....  | \$592        |
| 16. Stay of Bankruptcy Application.....                              | \$618        |
| 17. Annulment of Bankruptcy .....                                    | \$629        |
| <b>X. Assignments.....</b>   | <b>\$641</b> |
| 1. Authorized Assignment for General Benefit of Creditors .....      | \$641        |
| (a) General .....  | \$641        |
| (b) Steps in Filing an Assignment.....                               | \$643        |
| (i) Ordinary Administration .....                                    | \$643        |
| (ii) Summary Administration .....                                    | \$652        |
| (iii) Supporting Affidavit .....                                     | \$657        |
| (iv) Place of Filing .....   | \$658        |
| (c) Effect of Filing .....   | \$660        |
| 2. Vesting of Property in Trustee.....                               | \$663        |
| (a) General .....  | \$663        |
| (b) Leaseholds .....   | \$664        |
| (c) Property Divisible Among Creditors .....                         | \$668        |
| (d) Exempt Property .....  | \$670        |
| (i) Property Exempt from Execution or Seizure.....                   | \$670        |
| (ii) Value in Excess of Limit Allowed by Provincial Law .....        | \$682        |

BANKRUPTCY AND INSOLVENCY

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iii) Jointly Owned Property .....   | §685        |
| (iv) Real Estate and Homesteads.....   | §688        |
| (v) Tools and Chattel Used in the Bankrupt’s Business, Profession or Calling ..... | §692        |
| (vi) Wages Earned After Bankruptcy .....   | §694        |
| (e) Right of Unpaid Supplier to Repossess Goods.....                               | §695        |
| (i) General.....   | §695        |
| (ii) Right of Unpaid Seller under Quebec Civil Code .....                          | §708        |
| 3. Validity of Other Assignments.....  | §711        |
| 4. Annulling Assignment .....  | §712        |
| <b>XI. Proposals.....</b>  | <b>§715</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §715        |
| 2. Division I Proposals.....   | §726        |
| (a) General .....  | §726        |
| (b) Proposals to Secured Creditors.....  | §728        |
| (c) Landlord Rights in Proposal Proceedings .....                                  | §732        |
| (d) Initial Procedure .....  | §733        |
| (i) General.....   | §733        |
| (ii) Notice of Intention.....  | §739        |
| (e) Stay of Proceedings.....   | §758        |
| (f) Lifting Stay .....   | §760        |
| (g) Interim Financing during Proposal Proceedings .....                            | §762        |
| (h) Director and Officer Indemnification .....                                     | §764        |
| (i) No Acceleration of Payment .....   | §766        |
| (j) Appointment of Interim Receiver during Proposal Proceedings.....               | §769        |
| (k) Debtor’s Obligations .....   | §775        |
| (l) Effect of Filing a Proposal .....  | §778        |
| (m) Terms of Proposal.....   | §781        |
| (n) Classification of Creditors .....  | §792        |
| (o) Meeting of Creditors .....   | §800        |
| (p) Effect of Creditors Refusing to Accept Proposal .....                          | §812        |
| (q) Effect of Facts Under S. 173 on Application for Approval .....                 | §814        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (r) Approval of Court.....              | \$816 |
| (s) Effect of Court Approval .....      | \$829 |
| (t) Default under a Proposal .....      | \$838 |
| (u) Annulment of Proposal .....         | \$841 |
| 3. Consumer Proposals.....              | \$851 |
| (a) General .....                       | \$851 |
| (b) Availability .....                  | \$853 |
| (c) Proposal.....                       | \$860 |
| (d) Deemed Acceptance .....             | \$869 |
| (e) Creditors' Meeting.....             | \$872 |
| (f) Court Approval .....                | \$877 |
| (g) Deemed Annulment.....               | \$879 |
| (h) Revival of a Consumer Proposal..... | \$880 |

**XII. Property of Debtor and Claims to Specific Property or**

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <b>Goods.....</b>  | <b>\$881</b> |
| 1. Property of Bankrupt .....  | \$881        |
| (a) General .....  | \$881        |
| (b) Obtaining Possession of Property of the Bankrupt .....   | \$938        |
| (c) Property Exempt from Seizure .....   | \$948        |
| (d) Trust Property .....   | \$981        |
| (i) General.....   | \$981        |
| (ii) Constructive Trusts .....   | \$1000       |
| (e) Provision for Forfeiture or Divesting of Title or the<br>Giving of an Advantage to a Creditor in Event of<br>Bankruptcy..... | \$1007       |
| 2. Claims By or Against Insolvent Estate.....  | \$1009       |
| (a) General .....  | \$1009       |
| (b) Goods on Consignment.....  | \$1013       |
| (c) Goods on Approval .....  | \$1024       |
| (d) Tracing Trust Property .....   | \$1028       |
| (e) Promoter's Secret Profits .....  | \$1043       |
| (f) Concealed Assets .....   | \$1046       |
| (g) Property Not Passing.....  | \$1054       |
| (h) Right to Repossession of Goods.....  | \$1056       |
| (i) Property Disclaimed by Trustee .....   | \$1080       |

BANKRUPTCY AND INSOLVENCY

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (j) Transfer or Equitable Agreement .....   | §1082        |
| (k) Bills of Sale or Chattel Mortgages.....                                       | §1096        |
| (l) Conditional Sales, Lien Agreements .....                                      | §1100        |
| (m) In Transitu .....   | §1107        |
| (n) Non-Compliance with Statutory Provisions .....                                | §1109        |
| (o) Money or Other Proceeds Received Under a Void or<br>Voidable Transaction..... | §1111        |
| (p) Bulk Sales.....   | §1112        |
| (q) Funds in Bankruptcy Trustee’s Hands Through Pay-<br>ment Under Mistake.....   | §1113        |
| (r) Fixtures .....  | §1116        |
| (s) Goodwill.....   | §1120        |
| (t) After-Acquired Property of Bankrupt .....                                     | §1123        |
| (u) Registration of Bankruptcy Order or Assignment .....                          | §1144        |
| <b>XIII. Courts and Procedures .....</b>  | <b>§1148</b> |
| 1. Jurisdiction of Courts.....  | §1148        |
| (a) Exclusive .....   | §1148        |
| (b) Rights of Provinces .....   | §1154        |
| (c) Courts Vested with Jurisdiction.....  | §1156        |
| 2. Authorizing Acts of Trustee.....   | §1165        |
| 3. Power of Court to Relieve Against Formal Defects and<br>Irregularities.....    | §1166        |
| 4. Courts Acting in Aid of Each Other.....  | §1168        |
| 5. Power of Court to Review, Rescind or Vary an Order .....                       | §1173        |
| 6. Stay of Proceedings .....  | §1180        |
| (a) General .....   | §1180        |
| (b) Unsecured Creditors .....   | §1188        |
| (c) Secured Creditors .....   | §1196        |
| 7. Leave to Sue Debtor.....   | §1198        |
| 8. Review of Trustee’s Decision .....   | §1203        |
| 9. Bankruptcy and Insolvency General Rules.....                                   | §1208        |
| 10. Examination of Bankrupt and Others .....                                      | §1209        |
| 11. Affidavits.....   | §1218        |
| 12. Registrar .....   | §1226        |
| 13. Appeals.....  | §1228        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (a) General .....                                    | §1228        |
| (b) Appeals from the Registrar's Decision .....      | §1238        |
| (c) By Trustee.....                                  | §1240        |
| (d) Notice.....                                      | §1241        |
| (e) Extending Time .....                             | §1242        |
| (f) Security For Costs of an Appeal.....             | §1243        |
| (g) Leave to Appeal to Supreme Court of Canada ..... | §1244        |
| <b>XIV. Meetings of Creditors.....</b>               | <b>§1245</b> |
| 1. First Meeting of Creditors .....                  | §1245        |
| 2. Notice Regarding Subsequent Meetings .....        | §1255        |
| 3. Voting by Creditors .....                         | §1256        |
| (a) Proof of Claim.....                              | §1256        |
| (b) Proxies .....                                    | §1261        |
| 4. Irregularity of Meeting .....                     | §1265        |
| 5. Appeal from Ruling of Chair .....                 | §1267        |
| <b>XV. Inspectors.....</b>                           | <b>§1271</b> |
| 1. Appointment.....                                  | §1271        |
| 2. Powers and Duties of Inspectors.....              | §1277        |
| 3. Relationship with Trustee .....                   | §1284        |
| (a) When Permission of Inspectors Required .....     | §1284        |
| (b) Authorizing Trustee to Bring Action .....        | §1289        |
| 4. Remuneration of Inspector .....                   | §1290        |
| 5. Employment of Solicitor.....                      | §1291        |
| <b>XVI. Proof of Claims .....</b>                    | <b>§1294</b> |
| 1. General .....                                     | §1294        |
| 2. Form of Proof of Claim.....                       | §1308        |
| 3. Filing Proof of Claim .....                       | §1312        |
| 4. Claims Provable .....                             | §1319        |
| (a) Effect of Statute of Limitations .....           | §1319        |
| (b) Debts Prior to Date of Bankruptcy .....          | §1321        |
| (c) Debts Payable in Foreign Currency.....           | §1323        |
| 5. Contingent Claims.....                            | §1325        |

BANKRUPTCY AND INSOLVENCY

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 6. Unliquidated Claims .....                                      | §1329        |
| 7. Contracts: Measure of Damages .....                            | §1333        |
| 8. Costs of Action Against Debtor.....                            | §1338        |
| 9. Tax Claims .....   | §1340        |
| 10. Claims for Spousal and Child Support .....                    | §1348        |
| 11. Proof Against Partners and Firm.....                          | §1351        |
| 12. Proof in Respect of Distinct Contracts .....                  | §1352        |
| 13. Interest on Debt.....   | §1355        |
| 14. Proof by Sureties or Guarantors.....                          | §1365        |
| 15. Disallowance of Claims by Trustee .....                       | §1372        |
| (a) General.....  | §1372        |
| (b) Notice of Disallowance.....                                   | §1379        |
| (c) Appeal from Disallowance.....                                 | §1382        |
| <b>XVII. Secured Creditors.....</b>                               | <b>§1398</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §1398        |
| 2. Realization on Security.....                                   | §1443        |
| 3. Valuing Security .....   | §1452        |
| 4. Amending Valuation .....                                       | §1457        |
| 5. Bank Act Security.....   | §1462        |
| 6. Trustee Funds as Security .....                                | §1467        |
| 7. Redeeming Security .....                                       | §1471        |
| 8. Assignments of Book Debts.....                                 | §1478        |
| <b>XVIII. Distribution and Dividends .....</b>                    | <b>§1479</b> |
| 1. Distribution Pari Passu .....                                  | §1479        |
| 2. Notice to Prove Debt or be Excluded from Dividend .....        | §1483        |
| 3. Acceptance of Dividend as Waiver of Inconsistent Claim...§1486 |              |
| 4. Where Payment of Dividend Refused.....                         | §1487        |
| 5. Third Party's Claim Against Dividend .....                     | §1488        |
| 6. Subrogation as to Dividend Rights .....                        | §1492        |
| 7. Final Dividend Sheet .....                                     | §1495        |
| <b>XIX. Preferences and Transfers at Undervalue.....</b>          | <b>§1502</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §1502        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 2. Transfers at Undervalue.....  | §1505        |
| 3. Preferences .....   | §1510        |
| 4. Protected Transactions .....  | §1525        |
| 5. Transactions Taking Place Within Three and Twelve<br>Months Before Bankruptcy ..... | §1528        |
| 6. View of Giving Preference.....  | §1542        |
| 7. Burden of Proof .....   | §1543        |
| 8. The Presumption and Rebuttal of the Presumption .....                               | §1545        |
| 9. Surety or Guarantor for Debt Due to Creditor.....                                   | §1549        |
| 10. Paulian Action.....  | §1551        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>XX. Preferential Claims and Expenses .....</b>                                      | <b>§1552</b> |
| 1. Precedence Over Attachments, Garnishments, Executions,<br>etc. ....                 | §1552        |
| 2. Costs of First Execution Creditor .....   | §1558        |
| 3. Claims of Wage-Earners for Arrears of Wages .....                                   | §1559        |
| (a) General.....   | §1559        |
| (b) Who is Entitled to Preference.....   | §1563        |
| (c) Directors and Officers of Limited Companies.....                                   | §1566        |
| 4. Landlord and Tenant.....  | §1567        |
| 5. Statutory .....   | §1604        |
| 6. Costs and Expenses of Administration .....  | §1613        |
| 7. Other Preferential Claims .....   | §1616        |
| 8. Other Legislation Dealing With Preferences .....                                    | §1621        |
| (a) General.....   | §1621        |
| (b) Preferences Under Statute of Elizabeth.....  | §1625        |
| (c) Preferences Under Provincial Statutes.....   | §1626        |
| 9. Creditor's Action in Name of Trustee .....  | §1629        |
| 10. Summary Application by Trustee to Set Aside Preferen-<br>tial Transactions.....    | §1638        |
| 11. Claims of Crown.....   | §1639        |
| 12. Claims of Municipality .....   | §1653        |
| 13. Claims of Public Utility.....  | §1657        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>XXI. Set-off .....</b>  | <b>§1660</b> |



BANKRUPTCY AND INSOLVENCY

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>XXII. Postponed Claims</b> .....   | §1673 |
| 1. Creditor Not at Arm’s Length.....  | §1673 |
| 2. Equity Claims.....   | §1674 |
| 3. Silent Partners .....  | §1675 |
| 4. Director and Officer Claims for Compensation .....   | §1676 |
| 5. Equitable Subordination.....   | §1677 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>XXIII. Duties of Bankrupt</b> .....  | §1679 |
| 1. Attendance Before Official Receiver .....  | §1679 |
| 2. Submission of Statement of Affairs.....  | §1684 |
| 3. Assisting Trustee.....   | §1687 |
| (a) General .....   | §1687 |
| (b) Attending Meetings of Creditors .....   | §1691 |
| (c) Inventory of Assets.....  | §1692 |
| (d) Disclosure and Delivery of Property.....  | §1693 |
| 4. Counselling.....   | §1697 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>XXIV. Discharge of Bankrupt</b> .....  | §1698 |
| 1. General .....  | §1698 |
| 2. Applications for Discharge where Debtor has been Bank-<br>rupt on a Previous Occasion..... | §1719 |
| 3. Trustee’s Report.....  | §1721 |
| 4. Debts Not Released by Discharge.....   | §1726 |
| 5. Conditional Discharge.....   | §1736 |
| 6. Suspension of Discharge.....   | §1755 |
| 7. Rescission or Variance of Discharge Order .....  | §1764 |
| 8. Reviewing Orders of Discharge Appeals and Annuling<br>Order of Discharge.....              | §1771 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>XXV. Costs</b> .....   | §1778 |
| 1. Discretion as to Costs.....  | §1778 |
| 2. Personal Liability of Trustee for Costs.....   | §1783 |
| 3. Costs Preceding and in Connection With Assignment and<br>Application.....                  | §1792 |
| 4. Security for Costs .....   | §1796 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>XXVI. Bankruptcy Offences</b> .....   | §1800 |
| 1. General .....   | §1800 |
| 2. Prosecutions.....   | §1805 |
| <br>   |       |
| <b>XXVII. Securities Firm Insolvencies</b> .....                               | §1811 |
| <br>   |       |
| <b>XXVIII. Cross-Border Insolvencies</b> .....                                 | §1822 |
| 1. General .....   | §1822 |
| 2. Foreign Main and Non-Main Proceedings.....                                  | §1827 |
| 3. Recognition of a Foreign Proceeding .....                                   | §1830 |
| 4. Discretionary Orders by the Court.....                                      | §1835 |
| 5. Attornment to the Jurisdiction.....   | §1842 |
| 6. Dividends and Property Received by Creditor in a Foreign<br>Proceeding..... | §1843 |
| 7. Multiple Proceedings .....  | §1844 |
| <br>   |       |
| <b>XXIX. Orderly Payment of Debts</b> .....                                    | §1845 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Banking; Barristers and Solicitors; Bills of Exchange; Bulk Sales; Business Corporations; Children; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Conflict of Laws; Constitutional Law; Courts; Criminal Law; Crown; Debtor and Creditor; Discovery; Distress; Execution; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Gifts; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters Of Credit; Insurance; Landlord and Tenant; Limitation of Actions; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Mortgages; Municipal and School Taxation; Parties; Partnership; Personal Property; Professions and Occupations; Railways; Receivers; References and Inquiries; Sale of Goods; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Securities and Stock Exchanges; Sheriffs and Bailiffs; Shipping; Trusts; Workers' Compensation

# BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B. *of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Law Society Codes of Conduct**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. Law Societies: Function and Powers</b> .....      | \$1  |
| 1. Nature .....   | \$1  |
| (a) Body Corporate. ....                                | \$1  |
| (b) Governing Body (“Benchers”). ....                   | \$2  |
| 2. Powers of Governing Body .....                       | \$3  |
| (a) General .....                                       | \$3  |
| (b) Referral to Committees .....                        | \$6  |
| (c) Admissions and Education .....                      | \$7  |
| (d) Professional Liability Claims Fund .....            | \$8  |
| (e) Assurance, Compensation or Reimbursement Fund ..... | \$9  |
| (f) Financial .....                                     | \$11 |
| (i) Rules Respecting Accounts.....                      | \$11 |
| (ii) Investigative.....                                 | \$16 |
| (g) Discipline .....                                    | \$17 |
| (h) Custodial Power .....                               | \$22 |
| (i) General .....                                       | \$22 |
| (ii) Notice.....  | \$26 |
| (iii) Lien Protected .....                              | \$27 |
| (iv) Immunity of Custodian .....                        | \$28 |
| (i) Continuing and Remedial Education.....              | \$29 |
| (j) Law Foundation .....                                | \$31 |

BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 3. Immunity .....                                   | §34        |
| <b>II. Right to Practise.....</b>                   | <b>§36</b> |
| 1. General .....                                    | §36        |
| (a) Legislative Authority .....                     | §36        |
| (b) Discretion.....                                 | §38        |
| 2. Admission to Practise .....                      | §40        |
| (a) Qualifications .....                            | §40        |
| (i) Students-at-Law .....                           | §40        |
| A. Academic .....                                   | §40        |
| B. Articles.....                                    | §41        |
| (ii) Extraprovincial Applicants.....                | §45        |
| (iii) Faculty .....                                 | §48        |
| (iv) Good Character .....                           | §49        |
| (b) Residency.....                                  | §53        |
| (c) Citizenship .....                               | §55        |
| 3. Readmission or Reinstatement .....               | §57        |
| 4. Unauthorized Practise .....                      | §59        |
| (a) Statutory Prohibition.....                      | §59        |
| (b) Purpose.....                                    | §60        |
| (c) Actions Constituting Practice.....              | §62        |
| (i) Common Law .....                                | §62        |
| (ii) Statutory Definitions .....                    | §76        |
| (iii) Exceptions .....                              | §79        |
| (d) Sanctions .....                                 | §88        |
| (i) Prosecution .....                               | §88        |
| (ii) Contempt of Court .....                        | §89        |
| (iii) Injunctions .....                             | §90        |
| (iv) Unauthorized Fees.....                         | §93        |
| <b>III. Rights, Privileges and Liabilities.....</b> | <b>§94</b> |
| 1. Officer of Court .....                           | §94        |
| 2. Freedom From Defamation Action .....             | §99        |
| 3. Rights.....                                      | §100       |
| (a) Right of Audience .....                         | §100       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Right to be Heard.....                | §104        |
| (c) Suit for Fees .....                   | §106        |
| 4. Privileged Communications .....        | §107        |
| (a) General .....                         | §107        |
| (b) Exceptions.....                       | §116        |
| 5. Lawyer As Witness.....                 | §123        |
| <b>IV. Queen’s Counsel .....</b>          | <b>§126</b> |
| 1. Appointment.....                       | §126        |
| 2. Order of Precedence .....              | §133        |
| <b>V. Law Firms .....</b>                 | <b>§137</b> |
| 1. Firm Names.....                        | §137        |
| 2. Letterhead.....                        | §139        |
| 3. Marketing of Legal Services .....      | §144        |
| 4. Liability of Partners .....            | §147        |
| 5. Professional Corporations .....        | §149        |
| 6. Limited Liability Partnerships .....   | §152        |
| 7. Interjurisdictional Law Firms .....    | §155        |
| 8. Conflict of Interest Within Firm ..... | §157        |
| <b>VI. Retainer and Authority.....</b>    | <b>§160</b> |
| 1. Meaning and Effect.....                | §160        |
| 2. Nature of Retainer.....                | §163        |
| 3. Necessity of Written Retainer .....    | §168        |
| 4. Duration and Scope of Authority .....  | §171        |
| 5. Proof of Authority.....                | §182        |
| 6. Authority.....                         | §191        |
| (a) To Receive Money .....                | §191        |
| (b) To Receive Notice.....                | §201        |
| (c) To Refer .....                        | §203        |
| (d) To Employ Others .....                | §205        |
| (i) Counsel or Other Solicitors .....     | §205        |
| (ii) Sheriff .....                        | §207        |
| (e) To Make Admissions .....              | §209        |

BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (f) To Bind Client by Contract.....                    | \$213        |
| (g) To Compromise.....                                 | \$222        |
| (h) To Conduct Trial.....                              | \$224        |
| (i) To Appeal.....                                     | \$230        |
| 7. Lack of Authority.....                              | \$232        |
| (a) General.....                                       | \$232        |
| (b) Mistake.....                                       | \$235        |
| (c) Damages.....                                       | \$236        |
| (d) Fees.....  | \$237        |
| (e) Costs.....   | \$238        |
| (f) Procedure.....                                     | \$239        |
| 8. Change of Solicitor.....                            | \$241        |
| <b>VII. Relationship with Client.....</b>              | <b>\$245</b> |
| 1. Nature of Relationship.....                         | \$245        |
| 2. Duty of Confidentiality.....                        | \$265        |
| (a) Privilege.....                                     | \$265        |
| (b) Breach.....  | \$280        |
| (c) Documents.....                                     | \$282        |
| (d) Duration.....                                      | \$290        |
| (e) Exceptions.....                                    | \$291        |
| (i) Express Waiver.....                                | \$291        |
| (ii) Implied Waiver.....                               | \$293        |
| (iii) Joint Retainer.....                              | \$297        |
| (iv) Court Process.....                                | \$298        |
| A. Evidence.....                                       | \$298        |
| B. Fees, Malpractice.....                              | \$299        |
| C. Search Warrants.....                                | \$300        |
| (v) Fraudulent Conduct.....                            | \$303        |
| (vi) Joint Ownership.....                              | \$305        |
| (vii) Public Safety Exception.....                     | \$306        |
| 3. Duty to Advise Client as to Choice of Remedies..... | \$307        |
| 4. Duty to Account.....                                | \$311        |
| 5. Solicitor for More than One Party.....              | \$313        |
| (a) Rule Against Multiple Representation.....          | \$313        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Conflicting Interests .....                         | §316        |
| (i) General.....  | §316        |
| (ii) Vendor and Purchaser.....                          | §328        |
| (iii) Mortgagor and Mortgagee .....                     | §331        |
| (iv) Estates .....                                      | §332        |
| (v) Civil Litigation .....                              | §334        |
| (vi) Criminal Litigation.....                           | §348        |
| (vii) Voluntary Solicitor.....                          | §357        |
| (c) Disclosure, Consent, Independent Legal Advice ..... | §359        |
| (d) Onus .....  | §363        |
| (e) “Migrating” Solicitors .....                        | §365        |
| (f) Former Client .....                                 | §373        |
| 6. Transactions with Client.....                        | §384        |
| 7. Notice to Solicitor as Notice to Client .....        | §395        |
| 8. Withdrawal .....                                     | §402        |
| (a) Duty Not to Withdraw .....                          | §402        |
| (b) Positive Duty to Withdraw .....                     | §403        |
| (c) Permissible to Withdraw .....                       | §405        |
| (i) Loss of Confidence .....                            | §405        |
| (ii) Lack of Instructions .....                         | §406        |
| (iii) Fees.....   | §407        |
| (iv) Possible Conflict of Interest .....                | §411        |
| (d) Ethical Considerations.....                         | §413        |
| (e) Procedure .....                                     | §417        |
| (f) Duty upon Withdrawal .....                          | §422        |
| (g) Solicitor’s Lien.....                               | §423        |
| <b>VIII. Duty and Liability to Others .....</b>         | <b>§427</b> |
| 1. Duty to Court.....                                   | §427        |
| (a) Officer of Court.....                               | §427        |
| (b) Undertaking to Court .....                          | §430        |
| (c) Disclosure.....                                     | §435        |
| (i) Judicial Proceedings .....                          | §435        |
| (ii) Evidence .....                                     | §436        |
| (iii) Authorities .....                                 | §441        |

BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (iv) By crown Counsel.....                  | \$442        |
| (d) Avoidance of Delay .....                | \$444        |
| (e) Solicitor of Record .....               | \$447        |
| (f) Advocate and Witness .....              | \$449        |
| (g) Advocate and Affiant.....               | \$453        |
| (h) Contempt.....                           | \$456        |
| (i) Interviewing Witnesses .....            | \$464        |
| 2. Duty to Other Counsel.....               | \$465        |
| (a) Undertakings and Trust Conditions ..... | \$465        |
| (b) Conduct.....                            | \$471        |
| 3. Duty to Law Society.....                 | \$480        |
| 4. Duty to Other Parties.....               | \$481        |
| (a) General .....                           | \$481        |
| (b) Third Parties .....                     | \$483        |
| (c) Opposite Party .....                    | \$486        |
| (i) Duty of Care.....                       | \$486        |
| (ii) Disclosure of Authority .....          | \$490        |
| (iii) Unfair Advantage .....                | \$491        |
| (d) Exceptions.....                         | \$493        |
| (i) Unrepresented Persons .....             | \$493        |
| (ii) Officer of Court .....                 | \$497        |
| (iii) Fiduciary Relationship .....          | \$498        |
| (e) Duty of Prosecuting Counsel .....       | \$503        |
| 5. Financial Responsibilities .....         | \$507        |
| <b>IX. Agents.....</b>                      | <b>\$508</b> |
| 1. Lawyers Employing Agents .....           | \$508        |
| 2. Lawyer as Agent of Client.....           | \$511        |
| <b>X. Negligence by Lawyer.....</b>         | <b>\$515</b> |
| 1. Duty of Care .....                       | \$515        |
| (a) General.....                            | \$515        |
| (b) Standard of Care.....                   | \$525        |
| (c) Duty to Third Parties.....              | \$530        |
| 2. Application of Duty of Care .....        | \$535        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) Knowledge of Law .....                         | §535        |
| (b) Commercial and Real Estate Transactions.....   | §536        |
| (c) Settlement of Action.....                      | §541        |
| (d) Limitation Periods .....                       | §543        |
| (e) Liability of Barristers .....                  | §545        |
| 3. Investing on Client’s Behalf.....               | §547        |
| 4. Business Affairs of Client .....                | §549        |
| 5. Client’s Property .....                         | §550        |
| 6. Liability of Partners and Employees.....        | §551        |
| 7. Damages .....                                   | §554        |
| (a) Assessment.....                                | §554        |
| (b) Reasonable Foreseeability .....                | §558        |
| (c) Causation.....                                 | §560        |
| 8. Insurance.....                                  | §563        |
| <b>XI. Reimbursement or Compensation Fund.....</b> | <b>§565</b> |
| 1. Statutory Basis .....                           | §565        |
| 2. Wrongful Conversion.....                        | §568        |
| 3. Discretion .....                                | §569        |
| <b>XII. Compensation .....</b>                     | <b>§573</b> |
| 1. Setting Fees .....                              | §573        |
| (a) Common Law .....                               | §573        |
| (i) Fair and Reasonable .....                      | §573        |
| (ii) Fully Disclosed.....                          | §575        |
| (iii) More Than One Client.....                    | §577        |
| (iv) More Than One Law Firm .....                  | §579        |
| (v) Sharing Fees .....                             | §580        |
| (vi) Acting Other Than as Solicitor .....          | §581        |
| (vii) Estates.....                                 | §582        |
| (viii) Corporate Matters .....                     | §585        |
| (ix) Onus.....                                     | §589        |
| (b) Statutory Provisions .....                     | §595        |
| (i) Action For Costs .....                         | §595        |
| (ii) Interest .....                                | §597        |

BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (iii) Other Statutory Provisions.....              | \$599        |
| A. Attorney General.....                           | \$599        |
| B. Commissioners.....                              | \$600        |
| C. Fees Under Class Proceedings Legislation .....  | \$601        |
| 2. Quantum .....                                   | \$602        |
| (a) Tariff Applicable .....                        | \$602        |
| (i) General.....                                   | \$602        |
| (ii) Solicitor for Executor.....                   | \$609        |
| (b) No Tariff Applicable — Factors .....           | \$615        |
| (c) Special Agreements .....                       | \$624        |
| (i) General.....                                   | \$624        |
| (ii) Contingency Fee Agreements.....               | \$630        |
| (iii) Champertous Agreements .....                 | \$657        |
| (iv) Counsel Fee .....                             | \$659        |
| (v) Hourly Fee Agreement.....                      | \$664        |
| (vi) Lump Sum Agreement.....                       | \$670        |
| (vii) Bonus .....                                  | \$672        |
| (viii) Secret Agreements .....                     | \$673        |
| (d) Criminal Cases .....                           | \$674        |
| (e) Supreme Court of Canada.....                   | \$677        |
| (f) Solicitor as Representative or Fiduciary ..... | \$678        |
| <b>XIII. Solicitor’s Bill.....</b>                 | <b>\$680</b> |
| 1. Purpose .....                                   | \$680        |
| 2. Necessity.....                                  | \$681        |
| (a) Rules Respecting Bills .....                   | \$681        |
| (b) Taxation; Action for Costs .....               | \$683        |
| 3. Sufficiency of Form of Bill.....                | \$684        |
| 4. Interim Bill .....                              | \$686        |
| 5. Withdrawal and Amendment.....                   | \$688        |
| 6. Order for Delivery .....                        | \$692        |
| 7. Interest on Bill .....                          | \$698        |
| 8. Moderation of Bills.....                        | \$703        |
| <b>XIV. Taxation of Costs.....</b>                 | <b>\$704</b> |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 1. General .....  | §704 |
| (a) Inherent Power of Court .....                           | §704 |
| (b) Order for Delivery.....                                 | §706 |
| (c) Order for Taxation.....                                 | §708 |
| (d) Right to Taxation .....                                 | §711 |
| (i) Statutory Provision.....                                | §711 |
| (ii) No Statutory Provision.....                            | §713 |
| (iii) Other Remedies.....                                   | §714 |
| 2. Practice and Procedure .....                             | §716 |
| (a) Forum.....  | §716 |
| (b) Right to Appear.....                                    | §721 |
| (c) Application.....  | §725 |
| (i) Notice.....   | §725 |
| (ii) Time Limit for Applying.....                           | §730 |
| (d) Questions Determinable on Taxation .....                | §734 |
| 3. Evidentiary Considerations .....                         | §740 |
| (a) Nature of Evidence.....                                 | §740 |
| (b) Onus .....  | §746 |
| (c) Principal Issue.....                                    | §747 |
| 4. Discretion and Powers of Taxing Officer.....             | §748 |
| (a) Jurisdiction .....                                      | §748 |
| (i) Quantum .....   | §748 |
| (ii) Retainer.....  | §749 |
| (iii) Paid Bills.....                                       | §750 |
| (b) Lack of Jurisdiction.....                               | §751 |
| (i) Solicitor-Client Relationship.....                      | §751 |
| (ii) Interpretation of Order .....                          | §752 |
| (iii) Liability to Pay .....                                | §753 |
| (iv) Agreements .....                                       | §754 |
| (v) Interest .....  | §756 |
| (c) Factors in Exercise of Jurisdiction .....               | §757 |
| (d) Certificate of Taxation .....                           | §762 |
| 5. Solicitor-and-Client and Party-and-Party Taxations ..... | §764 |
| 6. Costs of Taxation.....                                   | §768 |
| 7. Appeals from Taxation .....                              | §773 |

BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) Time Limits .....                             | §773        |
| (b) Grounds.....                                  | §776        |
| (c) Evidence.....                                 | §779        |
| 8. Role of Judge or Court on Appeal .....         | §780        |
| <b>XV. Actions for Costs .....</b>                | <b>§786</b> |
| 1. Action Maintainable.....                       | §786        |
| 2. Action Not Maintainable .....                  | §789        |
| 3. Onus.....                                      | §793        |
| 4. Jurisdiction .....                             | §795        |
| 5. Considerations .....                           | §797        |
| <b>XVI. Solicitor's Lien for Costs .....</b>      | <b>§800</b> |
| 1. Nature of Lien.....                            | §800        |
| 2. Lien on Documents.....                         | §801        |
| (a) Nature.....                                   | §801        |
| (b) Extent.....                                   | §805        |
| (c) Retaining Lien upon Change of Solicitors..... | §819        |
| (i) Prejudice to Client.....                      | §819        |
| (ii) Discharge or Withdrawal.....                 | §825        |
| 3. Lien on Fruits of Action.....                  | §828        |
| (a) Nature.....                                   | §828        |
| (b) Discretion of Court for Charging Order .....  | §831        |
| (c) Types of Costs Protected .....                | §835        |
| (i) Solicitor-and-Client .....                    | §835        |
| (ii) "Barrister" Lien.....                        | §837        |
| (iii) Property Recovered or Preserved.....        | §839        |
| 4. Lien on Money in Court.....                    | §851        |
| (a) General.....                                  | §851        |
| (b) Enforcement.....                              | §857        |
| 5. Effect of Settlement.....                      | §858        |
| 6. Effect on Client's Right of Set-off .....      | §863        |
| 7. Priorities .....                               | §873        |
| (a) Between Solicitors.....                       | §873        |
| (b) Among Solicitors and Other Claimants .....    | §875        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 8. Charging Order in Favour of Solicitors.....           | §885        |
| 9. Trust Moneys .....                                    | §895        |
| <b>XVII. Discipline .....</b>                            | <b>§896</b> |
| 1. Power of Benchers .....                               | §896        |
| (a) Source.....  | §896        |
| (b) Purpose.....   | §900        |
| (c) crown Attorneys .....                                | §901        |
| (d) Power to Suspend.....                                | §902        |
| (e) Investigative Powers .....                           | §905        |
| (f) Power to Publish Decisions.....                      | §910        |
| 2. Jurisdiction of Court .....                           | §911        |
| (a) Foundation .....                                     | §911        |
| (b) Contempt.....  | §913        |
| 3. Conduct.....  | §914        |
| (a) Professional Misconduct.....                         | §914        |
| (i) Common Law Definition .....                          | §914        |
| (ii) Determination .....                                 | §918        |
| (iii) Examples .....                                     | §919        |
| A. Misappropriation .....                                | §919        |
| B. Breach of Rules.....                                  | §920        |
| C. Recklessness .....                                    | §923        |
| (b) Professional Misconduct and Conduct Unbecoming ..... | §924        |
| (c) Conduct Unbecoming or Deserving of Sanction .....    | §925        |
| (i) Alberta .....  | §925        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                              | §926        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                                      | §928        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                                   | §930        |
| 4. Competence .....                                      | §935        |
| (a) Definition .....                                     | §935        |
| (b) Committee.....                                       | §937        |
| (i) Investigative Power .....                            | §937        |
| (ii) Power to Suspend.....                               | §938        |
| 5. Proceedings Before Inquiry Panel.....                 | §939        |
| (a) Citation.....  | §939        |

BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (b) Quorum .....                                 | §943 |
| (c) Natural Justice .....                        | §944 |
| (i) Statutory .....                              | §944 |
| A. General .....                                 | §944 |
| B. Notice .....                                  | §945 |
| C. Witnesses .....                               | §946 |
| D. Counsel .....                                 | §948 |
| E. In Camera .....                               | §949 |
| (ii) Bias .....                                  | §950 |
| A. Multi-Role Position .....                     | §950 |
| B. Application of Rules of Natural Justice ..... | §953 |
| C. Constitution of Committee .....               | §954 |
| (iii) Delay .....                                | §960 |
| (d) Evidentiary Considerations .....             | §961 |
| (i) Compellability of Member Cited .....         | §961 |
| (ii) Onus .....                                  | §964 |
| (iii) Strict Rules Not Applicable .....          | §968 |
| (iv) Evidence From Other Proceedings .....       | §970 |
| A. Civil .....                                   | §970 |
| B. Criminal Conviction .....                     | §971 |
| C. Right Against Incrimination .....             | §972 |
| 6. Dispositions .....                            | §974 |
| (a) Statutory Provisions .....                   | §974 |
| (b) Disbarment .....                             | §975 |
| (c) Remedial Education .....                     | §976 |
| (d) Treatment for Disability or Addiction .....  | §977 |
| (e) Restrictions on Practice .....               | §978 |
| (f) Costs .....                                  | §979 |
| (g) Double Jeopardy .....                        | §980 |
| (h) Internal Appeals .....                       | §982 |
| 7. Appeals .....                                 | §984 |
| (a) Statutory .....                              | §984 |
| (i) Alberta .....                                | §984 |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                      | §985 |
| (iii) Manitoba .....                             | §987 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|                                       |              |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                | §990         |
| (b) Role of Appellate Court.....      | §993         |
| 8. Reinstatement .....                | §998         |
| (a) Power to Reinstat.....            | §998         |
| (b) Procedure .....                   | §999         |
| (c) Considerations.....               | §1003        |
| (d) Appeal of Refusal.....            | §1006        |
| <b>XVIII. Legal Aid .....</b>         | <b>§1009</b> |
| 1. Statutory Provisions .....         | §1009        |
| 2. Entitlement .....                  | §1012        |
| 3. Appeals.....                       | §1024        |
| 4. Costs .....                        | §1026        |
| 5. Privilege and Confidentiality..... | §1028        |
| 6. Counsel Fees, Taxation.....        | §1030        |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Administrative Law; Agency; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Business Corporations; Children; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act (CED); Constitutional Law; Contempt of Court; Costs; Courts; Criminal Law — Procedure; Damages; Discovery; Evidence; Execution; Executors and Administrators; Family Law — Divorce; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Income Tax; Insurance; Judgments and Orders West; Liens; Limitation of Actions; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Mental Incapacity; Negligence; Parties; Partnership; Practice; Privacy and Freedom of Information; Professions and Occupations; Public Inquiries; Sentencing; Sheriffs and Bailiffs; Torts; Trials; Trusts; Wills; Workers' Compensation

# BILLS OF EXCHANGE

prepared by  
Bradley Crawford, B.Comm., LL.B., LL.M.  
*of the Ontario Bar*  
and  
Brian C. Kelsall, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                               | §1  |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §1  |
| 2. Bills of Exchange and Negotiable Instruments . . . . .      | §3  |
| 3. Principles of Interpretation . . . . .                      | §6  |
| 4. Constitutional Jurisdiction . . . . .                       | §9  |
| 5. Applicable Common Law . . . . .                             | §12 |
| 6. Bills as Property . . . . .                                 | §15 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Formal Validity</b> . . . . .                           | §16 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §16 |
| 2. Unconditional Order or Promise . . . . .                    | §19 |
| (a) Bills . . . . .  | §19 |
| (b) Notes . . . . .  | §21 |
| (c) Promissory Notes and Conditional Sales Contracts . . . . . | §24 |
| 3. Collateral Agreements on Cheques and Drafts . . . . .       | §28 |
| 4. In Writing . . . . .  | §31 |
| 5. Made or Addressed by One Person to Another . . . . .        | §32 |
| 6. Signed by Person Giving It . . . . .                        | §35 |
| 7. On Demand . . . . .   | §44 |
| 8. Fixed or Determinable Future Time . . . . .                 | §46 |
| 9. Sum Certain in Money . . . . .                              | §51 |



BILLS OF EXCHANGE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 10. To or To Order of Specified Person . . . . .              | §57         |
| 11. To Bearer . . . . .                                       | §62         |
| 12. Filling in Blanks . . . . .                               | §64         |
| 13. Intention to Issue Bill or Note . . . . .                 | §68         |
| 14. Computation of Time . . . . .                             | §71         |
| (a) Presumption of True Date . . . . .                        | §71         |
| (b) Time of Payment . . . . .                                 | §72         |
| (c) Non-Juridical Days . . . . .                              | §74         |
| (d) Days of Grace . . . . .                                   | §78         |
| (e) Running of Time . . . . .                                 | §79         |
| 15. Consumer Bill or Note . . . . .                           | §82         |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>III. Bills and Notes as Contracts . . . . .</b>            | <b>§85</b>  |
| 1. Capacity of Parties . . . . .                              | §85         |
| 2. Consideration . . . . .                                    | §87         |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §87         |
| (b) Forbearance . . . . .                                     | §95         |
| (c) Antecedent Debt or Liability . . . . .                    | §96         |
| (d) Failure of Consideration . . . . .                        | §99         |
| (e) Illegal Consideration . . . . .                           | §100        |
| (f) Special Consideration . . . . .                           | §103        |
| (g) Accommodation Parties . . . . .                           | §104        |
| 3. Binding Effect of Signature . . . . .                      | §106        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §106        |
| (b) Authority of Agents . . . . .                             | §110        |
| (c) Signature in Representative Capacity . . . . .            | §114        |
| (d) Forgery . . . . .   | §117        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §117        |
| (ii) Preclusion of Denying Forgery . . . . .                  | §121        |
| (iii) Recovery of Payments Made on Forged Signature . . . . . | §126        |
| 4. Fictitious Payee . . . . .                                 | §128        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IV. Acceptance . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§134</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §134        |
| 2. Qualified Acceptance . . . . .                             | §139        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Presentment For Acceptance . . . . .               | §143        |
| 4. Acceptance Supra Protest . . . . .                 | §146        |
| <b>V. Negotiation . . . . .</b>                       | <b>§147</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                  | §147        |
| 2. Delivery . . . . .                                 | §150        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §150        |
| (b) Rebuttable Presumption of Delivery . . . . .      | §153        |
| (c) Irrevocable Presumption of Delivery . . . . .     | §155        |
| 3. Endorsement . . . . .                              | §156        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §156        |
| (b) Blank Endorsement . . . . .                       | §159        |
| (c) Special Endorsement . . . . .                     | §160        |
| (d) Qualified and Conditional Endorsements . . . . .  | §161        |
| (e) Restrictive Endorsement . . . . .                 | §162        |
| (f) Transfer Without Endorsement . . . . .            | §164        |
| 4. Negotiation After Maturity . . . . .               | §166        |
| 5. Bill or Note as Payment . . . . .                  | §167        |
| <b>VI. Rights and Duties of Holders . . . . .</b>     | <b>§169</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                  | §169        |
| 2. Right of Action . . . . .                          | §170        |
| 3. Holder in Due Course . . . . .                     | §171        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §171        |
| (b) Good Faith . . . . .                              | §172        |
| (c) Knowledge . . . . .                               | §173        |
| (d) Presumption of Regularity . . . . .               | §176        |
| (e) Value . . . . .                                   | §177        |
| (f) Particular Defences . . . . .                     | §178        |
| (g) Bank as Holder in Due Course . . . . .            | §182        |
| (h) Payee as Holder in Due Course . . . . .           | §184        |
| (i) Close Connection . . . . .                        | §187        |
| 4. Holder of Consumer Bill . . . . .                  | §188        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §188        |
| (b) Prior Position at Common Law . . . . .            | §190        |
| 5. Holders Other Than Holders in Due Course . . . . . | §193        |

BILLS OF EXCHANGE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 6. Rights of Holder Taking After Maturity . . . . .     | §196        |
| 7. Duties of Holder . . . . .                           | §199        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §199        |
| (b) Presentment for Payment . . . . .                   | §200        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                   | §200        |
| (ii) Place of Presentment . . . . .                     | §205        |
| (iii) Time for Presentment . . . . .                    | §206        |
| (iv) Person By and To Whom Presentment Made . . . . .   | §209        |
| (v) Delay in Presentment . . . . .                      | §210        |
| (vi) Presentment Dispensed With . . . . .               | §211        |
| <b>VII. Dishonour and Notice of Dishonour . . . . .</b> | <b>§213</b> |
| 1. Dishonour by Non-Acceptance or Non-Payment . . . . . | §213        |
| 2. Notice of Dishonour . . . . .                        | §215        |
| 3. Time of Notice . . . . .                             | §217        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §217        |
| (b) Person By and To Whom Notice Given . . . . .        | §220        |
| (c) Sufficiency of Notice . . . . .                     | §223        |
| (d) Notice Dispensed With . . . . .                     | §225        |
| (e) Benefit of Notice . . . . .                         | §226        |
| <b>VIII. Protest . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§228</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §228        |
| 2. Noting . . . . .                                     | §231        |
| 3. Time, Notice and Other Particulars . . . . .         | §232        |
| <b>IX. Liability of Parties . . . . .</b>               | <b>§234</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §234        |
| 2. Acceptor . . . . .                                   | §235        |
| 3. Drawer . . . . .                                     | §237        |
| 4. Maker of Note . . . . .                              | §239        |
| 5. Endorser of Bill . . . . .                           | §241        |
| 6. Accommodation Parties . . . . .                      | §248        |
| 7. Transferor by Delivery . . . . .                     | §251        |
| 8. Order of Liability . . . . .                         | §253        |
| 9. Amount Recoverable . . . . .                         | §254        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>X. Discharge</b> .....                           | §257 |
| 1. Payment .....                                    | §257 |
| (a) By Drawee or Acceptor .....                     | §257 |
| (b) By Drawer or Endorser .....                     | §261 |
| 2. Satisfaction .....                               | §263 |
| 3. Possession of Acceptor .....                     | §266 |
| 4. Renunciation .....                               | §267 |
| 5. Cancellation .....                               | §270 |
| 6. Material Alteration .....                        | §273 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §273 |
| (b) Apparent and Non-Apparent Alterations .....     | §280 |
| (c) Particular Material Alterations .....           | §283 |
| (i) Date .....                                      | §283 |
| (ii) Sum Payable .....                              | §284 |
| (iii) Time or Place of Payment .....                | §285 |
| (iv) Other Material Alterations .....               | §286 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XI. Lost Instruments</b> .....                   | §287 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XII. Conflict of Laws</b> .....                  | §290 |
| 1. General .....                                    | §290 |
| 2. Formal Validity .....                            | §291 |
| 3. Interpretation .....                             | §293 |
| 4. Holder's Duties .....                            | §295 |
| 5. Calculation of Amounts in Foreign Currency ..... | §296 |
| 6. Capacity of Parties .....                        | §297 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XIII. Cheques</b> .....                          | §299 |
| 1. Definitions .....                                | §299 |
| 2. Formal Requisites .....                          | §300 |
| 3. Post-Dated Cheques .....                         | §302 |
| 4. Certification .....                              | §303 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §303 |
| (b) Presented for Certification by Drawer .....     | §306 |
| (c) Presented for Certification by Holder .....     | §307 |

BILLS OF EXCHANGE

---

5. Presentment for Payment .....§311  
6. Countermand .....§313  
7. Death of Drawer .....§318  
8. Crossing .....§320

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Conflict Of Laws; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Courts; Damages; Estoppel; Fraud And Misrepresentation; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters Of Credit; Personal Property

# BOUNDARIES AND SURVEYS

prepared by  
K.L. Wood, B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Boundaries in General</b> . . . . .              | §1   |
| 1. Definition . . . . .                                | §1   |
| 2. Federal and Provincial Boundaries . . . . .         | §2   |
| (a) General . . . . .                                  | §2   |
| (b) Internal Divisions . . . . .                       | §6   |
| 3. Water Boundaries . . . . .                          | §17  |
| (a) Ownership of Bed and Shore . . . . .               | §17  |
| (i) Common Law . . . . .                               | §17  |
| (ii) Crown Ownership . . . . .                         | §22  |
| (b) Boundaries in Tidal and Non-Tidal Waters . . . . . | §29  |
| (i) General . . . . .                                  | §29  |
| (ii) Tidal Waters . . . . .                            | §39  |
| (c) Determination of Shore, Beach or Bank . . . . .    | §42  |
| (d) Shore Road Allowances and Reserves . . . . .       | §54  |
| (e) Accretion, Reliction and Erosion . . . . .         | §56  |
| 4. Change of Boundary by Adverse Possession . . . . .  | §64  |
| 5. Conventional Boundaries . . . . .                   | §70  |
| (a) Agreement and Its Effect . . . . .                 | §70  |
| (b) Estoppel . . . . .                                 | §83  |
| 6. Encroachment . . . . .                              | §88  |
| <b>II. Surveys and Plans</b> . . . . .                 | §92  |
| 1. Jurisdiction . . . . .                              | §92  |
| 2. Principles and Methods of Surveying . . . . .       | §101 |

BOUNDARIES AND SURVEYS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Particular Surveys . . . . .                           | §113        |
| (a) Mining Claims . . . . .                               | §113        |
| (b) Plans of Subdivision . . . . .                        | §116        |
| (c) Condominium Plans . . . . .                           | §118        |
| (d) Reference Plans . . . . .                             | §122        |
| (e) Other . . . . .                                       | §123        |
| 4. Aliquot Parts of Parcels . . . . .                     | §124        |
| 5. Offences . . . . .                                     | §130        |
| 6. Survey Control . . . . .                               | §132        |
| 7. Establishment of Boundaries by Survey . . . . .        | §133        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                     | §133        |
| (b) Re-survey; Altering and Amending Boundaries . . . . . | §139        |
| (c) Confirmation . . . . .                                | §155        |
| (d) Retracement of Surveyed Boundaries . . . . .          | §165        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                     | §165        |
| (ii) Lost Monuments . . . . .                             | §170        |
| (e) Conflicting and Erroneous Surveys . . . . .           | §180        |
| <b>III. Interpretation of Descriptions . . . . .</b>      | <b>§192</b> |
| 1. General Rules of Construction . . . . .                | §192        |
| 2. Extrinsic Evidence . . . . .                           | §204        |
| 3. Survey Records . . . . .                               | §208        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                     | §208        |
| (b) Records as Evidence . . . . .                         | §212        |
| 4. Area . . . . .   | §218        |
| 5. Reference to Plan . . . . .                            | §222        |
| <b>IV. Fences and Trees . . . . .</b>                     | <b>§234</b> |
| 1. Fences . . . . .                                       | §234        |
| 2. Trees . . . . .  | §259        |
| <b>V. Walls and Party Walls . . . . .</b>                 | <b>§263</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                      | §263        |
| 2. Agreement for Party Wall . . . . .                     | §271        |
| 3. Encroachment by Party Wall . . . . .                   | §276        |
| 4. Damage to Party Wall . . . . .                         | §279        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

5. Wall as Boundary .....\$280

**VI. Right of Lateral Support** .....\$281

    1. Easement of Support .....\$281

    2. Removal of Lateral Support .....\$282

**Index**

*Related titles:* Deeds and Documents; Easements; Mines and Minerals; Nuisance; Professions and Occupations; Real Property; Sale of Land; Trespass; Waters and Watercourses.



# BUILDERS' LIENS

prepared by  
L. Brian Swartz, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .               | §1   |
| <b>II. Lien Claimants</b> . . . . .            | §8   |
| 1. General . . . . .                           | §8   |
| 2. Contractor . . . . .                        | §17  |
| 3. Subcontractor . . . . .                     | §28  |
| 4. Materialman . . . . .                       | §39  |
| 5. Wage Earner . . . . .                       | §58  |
| 6. Lessors of Equipment . . . . .              | §65  |
| 7. Architects and Engineers . . . . .          | §68  |
| 8. Other Persons . . . . .                     | §73  |
| <b>III. Lienable Interests</b> . . . . .       | §80  |
| 1. General . . . . .                           | §80  |
| 2. Estate or Interest of Owner . . . . .       | §87  |
| 3. Leaseholds . . . . .                        | §102 |
| 4. Agreements of Purchase and Sale . . . . .   | §111 |
| (a) Purchaser . . . . .                        | §111 |
| (b) Vendor . . . . .                           | §114 |
| 5. Minerals . . . . .                          | §117 |
| 6. Husband and Wife . . . . .                  | §121 |
| 7. Highways and Irrigation Districts . . . . . | §124 |

BUILDERS' LIENS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 8. Crown Property . . . . .                       | §128        |
| 9. Liens on Separate Properties . . . . .         | §139        |
| 10. Money Paid into Court . . . . .               | §146        |
| 11. Insurance Money . . . . .                     | §147        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IV. Registration of Lien . . . . .</b>         | <b>§149</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                              | §149        |
| 2. Place of Registration . . . . .                | §156        |
| 3. Form of Claim . . . . .                        | §161        |
| 4. Affidavit Verifying Claim . . . . .            | §171        |
| 5. Crown Property . . . . .                       | §176        |
| 6. Time for Registration . . . . .                | §179        |
| (a) By Contractor or Subcontractor . . . . .      | §179        |
| (b) By Materialman . . . . .                      | §196        |
| (c) By Wage Earner . . . . .                      | §207        |
| (d) Lien for Services . . . . .                   | §211        |
| (e) Computation of Time for Filing . . . . .      | §217        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>V. Holdback Fund . . . . .</b>                 | <b>§218</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                              | §218        |
| 2. Calculation . . . . .                          | §233        |
| 3. Payments by Owner . . . . .                    | §239        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VI. Enforcement of Lien . . . . .</b>          | <b>§257</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                              | §257        |
| 2. Jurisdiction of Court . . . . .                | §262        |
| (a) General . . . . .                             | §262        |
| (b) Alberta, Manitoba and Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §266        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                    | §267        |
| (d) Stay of Proceedings and Arbitration . . . . . | §271        |
| 3. Pleadings . . . . .                            | §272        |
| 4. Practice and Procedure . . . . .               | §280        |
| 5. Parties to the Action . . . . .                | §303        |
| (a) General . . . . .                             | §303        |
| (b) Adding of Parties . . . . .                   | §318        |
| (c) Third Parties . . . . .                       | §325        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (d) Consolidation of Actions . . . . .                  | §328        |
| 6. Damages . . . . .                                    | §334        |
| 7. Appeals . . . . .                                    | §344        |
| 8. Sale and Distribution . . . . .                      | §352        |
| 9. Interest . . . . .                                   | §363        |
| 10. Costs . . . . .                                     | §369        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Loss or Discharge of Lien . . . . .</b>         | <b>§385</b> |
| 1. Failure to Register . . . . .                        | §385        |
| 2. Failure to Commence or Proceed with Action . . . . . | §386        |
| 3. Waiver, Estoppel and Merger . . . . .                | §401        |
| 4. Discharge of Lien . . . . .                          | §411        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VIII. Mortgagees . . . . .</b>                       | <b>§435</b> |
| 1. Mortgagee as Owner . . . . .                         | §435        |
| 2. Prior Mortgagees . . . . .                           | §438        |
| 3. Subsequent Mortgagees . . . . .                      | §451        |
| 4. Foreclosure or Sale by Mortgagee . . . . .           | §456        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Priorities . . . . .</b>                         | <b>§463</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §463        |
| 2. Taxes . . . . .                                      | §470        |
| 3. Claim for Wages . . . . .                            | §473        |
| 4. Between Lienholders . . . . .                        | §479        |
| 5. Between Lienholder and Vendor . . . . .              | §487        |
| 6. Between Lienholder and Purchaser . . . . .           | §491        |
| 7. Bankruptcy . . . . .                                 | §493        |
| 8. Winding-Up . . . . .                                 | §496        |
| 9. Other Cases . . . . .                                | §497        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>X. Trust Fund . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§505</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §505        |
| 2. Moneys Subject to the Trust . . . . .                | §510        |
| 3. Beneficiaries . . . . .                              | §531        |
| 4. Position of Banks . . . . .                          | §536        |
| 5. Practice and Procedure . . . . .                     | §539        |

BUILDERS' LIENS

---

6. Breach of Trust .....\$544  
7. Distribution of Trust Fund .....\$557

**Index**

*Related titles:* Building Contracts; Contracts; Mines and Minerals; Oil and Gas; Real Property.

# BUILDING CONTRACTS

prepared by  
Immanuel Goldsmith, Q.C., LL.B. (London)  
*of the Ontario Bar and of the Middle Temple*

updated by  
Paul H. Starkman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. The Contract</b> .....                 | §1  |
| 1. General .....                             | §1  |
| (a) Definition .....                         | §1  |
| (b) General Law of Contract Applicable ..... | §2  |
| (c) Statute of Frauds .....                  | §10 |
| (d) Types of Building Contracts .....        | §11 |
| 2. Parties .....                             | §15 |
| (a) General .....                            | §15 |
| (b) Crown .....                              | §16 |
| (c) Municipal Corporations .....             | §19 |
| (d) First Nations .....                      | §22 |
| (e) Incorporated Entities .....              | §23 |
| (f) Unincorporated Entities .....            | §26 |
| (g) Partnerships .....                       | §27 |
| (h) Agents .....                             | §28 |
| (i) Infants .....                            | §30 |
| 3. Interpretation .....                      | §31 |
| (a) General .....                            | §31 |
| (b) Repugnant Provisions .....               | §33 |
| (c) Implied Terms .....                      | §35 |

BUILDING CONTRACTS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (i) General . . . . .   | §35         |
| (ii) Reasonableness . . . . .                                 | §36         |
| (iii) Workmanlike Performance . . . . .                       | §39         |
| (iv) Warranty of Fitness . . . . .                            | §40         |
| (d) Quantities . . . . .                                      | §42         |
| 4. Bids and Tenders . . . . .                                 | §44         |
| 5. Specifications . . . . .                                   | §77         |
| 6. Ownership of Material . . . . .                            | §82         |
| 7. Conditional Contract . . . . .                             | §86         |
| 8. Novation . . . . .   | §88         |
| 9. Rescission . . . . .                                       | §89         |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §89         |
| (b) Fraudulent Misrepresentation . . . . .                    | §92         |
| (c) Negligent Misrepresentation . . . . .                     | §94         |
| (d) Innocent Misrepresentation . . . . .                      | §95         |
| 10. Rectification . . . . .                                   | §97         |
| 11. Quantum Meruit . . . . .                                  | §99         |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §99         |
| (b) No Contractual Provision as to Payment . . . . .          | §102        |
| (c) Abandonment or Wrongful Termination of Contract . . . . . | §104        |
| (i) By Owner . . . . .  | §104        |
| (ii) By Contractor . . . . .                                  | §106        |
| (d) Changes in Nature of Work . . . . .                       | §108        |
| (e) Measure of Payment . . . . .                              | §111        |
| <b>II. Assignment . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§113</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §113        |
| 2. Death of Contractor . . . . .                              | §115        |
| 3. Bankruptcy or Receivership of Contractor . . . . .         | §116        |
| 4. Equitable Assignment . . . . .                             | §119        |
| (a) Generally . . . . .                                       | §119        |
| (b) Assignment of Contract Moneys . . . . .                   | §120        |
| <b>III. Architects and Engineers . . . . .</b>                | <b>§124</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §124        |
| 2. Supervision of Work . . . . .                              | §133        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 3. Certificates . . . . .                                  | §141        |
| 4. Right to Remuneration . . . . .                         | §153        |
| 5. Liability to Owner . . . . .                            | §156        |
| 6. Liability to Third Parties . . . . .                    | §168        |
| <b>IV. Subcontractors and Material Suppliers . . . . .</b> | <b>§171</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §171        |
| 2. Sub-Subcontractors . . . . .                            | §177        |
| 3. Suppliers and Materialmen . . . . .                     | §178        |
| 4. Subcontractor's Relationship with Contractor . . . . .  | §182        |
| 5. Subcontractor's Relationship with Owner . . . . .       | §191        |
| 6. Liability to Third Parties . . . . .                    | §195        |
| <b>V. Completion . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§198</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §198        |
| 2. Substantial Performance . . . . .                       | §209        |
| 3. Partial Performance . . . . .                           | §211        |
| 4. Time for Completion . . . . .                           | §213        |
| <b>VI. Failure to Complete . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§221</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §221        |
| 2. Impossibility and Frustration . . . . .                 | §223        |
| 3. Illegality . . . . .                                    | §229        |
| <b>VII. Payment . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§235</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §235        |
| 2. Conditions Precedent to Payment . . . . .               | §237        |
| 3. Method of Payment . . . . .                             | §242        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §242        |
| (b) Lump Sum Contracts . . . . .                           | §243        |
| (c) Unit Price Contracts . . . . .                         | §245        |
| (d) Cost-Plus Contracts . . . . .                          | §247        |
| (e) Guaranteed Upset Price Contracts . . . . .             | §249        |
| 4. Progress Payments . . . . .                             | §250        |
| 5. Final Payment . . . . .                                 | §254        |
| 6. Holdback . . . . .                                      | §256        |

BUILDING CONTRACTS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>VIII. Extras</b> .....                                  | §258 |
| 1. General .....   | §258 |
| 2. Orders by Owner .....                                   | §270 |
| 3. Certificate for Extras .....                            | §277 |
| 4. Owner's Acquiescence .....                              | §282 |
| <b>IX. Bonds</b> .....                                     | §284 |
| 1. General .....   | §284 |
| 2. Bid Bonds .....   | §295 |
| 3. Performance Bonds .....                                 | §300 |
| 4. Labour and Material Payment Bonds .....                 | §307 |
| <b>X. Arbitration</b> .....                                | §310 |
| 1. General .....   | §310 |
| 2. Agreement to Arbitrate .....                            | §313 |
| 3. Arbitration Procedure .....                             | §314 |
| <b>XI. Liability of Owner to Third Parties</b> .....       | §316 |
| 1. General .....   | §316 |
| 2. Indemnity .....   | §321 |
| <b>XII. Liability of Contractor to Third Parties</b> ..... | §322 |
| <b>XIII. Damages for Breach of Contract</b> .....          | §324 |
| 1. General .....   | §324 |
| (a) Damages for Breach by Owner .....                      | §324 |
| (b) Damages for Breach by Contractor .....                 | §326 |
| 2. Damages for Delay .....                                 | §334 |
| (a) Delay by Owner .....                                   | §334 |
| (b) Delay by Contractor .....                              | §335 |
| 3. Damages for Defective Workmanship .....                 | §342 |
| 4. Waiver .....  | §351 |
| 5. Lost Profits as Measurement of Damages .....            | §354 |
| 6. Clauses Excluding or Limiting Damages .....             | §358 |
| 7. Penalty Clauses and Liquidated Damage Clauses .....     | §362 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Arbitration; Builders' Liens Western; Condominiums; Contracts; Deeds and Documents; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Mortgages; Real Property Ontario; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land.

# BURIAL AND CREMATION

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Death and Dead Bodies</b> . . . . .           | §1  |
| 1. Presumption of Death from Long Absence . . . . . | §1  |
| 2. Registration . . . . .                           | §2  |
| (a) Still-births . . . . .                          | §2  |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                               | §2  |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                     | §3  |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                            | §4  |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .                         | §5  |
| (b) Deaths . . . . .                                | §6  |
| (i) Place of Registration . . . . .                 | §6  |
| (ii) Person Responsible for Registration . . . . .  | §10 |
| (iii) Time for Registration . . . . .               | §11 |
| (iv) Death by Violence or Misadventure . . . . .    | §12 |
| 3. Unclaimed Bodies . . . . .                       | §16 |
| (a) Disposition . . . . .                           | §16 |
| (b) Liability for Burial Costs . . . . .            | §25 |
| 4. Transportation of Corpse . . . . .               | §30 |
| 5. Use of Dead Bodies . . . . .                     | §35 |
| (a) General . . . . .                               | §35 |
| (b) Use With Consent . . . . .                      | §37 |
| (c) Unclaimed Bodies . . . . .                      | §48 |
| 6. Offences Respecting Dead Bodies . . . . .        | §53 |
| (a) Under Criminal Code . . . . .                   | §53 |
| (b) Quasi-criminal Offences . . . . .               | §54 |

BURIAL AND CREMATION

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 7. Civil Actions . . . . .   | §59        |
| 8. Burials . . . . .   | §64        |
| (a) Right to Possession of Body for Burial . . . . .                             | §64        |
| (b) Duty to Bury . . . . .   | §69        |
| (c) Style of Burial . . . . .  | §76        |
| 9. Cremation . . . . .   | §82        |
| 10. Disinterment . . . . .   | §91        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>II. Cemeteries, Crematoria and Funeral Establishments . . . . .</b>           | <b>§98</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §98        |
| 2. Establishment . . . . .   | §101       |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §101       |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .   | §108       |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .   | §113       |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §116       |
| 3. Management and Operation . . . . .  | §119       |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §119       |
| (b) Maintenance . . . . .  | §136       |
| (c) Charges and Fees . . . . .   | §141       |
| (d) Records . . . . .  | §143       |
| (e) Provision of Graves for Strangers, Indigents and Un-claimed Bodies . . . . . | §144       |
| 4. Licensing . . . . .   | §147       |
| 5. Taxation . . . . .  | §151       |
| 6. Seizure . . . . .   | §155       |
| 7. Sale and Ownership of Burial Plots . . . . .                                  | §157       |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §157       |
| (b) Land Titles Registration . . . . .   | §168       |
| (c) Right of Access . . . . .  | §169       |
| (d) Eligibility as Shareholder of Cemetery Company . . . . .                     | §174       |
| 8. Grant of Right to Burial . . . . .  | §176       |
| 9. Perpetual or Endowment Care Funds . . . . .                                   | §178       |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §178       |
| (b) Investment . . . . .   | §182       |
| (c) Passing of Accounts . . . . .  | §183       |
| (d) Bequests for Perpetual Care . . . . .  | §189       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(e) Disposition of Perpetual Care Funds .....\$192  
(f) Taking Back Plots .....\$195  
10. Pre-Need Contracts .....\$198  
11. Disposition of Cemetery Lands and Closing of Cemeteries . . . .  
.....\$211  
(a) Alberta .....\$211  
(b) British Columbia .....\$217  
(c) Manitoba .....\$219  
(d) Saskatchewan .....\$220  
12. Regulations .....\$225  
13. Native Burial Grounds .....\$226

**Index**

*Related titles:* Absentees; Coroners And Medical Examiners; Devolution Of Estates; Executors And Administrators; Hospitals; Municipal And School Taxation; Perpetuities And Accumulations; Professions And Occupations; Religious Institutions; Restitution; Trespass; Trusts; Vital Statistics; Wills

# BUSINESS CORPORATIONS

prepared by  
Rick Levinson, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and New York bars*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .   | §1  |
| 1. Scope of Title . . . . .  | §1  |
| 2. Application of Federal Act . . . . .  | §2  |
| 3. Purpose of Federal Act . . . . .  | §6  |
| 4. Not-for-profit Federal Corporations . . . . .                               | §7  |
| 5. Application of Alberta Act . . . . .  | §8  |
| 6. Application of Manitoba Act . . . . .                                       | §9  |
| 7. Objects and Powers of Existing Corporations under Manitoba<br>Act . . . . . | §14 |
| 8. Application of Saskatchewan Act . . . . .                                   | §16 |
| 9. Relationship of Corporations . . . . .                                      | §19 |
| 10. Distributing Corporations . . . . .  | §23 |
| 11. Recognition of Corporations in British Columbia . . . . .                  | §25 |
| 12. Special Act Corporations in British Columbia . . . . .                     | §26 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Corporate Personality</b> . . . . .                                     | §27 |
| 1. Incorporation . . . . .   | §27 |
| (a) Advantages . . . . .   | §27 |
| (b) Disadvantages . . . . .  | §31 |
| 2. Federal . . . . .   | §32 |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .   | §33 |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .  | §34 |

BUSINESS CORPORATIONS

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .   | §35        |
| 6. Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §36        |
| 7. One-person Corporations . . . . .                                      | §37        |
| 8. Professional Corporations . . . . .                                    | §38        |
| 9. Corporation as Legal Entity: Corporate Veil . . . . .                  | §40        |
| 10. Disregard of Corporate Personality: Piercing Corporate Veil . . . . . | §44        |
| 11. Articles of Incorporation . . . . .                                   | §55        |
| (a) Federal . . . . .   | §55        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .   | §56        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .  | §57        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .  | §58        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §59        |
| 12. Name of Corporation . . . . .   | §60        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .  | §60        |
| (b) Federal . . . . .   | §70        |
| (c) Alberta . . . . .   | §71        |
| (d) British Columbia . . . . .  | §72        |
| (e) Manitoba . . . . .  | §73        |
| (f) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §74        |
| 13. Unlimited Liability Corporations . . . . .                            | §75        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .   | §75        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .  | §76        |
| 14. Pre-incorporation Contracts . . . . .                                 | §77        |
| 15. Residence, Domicile and Nationality . . . . .                         | §87        |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>III. Powers and Capacities . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§93</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .   | §93        |
| 2. Rule in Foss v. Harbottle . . . . .                                    | §102       |
| 3. Criminal Proceedings Against Corporations . . . . .                    | §111       |
| 4. Representation in Legal Proceedings . . . . .                          | §123       |
| 5. Legislatively Prescribed Capacities and Powers . . . . .               | §130       |
| 6. Indoor Management Rule . . . . .                                       | §134       |
| 7. Registered Office . . . . .  | §136       |
| 8. Access to Corporate Records . . . . .                                  | §137       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>IV. Corporate Finance</b> .....  | §138 |
| 1. Common Law .....   | §138 |
| 2. Shares .....   | §164 |
| 3. Stated Capital Account .....   | §165 |
| 4. Shares in Series .....   | §166 |
| 5. Pre-emptive Right .....  | §167 |
| 6. Options and Rights .....   | §168 |
| 7. Corporation Holding its own Shares .....                                   | §170 |
| 8. Conversion, Exchange or Acquisition of Shares in British<br>Columbia ..... | §171 |
| 9. Donated Shares .....   | §172 |
| 10. Other Reduction of Stated Capital .....                                   | §173 |
| 11. Adjustment of Stated Capital Account .....                                | §174 |
| 12. Enforcement of Contract to Buy Shares .....                               | §175 |
| 13. Commission for Sale of Shares .....                                       | §176 |
| 14. Dividends .....   | §177 |
| (a) Common Law .....  | §177 |
| (b) Legislation .....   | §197 |
| (i) Payment .....   | §197 |
| (ii) Form of Dividend .....   | §198 |
| (iii) Shareholder Immunity .....  | §199 |
| (iv) Sale of Constrained Shares by Federal Corporation . . .<br>.....         | §200 |
| (v) Debentures .....  | §201 |
| (vi) Mortgages .....  | §208 |
| (vii) Floating Charges .....  | §213 |
| <b>V. Security Certificates, Registers and Transfers</b> .....                | §223 |
| 1. Securities Transfer Acts .....   | §223 |
| 2. Federal and Manitoba Acts .....  | §224 |
| 3. Common Law .....   | §225 |
| 4. General Legislative Provisions .....                                       | §240 |
| (a) General .....   | §240 |
| (b) Securities Records .....  | §242 |
| (c) Dealings with Registered Holder .....                                     | §243 |
| (d) Trust Indentures .....  | §247 |

BUSINESS CORPORATIONS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Definition . . . . .                             | §247        |
| (ii) Evidence of Compliance . . . . .                | §254        |
| (iii) Notice of Default . . . . .                    | §255        |
| (iv) Duty of Care . . . . .                          | §256        |
| (v) Reliance on Statements . . . . .                 | §257        |
| <b>VI. Receivers and Receiver-managers . . . . .</b> | <b>§258</b> |
| 1. Common Law . . . . .                              | §258        |
| 2. Functions of Receiver . . . . .                   | §274        |
| 3. Functions of Receiver-manager . . . . .           | §275        |
| 4. Directors' Powers Cease . . . . .                 | §276        |
| 5. Duty to Act . . . . .                             | §277        |
| 6. Duty under Instrument . . . . .                   | §278        |
| 7. Duty of Care . . . . .                            | §279        |
| 8. Directions Given by Court . . . . .               | §283        |
| 9. Duties of Receiver and Receiver-manager . . . . . | §288        |
| <b>VII. Directors and Officers . . . . .</b>         | <b>§297</b> |
| 1. Duty to Manage or Supervise Management . . . . .  | §297        |
| 2. Number of Directors . . . . .                     | §298        |
| 3. By-laws . . . . .                                 | §302        |
| 4. Organization Meeting . . . . .                    | §306        |
| 5. Qualifications of Directors . . . . .             | §307        |
| (a) Federal . . . . .                                | §307        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .                                | §308        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                       | §309        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .                               | §310        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                           | §311        |
| 6. Liability of Directors and Others . . . . .       | §312        |
| (a) Federal . . . . .                                | §312        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .                                | §315        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                       | §316        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .                               | §318        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                           | §319        |
| 7. Liability of Directors for Wages . . . . .        | §320        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .                             | §320        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Federal . . . . .   | §326        |
| (c) Alberta . . . . .   | §329        |
| (d) British Columbia . . . . .  | §330        |
| (e) Manitoba . . . . .  | §331        |
| (f) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §332        |
| 8. Disclosure of Interest of Directors and Officers . . . . .                   | §333        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .  | §333        |
| (b) Federal . . . . .   | §357        |
| (c) Alberta . . . . .   | §358        |
| (d) British Columbia . . . . .  | §363        |
| (e) Manitoba and Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §375        |
| 9. Officers . . . . .   | §382        |
| 10. Duty of Care of Directors and Officers . . . . .                            | §387        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .  | §387        |
| (b) Federal . . . . .   | §400        |
| (c) Criminal Offences . . . . .   | §401        |
| (d) Alberta . . . . .   | §404        |
| (e) British Columbia . . . . .  | §405        |
| (f) Manitoba . . . . .  | §406        |
| (g) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §410        |
| 11. Dissent by Director under Federal, Manitoba and Saskatchewan Acts . . . . . | §414        |
| 12. Indemnification by Corporation . . . . .                                    | §418        |
| 13. Remuneration of Directors . . . . .   | §419        |
| 14. Remuneration of Directors at Common Law . . . . .                           | §420        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VIII. Insider Trading . . . . .</b>  | <b>§423</b> |
| 1. Common Law . . . . .   | §423        |
| 2. Federal . . . . .  | §425        |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .  | §428        |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .   | §429        |
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .   | §430        |
| 6. Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §431        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Shareholders Meetings . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§432</b> |
| 1. Common Law . . . . .   | §432        |

BUSINESS CORPORATIONS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Federal . . . . .                                | §450        |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .                                | §451        |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .                       | §452        |
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .                               | §453        |
| 6. Saskatchewan . . . . .                           | §454        |
| <b>X. Proxies . . . . .</b>                         | <b>§455</b> |
| 1. Common Law . . . . .                             | §455        |
| 2. Federal . . . . .                                | §462        |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .                                | §463        |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .                       | §464        |
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .                               | §465        |
| 6. Saskatchewan . . . . .                           | §466        |
| <b>XI. Financial Disclosure . . . . .</b>           | <b>§467</b> |
| 1. Common Law . . . . .                             | §467        |
| 2. Federal . . . . .                                | §468        |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .                                | §469        |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .                       | §470        |
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .                               | §471        |
| 6. Saskatchewan . . . . .                           | §472        |
| <b>XII. Fundamental Changes . . . . .</b>           | <b>§474</b> |
| 1. Common Law . . . . .                             | §474        |
| 2. Federal . . . . .                                | §492        |
| (a) Amendment of Articles . . . . .                 | §492        |
| (b) Amalgamation . . . . .                          | §494        |
| (c) Continuance . . . . .                           | §495        |
| (d) Borrowing Powers . . . . .                      | §497        |
| (e) Shareholder's Right to Dissent . . . . .        | §498        |
| (f) Reorganizations and Arrangements . . . . .      | §502        |
| (g) Going-private Transactions . . . . .            | §504        |
| (h) Squeeze-out Transactions . . . . .              | §505        |
| (i) Compulsory and Compelled Acquisitions . . . . . | §506        |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .                                | §507        |
| (a) Amendment of Articles . . . . .                 | §507        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (b) Amalgamation . . . . .  | §508 |
| (c) Extraordinary Sale, Lease or Exchange . . . . .                 | §509 |
| (d) Shareholder's Right to Dissent . . . . .                        | §510 |
| (e) Articles of Reorganization Resulting from Court Order . . . . . | §511 |
| (f) Take-over Bids . . . . .  | §512 |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .                                       | §513 |
| (a) Amendment of Articles . . . . .                                 | §513 |
| (b) Conversion of Special Act Corporations . . . . .                | §515 |
| (c) Amalgamation . . . . .  | §516 |
| (d) Amalgamations into Foreign Jurisdictions . . . . .              | §517 |
| (e) Arrangements . . . . .  | §518 |
| (f) Compulsory Acquisitions . . . . .                               | §519 |
| (g) Disposal of Undertaking . . . . .                               | §520 |
| (h) Transfer of Incorporation . . . . .                             | §521 |
| (i) Continuation . . . . .  | §522 |
| (j) Application for Continuation out of British Columbia . . . . .  | §523 |
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .   | §524 |
| (a) Amendment of Articles . . . . .                                 | §524 |
| (b) Amalgamation . . . . .  | §525 |
| (c) Continuance in Manitoba . . . . .                               | §526 |
| (d) Continuance Outside Manitoba . . . . .                          | §527 |
| (e) Borrowing Powers . . . . .                                      | §528 |
| (f) Shareholder's Right to Dissent . . . . .                        | §529 |
| (g) Arrangement . . . . .   | §530 |
| (h) Registration of Extra-provincial Corporations . . . . .         | §531 |
| 6. Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §532 |
| (a) Amendment of Articles . . . . .                                 | §532 |
| (b) Amalgamation . . . . .  | §533 |
| (c) Continuance in Saskatchewan . . . . .                           | §534 |
| (d) Continuance Outside Saskatchewan . . . . .                      | §535 |
| (e) Borrowing Powers . . . . .                                      | §536 |
| (f) Shareholder's Right to Dissent . . . . .                        | §537 |
| (g) Reorganization . . . . .  | §538 |
| (h) Arrangement . . . . .   | §539 |

BUSINESS CORPORATIONS

---

(i) Take-over Bids and Dissenting Offerees . . . . . §540

**XIII. Liquidation and dissolution . . . . . §541**

1. Common Law . . . . . §541

2. Winding-up and Restructuring Act . . . . . §567

3. Federal Corporations Act . . . . . §597

    (a) Bankruptcy or Insolvency . . . . . §597

    (b) Revival . . . . . §598

    (c) Dissolution . . . . . §599

    (d) Appointment of Liquidator . . . . . §602

4. Alberta . . . . . §603

    (a) Bankruptcy and Insolvency . . . . . §603

    (b) Revival . . . . . §604

    (c) Dissolution by Directors or Shareholders . . . . . §605

    (d) Appointment of Liquidator . . . . . §608

5. British Columbia . . . . . §609

    (a) Bankruptcy and Insolvency . . . . . §609

    (b) Voluntary Dissolution without Liquidation . . . . . §610

    (c) Voluntary Liquidation . . . . . §611

    (d) Liquidators . . . . . §612

    (e) Corporate Status before Dissolution . . . . . §613

    (f) Proceedings for Dissolution . . . . . §614

    (g) Restoration . . . . . §619

6. Manitoba . . . . . §620

    (a) Revival . . . . . §620

    (b) Dissolution . . . . . §622

    (c) Appointment of Liquidator . . . . . §625

    (d) Continuing Liability . . . . . §626

7. Saskatchewan . . . . . §628

    (a) Bankruptcy and Insolvency . . . . . §628

    (b) Revival . . . . . §629

    (c) Dissolution . . . . . §630

    (d) Appointment of Liquidator . . . . . §635

    (e) Continuing Liability . . . . . §636

**XIV. Investigation . . . . . §638**

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Common law . . . . .  | §638        |
| 2. Federal . . . . .   | §645        |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .   | §647        |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .  | §649        |
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .  | §651        |
| 6. Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §653        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>XV. Apportionment of Award of Damages under Federal Act . . .</b>                           | <b>§655</b> |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>XVI. Remedies, Offences and Penalties . . . . .</b>   | <b>§656</b> |
| 1. Oppression Remedy at Common Law . . . . .   | §656        |
| 2. Personal Actions Distinguished from Oppression Remedies<br>and Derivative Actions . . . . . | §687        |
| 3. Federal . . . . .   | §691        |
| (a) Derivative Actions . . . . .   | §691        |
| (b) Oppression Remedy . . . . .  | §694        |
| (c) Evidence of Shareholder Approval . . . . .   | §700        |
| (d) No Security for Costs . . . . .  | §702        |
| (e) Application to Court to Rectify Records . . . . .  | §704        |
| (f) Corrections at Request of Director . . . . .   | §706        |
| (g) Corrections at the Request of the Corporation . . . . .                                    | §707        |
| (h) Cancellation of Articles by Director . . . . .   | §708        |
| (i) Notice of Refusal by Director . . . . .  | §709        |
| (j) Appeal from Director's Decision . . . . .  | §710        |
| (k) Summary Application to Court . . . . .   | §712        |
| (l) Appeal of Final Order . . . . .  | §713        |
| (m) Appeal with Leave . . . . .  | §714        |
| (n) Offences with Respect to Reports . . . . .   | §715        |
| (o) Offences and Punishment . . . . .  | §716        |
| 4. Alberta . . . . .   | §718        |
| (a) Derivative Actions . . . . .   | §718        |
| (b) Powers of the Court . . . . .  | §720        |
| (c) Oppression Remedy . . . . .  | §721        |
| (d) Court order to Rectify Records . . . . .   | §732        |
| (e) Court Order for Directions . . . . .   | §733        |
| (f) Refusal by Registrar to File . . . . .   | §734        |

BUSINESS CORPORATIONS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (g) Appeal from Decision of Registrar or Alberta Securities Commission . . . . . | §735 |
| (h) Compliance or Restraining Order . . . . .                                    | §737 |
| (i) Summary Application to Court . . . . .                                       | §738 |
| (j) Appeals from Court Orders . . . . .  | §739 |
| (k) Offences Relating to Reports, Returns, etc. . . . .                          | §740 |
| (l) General Offence . . . . .  | §741 |
| (m) Order to Comply . . . . .  | §742 |
| (n) Security for Costs . . . . .   | §743 |
| 5. British Columbia . . . . .  | §744 |
| (a) Derivative Actions . . . . .   | §744 |
| (b) Powers of Court in Relation to Derivative Actions . . . . .                  | §745 |
| (c) Relief in Legal Proceedings . . . . .  | §749 |
| (d) Applications to Court under the Act . . . . .                                | §750 |
| (e) Court may order Security for Costs . . . . .                                 | §751 |
| (f) Dissent Proceedings . . . . .  | §753 |
| (g) Waiver of Right to Dissent . . . . .   | §755 |
| (h) Notice of Resolution . . . . .   | §758 |
| (i) Notice of Court Orders . . . . .   | §762 |
| (j) Notice of Dissent . . . . .  | §763 |
| (k) Notice of Intention to Proceed . . . . .                                     | §764 |
| (l) Oppression Remedy . . . . .  | §765 |
| (m) Compliance or Restraining Orders . . . . .                                   | §772 |
| (n) Remedying Corporate Mistakes . . . . .                                       | §773 |
| (o) Applications to Court to Correct Records . . . . .                           | §777 |
| (p) Enforcement of Duty to File Records . . . . .                                | §780 |
| (q) Offences . . . . .   | §783 |
| (r) Misleading Statements an Offence . . . . .                                   | §793 |
| (s) Penalties . . . . .  | §796 |
| (t) Remedies Preserved . . . . .   | §797 |
| (u) Limitation Period . . . . .  | §798 |
| 6. Manitoba and Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §799 |
| (a) Derivative Actions . . . . .   | §799 |
| (b) Oppression Remedy . . . . .  | §804 |
| (c) Duty of Directors . . . . .  | §805 |
| (d) Evidence of Shareholder Approval not Decisive . . . . .                      | §809 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(e) Court Approval to Discontinue . . . . . §810  
(f) No Security for Costs . . . . . §811  
(g) Interim Costs . . . . . §812  
(h) Application to Court to Rectify Records . . . . . §813  
(i) Corrections by the Director under Manitoba Act . . . . . §816  
(j) Cancellation of a Document by Director under Manitoba Act . . . . . §818  
(k) Application for Directions . . . . . §819  
(l) Notice of Refusal by Director . . . . . §820  
(m) Appeal from Director's Decision . . . . . §821  
(n) Restraining or Compliance Order . . . . . §822  
(o) Summary Application to Court . . . . . §823  
(p) Offences under Manitoba Act . . . . . §824  
(q) Time Limited for Proceedings . . . . . §829  
(r) Appeals under Saskatchewan Act . . . . . §830  
(s) Disabilities and Penalties under Saskatchewan Act . . . . . §831

**XVII. General Administrative Matters . . . . . §835**

**XVIII. Extra-provincial Corporations . . . . . §838**

1. Registration, Rights and Powers . . . . . §838  
2. Continuance . . . . . §846  
    (a) Import . . . . . §846  
    (b) Export . . . . . §849  
3. Service . . . . . §851  
4. Information . . . . . §853

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Associations and Not-for-Profit Organizations; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Condominiums; Contracts; Cooperatives; Costs; Discovery; Employment Law; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Income Tax; Municipal Corporations; Parties; Partnership; Practice; Securities and Stock Exchanges; Wrongful Dismissal.

# CARRIERS

prepared by  
John P. Sojak, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                     | §1   |
| 1. Common Carriers .....                    | §1   |
| 2. Private Carriers .....                   | §14  |
| 3. Carriers by Water .....                  | §16  |
| 4. Carriers by Air .....                    | §23  |
| 5. Railways .....                           | §31  |
| 6. Express Companies .....                  | §37  |
| 7. Passenger Carriers .....                 | §38  |
| 8. Other Carriers .....                     | §42  |
| 9. Legislative Control and Regulation ..... | §46  |
| (a) Licensing .....                         | §46  |
| (b) Rates and Charges .....                 | §77  |
| (c) Other Legislation .....                 | §80  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>II. Carriage of Passengers</b> .....     | §81  |
| 1. Definition of "Passenger" .....          | §81  |
| (a) General .....                           | §81  |
| (b) Intending Passengers .....              | §84  |
| 2. Contract to Carry .....                  | §85  |
| 3. Fares .....                              | §92  |
| 4. Ejection of Passengers .....             | §94  |
| 5. Seating .....                            | §101 |
| 6. Baggage .....                            | §103 |



CARRIERS

---

7. Miscellaneous .....§113

**III. Liability to Passengers .....§114**

1. Duty to Exercise Due Care .....§114

    (a) General .....§114

    (b) Defective Equipment .....§136

    (c) Negligence Causing Death .....§146

    (d) Absence of Contract: Licensees, Invitees, Gratuitous  
        Passengers, and Trespassers .....§151

    (e) Safety of Stations or Stopping Places .....§163

        (i) General .....§163

        (ii) Stopping Beyond Designated Areas .....§173

    (f) Effect of Contributory Negligence .....§176

    (g) Imputed Negligence; Doctrine of Identification .....§178

    (h) Evidence .....§179

        (i) Onus of Proof .....§179

        (ii) Breach Of Operating Rules .....§184

2. Duty to Passengers Boarding .....§188

3. Duty to Carry Passengers Safely .....§193

    (a) General .....§193

    (b) Jolting, Jerking and Sudden Stopping .....§199

    (c) Protecting Passengers from Threatened Injury by An-  
        other Passenger .....§204

    (d) “Through” Car .....§207

4. Duty to Passengers Alighting .....§208

5. Limitation of Liability by Contract .....§220

6. Statutory Limitation of Liability .....§224

7. Delay .....§226

8. Duty of Operator or Driver .....§227

**IV. Carriage of Goods .....§228**

1. Contract of Carriage .....§228

    (a) General .....§228

    (b) Statutory Provisions .....§244

2. Bills of Lading .....§251

    (a) General .....§251

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Statutory Provisions . . . . .               | §276        |
| 3. Right to Payment . . . . .                    | §283        |
| 4. Rate of Payment . . . . .                     | §288        |
| 5. Stoppage in Transitu . . . . .                | §291        |
| <b>V. Liability for Goods . . . . .</b>          | <b>§294</b> |
| 1. Commencement of Liability . . . . .           | §294        |
| 2. Dangerous Goods . . . . .                     | §300        |
| 3. Notice of Claim . . . . .                     | §303        |
| 4. Loss or Damage to Bonded Goods . . . . .      | §305        |
| 5. Causes of Liability . . . . .                 | §306        |
| (a) Loading and Unloading . . . . .              | §306        |
| (b) Misdelivery . . . . .                        | §310        |
| (c) Shortages . . . . .                          | §321        |
| (d) Delay . . . . .                              | §327        |
| (e) Deviation from Route . . . . .               | §332        |
| (f) Defective Equipment . . . . .                | §335        |
| (g) Specific Classes of Goods . . . . .          | §339        |
| (i) Animals . . . . .                            | §339        |
| (ii) Grain . . . . .                             | §345        |
| (iii) Perishable Goods . . . . .                 | §354        |
| 6. Onus . . . . .                                | §361        |
| 7. Limitation of Liability . . . . .             | §362        |
| (a) Common Law Exceptions . . . . .              | §362        |
| (b) By Contract . . . . .                        | §368        |
| (i) General . . . . .                            | §368        |
| (ii) Notice of Contractual Terms . . . . .       | §394        |
| (c) Statutory Limitations on Liability . . . . . | §396        |
| 8. Termination of Liability . . . . .            | §405        |
| (a) Delivery by Carrier . . . . .                | §405        |
| (b) Notice of arrival . . . . .                  | §415        |
| <b>VI. Connecting Carriers . . . . .</b>         | <b>§423</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                             | §423        |
| 2. Statutory Provisions . . . . .                | §427        |

CARRIERS

---

**VII. Actions Against Carriers** . . . . . §431

1. Negligence . . . . . §431

    (a) Carrier’s Duty to the Public . . . . . §431

        (i) Duty to Pedestrians, Other Vehicles, and Animals . . . . . §431

        (ii) Duty to Foresee Acts of Third Persons . . . . . §434

        (iii) Duty to Aged, Disabled, and Child Pedestrians . . . . . §435

    (b) Defective Equipment . . . . . §436

    (c) Duty of Public Using Streets . . . . . §437

2. Nuisance . . . . . §441

3. Conversion . . . . . §444

4. Other Tort Actions . . . . . §446

5. Contracts . . . . . §450

6. Status to Bring Action . . . . . §452

    (a) By Consignor . . . . . §452

    (b) By Consignee . . . . . §455

7. Estoppel or Waiver . . . . . §456

8. Refund of Excessive Charges . . . . . §457

**VIII. Actions By Carriers** . . . . . §458

1. Demurrage . . . . . §458

2. Claim for Freight . . . . . §465

3. Sale of Goods . . . . . §468

4. Carrier’s Lien . . . . . §470

5. Indemnity . . . . . §475

6. Dangerous Goods . . . . . §478

**IX. Transfer of Title** . . . . . §481

1. Statutory Rights of Endorsee to Whom Property in Goods has Passed . . . . . §481

2. Trust Receipt Based Upon Bill of Lading . . . . . §482

3. Right of Innocent Transferee Where Transportation for Illegal Purpose . . . . . §483

4. Miscellaneous . . . . . §484

**Index**

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

*Related titles:* Agriculture; Animals; Aviation; Bailment; Estoppel; Expropriation; Infants and Children; Motor Vehicles; Municipal Corporations; Negligence; Railways; Sale of Goods; Shipping; Torts.

# CHILDREN

prepared by  
Roselyn Zisman, B.Sc., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*  
and  
Joan Dunlop, B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. Child Support</b> .....                     | \$1  |
| 1. Standing.....                                  | \$1  |
| (a) Who Is a Child.....                           | \$1  |
| (i) General.....                                  | \$1  |
| (ii) Withdrawal From Charge.....                  | \$9  |
| A. Alberta.....                                   | \$9  |
| B. British Columbia.....                          | \$12 |
| C. Manitoba.....                                  | \$13 |
| D. Ontario.....                                   | \$15 |
| E. Saskatchewan.....                              | \$23 |
| F. Federal.....                                   | \$24 |
| (b) Who Is a “Payor”: Obligation to Maintain..... | \$46 |
| (i) Parent’s Duty to Support Child — General..... | \$46 |
| (ii) Alberta.....                                 | \$50 |
| (iii) British Columbia.....                       | \$58 |
| (iv) Manitoba.....                                | \$61 |
| (v) Ontario.....                                  | \$66 |
| (vi) Saskatchewan.....                            | \$71 |
| (vii) Federal.....                                | \$72 |
| 2. Entitlement to Support.....                    | \$84 |

## CHILDREN

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (a) Child Support Guidelines: General Provisions.....                                 | \$84  |
| (b) Child Under Age of Majority .....   | \$98  |
| (c) Child Over Age of Majority .....  | \$99  |
| (d) Income over \$150,000.....  | \$106 |
| (e) Apportionment of Support Obligations .....  | \$110 |
| (f) Medical or Dental Insurance Coverage.....   | \$112 |
| (g) Special or Extraordinary Expenses.....  | \$113 |
| (h) Split Custody .....   | \$121 |
| (i) Rights of Access to/Physical Custody of Not Less<br>Than 40 per cent of Time..... | \$124 |
| (j) Undue Hardship.....   | \$131 |
| 3. Form of Support.....   | \$140 |
| (a) Interim Child Support.....  | \$140 |
| (i) Jurisdiction.....   | \$140 |
| (ii) Principle.....   | \$150 |
| (b) Periodic or Lump Sum Support.....   | \$155 |
| (c) Security .....  | \$159 |
| (d) Conditions.....   | \$162 |
| (e) Priority .....  | \$166 |
| (f) Binding Estate .....  | \$169 |
| (g) Retroactive Support.....  | \$171 |
| (h) Indexing .....  | \$197 |
| (i) Calculations .....  | \$200 |
| (j) Provisional Orders.....   | \$202 |
| (k) Effect of Agreement.....  | \$217 |
| (l) Miscellaneous .....   | \$222 |
| 4. Variation of Child Support Orders.....   | \$223 |
| (a) General .....   | \$223 |
| (b) Cancellation or Reduction of Arrears.....   | \$248 |
| 5. Quantum .....  | \$251 |
| (a) Determining Income of Payor.....  | \$251 |
| (b) Calculation of Annual Income.....   | \$257 |
| (i) General.....  | \$257 |
| (ii) Adjustments to Income .....  | \$259 |
| A. Stock Options .....  | \$259 |
| B. Business Expenses.....   | \$260 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| C. Tax Benefits and Rebates .....   | \$261        |
| D. Taxable Benefits.....  | \$262        |
| E. Social Assistance .....  | \$263        |
| F. Student Loans .....  | \$264        |
| G. Overtime .....   | \$265        |
| (c) Fluctuating Income .....  | \$266        |
| (d) Shareholder, Director or Officer of Corporation .....                     | \$270        |
| (e) Imputing Income.....  | \$276        |
| (f) Recalculations.....   | \$291        |
| (g) Duty of Financial Disclosure .....  | \$315        |
| 6. Enforcement of Support Orders .....  | \$329        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | \$329        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | \$380        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | \$422        |
| (d) Ontario .....   | \$443        |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....  | \$486        |
| (f) Federal .....   | \$524        |
| 7. Enforcement of Foreign Orders.....   | \$526        |
| (a) General .....   | \$526        |
| (b) Claimant Ordinarily Resident in Province .....                            | \$527        |
| (c) Claimant Ordinarily Resident Outside Province .....                       | \$531        |
| (d) Registration and Enforcement of Orders Made<br>Outside Jurisdiction ..... | \$538        |
| (e) Variation of Support Orders .....   | \$541        |
| (i) General.....  | \$541        |
| (ii) Applicant Ordinarily Resident Outside<br>Jurisdiction.....               | \$545        |
| (iii) Variation of Registered Orders .....                                    | \$551        |
| (iv) Appeals .....  | \$553        |
| 8. Appeals .....  | \$556        |
| <b>II. Infant's Property.....</b>   | <b>\$568</b> |
| 1. Testamentary Capacity.....   | \$568        |
| 2. Infant's Power to Deal with Land .....                                     | \$569        |
| 3. Infant's Domestic Contracts .....  | \$571        |
| 4. Infant's Interests under Separation Agreements .....                       | \$572        |

## CHILDREN

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 5. Sale or Lease of Infant's Real Estate .....                   | \$573        |
| (a) Sale.....  | \$573        |
| (b) Lease .....  | \$585        |
| 6. Deeds and Mortgages .....                                     | \$591        |
| 7. Gifts by and to Infants.....                                  | \$595        |
| <b>III. Contractual Rights .....</b>                             | <b>\$600</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$600        |
| 2. Parent's Liability for Infant's Debts .....                   | \$605        |
| 3. Contracts of Infants Which are Binding.....                   | \$607        |
| 4. Void Contracts .....  | \$612        |
| 5. Distinction Between Void and Voidable Contracts.....          | \$615        |
| 6. Legal Effect of Voidable Contract.....                        | \$617        |
| 7. Infant's Fraudulent Representation as to Age .....            | \$620        |
| 8. Fraud of Infant .....   | \$621        |
| 9. Ratification After Attaining Majority .....                   | \$623        |
| 10. Repudiation After Coming of Age.....                         | \$627        |
| 11. Cheques, Bills and Notes .....                               | \$634        |
| 12. Infant's Contract of Hiring.....                             | \$636        |
| 13. Apprenticeship Agreement .....                               | \$639        |
| 14. Arbitration Award .....                                      | \$640        |
| 15. Infant Shareholder.....                                      | \$641        |
| 16. Infant Trader .....  | \$642        |
| 17. Infant as Partner.....                                       | \$643        |
| 18. Recovery of Money Paid by Infant .....                       | \$644        |
| 19. Specific Performance of Contract to Which Infant Party ..... | \$645        |
| 20. Agreements Between Parent and Child .....                    | \$646        |
| 21. Marriage .....   | \$647        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | \$647        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                       | \$648        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | \$649        |
| (d) Ontario .....  | \$650        |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....  | \$651        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>IV. Torts</b> .....                                  | §653 |
| 1. Right of Action for Personal Injuries .....          | §653 |
| (a) General .....                                       | §653 |
| (b) Doctrine of Allurement .....                        | §660 |
| (c) Contributory Negligence .....                       | §663 |
| (d) Unborn Infant .....                                 | §667 |
| (e) Contracting out of Liability for Negligence.....    | §671 |
| (f) Action by Child against Parent .....                | §672 |
| 2. Parent's Right of Action for Injuries to Child ..... | §673 |
| 3. Liability for Infant's Torts.....                    | §681 |
| (a) General .....                                       | §681 |
| (b) Parent's Liability .....                            | §685 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>V. Actions By and Against Infants</b> .....          | §689 |
| 1. General .....  | §689 |
| 2. Service .....  | §691 |
| 3. Infant Plaintiff .....                               | §696 |
| 4. Infant Defendant .....                               | §711 |
| 5. Discovery.....                                       | §715 |
| 6. Settlement or Compromise .....                       | §718 |
| 7. Costs .....  | §721 |
| (a) Next Friend or Litigation Guardian.....             | §721 |
| (b) Infant Plaintiff or Defendant.....                  | §726 |
| 8. Limitations.....                                     | §728 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>VI. Children Born Outside Marriage</b> .....         | §732 |
| 1. General .....  | §732 |
| 2. Birth Registration .....                             | §733 |
| 3. Legitimation .....                                   | §742 |
| 4. Presumption of Legitimacy.....                       | §743 |
| 5. Affiliation Proceedings .....                        | §747 |
| (a) General .....                                       | §747 |
| (b) Jurisdiction.....                                   | §753 |
| (c) Agreements .....                                    | §756 |
| (d) Presumption of Paternity.....                       | §761 |

## CHILDREN

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (e) Assistance to Mother.....                                  | §765        |
| (f) Limitations.....   | §766        |
| (g) Issuance of Summons or Warrant; Notice .....               | §768        |
| (h) Declaration of Paternity or Maternity .....                | §773        |
| (i) Evidence .....   | §777        |
| (i) General.....   | §777        |
| (ii) Putative Father .....                                     | §778        |
| (iii) Blood and DNA Tests .....                                | §780        |
| (j) Reasonable Expenses .....                                  | §789        |
| (k) Amount of Maintenance.....                                 | §790        |
| (l) Variation, Rescission and Termination .....                | §793        |
| (m) Mode of Payment.....                                       | §796        |
| (n) Res Judicata.....  | §797        |
| (o) Leave to Reopen.....                                       | §799        |
| (p) Enforcement.....   | §800        |
| (q) Appeals .....  | §805        |
| 6. Custody and Access.....                                     | §811        |
| 7. Inheritance .....   | §819        |
| 8. Dependants' Relief Legislation .....                        | §823        |
| <b>VII. Children in Need of Protection .....</b>               | <b>§826</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §826        |
| 2. Voluntary Committal and Temporary Agreements for Care ..... | §829        |
| 3. Apprehension and Involuntary Committal.....                 | §840        |
| (a) Jurisdiction.....  | §840        |
| (b) Meaning of "Child in Need of Protection".....              | §848        |
| (c) Apprehension .....   | §867        |
| (d) Hearing.....   | §874        |
| (i) Notice.....  | §874        |
| (ii) Scheduling the Hearing.....                               | §880        |
| (iii) Procedure.....   | §886        |
| A. Legal Representation for Child and Minor Parents.....       | §886        |
| B. Discovery .....   | §888        |
| C. Privacy .....   | §889        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| D. Exclusion of Witnesses.....                                    | §895         |
| E. Standard and Burden of Proof.....                              | §896         |
| F. Test to be Applied.....  | §898         |
| G. Evidence.....  | §903         |
| (iv) Adjournment.....   | §926         |
| (v) Summary Judgment.....   | §935         |
| (vi) Disposition.....   | §936         |
| (e) Review of the Order.....                                      | §965         |
| (f) Expiration and Extension of Temporary Wardship<br>Orders..... | §974         |
| (g) Rescission or Variation of Permanent Order.....               | §981         |
| (h) Appeals.....  | §988         |
| 4. Duty to Report Neglect or Abuse.....                           | §1011        |
| 5. Liability of Child Protection Authorities.....                 | §1012        |
| 6. Protection of Sexually Exploited Children.....                 | §1018        |
| 7. Protection of Drug-Endangered Children.....                    | §1023        |
| <b>VIII. Adoption.....</b>  | <b>§1028</b> |
| 1. Purpose of Adoption.....                                       | §1028        |
| 2. Jurisdiction.....  | §1030        |
| 3. Who May Adopt.....   | §1037        |
| 4. Who May be Adopted.....  | §1044        |
| 5. Application for Adoption.....                                  | §1049        |
| 6. Placement of Child for Adoption.....                           | §1057        |
| 7. Consents Required for Adoption.....                            | §1070        |
| 8. Validity of Consent.....                                       | §1078        |
| 9. Revocation of Consent.....                                     | §1084        |
| 10. Dispensing with Consent.....                                  | §1094        |
| 11. Adoption Order.....   | §1105        |
| 12. Best Interests of Child.....                                  | §1106        |
| 13. Child Welfare Agency Reports.....                             | §1111        |
| 14. Child's Name.....   | §1122        |
| 15. Persons Entitled to Notice of Proceedings.....                | §1124        |
| 16. Procedure at Hearing.....                                     | §1137        |
| 17. Effect of Adoption Order.....                                 | §1140        |
| 18. De Facto Adoptions: Manitoba.....                             | §1149        |

## CHILDREN

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 19. International Adoptions.....                           | §1152        |
| 20. Rescission or Setting Aside of Adoption Order.....     | §1158        |
| 21. Openness Order.....                                    | §1161        |
| 22. Access.....  | §1166        |
| 23. Appeals.....   | §1175        |
| 24. Disclosure of Information.....                         | §1179        |
| 25. Customary Adoption.....                                | §1202        |
| 26. Offences.....  | §1205        |
| <b>IX. Assisted Reproduction.....</b>                      | <b>§1208</b> |
| <b>X. Custody and Access.....</b>                          | <b>§1216</b> |
| 1. General.....  | §1216        |
| 2. Alberta.....  | §1217        |
| 3. British Columbia.....                                   | §1232        |
| 4. Manitoba.....   | §1251        |
| 5. Ontario.....  | §1255        |
| 6. Saskatchewan.....                                       | §1282        |
| 7. Separate Representation of Children.....                | §1295        |
| 8. International Child Abduction.....                      | §1297        |
| <b>XI. Guardianship.....</b>                               | <b>§1298</b> |
| 1. Parent as Guardian.....                                 | §1298        |
| 2. Private Guardianship: Alberta and Manitoba.....         | §1304        |
| 3. Guardianship on Death of Parent.....                    | §1308        |
| 4. Testamentary Guardian.....                              | §1310        |
| 5. Appointment of Guardian.....                            | §1314        |
| 6. Appointment of Official Guardian or Public Trustee..... | §1324        |
| 7. Removal or Resignation of Guardian.....                 | §1329        |
| 8. Security.....   | §1333        |
| 9. Powers and Duties of Guardian.....                      | §1334        |
| 10. Foreign Guardian.....                                  | §1354        |

## Index

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

*Related titles:* Arbitration; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Carriers; Contracts; Courts; Criminal Law — Offences; Devolution of Estates; Education; Employment Law; Estoppel; Evidence; Family Law — Divorce; Family Law — General; Family Law — Property; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Gifts; Highways and Streets; Hospitals; Immigration and Refugees; Insurance; Landlord and Tenant; Limitation of Actions; Negligence; Parties; Personal Property; Pleadings; Practice; Prerogative Remedies; Receivers; Religious Institutions; Restitution; Specific Performance; Torts; Trials; Trusts; Vital Statistics; Wills; Youth Criminal Justice

# CITIZENSHIP

prepared by  
Mario D. Bellissimo, LL.B., C.S.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Conventions**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Canadian Citizenship</b> .....                       | §1  |
| 1. Right to Canadian Citizenship.....                      | §1  |
| 2. Legal Right of Citizenship .....                        | §2  |
| 3. First Generation Canadians Born Outside of Canada ..... | §3  |
| 4. Grant of Citizenship.....                               | §8  |
| (a) Citizenship by Naturalization.....                     | §8  |
| (b) Residency.....   | §9  |
| (c) The Language Requirement .....                         | §18 |
| (d) Knowledge of Canada.....                               | §19 |
| (e) Age Requirement.....                                   | §21 |
| <b>II. Making an Application for Citizenship</b> .....     | §22 |
| 1. Eligible Applicants.....                                | §22 |
| 2. Ineligible Applicants .....                             | §23 |
| 3. Prohibition .....                                       | §25 |
| 4. The Applicant Process .....                             | §28 |
| (a) Adult Applicants.....                                  | §28 |
| (b) Applicants for Minor Children .....                    | §31 |
| (c) Minors Applying as Adults.....                         | §35 |
| (d) Adopted Children .....                                 | §38 |
| (e) Applying for a Citizenship Certificate .....           | §39 |

CITIZENSHIP

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>III. Taking the Test and Oath of Citizenship</b> ..... | §41  |
| 1. General .....  | §41  |
| 2. Citizenship Test — General Overview.....               | §42  |
| 3. Applicants Exempted from Citizenship Test .....        | §46  |
| 4. Notification and Response for Citizenship Test.....    | §49  |
| 5. Structure and Procedure of Citizenship Test.....       | §52  |
| 6. Oral Interview for Citizenship.....                    | §57  |
| 7. Oath of Citizenship .....                              | §61  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>IV. Decisions on Citizenship Applications</b> .....    | §67  |
| 1. General Policy .....                                   | §67  |
| 2. Steps in Making a Decision .....                       | §68  |
| 3. Burden of Proof .....                                  | §73  |
| 4. Duties of a Citizenship Officer .....                  | §74  |
| 5. Procedural Fairness .....                              | §78  |
| 6. The Right to be Heard.....                             | §79  |
| 7. All the Evidence Considered.....                       | §83  |
| 8. Adequacy of Reasons .....                              | §85  |
| 9. Bias .....   | §87  |
| 10. Right to a Decision within a Reasonable Time .....    | §91  |
| 11. Grant, Renunciation & Resumption .....                | §95  |
| (a) Grant.....  | §95  |
| (b) Renunciation .....                                    | §101 |
| (c) Resumption .....                                      | §105 |
| 12. Abandonment of an Application .....                   | §106 |
| 13. Suspension of Processing .....                        | §112 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>V. Refusals and Appeals</b> .....                      | §113 |
| 1. Appeals .....  | §113 |
| (a) Right to Appeal .....                                 | §113 |
| (b) Appeal to Federal Court .....                         | §114 |
| 2. Reasons for Refusal and Appeal.....                    | §116 |
| 3. Procedure to File an Appeal.....                       | §117 |
| (a) Time Period for Applicant to File Appeal .....        | §117 |
| (b) Time Period for Minister to File Appeal .....         | §118 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(c) Material in Possession of the Tribunal..... §119

(d) Time Period for Production of Certified Tribunal  
Record..... §120

(e) Contents of the Notice of Application ..... §121

(f) Service of the Notice of Application ..... §122

(g) Respondent’s Notice of Appearance ..... §123

(h) Service of Applicant’s Affidavits ..... §124

(i) Service of Respondent’s Affidavits..... §125

(j) Cross-Examinations..... §126

(k) Applicant’s Record..... §127

(l) Respondent’s Record..... §128

(m) Party Seeking to File Additional Material..... §129

(n) Requirement to File Additional Material ..... §130

(o) Requisition for Hearing..... §131

(p) Pre-Hearing Conference and Witness Testimony ..... §132

4. Disposition of the Federal Court..... §134

(a) Appeal Allowed by Federal Court..... §134

(b) Grant of Citizenship by Discretionary Waiver ..... §136

(c) Applicant May Re-apply for Citizenship Pending  
Appeal..... §138

**VI. Citizenship Judges and Waivers..... §140**

1. Citizenship Judges..... §140

(a) Initial Screening of Citizenship Judges ..... §140

(b) Written Test for Citizenship Judges ..... §143

(c) Oral Test for Citizenship Judges ..... §144

(d) Appointment of Citizenship Judges..... §145

(e) Role of Citizenship Judges ..... §147

(f) Role of Senior Citizenship Judge..... §150

(g) Accountability of Citizenship Judges ..... §153

2. Waivers..... §159

(a) Waivers for Granting Citizenship ..... §159

(b) Role of Citizenship Judge for Waivers ..... §161

(c) Role of Local Office for Waivers ..... §163

(d) Role of the Case Management Branch for Waivers..... §166



CITIZENSHIP

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>VII. Loss &amp; Renunciation of Canadian Citizenship</b> .....        | \$168 |
| 1. Loss of Citizenship .....   | \$168 |
| (a) Revocation of Canadian Citizenship.....                              | \$168 |
| (b) Inadvertent Loss of Canadian Citizenship .....                       | \$172 |
| 2. Renunciation of Citizenship .....                                     | \$173 |
| (a) Eligibility to Renounce Citizenship.....                             | \$173 |
| (b) Application to Renounce Citizenship .....                            | \$178 |
| (c) Process for Reviewing Renunciation Applications .....                | \$182 |
| (d) Streamlined Process for Renunciation Applications.....               | \$185 |
| <br>   |       |
| <b>VIII. Resumption of Canadian Citizenship</b> .....                    | \$188 |
| 1. General Overview .....  | \$188 |
| 2. Eligibility to Resume Citizenship .....                               | \$189 |
| 3. Ineligibility to Resume Citizenship.....                              | \$190 |
| 4. Automatic Restoration .....   | \$191 |
| 5. Process for Applications to Restore Citizenship .....                 | \$194 |
| <br>   |       |
| <b>IX. Citizenship Ceremonies &amp; Certificate of Citizenship</b> ..... | \$199 |
| 1. General Overview .....  | \$199 |
| 2. Size and Frequency of Ceremonies.....                                 | \$201 |
| 3. Legislative Authority .....   | \$202 |
| 4. Notice to Appear to Take the Oath of Citizenship .....                | \$205 |
| 5. Structure and Procedure of the Citizenship Ceremonies .....           | \$207 |
| 6. Documents to Bring to the Ceremony .....                              | \$218 |
| 7. Certification Package .....   | \$219 |
| 8. Minors Under 14 years of Age .....                                    | \$220 |
| 9. Citizenship Ceremony Locations.....                                   | \$221 |
| 10. Roles of Ceremony Officials.....                                     | \$222 |
| 11. Dress Attire for Ceremony .....                                      | \$227 |
| 12. Certificate of Citizenship.....                                      | \$228 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Constitutional Law; Courts; Human Rights; Immigration and Refugees; International Law; Judgments and Orders; Practice.

# COMPANIES' CREDITORS ARRANGEMENT ACT

prepared by  
David E. Baird, Q.C.  
*Counsel with Fasken Martineau's  
Insolvency and Restructuring Group*  
updating author in connection with CCAA amendments  
Stephanie Ben-Ishai, LL.B., LL.M.,  
*Associate Professor, Osgoode Hall Law School*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. General</b> .....   | §1   |
| 1. Introduction .....   | §1   |
| 2. Purpose of CCAA .....  | §9   |
| 3. Qualifying Company .....   | §31  |
| 4. Application of CCAA .....  | §35  |
| (a) General .....   | §35  |
| (b) Rights of Crown .....   | §40  |
| (c) Unknown and Unascertainable Creditors .....                           | §42  |
| 5. Constitutional Matters .....   | §43  |
| 6. Interaction of CCAA and the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act ...<br>..... | §51  |
| 7. Role of the Court .....  | §65  |
| 8. Role of the Directors .....  | §92  |
| 9. Compromise of Indebtedness .....                                       | §102 |
| 10. Consolidation of CCAA Proceedings .....                               | §103 |
| 11. Interpretation .....  | §117 |
| (a) Claim .....   | §117 |
| (b) Company .....   | §122 |

COMPANIES' CREDITORS ARRANGEMENT ACT

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Court   | §123        |
| (d) Debtor Company                                      | §124        |
| (e) Eligible Financial Contract                         | §130        |
| (f) Insolvent   | §138        |
| <b>II. Initial Application under CCAA</b>               | <b>§155</b> |
| 1. Procedure  | §155        |
| 2. Jurisdiction   | §156        |
| (a) Court   | §156        |
| (b) Single Judge  | §159        |
| 3. Applicant(s)   | §160        |
| 4. Material in Support                                  | §166        |
| 5. Notice of Initial Application                        | §173        |
| <b>III. Results of Initial Application</b>              | <b>§181</b> |
| 1. Grant of Stay  | §181        |
| (a) General   | §181        |
| (b) Good Faith  | §207        |
| (c) Prejudice to Creditors                              | §209        |
| (d) Maintenance of Status Quo                           | §211        |
| 2. Dismissal of Application                             | §215        |
| 3. Appointment of Interim Receiver or Receiver          | §230        |
| (a) General   | §230        |
| (b) Powers and Duties                                   | §238        |
| 4. Use of "Come-back" Clause                            | §248        |
| 5. Variation of Orders                                  | §254        |
| 6. Length of Stay                                       | §258        |
| 7. Effective Date                                       | §263        |
| 8. Interpretation of Initial Order                      | §265        |
| <b>IV. Extension of CCAA Stay Order</b>                 | <b>§267</b> |
| 1. General  | §267        |
| 2. Length of Stay                                       | §297        |
| 3. Success Fees   | §299        |
| <b>V. Proceedings and Other Actions Subject to Stay</b> | <b>§300</b> |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. General . . . . .   | §300        |
| 2. Proceedings by Secured Creditors . . . . .                          | §309        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §309        |
| (b) Acts of Receiver . . . . .   | §313        |
| (c) Rights Under Liens Authorized by Statute . . . . .                 | §314        |
| 3. Contractual Rights . . . . .  | §320        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §320        |
| (b) Termination of Contracts . . . . .                                 | §322        |
| (c) Rights of Lessors . . . . .  | §324        |
| 4. Bankruptcy Proceedings . . . . .                                    | §329        |
| 5. Payments to Creditors . . . . .                                     | §331        |
| 6. Claims for Return of Thirty Day Goods . . . . .                     | §333        |
| 7. Set-Off . . . . .   | §337        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §337        |
| (b) Stay of Set-Off . . . . .  | §353        |
| (c) Refusal of Set-Off . . . . .                                       | §356        |
| 8. Criminal Proceedings . . . . .                                      | §359        |
| 9. Crown Garnishment Rights . . . . .                                  | §360        |
| (a) Rights of Canada Revenue Agency Under Excise Tax<br>Act . . . . .  | §360        |
| (b) Requirements to Pay Under Income Tax Act . . . . .                 | §361        |
| 10. Payment of Monies Out of Court . . . . .                           | §365        |
| 11. Meetings of Shareholders . . . . .                                 | §366        |
| 12. Certification of a Labour Union . . . . .                          | §367        |
| 13. Regulatory Proceedings . . . . .                                   | §369        |
| 14. Employee Proceedings . . . . .                                     | §376        |
| 15. Proceedings Against Partnerships and Other Third Parties . . . . . | §377        |
| 16. Proceedings Against Officers and Directors . . . . .               | §385        |
| 17. Rights of Termination . . . . .                                    | §387        |
| 18. Payment of Interest . . . . .                                      | §394        |
| 19. Class Actions . . . . .  | §397        |
| <b>VI. Restrictions on Scope of CCAA Orders . . . . .</b>              | <b>§399</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §399        |
| 2. Rights under Eligible Financial Contracts . . . . .                 | §401        |

COMPANIES' CREDITORS ARRANGEMENT ACT

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Proceedings Under Letters of Credit and Guarantees . . . . .                                       | §404        |
| 4. Requirements for Immediate Payment for Supply of Goods and Services . . . . .                      | §409        |
| 5. Further Advances of Money or Credit . . . . .  | §414        |
| 6. Proceedings Against Unaffected Creditors . . . . .   | §419        |
| 7. Proceedings in the Federal Court . . . . .   | §420        |
| 8. Limitation Periods . . . . .   | §424        |
| 9. Effect on Collective Agreements . . . . .  | §427        |
| 10. Removal of Directors . . . . .  | §428        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Termination of CCAA Proceedings . . . . .</b>   | <b>§429</b> |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VIII. Lifting Stay of Proceedings . . . . .</b>  | <b>§439</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §439        |
| 2. Late Registration of Security Agreement . . . . .  | §459        |
| 3. Determination of a Claim . . . . .   | §463        |
| 4. Bankruptcy Proceedings . . . . .   | §464        |
| 5. Proceedings Against Insurer . . . . .  | §467        |
| 6. Proceedings Against Guarantor . . . . .  | §469        |
| 7. Protection of Lien Rights . . . . .  | §470        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Role of Monitor . . . . .</b>  | <b>§474</b> |
| 1. Appointment of Monitor . . . . .   | §474        |
| 2. Auditor as Monitor . . . . .   | §483        |
| 3. Duties and Powers of Monitor . . . . .   | §487        |
| 4. Liability of Monitor . . . . .   | §498        |
| 5. Fees of Monitor . . . . .  | §503        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>X. Financing Debtor During CCAA Proceedings — Debtor-In-Possession (“DIP”) Financing . . . . .</b> | <b>§511</b> |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XI. Priority Obligations . . . . .</b>   | <b>§533</b> |
| 1. Post-Petition Creditors . . . . .  | §533        |
| 2. Administrative Charges . . . . .   | §547        |
| 3. Legal Costs . . . . .  | §557        |
| 4. Employee Claims . . . . .  | §559        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 5. Lease Obligations . . . . .                                    | §561        |
| 6. Goods and Services Tax . . . . .                               | §563        |
| 7. Interest and Penalties on Source Deductions . . . . .          | §567        |
| 8. Payment to a Foreign Creditor . . . . .                        | §568        |
| 9. Indemnity of Directors . . . . .                               | §569        |
| <b>XII. Exercise of Inherent Jurisdiction . . . . .</b>           | <b>§577</b> |
| <b>XIII. Matters Arising During CCAA Process . . . . .</b>        | <b>§613</b> |
| 1. Payments to Certain Creditors . . . . .                        | §613        |
| 2. Termination of Contracts by Debtor Including Leases . . . . .  | §614        |
| 3. Assignment of Contracts . . . . .                              | §623        |
| 4. Approval of Financing Agreements and Other Contracts . . . . . | §624        |
| 5. Corporate Actions . . . . .                                    | §633        |
| 6. Rights of Shareholders . . . . .                               | §634        |
| 7. Rights of Administrator . . . . .                              | §636        |
| 8. Conduct of Debtor . . . . .                                    | §637        |
| 9. Non-Ordinary Course of Business . . . . .                      | §638        |
| 10. Rights of Secured Creditors . . . . .                         | §639        |
| 11. Information to Creditors . . . . .                            | §640        |
| 12. Investigations . . . . .                                      | §641        |
| 13. Protection of Confidential Information . . . . .              | §642        |
| 14. Appointment of Mediator . . . . .                             | §644        |
| 15. Pension Contributions . . . . .                               | §649        |
| 16. Rights of Third Parties . . . . .                             | §650        |
| <b>XIV. Liquidation or Sale of Assets . . . . .</b>               | <b>§653</b> |
| 1. Use of CCAA for Liquidation Purposes . . . . .                 | §653        |
| 2. Sale of Assets Before Submission of Plan . . . . .             | §661        |
| 3. Method of Sale . . . . .                                       | §673        |
| 4. Vesting Orders . . . . .                                       | §677        |
| 5. Role of Chief Restructuring Officer . . . . .                  | §682        |
| 6. Role of Monitor . . . . .                                      | §683        |
| 7. Approval of Shareholders . . . . .                             | §685        |
| 8. Distribution of Proceeds . . . . .                             | §686        |

COMPANIES' CREDITORS ARRANGEMENT ACT

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>XV. International Insolvencies</b> .....         | §690 |
| 1. Definitions .....                                | §690 |
| (a) Foreign Proceedings .....                       | §690 |
| (b) Foreign Representative .....                    | §693 |
| 2. Powers of Court .....                            | §694 |
| 3. Assistance from Foreign Court .....              | §702 |
| 4. Status of Foreign Representative .....           | §704 |
| 5. International Comity .....                       | §706 |
| 6. Cross-Border Insolvencies .....                  | §716 |
| 7. Debts Payable in a Foreign Currency .....        | §723 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XVI. Plan of Arrangement</b> .....               | §724 |
| 1. General .....                                    | §724 |
| (a) Submission of Plan of Arrangement .....         | §724 |
| (b) Creditors Affected by Plan of Arrangement ..... | §727 |
| (c) Treatment of Creditors .....                    | §735 |
| (d) Terms of Plan of Arrangement .....              | §738 |
| (e) Negotiation of Plan of Arrangement .....        | §744 |
| 2. Classification of Creditors .....                | §747 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §747 |
| (b) Principles of Classification .....              | §753 |
| (c) Examples of Classification .....                | §776 |
| (i) Secured Creditors .....                         | §776 |
| (ii) Landlords .....                                | §784 |
| (iii) Guarantors .....                              | §791 |
| (iv) Others .....                                   | §795 |
| (d) Time of Classification Determination .....      | §803 |
| 3. Claims Against Officers and Directors .....      | §805 |
| 4. Claims Against Third Parties .....               | §814 |
| 5. Amendment of Plan of Arrangement .....           | §819 |
| (a) Before Approval by Creditors .....              | §819 |
| (b) By Court .....                                  | §825 |
| 6. Income Tax Obligations .....                     | §837 |
| 7. Corporate Reorganizations .....                  | §838 |
| 8. Interpretation of Plan .....                     | §840 |
| 9. Distributions to Creditors .....                 | §849 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 10. Claims Subject to Plan . . . . .                    | §854        |
| 11. Disclosure to Creditors . . . . .                   | §863        |
| 12. Treatment of Shareholders . . . . .                 | §866        |
| <b>XVII. Claims of Creditors . . . . .</b>              | <b>§882</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §882        |
| 2. Claims of Secured Creditors . . . . .                | §890        |
| 3. Claims of Landlords . . . . .                        | §898        |
| 4. Claims Under Guarantee . . . . .                     | §900        |
| 5. Contingent or Unliquidated Claims . . . . .          | §903        |
| 6. Subordinated Claims . . . . .                        | §906        |
| 7. Date of Determination of Claim . . . . .             | §911        |
| 8. Claims Barring Procedure . . . . .                   | §912        |
| 9. Proofs of Claim . . . . .                            | §914        |
| 10. Voting . . . . .                                    | §916        |
| 11. Adjudication of Claims . . . . .                    | §924        |
| (a) Claims Resolution Process . . . . .                 | §924        |
| (b) Proceedings Before Claims Officer . . . . .         | §937        |
| <b>XVIII. Approval of Plan of Arrangement . . . . .</b> | <b>§942</b> |
| 1. Approval by Creditors . . . . .                      | §942        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §942        |
| (b) Private Arrangements . . . . .                      | §945        |
| (c) Meetings of Creditors . . . . .                     | §950        |
| (i) Order Authorizing Meeting . . . . .                 | §950        |
| (ii) Notice of Meeting . . . . .                        | §957        |
| (iii) Adjournment . . . . .                             | §959        |
| (iv) Conduct of Meeting . . . . .                       | §962        |
| (v) Voting at Meeting . . . . .                         | §964        |
| 2. Sanction of Plan by Court . . . . .                  | §966        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §966        |
| (b) Timing of Court Approval . . . . .                  | §987        |
| (c) Hearing of Application . . . . .                    | §990        |
| (d) Discretion of Court . . . . .                       | §995        |
| (e) Factors to be Considered by the Court . . . . .     | §998        |
| (i) Creditor Approval . . . . .                         | §998        |



COMPANIES' CREDITORS ARRANGEMENT ACT

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (ii) Plan Fair and Reasonable . . . . .                                     | §1012        |
| (iii) Equal vs. Equitable Treatment . . . . .                               | §1037        |
| (iv) Voting by Related Parties . . . . .                                    | §1045        |
| (v) Termination of Leases and Contracts . . . . .                           | §1046        |
| (vi) Provisions for Payment of Crown Claims . . . . .                       | §1050        |
| 3. Refusal of Court to Sanction Plan of Arrangement . . . . .               | §1052        |
| 4. Binding Effect . . . . .   | §1058        |
| 5. Ancillary Orders . . . . .   | §1070        |
| <b>XIX. Appeals . . . . .</b>   | <b>§1071</b> |
| 1. Leave to Appeal . . . . .  | §1071        |
| (a) Proper Court . . . . .  | §1071        |
| (b) Necessity for Leave . . . . .   | §1073        |
| (c) Time Limit . . . . .  | §1077        |
| (d) Extension of Time for Appeal . . . . .                                  | §1080        |
| (e) Expedition of Application for Leave to Appeal . . . . .                 | §1082        |
| (f) Stay Pending Determination of Application for Leave to Appeal . . . . . | §1085        |
| 2. Grounds for Granting Leave to Appeal . . . . .                           | §1086        |
| 3. Role of Appellate Court . . . . .  | §1107        |
| 4. Stay of Proceedings Pending Hearing of Appeal . . . . .                  | §1117        |
| 5. Appeals to Supreme Court of Canada . . . . .                             | §1123        |
| <b>XX. Miscellaneous . . . . .</b>  | <b>§1125</b> |
| 1. Legal Costs . . . . .  | §1125        |
| 2. Professional Fees . . . . .  | §1134        |
| 3. Allocation of Administrative Costs . . . . .                             | §1136        |
| 4. Utilization of Other Federal and Provincial Legislation . . . . .        | §1137        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Business Corporations; Conflict of Laws; Debtor and Creditor; Distress; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Secured Transactions in Personal Property, Receivers.

# CONDOMINIUMS

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                 | §1  |
| <b>II. Formation of Condominiums</b> .....   | §3  |
| 1. Alberta and Saskatchewan.....             | §3  |
| (a) The Condominium Plan .....               | §3  |
| (i) General.....                             | §3  |
| (ii) Requirements of the Plan .....          | §5  |
| (b) The By-laws .....                        | §8  |
| 2. British Columbia .....                    | §18 |
| (a) The Strata Plan .....                    | §18 |
| (i) Subdivision into Strata Lots .....       | §18 |
| (ii) Registration of the Plan .....          | §19 |
| (iii) Contents of the Plan .....             | §20 |
| (b) The By-laws .....                        | §24 |
| (i) General.....                             | §24 |
| (ii) Amendments.....                         | §25 |
| 3. Manitoba.....                             | §31 |
| (a) The Declaration .....                    | §31 |
| (i) General.....                             | §31 |
| (ii) Effect of Registration.....             | §32 |
| (iii) Contents of the Declaration.....       | §33 |
| (iv) Special Requirements for Tenants.....   | §34 |
| (v) Further Contents of the Declaration..... | §35 |
| (vi) Amendments .....                        | §36 |

## CONDOMINIUMS

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (b) The Plan.....                           | §37        |
| (i) Contents of the Plan.....               | §37        |
| (ii) Amendment of the Plan.....             | §39        |
| (c) The By-laws.....                        | §40        |
| (i) General.....                            | §40        |
| (ii) Rules for Common Elements .....        | §41        |
| 4. Interim Occupancy Agreements .....       | §42        |
| <b>III. The Condominium Unit.....</b>       | <b>§44</b> |
| 1. Definitions of Unit.....                 | §44        |
| (a) Alberta and Saskatchewan .....          | §44        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                  | §45        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                          | §46        |
| 2. Legal Description .....                  | §47        |
| (a) Contents of the Plan.....               | §47        |
| (b) Unit Boundaries.....                    | §50        |
| (i) Alberta .....                           | §50        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                 | §51        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                         | §52        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                      | §53        |
| 3. Unit Proportions .....                   | §54        |
| (a) Calculation .....                       | §54        |
| (b) Share of Common Expenses.....           | §56        |
| (c) Voting Rights.....                      | §59        |
| (d) Forms of Expression .....               | §63        |
| 4. Easements.....                           | §64        |
| 5. Restrictions on Use, Sale and Lease..... | §67        |
| (a) Use .....                               | §67        |
| (b) Sale and Leasing .....                  | §70        |
| (i) Alberta .....                           | §70        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                 | §73        |
| A. General.....                             | §73        |
| B. Assignments.....                         | §77        |
| C. Residential Disclosure Statement.....    | §78        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                         | §79        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                      | §80        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 6. Re-subdivision and Consolidation.....         | §81         |
| (a) Alberta and Saskatchewan .....               | §81         |
| (b) British Columbia .....                       | §82         |
| <b>IV. The Common Property .....</b>             | <b>§85</b>  |
| 1. Definitions .....                             | §85         |
| 2. Interest of the Unit Owners.....              | §86         |
| (a) Nature of the Interest .....                 | §86         |
| (b) Amendment of Interest.....                   | §87         |
| 3. Use of Common Property.....                   | §88         |
| (a) General .....                                | §88         |
| (b) Rules for Common Property .....              | §91         |
| 4. Appurtenance of Unit and Common Property..... | §93         |
| (a) General .....                                | §93         |
| (b) Liens and Encumbrances .....                 | §94         |
| (i) Alberta .....                                | §94         |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                      | §95         |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                              | §97         |
| (c) Assessment for Taxation .....                | §98         |
| (d) Repairs and Maintenance .....                | §99         |
| (e) Easements.....                               | §104        |
| 5. Limited Common Property .....                 | §105        |
| <b>V. The Condominium Corporation.....</b>       | <b>§107</b> |
| 1. Creation of the Corporation.....              | §107        |
| 2. Powers and Duties of the Corporation.....     | §108        |
| (a) Duties (General) .....                       | §108        |
| (b) Powers.....                                  | §118        |
| (i) Alberta and Saskatchewan .....               | §118        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                      | §122        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                              | §131        |
| (c) The Corporation Board.....                   | §132        |
| (i) Alberta, Manitoba and Saskatchewan .....     | §132        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                      | §136        |
| (d) Management Agreements.....                   | §145        |
| (e) Enforcement of Duties .....                  | §148        |

## CONDOMINIUMS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) General.....   | §148        |
| (ii) Arbitration .....                                       | §153        |
| (iii) Duties of the Corporation.....                         | §157        |
| (f) Judgments Against the Corporation.....                   | §163        |
| 3. Insurance.....  | §165        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §165        |
| (i) Duty to Insure .....                                     | §165        |
| (ii) Payment of Insurance Moneys .....                       | §168        |
| (iii) Double Coverage.....                                   | §169        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                   | §170        |
| (i) Duty to Insure .....                                     | §170        |
| (ii) Payment of Insurance Moneys .....                       | §173        |
| (iii) Owner's Insurance .....                                | §174        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §175        |
| (i) Duty to Insure .....                                     | §175        |
| (ii) Payment of Insurance Moneys .....                       | §176        |
| (iii) Owner's Insurance .....                                | §177        |
| (iv) Liability Insurance.....                                | §178        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | §179        |
| (i) Duty To Insure .....                                     | §179        |
| (ii) Owner's Insurance .....                                 | §181        |
| (iii) Where Building Not Insured .....                       | §182        |
| <b>VI. Condominiums on Leasehold Property .....</b>          | <b>§183</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....   | §183        |
| 2. British Columbia.....                                     | §184        |
| (a) General.....   | §184        |
| (b) Requirements for Deposit of a Leasehold Strata Plan .... | §185        |
| (c) Effect of Deposit .....                                  | §186        |
| (d) Termination or Renewal of Lease.....                     | §187        |
| (e) Restrictions on Sale.....                                | §189        |
| (f) Duties of the Strata Corporation.....                    | §190        |
| (g) Destruction and Deemed Destruction of the Building ....  | §191        |
| 3. Manitoba.....   | §192        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....  | §193        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>VII. Termination of Condominium</b> .....                                | §194 |
| 1. Partial or Total Destruction .....                                       | §194 |
| (a) Alberta and Saskatchewan .....  | §194 |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | §195 |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §198 |
| 2. Termination by Election .....  | §199 |
| (a) Procedure .....   | §199 |
| (b) Effect of Termination.....  | §201 |
| 3. Termination by Sale.....   | §204 |
| (a) Alberta and Saskatchewan .....  | §204 |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | §205 |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §206 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>VIII. Miscellaneous</b> .....  | §208 |
| 1. Common Expenses.....   | §208 |
| (a) Assessment by Corporation.....  | §208 |
| (i) Alberta and Saskatchewan .....  | §208 |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §209 |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §212 |
| (b) Contributions by Owner Developer.....                                   | §213 |
| (c) Remedies for Owner’s Default .....                                      | §214 |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §214 |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §215 |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §219 |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §220 |
| 2. Amalgamation and Phased Strata Plans (British Columbia) ....             | §222 |
| (a) Amalgamation.....   | §222 |
| (b) Phased Strata Plans .....   | §223 |
| 3. Replacement Plans (Saskatchewan) .....                                   | §228 |
| 4. Requirements for Sale of Units by Developers.....                        | §231 |
| (a) Alberta and Saskatchewan .....  | §231 |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | §237 |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §238 |
| 5. Separate Residential and Commercial Sections (British<br>Columbia) ..... | §239 |
| 6. Discrimination and Human Rights.....                                     | §242 |

CONDOMINIUMS

---

(a) Alberta.....\$242  
(b) British Columbia .....\$244  
(c) Manitoba .....\$246  
(d) Saskatchewan.....\$247  
7. Rule Against Perpetuities .....\$248  
8. Regulations .....\$249

**Index**

*Related titles:* Building Contracts; Business Corporations; Contracts; Easements; Insurance; Landlord and Tenant; Liens; Mortgages; Planning and Zoning; Real Property; Sale of Land

# CONFLICT OF LAWS

prepared by  
Debra L. Jack, LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                          | §1  |
| 1. Nature of Subject .....                            | §1  |
| 2. Terms of Reference.....                            | §2  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Jurisdiction of the Courts</b> .....           | §3  |
| 1. General .....                                      | §3  |
| 2. Actions in Personam .....                          | §9  |
| (a) General .....                                     | §9  |
| (b) Service Within the Jurisdiction.....              | §14 |
| (c) Service Ex Juris.....                             | §17 |
| (d) Jurisdiction by Consent.....                      | §27 |
| (i) Implied Consent: Submission to Jurisdiction.....  | §27 |
| (ii) Foreign Jurisdiction Clauses.....                | §35 |
| 3. Actions in Rem .....                               | §42 |
| (a) General .....                                     | §42 |
| (b) Foreign Ownership of Land Within a Province ..... | §44 |
| (c) Personal Jurisdiction and Foreign Lands.....      | §45 |
| (d) Title to Foreign Lands .....                      | §49 |
| 4. Sovereign Immunity.....                            | §53 |
| 5. Penal or Revenue Laws of Foreign Country .....     | §59 |
| 6. Foreign Laws Contrary to Public Policy .....       | §61 |
| 7. Forum Non Conveniens.....                          | §63 |
| 8. Lis Alibi Pendens.....                             | §75 |



CONFLICT OF LAWS

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>III. Characterization of the Legal Issue</b> ..... | §80  |
| 1. General .....                                      | §80  |
| 2. Incidental Question .....                          | §84  |
| 3. Procedural Rules .....                             | §86  |
| 4. Proof of Foreign Law .....                         | §101 |
| 5. Refusal to Apply Foreign Law.....                  | §119 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>IV. Domicile</b> .....                             | §120 |
| 1. General Considerations .....                       | §120 |
| 2. Domicile of Origin.....                            | §125 |
| 3. Domicile of Choice and Change of Domicile .....    | §126 |
| (a) General .....                                     | §126 |
| (b) Onus of Proof.....                                | §133 |
| (c) Evidence of Intention .....                       | §135 |
| 4. Loss of Acquired Domicile .....                    | §140 |
| 5. Infants .....                                      | §144 |
| 6. Mentally Incompetent Persons .....                 | §148 |
| 7. Married Women .....                                | §149 |
| 8. Domicile of a Corporation.....                     | §150 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>V. Contracts</b> .....                             | §152 |
| 1. General .....                                      | §152 |
| 2. Express Selection .....                            | §154 |
| 3. No Express Selection .....                         | §158 |
| 4. Particular Issues .....                            | §166 |
| (a) Illegality .....                                  | §166 |
| (b) Capacity .....                                    | §168 |
| (c) Formal Validity of the Contract .....             | §169 |
| (d) Public Policy.....                                | §170 |
| (e) Exclusive Jurisdiction Clauses .....              | §171 |
| 5. Particular Contracts.....                          | §172 |
| (a) Freight and Carriage.....                         | §172 |
| (b) Barristers and Solicitors .....                   | §175 |
| (c) Bills and Notes .....                             | §176 |
| (d) Rate of Exchange .....                            | §181 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (e) Insurance .....   | §182        |
| (f) Conditional Sales Contracts and Chattel Mortgages ..... | §190        |
| (g) Guarantees .....  | §193        |
| (h) Nuptial Contracts.....                                  | §195        |
| <b>VI. Torts .....</b>                                      | <b>§199</b> |
| 1. Choice of Law and Jurisdiction .....                     | §199        |
| 2. Limitation of Actions.....                               | §210        |
| 3. Particular Issues .....                                  | §213        |
| (a) Contributory Negligence .....                           | §213        |
| (b) Fatal Accidents .....                                   | §214        |
| (c) Exemption Clauses .....                                 | §215        |
| <b>VII. Family Law .....</b>                                | <b>§216</b> |
| 1. Marriage .....   | §216        |
| (a) Formal Validity.....                                    | §216        |
| (b) Essential Validity; Capacity to Marry .....             | §217        |
| (c) Proof of Foreign Marriage .....                         | §219        |
| (d) Recognition of Foreign Marriages: Public Policy .....   | §221        |
| (e) Polygamous Marriage.....                                | §222        |
| (f) Nullity .....   | §228        |
| (g) Judicial Separation .....                               | §236        |
| 2. Divorce .....  | §238        |
| (a) Jurisdiction .....                                      | §238        |
| (b) Recognition of Foreign Divorce .....                    | §241        |
| 3. Children .....   | §254        |
| (a) Custody .....   | §254        |
| (b) Foreign Guardianship .....                              | §268        |
| (c) Legitimacy .....  | §272        |
| (d) Adoption .....  | §275        |
| 4. Maintenance Orders .....                                 | §279        |
| 5. Effect of Marriage on Property .....                     | §281        |
| <b>VIII. Property .....</b>                                 | <b>§293</b> |
| 1. Nature of Property .....                                 | §293        |
| 2. Immovables .....   | §295        |

## CONFLICT OF LAWS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Movables .....                                 | §302        |
| 4. Trusts .....                                   | §315        |
| 5. Succession and Administration.....             | §324        |
| (a) Administration .....                          | §324        |
| (b) Succession.....                               | §333        |
| <b>IX. Corporations.....</b>                      | <b>§345</b> |
| 1. General .....                                  | §345        |
| 2. Capacity and Internal Management.....          | §346        |
| 3. Winding-Up of Corporations.....                | §356        |
| <b>X. Bankruptcy.....</b>                         | <b>§358</b> |
| <b>XI. Recognition of Foreign Judgments.....</b>  | <b>§368</b> |
| 1. Actions on Foreign Judgments.....              | §368        |
| 2. Jurisdiction .....                             | §374        |
| (a) Actions in Personam.....                      | §374        |
| (b) Residence or Presence of Defendant.....       | §385        |
| (c) Class Actions .....                           | §387        |
| (d) Submission to Jurisdiction .....              | §388        |
| (e) Actions in Rem.....                           | §396        |
| 3. Foreign Judgment for Sum Certain.....          | §397        |
| 4. Foreign Judgment as Conclusive and Final.....  | §399        |
| (a) General .....                                 | §399        |
| (b) Effect of Right of Appeal.....                | §403        |
| (c) Judgment for Alimony and Maintenance .....    | §405        |
| 5. Defences .....                                 | §406        |
| (a) Lack of Jurisdiction.....                     | §406        |
| (b) Conclusive on Merits .....                    | §407        |
| (c) Fraud .....                                   | §409        |
| (d) Proceedings Contrary to Natural Justice ..... | §414        |
| (e) Public Policy.....                            | §420        |
| 6. Limitation of Actions.....                     | §427        |
| 7. Specific Cases .....                           | §428        |
| (a) Costs.....                                    | §428        |
| (b) Interest .....                                | §429        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(c) Penal Actions ..... §430  
(d) Division of Pensions ..... §435  
8. Severability and Assignability of Judgment ..... §436  
9. Proof of Foreign Judgments ..... §438  
10. Reciprocal Enforcement Under Statute ..... §439  
11. Alternative Remedies ..... §455  
12. Interjurisdictional Support Orders ..... §457

**Index**

*Related titles:* Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Bills of Exchange; Business Corporations; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Courts; Debtor and Creditor; Evidence; Executors and Administrators; Family Law — General; Guaranty, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Insurance; Judgments and Orders; Mental Incapacity; Mortgages; Practice; Real Property; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Torts; Trusts; Wills.

# CONSPIRACY

prepared by  
Sandra J. MacPherson, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Manitoba Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Nature and Elements</b> .....                | §1  |
| 1. Definition and Nature of Conspiracy .....       | §1  |
| 2. Right of Action .....                           | §7  |
| (a) General .....                                  | §7  |
| (b) Conspiracy to Injure .....                     | §15 |
| (c) Conspiracy to Procure Breach of Contract ..... | §29 |
| (d) Conspiracy to Defame .....                     | §33 |
| <b>II. Practice</b> .....                          | §34 |
| 1. General .....                                   | §34 |
| 2. Parties .....                                   | §37 |
| 3. Pleadings .....                                 | §45 |
| 4. Evidence .....                                  | §58 |
| 5. Remedies .....                                  | §66 |
| (a) Damages .....                                  | §66 |
| (b) Injunctions .....                              | §75 |

## Index

*Related titles:* Contracts; Criminal Law - Offences; Damages; Evidence; Injunctions; Parties; Pleadings; Torts.

# CONSTITUTIONAL LAW

prepared by  
Marian E. Bryant, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.  
*of the Alberta, Nunavut and Ontario Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                                    | §1  |
| 1. Scope of Title . . . . .   | §1  |
| 2. The Canadian Constitution . . . . .                              | §4  |
| 3. Imperial Laws in Force in Canada . . . . .                       | §15 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. The Executive Government</b> . . . . .                       | §19 |
| 1. The Crown . . . . .  | §19 |
| (a) Indivisibility of . . . . .                                     | §19 |
| (b) Duty to Obey Law . . . . .                                      | §22 |
| (c) Royal Prerogatives . . . . .                                    | §23 |
| (d) Effect of Constitution Act, 1867 on Royal Prerogatives. . . . . | §25 |
| (e) Treaties and Conventions . . . . .                              | §29 |
| 2. The Governor General . . . . .                                   | §33 |
| 3. The Lieutenant Governors . . . . .                               | §35 |
| 4. Orders in Council . . . . .                                      | §40 |
| (a) Validity of . . . . .   | §40 |
| (b) Order in Council Bringing Legislation into Effect . . . . .     | §41 |
| (c) Order in Council Exempting from Criminal Liability . . . . .    | §44 |
| 5. Crown Officers . . . . .   | §45 |
| (a) Appointment . . . . .   | §45 |
| (b) Powers, Duties and Liabilities . . . . .                        | §46 |
| (c) Expenditure of Public Money . . . . .                           | §50 |
| (d) Immunities . . . . .  | §51 |

CONSTITUTIONAL LAW

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>III. The Legislatures</b> .....   | §52  |
| 1. The Imperial Parliament .....   | §52  |
| 2. The Parliament of Canada .....  | §53  |
| (a) General .....  | §53  |
| (b) Powers of Delegation .....   | §54  |
| (c) Extra-Territorial Powers .....   | §57  |
| (d) Privileges of House of Commons .....   | §59  |
| (e) The Senate .....   | §61  |
| 3. The Provincial Legislatures .....   | §65  |
| (a) Status of .....  | §65  |
| (b) Powers of Confiscation .....   | §71  |
| (c) Extra-Territorial Powers .....   | §72  |
| (d) Powers of Delegation .....   | §74  |
| (e) Power to Authorize “Direct Legislation” .....  | §78  |
| (f) Privileges of .....  | §79  |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>IV. The Courts</b> .....  | §80  |
| 1. Functions of the Courts .....   | §80  |
| 2. Referring Questions to Courts .....   | §90  |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>V. Formation, Extension and Secession of Provinces</b> .....                                    | §95  |
| 1. General .....   | §95  |
| 2. Extension of Provincial Boundaries .....  | §109 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>VI. The Constitution Act, 1867 — Object and Interpretation</b> ....                             | §110 |
| 1. Object of Act .....   | §110 |
| 2. Principles and Liberality of Construction .....   | §113 |
| 3. Conclusiveness of Text .....  | §114 |
| 4. Presumptions .....  | §115 |
| 5. Regard for Intention of Legislature .....   | §117 |
| 6. Sections 91 and 92: Reading of Two Sections Together ....                                       | §118 |
| 7. Method of Testing Validity of Acts .....  | §125 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>VII. The Constitution Act, 1867 — Powers of Dominion and<br/>    Provinces in General</b> ..... | §134 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

1. “Peace, Order and Good Government” Clause . . . . . §134  
2. Exceptional Federal Power in National Emergency . . . . . §137  
3. Subjects Enumerated in Section 91 . . . . . §141  
4. Concluding Clause of Section 91 . . . . . §142  
5. Subjects Enumerated in Section 92 . . . . . §145  
6. Subsection 16 of Section 92 . . . . . §146  
7. Overlapping, Ancillary and Concurrent Legislation . . . . . §147  
8. The Double-Aspect Rule . . . . . §156  
9. Repealing Legislation . . . . . §159  
10. Powers of Indirect Nullification . . . . . §160

**VIII. The Constitution Act, 1867 — Subject-Matters of  
Legislation . . . . . §161**  
1. Administration of Justice . . . . . §161  
    (a) Establishment of and Defining Jurisdiction of Courts . . . . .  
        . . . . . §161  
        (i) The Supreme Court of Canada . . . . . §175  
        (ii) The Federal Court . . . . . §176  
        (iii) Other Courts . . . . . §177  
    (b) Provincial Powers to Create Courts and Tribunals . . . . . §178  
    (c) Control of Procedure . . . . . §185  
    (d) Imposing New Duties on Courts . . . . . §195  
    (e) Appointment and Remuneration of Judges . . . . . §196  
    (f) Commissions and Commissioners . . . . . §204  
    (g) Limiting Right of Appeal . . . . . §207  
    (h) Admission of Practitioners . . . . . §208  
2. Aeronautics . . . . . §213  
3. Agriculture . . . . . §215  
4. Aliens . . . . . §220  
    (a) General . . . . . §220  
    (b) Expulsion of Aliens . . . . . §221  
    (c) Restrictions on Aliens . . . . . §222  
5. Bankruptcy and Insolvency . . . . . §223  
    (a) Scope of Dominion’s Powers . . . . . §223  
    (b) Provincial Powers . . . . . §226  
    (c) Provincial Assignments Acts . . . . . §229



CONSTITUTIONAL LAW

---

6. Banks and Banking .....§230  
    (a) General .....§230  
    (b) Extent of Provincial Powers Respecting Banks .....§231  
7. Bills of Exchange .....§234  
8. Corporations .....§236  
    (a) Powers of Parliament .....§236  
    (b) Powers of Provinces as to Extra-Provincial Capacity .....  
        .....§243  
    (c) Provincial Legislation Re Federal Corporations .....§244  
    (d) Provincial Legislation Re Foreign Companies .....§249  
9. Criminal Law and Procedure: Scope of Federal Jurisdiction .....  
    .....§250  
    (a) General .....§250  
    (b) Limitation of Federal Power .....§258  
    (c) Interference with Provincial Matters .....§261  
    (d) Extra-Territorial Crimes .....§265  
    (e) Power of Provinces to Fine and Imprison .....§266  
    (f) Gaming and Disorderly Houses .....§274  
    (g) Sunday Observance .....§276  
    (h) Procedure .....§278  
    (i) Habeas Corpus .....§284  
10. Education .....§285  
11. Ferries .....§292  
12. Fisheries .....§294  
    (a) General .....§294  
    (b) Extent of Provincial Rights .....§303  
    (c) Fish Processing .....§306  
    (d) Pursuit of Foreign Vessels .....§307  
13. Indians and Indian Lands .....§308  
14. Interest .....§319  
15. Intoxicating Liquors .....§321  
    (a) Powers of Parliament .....§321  
    (b) Powers of Provinces to Restrict and Prohibit .....§322  
    (c) Power of Provinces to License Brewers, etc., Holding  
        Federal Licences .....§327  
16. Labour Relations .....§328

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (a) General . . . . .  | §328 |
| (b) Hours of Labour . . . . .  | §331 |
| 17. Licences . . . . .   | §332 |
| 18. Local Works and Undertakings . . . . .   | §334 |
| 19. Marriage and Divorce: Solemnization of Marriage . . . . .                              | §339 |
| 20. Militia, Military and Naval Service, and Defence . . . . .                             | §342 |
| 21. Municipal Institutions . . . . .   | §343 |
| 22. Narcotic Drugs . . . . .   | §348 |
| 23. Non-Renewable Natural Resources, Forestry Resources and<br>Electrical Energy . . . . . | §350 |
| 24. Navigation and Shipping . . . . .  | §351 |
| (a) Jurisdiction in General . . . . .  | §351 |
| (b) Federal Jurisdiction over Provincial Crown Lands Cov-<br>ered by Water . . . . .       | §356 |
| (c) Rights of Public in Navigable Waters . . . . .   | §357 |
| (d) Rights of Public in Non-Tidal Waters . . . . .   | §358 |
| 25. Patents of Invention and Discovery . . . . .   | §359 |
| 26. Postal Service . . . . .   | §360 |
| 27. Private and Local Matters . . . . .  | §361 |
| (a) Provincial Powers in General . . . . .   | §361 |
| (b) Early Closing Acts . . . . .   | §364 |
| 28. Property and Civil Rights . . . . .  | §365 |
| (a) Meaning of Term . . . . .  | §365 |
| (b) Grants of Land . . . . .   | §380 |
| (c) Confiscation . . . . .   | §381 |
| (d) Rights Outside Province . . . . .  | §384 |
| 29. Canadian Bill of Rights . . . . .  | §386 |
| 30. Public Discussion — Freedom of Speech and the Press . . . . .                          | §391 |
| 31. Radio Communication . . . . .  | §393 |
| 32. Railways and Other Undertakings . . . . .  | §395 |
| (a) Federal Railways in General . . . . .  | §395 |
| (b) Exacting Levy on Municipal Corporations . . . . .                                      | §398 |
| (c) Actions Against Railways . . . . .   | §399 |
| (d) Provincial Legislation as to Federal Railways . . . . .                                | §402 |
| (e) Federal Legislation Touching Provincial Railways . . . . .                             | §404 |
| (f) Interprovincial Oil Pipelines . . . . .  | §405 |

CONSTITUTIONAL LAW

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (g) Interprovincial Telephone Companies . . . . .   | §406        |
| (h) Interprovincial Water-Power Companies . . . . .   | §408        |
| (i) Declarations Under Subsection 10(c) of Section 92 of<br>the Constitution Act, 1867 . . . . .  | §409        |
| 33. Taxation . . . . .  | §414        |
| (a) Absence of Restrictions on Taxing Powers . . . . .  | §414        |
| (b) Meaning of “Direct Taxation” . . . . .  | §419        |
| (c) Provincial Taxation in General . . . . .  | §425        |
| (d) Succession Duties . . . . .   | §428        |
| (e) Income Taxes . . . . .  | §431        |
| (f) Customs and Excise . . . . .  | §434        |
| (g) Taxes on Legal Proceedings . . . . .  | §435        |
| (h) Taxation of Crown Lands and Property . . . . .  | §436        |
| (i) Taxation of Federal Railways . . . . .  | §440        |
| (j) Free Admission of Articles of Growth, Produce or Man-<br>ufacture between Provinces . . . . . | §441        |
| 34. Trade and Commerce . . . . .  | §443        |
| (a) Meaning of “Regulation of Trade and Commerce” . . . .   | §443        |
| (b) Licensing of Particular Trades . . . . .  | §450        |
| 35. Unemployment Insurance . . . . .  | §451        |
| 36. Weights and Measures . . . . .  | §453        |
| <b>IX. Public Property . . . . .</b>  | <b>§454</b> |
| 1. Provincial Control . . . . .   | §454        |
| 2. Proprietary Rights Distinguished from Legislative Jurisdiction . . . . .                       | §457        |
| 3. Beds of Lakes and Rivers . . . . .   | §460        |
| 4. Public Harbours . . . . .  | §461        |
| 5. Proprietary Rights in Fisheries . . . . .  | §464        |
| 6. Water Rights . . . . .   | §465        |
| 7. Royalties . . . . .  | §466        |
| 8. Lands Reserved for Military Purposes . . . . .   | §467        |
| 9. Transfers of Land Between Federal and Provincial<br>Governments . . . . .                      | §468        |
| 10. Adjustment of Claims Between Canada and Province . . . . .                                    | §471        |
| <b>X. Constitution Act, 1982 . . . . .</b>  | <b>§472</b> |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

1. Charter of Rights and Freedoms . . . . . §472

    (a) Guarantee of Rights and Freedoms . . . . . §472

    (b) Fundamental Freedoms . . . . . §481

        (i) General . . . . . §481

        (ii) Freedom of Conscience and Religion . . . . . §483

        (iii) Freedom of Thought, Belief, Opinion and  
            Expression . . . . . §493

        (iv) Freedom of Peaceful Assembly . . . . . §512

        (v) Freedom of Association . . . . . §514

    (c) Democratic Rights . . . . . §520

    (d) Mobility Rights . . . . . §524

    (e) Legal Rights . . . . . §527

        (i) General . . . . . §527

        (ii) Right to Life, Liberty and Security of Person . . . . §528

        (iii) Search or Seizure . . . . . §568

        (iv) Arbitrary Detention or Imprisonment . . . . . §580

        (v) Rights on Arrest or Detention . . . . . §583

        (vi) Rights in Proceedings on Criminal Matters . . . . §592

        (vii) Treatment or Punishment . . . . . §614

        (viii) Self-crimination . . . . . §615

        (ix) Right to Interpreter . . . . . §621

    (f) Equality Rights . . . . . §622

    (g) Official Languages of Canada . . . . . §637

    (h) Minority Language Educational Rights . . . . . §643

    (i) Enforcement . . . . . §646

    (j) General Provisions as to Interpretation and Application  
        of Charter . . . . . §660

    (k) Application of Charter . . . . . §667

2. Rights of the Aboriginal Peoples of Canada . . . . . §671

3. Equalization and Regional Disparity . . . . . §696

4. Procedure for Amending Constitution . . . . . §698

5. Amendment to the Constitution Act, 1867 . . . . . §701

6. General Provisions . . . . . §702

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agriculture; Aviation; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Carriers; Business Corporations; Courts; Criminal Law (Offences, Defences and Procedure); Crown; Education; Gaming; Fed-

## CONSTITUTIONAL LAW

---

eral and Provincial Taxation; Fish and Game; Human Rights; Immigration and Refugees; Aboriginal Law; Oil and Gas; Parliament and Legislature; Patents; Railways; Shipping; Employment Insurance; War and Emergency; Youth Criminal Justice.

# CONTEMPT OF COURT

prepared by  
Roxanne L. Neufeld, LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>I. Nature of Offence .....</b>   | <b>§1</b>  |
| <b>II. Classifications of Contempts.....</b>                                | <b>§5</b>  |
| 1. Civil Contempt.....  | §5         |
| 2. Criminal Contempt.....   | §8         |
| 3. Contempt in Face of Court.....   | §13        |
| 4. Contempt Not in Face of Court .....                                      | §17        |
| <b>III. Particular Contempts.....</b>                                       | <b>§18</b> |
| 1. Scandalizing the Court.....  | §18        |
| 2. Prejudicing Parties .....  | §19        |
| (a) General .....   | §19        |
| (b) The Press .....   | §23        |
| (c) Elements of Contempt.....   | §29        |
| 3. Counsel .....  | §32        |
| (a) Failure to Appear.....  | §32        |
| (b) Behaviour.....  | §33        |
| 4. Witnesses .....  | §36        |
| 5. Disobedience of Judgments, Particular Orders and Rules of<br>Court ..... | §41        |
| (a) General .....   | §41        |
| (b) Injunctions .....   | §58        |
| (c) Non-Production of Documents.....  | §63        |
| (d) Examination: Failure to Attend or Answer.....                           | §64        |

## CONTEMPT OF COURT

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (e) Proceedings in Aid of Execution.....                | §68         |
| (f) Orders for Payment of Money or Costs .....          | §72         |
| (g) Family Law Orders .....                             | §75         |
| <b>IV. Punishment .....</b>                             | <b>§79</b>  |
| 1. Remedies and Punishment.....                         | §79         |
| (a) Criminal Contempt .....                             | §79         |
| (b) Civil Contempt .....                                | §86         |
| (c) Family Law Considerations .....                     | §99         |
| 2. Purging Contempt and Discharge from Custody.....     | §100        |
| <b>V. Jurisdiction, Procedure and Appeal .....</b>      | <b>§109</b> |
| 1. Jurisdiction .....                                   | §109        |
| 2. Procedure.....                                       | §121        |
| (a) Criminal Contempt .....                             | §121        |
| (i) Commencing Proceedings.....                         | §121        |
| (ii) Procedure at Hearing .....                         | §128        |
| (b) Civil Contempt .....                                | §133        |
| (i) General.....  | §133        |
| (ii) Commencing proceedings.....                        | §136        |
| (iii) Procedure at hearing .....                        | §141        |
| 3. Proceedings by and Against Parties in Contempt ..... | §146        |
| 4. Appeal.....  | §148        |
| (a) Criminal Contempt .....                             | §148        |
| (b) Civil Contempt .....                                | §152        |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Barristers and Solicitors; Courts; Criminal Law — Offences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Discovery; Evidence; Execution; Injunctions; Judgments and Orders; Labour Law; Practice; Public Inquiries; Sentencing; Trials; Youth Criminal Justice

# CONTRACTS

prepared by  
Warren H.O. Mueller, B.A., LL.B., LL.M., Q.C.  
and  
D. Morgan, B.A., LL.B, LL.M.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Basis of Contract</b> . . . . .                             | §1  |
| 1. Contract Defined . . . . .                                     | §1  |
| 2. Consensus Ad Idem . . . . .                                    | §2  |
| 3. Uncertainty and Incompleteness of Terms . . . . .              | §9  |
| 4. Necessity for Formal Written Contract . . . . .                | §17 |
| 5. Intention to Create Legal Obligations . . . . .                | §22 |
| 6. Duty to Negotiate in Good Faith . . . . .                      | §24 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Formation of Contract — Offer and Acceptance</b> . . . . . | §28 |
| 1. Necessity for Offer and Acceptance . . . . .                   | §28 |
| 2. Offer . . . . .  | §32 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §32 |
| (b) Revocation of Offer . . . . .                                 | §39 |
| (c) Time Within Which Offer May Be Accepted . . . . .             | §44 |
| 3. Acceptance . . . . .   | §49 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §49 |
| (b) Acceptance by Conduct or by Inaction . . . . .                | §58 |
| (c) Conditions and Counter-Offer . . . . .                        | §71 |
| (d) Necessity and Manner for Communicating Acceptance . . . . .   | §79 |
| 4. Time and Place of Contract . . . . .                           | §86 |
| 5. Form Contracts Requiring Formal Acceptance . . . . .           | §90 |
| 6. Communication of Fine Print Terms . . . . .                    | §91 |



CONTRACTS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 7. Contracts by Correspondence . . . . .   | §99         |
| <b>III. Consideration for Contract . . . . .</b>                                   | <b>§101</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §101        |
| 2. Consideration to Move from Promisee . . . . .                                   | §105        |
| 3. Nature of Consideration . . . . .   | §108        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §108        |
| (b) Mutual Promises . . . . .  | §112        |
| (c) Forbearance . . . . .  | §114        |
| (d) Compromise . . . . .   | §120        |
| (e) Extension of Time . . . . .  | §123        |
| (f) Money . . . . .  | §126        |
| (g) Collateral Agreements . . . . .  | §127        |
| 4. Adequacy of Consideration . . . . .   | §128        |
| 5. Promises Forming Part of Consideration for Comprehensive<br>Contracts . . . . . | §130        |
| 6. Past Consideration and Existing Duty . . . . .                                  | §131        |
| 7. Voluntary (Charitable) Subscriptions . . . . .                                  | §136        |
| 8. Promissory Estoppel . . . . .   | §139        |
| <b>IV. Parties to a Contract . . . . .</b>   | <b>§148</b> |
| 1. Joint and Several Contracts . . . . .   | §148        |
| 2. Capacity to Contract . . . . .  | §154        |
| (a) Natural Persons . . . . .  | §154        |
| (i) Contracting with Oneself . . . . .   | §154        |
| (ii) Married Women . . . . .   | §155        |
| (iii) Infants (Minors) — British Columbia . . . . .                                | §156        |
| (iv) Infants (Minors) — Provinces Other than British<br>Columbia . . . . .         | §164        |
| (v) Intoxicated Persons . . . . .  | §172        |
| (vi) Mentally Incompetent Persons . . . . .  | §173        |
| (b) Artificial Entities . . . . .  | §180        |
| (i) The Crown . . . . .  | §180        |
| (ii) Municipal Corporations . . . . .  | §181        |
| (iii) Unincorporated Associations . . . . .  | §183        |
| (iv) Corporations . . . . .  | §184        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 3. Contracting as Principal or Agent . . . . .                 | §185        |
| 4. Corporate versus Personal Liability . . . . .               | §189        |
| 5. Privity of Contract . . . . .                               | §195        |
| (a) General Rule . . . . .                                     | §195        |
| (b) Principled Exceptions . . . . .                            | §199        |
| (c) Other Exceptions to Privity Doctrine . . . . .             | §204        |
| (i) Agency . . . . .   | §204        |
| (ii) Trusteeship . . . . .                                     | §211        |
| (iii) Specific Performance . . . . .                           | §213        |
| (iv) Assignment and Novation . . . . .                         | §215        |
| (v) Law Reform and Statutory Exceptions . . . . .              | §218        |
| (vi) Death . . . . .   | §223        |
| <b>V. Mistake, Non Est Factum, and Rectification . . . . .</b> | <b>§224</b> |
| 1. Mistake . . . . .   | §224        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §224        |
| (b) Mutual Mistake . . . . .                                   | §230        |
| (c) Common Mistake . . . . .                                   | §233        |
| (i) Common Law . . . . .                                       | §234        |
| (ii) Equity . . . . .  | §241        |
| (d) Unilateral Mistake . . . . .                               | §246        |
| (e) Mistake of Identity . . . . .                              | §248        |
| (f) Rescission . . . . .                                       | §256        |
| 2. Non Est Factum . . . . .                                    | §258        |
| 3. Rectification . . . . .                                     | §274        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §274        |
| (b) Common Mistakes . . . . .                                  | §275        |
| (c) Unilateral Mistake . . . . .                               | §278        |
| (d) Onus and Burden of Proof . . . . .                         | §282        |
| (e) Evidence Admissible to Justify Rectification . . . . .     | §283        |
| (f) Extent of Relief Available . . . . .                       | §287        |
| (g) Bars to Rectification . . . . .                            | §290        |
| (h) Practice and Procedure . . . . .                           | §293        |
| <b>VI. Statute of Frauds — Writing Requirements . . . . .</b>  | <b>§296</b> |
| 1. Scope . . . . .   | §296        |

CONTRACTS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .   | §296        |
| (b) Contracts Not to be Performed Within a Year of Their<br>Making . . . . .        | §307        |
| (c) The Memorandum . . . . .  | §316        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §316        |
| (ii) Documents Read Together . . . . .  | §323        |
| (iii) Parties . . . . .   | §326        |
| (iv) Agency . . . . .   | §329        |
| (v) Subject Matter . . . . .  | §333        |
| (vi) Essential Terms . . . . .  | §337        |
| (vii) The Signature . . . . .   | §346        |
| A. General . . . . .  | §346        |
| B. Agency . . . . .   | §353        |
| 2. Effect of Statute of Frauds . . . . .  | §355        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §355        |
| (b) Frauds and the Statute of Frauds . . . . .                                      | §362        |
| (c) Enforcement of the Contract . . . . .   | §366        |
| (d) Collateral Contract . . . . .   | §368        |
| (e) Severable Covenants . . . . .   | §369        |
| 3. Variation and Rescission of Contracts Governed by Statute of<br>Frauds . . . . . | §371        |
| 4. Part Performance . . . . .   | §375        |
| (a) Theoretical Framework . . . . .   | §375        |
| (b) Practical Applications . . . . .  | §381        |
| 5. Pleading the Statute of Frauds . . . . .   | §388        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Substantive Illegality in Contract Law . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§392</b> |
| 1. Illegality — General . . . . .   | §392        |
| 2. Statutory Illegality . . . . .   | §394        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §394        |
| (b) Specific Illustrations . . . . .  | §404        |
| (c) Time Element . . . . .  | §408        |
| 3. Public Policy . . . . .  | §411        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §411        |
| (b) Contracts to Commit Illegal Acts . . . . .                                      | §418        |
| (c) Contracts Contrary to the Interests of the State . . . . .                      | §421        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Domestic Affairs . . . . .   | §421        |
| (ii) Foreign Affairs . . . . .   | §426        |
| (d) Contracts Injurious to the Administration of Justice . . .                         | §428        |
| (i) Stifling Prosecutions . . . . .  | §428        |
| (ii) Other Corrupt Agreements . . . . .  | §432        |
| (e) Contracts Ousting Jurisdiction of the Court . . . . .                              | §438        |
| 4. Contracts Collateral to an Illegal Purpose . . . . .                                | §441        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §441        |
| (b) Effect of Foreign Law . . . . .  | §448        |
| 5. Contracts in Restraint of Trade . . . . .   | §450        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §450        |
| (b) Agreements of Employment, Sale and Partnership . . . .                             | §461        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §461        |
| (ii) Legitimate Interest Requiring Protection . . . . .                                | §467        |
| (iii) Restrictions Respecting Customers . . . . .                                      | §469        |
| (iv) Restrictions Respecting Businesses and Employee<br>Capacities . . . . .           | §470        |
| (v) Geographic and Temporal Restrictions . . . . .                                     | §473        |
| (vi) Deprivation of Benefits . . . . .   | §476        |
| (c) Agreements Between Business Enterprises (Other than<br>Sale of Business) . . . . . | §478        |
| (d) Agreements Between or Respecting Employees . . . . .                               | §489        |
| 6. Effect of Illegality . . . . .  | §491        |
| (a) Enforcement of Contract . . . . .  | §491        |
| (b) Recovery of Consideration Paid or Conveyed . . . . .                               | §501        |
| 7. Severance of Illegal Clauses, Provisions and Contracts . . . .                      | §507        |
| 8. Pleading and Proof . . . . .  | §514        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VIII. Duress, Undue Influence, and Unconscionability . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§521</b> |
| 1. Duress . . . . .  | §521        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §521        |
| (b) Economic Duress . . . . .  | §527        |
| (c) Legal Effect of Duress on Contract . . . . .                                       | §530        |
| 2. Undue Influence . . . . .   | §532        |
| 3. Unconscionability . . . . .   | §543        |

CONTRACTS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>IX. Interpretation of Contract</b> . . . . .  | §552 |
| 1. General Principles . . . . .  | §552 |
| 2. Ambiguity . . . . .   | §562 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §562 |
| (b) Parol Evidence Rule — Extrinsic Evidence Confirming<br>and Clarifying Ambiguity . . . . .                        | §564 |
| (c) Effect of Subsequent Conduct of Parties . . . . .  | §568 |
| (d) Other Exceptions to Parol Evidence Rule — Collateral<br>Statements and Contracts; Subsequent Contracts . . . . . | §572 |
| (e) Choice Between Alternative Interpretations . . . . .   | §578 |
| (f) Construction Against Stipulator — Contra Proferentem . . . . .   | §582 |
| 3. Recitals . . . . .  | §587 |
| 4. Contracts Formed by Correspondence; Renewal Agreements . . . . .  | §591 |
| 5. Contracts Partly Printed and Partly Written . . . . .   | §594 |
| 6. Typographical Errors . . . . .  | §596 |
| 7. Words of Estimate or Expectation . . . . .  | §597 |
| 8. Maxims of Interpretation . . . . .  | §603 |
| (a) Expressio Unius Est Exclusio Alterius . . . . .  | §603 |
| (b) Expressum Facit Cessare Tacitum . . . . .  | §605 |
| (c) Noscitur a Sociis . . . . .  | §606 |
| (d) The Ejusdem Generis Principle . . . . .  | §607 |
| 9. Other Principles Respecting Contractual Terminology . . . . .   | §611 |
| 10. Options . . . . .  | §617 |
| 11. Indemnities . . . . .  | §619 |
| 12. Exclusionary and Limitation Clauses . . . . .  | §621 |
| 13. Burden of Proof . . . . .  | §631 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>X. Implied Terms of Contract</b> . . . . .  | §633 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §633 |
| 2. Terms Implied as Matter of Business Efficacy . . . . .  | §639 |
| 3. Terms Implied on Basis of Custom and Usage . . . . .  | §641 |
| 4. Course of Dealings . . . . .  | §649 |
| 5. Terms Implied as Legal Incidents of Contract . . . . .  | §651 |
| 6. Specific Types of Implied Terms . . . . .   | §652 |
| (a) Title . . . . .  | §652 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

- (b) Standards of Quality, Service and Safety . . . . . §653
- (c) Duty of Co-operation and Good Faith . . . . . §661
- (d) Contracts to Supply and Contracts of Supply . . . . . §662
- (e) Compensation Including that for Unsolicited Benefits  
and “Extras” . . . . . §663
- (f) Collections . . . . . §670
- (g) Indemnification . . . . . §671
- (h) Restraint on Competition . . . . . §676
- (i) Notice . . . . . §679
- 7. Duration of Contract . . . . . §681
  
- XI. Express Terms; Performance of Contract . . . . . §686**
  - 1. Express Terms . . . . . §686
    - (a) Classification of Terms — Conditions, Warranties, and  
Innominate Terms . . . . . §686
    - (b) Conditions Precedent and Promissory Conditions . . . . . §690
    - (c) Conditions Subsequent . . . . . §697
  - 2. Performance . . . . . §701
    - (a) General . . . . . §701
    - (b) Alternative Promises . . . . . §702
    - (c) Dependent and Independent Obligations . . . . . §705
    - (d) Options as to Performance . . . . . §709
    - (e) Express and Constructive Conditions Excusing Non-  
Performance . . . . . §713
    - (f) Incomplete Performance . . . . . §719
    - (g) Instalment Contracts . . . . . §726
    - (h) Time for Performance . . . . . §732
      - (i) General . . . . . §732
      - (ii) Time of the Essence . . . . . §740
      - (iii) Extension and Waiver of Time for Performance . . . . .  
. . . . . §749
    - (i) Duty of Good Faith in Performing Contracts . . . . . §752
      - (i) General . . . . . §752
      - (ii) Implied Duty of Co-operation . . . . . §756
      - (iii) Preventing Other Party from Acquiring Promised  
Benefits . . . . . §757
      - (iv) One Party as Judge of Other’s Performance . . . . . §765

CONTRACTS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (j) Waiver . . . . .   | §773        |
| (k) Total Failure of Consideration . . . . .                           | §791        |
| (l) Relief from Forfeiture . . . . .                                   | §796        |
| <b>XII. Discharge of Contract . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§797</b> |
| 1. Frustration . . . . .   | §797        |
| (a) What Constitutes Frustration of Contract . . . . .                 | §797        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §797        |
| (ii) Frustration by Physical Destruction of an Object . . . . .        | §800        |
| (iii) Frustration of Purpose or Function . . . . .                     | §801        |
| (iv) Frustration by Acts of State; Supervening<br>Illegality . . . . . | §802        |
| (v) Economic Loss Less than Frustration . . . . .                      | §805        |
| (vi) Supervening Impecuniosity . . . . .                               | §806        |
| (vii) Frustration Affecting Only Part of Contract . . . . .            | §807        |
| (b) Elements of Frustration . . . . .                                  | §809        |
| (i) Foresight . . . . .  | §809        |
| (ii) Fault . . . . .   | §810        |
| (iii) Time Factor . . . . .  | §811        |
| (c) Specific Applications of Doctrine . . . . .                        | §812        |
| (i) Particular Sources of Supply . . . . .                             | §812        |
| (ii) Particular Methods of Delivery . . . . .                          | §813        |
| (iii) Partial Destruction . . . . .                                    | §814        |
| (iv) Interests in Land — Leases . . . . .                              | §815        |
| (v) Interests in Sale of Land . . . . .                                | §816        |
| (vi) Death . . . . .   | §817        |
| (vii) Sickness . . . . .   | §821        |
| (viii) Retirement . . . . .  | §822        |
| (d) Effect of Frustration . . . . .                                    | §823        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §823        |
| (ii) Contracts for Future Credit . . . . .                             | §824        |
| (iii) Option Contracts . . . . .                                       | §825        |
| (iv) Bailment Contracts . . . . .                                      | §826        |
| (v) Effect of War . . . . .  | §827        |
| (e) Frustrated Contracts Legislation . . . . .                         | §828        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(i) Purpose and Scope . . . . . §828  
(ii) Operation . . . . . §829  
(iii) Insurance . . . . . §831

2. Discharge by Agreement . . . . . §832

(a) Variation and Cancellation . . . . . §832

(i) Modification of Contractual Provisions . . . . . §832  
(ii) Parol Rescission or Variation of Written Contracts . . . . . §837  
(iii) Variation of Contracts Under Seal . . . . . §839  
(iv) Provisions and Agreements for Cancellation of Contracts . . . . . §841

(b) Accord and Satisfaction . . . . . §849

(i) General . . . . . §849  
(ii) Satisfaction . . . . . §851  
(iii) Scope . . . . . §853  
(iv) Legislation . . . . . §855  
(v) Intimidation . . . . . §858

3. Discharge by Breach of Contract . . . . . §859

(a) What Constitutes Repudiation of Contract . . . . . §859

(i) Repudiation of Contract Generally . . . . . §859  
(ii) Breach Justifying Repudiation — Substantial or Fundamental Breach . . . . . §860  
(iii) Breach Justifying Repudiation — Anticipatory Breach . . . . . §862

(b) Choices Available on Repudiation of Contract . . . . . §871

(c) Notification of Election to Accept Contract as Repudiated . . . . . §885

(d) Mutual Rescission or Abandonment as Alternative to Notification of Acceptance of Repudiation . . . . . §888

(e) Remedies for Repudiation of Contract . . . . . §892

(f) Effect of Fundamental Breach of Contract on Exculpatory and Other Clauses . . . . . §899

4. Discharge by Operation of Law . . . . . §905

(a) Merger . . . . . §905  
(b) Suspension . . . . . §908  
(c) Forfeiture . . . . . §909  
(d) Material Alteration of Document . . . . . §910



CONTRACTS

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>XIII. Assignment and Novation</b> . . . . .                            | §911 |
| 1. Assignment . . . . .   | §911 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §911 |
| (b) Notice of Assignment . . . . .  | §915 |
| (c) Assignment of Future Choses in Action . . . . .                       | §920 |
| (d) Limitations on Assignability . . . . .                                | §921 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §921 |
| (ii) Mere Rights of Action . . . . .                                      | §925 |
| (iii) Covenants Against Assignment . . . . .                              | §927 |
| (iv) When Consent to Assignment Required . . . . .                        | §928 |
| (e) Subcontracting . . . . .  | §934 |
| (f) Equities to Which Assignment Subject . . . . .                        | §936 |
| (g) Set-off of Third-Party Debtor's Claims Against Assignor . . . . .     | §941 |
| (h) Priority Among Assignees . . . . .                                    | §942 |
| (i) Consideration for Assignment . . . . .                                | §943 |
| (j) Assignor's Position After Assignment . . . . .                        | §944 |
| (k) Maintenance of Actions — Joinder of Parties . . . . .                 | §946 |
| 2. Novation . . . . .   | §950 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XIV. Remedies for Breach of Contract</b> . . . . .                     | §964 |
| 1. Damages and Specific Performance . . . . .                             | §964 |
| 2. Concurrent or Alternative Liability . . . . .                          | §965 |
| (a) Contract and Tort Generally . . . . .                                 | §965 |
| (b) Negligent Misrepresentation . . . . .                                 | §971 |
| (c) Contribution and Contributory Negligence . . . . .                    | §977 |
| 3. Equitable Rescission . . . . .   | §980 |
| (a) Nature and Basis of Equitable Rescission . . . . .                    | §980 |
| (b) Affirmation and Delay in Rescinding . . . . .                         | §982 |
| 4. Stipulated Remedy Clauses in Common Law and Equity . . . . .           | §989 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §989 |
| (b) Penalty and Liquidated Damages Clauses . . . . .                      | §994 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §994 |
| (ii) Tests for Distinguishing Penalties from Liquidated Damages . . . . . | §997 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(iii) Graduated Damages . . . . . §1001  
(iv) Holdback Provisions . . . . . §1003  
(v) Reversion and Reimbursement . . . . . §1004  
(vi) Acceleration and Minimum Payment Clauses . . . §1005  
(c) Clauses Limiting Damages . . . . . §1006  
(d) Deposits and Part Payments . . . . . §1008

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Arbitration; Bills of Exchange; Building Contracts; Business Corporations; Conflict of Laws; Crown; Damages; Deeds and Documents; Employment Law; Estoppel; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Infants and Children; Insurance; Labour Law; Limitation of Actions; Mental Incapacity; Mortgages; Partnership; Real Property; Restitution; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Specific Performance; Torts; Wrongful Dismissal Western.

# CO-OPERATIVES

prepared by  
Brenda Jean Currie, B.A., LL.B.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                  | \$1  |
| 1. General .....                              | \$1  |
| 2. Maintenance of Co-operative Status .....   | \$6  |
| <b>II. Incorporating a Co-operative</b> ..... | \$9  |
| 1. Application to Incorporate .....           | \$9  |
| 2. Certificate of Incorporation .....         | \$20 |
| 3. By-Laws and Amendments to By-Laws .....    | \$26 |
| 4. Pre-Incorporation Contracts .....          | \$41 |
| <b>III. Name of Co-operative</b> .....        | \$46 |
| 1. Form, Display and Use of Other Names ..... | \$46 |
| 2. Prohibited and Improper Use of Name.....   | \$51 |
| 3. Change of Name .....                       | \$53 |
| 4. Reservation of Name .....                  | \$56 |
| <b>IV. Legal Capacity and Powers</b> .....    | \$58 |
| 1. General .....                              | \$58 |
| 2. Restriction on Powers .....                | \$60 |
| 3. Knowledge of Articles and By-laws .....    | \$65 |
| 4. Reliance on Co-operative's Records .....   | \$66 |
| 5. Validity of Acts.....                      | \$67 |
| <b>V. Records</b> .....                       | \$68 |

CO-OPERATIVES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Maintenance of Records .....                        | §68         |
| 2. Access to Records.....                              | §76         |
| 3. Form of Records .....                               | §85         |
| 4. Lists .....   | §87         |
| <b>VI. Members .....</b>                               | <b>§94</b>  |
| 1. General .....                                       | §94         |
| 2. Becoming a Member.....                              | §97         |
| 3. Cessation of Membership .....                       | §103        |
| (a) Withdrawal.....                                    | §103        |
| (b) Termination by Directors and Members .....         | §107        |
| (c) Redemption of Shares and Loans .....               | §114        |
| (d) Reserve Fund for Missing Members .....             | §119        |
| (e) Termination of Inactive Memberships.....           | §121        |
| 4. Readmission to Membership .....                     | §122        |
| 5. Transfer of Membership .....                        | §124        |
| 6. Joint Memberships .....                             | §129        |
| <b>VII. Meetings.....</b>                              | <b>§137</b> |
| 1. Location and Manner of Meetings.....                | §137        |
| 2. First Meeting of Members.....                       | §144        |
| 3. Annual and Special Meetings.....                    | §148        |
| 4. Notice of Meetings .....                            | §162        |
| 5. Requisition for Meeting.....                        | §172        |
| 6. Meeting Called by Registrar or Court .....          | §181        |
| <b>VIII. Directors and Officers.....</b>               | <b>§183</b> |
| 1. General .....                                       | §183        |
| 2. First Directors .....                               | §186        |
| 3. Functions and Duties of Directors and Officers..... | §190        |
| 4. Election and Appointment of Directors .....         | §196        |
| 5. Terms and Vacancies for Directors.....              | §202        |
| 6. Resignation and Termination of Directors.....       | §204        |
| 7. Meetings and Quorum of Directors .....              | §207        |
| 8. Liability of Directors .....                        | §214        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 9. Disclosure of Interests by Directors and Officers.....      | \$219        |
| 10. Officers.....  | \$231        |
| 11. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.....             | \$233        |
| <b>IX. Share Capital Structure.....</b>                        | <b>\$241</b> |
| 1. General.....  | \$241        |
| 2. Membership and Investment or Preference Shares.....         | \$242        |
| 3. Constraints on Shares.....                                  | \$266        |
| 4. Corporate Finance.....                                      | \$269        |
| (a) General.....   | \$269        |
| (b) Capital Account.....                                       | \$271        |
| (c) Conversion Privileges.....                                 | \$274        |
| (d) Holding, Acquiring and Redeeming Shares.....               | \$276        |
| (e) Dividends and Patronage Returns.....                       | \$286        |
| (f) Security Issues.....                                       | \$293        |
| 5. Loans and Guarantees.....                                   | \$297        |
| 6. Insider Trading.....  | \$304        |
| 7. Compulsory Acquisition.....                                 | \$306        |
| <b>X. Voting.....</b>  | <b>\$308</b> |
| 1. General.....  | \$308        |
| 2. Proxies.....  | \$311        |
| (a) Members.....   | \$311        |
| (b) Investment Shareholders.....                               | \$315        |
| 3. Delegate Voting.....  | \$318        |
| <b>XI. Security Certificates, Registers and Transfers.....</b> | <b>\$324</b> |
| 1. Security Certificates and Transfers.....                    | \$324        |
| 2. Registers.....  | \$334        |
| <b>XII. Financial Disclosure.....</b>                          | <b>\$340</b> |
| <b>XIII. Trust Indentures.....</b>                             | <b>\$344</b> |
| <b>XIV. Fundamental Changes.....</b>                           | <b>\$349</b> |

## CO-OPERATIVES

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>XV. Investigations and Inspections</b> .....                  | §367 |
| 1. Inspections .....   | §367 |
| 2. Court-Ordered Investigations .....                            | §373 |
| <b>XVI. Receivers, Receiver-Managers and Sequestrators</b> ..... | §378 |
| <b>XVII. Winding Up, Liquidation and Dissolution</b> .....       | §381 |
| 1. General .....   | §381 |
| (a) Voluntary .....  | §381 |
| (b) Order by Court .....   | §387 |
| (c) Cancellation or Dissolution by Director or Registrar ...     | §389 |
| 2. Liquidation and Distribution .....                            | §397 |
| 3. Continuance of Actions .....                                  | §407 |
| 4. Unknown Claimants .....                                       | §408 |
| 5. Revival .....   | §410 |
| <b>XVIII. Remedies, Offences and Penalties</b> .....             | §414 |
| 1. Court Intervention .....                                      | §414 |
| 2. Penalties .....   | §425 |
| <b>XIX. Extra-Provincial Cooperatives and Matters</b> .....      | §428 |
| <b>XX. Specific Cooperatives</b> .....                           | §433 |
| 1. Housing Cooperatives .....                                    | §433 |
| 2. Employment or Worker Cooperatives .....                       | §453 |
| 3. Multi-Stakeholder Cooperatives .....                          | §458 |
| 4. Federated Cooperatives .....                                  | §460 |
| 5. Other Specific Cooperatives .....                             | §462 |

### Index

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agriculture; Associations and Non-for-Profit Corporations; Banking, Business Corporations; Labour Law; Landlord and Tenant

# COPYRIGHT

prepared by  
John McKeown, B.Comm., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Treaties and Conventions**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Definition and Nature of Copyright</b> . . . . .                                     | §1  |
| <b>II. Copyright Prior to January 1, 1924</b> . . . . .                                    | §5  |
| <b>III. Current Legislation</b> . . . . .  | §7  |
| <b>IV. Acquisition of Copyright</b> . . . . .  | §16 |
| <b>V. International Aspects of Copyright</b> . . . . .                                     | §25 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §25 |
| 2. Berne Convention . . . . .  | §28 |
| 3. Universal Copyright Convention . . . . .  | §29 |
| 4. Rome Convention . . . . .   | §31 |
| 5. Geneva Convention . . . . .   | §33 |
| 6. North American Free Trade Agreement . . . . .   | §34 |
| 7. Agreement on Trade Related Aspects of Intellectual Property<br>Rights (TRIPs) . . . . . | §35 |
| 8. Reciprocal Agreements Extending Copyright . . . . .                                     | §37 |
| <b>VI. Subject-Matter of Copyright</b> . . . . .   | §38 |
| 1. Originality . . . . .   | §38 |
| 2. Ideas and Schemes . . . . .   | §42 |

## COPYRIGHT

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 3. Immoral Works . . . . .   | §43         |
| 4. Unpublished Works . . . . .   | §44         |
| 5. Publication in Breach of Confidence . . . . .                                       | §46         |
| 6. Literary Works . . . . .  | §47         |
| 7. Computer Programs . . . . .   | §57         |
| (a) Before June 8, 1988 . . . . .  | §57         |
| (b) After June 8, 1988 . . . . .   | §58         |
| 8. Dramatic Works . . . . .  | §63         |
| 9. Cinematographic Works . . . . .   | §68         |
| 10. Musical Works . . . . .  | §72         |
| 11. Artistic Works . . . . .   | §76         |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §76         |
| (b) Architectural Works . . . . .  | §87         |
| 12. Performers Rights . . . . .  | §90         |
| 13. Sound Recordings . . . . .   | §97         |
| 14. The Right to Remuneration . . . . .  | §101        |
| 15. The Rights of Broadcasters . . . . .   | §103        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VII. Term of Copyright . . . . .</b>  | <b>§106</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §106        |
| 2. Anonymous and Pseudonymous Works . . . . .  | §107        |
| 3. Posthumous Works . . . . .  | §110        |
| 4. Works of Joint Authorship . . . . .   | §114        |
| 5. Photographs . . . . .   | §116        |
| 6. Cinematographic Works . . . . .   | §120        |
| 7. Crown Copyright . . . . .   | §122        |
| 8. Performer's Performances, Sound Recordings and Communi-<br>cation Signals . . . . . | §123        |
| 9. Miscellaneous . . . . .   | §125        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VIII. Ownership of Copyright . . . . .</b>  | <b>§127</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §127        |
| 2. Collective Works . . . . .  | §131        |
| 3. Compilations . . . . .  | §134        |
| 4. Works of Joint Authorship . . . . .   | §135        |
| 5. Photographs, Engravings and Portraits . . . . .                                     | §138        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 6. Cinematographic Works . . . . .                               | §141        |
| 7. Sound Recordings . . . . .                                    | §143        |
| 8. Corporations . . . . .  | §145        |
| 9. Employment Situations . . . . .                               | §146        |
| 10. Crown and Government Works . . . . .                         | §151        |
| <b>IX. Moral Rights . . . . .</b>                                | <b>§155</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §155        |
| 2. Term . . . . .  | §161        |
| 3. Assignment and Waiver . . . . .                               | §163        |
| <b>X. Assignment, Transmission And Licence . . . . .</b>         | <b>§164</b> |
| 1. Assignment . . . . .  | §164        |
| 2. Devolution . . . . .  | §173        |
| 3. Bankruptcy . . . . .  | §174        |
| 4. Licence . . . . .   | §176        |
| 5. Licence where Owner Cannot be Located . . . . .               | §180        |
| <b>XI. Registration of Copyright . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§182</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §182        |
| 2. Rectification of Register . . . . .                           | §186        |
| <b>XII. Infringement of Copyright and Moral Rights . . . . .</b> | <b>§187</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §187        |
| 2. Authorizing Infringement . . . . .                            | §192        |
| 3. Right to Produce or Reproduce a Work . . . . .                | §196        |
| 4. Private Copying . . . . .                                     | §203        |
| 5. Literary Works . . . . .                                      | §208        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §208        |
| (b) Compilations . . . . .                                       | §209        |
| (c) Computer Programs . . . . .                                  | §210        |
| 6. Dramatic Works . . . . .                                      | §212        |
| 7. Musical Works . . . . .                                       | §215        |
| 8. Artistic Works . . . . .                                      | §219        |
| 9. Designs Applied to Useful Articles . . . . .                  | §223        |
| (a) Designs Created Before June 8, 1988 . . . . .                | §223        |

COPYRIGHT

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Designs Created After June 8, 1988 . . . . .  | §227        |
| 10. Performing Right . . . . .  | §235        |
| 11. Right to Communicate a Work to the Public by<br>Telecommunication . . . . .                           | §237        |
| 12. Right to Rent Computer Programs . . . . .   | §245        |
| 13. Right to Rent Sound Recordings of Musical Works . . . . .   | §246        |
| 14. Rights Relating to Performers Performances, Sound Record-<br>ings and Communication Signals . . . . . | §247        |
| 15. Infringement of Moral Rights . . . . .  | §248        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XIII. Secondary Infringement . . . . .</b>   | <b>§253</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .   | §253        |
| 2. General Prohibition . . . . .  | §254        |
| 3. Parallel Importation of Books . . . . .  | §262        |
| 4. Permitting Public Performances . . . . .   | §267        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XIV. Lawful Use of Copyright Works . . . . .</b>   | <b>§271</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §271        |
| 2. Fair Dealing . . . . .   | §272        |
| 3. Educational Institutions . . . . .   | §280        |
| 4. Libraries, Archives and Museums . . . . .  | §285        |
| 5. Machines Installed in Educational Institutions, Libraries,<br>Archives and Museums . . . . .           | §290        |
| 6. National Archives of Canada . . . . .  | §293        |
| 7. Computer Programs . . . . .  | §294        |
| 8. Incidental Inclusion . . . . .   | §296        |
| 9. Ephemeral and Pre-Recorded Recordings . . . . .  | §297        |
| 10. Retransmission . . . . .  | §301        |
| 11. Persons With Perceptual Disabilities . . . . .  | §303        |
| 12. Statutory Obligations . . . . .   | §304        |
| 13. Artistic Works and Moulds . . . . .   | §306        |
| 14. Works in Public Places . . . . .  | §307        |
| 15. Newspaper Reports of Public Lectures . . . . .  | §308        |
| 16. Public Reading of Extracts . . . . .  | §309        |
| 17. Newspaper Reports of Political Addresses . . . . .  | §310        |
| 18. Performance of Musical Works at Agricultural Exhibitions . . . . .                                    | §311        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

19. Performance by Religious, Educational, Charitable or Fraternal Bodies .....§313

**XV. Civil Remedies for Infringement .....§315**

1. General .....§315

2. Jurisdiction .....§316

3. Limitation Periods .....§318

4. Parties .....§319

    (a) Owner .....§319

    (b) Joint Owners .....§320

    (c) Parties Deriving an Interest From the Owner .....§321

    (d) Licensees .....§323

    (e) Defendants .....§324

    (f) Joinder of Actions .....§326

5. Pleadings .....§327

6. Particulars .....§328

7. Defences .....§330

8. Interlocutory Injunctions .....§335

    (a) General .....§335

    (b) Discretionary Remedy .....§337

    (c) Threshold Test .....§338

    (d) Serious Question to be Tried .....§341

    (e) Irreparable Harm, Balance of Convenience and Status Quo .....§343

    (f) Delay .....§345

    (g) Clear Violation of Copyright .....§346

9. Anton Piller Orders .....§347

10. Summary Applications .....§353

11. Evidence at Trial .....§354

    (a) Evidence of Copying .....§354

    (b) Expert Evidence .....§356

12. Presumptions .....§357

13. Permanent Injunction .....§360

14. Damages .....§367

15. Statutory Damages .....§372

16. Account of Profits .....§377

COPYRIGHT

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 17. Recovery of Possession of Infringing Copies . . . . .  | §378        |
| 18. Delivery Up . . . . .  | §382        |
| 19. Costs . . . . .  | §383        |
| 20. Seizure of Imported Copies . . . . .   | §384        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §384        |
| (b) Books . . . . .  | §389        |
| (c) Other Subject Matter . . . . .   | §391        |
| (d) Exceptions . . . . .   | §392        |
| <b>XVI. Penalties for Infringement . . . . .</b>   | <b>§394</b> |
| 1. Copyright Act . . . . .   | §394        |
| 2. Criminal Code . . . . .   | §401        |
| <b>XVII. Copyright Board . . . . .</b>   | <b>§402</b> |
| <b>XVIII. Collective Administration of Performing Rights and of<br/>    Communication Rights . . . . .</b> | <b>§415</b> |
| <b>XIX. Collective Administration . . . . .</b>  | <b>§431</b> |
| <b>XX. Royalties in Particular Cases . . . . .</b>   | <b>§439</b> |
| <b>XXI. Delivery of Copies of Books to National Library . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§447</b> |
| <b>XXII. Integrated Circuit Topography Act . . . . .</b>   | <b>§449</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §449        |
| 2. Exclusive Right . . . . .   | §451        |
| 3. Originality . . . . .   | §454        |
| 4. Registration . . . . .  | §456        |
| 5. Infringement . . . . .  | §467        |
| 6. Action for Infringement . . . . .   | §469        |
| 7. Interface with Copyright Act . . . . .  | §476        |

**Index**

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

*Related titles:* Costs; Injunctions; Patents; Pleadings; Trade Marks and Industrial Design.

# CORONERS AND MEDICAL EXAMINERS

prepared by  
The Honourable Justice T.D. Marshall, M.D.  
*of the Ontario Court of Justice (General Division)*  
Brian H. Lutz, B.Sc., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Nature and Jurisdiction</b> .....             | §1  |
| 1. Introduction .....                               | §1  |
| 2. Constitutional Position .....                    | §3  |
| 3. Appointment .....                                | §7  |
| (a) Alberta.....                                    | §7  |
| (b) Manitoba .....                                  | §10 |
| (c) British Columbia, Ontario and Saskatchewan..... | §11 |
| 4. Chief, Deputy and Regional Coroners .....        | §12 |
| 5. Jurisdiction .....                               | §13 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §13 |
| (b) Territorial .....                               | §15 |
| (c) Over Body.....                                  | §20 |
| (d) Disqualification.....                           | §26 |
| <b>II. The Investigation</b> .....                  | §32 |
| 1. Duty to Report .....                             | §32 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                    | §32 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                          | §38 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                  | §41 |
| (d) Ontario .....                                   | §44 |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....                              | §47 |

## CORONERS AND MEDICAL EXAMINERS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 2. Investigative Powers and Duties .....                       | §50         |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §50         |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                     | §64         |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §73         |
| (d) Ontario .....  | §87         |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....   | §93         |
| <b>III. Inquest and Public Inquiry .....</b>                   | <b>§98</b>  |
| 1. Purpose .....   | §98         |
| 2. Ordering Inquest or Public Inquiry .....                    | §103        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §103        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                     | §108        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §113        |
| (d) Ontario .....  | §117        |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....   | §122        |
| 3. Procedure.....  | §125        |
| (a) Jury.....  | §125        |
| (b) Persons with Standing.....                                 | §134        |
| (c) Witnesses .....  | §144        |
| (i) Compelling Attendance.....                                 | §144        |
| (ii) Protection Against Self-Incrimination .....               | §153        |
| (d) Evidence.....  | §159        |
| (e) Keeping Order .....  | §173        |
| (f) Adjournment.....   | §175        |
| (g) Verdict and Recommendations .....                          | §176        |
| (h) Report of Findings .....                                   | §184        |
| <b>IV. Judicial Review, Civil Liability and Offences .....</b> | <b>§190</b> |
| 1. Judicial Review .....                                       | §190        |
| 2. Civil Liability .....                                       | §202        |
| 3. Offences.....   | §207        |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Barristers and Solicitors; Burial and Cremation; Criminal Law — Procedure; Hospitals; Professions and Occupations; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Public Inquiries; Vital Statistics

# COSTS

prepared by  
Rosemary Bocska, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

## Table of Regulations

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. Nature and Function</b> .....                   | \$1  |
| 1. Nature .....                                       | \$1  |
| 2. Jurisdiction and Discretion as to Costs.....       | \$9  |
| (a) Legislated Factors.....                           | \$9  |
| (b) Principles Guiding Exercise of Discretion.....    | \$12 |
| (c) Two Scales of Costs Awards.....                   | \$21 |
| (d) Departure from Usual Rule.....                    | \$31 |
| 3. Persons Entitled to or Liable for Costs .....      | \$33 |
| (a) Crown.....  | \$33 |
| (b) Intervenor or Non-Party to Action .....           | \$41 |
| (c) Self-Represented Litigants .....                  | \$53 |
| (d) Party Not Liable to Solicitor .....               | \$58 |
| (i) General.....                                      | \$58 |
| (ii) Party Employing Salaried Solicitor.....          | \$63 |
| (e) Solicitor Personally Liable to Party.....         | \$65 |
| (f) Litigation Guardian .....                         | \$80 |
| (g) Persons Entitled to or Liable for Indemnity ..... | \$82 |
| (h) Third Parties .....                               | \$87 |
| (i) Unnecessary Parties.....                          | \$90 |
| (j) Multiple Defendants.....                          | \$91 |
| (k) Bullock Order .....                               | \$95 |
| (l) Sanderson Order .....                             | \$99 |



## COSTS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 4. Particular Orders as to Costs.....                              | §102 |
| (a) Costs “in the Cause” .....                                     | §102 |
| (b) Costs “in Any Event of the Cause” .....                        | §104 |
| (c) No Order as to Costs.....                                      | §106 |
| (d) Ordinary Costs.....  | §108 |
| (e) Special Costs.....   | §109 |
| (f) Increased Costs .....  | §111 |
| (g) Costs“As Between” Solicitor and Client.....                    | §112 |
| (h) Other Specific Costs Awards.....                               | §114 |
| 5. Factors Relating to Quantum of Costs.....                       | §119 |
| (a) General.....   | §119 |
| (b) Solicitor-and-Client Costs .....                               | §133 |
| (i) General.....   | §133 |
| (ii) Factors for Consideration.....                                | §140 |
| (c) Executors and Special Parties .....                            | §148 |
| (d) Lump Sum .....   | §150 |
| (e) Action Brought in Wrong Court.....                             | §154 |
| (i) Western Provinces .....  | §154 |
| (ii) Ontario .....   | §157 |
| (f) Transfer of Action.....  | §164 |
| (g) Small Claims Court Costs.....                                  | §166 |
| (h) Effect of Change in Tariff .....                               | §168 |
| 6. Effect of Failure or Success of Proceedings .....               | §169 |
| (a) General .....  | §169 |
| (b) Successful Party Obligated to Pay Costs .....                  | §179 |
| (c) Mary Carter Agreement .....                                    | §186 |
| (d) Divided Success .....  | §188 |
| (i) General.....   | §188 |
| (ii) Action Divisible as to Costs.....                             | §195 |
| (e) Apportionment of Liability .....                               | §198 |
| (f) No Costs .....   | §210 |
| (g) Where Counterclaim Set Up.....                                 | §211 |
| (i) General.....   | §211 |
| (ii) Effect of Discontinuance or Dismissal of<br>Counterclaim..... | §218 |
| (h) Dismissal of Action on Motion .....                            | §222 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Discontinuance of Action .....               | §224        |
| 7. Disallowance of Costs .....                   | §229        |
| (a) General .....                                | §229        |
| (b) Particular Grounds for Disallowance .....    | §239        |
| 8. Offers to Settle .....                        | §257        |
| (a) Western Provinces .....                      | §257        |
| (i) General .....                                | §257        |
| (ii) Multiple Defendants .....                   | §266        |
| (iii) Revocation and Expiry .....                | §268        |
| (iv) Acceptance .....                            | §269        |
| (v) Effect of Non-Acceptance .....               | §270        |
| A. Alberta .....                                 | §270        |
| B. Manitoba .....                                | §274        |
| C. Saskatchewan .....                            | §276        |
| (vi) Discretion of Court .....                   | §277        |
| (b) Ontario .....                                | §279        |
| (i) General .....                                | §279        |
| (ii) Timing of Offer .....                       | §290        |
| (iii) Amount Recovered by Plaintiff .....        | §292        |
| (iv) Multiple Defendants .....                   | §298        |
| (v) Discretionary Orders .....                   | §300        |
| (vi) Appeals and Offers to Settle .....          | §304        |
| 9. Effect of Payment Into Court .....            | §307        |
| (a) General .....                                | §307        |
| (b) Payment Not Accepted .....                   | §308        |
| (c) Plaintiff Accepting Payment Into Court ..... | §310        |
| 10. Set-off of Costs .....                       | §314        |
| 11. Appeals as to Costs .....                    | §322        |
| (a) Leave to Appeal .....                        | §322        |
| (b) Exercise of Discretion on Appeal .....       | §327        |
| <b>II. Particular Proceedings .....</b>          | <b>§332</b> |
| 1. Interlocutory Proceedings .....               | §332        |
| 2. Settlement of Action .....                    | §347        |
| 3. New Trial or Rehearing .....                  | §349        |

## COSTS

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 4. Class Proceedings .....                                 | \$350        |
| 5. Costs of Appeal.....                                    | \$357        |
| (a) General .....  | \$357        |
| (b) Depriving Successful Party of Costs on Appeal .....    | \$374        |
| 6. Federal Court.....                                      | \$378        |
| (a) General .....  | \$378        |
| (b) Offer to Settle.....                                   | \$388        |
| (c) Degree of Success .....                                | \$394        |
| (d) Security for Costs in Federal Proceedings.....         | \$400        |
| (e) Assessments in Federal Proceedings .....               | \$402        |
| 7. Supreme Court of Canada .....                           | \$406        |
| (a) Appeals as to Costs Only.....                          | \$406        |
| (b) Discretion as to Costs .....                           | \$407        |
| (c) Principles Applied .....                               | \$408        |
| (d) Equally-Divided Court .....                            | \$414        |
| (e) Appeal Quashed.....                                    | \$415        |
| (f) Disallowance of Costs .....                            | \$416        |
| (g) Security for Costs.....                                | \$421        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>III. Assessment and Taxation of Costs.....</b>          | <b>\$423</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$423        |
| 2. Assessment Officer .....                                | \$439        |
| 3. Procedure on Assessment .....                           | \$446        |
| 4. Determination of Quantum.....                           | \$465        |
| (a) Tariffs.....   | \$465        |
| (b) General Principles .....                               | \$474        |
| (c) Interest on Amount Assessed.....                       | \$485        |
| (d) Costs of Assessment.....                               | \$488        |
| 5. Appeal or Review of Assessment .....                    | \$489        |
| 6. Particular Items of Costs; Particular Proceedings ..... | \$504        |
| (a) Abortive Proceedings .....                             | \$504        |
| (b) Affidavits .....                                       | \$508        |
| (c) Applications .....                                     | \$510        |
| (d) Amendment of Pleadings or Proceedings .....            | \$512        |
| (e) Briefs .....   | \$519        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (f) Copies of Documents.....             | \$522 |
| (g) Change of Venue.....                 | \$523 |
| (h) “Costs of the Day” .....             | \$524 |
| (i) Counsel Fees .....                   | \$526 |
| (i) General.....                         | \$526 |
| (ii) Quantum of Fee .....                | \$532 |
| (iii) Junior Counsel.....                | \$538 |
| (iv) Postponement of Trial.....          | \$540 |
| (v) Counsel Acting on Own Behalf .....   | \$541 |
| (j) Counterclaim.....                    | \$543 |
| (k) Default Judgment .....               | \$547 |
| (l) Disbursements.....                   | \$548 |
| (m) Examination for Discovery .....      | \$570 |
| (n) Failure to Make Admissions.....      | \$578 |
| (o) New Trial Ordered .....              | \$579 |
| (p) Foreign Commission .....             | \$583 |
| (q) Interlocutory Proceedings.....       | \$586 |
| (r) Judgments and Orders.....            | \$587 |
| (s) Postponement of Trial .....          | \$590 |
| (t) Preliminary Proceedings .....        | \$593 |
| (u) Preparation for Trial.....           | \$594 |
| (v) Pre-Trial Conference .....           | \$602 |
| (w) Settlement of Action .....           | \$603 |
| (x) References.....                      | \$604 |
| (y) Taxes .....                          | \$606 |
| (z) Courtroom Aids .....                 | \$609 |
| (aa) Witness Fees and Expenses.....      | \$610 |
| (i) General.....                         | \$610 |
| (ii) Expert Witnesses.....               | \$619 |
| (iii) Witness Being Party to Action..... | \$634 |
| (iv) Travel Expenses .....               | \$635 |
| (bb) Miscellaneous .....                 | \$640 |
| 7. Payment of Costs .....                | \$644 |
| (a) Money Paid Into Court .....          | \$644 |
| (b) Funds Preserved or Recovered .....   | \$647 |

## COSTS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Enforcement by Process .....                         | §649        |
| (d) Execution .....                                      | §655        |
| (e) Stay of Execution Pending Appeal.....                | §656        |
| (f) Proceedings in Another Court.....                    | §658        |
| (g) Stay of Subsequent Proceedings.....                  | §659        |
| (h) Recovery of Costs Already Paid .....                 | §661        |
| (i) Where Appeal Allowed.....                            | §661        |
| (ii) Right to Enforce Contribution.....                  | §662        |
| <b>IV. Security for Costs .....</b>                      | <b>§663</b> |
| 1. Nature and Effect of Order .....                      | §663        |
| (a) Stay of Proceeding Pending Compliance .....          | §663        |
| (b) Default in Giving Security.....                      | §664        |
| (c) Multiple Defendants .....                            | §670        |
| (d) Notice of Compliance .....                           | §671        |
| (e) Security as Term of Order .....                      | §672        |
| 2. Procedure on Motion for Security.....                 | §675        |
| (a) General .....  | §675        |
| (b) Evidence.....  | §681        |
| 3. Proper Considerations on Motion for Security.....     | §685        |
| (a) General .....  | §685        |
| (b) Impecuniosity.....                                   | §689        |
| (c) Admission of Liability .....                         | §694        |
| (d) Defendant Holding Plaintiff's Moneys.....            | §695        |
| (e) Property Within Jurisdiction .....                   | §697        |
| (f) Lack of Defence.....                                 | §701        |
| (g) Delay in Applying.....                               | §702        |
| 4. Grounds for Order.....                                | §704        |
| (a) Non-Residence .....                                  | §704        |
| (i) General.....   | §704        |
| (ii) Non-Resident Corporation .....                      | §718        |
| (iii) Effect of Reciprocal Enforcement Legislation ..... | §724        |
| (iv) Effect of Assets in Jurisdiction .....              | §727        |
| (v) Multiple Plaintiffs.....                             | §728        |
| (vi) Non-Resident Defendant .....                        | §729        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (vii) Estate Proceedings .....                             | §732 |
| (b) Other Proceedings Pending .....                        | §733 |
| (c) Costs Unpaid from Another Proceeding.....              | §734 |
| (d) Insufficient Assets — Nominal or Corporate Plaintiff.. | §739 |
| (e) Frivolous or Vexatious Action.....                     | §747 |
| (f) Statutory Requirement .....                            | §749 |
| 5. Security for Costs of Appeal.....                       | §756 |
| 6. Other Proceedings .....                                 | §770 |
| 7. Amount of Security.....                                 | §778 |
| 8. Varying Order for Security .....                        | §785 |
| 9. Costs of Application for Security for Costs.....        | §791 |
| 10. Appeal from Order Requesting Security for Costs .....  | §792 |
| 11. Payment Out or Release of Security.....                | §793 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Alternative Dispute Resolution; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Builders Liens; Children; Companies Creditors Arrangement Act; Construction Liens; Courts; Crown; Customs and Excise; Defamation; Discovery; Elections; Environmental Law; Execution; Executors and Administrators; Expropriation; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Human Rights; Injunctions; Insurance; Interpleader; Judgments and Orders; Labour Law; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Mental Incapacity; Mortgages; Motor Vehicles; Municipal Corporations — Administration and Council; Municipal Corporations — By-laws, Permits and Legal Proceedings; Parties; Partnership; Patents; Pleadings; Police; Practice; Prerogative Remedies; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Receivers; References and Inquiries; Sheriffs and Bailiffs; Trade Marks and Industrial Designs; Trials; Trusts; Wills

# COURTS

prepared by  
Peter Eccles, B.A., L.L.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Definitions and Classifications</b> .....           | §1  |
| 1. Courts and Judges .....                                | §1  |
| 2. Courts and Administrative Tribunals Distinguished..... | §11 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Administration of Courts</b> .....                 | §16 |
| 1. General .....  | §16 |
| 2. Supreme Court of Canada .....                          | §21 |
| 3. Federal Court of Canada .....                          | §25 |
| 4. Alberta .....  | §30 |
| 5. British Columbia .....                                 | §34 |
| 6. Manitoba.....  | §36 |
| 7. Saskatchewan .....                                     | §39 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>III. Judicial Councils</b> .....                       | §40 |
| 1. The Canadian Judicial Council .....                    | §40 |
| 2. Alberta Judicial Council .....                         | §54 |
| 3. British Columbia Judicial Council .....                | §55 |
| 4. Manitoba Judicial Council .....                        | §56 |
| 5. Saskatchewan Judicial Council.....                     | §58 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>IV. Judicial Independence</b> .....                    | §60 |
| 1. General .....  | §60 |

## COURTS

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>V. Jurisdiction of Courts Generally</b> .....            | \$77  |
| 1. General .....  | \$77  |
| 2. Jurisdiction When Issues Moot Or Hypothetical.....       | \$129 |
| 3. Necessity for Publicity.....                             | \$135 |
| 4. Jurisdiction to Prevent Abuse of Process .....           | \$156 |
| 5. Jurisdiction to Vary Orders .....                        | \$167 |
| 6. Disqualification of a Judge because of Bias .....        | \$178 |
| 7. Jurisdiction Over Executive Governments.....             | \$216 |
| 8. Jurisdiction During War .....                            | \$217 |
| 9. Jurisdiction in Cases Containing Foreign Element .....   | \$218 |
| 10. Jurisdiction of Superior Courts .....                   | \$241 |
| 11. Jurisdiction of Inferior Courts .....                   | \$262 |
| 12. Co-ordinate Jurisdictions .....                         | \$270 |
| 13. Jurisdiction Over Domestic Forums.....                  | \$273 |
| 14. Comity of Courts .....                                  | \$277 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>VI. Courts of Appeal</b> .....                           | \$278 |
| 1. Jurisdiction .....                                       | \$278 |
| (a) In General .....  | \$278 |
| (b) Jurisdiction to Grant a New Trial .....                 | \$320 |
| 2. Reversal of Findings of Fact — General .....             | \$331 |
| 3. Undisputed Facts — Findings (Inferences).....            | \$351 |
| 4. Credibility of Witnesses — Findings .....                | \$357 |
| 5. Jury Findings.....                                       | \$367 |
| 6. Discretionary Decisions .....                            | \$380 |
| 7. Concurrent Findings By Two Courts.....                   | \$386 |
| 8. Second Appeal After Reversal .....                       | \$388 |
| 9. Introducing New Points and Fresh Evidence on Appeal..... | \$389 |
| 10. Interference with Damages.....                          | \$410 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>VII. Judicial Committee of the Privy Council</b> .....   | \$414 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>VIII. Supreme Court of Canada</b> .....                  | \$416 |
| 1. Nature and Functions.....                                | \$416 |



## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| 2. Administrative Matters .....   | \$421 |
| (a) The Court .....   | \$421 |
| (i) Constitution.....   | \$421 |
| (ii) Tenure .....   | \$422 |
| (iii) Quorum.....   | \$423 |
| (iv) Sessions and Appeal List.....  | \$426 |
| (v) Authority to Make Rules and Orders.....   | \$429 |
| (b) The Registrar .....   | \$435 |
| (c) Sheriffs .....  | \$437 |
| (d) Barristers, Advocates, Attorneys, Solicitors and Self-<br>representation.....     | \$438 |
| (e) Assessors in Admiralty Appeals .....  | \$443 |
| (f) Interveners .....   | \$444 |
| 3. Judgments .....  | \$447 |
| (a) Judgments, Amendments During Appeal, Reversal,<br>Dismissal, Discontinuance ..... | \$447 |
| (b) Principles Followed by the Supreme Court .....                                    | \$457 |
| (i) Generally.....  | \$457 |
| (ii) Appeals on Questions of Fact .....   | \$465 |
| (iii) Appeals Relating to Practice and Procedure .....                                | \$477 |
| (iv) Raising New or Abandoned Points on Appeal....                                    | \$478 |
| (v) Interference with Damages .....   | \$488 |
| (vi) Technical Grounds of Appeal.....   | \$492 |
| (c) Costs, Terms and Conditions, Judgment Interest.....                               | \$493 |
| (i) Costs .....   | \$493 |
| (ii) Terms and Conditions.....  | \$503 |
| (iii) Judgment Interest .....   | \$504 |
| (d) Delivery of Judgments and Certificate of Judgment .....                           | \$507 |
| 4. Statutory Matters of Evidence.....   | \$511 |
| (a) Commissioner of Oaths .....   | \$511 |
| (b) Examination by Interrogatories or Commission .....                                | \$515 |
| (c) Certiorari .....  | \$521 |
| 5. Stay of Execution.....   | \$522 |
| (a) General Rules .....   | \$522 |
| (i) After judgment .....  | \$522 |
| (ii) Before Leave to Appeal is Granted .....  | \$523 |

## COURTS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (iii) After Leave to Appeal has been Granted .....   | §524 |
| (b) Exceptions.....  | §527 |
| (c) On Appeal from Court of Appeal .....   | §531 |
| (d) Sheriff's Levy and Poundage .....  | §533 |
| 6. Death of Parties.....   | §535 |
| 7. Appellate Jurisdiction .....  | §539 |
| (a) General .....  | §539 |
| (b) Appeals Requiring Leave.....   | §547 |
| (i) Appeals with Leave of Provincial Court .....   | §547 |
| (ii) Appeals with Leave of Federal Court of Appeal<br>.....                                    | §561 |
| (iii) Appeals Per Saltum, with Leave of the Supreme<br>Court of Canada.....                    | §562 |
| (iv) Appeals with Leave of the Supreme Court .....   | §565 |
| (v) Time Periods Applicable to Applications for<br>Leave to Appeal and Subsequent Appeal ..... | §602 |
| (vi) Extending or Abridging Time for Leave to Appeal<br>and for Appeal.....                    | §607 |
| (vii) Effect of Allowing Leave to Appeal by Supreme<br>Court of Canada.....                    | §616 |
| (viii) In Forma Pauperis — Appeals, Defence or<br>Intervention .....                           | §618 |
| (c) Appeals Not Requiring Leave.....   | §621 |
| (i) Appeals from References by Lieutenant Governor<br>in Council of a Province .....           | §621 |
| (ii) Intergovernmental Disputes .....  | §623 |
| (iii) Time Periods for Appeal .....  | §624 |
| (d) Prohibition of Appeals from Discretionary Judgments<br>and Orders .....                    | §625 |
| (e) Appeals from Judgments in Criminal Causes in Certain<br>Proceedings.....                   | §633 |
| (f) Matters Related to Bringing an Appeal .....  | §643 |
| (i) Deposit of Security .....  | §643 |
| (ii) Stated Case on Appeal.....  | §656 |
| (iii) Constitutional Issues in an Appeal.....  | §663 |
| (iv) Rehearing of an Appeal and Leave to Appeal .....  | §668 |
| 8. Reference Jurisdiction.....   | §673 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (a) References by Governor in Council .....        | §673  |
| (b) References by Senate or House of Commons ..... | §680  |
| 9. Meaning of Terms in Supreme Court Act.....      | §681  |
| (a) Final Judgment .....                           | §681  |
| (b) Judicial Proceeding.....                       | §698  |
| (c) Highest Court of Final Resort.....             | §699  |
| (d) Criminal Cause .....                           | §700  |
| <b>IX. The Federal Court</b> .....                 | §702  |
| 1. Constitution .....                              | §702  |
| 2. Jurisdiction .....                              | §713  |
| (a) Federal Court .....                            | §713  |
| (b) Federal Court of Appeal .....                  | §838  |
| <b>X. Tax Court of Canada</b> .....                | §853  |
| <b>XI. The Courts in Alberta</b> .....             | §873  |
| 1. The Court of Appeal.....                        | §873  |
| 2. Court of Queen’s Bench.....                     | §884  |
| 3. Provincial Court .....                          | §895  |
| (a) General .....                                  | §895  |
| (b) Criminal Division .....                        | §903  |
| (c) Young Persons Matters .....                    | §904  |
| (d) Family Matters .....                           | §905  |
| (e) Civil Claims .....                             | §912  |
| <b>XII. The Courts in British Columbia</b> .....   | §919  |
| 1. The Court of Appeal.....                        | §919  |
| 2. Supreme Court .....                             | §940  |
| 3. Provincial Court .....                          | §962  |
| <b>XIII. The Courts in Manitoba</b> .....          | §971  |
| 1. The Court Of Appeal.....                        | §971  |
| 2. Court Of Queen’s Bench .....                    | §985  |
| 3. Court Of Queen’s Bench — Small Claims .....     | §1000 |

## COURTS

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 4. Provincial Court .....  | §1009        |
| <b>XIV. The Courts in Saskatchewan.....</b>                                      | <b>§1017</b> |
| 1. The Court Of Appeal.....  | §1017        |
| 2. Court Of Queen’s Bench .....  | §1035        |
| 3. Provincial Court .....  | §1048        |
| 4. Small Claims .....  | §1051        |
| <b>XV. References to Courts by Executive Government .....</b>                    | <b>§1066</b> |
| <b>XVI. Authority of Judicial Decisions: Rule of Stare Decisis.....</b>          | <b>§1071</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §1071        |
| 2. Effect of Supreme Court of Canada Decisions .....                             | §1086        |
| 3. Effect of English Decisions.....  | §1091        |
| 4. Effect of Decisions in the United States .....                                | §1095        |
| 5. Effects of Decisions of Courts or Judges of Co-ordinate<br>Jurisdiction ..... | §1096        |
| 6. Effect of Previous Decisions of Same Court .....                              | §1101        |
| 7. Dicta and their Effect .....  | §1114        |
| <b>XVII. Masters .....</b>   | <b>§1117</b> |
| 1. Generally .....   | §1117        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §1117        |
| (b) British Columbia .....   | §1119        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §1120        |
| 2. Jurisdiction of Masters.....  | §1125        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §1125        |
| (b) British Columbia .....   | §1138        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §1140        |
| 3. References to judges .....  | §1145        |
| 4. Appeals .....   | §1146        |
| 5. Referees and Registrars .....   | §1154        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §1154        |
| (b) British Columbia .....   | §1155        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §1158        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | §1159        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>XVIII. Provincial Court Judges and Justices of the Peace</b> .....                   | §1160 |
| 1. General .....  | §1160 |
| 2. Appointment and Tenure of Provincial Judges and Justices<br>of the Peace .....       | §1161 |
| (a) General .....   | §1161 |
| (b) Alberta .....   | §1163 |
| (c) British Columbia.....   | §1172 |
| (d) Manitoba .....  | §1177 |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....   | §1180 |
| 3. Disqualification of Justices of the Peace and Provincial<br>Judges.....              | §1191 |
| (a) Pecuniary Interest .....  | §1191 |
| (b) Bias .....  | §1193 |
| (c) Prohibition.....  | §1203 |
| 4. Powers and Duties .....  | §1204 |
| (a) Conduct of Trial .....  | §1204 |
| (b) Under the Criminal Code.....  | §1206 |
| 5. Jurisdiction of Justices of the Peace and Provincial Judges<br>.....                 | §1215 |
| (a) General .....   | §1215 |
| (b) Excess of Jurisdiction and Errors .....   | §1228 |
| (c) Adjournments.....   | §1233 |
| (d) Absence of Jurisdiction .....   | §1234 |
| (e) Jurisdiction under Federal Law.....   | §1238 |
| (f) Territorial Jurisdiction.....   | §1239 |
| (g) One Justice Doing Ministerial Acts after a Hearing<br>by Two or More Justices ..... | §1247 |
| (h) Jurisdiction to Bind Over to Keep the Peace .....                                   | §1248 |
| (i) Trials under Special Provisions .....   | §1249 |
| 6. Liability for Official Acts.....   | §1250 |
| (a) General .....   | §1250 |
| (b) Error of Judgment .....   | §1257 |
| (c) Words Spoken in Office .....  | §1258 |
| (d) Official Acts in Excess of Authority.....   | §1259 |
| (e) Malicious Abuse of Legal Process .....  | §1260 |

## COURTS

---

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Armed Forces; Associations and Not-for-Profit Corporations; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Bills of Exchange; Business Corporations; Children; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Conflict of Laws; Constitutional Law; Contempt of Court; Costs; Criminal Law — Procedure; Crown; Customs and Excise; Damages; Defamation; Education; Elections; Estoppel; Evidence; Executors and Administrators; Extradition; Fish and Game; Immigration and Refugees; Injunctions; Internet Law; Judgments and Orders; Labour Law; Liquor Control; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Municipal Corporations; Nuisance; Pleadings; Practice; Prerogative Remedies; Professions and Occupations; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Public Health and Welfare; References and Inquiries; Religious Institutions; Shipping; Torts; Trials

# CRIMINAL LAW — DEFENCES

prepared by  
Pat Knoll Q.C., *of the Alberta Bar*,  
*Professor Emeritus, Faculty of Law, University of Calgary*  
and  
Kait Perrin J.D.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                       | \$1  |
| 1. Offences.....                                   | \$1  |
| (a) Physical Element and Mental Element.....       | \$1  |
| (b) Categories of Offences.....                    | \$5  |
| (i) Mens Rea.....                                  | \$5  |
| (ii) Strict Liability .....                        | \$9  |
| (iii) Absolute Liability .....                     | \$10 |
| (c) Summary and Indictable Offences.....           | \$11 |
| 2. Defences .....                                  | \$14 |
| (a) Defence Defined .....                          | \$14 |
| (b) General Defences and Particular Defences ..... | \$15 |
| (c) Common Law Defences .....                      | \$16 |
| (d) Nature of Justification and Excuse.....        | \$19 |
| (e) Duty of Trial Judge .....                      | \$20 |
| (f) Presumption of Innocence .....                 | \$21 |
| (g) Persuasive and Evidential Burdens.....         | \$22 |
| (i) General.....                                   | \$22 |
| (ii) Burden on Crown.....                          | \$23 |
| (iii) Burden on Defence .....                      | \$26 |
| (h) Procedure .....                                | \$31 |
| (i) Right to be Present at Trial .....             | \$31 |

CRIMINAL LAW — DEFENCES

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (ii) Right to Full Answer and Defence .....           | §33        |
| (iii) Pleas.....                                      | §37        |
| A. Permitted Pleas.....                               | §37        |
| B. Plea of Not Guilty.....                            | §38        |
| C. Plea of Guilty .....                               | §39        |
| D. Refusal to Plead .....                             | §40        |
| E. Plea of Guilty to Included or Other Offence ....   | §41        |
| F. Withdrawal of Guilty Plea .....                    | §43        |
| <b>II. Exemptions.....</b>                            | <b>§44</b> |
| 1. Conjugal Unity .....                               | §44        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §44        |
| (b) Conspiracy Between Spouses .....                  | §45        |
| (c) Competence and Compellability .....               | §46        |
| (i) Common Law Rule .....                             | §46        |
| (ii) Statutory Rule.....                              | §47        |
| (iii) Statutory Exceptions .....                      | §48        |
| (iv) Common Law Exceptions.....                       | §49        |
| (v) Privileged Inter-spousal Communications .....     | §52        |
| 2. De Minimis Non Curat Lex .....                     | §55        |
| (a) Definition of De Minimis Defence.....             | §55        |
| (b) Application of De Minimis Defence .....           | §56        |
| 3. Immunity .....                                     | §57        |
| (a) Children.....                                     | §57        |
| (b) Crown Immunity .....                              | §59        |
| (c) Immunity of Crown Attorneys and Judges .....      | §62        |
| (d) Internationally Protected Persons.....            | §64        |
| (i) Consular Officers and Employees .....             | §64        |
| (ii) Diplomatic Agents .....                          | §66        |
| (iii) International Organization Representatives..... | §69        |
| (iv) NATO Representatives .....                       | §72        |
| (v) Sovereigns and Heads of Foreign States.....       | §76        |
| (e) Parliamentary Immunity .....                      | §77        |
| (i) Members of Senate and House of Commons .....      | §77        |
| (ii) Members of Provincial Legislatures.....          | §80        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (f) Military Personnel.....   | §81         |
| 4. Mental Disorder .....  | §83         |
| (a) Exemption From Conviction.....                                    | §83         |
| (b) Presumption of Mental Order .....                                 | §84         |
| (c) Mental Disorder at Time of Trial.....                             | §85         |
| (d) Burden of Proof on Defence.....                                   | §86         |
| (e) Mental Disorder Raised by Crown .....                             | §89         |
| (f) When Persons are Mentally Disordered .....                        | §92         |
| (i) Disease of the Mind.....  | §92         |
| (ii) Delusions .....  | §100        |
| (iii) Meaning of “Incapable”.....                                     | §101        |
| (iv) Meaning of “Appreciate” .....                                    | §102        |
| (v) Meaning of “Nature and Quality” .....                             | §103        |
| (vi) Meaning of “Knowing”.....  | §104        |
| (vii) Meaning of “Wrong” .....  | §105        |
| (viii) Automatism and Mental Disorder.....                            | §106        |
| (g) Consequence of Mental Disorder Verdict.....                       | §107        |
| (h) Condition Short of Mental Disorder.....                           | §109        |
| <b>III. Justifications.....</b>                                       | <b>§111</b> |
| 1. Defence of Property.....   | §111        |
| (a) Justifiable Force to Prevent Injury to Property.....              | §111        |
| (b) Defence of Personal Property .....                                | §112        |
| (c) Defence of Real Property.....                                     | §113        |
| (d) Defence of Property and Claim of Right.....                       | §114        |
| (e) Defence of Property and Enforcement of the Law.....               | §115        |
| (f) Necessary Force .....   | §116        |
| 2. Obedience to Superior Orders .....                                 | §117        |
| 3. Protection of Persons Administering and Enforcing the<br>Law ..... | §120        |
| (a) Conduct Required or Authorized by Law .....                       | §120        |
| (b) Use of Force to Prevent Commission of Offence .....               | §123        |
| (c) Arrest of Wrong Person .....                                      | §124        |
| (d) Duty of Person Arresting.....                                     | §125        |
| (e) Preventing Breach of the Peace.....                               | §126        |
| (f) Suppression of Riots .....  | §127        |

CRIMINAL LAW — DEFENCES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (g) Excessive Force .....  | §128        |
| 4. Protection of Persons in Authority.....                           | §129        |
| (a) Correction of Child by Force.....                                | §129        |
| (b) Surgical Operations .....  | §132        |
| (c) Excessive Force .....  | §133        |
| 5. Public Good and Obscenity.....                                    | §134        |
| 6. Self-Defence and Defence of Others .....                          | §135        |
| (a) General Test for Self-Defence .....                              | §135        |
| (b) Prevention of Immediate and Serious Injury to Any<br>Person..... | §138        |
| (c) Retreat .....  | §139        |
| (d) Burden of Proof.....   | §140        |
| (e) Previous Acts of Violence by Victim .....                        | §141        |
| (f) Excessive Force.....   | §143        |
| <b>IV. Excuses .....</b>   | <b>§144</b> |
| 1. Accident.....   | §144        |
| (a) Accident Defined.....  | §144        |
| (b) Nature of Defence .....  | §145        |
| (c) Accident as a Complete Defence.....                              | §146        |
| (d) Accident and Homicide.....                                       | §147        |
| 2. Automatism .....  | §151        |
| (a) Automatism Defined.....  | §151        |
| (b) Nature of Defence .....  | §152        |
| (c) Burden of Proof.....   | §153        |
| (d) Questions of Law and Fact.....                                   | §154        |
| (e) Automatism and Mental Disorder.....                              | §157        |
| (f) Automatism and Intoxication .....                                | §163        |
| (g) Causes of Automatism .....                                       | §164        |
| 3. Colour of Right and Lack of Fraudulent Intent .....               | §165        |
| (a) Colour of Right.....   | §165        |
| (i) Colour of Right Defined.....                                     | §165        |
| (ii) Nature of Defence.....  | §166        |
| (iii) Availability of Defence.....                                   | §167        |
| (iv) Burden of Proof.....  | §168        |
| (v) Mistake of Civil Law .....                                       | §169        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (vi) Mistake of Fact .....                       | §170 |
| (vii) Reasonableness of Belief .....             | §171 |
| (b) Lack of Fraudulent Intent .....              | §172 |
| 4. Duress .....                                  | §173 |
| (a) Nature of Defence .....                      | §173 |
| (b) Common Law Defence .....                     | §175 |
| (c) Statutory Defence .....                      | §183 |
| (d) Obligation to Retreat from Threat.....       | §184 |
| (e) Compulsion of Spouse .....                   | §185 |
| (f) Burden of Proof .....                        | §186 |
| 5. Intoxication .....                            | §187 |
| (a) Nature of Defence .....                      | §187 |
| (b) The Modern Canadian Test .....               | §189 |
| (c) Specific and General Intent.....             | §190 |
| (d) Voluntary and Involuntary Intoxication ..... | §195 |
| (e) Degree of Intoxication.....                  | §198 |
| (f) General Instructions to Jury .....           | §201 |
| (g) Included Offences.....                       | §206 |
| (h) Intoxication and Attempt .....               | §207 |
| (i) Intoxication and Parties.....                | §208 |
| (j) Intoxication and Murder .....                | §211 |
| (k) Intoxication and Other Defences .....        | §213 |
| (i) Automatism.....                              | §213 |
| (ii) Mental Disorder .....                       | §214 |
| (iii) Mistake .....                              | §215 |
| (iv) Provocation .....                           | §216 |
| (v) Self-Defence .....                           | §217 |
| (vi) Cumulative Effect .....                     | §219 |
| (l) Drugs and Alcohol .....                      | §220 |
| (m) Burden of Proof.....                         | §221 |
| 6. Mistake of Fact and Law.....                  | §222 |
| (a) Mistake of Fact.....                         | §222 |
| (i) Mistake of Fact Defined .....                | §222 |
| (ii) Nature of Defence .....                     | §223 |
| (iii) Reasonableness of Belief.....              | §224 |

CRIMINAL LAW — DEFENCES

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (iv) Honest Belief and Wilful Blindness.....                 | §228 |
| (v) Burden of Proof.....                                     | §230 |
| (vi) Mistake and Transferred Mens Rea .....                  | §231 |
| (vii) Colour of Right.....                                   | §232 |
| (viii) Mistake and Voluntary Intoxication.....               | §233 |
| (ix) Mistake and Forgetfulness in Failing to Appear<br>..... | §235 |
| (b) Mistake of Law .....                                     | §237 |
| (i) Mistake of Penal Law .....                               | §237 |
| (ii) Mistake of Civil Law.....                               | §240 |
| (iii) Mistake of Law or Fact.....                            | §241 |
| (iv) Officially Induced Error.....                           | §242 |
| (v) Obedience to De Facto Law .....                          | §244 |
| (vi) Non-Publication of Law.....                             | §245 |
| 7. Necessity.....  | §246 |
| (a) Nature of Defence .....                                  | §246 |
| (b) Availability of Defence.....                             | §247 |
| (c) Illegality or Contributory Fault.....                    | §251 |
| (d) Burden of Proof.....                                     | §252 |
| (e) Necessity and Distress.....                              | §253 |
| 8. Prank.....  | §255 |
| (a) Nature of Defence .....                                  | §255 |
| (b) Defence Rejected.....                                    | §256 |
| (c) Defence Applied .....                                    | §257 |
| 9. Provocation.....  | §258 |
| (a) Partial Defence to Murder.....                           | §258 |
| (b) Provocation Defined.....                                 | §259 |
| (c) Questions of Law and Fact.....                           | §260 |
| (d) Elements of Defence .....                                | §262 |
| (i) Heat of Passion .....                                    | §262 |
| (ii) Sudden Provocation .....                                | §263 |
| (iii) Wrongful Act or Insult.....                            | §264 |
| (e) Objective Test.....                                      | §266 |
| (f) Subjective Test.....                                     | §269 |
| (g) Provocation and Intoxication .....                       | §270 |
| (h) Legal Right to Act .....                                 | §272 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Self-Induced Provocation .....                       | §273        |
| (j) Third-Party Provocation .....                        | §274        |
| (k) Burden of Proof.....                                 | §275        |
| <b>V. Procedural Defences.....</b>                       | <b>§276</b> |
| 1. Abuse of Process.....                                 | §276        |
| (a) Nature of Defence .....                              | §276        |
| (b) Jurisdiction of Courts .....                         | §279        |
| (c) Burden of Proof.....                                 | §280        |
| (d) When Motion to Stay Proceedings to be Made.....      | §282        |
| (e) What Constitutes Abuse of Process.....               | §283        |
| (i) Breach of Police or Crown Undertaking .....          | §283        |
| (ii) Collection of Civil Debt .....                      | §285        |
| (iii) Delay in Institution of Criminal Proceedings ..... | §286        |
| (iv) Patent Unfairness.....                              | §287        |
| (v) Perjury Prosecutions.....                            | §288        |
| (vi) Re-Laid Informations .....                          | §289        |
| (vii) Stay of Proceedings .....                          | §290        |
| 2. Charter of Rights.....                                | §291        |
| (a) General.....   | §291        |
| (b) Remedies.....  | §292        |
| (c) Legal Rights.....                                    | §295        |
| (d) Reasonable Limits .....                              | §299        |
| (e) Striking Down Legislation .....                      | §300        |
| 3. Entrapment .....                                      | §301        |
| (a) Entrapment Defined.....                              | §301        |
| (b) Nature of Defence .....                              | §303        |
| (c) Procedure .....                                      | §304        |
| (d) Random Virtue Testing.....                           | §308        |
| 4. Lack of Official Consent.....                         | §310        |
| (a) Provincial Attorney General.....                     | §310        |
| (b) Attorney General of Canada.....                      | §311        |
| (c) When Consent Must Be Obtained .....                  | §312        |
| (d) Failure to Obtain Consent.....                       | §313        |
| (e) Sufficiency of Consent.....                          | §314        |

CRIMINAL LAW — DEFENCES

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (f) Proof of Consent .....  | §315        |
| 5. Multiple Conspiracies .....                                      | §316        |
| (a) General Prohibition.....  | §316        |
| (b) Application of Defence .....                                    | §317        |
| 6. Res Judicata.....  | §318        |
| (a) General .....   | §318        |
| (b) Double Jeopardy and Autrefois .....                             | §320        |
| (i) Special Pleas.....  | §320        |
| (ii) Validity of Plea .....   | §321        |
| (iii) Plea in Summary Conviction Matters.....                       | §323        |
| (iv) Trial of Special Plea .....                                    | §324        |
| (v) Quashed Indictment or Information .....                         | §328        |
| (vi) Withdrawal of Information .....                                | §329        |
| (vii) Foreign Courts.....   | §332        |
| (c) Rule Against Multiple Convictions (Kienapple<br>Principle)..... | §334        |
| (i) The Rule .....  | §334        |
| (ii) Explanation of the Rule .....                                  | §336        |
| (iii) Application of the Rule .....                                 | §343        |
| (d) Issue Estoppel.....   | §345        |
| (i) Issue Estoppel Defined .....                                    | §345        |
| (ii) Constituent Elements .....                                     | §346        |
| (iii) Finality.....   | §348        |
| (iv) Identity of Issues .....                                       | §349        |
| (v) Issue Estoppel and Perjury .....                                | §351        |
| (e) Inconsistent Verdicts .....                                     | §354        |
| (i) General.....  | §354        |
| (ii) Conspiracy Verdicts .....                                      | §355        |
| (iii) Parties .....   | §356        |
| (iv) Onus on Defence.....   | §357        |
| 7. Time Limitations.....  | §358        |
| (a) Indictable Offences.....  | §358        |
| (b) Summary Conviction Proceedings.....                             | §359        |
| <b>VI. Other Defences.....</b>                                      | <b>§365</b> |
| 1. Alibi.....   | §365        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (a) Alibi Defined .....                          | §365 |
| (b) Nature of Defence .....                      | §366 |
| (c) Raising Alibi Defence .....                  | §367 |
| (i) How Raised .....                             | §367 |
| (ii) When Raised .....                           | §370 |
| (iii) Pre-Trial Silence of Accused.....          | §372 |
| (d) Evidence of Alibi .....                      | §374 |
| (i) Accused as Sole Witness .....                | §374 |
| (ii) Failure of Accused to Testify.....          | §375 |
| (iii) Family and Associates as Witnesses.....    | §378 |
| (e) Burden of Proof.....                         | §379 |
| (f) Alibi Disbelieved or Proven False .....      | §380 |
| (g) Failure to Call Notified Alibi Evidence..... | §381 |
| (h) Rebuttal to Alibi.....                       | §382 |
| 2. Consent .....                                 | §383 |
| (a) Common Law .....                             | §383 |
| (b) Consent to Fight.....                        | §387 |
| (c) Contact Sports.....                          | §390 |
| (d) Mistaken Belief in Consent .....             | §392 |
| (e) Statutory Exclusion.....                     | §395 |
| (f) Burden of Proof .....                        | §398 |
| 3. Defences to Attempt Offences .....            | §399 |
| (a) Impossibility.....                           | §399 |
| (i) Availability of Defence.....                 | §399 |
| (ii) Impossibility and Conspiracy .....          | §401 |
| (b) Intoxication .....                           | §402 |
| (c) Mere Preparation .....                       | §403 |
| 4. Defence of Corporation .....                  | §405 |
| (a) Absolute and Strict Liability Offences ..... | §405 |
| (b) Mens Rea Offences .....                      | §406 |
| (c) Defences to Mens Rea Offences.....           | §408 |
| (d) Constitutionally Invalid Legislation.....    | §412 |
| 5. Defences to Drug Offences .....               | §413 |
| (a) Agent for the Purchaser .....                | §413 |
| (b) De Minimis Non Curat Lex.....                | §416 |

CRIMINAL LAW — DEFENCES

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (c) Entrapment.....   | \$417 |
| (d) Licence.....  | \$418 |
| (e) Possession for Innocent Purpose.....                                  | \$419 |
| 6. Defences to Planned and Deliberate Murder.....                         | \$420 |
| 7. Defences for Parties.....  | \$424 |
| (a) Abandonment of Common Unlawful Purpose .....                          | \$424 |
| (b) Alibi of Another Party .....  | \$425 |
| (c) Renunciation of Criminal Purpose.....                                 | \$426 |
| (d) Duress .....  | \$427 |
| (e) Intoxication .....  | \$428 |
| (f) Mere Presence or Passive Acquiescence .....                           | \$430 |
| (g) No Common Intention .....   | \$431 |
| 8. Defences to Provincial Offences.....                                   | \$433 |
| (a) Categories of Provincial Offences .....                               | \$433 |
| (b) Nature of Provincial Offences .....                                   | \$434 |
| (c) Defences to Mens Rea Offences.....                                    | \$435 |
| (d) Defences to Strict Liability Offences.....                            | \$436 |
| (e) Defences to Absolute Liability Offences .....                         | \$437 |
| (f) Other Defences.....   | \$438 |
| (i) Abuse of Process.....   | \$438 |
| (ii) Act of God .....   | \$439 |
| (iii) Crown Immunity .....  | \$442 |
| (iv) De Minimis Non Curat Lex.....  | \$443 |
| (v) Non-Publication of Law.....   | \$444 |
| (vi) Officially Induced Error.....  | \$445 |
| (vii) Collateral Attack on Validity .....                                 | \$446 |
| (g) Burden of Proof.....  | \$448 |
| 9. Failure to Prove Essential Elements .....                              | \$450 |
| (a) General.....  | \$450 |
| (b) Identification.....   | \$451 |
| (c) Territorial Jurisdiction .....  | \$454 |
| (i) Requirement to Prove Territorial Jurisdiction.....                    | \$454 |
| (ii) Offences Outside Canada.....   | \$457 |
| (iii) Offences Outside Province .....                                     | \$459 |
| (iv) Offences Within Province But Outside Territo-<br>rial Division ..... | \$461 |



## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (d) Date and Time .....   | \$462 |
| (e) Ownership of Property .....                                 | \$464 |
| 10. Innocent Finder of Lost or Abandoned Property .....         | \$465 |
| (a) Rights and Obligations of Finders Under Common<br>Law ..... | \$465 |
| (b) Abandoned Property .....                                    | \$466 |
| (c) Lost Property .....   | \$469 |
| 11. Miscellaneous .....   | \$471 |
| (a) Chronic Fatigue Syndrome.....                               | \$471 |
| (b) Double Intent.....  | \$472 |
| (c) Reflex Action.....  | \$473 |
| (d) Suicide Pact .....  | \$474 |
| (e) False Memory Syndrome .....                                 | \$475 |
| (f) Homosexual Panic.....                                       | \$476 |
| 12. Reasonable Explanation .....                                | \$477 |
| 13. Ultra Vires Legislation .....                               | \$480 |
| (a) Power to Enact Criminal Law .....                           | \$480 |
| (b) Criminal Law Defined .....                                  | \$481 |
| (c) Ultra Vires .....   | \$482 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Bailment; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Conspiracy; Constitutional Law; Criminal Law — Offences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Crown; Education; Estoppel; Evidence; Firearms, Weapons and Explosives; Fish and Wildlife; Hospitals and Health Care Ontario; Human Rights; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Medicine Western; Mental Incapacity; Military Law; Motor Vehicles; Municipal Corporations; Narcotic Control; Police; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Sentencing; Sports; Trespass; Youth Criminal Justice

# CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

prepared by  
David B. Deutscher, B.A. LL.B. LL.M  
*Professor, Faculty of Law University of Manitoba*  
*member of the Manitoba bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .       | §1  |
| 1. Scope and Object of Title . . . . . | §1  |
| 2. Offences . . . . .                  | §2  |
| (a) General . . . . .                  | §2  |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .               | §5  |
| (i) General . . . . .                  | §5  |
| (ii) Act . . . . .                     | §7  |
| (iii) Causation . . . . .              | §8  |
| (iv) Omission . . . . .                | §9  |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                 | §11 |
| (i) General . . . . .                  | §11 |
| (ii) Intention . . . . .               | §14 |
| (iii) Knowledge . . . . .              | §16 |
| (iv) Recklessness . . . . .            | §18 |
| (v) Wilful Blindness . . . . .         | §20 |
| 3. Parties . . . . .                   | §21 |
| (a) General . . . . .                  | §21 |
| (b) Principal Offenders . . . . .      | §24 |
| (c) Aiders and Abettors . . . . .      | §27 |
| (i) General . . . . .                  | §27 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .              | §29 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .               | §37 |
| (d) Common Intention . . . . .         | §40 |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (e) Counsellors . . . . .   | §50         |
| (f) Accessory After the Fact . . . . .                            | §56         |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §56         |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §59         |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §65         |
| (iv) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                             | §67         |
| (g) Related Provisions . . . . .                                  | §68         |
| 4. Incomplete Crimes . . . . .                                    | §69         |
| (a) Attempts . . . . .  | §69         |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §69         |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §71         |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §78         |
| (iv) Procedural Provisions . . . . .                              | §83         |
| (v) Related Provisions . . . . .                                  | §84         |
| (b) Conspiracies . . . . .  | §85         |
| (i) Elements of Offences . . . . .                                | §85         |
| (ii) Conspiracy to Commit Summary Conviction<br>Offence . . . . . | §86         |
| (iii) Conspiracy to Commit Murder . . . . .                       | §87         |
| (iv) Conspiracy to Prosecute . . . . .                            | §88         |
| (v) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §89         |
| (vi) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §105        |
| (vii) Deeming, Procedural and Saving Provisions . . . . .         | §110        |
| (viii) Related Provisions . . . . .                               | §116        |
| (c) Counselling and Procuring . . . . .                           | §117        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .   | §117        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                | §119        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §122        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §126        |
| (v) Related Provisions . . . . .                                  | §127        |
| 5. Included Offences . . . . .                                    | §129        |
| 6. Classification of Offences . . . . .                           | §137        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>II. Abandoning Child . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§142</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §142        |
| 2. Definitions . . . . .  | §143        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Actus Reus .....                         | §145        |
| 4. Mens Rea .....                           | §146        |
| <b>III. Abduction .....</b>                 | <b>§147</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....                       | §147        |
| 2. Definitions .....                        | §148        |
| 3. Offences .....                           | §149        |
| (a) Person Under 16 Years Old .....         | §149        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....               | §149        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                       | §150        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                        | §157        |
| (b) Person Under 14 Years Old .....         | §158        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....               | §158        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                       | §159        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                        | §161        |
| (c) Contrary to Custody Order .....         | §162        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....               | §162        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                       | §163        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                        | §166        |
| (d) No Custody Order .....                  | §167        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....               | §167        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                       | §168        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                        | §172        |
| 4. Defence Provisions .....                 | §173        |
| <b>IV. Abortion .....</b>                   | <b>§176</b> |
| 1. Offences .....                           | §176        |
| (a) Procuring Miscarriage .....             | §176        |
| (b) Supplying Noxious Things .....          | §177        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....               | §177        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                       | §178        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                        | §181        |
| 2. Related Provisions .....                 | §182        |
| <b>V. Administering Noxious Thing .....</b> | <b>§183</b> |
| 1. Offence .....                            | §183        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §183        |
| (b) Definitions . . . . .                        | §184        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §185        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §186        |
| 2. Included Offence . . . . .                    | §187        |
| 3. Related Offences . . . . .                    | §188        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VI. Armed Forces . . . . .</b>                | <b>§189</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                         | §189        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .                            | §192        |
| (a) Inciting to Mutiny . . . . .                 | §192        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §192        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §193        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                         | §194        |
| (iv) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . . | §195        |
| (b) Assisting Deserter . . . . .                 | §196        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §196        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §197        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                         | §198        |
| (iv) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . . | §199        |
| (c) Inciting Insubordination . . . . .           | §201        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                        | §201        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §202        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                       | §203        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                          | §204        |
| (d) Military Uniforms and Documents . . . . .    | §205        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §205        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §206        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                         | §207        |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .                | §208        |
| (v) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .             | §209        |
| (e) Military Stores . . . . .                    | §210        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §210        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §211        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                         | §212        |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .                | §213        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(v) Evidentiary Provisions .....§214

**VII. Arson and Related Offences .....§215**

1. Introduction .....§215

2. Definitions .....§216

3. Offences .....§217

    (a) Disregard for Human Life .....§217

        (i) Elements of Offence .....§217

        (ii) Actus Reus .....§218

        (iii) Mens Rea .....§219

    (b) Causing Damage to Property of Others .....§221

        (i) Elements of Offence .....§221

        (ii) Actus Reus .....§222

        (iii) Mens Rea .....§223

    (c) Causing Damage to Own Property .....§224

        (i) Elements of Offence .....§224

        (ii) Actus Reus .....§225

        (iii) Mens Rea .....§226

    (d) Arson for Fraudulent Purpose .....§227

        (i) Elements of Offence .....§227

        (ii) Actus Reus .....§228

        (iii) Mens Rea .....§229

        (iv) Evidentiary Provisions.....§230

    (e) Arson by Negligence .....§231

        (i) Elements of Offence .....§231

        (ii) Actus Reus .....§232

        (iii) Mens Rea .....§233

        (iv) Evidentiary Provisions.....§234

    (f) Possession of Incendiary Material.....§235

        (i) Definitions .....§235

        (ii) Elements of Offence .....§237

        (iii) Actus Reus .....§238

        (iv) Mens Rea .....§239

4. Legal Justification .....§240

5. Included Offences .....§241

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>VIII. Assault and Related Offences</b> . . . . . | §242 |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                           | §242 |
| 2. Statutory Provisions . . . . .                   | §243 |
| (a) Definition of “Assault” . . . . .               | §243 |
| (b) Consent . . . . .                               | §246 |
| (i) General . . . . .                               | §246 |
| (ii) Implied Consent . . . . .                      | §248 |
| (iii) Consent Prohibited by Law . . . . .           | §251 |
| (iv) Mistaken Belief in Consent . . . . .           | §253 |
| 3. Offences . . . . .                               | §254 |
| (a) Simple Assault . . . . .                        | §254 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §254 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §255 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §256 |
| (b) Assault with Weapon . . . . .                   | §257 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                           | §257 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §258 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §259 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §261 |
| (v) Included Offences . . . . .                     | §263 |
| (c) Assault Causing Bodily Harm . . . . .           | §265 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                           | §265 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §267 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §268 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §271 |
| (v) Included Offences . . . . .                     | §272 |
| (d) Aggravated Assault . . . . .                    | §277 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §277 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §278 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §281 |
| (iv) Included Offences . . . . .                    | §282 |
| (e) Unlawfully Causing Bodily Harm . . . . .        | §285 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                           | §285 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §286 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §287 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §289 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(v) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . . §291  
(vi) Included Offences . . . . . §292  
(f) Assaulting Peace Officer . . . . . §294  
    (i) Officer in Execution of Duty . . . . . §294  
        A. Definitions . . . . . §294  
        B. Elements of Offence . . . . . §296  
        C. Actus Reus . . . . . §297  
        D. Mens Rea . . . . . §310  
    (ii) Resisting Arrest . . . . . §311  
        A. Elements of Offence . . . . . §311  
        B. Actus Reus . . . . . §312  
        C. Mens Rea . . . . . §313  
    (iii) Executing Process, Distress, Seizure . . . . . §314  
        A. Elements of Offence . . . . . §314  
        B. Actus Reus . . . . . §315  
        C. Mens Rea . . . . . §316  
(g) Disarming a Peace Officer . . . . . §317  
    (i) Definitions . . . . . §317  
    (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . . §318  
    (iii) Actus Reus . . . . . §319  
    (iv) Mens Rea . . . . . §320  
(h) Causing Bodily Harm with Intent — Firearm . . . . . §321  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §321  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §322  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §323  
    (iv) Included Offences . . . . . §326  
    (v) Related Provisions . . . . . §328  
(i) Causing Bodily Harm with Intent — Air Pistol . . . . . §330  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §330  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §331  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §332  
(j) Choking with Intent . . . . . §333  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §333  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §334  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §337  
    (iv) Related Provisions . . . . . §338



|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>IX. Automobile Master Key — Selling</b> .....                          | §341 |
| 1. Definitions .....  | §341 |
| 2. Elements of Offence .....  | §343 |
| 3. Actus Reus .....   | §344 |
| 4. Mens Rea .....   | §345 |
| 5. Related Provisions .....   | §346 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>X. Breach of Contract, Criminal</b> .....                              | §347 |
| 1. Offences .....   | §347 |
| (a) Definitions .....   | §347 |
| (b) Elements of Offence .....   | §349 |
| (c) Statutory Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions .....                     | §350 |
| (d) Actus Reus .....  | §352 |
| (e) Mens Rea .....  | §353 |
| 2. Related Provisions .....   | §354 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XI. Break and Enter and Related Offences</b> .....                     | §356 |
| 1. Forcible Entry and Detainer .....                                      | §356 |
| (a) Elements of Offence .....   | §356 |
| (b) Actus Reus .....  | §358 |
| (c) Mens Rea .....  | §363 |
| (d) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions .....                               | §364 |
| 2. Trespassing at Night .....   | §366 |
| (a) Definitions .....   | §366 |
| (b) Elements of Offence .....   | §369 |
| (c) Actus Reus .....  | §370 |
| (d) Mens Rea .....  | §372 |
| 3. Breaking and Entering and Being Unlawfully in Dwelling-<br>house ..... | §373 |
| (a) Definitions .....   | §373 |
| (b) Offences .....  | §377 |
| (i) Breaking and Entering .....   | §377 |
| A. Elements of Offence .....  | §377 |
| B. Actus Reus .....   | §378 |
| C. Mens Rea .....   | §385 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (ii) Being Unlawfully in Dwelling-house . . . . .  | §388        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §388        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §389        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §390        |
| (c) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .  | §391        |
| (d) Included Offences . . . . .  | §396        |
| 4. Possession of Break-in Instrument . . . . .   | §400        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .  | §400        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §401        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §402        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §404        |
| 5. Disguise with Intent . . . . .  | §405        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §405        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §406        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §407        |
| 6. Possession of Instruments for Breaking into Coin-operated or<br>Currency Exchange Devices . . . . . | §408        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §408        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §409        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §410        |
| <b>XII. Cause Disturbance . . . . .</b>  | <b>§411</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .   | §411        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .  | §413        |
| (a) Fighting and Drunkenness . . . . .   | §413        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §413        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §414        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §415        |
| (b) Indecent Exhibition . . . . .  | §416        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §416        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §417        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §418        |
| (c) Loitering . . . . .  | §419        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §419        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §420        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §421        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (d) Firearms/Disorderly Conduct . . . . .                  | §422        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §422        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                  | §423        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §424        |
| 3. Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                        | §425        |
| 4. Related Provisions . . . . .                            | §426        |
| <b>XIII. Childbirth — Offences Related to . . . . .</b>    | <b>§427</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                                   | §427        |
| 2. Concealing Body of Child . . . . .                      | §429        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §429        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §430        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                     | §431        |
| 3. Killing Child in Act of Birth . . . . .                 | §432        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §432        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §433        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                     | §434        |
| 4. Neglecting to Obtain Assistance in Childbirth . . . . . | §435        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §435        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §436        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                     | §438        |
| <b>XIV. Clergyman . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§439</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                                  | §439        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .                                      | §440        |
| (a) Elements of Offences . . . . .                         | §440        |
| (i) Threat or Force . . . . .                              | §440        |
| (ii) Assault or Violence . . . . .                         | §441        |
| (iii) Wilful Disturbance . . . . .                         | §442        |
| (iv) Disturbing Solemnity . . . . .                        | §443        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §444        |
| (i) Threat or Force . . . . .                              | §444        |
| (ii) Assault or Violence . . . . .                         | §445        |
| (iii) Wilful Disturbance . . . . .                         | §446        |
| (iv) Disturbing Solemnity . . . . .                        | §447        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                     | §448        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Threat or Force . . . . .                                | §448        |
| (ii) Assault or Violence . . . . .                           | §449        |
| (iii) Wilful Disturbance . . . . .                           | §450        |
| (iv) Disturbing Solemnity . . . . .                          | §451        |
| <b>XV. Compounding Indictable Offence . . . . .</b>          | <b>§452</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .                             | §452        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .                                      | §453        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §454        |
| 4. Statutory Exemption . . . . .                             | §455        |
| 5. Related Provisions . . . . .                              | §456        |
| <b>XVI. Contempt of Court and Related Offences . . . . .</b> | <b>§459</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .                             | §459        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .                                      | §460        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §461        |
| 4. Jurisdiction . . . . .                                    | §462        |
| 5. Procedural Considerations . . . . .                       | §464        |
| 6. Related Provisions . . . . .                              | §468        |
| 7. Disobeying Court Order in General . . . . .               | §471        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                                    | §471        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §472        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §473        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §474        |
| (e) Statutory Procedural Provisions . . . . .                | §475        |
| 8. Breach of Prohibition Order . . . . .                     | §476        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §476        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §478        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §479        |
| (d) Related Provisions . . . . .                             | §480        |
| 9. Ban on Publication — Show Cause . . . . .                 | §481        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §481        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §482        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §483        |
| (d) Related Provisions . . . . .                             | §484        |
| 10. Ban on Publication — Preliminary Hearing . . . . .       | §485        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §485 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §486 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §487 |
| (d) Related Provisions . . . . .                             | §488 |
| 11. Ban on Publication — Identity of Witnesses, etc. . . . . | §489 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §489 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §490 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §491 |
| 12. Ban on Publication — Review Board . . . . .              | §492 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §492 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §493 |
| (c) Mens rea . . . . .                                       | §494 |
| 13. Publication Regarding Search Warrant . . . . .           | §495 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §495 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §496 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §500 |
| 14. Publication of Confession . . . . .                      | §501 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §501 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §502 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §504 |
| 15. Exhibits . . . . .                                       | §505 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §505 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §506 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §507 |
| 16. Publicity — Jury Trial . . . . .                         | §508 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §508 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §509 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §510 |
| 17. Breach of Probation . . . . .                            | §511 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §511 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §512 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §513 |
| (d) Procedural Provisions . . . . .                          | §514 |
| 18. Breach of Peace Bond . . . . .                           | §515 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §515 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §517 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Mens Rea .....                         | §518        |
| 19. Related Provisions .....               | §519        |
| <b>XVII. Corruption .....</b>              | <b>§520</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....                      | §520        |
| 2. Definitions .....                       | §521        |
| 3. Offences .....                          | §529        |
| (a) Bribery of Officials .....             | §529        |
| (i) Accepting or Obtaining .....           | §529        |
| A. Elements of Offence .....               | §529        |
| B. Actus Reus .....                        | §530        |
| C. Mens Rea .....                          | §531        |
| (ii) Giving or Offering .....              | §532        |
| A. Elements of Offence .....               | §532        |
| B. Actus Reus .....                        | §533        |
| C. Mens Rea .....                          | §534        |
| (iii) Statutory Procedural Provision ..... | §535        |
| (b) Bribery of Officers .....              | §536        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....              | §536        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                      | §537        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                       | §538        |
| (c) Frauds on Government .....             | §539        |
| (i) Introduction .....                     | §539        |
| (ii) Giving or Accepting Benefit .....     | §544        |
| A. Elements of Offence .....               | §544        |
| B. Actus Reus .....                        | §545        |
| C. Mens Rea .....                          | §546        |
| (iii) Commissions or Rewards .....         | §547        |
| A. Elements of Offence .....               | §547        |
| B. Actus Reus .....                        | §548        |
| C. Mens Rea .....                          | §550        |
| (iv) Officials and Employees .....         | §551        |
| A. Elements of Offence .....               | §551        |
| B. Actus Reus .....                        | §552        |
| C. Mens Rea .....                          | §553        |
| (v) Offer of Influence .....               | §554        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §554 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §555 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §556 |
| (vi) Providing Reward . . . . .   | §557 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §557 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §558 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §559 |
| (vii) Tender of Contract . . . . .  | §560 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §560 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §561 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §562 |
| (viii) Contract . . . . .   | §563 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §563 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §564 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §565 |
| (d) Breach of Trust by Public Officer . . . . .                                 | §566 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §566 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §567 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §571 |
| (e) Municipal Corruption . . . . .  | §572 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .   | §572 |
| (ii) Loan/Reward/Advantage . . . . .  | §573 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §573 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §574 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §575 |
| (iii) Influence . . . . .   | §576 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §576 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §577 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §578 |
| (f) Selling or Purchasing Office . . . . .                                      | §579 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §579 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §580 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §581 |
| (g) Influencing or Negotiating Appointments or Dealings in<br>Offices . . . . . | §582 |
| (i) Appointment . . . . .   | §582 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §582        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §583        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §584        |
| (ii) Soliciting . . . . .                                   | §585        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §585        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §586        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §587        |
| (iii) Transacting . . . . .                                 | §588        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §588        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §589        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §590        |
| (h) Misconduct of Officers Executing Process . . . . .      | §591        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §591        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §592        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §593        |
| <b>XVIII. Counterfeiting and Related Offences . . . . .</b> | <b>§594</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                                    | §594        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .                                       | §602        |
| (a) Making Counterfeit Money . . . . .                      | §602        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §602        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §603        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §604        |
| (b) Possession of Counterfeit Money . . . . .               | §605        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §605        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §606        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §607        |
| (c) Having Clippings . . . . .                              | §608        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §608        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §609        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §610        |
| (d) Uttering Counterfeit Money . . . . .                    | §611        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §611        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §612        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §613        |
| (e) Uttering Coin . . . . .                                 | §614        |



CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §614 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §615 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §616 |
| (f) Slugs and Tokens . . . . .   | §617 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §617 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §618 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §619 |
| (g) Clipping and Uttering Clipped Coin . . . . .                             | §620 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §620 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §621 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §622 |
| (h) Defacing Current Coins . . . . .   | §623 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §623 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §624 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §625 |
| (i) Likeness of Bank-notes . . . . .   | §626 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §626 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §627 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §628 |
| (iv) Statutory Defences . . . . .  | §629 |
| (j) Making, Having or Dealing in Instruments for<br>Counterfeiting . . . . . | §630 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §630 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §631 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §632 |
| (k) Conveying Instruments for Coining out of Mint . . . . .                  | §633 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §633 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §634 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §635 |
| (l) Advertising and Dealing in Counterfeit Money . . . . .                   | §636 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §636 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §637 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §638 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §639 |
| (m) Exchequer Bill Paper and Related Matters . . . . .                       | §640 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .  | §640 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .             | §642        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                     | §643        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                        | §647        |
| (n) Counterfeit Proclamation . . . . .         | §648        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .              | §648        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                      | §649        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                       | §651        |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .              | §652        |
| (o) Stamps and Marks . . . . .                 | §655        |
| (i) Stamps . . . . .                           | §655        |
| A. Definitions . . . . .                       | §655        |
| B. Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §656        |
| C. Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §657        |
| D. Mens Rea . . . . .                          | §661        |
| (ii) Marks . . . . .                           | §664        |
| A. Definitions . . . . .                       | §664        |
| B. Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §665        |
| C. Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §666        |
| D. Mens Rea . . . . .                          | §671        |
| (iii) Related Provisions . . . . .             | §672        |
| 3. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . . | §673        |
| 4. Related Provisions . . . . .                | §675        |
| <b>XIX. Credit Card Offences . . . . .</b>     | <b>§677</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                       | §677        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .                          | §679        |
| (a) Theft . . . . .                            | §679        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .              | §679        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                      | §680        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                       | §681        |
| (b) Forgery or Falsification . . . . .         | §682        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .              | §682        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                      | §683        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                       | §684        |
| (c) Card Obtained by Offence . . . . .         | §685        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .              | §685        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §686        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §687        |
| (d) Use of Revoked or Cancelled Card . . . . .                              | §688        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §688        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §689        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §690        |
| (e) Unauthorized Use of Credit Card Data . . . . .                          | §691        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §691        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §692        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §693        |
| (f) Making, Having or Dealing in Instruments . . . . .                      | §694        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §694        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §695        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §696        |
| 3. Jurisdiction . . . . .   | §697        |
| 4. Punishment . . . . .   | §698        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XX. Criminal Negligence . . . . .</b>                                    | <b>§699</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §699        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | §702        |
| (a) Elements of Offences . . . . .  | §702        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §704        |
| (i) Criminal Negligence . . . . .   | §704        |
| (ii) Causing Death or Bodily Harm . . . . .                                 | §709        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §713        |
| (d) Child Victims . . . . .   | §715        |
| (e) Other . . . . .   | §718        |
| (f) Contributory Negligence . . . . .                                       | §719        |
| 3. Included Offences . . . . .  | §720        |
| 4. Related Provisions . . . . .   | §723        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XXI. Criminal Organization . . . . .</b>                                 | <b>§724</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §724        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | §728        |
| (a) Participation in the Activities of a Criminal<br>Organization . . . . . | §728        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §728        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §729        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §732        |
| (b) Commission of Offence for Criminal Organization . . . . .                | §734        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §734        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §735        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §736        |
| (c) Instructing Commission of Offence for Criminal<br>Organization . . . . . | §738        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §738        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §739        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §741        |
| 3. Punishment . . . . .  | §743        |
| 4. Procedural Provision . . . . .  | §744        |
| <b>XXII. Cruelty to Animals . . . . .</b>                                    | <b>§745</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .   | §745        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .  | §746        |
| (a) Injuring or Endangering Cattle . . . . .                                 | §746        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .  | §746        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §748        |
| (b) Injuring or Endangering Other Animals . . . . .                          | §749        |
| (c) Causing Unnecessary Suffering . . . . .                                  | §750        |
| (d) Causing Damage or Injury During Conveyance . . . . .                     | §751        |
| (e) Abandoning Domestic Animal or Animal in Captivity . . . . .              | §752        |
| (f) Fighting or Baiting . . . . .  | §753        |
| (g) Poisoning Domestic Animal or Animal in Captivity . . . . .               | §754        |
| (h) Trap Shooting . . . . .  | §755        |
| (i) Breach of Court Order . . . . .  | §756        |
| (j) Keeping Cockpit . . . . .  | §757        |
| 3. Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §758        |
| <b>XXIII. Dead Body, Interference with . . . . .</b>                         | <b>§761</b> |
| 1. Offence . . . . .   | §761        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §761        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §762        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §763        |
| 2. Related Provisions . . . . .                                      | §764        |
| <b>XXIV. Disobeying Statute . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§765</b> |
| 1. Offence . . . . .   | §765        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                    | §765        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §766        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §768        |
| 2. Procedural Provisions . . . . .                                   | §769        |
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .                                      | §770        |
| <b>XXV. Drilling, Unlawful . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§771</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .                                     | §771        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §774        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §775        |
| <b>XXVI. Driving Offences . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§776</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .   | §776        |
| 2. Alcohol Related Offences . . . . .                                | §782        |
| (a) Introduction . . . . .   | §782        |
| (b) Generally Applicable Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . . | §783        |
| (i) Deemed Care or Control . . . . .                                 | §783        |
| (ii) Urine or other Bodily Substance . . . . .                       | §787        |
| (c) Impaired Driving . . . . .                                       | §788        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                    | §788        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §789        |
| A. General . . . . .   | §789        |
| B. Impairment . . . . .  | §791        |
| C. Care or Control . . . . .   | §802        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §807        |
| A. General . . . . .   | §807        |
| B. Impairment . . . . .  | §808        |
| C. Care or Control . . . . .   | §811        |
| (iv) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                     | §813        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (d) Over .08 . . . . .                               | §814 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                    | §814 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §815 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §819 |
| (iv) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .     | §821 |
| A. Definitions . . . . .                             | §821 |
| B. Roadside Demand for Breath Sample . . . . .       | §822 |
| C. Demand for Breath or Blood Sample . . . . .       | §827 |
| 1. General . . . . .                                 | §827 |
| 2. Reasonable and Probable Grounds . . . . .         | §830 |
| 3. Timing of Demand . . . . .                        | §839 |
| 4. 2-hour Limit . . . . .                            | §840 |
| 5. As Soon as Practicable . . . . .                  | §841 |
| 6. Lowest Reading . . . . .                          | §843 |
| 7. Evidence to Contrary . . . . .                    | §844 |
| 8. Admissibility of Analysis . . . . .               | §851 |
| 9. Certificate of Analysis . . . . .                 | §852 |
| D. Breathalyzer Test . . . . .                       | §855 |
| 1. Wording of Breathalyzer Demand . . . . .          | §855 |
| 2. Presumption of Alcohol Concentration . . . . .    | §856 |
| 3. 15-Minute Interval . . . . .                      | §858 |
| 4. Two Samples . . . . .                             | §860 |
| 5. Admissibility of Certificates . . . . .           | §863 |
| E. Blood Test . . . . .                              | §865 |
| 1. Wording of Demand for Blood Samples . . . . .     | §865 |
| 2. Presumption of Alcohol Concentration . . . . .    | §866 |
| 3. Release of Blood Sample for Examination . . . . . | §867 |
| 4. Admissibility of Certificates . . . . .           | §869 |
| 5. Testing of Blood Sample for Drugs . . . . .       | §871 |
| (e) Refusal to Provide Breath Sample . . . . .       | §872 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                    | §872 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §873 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §886 |
| (iv) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .     | §889 |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (f) Punishment . . . . .   | §890 |
| (g) Included Offences . . . . .                                    | §898 |
| (h) Related Provisions . . . . .                                   | §900 |
| 3. Dangerous Driving . . . . .                                     | §902 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §902 |
| (b) Motor Vehicle . . . . .  | §903 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                  | §903 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §904 |
| A. General Considerations . . . . .                                | §904 |
| B. Surrounding Circumstances . . . . .                             | §909 |
| C. Driving Pattern . . . . .                                       | §910 |
| D. Public Place . . . . .  | §912 |
| E. Public . . . . .  | §913 |
| F. “Operates” . . . . .  | §915 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §916 |
| (c) Water Vessel . . . . .   | §921 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                  | §921 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §922 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §923 |
| (d) Aircraft . . . . .   | §924 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                  | §924 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §925 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §926 |
| (e) Railway Equipment . . . . .                                    | §927 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                  | §927 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §928 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §929 |
| (f) Punishment . . . . .   | §930 |
| (g) Included Offences . . . . .                                    | §934 |
| (h) Related Provisions . . . . .                                   | §937 |
| 4. Criminal Negligence in the Operation of Motor Vehicle . . . . . | §939 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §939 |
| (b) Effect of Impairment . . . . .                                 | §941 |
| (c) Involuntary Lapses of Attention . . . . .                      | §942 |
| (d) Evidence of Driving . . . . .                                  | §943 |
| (e) Punishment . . . . .   | §945 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 5. Driving While Prohibited . . . . .  | §947 |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .  | §947 |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §949 |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §951 |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §954 |
| (e) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                              | §957 |
| (f) Related Provisions . . . . .   | §963 |
| 6. Failing to Remain at Scene of Accident . . . . .                          | §965 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §965 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §967 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §975 |
| (d) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .   | §979 |
| (e) Included Offences . . . . .  | §984 |
| 7. Flight . . . . .  | §985 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §985 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §986 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §987 |
| 8. Flight Causing Bodily Harm or Death . . . . .                             | §988 |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §988 |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §989 |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §990 |
| (d) Punishment . . . . .   | §991 |
| 9. Street Racing . . . . .   | §993 |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .  | §993 |
| (b) Offences . . . . .   | §994 |
| (i) Causing Death by Criminal Negligence (Street<br>Racing) . . . . .        | §994 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §994 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §995 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §996 |
| (ii) Causing Bodily Harm by Criminal Negligence<br>(Street Racing) . . . . . | §997 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §997 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §998 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §999 |



CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| (iii) Dangerous Operation of Motor Vehicle while<br>Street Racing . . . . . | \$1000        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | \$1000        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | \$1001        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | \$1002        |
| D. Punishment . . . . .   | \$1003        |
| (c) Driving Prohibitions . . . . .  | \$1006        |
| <b>XXVII. Drugs — Instruments and Literature . . . . .</b>                  | <b>\$1010</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | \$1010        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | \$1016        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | \$1016        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | \$1017        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | \$1018        |
| <b>XXVIII. Duelling . . . . .</b>   | <b>\$1019</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | \$1019        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .   | \$1020        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .   | \$1021        |
| <b>XXIX. Employers — Offences By . . . . .</b>                              | <b>\$1022</b> |
| 1. Refusal to Employ, etc. . . . .  | \$1022        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | \$1022        |
| (i) Refusal to Employ or Dismissal . . . . .                                | \$1022        |
| (ii) Intimidation . . . . .   | \$1023        |
| (iii) Conspiracy . . . . .  | \$1024        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | \$1025        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | \$1025        |
| (ii) Refusal to Employ or Dismissal . . . . .                               | \$1026        |
| (iii) Intimidation . . . . .  | \$1027        |
| (iv) Conspiracy . . . . .   | \$1029        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | \$1030        |
| 2. Threats and Retaliation Against Employees . . . . .                      | \$1031        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | \$1031        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | \$1032        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | \$1033        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(d) Punishment . . . . . §1034

**XXX. Escapes and Rescues . . . . . §1035**

1. Definitions . . . . . §1035

2. Offences . . . . . §1036

(a) Prison Breach . . . . . §1036

(i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1036

(ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1037

(iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1039

(b) Escape from Lawful Custody . . . . . §1040

(i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1040

(ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1041

(iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1048

(c) Unlawfully at Large . . . . . §1049

(i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1049

(ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1050

(iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1055

(d) Permitting or Assisting Escape . . . . . §1056

(i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1056

(ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1057

(iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1059

(e) Rescue or Permitting Escape . . . . . §1060

(i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1060

(ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1061

(iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1063

(f) Assisting Prisoner of War to Escape . . . . . §1064

(i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1064

(ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1065

(iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1066

3. Related Provisions . . . . . §1067

**XXXI. Explosives . . . . . §1068**

1. Definitions . . . . . §1068

2. Offences . . . . . §1069

(a) Breach of Duty . . . . . §1069

(i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1069

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1070        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1072        |
| (b) Using Explosives . . . . .  | §1073        |
| (i) Intention to Cause Explosion . . . . .                              | §1073        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1073        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1074        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1075        |
| (ii) Bodily Harm . . . . .  | §1076        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1076        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1077        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1078        |
| (iii) Destruction of Property . . . . .                                 | §1079        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1079        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1080        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1081        |
| (iv) Making or Possession . . . . .                                     | §1082        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1082        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1083        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1084        |
| (c) Possession without Lawful Excuse/Criminal<br>Organization . . . . . | §1085        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                       | §1085        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1086        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1090        |
| (d) Placing or Detonating in a Public Facility . . . . .                | §1091        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .   | §1091        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                      | §1095        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1096        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1097        |
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .   | §1098        |
| <b>XXXII. Extortion . . . . .</b>                                       | <b>§1100</b> |
| 1. Offence . . . . .  | §1100        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                       | §1100        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1102        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1112        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 2. Related Provisions .....  | §1113        |
| <b>XXXIII. Failing to Appear for Court or for Fingerprinting . . .</b> | <b>§1116</b> |
| 1. Offences .....  | §1116        |
| (a) Undertaking/Recognizance/Court Order .....                         | §1116        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....  | §1116        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....  | §1117        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....   | §1119        |
| (iv) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions .....                           | §1122        |
| (b) Breach of Condition of Release .....                               | §1123        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....  | §1123        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....  | §1124        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....   | §1130        |
| (c) Fingerprinting .....   | §1131        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....  | §1131        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....  | §1132        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....   | §1133        |
| (iv) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions .....                           | §1134        |
| (d) Contrary to Summons .....  | §1136        |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....  | §1136        |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....  | §1137        |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....   | §1138        |
| (iv) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions .....                           | §1139        |
| 2. Related Provisions .....  | §1140        |
| <b>XXXIV. False Fire Alarm .....</b>                                   | <b>§1141</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence .....   | §1141        |
| 2. Evidentiary Provision .....   | §1142        |
| 3. Actus Reus .....  | §1143        |
| 4. Mens Rea .....  | §1144        |
| 5. Defence Provisions .....  | §1145        |
| 6. Related Provisions .....  | §1146        |
| <b>XXXV. False Pretences .....</b>                                     | <b>§1147</b> |
| 1. Definitions .....   | §1147        |
| 2. Offences .....  | §1150        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (a) Contract . . . . .  | §1150        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1150        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1151        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1155        |
| (iv) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .   | §1156        |
| (b) Credit . . . . .  | §1157        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1157        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1158        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1159        |
| (c) False Statement/Writing . . . . .   | §1160        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1160        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1161        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1162        |
| (d) Procuring . . . . .   | §1163        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1163        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1164        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1165        |
| (e) Obtaining Execution of Valuable Security . . . . .                              | §1166        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1166        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1167        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1168        |
| (iv) Related Material . . . . .   | §1169        |
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .   | §1170        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>XXXVI. Firearms and Other Weapons . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>§1175</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §1175        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | §1206        |
| (a) Use of Firearm or Imitation Firearm During Commis-<br>sion of Offence . . . . . | §1206        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1206        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1209        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1212        |
| (b) Pointing Firearm . . . . .  | §1213        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1213        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1214        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1215        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(c) Careless use of Firearm . . . . . §1216  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1216  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1217  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1218  
    (iv) Included Offences . . . . . §1220  
(d) Storage of Firearm . . . . . §1222  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1222  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1223  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1224  
(e) Possession of Weapon for Purpose Dangerous to the  
    Public Peace . . . . . §1225  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1225  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1226  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1230  
(f) Weapon at Public Meeting . . . . . §1236  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1236  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1237  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1238  
(g) Carrying Concealed Weapon . . . . . §1239  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1239  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1240  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1242  
    (iv) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . . §1246  
(h) Unauthorized Possession of Firearm . . . . . §1247  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1247  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1248  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1249  
    (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . . §1250  
(i) Unauthorized Possession of Prohibited Weapon or Re-  
    stricted Weapon . . . . . §1252  
    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1252  
    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1253  
    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1254  
    (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . . §1256  
(j) Possession of Firearm Knowing its Possession is  
    Unauthorized . . . . . §1257

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1257 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1258 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1259 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §1260 |
| (k) Possession of Prohibited Weapon, etc., Knowing its<br>Possession is Unauthorized . . . . . | §1262 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1262 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1263 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1264 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §1265 |
| (l) Possession at Unauthorized Place . . . . .   | §1266 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1266 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1267 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1268 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §1269 |
| (m) Unauthorized Possession in Motor Vehicle . . . . .   | §1270 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .  | §1270 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1271 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1272 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1273 |
| (v) Defence Provisions . . . . .   | §1275 |
| (n) Possession of Prohibited or Restricted Firearm with<br>Ammunition . . . . .                | §1278 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1278 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1279 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1280 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §1281 |
| (o) Possession of Weapon Obtained by Commission of<br>Offence . . . . .                        | §1282 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1282 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1283 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1284 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §1285 |
| (p) Weapons Trafficking . . . . .  | §1286 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1286 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1287 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1288

(q) Possession for Purpose of Weapons Trafficking . . . . . §1289

    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1289

    (ii) Actus reus . . . . . §1290

    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1291

(r) Transfer without Authority . . . . . §1292

    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1292

    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1293

    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1294

(s) Making Automatic Firearm . . . . . §1295

    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1295

    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1296

    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1297

(t) Importing or Exporting Knowing it is Unauthorized . . . . .

    . . . . . §1298

    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1298

    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1299

    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1300

    (iv) Procedural Provisions . . . . . §1301

(u) Unauthorized Importing or Exporting . . . . . §1302

    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1302

    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1303

    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1304

    (iv) Procedural Provisions . . . . . §1305

(v) Possession Contrary to Order . . . . . §1306

    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1306

    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1307

    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1308

    (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . . §1309

(w) Losing or Finding Weapon . . . . . §1310

    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1310

    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1311

    (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §1312

(x) Destroying Weapon . . . . . §1313

    (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §1313

    (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §1314



CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1315        |
| (y) False Statements . . . . .   | §1316        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .  | §1316        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1317        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1318        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1319        |
| (z) Tampering with Serial Number . . . . .   | §1320        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1320        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1321        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1322        |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §1323        |
| (v) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .   | §1324        |
| (aa) Failure to Surrender Authorization Licence or Registra-<br>tion Certificate . . . . . | §1325        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1325        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1326        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1327        |
| 3. Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .  | §1328        |
| 4. Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §1332        |
| 5. Related Provisions . . . . .  | §1340        |
| <b>XXXVII. Forgery and Related Offences . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§1345</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .   | §1345        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .  | §1349        |
| (a) Forged Passports . . . . .   | §1349        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .  | §1349        |
| (ii) Forging or Using . . . . .  | §1350        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1350        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1351        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1352        |
| (iii) Procuring . . . . .  | §1353        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1353        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1354        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1355        |
| (iv) Possession . . . . .  | §1356        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1356        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §1357 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §1358 |
| (v) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .             | §1359 |
| (b) Forgery . . . . .                                       | §1362 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §1362 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §1364 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §1368 |
| (iv) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                       | §1371 |
| (c) Uttering Forged Document . . . . .                      | §1375 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §1375 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §1376 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §1381 |
| (iv) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                       | §1385 |
| (d) Telegrams . . . . .                                     | §1386 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §1386 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §1387 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §1388 |
| (e) False Messages . . . . .                                | §1389 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                   | §1389 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §1390 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                  | §1391 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                     | §1392 |
| (f) Drawing Document without Authority . . . . .            | §1393 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §1393 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §1394 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §1397 |
| (g) Obtaining Instrument Based on Forged Document . . . . . | §1399 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                           | §1399 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §1400 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §1401 |
| (h) Damaging Documents . . . . .                            | §1402 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                   | §1402 |
| (ii) Register . . . . .                                     | §1403 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §1403 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §1404 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §1405 |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (iii) Insertion at Register . . . . .            | §1406 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                 | §1406 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §1407 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §1408 |
| (iv) Election Document . . . . .                 | §1409 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                 | §1409 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §1410 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §1411 |
| (v) Alteration of Election Document . . . . .    | §1412 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                 | §1412 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §1413 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §1414 |
| (i) Registers . . . . .                          | §1415 |
| (i) Falsifying . . . . .                         | §1415 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                 | §1415 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §1416 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §1417 |
| (ii) Making/Issuing . . . . .                    | §1418 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                 | §1418 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §1419 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §1420 |
| (iii) False Certificate/Declaration . . . . .    | §1421 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                 | §1421 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §1422 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §1423 |
| (j) Trademarks . . . . .                         | §1424 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                        | §1424 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §1425 |
| (iii) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .           | §1426 |
| (iv) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §1427 |
| (v) Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §1430 |
| (vi) Related Provisions . . . . .                | §1431 |
| (k) Instruments for Forging Trademarks . . . . . | §1432 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §1432 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §1433 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                         | §1435 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .                      | §1436        |
| (v) Related Provisions . . . . .                       | §1437        |
| (l) Other Offences in Relation to Trademarks . . . . . | §1438        |
| (i) Defacing/Concealing/Removing . . . . .             | §1438        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                       | §1438        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                | §1439        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                  | §1440        |
| (ii) Falsifying . . . . .                              | §1441        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                       | §1441        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                | §1442        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                  | §1443        |
| (iii) Related Provisions . . . . .                     | §1444        |
| <b>XXXVIII. Fraud and Related Offences . . . . .</b>   | <b>§1445</b> |
| 1. Offences . . . . .                                  | §1445        |
| (a) Certificate of Citizenship . . . . .               | §1445        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                              | §1445        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1446        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1447        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1450        |
| (b) Concealment . . . . .                              | §1452        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                      | §1452        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                              | §1453        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                               | §1454        |
| (c) Obtaining Execution of Valuable Security . . . . . | §1455        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                              | §1455        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1458        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1459        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1461        |
| (d) Obtaining Food and Lodging . . . . .               | §1462        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                              | §1462        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1463        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1464        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1465        |
| (v) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                   | §1466        |
| (e) Practising Witchcraft . . . . .                    | §1467        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                         | §1467 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §1468 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                  | §1472 |
| (f) Public Market . . . . .                               | §1473 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                 | §1473 |
| (ii) Type I . . . . .                                     | §1475 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §1475 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §1476 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                     | §1488 |
| (iii) Type II . . . . .                                   | §1490 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §1490 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §1491 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                     | §1492 |
| (g) Insider Trading . . . . .                             | §1493 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                 | §1493 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §1494 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                | §1495 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §1496 |
| (v) Defence Provision . . . . .                           | §1497 |
| (h) Tipping . . . . .                                     | §1498 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                 | §1498 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §1499 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                | §1500 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §1501 |
| (v) Defence Provision . . . . .                           | §1502 |
| (i) Using Mails . . . . .                                 | §1503 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                         | §1503 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §1504 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                  | §1505 |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .                         | §1506 |
| (j) Manipulation of Stock Exchange Transactions . . . . . | §1507 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                         | §1507 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §1508 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                  | §1514 |
| (k) Gaming in Stocks or Merchandise . . . . .             | §1517 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                 | §1517 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                             | §1518 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §1519 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1523 |
| (v) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                           | §1528 |
| (vi) Defence Provisions . . . . .                              | §1529 |
| (l) Broker Reducing Stock by Selling for own Account . . . . . | §1530 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §1530 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                      | §1531 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §1532 |
| (m) Concealment of Title Documents . . . . .                   | §1533 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §1533 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                      | §1534 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §1537 |
| (iv) Procedural Provisions . . . . .                           | §1539 |
| (n) Registration of Title . . . . .                            | §1540 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §1540 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                      | §1541 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §1545 |
| (o) Sale of Real Property . . . . .                            | §1546 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §1546 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                      | §1547 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §1548 |
| (p) Misleading Receipt . . . . .                               | §1549 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §1549 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                      | §1550 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §1552 |
| (q) Disposal of Goods on which Money Advanced . . . . .        | §1555 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                      | §1555 |
| (ii) Type I . . . . .  | §1556 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §1556 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1557 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1558 |
| (iii) Type II . . . . .  | §1559 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §1559 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §1560 |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §1561 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .                       | §1562 |
| (r) Receipts Under Bank Act . . . . .                   | §1564 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                               | §1564 |
| (ii) Type I . . . . .                                   | §1565 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §1565 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §1566 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §1567 |
| (iii) Type II . . . . .                                 | §1568 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §1568 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §1569 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §1570 |
| (s) Disposal of Property to Defraud Creditors . . . . . | §1572 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                               | §1572 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                      | §1573 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                              | §1574 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                 | §1578 |
| (v) Related Provisions . . . . .                        | §1581 |
| (t) Relating to Fares . . . . .                         | §1582 |
| (i) Type I . . . . .                                    | §1582 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §1582 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §1583 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §1584 |
| (ii) Type II . . . . .                                  | §1585 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §1585 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §1586 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §1587 |
| (iii) Type III . . . . .                                | §1588 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §1588 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §1589 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §1590 |
| (u) Relating to Minerals . . . . .                      | §1591 |
| (i) Type I . . . . .                                    | §1591 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §1591 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §1592 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §1594 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(ii) Type II ..... §1595  
    A. Elements of Offence ..... §1595  
    B. Actus Reus ..... §1597  
    C. Mens Rea ..... §1599  
(iii) Type III ..... §1600  
    A. Elements of Offence ..... §1600  
    B. Actus Reus ..... §1601  
    C. Mens Rea ..... §1602  
    D. Evidentiary Provision ..... §1603  
(iv) Related Provisions ..... §1604  
(v) Relating to Mines ..... §1606  
    (i) Type I ..... §1606  
        A. Elements of Offence ..... §1606  
        B. Actus Reus ..... §1607  
        C. Mens Rea ..... §1608  
    (ii) Type II ..... §1609  
        A. Elements of Offence ..... §1609  
        B. Actus Reus ..... §1610  
        C. Mens Rea ..... §1611  
    (iii) Related Provisions ..... §1612  
(w) Books and Documents ..... §1614  
    (i) Definitions ..... §1614  
    (ii) Type I ..... §1615  
        A. Elements of Offence ..... §1615  
        B. Actus Reus ..... §1616  
        C. Mens Rea ..... §1617  
    (iii) Type II ..... §1618  
        A. Elements of Offence ..... §1618  
        B. Actus Reus ..... §1619  
        C. Mens Rea ..... §1620  
    (iv) Related Provisions ..... §1621  
(x) Falsifying Employment Record ..... §1622  
    (i) Elements of Offence ..... §1622  
    (ii) Actus Reus ..... §1623  
    (iii) Mens Rea ..... §1624  
    (iv) Related Provisions ..... §1625



CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (y) False Return by Public Officer . . . . .          | §1626 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1626 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1627 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1628 |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .                     | §1629 |
| (z) False Prospectus . . . . .                        | §1630 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                             | §1630 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                    | §1632 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §1633 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                               | §1634 |
| (v) Related Provisions . . . . .                      | §1635 |
| (aa) Obtaining Carriage by False Billing . . . . .    | §1636 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1636 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1637 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1638 |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .                     | §1639 |
| (bb) Trader Failing to Keep Accounts . . . . .        | §1640 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1640 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1641 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1642 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .                     | §1643 |
| (cc) Acknowledging Instrument in False Name . . . . . | §1644 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1644 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1645 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1646 |
| (dd) Passing Off . . . . .                            | §1647 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1647 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1648 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1651 |
| (ee) Used Goods Sold without Disclosure . . . . .     | §1652 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                             | §1652 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                    | §1653 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §1654 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                               | §1655 |
| (ff) Falsely Claiming Royal Warrant . . . . .         | §1656 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                             | §1656 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .              | §1658 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                      | §1659 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                         | §1660 |
| (v) Related Provisions . . . . .                | §1661 |
| 2. Related Provisions . . . . .                 | §1662 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>XXXIX. Gambling</b> . . . . .                | §1663 |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                        | §1663 |
| (a) “Bet” . . . . .                             | §1663 |
| (b) “Common Betting House” . . . . .            | §1664 |
| (c) “Common Gaming House” . . . . .             | §1665 |
| (d) “Disorderly House” . . . . .                | §1669 |
| (e) “Game” . . . . .                            | §1670 |
| (f) “Gaming Equipment” . . . . .                | §1672 |
| (g) “Keeper” . . . . .                          | §1673 |
| (h) “Person” . . . . .                          | §1676 |
| (i) “Place” . . . . .                           | §1677 |
| 2. Offences . . . . .                           | §1678 |
| (a) Keeping Gaming or Betting House . . . . .   | §1678 |
| (i) Keeping . . . . .                           | §1678 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §1678 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §1679 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §1683 |
| (ii) Found in/Owner of . . . . .                | §1684 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §1684 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §1685 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §1688 |
| (iii) Defence Provisions . . . . .              | §1690 |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .               | §1692 |
| (b) Betting, Pool-selling, Bookmaking . . . . . | §1693 |
| (i) Bets and Pools . . . . .                    | §1693 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §1693 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §1694 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §1695 |
| (ii) Recording Equipment . . . . .              | §1697 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §1697 |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                 | §1698 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                   | §1700 |
| (iii) Having Under Control . . . . .    | §1702 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .        | §1702 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                 | §1703 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                   | §1704 |
| (iv) Recording or Registering . . . . . | §1705 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .        | §1705 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                 | §1706 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                   | §1707 |
| (v) Engaging in . . . . .               | §1708 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .        | §1708 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                 | §1710 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                   | §1713 |
| (vi) Printing and Providing . . . . .   | §1714 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .        | §1714 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                 | §1715 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                   | §1716 |
| (vii) Importing to Canada . . . . .     | §1717 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .        | §1717 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                 | §1718 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                   | §1719 |
| D. Defence Provisions . . . . .         | §1720 |
| (viii) Advertising . . . . .            | §1721 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .        | §1721 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                 | §1722 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                   | §1723 |
| (ix) Sending or Receiving . . . . .     | §1724 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .        | §1724 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                 | §1725 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                   | §1726 |
| (x) Aiding or Assisting . . . . .       | §1727 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .        | §1727 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                 | §1728 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                   | §1729 |
| (xi) Punishment . . . . .               | §1730 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (xii) Defence Provisions . . . . .                 | §1731 |
| (xiii) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . . | §1732 |
| (xiv) Related Provisions . . . . .                 | §1733 |
| (c) Placing Bets on Behalf of Others . . . . .     | §1734 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §1734 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §1735 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §1739 |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .                  | §1740 |
| (d) Lotteries and Games of Chance . . . . .        | §1741 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                          | §1741 |
| (ii) Making/Printing/Advertising . . . . .         | §1745 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §1745 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §1746 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1748 |
| (iii) Selling/Bartering/Exchanging . . . . .       | §1749 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §1749 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §1750 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1751 |
| (iv) Sending or Transmitting . . . . .             | §1752 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §1752 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §1753 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1754 |
| (v) Management of . . . . .                        | §1755 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §1755 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §1756 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1757 |
| (vi) Management of Investment in . . . . .         | §1758 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §1758 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §1759 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1761 |
| (vii) Disposing of Equipment . . . . .             | §1762 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §1762 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §1763 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1764 |
| (viii) Inducing Person to Play . . . . .           | §1765 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §1765 |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §1766        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §1767        |
| (ix) Three-card Monte . . . . .                   | §1768        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §1768        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §1769        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §1770        |
| (x) Receiving Bets — Three-card Monte . . . . .   | §1771        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §1771        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §1772        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §1773        |
| (xi) Permitting Play — Three-card Monte . . . . . | §1774        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §1774        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §1775        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §1776        |
| (xii) Punishment . . . . .                        | §1777        |
| (xiii) Buying/Taking/Receiving . . . . .          | §1778        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §1778        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §1779        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §1780        |
| (xiv) Defence Provisions . . . . .                | §1781        |
| (xv) Related Provisions . . . . .                 | §1783        |
| (e) Cheating at Play . . . . .                    | §1787        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                 | §1787        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §1788        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                          | §1790        |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .                 | §1791        |
| 3. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .    | §1792        |
| <b>XL. Harassment Related Offences . . . . .</b>  | <b>§1796</b> |
| 1. Criminal Harassment . . . . .                  | §1796        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                 | §1796        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §1799        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §1804        |
| (d) Procedural Provision . . . . .                | §1805        |
| 2. Indecent Telephone Calls . . . . .             | §1806        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                 | §1806        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                              | §1807        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1808        |
| 3. Harassing Telephone Calls . . . . .                | §1809        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1809        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                              | §1810        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1811        |
| 4. Related Provisions . . . . .                       | §1812        |
| <b>XLI. Hate Propaganda . . . . .</b>                 | <b>§1813</b> |
| 1. Advocating Genocide . . . . .                      | §1813        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                             | §1813        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1815        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .                              | §1816        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1817        |
| (e) Procedural Provisions . . . . .                   | §1818        |
| 2. Public Incitement of Hatred . . . . .              | §1819        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                             | §1819        |
| (b) Communicating in Public Place . . . . .           | §1823        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1823        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1824        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1825        |
| (c) Communicating in Public Conversation . . . . .    | §1826        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1826        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                             | §1827        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §1828        |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .                     | §1829        |
| (v) Procedural Provisions . . . . .                   | §1830        |
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .                       | §1831        |
| <b>XLII. Hijacking and Related Offences . . . . .</b> | <b>§1833</b> |
| 1. Hijacking . . . . .                                | §1833        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                             | §1833        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .                     | §1834        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .                              | §1835        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1836        |
| (e) Related Provisions . . . . .                      | §1837        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 2. Endangering Safety of Aircraft . . . . .             | §1838        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                               | §1838        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .                       | §1839        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .                                | §1840        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .                                  | §1848        |
| 3. Offensive Weapons and Explosive Substances . . . . . | §1851        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                               | §1851        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .                       | §1853        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .                                | §1854        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .                                  | §1855        |
| (e) Related Provisions . . . . .                        | §1856        |
| 4. Seizing Control of Ship or Fixed Platform . . . . .  | §1857        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                               | §1857        |
| (b) Seizing Control . . . . .                           | §1859        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                       | §1859        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                               | §1860        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1861        |
| (c) Act of Violence or Damage . . . . .                 | §1862        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                       | §1862        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                               | §1863        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1868        |
| (d) Communication of Information . . . . .              | §1869        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                       | §1869        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                               | §1870        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1871        |
| (e) Threatening . . . . .                               | §1872        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                       | §1872        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                               | §1873        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                | §1874        |
| 5. Related Provisions . . . . .                         | §1875        |
| <b>XLIII. Homicide . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§1876</b> |
| 1. Murder and Manslaughter . . . . .                    | §1876        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                               | §1876        |
| (b) Necessary Ingredients . . . . .                     | §1879        |
| (i) Homicide . . . . .                                  | §1879        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (ii) Culpable Homicide . . . . .  | §1881 |
| (iii) Causing Death . . . . .   | §1885 |
| (c) Murder . . . . .  | §1889 |
| (i) Causing Death of Intended Victim . . . . .                            | §1889 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1889 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1890 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1891 |
| (ii) Causing Death of Unintended Victim (Transferred<br>Intent) . . . . . | §1899 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1899 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1900 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1901 |
| (iii) Causing Death by Unlawful Object . . . . .                          | §1904 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1904 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1905 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1907 |
| (iv) Parties to Murder . . . . .  | §1909 |
| (v) Constructive Murder . . . . .   | §1912 |
| (d) Classification of Murder . . . . .                                    | §1916 |
| (e) First Degree Murder . . . . .   | §1918 |
| (i) Planned and Deliberate . . . . .                                      | §1918 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1918 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1920 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1921 |
| (ii) By Virtue of Nature of Victim . . . . .                              | §1928 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1928 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1930 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1933 |
| (iii) While Committing Another Offence (Constructive<br>Murder) . . . . . | §1935 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §1935 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1936 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §1942 |
| (iv) Punishment . . . . .   | §1944 |
| (f) Second Degree Murder . . . . .  | §1947 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1947 |



CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1948        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1949        |
| (iv) Punishment . . . . .   | §1950        |
| (g) Statutory Defences Particular to Murder . . . . .                           | §1956        |
| (h) Statutory Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions Relating to<br>Murder . . . . . | §1968        |
| (i) Manslaughter . . . . .  | §1972        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1972        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1973        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1974        |
| (iv) Punishment . . . . .   | §1980        |
| (v) Included Offences . . . . .   | §1981        |
| (j) Attempted Murder . . . . .  | §1983        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1983        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1984        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1985        |
| (iv) Included Offences . . . . .  | §1989        |
| (k) Accessory After the Fact to Murder . . . . .                                | §1990        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §1990        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §1991        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §1992        |
| (iv) Statutory Procedural Provisions . . . . .                                  | §1993        |
| 2. Statutory Defences . . . . .   | §1994        |
| 3. Included Offences . . . . .  | §1996        |
| 4. Related Material . . . . .   | §2000        |
| 5. Infanticide . . . . .  | §2003        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2003        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2004        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2005        |
| (d) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                                 | §2006        |
| (e) Included Offences . . . . .   | §2009        |
| <b>XLIV. Impeding Attempt to Save Life . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§2011</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2011        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2012        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2015        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

4. Related Provisions . . . . . §2016

**XLV. Indecency . . . . . §2017**

1. Definitions . . . . . §2017

2. Offences . . . . . §2018

    (a) Indecent Act . . . . . §2018

        (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §2018

        (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §2019

        (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §2023

        (iv) Related Provisions . . . . . §2025

    (b) Exposure . . . . . §2026

        (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §2026

        (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §2027

        (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §2028

        (iv) Related Provisions . . . . . §2029

3. Related Provisions . . . . . §2031

**XLVI. Interest Rate, Criminal . . . . . §2032**

1. Definitions . . . . . §2032

2. Elements of Offence . . . . . §2034

3. Actus Reus . . . . . §2035

4. Mens Rea . . . . . §2038

5. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . . §2039

6. Related Provisions . . . . . §2042

**XLVII. Interference . . . . . §2044**

1. Definition . . . . . §2044

2. Offences . . . . . §2045

    (a) Interfering with Transportation Facilities . . . . . §2045

        (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §2045

        (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §2046

        (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §2047

    (b) Interfering with Saving of Wrecked Vessel . . . . . §2048

        (i) Definition . . . . . §2048

        (ii) Saving of . . . . . §2049

            A. Elements of Offence . . . . . §2049

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2050        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2051        |
| (iii) Person Attempting . . . . .                             | §2052        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §2052        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2053        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2054        |
| (c) Interfering with Marine Signal . . . . .                  | §2055        |
| (i) Making Fast to . . . . .                                  | §2055        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §2055        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2056        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2057        |
| (ii) Altering/Removing/Concealing . . . . .                   | §2058        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §2058        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2059        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2060        |
| (d) Interfering with Boundary Lines . . . . .                 | §2061        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                             | §2061        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §2062        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                      | §2063        |
| (e) Interfering with International Boundary Marks . . . . .   | §2064        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                     | §2064        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §2065        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                    | §2066        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §2067        |
| (v) Defence Provisions . . . . .                              | §2068        |
| 3. Defence Provisions . . . . .                               | §2069        |
| 4. Related Provisions . . . . .                               | §2070        |
| <b>XLVIII. Internationally Protected Persons . . . . .</b>    | <b>§2071</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                                      | §2071        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | §2072        |
| (a) Threat Against Internationally Protected Person . . . . . | §2072        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                             | §2072        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §2073        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                      | §2074        |
| (b) Attack on Premises . . . . .                              | §2075        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2075        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2076        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2077        |
| (c) Attack on Premises of United Nations or Associated<br>Personnel . . . . .     | §2078        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2078        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2079        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2080        |
| (d) Threat Against United Nations or Associated Personnel . . . . .               | §2081        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2081        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2082        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2083        |
| 3. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                                    | §2084        |
| <b>XLIX. Intimidating Parliament . . . . .</b>                                    | <b>§2086</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2086        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2087        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2088        |
| 4. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                                    | §2089        |
| <b>L. Intimidation . . . . .</b>  | <b>§2091</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2091        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2092        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2101        |
| 4. Defence Provisions . . . . .   | §2102        |
| 5. Related Provisions . . . . .   | §2103        |
| <b>LI. Intimidation of a Justice System Participant or a Journalist . . . . .</b> | <b>§2105</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2105        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2106        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2107        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2108        |
| <b>LII. Kidnapping and Related Offences . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§2109</b> |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 1. Kidnapping . . . . .   | §2109        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2109        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2110        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2112        |
| 2. Unlawful Confinement . . . . .                               | §2113        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2113        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2114        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2116        |
| 3. Hostage Taking . . . . .                                     | §2117        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2117        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2119        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2120        |
| 4. Trafficking in Persons . . . . .                             | §2121        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                                       | §2121        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2122        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2124        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2125        |
| 5. Receiving Material Benefit from Trafficking in Persons . . . | §2126        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2126        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2127        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2128        |
| 6. Withholding or Destroying Documents . . . . .                | §2129        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2129        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2130        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2131        |
| 7. Included Offences . . . . .                                  | §2132        |
| 8. Related Provisions . . . . .                                 | §2133        |
| <b>LIII. Libel . . . . .</b>                                    | <b>§2136</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2136        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | §2139        |
| (a) Blasphemous Libel . . . . .                                 | §2139        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2139        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2140        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2142        |
| (iv) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                | §2143        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (v) Defence Provisions . . . . .                | §2145        |
| (b) Libel Known to be False . . . . .           | §2146        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2146        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                       | §2147        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                        | §2149        |
| (c) Defamatory Libel . . . . .                  | §2150        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2150        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                       | §2151        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                        | §2152        |
| (d) Extortion by Libel . . . . .                | §2153        |
| (i) Publishing . . . . .                        | §2153        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2153        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2154        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2155        |
| (ii) Refusal of Extortion . . . . .             | §2156        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2156        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2157        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2158        |
| 3. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .  | §2159        |
| 4. Related Material . . . . .                   | §2161        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>LIV. Loitering . . . . .</b>                 | <b>§2162</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                        | §2162        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2163        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2164        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2165        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>LV. Marriage Related Offences . . . . .</b>  | <b>§2166</b> |
| 1. Bigamy . . . . .                             | §2166        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2166        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §2168        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                          | §2176        |
| (d) Defence Provisions . . . . .                | §2178        |
| (e) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . . | §2182        |
| 2. Procuring Feigned Marriage . . . . .         | §2185        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2185        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §2186        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §2187        |
| (d) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                | §2188        |
| 3. Polygamy . . . . .                               | §2189        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2189        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §2190        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §2192        |
| (d) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .     | §2193        |
| 4. Unlawful Solemnization of Marriage . . . . .     | §2194        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2194        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §2195        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §2196        |
| 5. Marriage Contrary to Law . . . . .               | §2197        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2197        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §2198        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §2199        |
| <b>LVI. Mischief and Related Offences . . . . .</b> | <b>§2200</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                            | §2200        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .                               | §2203        |
| (a) Relating to Property . . . . .                  | §2203        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2203        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §2204        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §2209        |
| (iv) Punishment . . . . .                           | §2210        |
| (b) Relating to Religious Property . . . . .        | §2214        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2214        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §2215        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                            | §2216        |
| (c) Relating to Cultural Property . . . . .         | §2217        |
| (i) Definition . . . . .                            | §2217        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §2218        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §2219        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §2220        |
| (v) Procedural Provisions . . . . .                 | §2221        |
| (d) Relating to Data . . . . .                      | §2223        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2223        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                       | §2224        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                        | §2228        |
| (iv) Punishment . . . . .                       | §2229        |
| (e) Act Likely to Constitute Mischief . . . . . | §2230        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2230        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                       | §2231        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                        | §2232        |
| (f) Occupant Injuring Building . . . . .        | §2233        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                       | §2233        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .              | §2235        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                      | §2236        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                         | §2237        |
| (v) Related Provisions . . . . .                | §2238        |
| (g) Offensive Volatile Substance . . . . .      | §2239        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                       | §2239        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .              | §2240        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                      | §2241        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                         | §2242        |
| (v) Related Provisions . . . . .                | §2243        |
| 3. Statutory Defences . . . . .                 | §2244        |
| 4. Related Material . . . . .                   | §2247        |
| <b>LVII. Necessaries . . . . .</b>              | <b>§2249</b> |
| 1. Duty to Provide Necessaries . . . . .        | §2249        |
| (a) Definition . . . . .                        | §2249        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2250        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §2252        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .                          | §2259        |
| (e) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . . | §2261        |
| (f) Statutory and Specific Defences . . . . .   | §2263        |
| 2. Related Provisions . . . . .                 | §2266        |
| <b>LVIII. Nudity . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§2268</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                        | §2268        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2270        |



CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 3. Actus Reus .....                               | §2271        |
| 4. Mens Rea .....                                 | §2274        |
| 5. Procedural Provisions .....                    | §2275        |
| 6. Related Provisions .....                       | §2276        |
| <b>LIX. Nuisance .....</b>                        | <b>§2277</b> |
| 1. Definitions .....                              | §2277        |
| 2. Offences .....                                 | §2281        |
| (a) Elements of Offence .....                     | §2281        |
| (b) Actus Reus .....                              | §2282        |
| (c) Mens Rea .....                                | §2283        |
| 3. Related Provisions .....                       | §2284        |
| <b>LX. Obscenity .....</b>                        | <b>§2285</b> |
| 1. Definitions .....                              | §2285        |
| 2. Offences .....                                 | §2295        |
| (a) Obscene Material .....                        | §2295        |
| (i) Definitions .....                             | §2295        |
| (ii) Makes/Prints/Publishes .....                 | §2296        |
| A. Elements of Offence .....                      | §2296        |
| B. Actus Reus .....                               | §2297        |
| C. Mens Rea .....                                 | §2300        |
| (iii) Sells/Exhibits/Advertises .....             | §2303        |
| A. Elements of Offence .....                      | §2303        |
| B. Actus Reus .....                               | §2304        |
| C. Mens Rea .....                                 | §2310        |
| (iv) Statutory Defences .....                     | §2312        |
| (v) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions .....       | §2314        |
| (b) Child Pornography .....                       | §2315        |
| (i) Definitions .....                             | §2315        |
| (ii) Makes/Prints/Publishes/Possesses .....       | §2318        |
| A. Elements of Offence .....                      | §2318        |
| B. Actus Reus .....                               | §2319        |
| C. Mens Rea .....                                 | §2320        |
| (iii) Transmits/Makes Available/Distributes ..... | §2321        |
| A. Elements of Offence .....                      | §2321        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| B. Actus Reus .....                           | §2322 |
| C. Mens Rea .....                             | §2323 |
| (iv) Possesses .....                          | §2324 |
| A. Elements of Offence .....                  | §2324 |
| B. Actus Reus .....                           | §2326 |
| C. Mens Rea .....                             | §2327 |
| (v) Accesses .....                            | §2328 |
| A. Elements of Offence .....                  | §2328 |
| B. Actus Reus .....                           | §2329 |
| C. Mens Rea .....                             | §2330 |
| (vi) Defence Provisions .....                 | §2331 |
| (vii) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions ..... | §2333 |
| (viii) Related Provisions .....               | §2335 |
| (c) Indecent Exhibition .....                 | §2336 |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....                 | §2336 |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                         | §2337 |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                          | §2338 |
| (d) Tied Sale .....                           | §2339 |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....                 | §2339 |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                         | §2340 |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                          | §2341 |
| (e) Immoral Theatrical Performance .....      | §2342 |
| (i) Definitions .....                         | §2342 |
| (ii) Permitting .....                         | §2343 |
| A. Elements of Offence .....                  | §2343 |
| B. Actus Reus .....                           | §2345 |
| C. Mens Rea .....                             | §2351 |
| (iii) Taking Part .....                       | §2352 |
| A. Elements of Offence .....                  | §2352 |
| B. Actus Reus .....                           | §2353 |
| C. Mens Rea .....                             | §2354 |
| (f) Mailing Obscene Material .....            | §2355 |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....                 | §2355 |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                         | §2356 |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                          | §2358 |
| (iv) Related Provisions .....                 | §2359 |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .                                      | §2361        |
| <b>LXI. Obstruction . . . . .</b>                                    | <b>§2364</b> |
| 1. Relating to Public or Peace Officer . . . . .                     | §2364        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .  | §2364        |
| (b) Resisting/Obstructing . . . . .                                  | §2366        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                    | §2366        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2367        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2373        |
| (c) Failure to Assist . . . . .                                      | §2374        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                    | §2374        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2375        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2377        |
| (d) Process and Distress . . . . .                                   | §2378        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                    | §2378        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2379        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2381        |
| (e) Related Provisions . . . . .                                     | §2382        |
| 2. Obstructing Justice . . . . .                                     | §2384        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .  | §2384        |
| (b) By Indemnification or by Surety . . . . .                        | §2385        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                    | §2385        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2386        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2387        |
| (c) By Other Means . . . . .   | §2388        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                    | §2388        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2390        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2399        |
| (d) Related Provisions . . . . .                                     | §2401        |
| <b>LXII. Opening in Ice/Excavation — Duty to Safeguard . . . . .</b> | <b>§2402</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .                                     | §2402        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2405        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2408        |
| 4. Related Provisions . . . . .                                      | §2409        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**LXIII. Organizations — Criminal Liability of** . . . . . §2412

    1. Definitions . . . . . §2412

    2. Offences of Negligence . . . . . §2416

    3. Other Offences . . . . . §2417

  

**LXIV. Perjury and Related Offences** . . . . . §2418

    1. Definitions . . . . . §2418

    2. Offences . . . . . §2421

        (a) Perjury . . . . . §2421

            (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §2421

            (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §2422

            (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §2426

            (iv) Punishment . . . . . §2428

            (v) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . . §2429

        (b) Unlawfully Giving Sworn Statement . . . . . §2433

            (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §2433

            (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §2434

            (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §2435

            (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . . §2436

            (v) Related Provisions . . . . . §2437

        (c) Witness Giving Contradictory Evidence . . . . . §2438

            (i) Definitions . . . . . §2438

            (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . . §2439

            (iii) Actus Reus . . . . . §2440

            (iv) Mens Rea . . . . . §2441

            (v) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . . §2442

        (d) Fabricating Evidence . . . . . §2444

            (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §2444

            (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §2445

            (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §2446

        (e) Relating to Affidavits . . . . . §2447

            (i) Elements of Offence . . . . . §2447

            (ii) Actus Reus . . . . . §2448

            (iii) Mens Rea . . . . . §2451

    3. Related Provisions . . . . . §2454

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>LXV. Personation</b> .....                                | §2456 |
| 1. Personation of Peace Officer .....                        | §2456 |
| (a) Definitions .....  | §2456 |
| (b) Elements of Offence .....                                | §2457 |
| (c) Actus Reus .....   | §2458 |
| (d) Mens Rea .....   | §2460 |
| 2. Personation with Intent .....                             | §2461 |
| (a) Elements of Offence .....                                | §2461 |
| (b) Actus Reus .....   | §2462 |
| (c) Mens Rea .....   | §2463 |
| 3. Personation at Examination .....                          | §2464 |
| (a) Elements of Offence .....                                | §2464 |
| (b) Actus Reus .....   | §2465 |
| (c) Mens Rea .....   | §2467 |
| 4. Related Provisions .....                                  | §2469 |
| <br>   |       |
| <b>LXVI. Piracy</b> .....                                    | §2470 |
| 1. Piracy by Law of Nations .....                            | §2470 |
| (a) Elements of Offence .....                                | §2470 |
| (b) Actus Reus .....   | §2471 |
| (c) Mens Rea .....   | §2473 |
| 2. Piratical Acts .....                                      | §2474 |
| (a) Elements of Offence .....                                | §2474 |
| (b) Actus Reus .....   | §2475 |
| (c) Mens Rea .....   | §2479 |
| (d) Definitions .....  | §2480 |
| 3. Related Provisions .....                                  | §2482 |
| <br>   |       |
| <b>LXVII. Possession of Property Obtained by Crime</b> ..... | §2483 |
| 1. Possession .....  | §2483 |
| (a) Definitions .....  | §2483 |
| (b) Knowledge .....  | §2485 |
| (c) Control .....  | §2490 |
| (d) Special Extension of Definition .....                    | §2494 |
| (e) Party to Possession .....                                | §2495 |
| (f) Related Material .....                                   | §2496 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 2. Possession of Property Obtained by Crime . . . . .   | §2498        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .   | §2498        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2499        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2500        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2502        |
| (e) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .   | §2506        |
| (f) Punishment . . . . .  | §2514        |
| (g) Related Provisions . . . . .  | §2515        |
| 3. Bringing Stolen Property into Canada . . . . .   | §2517        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2517        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2518        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2519        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>LXVIII. Private Communications . . . . .</b>   | <b>§2520</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2520        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | §2525        |
| (a) Interception of Private Communication . . . . .   | §2525        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2525        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2526        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2527        |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .   | §2528        |
| (b) Possession of Interception Equipment . . . . .  | §2531        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2531        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2532        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2533        |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .   | §2534        |
| (c) Disclosure of Information . . . . .   | §2535        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2535        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2536        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2537        |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .   | §2538        |
| (d) Disclosure of Information Received from Interception<br>of Radio-based Telephone Communications . . . . . | §2540        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2540        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2541        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2545        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (iv) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                | §2546        |
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .                                 | §2547        |
| <b>LXIX. Prize Fight . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§2550</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2550        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                                | §2551        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2552        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2553        |
| 5. Related Provisions . . . . .                                 | §2554        |
| <b>LXX. Proceeds of Crime . . . . .</b>                         | <b>§2555</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2555        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                                | §2559        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2560        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2561        |
| 5. Punishment . . . . .   | §2562        |
| 6. Related Provisions . . . . .                                 | §2563        |
| <b>LXXI. Prostitution and Related Offences . . . . .</b>        | <b>§2564</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2564        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | §2571        |
| (a) Keeping Common Bawdy-house . . . . .                        | §2571        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2571        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2572        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2575        |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .                               | §2576        |
| (b) Inmate of Common Bawdy-house and Related Offences . . . . . | §2578        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2578        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2579        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2582        |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .                               | §2584        |
| (c) Transporting Person to Common Bawdy-house . . . . .         | §2585        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2585        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2586        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2587        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (d) Procuring . . . . .                         | §2588 |
| (i) Procuring Intercourse . . . . .             | §2588 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2588 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2589 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2591 |
| (ii) Enticing . . . . .                         | §2592 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2592 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2593 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2594 |
| (iii) Concealing . . . . .                      | §2595 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2595 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2596 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2597 |
| (iv) Procuring Prostitution . . . . .           | §2598 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2598 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2599 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2600 |
| (v) Person to Become Inmate . . . . .           | §2601 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2601 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2602 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2603 |
| (vi) Directing or Causing . . . . .             | §2604 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2604 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2605 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2606 |
| (vii) Procuring Residence . . . . .             | §2607 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2607 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2608 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2609 |
| (viii) Control/Direction/Influence . . . . .    | §2610 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2610 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2611 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2613 |
| (ix) Administering Drug or Intoxicant . . . . . | §2614 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2614 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2615 |



CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2616        |
| (x) Living on Avails . . . . .  | §2617        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2617        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2618        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2620        |
| D. Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .   | §2621        |
| (xi) Living on Avails of Prostitution of Person Under<br>18 Years . . . . . | §2622        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2622        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2623        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2624        |
| D. Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .   | §2625        |
| (xii) Sexual Services of Person Under 18 Years . . . . .                    | §2626        |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2626        |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2627        |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2628        |
| (xiii) Defence Provisions . . . . .   | §2629        |
| (xiv) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                           | §2630        |
| (e) Soliciting . . . . .  | §2632        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .   | §2632        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2633        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2634        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2638        |
| (v) Included Offence . . . . .  | §2639        |
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .   | §2640        |
| <b>LXXII. Public Mischief . . . . .</b>                                     | <b>§2641</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2641        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2642        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2643        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2648        |
| 5. Punishment . . . . .   | §2651        |
| 6. Related Provisions . . . . .   | §2652        |
| <b>LXXIII. Public Stores . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§2653</b> |
| 1. Public Stores . . . . .  | §2653        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                                       | §2653        |
| (b) Applying or Removing Distinguishing Marks . . . . .         | §2655        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2655        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2656        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2659        |
| (c) Receiving Public Stores with Distinguishing Marks . . . . . | §2661        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2661        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2662        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2663        |
| (iv) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                           | §2664        |
| 2. Defective Stores . . . . .                                   | §2665        |
| (a) Selling Defective Stores to Her Majesty . . . . .           | §2665        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2665        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2666        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2669        |
| (b) Liability as Representative . . . . .                       | §2670        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                               | §2670        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2671        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2674        |
| <b>LXXIV. RCMP — Desertion . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§2676</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2676        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                                | §2677        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2678        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2682        |
| 5. Related Material . . . . .                                   | §2686        |
| <b>LXXV. Removal of Natural Barrier . . . . .</b>               | <b>§2687</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2687        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                                | §2688        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2689        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2690        |
| 5. Related Material . . . . .                                   | §2691        |
| <b>LXXVI. Rewards . . . . .</b>                                 | <b>§2692</b> |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 1. Corruptly Taking Reward for Recovery of Goods . . . . . | §2692        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §2692        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §2693        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                     | §2694        |
| 2. Advertising Reward and Immunity . . . . .               | §2695        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §2695        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                   | §2696        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                     | §2697        |
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .                            | §2698        |
| <b>LXXVII. Riots . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§2700</b> |
| 1. Offences . . . . .                                      | §2700        |
| (a) Unlawful Assembly . . . . .                            | §2700        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §2700        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                  | §2702        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §2705        |
| (iv) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .                      | §2706        |
| (v) Defence Provisions . . . . .                           | §2707        |
| (b) Riot . . . . .   | §2708        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                          | §2708        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                  | §2711        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §2713        |
| (c) Neglect by Peace Officer . . . . .                     | §2714        |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                  | §2714        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                         | §2715        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §2716        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §2717        |
| (d) Failing to Comply with Proclamation . . . . .          | §2718        |
| (i) Proclamation . . . . .                                 | §2718        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                         | §2719        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §2720        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §2721        |
| 2. Related Provisions . . . . .                            | §2723        |
| <b>LXXVIII. Robbery and Related Offences . . . . .</b>     | <b>§2729</b> |
| 1. Robbery . . . . .                                       | §2729        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                       | §2729        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2735        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §2736        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .                          | §2743        |
| (e) Punishment . . . . .                        | §2748        |
| (f) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . . | §2750        |
| (g) Included Offences . . . . .                 | §2751        |
| (h) Related Provisions . . . . .                | §2756        |
| 2. Stopping Mail with Intent . . . . .          | §2757        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2757        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                        | §2758        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                          | §2759        |
| (d) Related Provisions . . . . .                | §2760        |
| <b>LXXIX. Sabotage . . . . .</b>                | <b>§2761</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                        | §2761        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                | §2762        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .                         | §2763        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §2764        |
| 5. Defence Provisions . . . . .                 | §2765        |
| 6. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .  | §2767        |
| 7. Related Provisions . . . . .                 | §2768        |
| <b>LXXX. Secret Commissions . . . . .</b>       | <b>§2770</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                        | §2770        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .                           | §2772        |
| (a) Giving or Demanding . . . . .               | §2772        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2772        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                       | §2773        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                        | §2778        |
| (b) Agents and Principals . . . . .             | §2779        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2779        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                       | §2780        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                        | §2782        |
| (c) Being Privy to . . . . .                    | §2783        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .               | §2783        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2784        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2785        |
| (d) Punishment . . . . .   | §2786        |
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .  | §2787        |
| <b>LXXXI. Sedition . . . . .</b>   | <b>§2788</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .   | §2788        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §2792        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2793        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2797        |
| 5. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .   | §2798        |
| 6. Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §2801        |
| 7. Related Provisions . . . . .  | §2802        |
| <b>LXXXII. Sexual Offences . . . . .</b>   | <b>§2803</b> |
| 1. Offences . . . . .  | §2803        |
| (a) Sexual Assault . . . . .   | §2803        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2803        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2804        |
| A. General . . . . .   | §2804        |
| B. “Sexual” . . . . .  | §2805        |
| C. “Consent” . . . . .   | §2806        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2813        |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §2815        |
| (v) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .  | §2816        |
| (b) Sexual Assault with Weapon, Threats to Third Party or<br>Causing Bodily Harm . . . . . | §2828        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2828        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2829        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2830        |
| (c) Aggravated Sexual Assault . . . . .  | §2833        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §2833        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2834        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2835        |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .  | §2836        |
| (d) Parent or Guardian Procuring Sexual Activity . . . . .                                 | §2838        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                            | §2838 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2839 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §2840 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §2841 |
| (e) Householder Permitting Sexual Activity . . . . . | §2842 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                            | §2842 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2843 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §2844 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §2846 |
| (f) Corrupting Children . . . . .                    | §2847 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                            | §2847 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2848 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §2849 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §2850 |
| (v) Procedural Provisions . . . . .                  | §2851 |
| (g) Luring a Child . . . . .                         | §2852 |
| (i) Definition . . . . .                             | §2852 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2853 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §2854 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §2855 |
| (v) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .      | §2856 |
| (h) Sexual Interference . . . . .                    | §2858 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                    | §2858 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §2859 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §2860 |
| (iv) Included Offences . . . . .                     | §2861 |
| (i) Invitation to Touch . . . . .                    | §2863 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                    | §2863 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §2864 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                             | §2865 |
| (j) Sexual Exploitation . . . . .                    | §2866 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                            | §2866 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §2867 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                           | §2869 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §2871 |
| (v) Included Offences . . . . .                      | §2873 |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (k) Sexual Exploitation of Person With Disability . . . . .   | §2874 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                     | §2874 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §2876 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                    | §2877 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §2878 |
| (v) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .               | §2879 |
| (l) Removal of Child from Canada for Sexual Purpose . . . . . | §2880 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                             | §2880 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §2881 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                      | §2885 |
| (m) Incest . . . . .  | §2886 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .                                     | §2886 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                            | §2888 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                    | §2890 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .                                       | §2895 |
| (v) Defence Provisions . . . . .                              | §2896 |
| (vi) Evidentiary Matters . . . . .                            | §2897 |
| (n) Anal Intercourse . . . . .                                | §2898 |
| (o) Bestiality . . . . .                                      | §2899 |
| (i) Committing . . . . .                                      | §2899 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §2899 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2900 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2902 |
| (ii) Compelling . . . . .                                     | §2903 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §2903 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2904 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2905 |
| (iii) In Presence of/Inciting . . . . .                       | §2906 |
| A. Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §2906 |
| B. Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §2907 |
| C. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2908 |
| D. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                | §2909 |
| E. Defence Provisions . . . . .                               | §2910 |
| F. Related Provisions . . . . .                               | §2912 |
| (p) Voyeurism . . . . .                                       | §2913 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (i) Definition . . . . .  | §2913        |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                    | §2914        |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §2915        |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2916        |
| (v) Defence Provision . . . . .                                       | §2917        |
| (q) Printing, Publication of Voyeuristic Recordings . . . . .         | §2918        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                     | §2918        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2919        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2920        |
| (r) Failing to Comply with Sex Offender Registration . . . . .        | §2921        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                     | §2921        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2922        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2923        |
| 2. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                        | §2924        |
| 3. Related Provisions . . . . .                                       | §2935        |
| <b>LXXXIII. Space Station . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§2939</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2939        |
| 2. Offences by Canadian Crew Members . . . . .                        | §2946        |
| 3. Offences by Crew Members of Partner States . . . . .               | §2947        |
| 4. Procedural Provisions . . . . .                                    | §2948        |
| <b>LXXXIV. Suicide — Counselling or Aiding . . . . .</b>              | <b>§2950</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2950        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                                      | §2951        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2952        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §2955        |
| 5. Related Provisions . . . . .                                       | §2956        |
| <b>LXXXV. Terrorism . . . . .</b>                                     | <b>§2957</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §2957        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | §2966        |
| (a) Providing or Collecting Property for Terrorist Activity . . . . . | §2966        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                     | §2966        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2967        |



CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2968 |
| (b) Providing Property for Terrorist Purposes . . . . .           | §2969 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §2969 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2970 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2971 |
| (c) Using or Possessing Property for Terrorist Purposes . . . . . | §2972 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §2972 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2973 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2974 |
| (d) Dealing in Property . . . . .                                 | §2975 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §2975 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2976 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2977 |
| (iv) Exemptions . . . . .   | §2978 |
| (e) Disclosure . . . . .  | §2979 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §2979 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2980 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2981 |
| (f) Audit . . . . .   | §2982 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §2982 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2983 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2984 |
| (g) Participating in the Activity of a Terrorist Group . . . . .  | §2985 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §2985 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2986 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2987 |
| (h) Facilitating Terrorist Activity . . . . .                     | §2988 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §2988 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2990 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2991 |
| (i) Commission of Offence for Terrorist Group . . . . .           | §2992 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                 | §2992 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2993 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2994 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (j) Instructing to Carry out Activity for Terrorist Group . . . . . | §2995        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                   | §2995        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2996        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §2997        |
| (k) Instructing to Carry Out Terrorist Activity . . . . .           | §2998        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                   | §2998        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §2999        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §3000        |
| (l) Harboring or Concealing . . . . .                               | §3001        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                   | §3001        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §3002        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §3003        |
| (m) Hoax Regarding Terrorist Activity . . . . .                     | §3004        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                   | §3004        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §3005        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §3006        |
| (iv) Punishment . . . . .   | §3007        |
| 3. Punishment . . . . .   | §3008        |
| 4. Procedural Provisions . . . . .                                  | §3010        |
| 5. Recognizance with Conditions . . . . .                           | §3013        |
| <b>LXXXVI. Theft . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§3015</b> |
| 1. Definition . . . . .   | §3015        |
| 2. Offences . . . . .   | §3016        |
| (a) Theft . . . . .   | §3016        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                   | §3016        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §3018        |
| A. General . . . . .  | §3018        |
| B. Conversion . . . . .   | §3028        |
| C. Special Property or Interest . . . . .                           | §3033        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §3038        |
| (iv) Related Provisions . . . . .                                   | §3045        |
| (b) Theft by Bailee of Things Under Seizure . . . . .               | §3047        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                                   | §3047        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §3048        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §3049 |
| (c) Theft of Telecommunication Service . . . . .                                   | §3050 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .  | §3050 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §3051 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §3052 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §3053 |
| (d) Possession of Device to Obtain Telecommunication Facility or Service . . . . . | §3054 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .  | §3054 |
| (ii) Elements of Offence . . . . .   | §3055 |
| (iii) Actus Reus . . . . .   | §3056 |
| (iv) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §3057 |
| (v) Related Provisions . . . . .   | §3058 |
| (e) Theft by Person Required to Account . . . . .                                  | §3059 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §3059 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §3060 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §3063 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §3064 |
| (f) Theft by Person Holding Power of Attorney . . . . .                            | §3065 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §3065 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §3066 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §3067 |
| (g) Misappropriation of Money Held Under Direction . . . . .                       | §3068 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §3068 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §3069 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §3071 |
| (iv) Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §3072 |
| (h) Theft from Mail . . . . .  | §3073 |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .  | §3073 |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .  | §3074 |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .   | §3078 |
| (iv) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                                   | §3080 |
| 3. Punishment . . . . .  | §3084 |
| 4. Defence Provisions . . . . .  | §3086 |
| 5. Included Offences . . . . .   | §3088 |
| 6. Related Provisions . . . . .  | §3090 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>LXXXVII. Theft-Related Offences</b> .....         | §3092 |
| 1. Taking Vehicle Without Consent .....              | §3092 |
| (a) Definitions .....                                | §3092 |
| (b) Elements of Offence .....                        | §3094 |
| (c) Actus Reus .....                                 | §3095 |
| (d) Mens Rea .....                                   | §3096 |
| (e) Related Provisions .....                         | §3098 |
| (f) Included Offences .....                          | §3099 |
| 2. Criminal Breach of Trust .....                    | §3100 |
| (a) Elements of Offence .....                        | §3100 |
| (b) Actus Reus .....                                 | §3101 |
| (c) Mens Rea .....                                   | §3103 |
| (d) Related Provisions .....                         | §3104 |
| 3. Public Servant Refusing to Deliver Property ..... | §3105 |
| (a) Elements of Offence .....                        | §3105 |
| (b) Actus Reus .....                                 | §3106 |
| (c) Mens Rea .....                                   | §3107 |
| (d) Related Provisions .....                         | §3108 |
| 4. Drift Timber .....                                | §3109 |
| (a) Definitions .....                                | §3109 |
| (b) Taking Possession of Drift Timber .....          | §3112 |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....                        | §3112 |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                                | §3113 |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                                 | §3118 |
| (iv) Evidentiary Provisions .....                    | §3119 |
| (c) Trading Lumbering Equipment .....                | §3121 |
| (i) Elements of Offence .....                        | §3121 |
| (ii) Actus Reus .....                                | §3122 |
| (iii) Mens Rea .....                                 | §3123 |
| (d) Related Provision .....                          | §3124 |
| 5. Unauthorized Use of Computer .....                | §3125 |
| (a) Definitions .....                                | §3125 |
| (b) Elements of Offence .....                        | §3134 |
| (c) Actus Reus .....                                 | §3135 |
| (d) Mens Rea .....                                   | §3140 |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (e) Related Provisions . . . . .                   | §3142        |
| 6. Taking Cattle or Defacing Brand . . . . .       | §3144        |
| (a) Definition . . . . .                           | §3144        |
| (b) Taking Cattle . . . . .                        | §3145        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §3145        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §3146        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §3147        |
| (c) Defacing Brand . . . . .                       | §3148        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §3148        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §3149        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §3152        |
| (d) Theft of Cattle . . . . .                      | §3153        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                  | §3153        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                          | §3154        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                           | §3155        |
| (e) Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .               | §3156        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>LXXXVIII. Threats . . . . .</b>                 | <b>§3158</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                           | §3158        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §3159        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §3160        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §3162        |
| 5. Punishment . . . . .                            | §3163        |
| 6. Related Provisions . . . . .                    | §3165        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>LXXXIX. Torture . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§3166</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                           | §3166        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                   | §3169        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .                            | §3170        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .                              | §3171        |
| 5. Defence Provisions . . . . .                    | §3172        |
| 6. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .     | §3173        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>XC. Towing Offences . . . . .</b>               | <b>§3175</b> |
| 1. Definition . . . . .                            | §3175        |
| 2. Failing to Keep Watch on Person Towed . . . . . | §3177        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §3177        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §3178        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §3179        |
| 3. Towing in Dark . . . . .                              | §3180        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §3180        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §3181        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §3182        |
| 4. Related Provisions . . . . .                          | §3183        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>XCI. Trading Stamps . . . . .</b>                     | <b>§3185</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                                 | §3185        |
| 2. Issuing Trading Stamps to Merchant . . . . .          | §3187        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §3187        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §3188        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §3189        |
| 3. Trading Stamps Issued by Merchant . . . . .           | §3190        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §3190        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                 | §3191        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .                                   | §3192        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>XCII. Traps Likely to Cause Bodily Harm . . . . .</b> | <b>§3193</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .                         | §3193        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .                                  | §3194        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .                                    | §3195        |
| 4. Related Provisions . . . . .                          | §3196        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>XCIII. Treason and Related Offences . . . . .</b>     | <b>§3198</b> |
| 1. Treason . . . . .                                     | §3198        |
| (a) High Treason . . . . .                               | §3198        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §3198        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                | §3200        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                 | §3204        |
| (iv) Punishment . . . . .                                | §3205        |
| (b) Treason . . . . .                                    | §3207        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                        | §3207        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                | §3209        |

CRIMINAL LAW — OFFENCES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                      | §3215        |
| (iv) Punishment . . . . .                                     | §3220        |
| (c) Omitting to Prevent Treason . . . . .                     | §3221        |
| (i) Elements of Offence . . . . .                             | §3221        |
| (ii) Actus Reus . . . . .                                     | §3222        |
| (iii) Mens Rea . . . . .                                      | §3223        |
| (iv) Punishment . . . . .                                     | §3224        |
| (d) Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .               | §3225        |
| 2. Assisting Alien Enemy to Leave Canada . . . . .            | §3228        |
| (a) Definitions . . . . .                                     | §3228        |
| (b) Elements of Offence . . . . .                             | §3229        |
| (c) Actus Reus . . . . .                                      | §3231        |
| (d) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §3232        |
| 3. Alarming Her Majesty . . . . .                             | §3234        |
| (a) Elements of Offence . . . . .                             | §3234        |
| (b) Actus Reus . . . . .                                      | §3235        |
| (c) Mens Rea . . . . .  | §3236        |
| (d) Procedural/Evidentiary Provisions . . . . .               | §3237        |
| (e) Related Provision . . . . .                               | §3239        |
| 4. Evidentiary/Procedural Provision . . . . .                 | §3240        |
| 5. Related Provisions . . . . .                               | §3241        |
| <b>XCIV. Unseaworthy Vessel and Unsafe Aircraft . . . . .</b> | <b>§3244</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                                      | §3244        |
| 2. Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §3246        |
| 3. Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §3247        |
| 4. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §3251        |
| 5. Defence Provisions . . . . .                               | §3252        |
| 6. Evidentiary/Procedural Provisions . . . . .                | §3253        |
| 7. Related Provisions . . . . .                               | §3254        |
| <b>XCV. Vagrancy . . . . .</b>                                | <b>§3257</b> |
| 1. Elements of Offence . . . . .                              | §3257        |
| 2. Actus Reus . . . . .                                       | §3258        |
| 3. Mens Rea . . . . .   | §3261        |
| 4. Punishment . . . . .                                       | §3262        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

5. Evidentiary Provision . . . . . §3263  
6. Related Provisions . . . . . §3264

**XCVI. Wreck — Offences Related to . . . . . §3266**  
1. Definitions . . . . . §3266  
2. Elements of Offence . . . . . §3267  
3. Actus Reus . . . . . §3268  
4. Mens Rea . . . . . §3274  
5. Related Provisions . . . . . §3276

**Index**

*Related titles:* Animals; Armed Forces; Aviation; Boundaries and Surveys; Burial and Cremation; Contempt of Court; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Debtor and Creditor; Defamation; Evidence; Extradition; Firearms, Weapons and Explosives; Gaming; Highways and Streets; International Law; Internet Law; Motor Vehicles; Narcotic Control; Nuisance; Police; Prerogative Remedies; Prisons; Sentencing; Shipping; Sports; Victims of Crime — Compensation; Youth Criminal Justice.



# CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

prepared by  
Marian E. Bryant, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*  
and  
David W. Guenter, L.L.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Jurisdiction</b> .....  | §1  |
| 1. Level of Court .....   | §1  |
| (a) Superior Court of Criminal Jurisdiction .....                         | §1  |
| (b) Court of Criminal Jurisdiction .....                                  | §5  |
| 2. Territorial Jurisdiction .....   | §8  |
| (a) Outside Canada .....  | §8  |
| (b) Offence in Two or More Provinces .....                                | §9  |
| (c) Offence in Two or More Territorial Districts of One<br>Province ..... | §16 |
| (d) Offence in Territorial Waters .....                                   | §24 |
| 3. Type of Offence .....  | §27 |
| (a) Indictable .....  | §27 |
| (b) Summary Conviction .....  | §30 |
| (c) Hybrid or Dual Proceeding .....                                       | §31 |
| 4. Limitation Periods: Effect on Jurisdiction .....                       | §32 |
| (a) Indictable Offences .....   | §32 |
| (b) Summary Conviction Offences .....                                     | §33 |
| <b>II. Special Procedure and Powers</b> .....                             | §34 |
| 1. Officials With Powers of Two Justices .....                            | §34 |
| 2. Preserving Order in Court .....  | §35 |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 3. Loss of Jurisdiction . . . . .  | §36  |
| 4. Exclusion of Public . . . . .   | §39  |
| 5. Powers of Search and Seizure . . . . .  | §46  |
| (a) General Principles . . . . .   | §46  |
| (b) Application for and Issuance of Search Warrants . . . . .                          | §49  |
| (i) Processes Leading to Issuance . . . . .  | §49  |
| (ii) Description of Offence . . . . .  | §55  |
| (iii) Description of Place to be Searched . . . . .                                    | §61  |
| (iv) Description of Items Sought . . . . .   | §65  |
| (v) Grounds for Belief . . . . .   | §69  |
| (vi) Naming Persons Involved in Process . . . . .                                      | §75  |
| (vii) Disclosure of Sources . . . . .  | §77  |
| (viii) Territorial Limitations . . . . .   | §78  |
| (ix) Federal Statutes Other Than Criminal Code . . . . .                               | §80  |
| (x) No Application to Provincial Offences . . . . .                                    | §81  |
| (xi) Effect of Variations in Forms Prescribed in Code . . . . .                        | §82  |
| (c) Execution of Warrant . . . . .   | §84  |
| (i) Who May Execute Warrant . . . . .  | §84  |
| (ii) Manner and Timing of Execution . . . . .  | §86  |
| (iii) What May Be Seized . . . . .   | §88  |
| (iv) Search of Person . . . . .  | §91  |
| (v) Self-Incrimination During Execution of Search<br>Warrant . . . . .                 | §101 |
| (d) Treatment of Items Seized . . . . .  | §103 |
| (i) Return to Justice . . . . .  | §103 |
| (ii) Forfeiture of Items Seized . . . . .  | §106 |
| (iii) Examination of Items Seized . . . . .  | §108 |
| (iv) Retention of Illicit Items . . . . .  | §109 |
| (e) Challenging Propriety of Search . . . . .  | §110 |
| (i) Attacking Process . . . . .  | §110 |
| (ii) Return of Goods Seized After Warrant Quashed . . . . .                            | §114 |
| (iii) Civil Action Arising Out of Issuance of Warrant . . . . .                        | §115 |
| (f) Admission of Evidence Obtained through Unreasonable<br>Search or Seizure . . . . . | §118 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

- (g) Miscellaneous Rules . . . . . §120
  - (i) Successive and Simultaneous Search Warrants . . . . §120
  - (ii) Bank Records . . . . . §122
  - (iii) Law Offices; Premises Occupied by Media . . . . §124
  - (iv) Accessibility of Search Warrant Documents . . . . §130
  - (v) Proceeds of Crime . . . . . §133
- 6. Forfeiture of Weapons . . . . . §134
- 7. Seizure of Explosives . . . . . §135
- 8. Mutual Legal Assistance in Criminal Matters Act . . . . . §136
- 9. Where Warrant Not Necessary . . . . . §137
  
- III. Compelling Appearance of Accused; Interim Release . . . . . §138**
  - 1. Arrest . . . . . §138
    - (a) Definition . . . . . §138
    - (b) Notice . . . . . §139
    - (c) Arrest without Warrant . . . . . §140
      - (i) By Any Person . . . . . §140
      - (ii) By Owner of Property . . . . . §145
      - (iii) Delivery to Peace Officer . . . . . §146
      - (iv) By Peace Officer . . . . . §147
        - A. General . . . . . §147
        - B. Reasonable and Probable Grounds . . . . . §149
        - C. Protection of Peace Officer . . . . . §150
        - D. Civil Liability . . . . . §151
        - E. Exceptions for Specific Types of Offence . . . . §152
        - F. Arrest on Outstanding Warrant . . . . . §153
    - (d) Powers of Peace Officer Incidental to Arrest . . . . . §154
      - (i) Search . . . . . §154
      - (ii) Use of Force . . . . . §158
      - (iii) Entry Upon Property . . . . . §159
  - 2. Compelling Appearance of Accused . . . . . §161
    - (a) Release by Peace Officer . . . . . §161
    - (b) Release by Officer in Charge . . . . . §171
      - (i) Promise to Appear . . . . . §171
      - (ii) Summons . . . . . §174
      - (iii) Appearance Before Justice . . . . . §175

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| A. Timing . . . . .                                    | §175 |
| B. Warrant in Another Jurisdiction . . . . .           | §177 |
| 3. Information . . . . .                               | §178 |
| (a) Definition . . . . .                               | §178 |
| (b) Personal Knowledge or Reasonable Grounds . . . . . | §180 |
| (c) Form . . . . .                                     | §182 |
| (d) Content . . . . .                                  | §186 |
| (i) Sufficiency . . . . .                              | §186 |
| (ii) Amendment . . . . .                               | §187 |
| (e) Timing . . . . .                                   | §188 |
| 4. Issuing Summons or Warrant . . . . .                | §191 |
| (a) “Shall ... Hear and Consider, Ex Parte” . . . . .  | §191 |
| (i) Informant and Witnesses . . . . .                  | §191 |
| (ii) Recording Evidence of Witnesses . . . . .         | §192 |
| (iii) Administrative and Judicial Functions . . . . .  | §194 |
| (b) Summons . . . . .                                  | §197 |
| (i) Content . . . . .                                  | §197 |
| (ii) Presumption of Regularity . . . . .               | §198 |
| (c) Warrant . . . . .                                  | §202 |
| (i) Content . . . . .                                  | §202 |
| (ii) Duration . . . . .                                | §204 |
| (iii) Foundation . . . . .                             | §205 |
| (iv) Judicial Function . . . . .                       | §206 |
| (v) Direction to Peace Officer . . . . .               | §208 |
| 5. Judicial Interim Release . . . . .                  | §210 |
| (a) Show Cause Hearing . . . . .                       | §210 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                  | §210 |
| (ii) Onus . . . . .                                    | §217 |
| A. General . . . . .                                   | §217 |
| B. Reverse Onus . . . . .                              | §220 |
| (iii) Grounds . . . . .                                | §227 |
| (iv) Evidence . . . . .                                | §239 |
| (v) Conditions of Release . . . . .                    | §243 |
| (vi) Reasons . . . . .                                 | §250 |
| (vii) Publication of Proceedings . . . . .             | §251 |
| (viii) Duration of Order . . . . .                     | §252 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Three-Day Remand . . . . .  | §255        |
| (c) Review of Release or Detention Order . . . . .                            | §257        |
| (i) Application by Accused or Prosecutor . . . . .                            | §257        |
| (ii) Nature of Review Hearing . . . . .                                       | §261        |
| A. Trial de Novo or Appeal . . . . .  | §261        |
| B. Onus . . . . .   | §262        |
| C. Materials Receivable . . . . .   | §264        |
| D. Additional Evidence . . . . .  | §265        |
| E. Further Application . . . . .  | §266        |
| (d) Arrest of Accused on Interim Release . . . . .                            | §270        |
| (e) Review Where Trial Delayed . . . . .                                      | §272        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §272        |
| (ii) Non-Compliance . . . . .   | §275        |
| A. Effect of . . . . .  | §275        |
| B. Remedy For . . . . .   | §276        |
| (f) Attendance of Prisoner . . . . .  | §278        |
| (g) Endorsement of Warrant . . . . .  | §279        |
| <b>IV. Language of Accused . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§282</b> |
| <b>V. Disclosure . . . . .</b>  | <b>§288</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §288        |
| (a) Introduction . . . . .  | §288        |
| (b) What Must be Disclosed . . . . .  | §289        |
| (i) Fruits of Investigation . . . . .   | §289        |
| (ii) Summary Conviction Proceedings . . . . .                                 | §290        |
| (iii) All Relevant Information . . . . .                                      | §291        |
| (iv) Specific Types of Evidence or Information . . . . .                      | §293        |
| (c) Duty to Advise Unrepresented Accused . . . . .                            | §297        |
| (d) Timing of Disclosure . . . . .  | §298        |
| 2. Discretion to Withhold Disclosure . . . . .                                | §300        |
| 3. Review by Trial Judge . . . . .  | §302        |
| (a) Obligation of Defence to Raise Issue at Earliest<br>Opportunity . . . . . | §302        |
| (b) Onus on Crown . . . . .   | §303        |
| (c) Test . . . . .  | §304        |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (d) Crown Disputing Evidence of Requested Information . . . . . | §307        |
| (e) Varying Earlier Disclosure Order . . . . .                  | §308        |
| 4. Review by Court of Appeal . . . . .                          | §309        |
| 5. Therapeutic Records . . . . .                                | §310        |
| (a) Records in Crown's Possession . . . . .                     | §310        |
| (b) Records in Possession of Third Party . . . . .              | §311        |
| 6. Lost Evidence . . . . .                                      | §319        |
| 7. Remedies . . . . .   | §320        |
| (a) Disclosure Order and Adjournment . . . . .                  | §320        |
| (b) Recalling Witness, Adjournment or Mistrial . . . . .        | §321        |
| (c) Costs . . . . .   | §322        |
| (d) Stay of Proceedings . . . . .                               | §323        |
| (e) New Trial Following Conviction . . . . .                    | §325        |
| (f) Approach of Defence Counsel at Trial . . . . .              | §326        |
| 8. Related Criminal Code Provisions . . . . .                   | §327        |
| (a) Right of Inspection . . . . .                               | §327        |
| (b) Release of Exhibits . . . . .                               | §328        |
| <b>VI. Mental Disorder . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§331</b> |
| 1. Overview . . . . .   | §331        |
| 2. Assessment Orders . . . . .                                  | §332        |
| (a) Grounds for Order . . . . .                                 | §332        |
| (b) Jurisdiction to Make Order . . . . .                        | §334        |
| (c) Time for Making Order . . . . .                             | §335        |
| (d) Motion for Order . . . . .                                  | §336        |
| (e) Contents of Order . . . . .                                 | §340        |
| (f) Duration of Order . . . . .                                 | §341        |
| (g) Custody of Accused while Subject to Order . . . . .         | §343        |
| (h) No Treatment Order on Assessment . . . . .                  | §349        |
| (i) Assessment Report . . . . .                                 | §350        |
| (j) Protected Statements . . . . .                              | §351        |
| 3. Fitness to Stand Trial . . . . .                             | §353        |
| (a) Presumption of Fitness . . . . .                            | §353        |
| (b) Definitions . . . . .                                       | §354        |
| (c) Directing Fitness Hearing . . . . .                         | §356        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (d) Burden of Proof . . . . .   | §358 |
| (e) Appointment of Counsel . . . . .  | §359 |
| (f) Postponement of Trial of Issue . . . . .                                    | §360 |
| (g) Trial of Issue by Judge and Jury . . . . .                                  | §362 |
| (h) Trial of Issue by Court . . . . .   | §363 |
| (i) Accused Found Fit to Stand Trial . . . . .                                  | §364 |
| (j) Detention in Hospital until Completion of Trial . . . . .                   | §365 |
| (k) Accused Acquitted . . . . .   | §366 |
| (l) Accused Found Unfit to Stand Trial . . . . .                                | §367 |
| (m) Subsequent Proceedings . . . . .  | §368 |
| (n) Subsequent Inquiries . . . . .  | §369 |
| 4. Accused Found Not Criminally Responsible Due to Mental Disorder . . . . .    | §374 |
| (a) Rendering of Verdict . . . . .  | §374 |
| (b) Effect of Verdict . . . . .   | §375 |
| 5. Review Board . . . . .   | §378 |
| 6. Disposition Hearings . . . . .   | §379 |
| (a) Hearing by Court . . . . .  | §379 |
| (b) Terms of Release . . . . .  | §383 |
| (c) Hearing by Review Board . . . . .   | §384 |
| (d) Determination of Fitness by Review Board . . . . .                          | §387 |
| (e) Continued Detention in Hospital . . . . .                                   | §390 |
| (f) Procedure at Disposition Hearing . . . . .                                  | §391 |
| 7. Dispositions by Court or Review Board . . . . .                              | §392 |
| (a) Types of Dispositions . . . . .   | §392 |
| (b) Criteria . . . . .  | §393 |
| (c) Delegation of Authority to Vary Restrictions on Accused's Liberty . . . . . | §397 |
| (d) Treatment Disposition . . . . .   | §400 |
| 8. Dual Status Offenders . . . . .  | §406 |
| (a) Definition . . . . .  | §406 |
| (b) Precedence of Sentence or Disposition . . . . .                             | §407 |
| (c) Authority of Review Board to Change Place of Custody . . . . .              | §409 |
| (d) Holding of Review Hearing . . . . .   | §410 |
| (e) Notice of Discharge . . . . .   | §412 |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (f) Detention as Service of Term . . . . .                 | §413        |
| 9. Appeals . . . . .                                       | §414        |
| (a) Grounds for Appeal . . . . .                           | §414        |
| (b) Appeal on Transcript and Additional Evidence . . . . . | §416        |
| (c) Suspension of Disposition Pending Appeal . . . . .     | §417        |
| (d) Order Pending Appeal . . . . .                         | §418        |
| (e) Powers of Court of Appeal . . . . .                    | §419        |
| 10. Review of Dispositions . . . . .                       | §422        |
| (a) Mandatory Review . . . . .                             | §422        |
| (b) Discretionary Review on Request . . . . .              | §426        |
| (c) Disposition by Review Board . . . . .                  | §427        |
| (d) Compelling Appearance . . . . .                        | §428        |
| (e) Stay of Proceedings . . . . .                          | §429        |
| 11. Interprovincial Transfers . . . . .                    | §430        |
| 12. Enforcement of Orders and Regulations . . . . .        | §431        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VII. Preliminary Inquiry . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§433</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §433        |
| 2. Purpose . . . . .                                       | §435        |
| 3. Before Preliminary Inquiry . . . . .                    | §439        |
| 4. Procedure . . . . .                                     | §442        |
| 5. Order to Stand Trial . . . . .                          | §447        |
| 6. Powers of Justice . . . . .                             | §456        |
| (a) Jurisdiction . . . . .                                 | §456        |
| (b) Ban on Publication of Evidence . . . . .               | §464        |
| (c) Adjournment . . . . .                                  | §469        |
| (d) Power to Regulate . . . . .                            | §474        |
| (e) Witnesses . . . . .                                    | §479        |
| (f) Absconding Accused . . . . .                           | §483        |
| (g) Exclusion Of Public . . . . .                          | §488        |
| (h) Appearance by Accused . . . . .                        | §489        |
| (i) Offence Committed in Different Jurisdiction . . . . .  | §491        |
| (j) Inability of Justice to Continue . . . . .             | §492        |
| (k) Conversion of Proceedings . . . . .                    | §493        |
| 7. Review Of Order To Stand Trial . . . . .                | §496        |
| (a) Standard of Review . . . . .                           | §496        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (b) Application of Wrong Standard by Preliminary Hearing Judge . . . . . | \$498        |
| (c) Admissibility of Evidence . . . . .                                  | \$499        |
| (d) Restriction of Cross-Examination . . . . .                           | \$502        |
| (e) Adjournment . . . . .  | \$503        |
| (f) Refusal to Allow Counsel to Call Witnesses . . . . .                 | \$504        |
| (g) Refusal to Permit Submissions . . . . .                              | \$505        |
| (h) Incomplete Record . . . . .  | \$506        |
| (i) Validity of Information . . . . .                                    | \$508        |
| 8. Related Material . . . . .  | \$511        |
| <b>VIII. Indictable Offences — Trial Without Jury . . . . .</b>          | <b>\$513</b> |
| 1. Jurisdiction of Provincial Judge . . . . .                            | \$513        |
| (a) Statutory Prerequisites . . . . .                                    | \$513        |
| (b) Nature of Jurisdiction . . . . .                                     | \$514        |
| (c) Theft under \$5,000 . . . . .  | \$515        |
| 2. Election . . . . .  | \$517        |
| (a) Electable Offences . . . . .   | \$517        |
| (i) Right of Election . . . . .  | \$517        |
| (ii) Hybrid Offences . . . . .   | \$519        |
| (b) Compliance with Statutory Requirements . . . . .                     | \$521        |
| (c) Waiver . . . . .   | \$523        |
| (d) Timing of Election . . . . .   | \$524        |
| (e) Amendment of Charge . . . . .  | \$525        |
| (f) More than One Accused . . . . .                                      | \$526        |
| 3. Election for Judge or for Judge and Jury . . . . .                    | \$527        |
| (a) Preliminary Inquiry . . . . .  | \$527        |
| (b) Record of Election . . . . .   | \$528        |
| (c) Deemed Elections . . . . .   | \$529        |
| (i) Standing Mute . . . . .  | \$529        |
| (ii) Accused Absconding . . . . .  | \$530        |
| (iii) Intervention By Attorney General . . . . .                         | \$531        |
| 4. Re-Elections . . . . .  | \$532        |
| 5. Elections and Re-elections in Writing . . . . .                       | \$538        |
| 6. Trial . . . . .   | \$539        |
| (a) Trial by Provincial Judge . . . . .                                  | \$539        |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (i) Endorsement . . . . .   | §539        |
| (ii) Preliminary Inquiry May be Held . . . . .                        | §541        |
| (iii) Taking Evidence . . . . .                                       | §543        |
| (iv) Adjournment . . . . .  | §544        |
| (b) Preferring Charge . . . . .                                       | §545        |
| (i) Persons Who May Prefer Charge . . . . .                           | §545        |
| (ii) Counts . . . . .   | §546        |
| (iii) Timing . . . . .  | §552        |
| (iv) Forum . . . . .  | §554        |
| A. Judge Alone . . . . .  | §554        |
| B. Judge and Jury . . . . .   | §555        |
| (c) Trial by Judge Alone . . . . .                                    | §556        |
| (i) Jurisdiction of Judge . . . . .                                   | §556        |
| (ii) Court of Record . . . . .  | §559        |
| (d) Trial by Judge and Jury . . . . .                                 | §560        |
| (e) Adjournment . . . . .   | §561        |
| (f) Continuation where Judge Unable to Act . . . . .                  | §562        |
| (g) Record of Conviction or Order . . . . .                           | §564        |
| (h) Application of Other Parts of Code . . . . .                      | §568        |
| <b>IX. Procedure by Indictment . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§569</b> |
| 1. Preferring Indictment . . . . .                                    | §569        |
| (a) Definition . . . . .  | §569        |
| (b) Preferral or Presentment . . . . .                                | §570        |
| (c) Direct Indictment . . . . .                                       | §573        |
| (i) Preferment by Attorney General or Judge . . . . .                 | §573        |
| (ii) Offences Disclosed . . . . .                                     | §576        |
| (iii) Ex Parte Proceeding . . . . .                                   | §578        |
| (iv) Application to Attorney General Where Judge<br>Refuses . . . . . | §580        |
| (v) Statutory Presumption . . . . .                                   | §581        |
| (vi) No Review of Discretion of Attorney General . . . . .            | §582        |
| 2. Issuing Process . . . . .  | §583        |
| 3. Stay of Proceedings . . . . .                                      | §584        |
| (a) Power of Attorney General . . . . .                               | §584        |
| (b) Withdrawal of Charges . . . . .                                   | §587        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (c) Stay of Proceedings by Court . . . . .                              | §588 |
| (i) Abuse of Process . . . . .  | §588 |
| (ii) Infringement of Right to be Tried Within Reasonable Time . . . . . | §589 |
| 4. Sufficiency of Counts . . . . .                                      | §590 |
| (a) Single Transaction . . . . .  | §590 |
| (b) Statement of Indictable Offence . . . . .                           | §591 |
| (i) Popular Language . . . . .  | §591 |
| (ii) Words of Enactment . . . . .                                       | §592 |
| (iii) Section Number . . . . .  | §593 |
| (iv) Specifics . . . . .  | §594 |
| (v) Dates . . . . .   | §596 |
| (c) Curative Provisions . . . . .                                       | §597 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §597 |
| (ii) Person, Place or Thing . . . . .                                   | §598 |
| (iii) Writings or Words . . . . .                                       | §599 |
| (iv) Means . . . . .  | §600 |
| (v) Consent . . . . .   | §601 |
| (d) Nature of Offence . . . . .   | §602 |
| (e) Modern Approach . . . . .   | §604 |
| (f) Duplicity, Multiplicity or Alternate Modes . . . . .                | §605 |
| (i) Single Transaction Rule . . . . .                                   | §605 |
| (ii) Curative Provision . . . . .                                       | §606 |
| (iii) Purpose of Rule . . . . .   | §607 |
| (iv) Test for Violation . . . . .                                       | §608 |
| A. Case to be Met . . . . .   | §608 |
| B. Autrefois Convict . . . . .  | §609 |
| C. Examples . . . . .   | §610 |
| (v) Amending or Dividing . . . . .                                      | §611 |
| 5. Particulars . . . . .  | §612 |
| (a) Purpose . . . . .   | §612 |
| (b) Procedure . . . . .   | §615 |
| (c) Grounds for Order . . . . .   | §616 |
| (d) What Constitutes “Particulars” . . . . .                            | §617 |
| (e) Effect of Particulars . . . . .                                     | §621 |
| (f) Particulars and “Imperfect” Indictment . . . . .                    | §623 |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 6. Joinder and Severance of Counts . . . . .       | §625 |
| (a) Joinder . . . . .                              | §625 |
| (b) Severance . . . . .                            | §626 |
| (i) General . . . . .                              | §626 |
| (ii) Grounds . . . . .                             | §627 |
| A. Nexus . . . . .                                 | §627 |
| B. Nature and Complexity . . . . .                 | §628 |
| C. Conspiracy and Substantive Counts . . . . .     | §629 |
| (iii) Procedural Considerations . . . . .          | §630 |
| 7. Joinder and Severance of Accused . . . . .      | §631 |
| (a) Joinder . . . . .                              | §631 |
| (b) Severance . . . . .                            | §633 |
| (i) Jurisdiction to Sever . . . . .                | §633 |
| (ii) Timing . . . . .                              | §635 |
| (iii) Grounds . . . . .                            | §636 |
| A. General . . . . .                               | §636 |
| B. Use of Statement . . . . .                      | §638 |
| C. Co-accused as Witness . . . . .                 | §639 |
| (iv) Charging Jury . . . . .                       | §641 |
| (v) Discretion . . . . .                           | §642 |
| 8. Change of Venue . . . . .                       | §643 |
| (a) Application . . . . .                          | §643 |
| (i) General . . . . .                              | §643 |
| (ii) When and to whom . . . . .                    | §645 |
| (iii) Material in Support of Application . . . . . | §646 |
| (b) Grounds . . . . .                              | §647 |
| (c) Application by Crown . . . . .                 | §651 |
| (d) Discretionary Order . . . . .                  | §652 |
| (e) Successive Applications . . . . .              | §653 |
| (f) Procedural Considerations . . . . .            | §654 |
| 9. Amendments . . . . .                            | §657 |
| (a) Before Plea, for Defect on Face . . . . .      | §657 |
| (b) At Trial, for Variance with Evidence . . . . . | §658 |
| (c) Upon Arraignment, or At Any Stage . . . . .    | §660 |
| (i) Defect in Substance . . . . .                  | §660 |
| (ii) Defect in Form . . . . .                      | §661 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (d) Considerations in Granting Amendment . . . . .     | §662 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                  | §662 |
| (ii) Adjournment . . . . .                             | §663 |
| (iii) Additional Charge . . . . .                      | §664 |
| (iv) Limitation Period and Plea . . . . .              | §665 |
| (v) Nullity . . . . .                                  | §666 |
| (vi) Judge's Motion . . . . .                          | §667 |
| (vii) Question of Law . . . . .                        | §668 |
| (e) Endorsement of Indictment . . . . .                | §669 |
| 10. Discovery . . . . .                                | §671 |
| (a) Right of Inspection . . . . .                      | §671 |
| (b) Release of Exhibits . . . . .                      | §674 |
| 11. Arraignment and Plea . . . . .                     | §677 |
| (a) Arraignment . . . . .                              | §677 |
| (i) Procedure . . . . .                                | §677 |
| (ii) Effect . . . . .                                  | §678 |
| (b) Plea . . . . .                                     | §679 |
| (i) Pleas Available . . . . .                          | §679 |
| (ii) Refusal to Plead . . . . .                        | §680 |
| 12. Guilty Plea . . . . .                              | §681 |
| (a) Effect . . . . .                                   | §681 |
| (b) Discretion of Court . . . . .                      | §682 |
| (i) Qualified Plea . . . . .                           | §682 |
| (ii) Inquiry . . . . .                                 | §683 |
| (iii) Proof of Facts . . . . .                         | §684 |
| A. General . . . . .                                   | §684 |
| B. Method . . . . .                                    | §685 |
| C. Disputes . . . . .                                  | §686 |
| (iv) Publication . . . . .                             | §687 |
| (c) Withdrawal of Guilty Plea . . . . .                | §689 |
| (i) By Trial Judge . . . . .                           | §689 |
| (ii) On Appeal . . . . .                               | §690 |
| (d) Guilty Plea to Included or Other Offence . . . . . | §693 |
| 13. Autrefois Convict and Autrefois Acquit . . . . .   | §695 |
| (a) Principle . . . . .                                | §695 |
| (b) Procedure . . . . .                                | §696 |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (i) Timing . . . . .   | §696 |
| (ii) Onus . . . . .  | §697 |
| (c) Specific Offences . . . . .  | §698 |
| (d) Issues to be Determined . . . . .                                      | §699 |
| (i) Final Determination . . . . .  | §699 |
| (ii) Same Matter . . . . .   | §701 |
| 14. Res Judicata . . . . .   | §703 |
| (a) Availability . . . . .   | §703 |
| (b) Nature of Principle . . . . .  | §704 |
| (c) Procedure . . . . .  | §705 |
| (i) Timing . . . . .   | §705 |
| (ii) Determination by Judge . . . . .                                      | §706 |
| (iii) Onus . . . . .   | §707 |
| (iv) Application of Principle . . . . .                                    | §708 |
| (d) Multiple Convictions . . . . .   | §710 |
| 15. Organizations . . . . .  | §711 |
| 16. Mental Disorder . . . . .  | §712 |
| (a) Assessment Order . . . . .   | §712 |
| (b) Accused Not Criminally Responsible when Offence<br>Committed . . . . . | §718 |
| (i) Acquittal . . . . .  | §718 |
| (ii) Question of Law . . . . .   | §719 |
| (c) Accused Unfit to Stand Trial . . . . .                                 | §720 |
| (i) Trial of Issue . . . . .   | §720 |
| (ii) Onus . . . . .  | §722 |
| (iii) Considerations . . . . .   | §723 |
| (iv) Effect of Verdict . . . . .   | §724 |
| (v) Disposition Hearings . . . . .   | §726 |
| (vi) Board of Review . . . . .   | §728 |
| 17. Trial by Jury . . . . .  | §729 |
| (a) Entitlement . . . . .  | §729 |
| (b) Waiver . . . . .   | §731 |
| (c) Pre-Trial Matters . . . . .  | §732 |
| (d) Juror Qualifications . . . . .   | §734 |
| (e) Challenging Jury Panel . . . . .                                       | §737 |
| (f) Empaneling Jury . . . . .  | §741 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(g) Challenging Potential Jurors .....\$745  
    (i) Peremptory Challenges .....\$745  
    (ii) Challenge for Cause.....\$750  
        A. Grounds .....\$750  
        B. Timing .....\$759  
        C. Procedure .....\$760  
        D. Where Challenge Failing .....\$766  
        E. Curative Provisions .....\$767  
    (iii) Recalled Jurors .....\$768  
    (iv) When Panel Exhausted .....\$769  
    (v) Alternate Jurors .....\$770  
(h) Discharge of Juror .....\$771  
(i) Separation, Communication and Sequestration .....\$773  
(j) View .....\$779  
(k) Calling Witnesses; Summation.....\$780  
(l) Pre-Charge Conference.....\$786  
(m) Charge to Jury .....\$787  
    (i) General .....\$787  
    (ii) Defences .....\$798  
    (iii) Lesser Included Offences .....\$805  
    (iv) Sentence .....\$806  
    (v) Unanimity .....\$807  
    (vi) Specific Directions .....\$808  
        A. Warnings .....\$808  
            1. Consciousness of Guilt .....\$808  
            2. Circumstantial Evidence .....\$810  
            3. Untrustworthy Evidence; Corroboration .....  
                .....\$811  
            4. Identification.....\$814  
        B. Evidentiary Burden .....\$815  
        C. Joinder .....\$816  
        D. Expert Evidence .....\$817  
        E. Similar Fact Evidence .....\$821  
        F. Previous Statements .....\$822  
        G. Criminal Record .....\$823  
        H. Evidence of Accomplice .....\$824

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| I. Accused Failing to Testify . . . . .               | §825        |
| (n) Retirement . . . . .                              | §826        |
| (i) Sequestration . . . . .                           | §826        |
| (ii) Materials Allowed in Jury Room . . . . .         | §827        |
| A. Exhibits . . . . .                                 | §827        |
| B. Indictment . . . . .                               | §828        |
| C. Copies of Statute . . . . .                        | §829        |
| D. Judge’s Charge to Jury . . . . .                   | §831        |
| E. Transcript . . . . .                               | §832        |
| F. Questions by Jury . . . . .                        | §835        |
| (iii) Unauthorized Communications . . . . .           | §837        |
| (iv) Food and Lodging . . . . .                       | §839        |
| (v) Time for Deliberations . . . . .                  | §840        |
| (vi) Secrecy . . . . .                                | §841        |
| (o) Discharge of Jury . . . . .                       | §844        |
| (i) Mistrial . . . . .                                | §844        |
| (ii) Jury Unable to Agree . . . . .                   | §846        |
| (p) Verdicts . . . . .                                | §850        |
| (i) Directed Verdict on Motion for Non-Suit . . . . . | §850        |
| A. Procedure . . . . .                                | §850        |
| B. Question of Law . . . . .                          | §853        |
| C. Joint Accused . . . . .                            | §854        |
| (ii) Continuation of Proceedings . . . . .            | §855        |
| (iii) Curative Provisions . . . . .                   | §856        |
| <b>X. Appeals — Indictable Offences . . . . .</b>     | <b>§858</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                  | §858        |
| 2. Determination of Forum . . . . .                   | §865        |
| 3. Right to Appeal v. Leave to Appeal . . . . .       | §867        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §867        |
| (b) Accused’s Right to Appeal . . . . .               | §868        |
| (i) Conviction . . . . .                              | §868        |
| (ii) Sentence . . . . .                               | §871        |
| (c) Crown’s Right to Appeal . . . . .                 | §874        |
| (i) Acquittal . . . . .                               | §874        |
| (ii) Sentence . . . . .                               | §879        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 4. Question of Law Alone . . . . .                                   | §882 |
| 5. Procedure on Appeal . . . . .                                     | §894 |
| (a) Notice of Appeal or of Application for Leave to Appeal . . . . . | §894 |
| (i) Time . . . . .   | §894 |
| (ii) Extension of Time . . . . .                                     | §895 |
| (iii) Grounds . . . . .  | §899 |
| (iv) Service . . . . .   | §901 |
| (b) Transcript . . . . .   | §903 |
| (c) Application for Leave to Appeal . . . . .                        | §907 |
| 6. Bail Pending Appeal . . . . .                                     | §909 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §909 |
| (b) Provisions Applicable Only to Appeals from Conviction . . . . .  | §910 |
| (i) Court of Appeal Only . . . . .                                   | §910 |
| (ii) Supreme Court of Canada Only . . . . .                          | §913 |
| (iii) Both Courts . . . . .  | §914 |
| (c) Provisions Applicable only to Sentence Appeals . . . . .         | §917 |
| (d) Provisions Applicable to All Appeals . . . . .                   | §920 |
| (e) Appeal of Release Order . . . . .                                | §925 |
| 7. Powers of Court of Appeal . . . . .                               | §928 |
| (a) Judge’s Report . . . . .   | §928 |
| (b) Production of Exhibit . . . . .                                  | §930 |
| (c) Witnesses . . . . .  | §931 |
| (d) Special Commissioner . . . . .                                   | §934 |
| (e) Amending Indictment . . . . .                                    | §937 |
| (f) Suspension of Fine . . . . .                                     | §940 |
| (g) Power to Appoint Counsel . . . . .                               | §941 |
| (h) Powers in General . . . . .                                      | §943 |
| 8. Fresh Evidence . . . . .  | §947 |
| 9. Right of Appellant to Attend . . . . .                            | §956 |
| 10. Summary Determination of Frivolous Appeals . . . . .             | §959 |
| 11. Setting Aside Verdict — Accused . . . . .                        | §960 |
| (a) Grounds . . . . .  | §960 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §960 |
| (ii) Unreasonable or Unsupported Verdict . . . . .                   | §965 |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (iii) Error of Law . . . . .   | §977  |
| (iv) Miscarriage of Justice . . . . .  | §978  |
| (v) Miscarriage of Justice: Applications for Ministerial<br>Review . . . . . | §990  |
| (b) Appeal from Conviction on Guilty Plea . . . . .                          | §996  |
| (c) Appeal Following Waiver of Appeal . . . . .                              | §1001 |
| (d) Appeal by Absconding Accused . . . . .                                   | §1002 |
| (e) Final Result . . . . .   | §1003 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §1003 |
| (ii) Acquittal . . . . .   | §1004 |
| (iii) New Trial . . . . .  | §1010 |
| A. Grounds . . . . .   | §1010 |
| B. Charge . . . . .  | §1011 |
| (f) Unfit to Stand Trial . . . . .   | §1014 |
| (g) Residual Powers . . . . .  | §1015 |
| 12. Grounds for Setting Aside Verdict - Crown . . . . .                      | §1018 |
| 13. Sentence Appeals . . . . .   | §1027 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §1027 |
| (b) Fresh Evidence . . . . .   | §1045 |
| (c) Varying Sentence or Probation Order . . . . .                            | §1047 |
| (i) Sentence . . . . .   | §1047 |
| (ii) Probation Order . . . . .   | §1048 |
| (d) Fitness of Sentence . . . . .  | §1049 |
| 14. Dissenting Judgment . . . . .  | §1051 |
| 15. Appeals to Supreme Court of Canada . . . . .                             | §1052 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §1052 |
| (b) Accused's Right to Appeal . . . . .                                      | §1056 |
| (c) Attorney General's Right to Appeal . . . . .                             | §1060 |
| (d) Application for Leave . . . . .  | §1062 |
| (e) Powers of Supreme Court of Canada on Appeal . . . . .                    | §1069 |
| <b>XI. Procuring Attendance of Witnesses, and Related Matters . . . . .</b>  |       |
| . . . . .  | §1075 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §1075 |
| 2. Subpoenas . . . . .   | §1077 |
| (a) Grounds and Content . . . . .  | §1077 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (b) Jurisdiction to Issue . . . . .                          | §1080 |
| (c) Service . . . . .  | §1084 |
| (d) Quashing Subpoena . . . . .                              | §1088 |
| 3. Judge's Order . . . . .                                   | §1094 |
| 4. Warrants . . . . .  | §1099 |
| (a) Before Issuance of Subpoena . . . . .                    | §1099 |
| (b) After Issuance of Subpoena but Before Service . . . . .  | §1101 |
| (c) In Court, At Time of Hearing . . . . .                   | §1103 |
| (d) Procedure on Arrest: Recognizance or Detention . . . . . | §1104 |
| 5. Contempt of Court . . . . .                               | §1105 |
| 6. Evidence on Commission . . . . .                          | §1108 |
| (a) Applicant . . . . .                                      | §1108 |
| (b) Grounds . . . . .  | §1109 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §1109 |
| (ii) Illness or Disability . . . . .                         | §1113 |
| (iii) Witness Outside Canada . . . . .                       | §1114 |
| (c) Timing of Application . . . . .                          | §1115 |
| (d) Content of Order . . . . .                               | §1116 |
| (e) Use of Commission Evidence . . . . .                     | §1118 |
| (f) Letters Rogatory . . . . .                               | §1123 |
| (i) Commission Outside Canada . . . . .                      | §1123 |
| (ii) Foreign Commission in Canada . . . . .                  | §1127 |
| 7. Evidence Taken Previously . . . . .                       | §1128 |
| (a) Nature of Previous Proceedings . . . . .                 | §1128 |
| (b) Additional Prerequisites to Admission . . . . .          | §1134 |
| (i) Refusal to be Sworn or to Answer . . . . .               | §1134 |
| (ii) Illness . . . . .                                       | §1136 |
| (iii) Absence from Canada . . . . .                          | §1138 |
| (iv) Presence of Accused . . . . .                           | §1141 |
| (v) Signature of Justice . . . . .                           | §1142 |
| (vi) Opportunity to Cross-Examine . . . . .                  | §1144 |
| (c) Admissibility . . . . .                                  | §1149 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §1149 |
| (ii) Consent . . . . .                                       | §1153 |
| (d) Order for Disclosure of Whereabouts of Witness . . . . . | §1154 |
| (e) Previously-Taken Evidence . . . . .                      | §1155 |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (f) Admissibility at Common Law . . . . .                                 | §1157        |
| <b>XII. Effect and Enforcement of Recognizances . . . . .</b>             | <b>§1158</b> |
| 1. Origin . . . . .   | §1158        |
| 2. Person Bound to Abide by Conditions . . . . .                          | §1163        |
| (a) Duration of Recognizance . . . . .                                    | §1163        |
| (b) Termination of Recognizance . . . . .                                 | §1164        |
| (c) Default Noted . . . . .   | §1165        |
| 3. Surety . . . . .   | §1167        |
| (a) Duration of Surety . . . . .  | §1167        |
| (b) Discharge of Surety . . . . .   | §1168        |
| (i) Detention of Accused . . . . .  | §1168        |
| (ii) General Application for Relief . . . . .                             | §1169        |
| (iii) Application by Bringing Person to Court . . . . .                   | §1173        |
| (iv) Substitution of Surety . . . . .                                     | §1174        |
| (c) Default by Person Bound by Recognizance . . . . .                     | §1176        |
| 4. Forfeiture of Debt . . . . .   | §1177        |
| (a) What May be Forfeited . . . . .                                       | §1177        |
| (b) Jurisdiction . . . . .  | §1178        |
| (c) Notice . . . . .  | §1180        |
| (d) Grounds . . . . .   | §1183        |
| (e) Nature of Proceedings . . . . .                                       | §1193        |
| (f) Enforcement of Forfeiture Order . . . . .                             | §1194        |
| <b>XIII. Extraordinary Remedies . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§1199</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §1199        |
| (a) Extraordinary Remedies v. Appeals . . . . .                           | §1199        |
| (b) General Scope of Review . . . . .                                     | §1201        |
| (c) Types of Extraordinary Remedies . . . . .                             | §1203        |
| (d) Jurisdiction to Review by Extraordinary Remedy . . . . .              | §1204        |
| (e) Stay of Proceedings Pending Determination of<br>Application . . . . . | §1207        |
| (f) Discretion . . . . .  | §1208        |
| (g) Procedure . . . . .   | §1209        |
| 2. Certiorari . . . . .   | §1212        |
| (a) Grounds . . . . .   | §1212        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (i) General . . . . .                                     | §1212 |
| (ii) Lack of Jurisdiction . . . . .                       | §1213 |
| (iii) Breach of Natural Justice . . . . .                 | §1214 |
| (iv) Errors of Law . . . . .                              | §1216 |
| (b) Availability . . . . .                                | §1217 |
| (i) Warrants . . . . .                                    | §1217 |
| (ii) Informations . . . . .                               | §1219 |
| (iii) Committal after Preliminary Inquiry . . . . .       | §1220 |
| (iv) Ban on Publication . . . . .                         | §1221 |
| (v) Subpoenas . . . . .                                   | §1222 |
| (c) Statutory Restrictions on Use of Certiorari . . . . . | §1223 |
| (i) Right to Appeal . . . . .                             | §1223 |
| (ii) Judicial Notice . . . . .                            | §1228 |
| (iii) Warrant of Committal . . . . .                      | §1229 |
| (iv) Protection Order . . . . .                           | §1230 |
| (v) Curative Provisions . . . . .                         | §1231 |
| (d) Procedure . . . . .                                   | §1232 |
| (e) Appeal from Application for Certiorari . . . . .      | §1236 |
| 3. Habeas Corpus . . . . .                                | §1239 |
| (a) Nature . . . . .                                      | §1239 |
| (b) Availability . . . . .                                | §1241 |
| (c) Statutory Limitations . . . . .                       | §1255 |
| (d) Availability of Other Remedies . . . . .              | §1258 |
| (e) Appeal of Application for Habeas Corpus . . . . .     | §1260 |
| 4. Mandamus . . . . .                                     | §1262 |
| (a) Nature . . . . .                                      | §1262 |
| (b) Grounds . . . . .                                     | §1263 |
| (i) Refusal to Act . . . . .                              | §1263 |
| (ii) “Right to be Wrong” . . . . .                        | §1266 |
| (c) Alternative Remedy . . . . .                          | §1269 |
| (d) Appeal of Application for Mandamus . . . . .          | §1270 |
| 5. Prohibition . . . . .                                  | §1271 |
| (a) Nature . . . . .                                      | §1271 |
| (b) Availability . . . . .                                | §1273 |
| (c) Grounds . . . . .                                     | §1275 |
| (i) Bias . . . . .  | §1275 |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (ii) Breach of Natural Justice . . . . .             | §1278        |
| A. Refusal of Adjournment . . . . .                  | §1278        |
| B. Abuse of Process . . . . .                        | §1279        |
| (iii) Defective Information . . . . .                | §1280        |
| (iv) Ultra Vires Statute . . . . .                   | §1281        |
| (v) Lack of Constitutional Authority . . . . .       | §1282        |
| (vi) Evidentiary Issues . . . . .                    | §1283        |
| (vii) Loss of Jurisdiction . . . . .                 | §1284        |
| (d) Alternative Remedy . . . . .                     | §1285        |
| (e) Appeal . . . . .                                 | §1286        |
| 6. Related Material . . . . .                        | §1287        |
| <b>XIV. Summary Conviction Proceedings . . . . .</b> | <b>§1288</b> |
| 1. Commencement of Proceedings . . . . .             | §1288        |
| (a) Information . . . . .                            | §1288        |
| (b) Limitation Period . . . . .                      | §1290        |
| (c) Issuing Process . . . . .                        | §1294        |
| 2. Sufficiency of Information . . . . .              | §1295        |
| (a) Application of Part XX . . . . .                 | §1295        |
| (b) Particulars . . . . .                            | §1298        |
| (c) Counts . . . . .                                 | §1300        |
| (d) Previous Convictions . . . . .                   | §1302        |
| (e) Negative Exceptions . . . . .                    | §1303        |
| (f) Objection to Information . . . . .               | §1304        |
| (g) Amendment . . . . .                              | §1305        |
| 3. Summary Conviction Trial . . . . .                | §1306        |
| (a) Territorial Jurisdiction . . . . .               | §1306        |
| (b) Appearance . . . . .                             | §1307        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                | §1307        |
| (ii) By Counsel . . . . .                            | §1308        |
| (iii) Failure to Appear . . . . .                    | §1311        |
| (c) Arraignment and Plea . . . . .                   | §1312        |
| (d) Trial . . . . .                                  | §1313        |
| (i) Recording Device . . . . .                       | §1313        |
| (ii) Negative Exception . . . . .                    | §1314        |
| (iii) Full Answer and Defence . . . . .              | §1315        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (e) Adjournments . . . . .                                      | §1317 |
| (i) Power to Adjourn . . . . .                                  | §1317 |
| (ii) Refusal of Adjournment . . . . .                           | §1318 |
| (iii) Adjournment of Disposition . . . . .                      | §1319 |
| 4. Adjudication . . . . .                                       | §1320 |
| (a) Dispositions Available . . . . .                            | §1320 |
| (b) Memorandum of Conviction or Order . . . . .                 | §1321 |
| (c) Order of Dismissal . . . . .                                | §1322 |
| 5. Punishment . . . . .   | §1323 |
| (a) General Penalty . . . . .                                   | §1323 |
| (b) Fines . . . . .   | §1324 |
| (i) Time to Pay . . . . .                                       | §1324 |
| (ii) Default . . . . .  | §1325 |
| (iii) Joint Offenders . . . . .                                 | §1326 |
| (c) Warrant of Committal . . . . .                              | §1327 |
| 6. Costs . . . . .  | §1328 |
| 7. Peace Bond . . . . .   | §1329 |
| 8. Appeals . . . . .  | §1330 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §1330 |
| (b) Determination of Forum . . . . .                            | §1331 |
| (c) Nature of Appeal . . . . .                                  | §1333 |
| (d) Alternative Paths of Appeal . . . . .                       | §1337 |
| (e) Section 813 Appeals . . . . .                               | §1342 |
| (i) Appeal by Accused . . . . .                                 | §1342 |
| (ii) Appeal by Informant or Attorney General . . . . .          | §1343 |
| (iii) Provisions Applicable to Both Crown and Defence . . . . . | §1346 |
| A. Notice of Appeal . . . . .                                   | §1346 |
| B. Extension of Time . . . . .                                  | §1351 |
| C. Location of Appeal . . . . .                                 | §1352 |
| D. Release Pending Appeal . . . . .                             | §1353 |
| E. Undertaking or Recognizance of Informant . . . . .           | §1358 |
| F. Fixing Date — Expediting Appeal . . . . .                    | §1361 |
| G. Payment or Suspension of Fine . . . . .                      | §1362 |
| H. Transcript . . . . .   | §1364 |

CRIMINAL LAW — PROCEDURE

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| I. Provisions Regarding Indictable Appeals                      |       |
| Applicable . . . . .  | §1365 |
| J. New Trial . . . . .  | §1366 |
| K. Trial de Novo . . . . .                                      | §1368 |
| L. Adjournment . . . . .  | §1372 |
| M. Failure to Appear or Want of Prosecution . . . . .           | §1373 |
| N. Costs . . . . .  | §1374 |
| O. Enforcement of Conviction or Order by Appeal Court . . . . . | §1379 |
| (f) Section 830 Appeals . . . . .                               | §1382 |
| (i) Definition . . . . .  | §1382 |
| (ii) Nature of Appeal . . . . .                                 | §1383 |
| (iii) Transcript or Statement of Facts . . . . .                | §1386 |
| (iv) Notice of Appeal . . . . .                                 | §1387 |
| (v) Provisions Relating to Section 813 Appeals . . . . .        | §1388 |
| (vi) Writ Not Required . . . . .                                | §1389 |
| (vii) Powers of Appeal Court . . . . .                          | §1390 |
| (viii) Enforcement . . . . .                                    | §1392 |
| (ix) No Appeal under S. 813 . . . . .                           | §1393 |
| (x) Appeal Barred . . . . .                                     | §1394 |
| (g) Appeals to Court of Appeal . . . . .                        | §1395 |
| (i) Nature of Appeal . . . . .                                  | §1395 |
| (ii) Other Provisions . . . . .                                 | §1400 |
| (iii) Costs . . . . .   | §1401 |
| (iv) Enforcement of Decision . . . . .                          | §1404 |
| (h) Fees and Allowances . . . . .                               | §1405 |
| (i) Appeals to Supreme Court of Canada . . . . .                | §1406 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Courts, Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Offences; Evidence; Extradition; Highway Traffic; Narcotic Control; Motor Vehicles; Perogative Remedies; Prisons; Sentencing.



# CROWN

prepared by  
Austin F. Marshall, B.Comm., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and Northwest Territories Bars*  
updated by  
Heidi H. Francis, B.A.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. General Principles</b> .....                          | §1  |
| 1. “Crown” Means Monarch Acting in Executive Capacity ..... | §1  |
| 2. The Crown is Divisible .....                             | §4  |
| 3. The Crown as Executive .....                             | §6  |
| 4. The Crown in Right of Canada or Province .....           | §7  |
| 5. The Crown and Legislation .....                          | §8  |
| 6. Monarch Having No Personal Legislative Power .....       | §10 |
| 7. The Crown and Courts .....                               | §11 |
| 8. Monarch Having No Personal Judicial Power.....           | §13 |
| 9. The Crown is Subject to Law .....                        | §14 |
| 10. Position of the Crown at Common Law.....                | §17 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Prerogative</b> .....                                | §21 |
| 1. Nature of Prerogative.....                               | §21 |
| 2. Existence and Exercise of Prerogatives in Canada .....   | §27 |
| 3. Prerogative Exemptions From Duties or Liabilities .....  | §30 |
| 4. Prerogative Rules Conferring Additional Rights .....     | §31 |
| (a) General .....   | §31 |
| (b) Priority of Payment .....                               | §32 |
| (c) Escheats and Bona Vacantia .....                        | §42 |
| (d) Prerogative Right to Precious Metals.....               | §56 |

## CROWN

---

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| (e) Fines and Forfeitures .....                              | §57 |
| (f) Courts .....   | §58 |
| 5. Extraordinary Prerogative Powers .....                    | §61 |
| (a) General .....  | §61 |
| (b) Relating to Parliament.....                              | §62 |
| (c) Relating to Courts.....                                  | §63 |
| (d) Administration of Justice .....                          | §64 |
| (e) Commander-in-Chief .....                                 | §66 |
| (f) Relating to External Affairs .....                       | §67 |
| (g) Relating to Colonies.....                                | §68 |
| (h) Miscellaneous Extraordinary Powers.....                  | §69 |
| 6. Prerogative Rule as to Statutes Affecting the Crown ..... | §70 |
| (a) General Common Law Rule .....                            | §70 |
| (b) The Crown May Take Advantage of a Statute.....           | §74 |
| (c) Statutory Changes in General Law .....                   | §75 |

### **III. Allocation of the Crown's Conventional and Common Law**

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>Attributes under the Constitution Act, 1867 .....</b>              | <b>§81</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §81        |
| 2. Capacity Under General Common Law.....                             | §82        |
| 3. Prerogative Under Constitution Act, 1867.....                      | §83        |
| (a) Prerogative Exemptions from Duties or Liabilities .....           | §83        |
| (b) Prerogatives Conferring Additional Rights .....                   | §84        |
| (c) Extraordinary Prerogative Powers .....                            | §85        |
| (i) Prerogatives Relating to Parliament and the<br>Legislatures ..... | §85        |
| (ii) Relating to the Courts.....                                      | §87        |
| (iii) As Commander-in-Chief.....                                      | §90        |
| (iv) Relating to External Affairs.....                                | §91        |
| (v) Miscellaneous Extraordinary Powers.....                           | §92        |
| (d) Prerogative Rule as to Statutes Affecting the Crown .....         | §93        |
| 4. Position as Head of Executive Governments .....                    | §94        |
| 5. Doctrine of Divisibility of the Crown .....                        | §95        |
| 6. The Crown in Right of Canada or a Province .....                   | §96        |

### **IV. Representatives of the Crown in Canada .....**

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1. Governor General: Appointment, Tenure and Powers .....                         | §97         |
| 2. Lieutenant Governor: Office, appointment, Tenure and Powers .....              | §106        |
| 3. Personal Status of Governor General and Lieutenant Governor .....              | §110        |
| <b>V. The Crown's Councils in Canada: Ministers: Powers.....</b>                  | <b>§112</b> |
| 1. Queen's Privy Council for Canada .....   | §112        |
| 2. Provincial Executive Councils.....   | §113        |
| 3. Ministers .....  | §114        |
| 4. Powers of Councils and Ministers .....   | §115        |
| 5. Orders-in-Council .....  | §121        |
| 6. Proclamations .....  | §123        |
| 7. Letters Patent.....  | §124        |
| 8. Departments or Ministries .....  | §125        |
| 9. Executive Power .....  | §126        |
| <b>VI. Allocation of Crown Properties Under the Constitution Act, 1867.....</b>   | <b>§130</b> |
| 1. Position Before Confederation .....  | §130        |
| 2. Allocation of Properties Distinct from Distribution of Legislative Power ..... | §132        |
| 3. Title to Property Allocated Remains in the Crown .....                         | §134        |
| 4. Properties Allocated to the Crown in Right of Canada.....                      | §135        |
| (a) General .....   | §135        |
| (b) Canals, With Lands and Water Power Connected with Them .....                  | §136        |
| (c) Lighthouses and Piers and Sable Island.....                                   | §137        |
| (d) Public Harbours .....   | §138        |
| (e) Rivers and Lake Improvements .....  | §139        |
| (f) Lands Reserved for Military Purposes.....                                     | §140        |
| (g) Indian Reserves .....   | §141        |
| 5. Properties Allocated to the Crown in Right of the Provinces .....              | §142        |
| (a) General: Residue.....   | §142        |
| (b) Specific Properties.....  | §144        |
| (i) Beds of Navigable Waters .....  | §144        |

CROWN

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (ii) Foreshore .....                             | \$145 |
| (iii) Fisheries.....                             | \$150 |
| (iv) Precious Metals .....                       | \$151 |
| 6. Bed of Sea Adjacent to Coasts of Canada ..... | \$152 |

**VII. Royalties Allocated to the Crown in Right of The**

|                                |       |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| <b>Provinces</b> .....         | \$153 |
| 1. General Rule .....          | \$153 |
| 2. Precious Metals .....       | \$154 |
| 3. Escheats .....              | \$155 |
| 4. Bona Vacantia .....         | \$156 |
| 5. Fines and Forfeitures ..... | \$158 |

**VIII. Revenues of the Crown**..... \$159

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| 1. Historical Development .....             | \$159 |
| 2. Consolidated Revenue Fund of Canada..... | \$160 |
| 3. Provincial Revenue Funds .....           | \$162 |
| 4. Appropriations .....                     | \$163 |

**IX. Statutes under the Constitution Acts, 1867 to 1982, Affecting the Crown** .....

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| .....  | \$167 |
| 1. Amendment of the Constitution in Relation to the Office of the Queen..... | \$167 |
| 2. Federal Statutes .....  | \$168 |
| (a) Authority of Parliament to Affect the Crown .....                        | \$168 |
| (i) The Crown in Right of Canada.....  | \$168 |
| (ii) The Crown in Right of a Province .....                                  | \$170 |
| (b) Application of Federal Statutes to the Crown .....                       | \$171 |
| 3. Provincial Statutes.....  | \$176 |
| (a) Authority of Legislature to Affect the Crown .....                       | \$176 |
| (i) The Crown in Right of Canada.....  | \$176 |
| (ii) The Crown in Right of a Province .....                                  | \$179 |
| (b) Application of Provincial Statutes to the Crown.....                     | \$180 |
| (i) The Crown in Right of Canada.....  | \$180 |
| (ii) The Crown in Right of a Province .....                                  | \$181 |
| 4. The Crown may Take Advantage of a Statute.....                            | \$183 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 5. Changes in the General Law .....  | §184        |
| 6. Rule in de Keyser's Royal Hotel Case.....   | §185        |
| <b>X. Transactions and Disputes between Governments under the<br/>Constitution Act, 1867 .....</b> | <b>§187</b> |
| 1. Transfers of Property .....   | §187        |
| 2. Agreements and Disputes Between Governments.....  | §188        |
| <b>XI. Contracts with the Crown .....</b>  | <b>§191</b> |
| 1. The Crown's Capacity to Contract .....  | §191        |
| (a) Capacity Exists apart from Statute .....   | §191        |
| (b) No Capacity to Bind Parliament or Legislatures.....  | §192        |
| (c) No Capacity to Fetter Exercise of Discretionary<br>Powers.....                                 | §193        |
| (d) Contracts Charging for Public Services .....   | §194        |
| (e) Grants of Franchises.....  | §195        |
| 2. Authority to Bind the Crown .....   | §196        |
| (a) The Crown Acts through Agents.....   | §196        |
| (b) Orders in Council.....   | §199        |
| (c) Statutes .....   | §200        |
| (d) Administrative Practice .....  | §202        |
| (e) Contracts by Committees of Parliament.....   | §203        |
| 3. Statutory Conditions to Validity of Contracts.....  | §204        |
| (a) Statutory Requirement of Approval.....   | §204        |
| (b) Requirements as to Execution: Writing .....  | §205        |
| (c) Tenders: Miscellaneous .....   | §207        |
| 4. Need for an Appropriation for a Valid Contract.....   | §208        |
| 5. General Law Applies to Crown Contracts.....   | §212        |
| 6. Extras .....  | §213        |
| 7. Quantum Meruit: Supplies and Services Accepted.....   | §214        |
| 8. Remedies Against the Crown.....   | §215        |
| (a) Recovery of Moneys Payable under Contract.....   | §215        |
| (b) Damages.....   | §216        |
| (c) Specific Performance; Injunction.....  | §220        |
| (d) Rescission and Restitution .....   | §221        |
| 9. Agent Not Liable: Warranty of Authority .....   | §222        |

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| <b>XII. The Crown and Property</b> .....                           | §225     |
| 1. Rights and Liabilities of the Crown in Respect of Property .... | §225     |
| (a) Rights .....   | §225     |
| (b) Liabilities .....  | §227     |
| 2. Crown Lands .....   | §229     |
| 3. Management of Public Lands.....                                 | §231     |
| (a) Public Lands Set Apart .....                                   | §231     |
| (b) Zoning .....   | §232     |
| (c) Prohibited Uses .....  | §233     |
| (d) Roads .....  | §234     |
| (e) Agreements With Municipalities .....                           | §235     |
| 4. Unauthorized Occupation of Public Lands .....                   | §236     |
| (a) Occupation for Less than 60 Years .....                        | §236     |
| (b) Occupation for More than 60 Years .....                        | §238     |
| 5. Grants of Public Lands .....                                    | §242     |
| (a) General Principles.....  | §242     |
| (b) Rights of Purchaser Before Grant .....                         | §247     |
| (c) Procedure .....  | §253     |
| (d) Conditions .....   | §254     |
| (e) Interpretation of Grants .....                                 | §256     |
| (i) General Principles .....                                       | §256     |
| (ii) Mines and Minerals .....                                      | §262     |
| (iii) Water and Beds of Water.....                                 | §267     |
| (iv) Trees .....   | §278     |
| (v) Roads .....  | §279     |
| (vi) Grants for Special Purposes.....                              | §281     |
| (vii) Validity of Grants .....                                     | §284     |
| (f) Subdivision of Public Lands (Ontario) .....                    | §294     |
| (g) Correction of Grants.....                                      | §295     |
| (h) Cancellation of Grants .....                                   | §297     |
| 6. Taxation of Public Lands .....                                  | §309     |
| <br><b>XIII. Rights and Liabilities of Crown in Tort</b> .....     | <br>§318 |
| 1. Rights Under General Law.....                                   | §318     |
| 2. Statutory Liability in Tort .....                               | §326     |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 3. Liability in Tort of Crown in Right of Canada.....                               | §327 |
| (a) Legislation.....  | §327 |
| (b) Torts for Which Crown Liable.....   | §328 |
| (i) Vicarious Liability for Torts of Servants.....                                  | §328 |
| (ii) Liability as Owner or Occupier of Property.....                                | §332 |
| (iii) Damage by Motor Vehicle Owned by Crown .....                                  | §334 |
| (iv) Liability for Invasion of Privacy .....  | §335 |
| (c) General Provisions Relating to Crown's Liabilities .....                        | §337 |
| (i) No Claim Where Pension or Compensation Payable.....                             | §337 |
| (ii) Acts Done Under Prerogative or Statutory Authority .....                       | §339 |
| (d) Law Applicable to Determine Liability .....                                     | §340 |
| (e) Servants of Crown.....  | §342 |
| (f) Persons Employed by Agents of Crown.....  | §344 |
| (g) Scope of Employment.....  | §350 |
| (h) Liability of Crown as Occupier.....   | §353 |
| (i) Burden of Proof; Res Ipsa Loquitur.....   | §355 |
| (j) Defences .....  | §356 |
| (k) Limitation of Actions .....   | §357 |
| 4. Liability in Tort of Crown in Right of Province .....                            | §362 |
| (a) Statutes re Proceedings Against Crown .....                                     | §362 |
| (b) Torts for which Crown Specifically Liable under Crown Proceedings Statutes..... | §366 |
| (i) Vicarious Liability for Torts of Servants.....                                  | §366 |
| (ii) Liability of Crown as Employer.....  | §368 |
| (iii) Liability of Crown as Owner or Occupier .....                                 | §369 |
| (iv) Statutory Torts.....   | §370 |
| (c) General Provisions Relating to Crown Liabilities .....                          | §371 |
| (i) Notice of Claim.....  | §371 |
| (ii) Service on Crown.....  | §373 |
| (iii) Where Officer's Duties Imposed by Law.....                                    | §374 |
| (iv) Statutes Barring or Limiting Officer's Liability .....                         | §375 |
| (v) No Liability where Duties Judicial.....   | §376 |
| (vi) Enforcement of Criminal or Penal Law .....                                     | §377 |
| (vii) Indemnity and Contribution.....   | §381 |

CROWN

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (d) Servants of Crown.....                                    | §382        |
| (e) Provincial Police.....                                    | §385        |
| (f) Persons Employed by Agents of Crown.....                  | §389        |
| (g) Defences.....   | §392        |
| (h) Limitation of Actions in Ontario.....                     | §394        |
| <b>XIV. Other Rights and Liabilities of the Crown .....</b>   | <b>§396</b> |
| 1. Other Rights of the Crown.....                             | §396        |
| 2. Other Liabilities of the Crown .....                       | §397        |
| (a) General .....   | §397        |
| (b) On Quasi-contract.....                                    | §401        |
| (c) For Salvage .....   | §402        |
| (d) As Trustee.....   | §404        |
| (e) As Bailee.....  | §406        |
| (f) Liability of Crown under Statute .....                    | §407        |
| <b>XV. Law Applying to the Crown on Specific Matters.....</b> | <b>§408</b> |
| 1. Alien's Rights Against the Crown .....                     | §408        |
| 2. Assignment of Moneys Owning by the Crown.....              | §409        |
| 3. Bonds and Securities.....                                  | §410        |
| 4. The Crown as a Common Carrier.....                         | §411        |
| 5. Demise of the Monarch .....                                | §412        |
| 6. Distress .....   | §413        |
| 7. Employment and Pensions.....                               | §414        |
| 8. Garnishment and Attachment .....                           | §419        |
| 9. Interest .....   | §421        |
| 10. Estoppel, Waiver and Laches .....                         | §423        |
| 11. Liens on Crown Property .....                             | §427        |
| 12. Limitations; Prescription; Defences .....                 | §428        |
| (a) The Crown in Right of Canada .....                        | §428        |
| (b) The Crown in Right of the Province .....                  | §431        |
| 13. Penitentiaries and Custodial Staff .....                  | §434        |
| 14. Postal Services and Customs.....                          | §435        |
| 15. Priority of Payment.....                                  | §437        |
| 16. Releases .....  | §440        |
| 17. Res Judicata.....   | §442        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 18. Specific Performance and Injunctions.....                     | §443        |
| 19. Subrogation.....  | §447        |
| 20. Workers and Government Employees Compensation                 |             |
| Statutes.....   | §448        |
| (a) The Crown in Right of Canada .....                            | §448        |
| (b) The Crown in right of the Province.....                       | §451        |
| 21. Unauthorized Payment of Crown Moneys.....                     | §452        |
| 22. Writs of Extent.....  | §453        |
| 23. Miscellaneous .....   | §454        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XVI. Jurisdiction in Proceedings By or Against Crown.....</b>  | <b>§462</b> |
| 1. Crown in Right of Canada .....                                 | §462        |
| (a) Proceedings By or On Behalf of Crown.....                     | §462        |
| (i) Jurisdiction of Federal Court .....                           | §462        |
| (ii) Jurisdiction in Provincial Courts .....                      | §463        |
| (iii) Choice of Forum .....                                       | §464        |
| (b) Proceedings Against Crown.....                                | §465        |
| (i) Jurisdiction of Federal Court .....                           | §465        |
| (ii) Jurisdiction of Provincial Courts .....                      | §467        |
| 2. Crown in Right of Province: Jurisdiction.....                  | §468        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XVII. Procedure in Actions By or Against Crown in Right of</b> |             |
| <b>    Canada .....</b>   | <b>§471</b> |
| 1. Actions by or on Behalf of Crown .....                         | §471        |
| (a) Federal Court .....   | §471        |
| (b) Provincial Courts.....  | §472        |
| 2. Proceedings Against Crown .....                                | §475        |
| (a) Federal Court .....   | §475        |
| (b) Claims in Provincial Courts.....                              | §481        |
| 3. Practice in Federal Court.....                                 | §484        |
| (a) General .....   | §484        |
| (b) Institution of Proceedings .....                              | §485        |
| (c) Parties.....  | §486        |
| (d) Pleadings .....   | §487        |
| (e) Costs .....   | §492        |
| (f) Miscellaneous .....   | §494        |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>XVIII. Procedure in Actions By or Against Crown in Right of Province .....</b> | <b>§495</b> |
| 1. Actions by or on Behalf of Crown .....   | §495        |
| 2. Proceedings Against Crown .....  | §501        |
| (a) Service on Crown .....  | §501        |
| (b) Notice of Claim .....   | §502        |
| (c) Procedure .....   | §504        |
| (d) Petition of Right .....   | §507        |
| (e) Miscellaneous .....   | §508        |
| 3. Prosecutions .....   | §512        |
| <b>XIX. Status of the Crown in Actions between Other Parties .....</b>            | <b>§514</b> |
| 1. Intervention in Private Actions .....  | §514        |
| (a) General .....   | §514        |
| (b) Constitutional Questions .....  | §518        |
| 2. Adding the Crown as a Party .....  | §522        |
| <b>XX. Actions for Declarations .....</b>   | <b>§524</b> |
| 1. In Proceeding Against the Crown .....  | §524        |
| (a) The Crown in Right of Canada .....  | §524        |
| (b) The Crown in Right of the Province .....                                      | §527        |
| 2. In Proceedings Against the Attorney General .....                              | §528        |
| (a) The Attorney General of Canada .....  | §528        |
| (b) The Provincial Attorneys General .....  | §532        |
| <b>XXI. The Attorney General .....</b>  | <b>§533</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §533        |
| 2. The Attorney General of Canada .....   | §534        |
| 3. The Provincial Attorneys General .....   | §535        |
| 4. Relators .....   | §537        |
| 5. Consent to Prosecution .....   | §540        |
| <b>XXII. Agents or Servants of Crown .....</b>                                    | <b>§541</b> |
| 1. Definition .....   | §541        |
| 2. What Constitutes Agent or Servant of Crown .....                               | §542        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (a) Individuals.....  | §542 |
| (b) Corporations.....   | §543 |
| (i) By Contract or Other Arrangement.....                                 | §543 |
| (ii) Expressly by Statute.....  | §544 |
| (iii) By Implication from Substantial Status Created ....                 | §545 |
| (iv) Ontario Crown Agency Act.....  | §546 |
| 3. Status of Crown Agents or Servants Apart from Statute .....            | §548 |
| (a) Personal Liability for Torts.....                                     | §548 |
| (b) No Liability for Torts of Subordinates or Employees.....              | §549 |
| (c) No Liability on Contracts for Crown .....                             | §551 |
| (d) As Occupier of Crown Property: Taxes.....                             | §552 |
| (e) Under Statutes Not Applying to Crown.....                             | §554 |
| (f) Miscellaneous .....   | §555 |
| 4. Actions by or Against Agents on Rights or Obligations of<br>Crown..... | §556 |
| (a) General .....   | §556 |
| (b) Under Federal Legislation.....  | §559 |
| (c) Under Provincial Legislation .....                                    | §565 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agency; Armed Forces; Aviation; Bailment; Bankruptcy And Insolvency; Builders' Liens; Building Contracts; Business Corporations; Charities; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Costs; Courts; Criminal Law; Customs And Excise; Damages; Devolution Of Estates; Distress; Easements; Estoppel; Execution; Expropriation; Federal And Provincial Taxation; Injunctions; Liens; Limitation Of Actions; Mines And Minerals; Municipal And School Taxation; Nuisance; Oil And Gas; Parliament And Legislature; Parties; Practice; Prerogative Remedies; Prisons; Public Authorities And Public Officers; Shipping; Telecommunications; Timber; Torts; Waters And Watercourses; Workers' Compensation

# CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

prepared by  
Mohan A. Prabhu, Q.C., M.A., LL.B., LL.M.  
*Advocate of the Bombay High Court; Barrister-at-law (Lincoln's  
Inn) and of the Ontario and Saskatchewan Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

## Table of Regulations

## Table of Treaties

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Customs Act</b> .....   | §1  |
| 1. General .....  | §1  |
| (a) Nature of Customs Duties.....   | §1  |
| (b) Some Important Definitions.....   | §2  |
| (c) Crown Bound by Act .....  | §9  |
| (d) Indians Bound by Act.....   | §11 |
| (e) Application of Act.....   | §12 |
| (f) Agents and Customs Brokers .....  | §13 |
| (g) Electronic Filing .....   | §16 |
| 2. Obligations Upon Importation.....  | §17 |
| (a) General .....   | §17 |
| (b) Presentation of Persons .....   | §18 |
| (i) Presentation by Persons Arriving in Canada .....                                | §18 |
| (ii) Presentation by Persons entering or leaving Cus-<br>toms Controlled Area ..... | §20 |
| (iii) Report and Presentation by Persons in Charge of<br>Conveyance.....            | §21 |
| (c) Report of Goods .....   | §23 |
| (i) Report by Persons Arriving in Canada .....                                      | §23 |
| (ii) Report Where Goods Arriving by Courier or as<br>Mail.....                      | §27 |

CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| (iii) Report by Persons in Charge of a Conveyance .....                   | §29 |
| (iv) Report by Importer.....  | §32 |
| (v) Obligation as to Report.....  | §34 |
| (vi) Restriction on Unloading Goods Before Report.....                    | §35 |
| (vii) Report of Illegally Imported Goods .....                            | §36 |
| (viii) Report of Wreck .....  | §37 |
| (d) Liability for Duties on Imported Goods .....                          | §38 |
| (e) Movement, Storage and Transportation of Goods<br>before Release ..... | §43 |
| (f) Warehouses and Duty-free Shops .....                                  | §48 |
| (i) Licensing of Operators.....   | §48 |
| (ii) Duties of Operators.....   | §49 |
| (iii) Liability of Operators for Duties and Taxes .....                   | §52 |
| (g) Release of Goods .....  | §53 |
| (h) Accounting and Payment of Duties.....                                 | §54 |
| (i) General Rules .....   | §54 |
| (ii) Release Prior to Accounting.....                                     | §55 |
| (iii) Accounting and Payment After Release .....                          | §56 |
| (iv) Release Prior to Payment.....  | §57 |
| (v) Notice requiring Accounting and Payment.....                          | §58 |
| (vi) Interest .....   | §59 |
| (i) Abandonment of Goods .....  | §61 |
| (j) Unclaimed Goods.....  | §62 |
| (k) Records .....   | §64 |
| 3. Marking, Proof of Origin and Verifications .....                       | §68 |
| 4. Calculation of Duty.....   | §72 |
| (a) Valuation for Duty .....  | §72 |
| (b) Transaction Value of Goods.....                                       | §74 |
| (i) General.....  | §74 |
| (ii) Adjustment of Transaction Value.....                                 | §75 |
| (iii) Transaction Value where Vendor and Purchaser<br>Related .....       | §76 |
| (iv) Transaction Value of Identical Goods.....                            | §77 |
| (v) Transaction Value of Similar Goods.....                               | §78 |
| (c) Deductive Value of Goods.....   | §79 |
| (d) Computed Value.....   | §80 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (e) Residual Method.....   | §81  |
| (f) Marking Determination: NAFTA Country Goods.....  | §83  |
| (g) Determination, Re-determination and Further Re-determination of Origin, Tariff Classification and Value for Duty ..... | §84  |
| (i) Determination by Designated Officer and Deemed Determination .....   | §84  |
| (ii) Re-determination and Further Re-determination by Designated Officer .....   | §85  |
| (iii) Re-determination and Further Re-determination by Commissioner.....   | §87  |
| (h) Appeals and References .....   | §91  |
| (i) Appeals to Canadian International Trade Tribunal ....  | §91  |
| (ii) Appeals to Federal Court.....   | §95  |
| (iii) References to Canadian International Trade Tribunal.....   | §96  |
| (iv) Special Provision for Appeal: Prohibited Goods.....   | §97  |
| (v) Refunds Pending Appeal.....  | §98  |
| 5. Abatements and Refunds .....  | §99  |
| (a) Abatement of Duties Payable .....  | §99  |
| (b) Refund of Duties Paid.....   | §100 |
| 6. Exportation .....   | §108 |
| (a) Report of Exportation.....   | §108 |
| (b) Export to Free Trade Partner: Certificate of Origin.....   | §111 |
| (c) Exporter's or Producer's Records.....  | §112 |
| 7. Enforcement .....   | §114 |
| (a) Powers of Officers.....  | §114 |
| (i) Search of Persons.....   | §114 |
| (ii) Examination of Goods .....  | §115 |
| (iii) Detention of Goods.....  | §121 |
| (iv) Disposition of Goods .....  | §122 |
| (v) Custody of Goods Under Seizure.....  | §124 |
| (vi) Power to Call In Aid .....  | §125 |
| (vii) Carrying Out Agreements.....   | §126 |
| (viii) Additional powers .....   | §127 |
| (ix) Limitation of Action or Proceeding .....  | §128 |
| (b) Disclosure of Information .....  | §131 |

CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (c) Inquiries .....   | §134 |
| (d) Administratively Imposed Monetary Penalties and Interest..... | §135 |
| (e) Seizures .....  | §140 |
| (i) Seizure of Goods, Conveyances and Evidence.....               | §140 |
| (ii) Limitation Period .....                                      | §143 |
| (iii) Custody of Things Seized .....                              | §144 |
| (iv) Return of Things Seized as Evidence .....                    | §146 |
| (v) Return of Goods or Conveyances Seized .....                   | §149 |
| (vi) Return of Animals or Perishable Goods Seized .....           | §150 |
| (f) Forfeitures.....  | §155 |
| (i) Forfeiture Automatic from Time of Contravention .....         | §155 |
| (ii) Review of Forfeiture.....                                    | §156 |
| (iii) Ascertained Forfeiture.....                                 | §157 |
| (iv) Ministerial Review of Seizure or Ascertained Forfeiture..... | §161 |
| (v) Appeal from Minister's Decision to Federal Court .....        | §169 |
| (vi) Third Party Claims.....                                      | §170 |
| (vii) Disposal of Abandoned or Forfeited Things .....             | §174 |
| (viii) Collections .....  | §175 |
| A. General.....   | §175 |
| B. Certificates, Liens and Set-off.....                           | §177 |
| C. Garnishment.....   | §181 |
| D. Non-arm's length transfers .....                               | §182 |
| E. Acquisition of property and seizures.....                      | §183 |
| F. Collection Restrictions.....                                   | §187 |
| G. Trustees, Receivers and Personal Administrators.....           | §189 |
| H. Partnerships and Unincorporated bodies .....                   | §193 |
| I. Amalgamation and Winding-Up .....                              | §195 |
| J. Assessments, Objections and Appeals.....                       | §196 |
| 1. Assessments.....   | §196 |
| 2. Objections and Appeals .....                                   | §198 |
| (ix) Collection of Duties on Mail.....                            | §204 |
| (x) Evidence.....   | §205 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (xi) Offences .....   | §207        |
| A. General.....   | §207        |
| B. False Statements and Evasion of Duties .....                                 | §208        |
| C. Misdescription of Goods.....   | §209        |
| D. Possession, Acquisition and Disposition of<br>Illegally Imported Goods ..... | §210        |
| E. Possession of Blank Documents .....  | §211        |
| F. Opening and Unpacking Goods Not Re-<br>leased; Breaking Seals .....          | §212        |
| G. Smuggling.....   | §213        |
| H. Offences Respecting Marking of Goods .....                                   | §214        |
| I. Other Offences and Penalties.....  | §215        |
| J. Enforcement of Criminal Offences under<br>other Federal laws .....           | §218        |
| (xii) Procedure .....   | §219        |
| A. Venue.....   | §219        |
| B. Limitation Period in Summary Convictions .....                               | §220        |
| 8. Regulations.....   | §221        |
| 9. Prohibition or Regulation of Importation .....                               | §222        |
| <b>II. Customs Tariff .....</b>   | <b>§223</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §223        |
| (a) Purpose.....  | §223        |
| (b) Tariff Classification.....  | §224        |
| 2. Customs Duties .....   | §229        |
| (a) Origin of Goods.....  | §229        |
| (i) Rules of Origin.....  | §229        |
| (ii) Direct Shipment and Transshipment .....                                    | §230        |
| (iii) Marking of Goods.....   | §231        |
| (b) Imposition of Customs Duties .....  | §232        |
| (c) Tariff Treatment .....  | §233        |
| (i) General.....  | §233        |
| (ii) Most-Favoured-Nation Tariff.....   | §235        |
| (iii) General Preferential Tariff.....  | §236        |
| (iv) Least Developed Country Tariff.....  | §238        |
| (v) Commonwealth Caribbean Country Tariff.....                                  | §240        |



CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (vi) Australia Tariff and New Zealand Tariff.....  | §242 |
| (vii) United States Tariff, Mexico Tariff and Mexico-<br>United States Tariff.....   | §243 |
| (viii) Chile Tariff.....   | §245 |
| (ix) Canada-Israel Agreement Tariff .....  | §247 |
| (x) Costa Rica Tariff.....   | §248 |
| (d) Special Measures, Emergency Measures and<br>Safeguards.....  | §250 |
| (i) Special Measures.....  | §250 |
| (ii) Global Emergency Measures .....   | §251 |
| (iii) Safeguard Measures for Agricultural Goods .....  | §262 |
| (iv) Bilateral Emergency Measures for Free Trade<br>Partner Goods .....  | §263 |
| (v) Bilateral Safeguard Measures for United States<br>Fresh Fruit or Vegetables.....   | §269 |
| (vi) Bilateral Safeguard Measures for Mexican Agri-<br>cultural Goods .....  | §271 |
| (vii) Bilateral Emergency Measures for Textile and<br>Apparel Goods Imported from NAFTA Country,<br>Chile or Costa Rica.....       | §272 |
| (viii) Safeguard Measures in respect of China .....  | §274 |
| (ix) Surtax to Protect Canada’s External Financial<br>Position and Balance of Payments .....                                       | §277 |
| (x) Goods in Transit.....  | §278 |
| 3. Duties Relief .....   | §279 |
| (a) General .....  | §279 |
| (b) Customs Duties Reduction: Goods Used in Production<br>of Other Goods/Services .....  | §280 |
| (c) Importation Without Full Payment of Duties .....   | §281 |
| (i) Reduced Value for Duty .....   | §281 |
| (ii) Ethno-Cultural Groups .....   | §283 |
| (iii) Duty Deferral .....  | §284 |
| A. Goods Subsequently Exported or Deemed<br>Exported.....  | §284 |
| B. Repayment of Relieved Duties if Goods Sub-<br>sequently Exported to NAFTA Country .....   | §287 |
| C. Maximum Drawback of Customs Duties on<br>Imported Goods Exported to NAFTA Coun-<br>try: The “Additional Relief” Provisions..... | §290 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| D. No Relief or Drawback of Special Import Measures Act Duties on Imported Goods Exported to NAFTA Country.....        | §291        |
| E. Temporary Relief on Prescribed Imported Goods Subsequently Exported After Use in Canada for Prescribed Purpose..... | §292        |
| F. Canadian Goods Abroad.....  | §293        |
| G. General Rules Relating to Relief .....  | §296        |
| (d) Obsolete or Surplus Goods .....  | §297        |
| (e) Additional Relief .....  | §299        |
| (i) Refund or Drawback.....  | §299        |
| (ii) Repayment of Refund or Drawback.....  | §300        |
| (iii) Discretionary Relief .....   | §301        |
| (iv) General Provisions .....  | §302        |
| 4. Administration and Enforcement.....   | §309        |
| 5. Prohibited Goods.....   | §313        |
| <b>III. Special Import Measures Act .....</b>  | <b>§318</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §318        |
| 2. Liability for Anti-dumping, Countervailing and Provisional Duties .....   | §321        |
| (a) General .....  | §321        |
| (b) Amount .....   | §322        |
| (c) Liability to Pay .....   | §323        |
| (d) Payment of Duty During Court Proceedings and Other Proceedings.....  | §329        |
| (e) Provisional Duty .....   | §331        |
| (f) Refund .....   | §333        |
| (g) Collection and Recovery of Duty.....   | §338        |
| 3. Normal Value and Export Price.....  | §339        |
| (a) Normal Value .....   | §339        |
| (b) Export Price .....   | §348        |
| 4. Procedure.....  | §353        |
| (a) Investigation by Commissioner.....   | §353        |
| (b) Preliminary Determination of Injury or of Dumping or Subsidizing.....  | §360        |
| (c) Final Determination .....  | §363        |

## CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (d) Review of Final Determination or Decision .....                      | §364        |
| (e) Inquiries by Tribunal .....  | §365        |
| (f) Undertakings .....   | §373        |
| (g) Determinations by Designated Officer, and Re-<br>determination ..... | §378        |
| 5. Appeals .....   | §383        |
| (a) Appeal to the Canadian International Trade Tribunal .....            | §383        |
| (b) Appeal to the Court .....  | §391        |
| (c) Review by Panel .....  | §393        |
| 6. General Provisions .....  | §396        |
| (a) Ruling on Who is Importer .....                                      | §396        |
| (b) Procedure .....  | §397        |
| (c) Other Provisions .....   | §402        |
| (d) Offences .....   | §403        |
| (e) Regulations and Orders .....   | §404        |
| <b>IV. Excise Tax Act .....</b>  | <b>§405</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....  | §405        |
| (a) General .....  | §405        |
| (b) Definition of Manufacturer or Producer .....                         | §406        |
| (c) Importer Deemed Manufacturer or Producer .....                       | §407        |
| (d) Non-arm's Length Transactions .....                                  | §409        |
| 2. Taxes Imposed Under Excise Tax Act .....                              | §410        |
| (a) Tax on Insurance Premiums other than Marine: Part I .....            | §410        |
| (b) Air Transportation Tax: Part II .....                                | §415        |
| (i) Tax imposed .....  | §415        |
| (ii) Licences .....  | §420        |
| (c) Tax on Cosmetics, Jewellery, Radios, etc.: Part III .....            | §423        |
| (i) Tax imposed .....  | §423        |
| (ii) Deemed sale of gasoline, etc. ....                                  | §426        |
| (iii) Exemptions .....   | §429        |
| (iv) Security for returns of sale .....                                  | §431        |
| 3. General Provisions .....  | §432        |
| (a) Regulations .....  | §432        |
| (b) Stamps .....   | §433        |
| (c) Licences .....   | §434        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (d) Exemptions for Exports .....   | §435 |
| (e) Liability of Crown and Treaty Indians.....   | §436 |
| (f) Deductions, Refunds and Drawbacks.....   | §437 |
| (i) Repayment Generally .....  | §437 |
| (ii) Refund of Portion of Gasoline Tax.....  | §440 |
| (iii) Refund of Tax Paid on Ships' Stores .....  | §441 |
| (iv) Refund of Tax Paid on Goods in Inventory .....  | §442 |
| (v) Repayment of Tax Paid by Province .....  | §443 |
| (vi) Repayment of Tax Paid on Sale to Exempt<br>Person.....                                    | §444 |
| (vii) Repayment of Tax Paid on Replacement Parts<br>Supplied Free Under Warranty .....         | §445 |
| (viii) Repayment of Tax Paid on Gasoline/Diesel<br>Fuel Purchased by Diplomat.....             | §446 |
| (ix) Drawback of Taxes Paid on Exported Goods,<br>etc.....                                     | §447 |
| (g) Procedure for Obtaining Repayment, Refund, Draw-<br>back, etc.....                         | §448 |
| (i) Applications and Minister's Determination .....  | §448 |
| (ii) Determination/Re-determination Valid and Bind-<br>ing Unless Appealed .....               | §449 |
| (iii) Deduction of Part I Tax Remittable under Re-<br>turn as Alternative to Application ..... | §450 |
| (iv) Deduction of Tax Other Than Part I Tax Under<br>Return as Alternative to Application..... | §451 |
| (v) Payment or Deduction of Specific Sum Where<br>Difficult to Determine Exact Amount .....    | §452 |
| (h) Returns and Payment of Tax .....   | §453 |
| (i) Monthly Returns.....   | §453 |
| (ii) Filing of Returns and Payment of Taxes.....   | §454 |
| (iii) Penalty and Interest on Default.....   | §455 |
| (iv) Report of Sales/Taxable Services and Taxes<br>Paid/Deducted.....                          | §456 |
| (v) Security for Taxes .....   | §457 |
| (vi) Obligation of Trustees.....   | §458 |
| (i) Assessments .....  | §459 |
| (i) Making of Assessments .....  | §459 |
| (ii) Notice of Assessment.....   | §460 |

## CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (iii) Limitation of Time.....                                       | §461 |
| (iv) Prohibition .....  | §462 |
| (v) Liability Where No Assessment or Incorrect Assessment Made..... | §463 |
| (vi) Objections to Assessment .....                                 | §464 |
| (vii) Objections to Determination .....                             | §465 |
| (j) Appeals .....   | §466 |
| (i) Rights of Appeal to Tribunal and to Federal Court .....         | §466 |
| (ii) Appeal to Tribunal .....                                       | §467 |
| (iii) Appeal to Federal Court, Trial Division.....                  | §468 |
| (iv) Purchaser Objections and Appeals .....                         | §469 |
| (v) Interventions .....   | §470 |
| (vi) References.....  | §471 |
| (vii) Payments by Minister on Appeals .....                         | §472 |
| (viii) Overpayments by Minister .....                               | §473 |
| (k) Collections .....   | §474 |
| (i) Recovery of Taxes, Penalties and Interest.....                  | §474 |
| (ii) Registration in Federal Court .....                            | §475 |
| (iii) Third Party Demand .....                                      | §476 |
| (iv) Deduction or Set-off .....                                     | §477 |
| (v) Delay of Collection Actions .....                               | §478 |
| (vi) Waiver or cancellation of interest and penalty.....            | §480 |
| (vii) Right of Crown to Priority .....                              | §481 |
| (l) Penalties .....   | §482 |
| (i) Failure to pay or collect taxes .....                           | §482 |
| (ii) Failure to file return.....                                    | §483 |
| (iii) Failure to keep books and records .....                       | §484 |
| (iv) Evasion of Taxes.....  | §485 |
| (v) Collecting excess sums .....                                    | §486 |
| (vi) Prosecutions: time limit, minimum penalty .....                | §487 |
| (m) Application of Customs Act .....                                | §488 |
| (n) Inquiries .....   | §489 |
| (o) Action Against Officer.....                                     | §490 |
| (p) Action Against Purchaser.....                                   | §491 |
| 4. Goods and Services Tax: Part IX .....                            | §492 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (a) General .....   | §492 |
| (b) Interpretation.....   | §493 |
| (i) Definitions .....   | §493 |
| (ii) Deeming provisions .....   | §494 |
| A. General deeming provisions .....   | §494 |
| B. Supply deemed to be in course of commercial or particular activities .....                               | §495 |
| C. Supply of property or service deemed made in or outside Canada .....                                     | §496 |
| D. Supply of personal property or service made by non-resident person deemed made in or outside Canada..... | §497 |
| E. Supplies made by governments and municipalities deemed made in course of commercial activity .....       | §498 |
| F. Person deemed small supplier.....  | §499 |
| G. Financial Institutions .....   | §500 |
| H. Deemed consideration .....   | §501 |
| I. Miscellaneous deeming rules .....  | §506 |
| (c) Goods and Services Tax (Division II).....   | §507 |
| (i) Liability.....  | §507 |
| (ii) Payment of Division II Tax.....  | §510 |
| (d) Input tax credits.....  | §512 |
| (i) Eligibility .....   | §512 |
| (ii) Restrictions on claim .....  | §516 |
| (iii) Special cases .....   | §518 |
| (iv) Collection.....  | §519 |
| A. Obligation to collect tax .....  | §519 |
| B. Exceptions.....  | §521 |
| C. Disclosure of tax .....  | §523 |
| D. Right of supplier to sue for recovery of tax.....  | §524 |
| (v) Remittance of tax .....   | §525 |
| A. General.....   | §525 |
| B. Streamlined accounting .....   | §527 |
| C. Calculation of net tax.....  | §528 |
| D. Set-offs, refunds .....  | §530 |
| E. Other adjustments .....  | §532 |

CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| F. Remittance in instalments.....                        | §533 |
| G. Returns and Reporting Periods.....                    | §534 |
| 1. Returns.....  | §534 |
| 2. Reporting periods.....                                | §537 |
| H. Registration.....                                     | §538 |
| (e) Tax on Importation of Goods: Division III .....      | §542 |
| (i) Liability.....                                       | §542 |
| (ii) Collection.....                                     | §543 |
| (iii) Determination of value .....                       | §544 |
| (iv) Security .....                                      | §545 |
| (v) Rebates.....   | §546 |
| (vi) Disputes .....                                      | §548 |
| (f) Tax on Imported Taxable Supplies Other than Goods:   |      |
| Division IV .....  | §549 |
| (i) Liability.....                                       | §549 |
| (ii) Exemptions .....                                    | §550 |
| (iii) Returns and Payment of Tax.....                    | §552 |
| (iv) Rebates.....  | §553 |
| (g) Tax on Property and Services Brought into a Partici- |      |
| pating Province: Division IV.1 .....                     | §554 |
| (i) Liability.....                                       | §554 |
| (ii) Payment of tax .....                                | §555 |
| (iii) Exemptions.....                                    | §556 |
| (iv) Returns and payment of tax.....                     | §557 |
| (h) Miscellaneous Rules.....                             | §558 |
| (i) Trustees and other representatives.....              | §558 |
| (ii) Anti-avoidance.....                                 | §559 |
| (i) Administration and Enforcement.....                  | §560 |
| (i) General.....   | §560 |
| (ii) Return and demand for return .....                  | §562 |
| (iii) Penalties and Interest .....                       | §563 |
| (iv) Keeping of Records; Audit.....                      | §565 |
| (v) Search and seizure.....                              | §568 |
| (vi) Foreign-Based Information .....                     | §569 |
| (vii) Solicitor-client privilege.....                    | §570 |
| (viii) Confidentiality of Information.....               | §571 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (ix) Assessments, Objections and Appeals .....        | §572        |
| (x) Collection.....                                   | §581        |
| A. Debt; Limitation Period on Collection.....         | §581        |
| B. Director’s liability and limitation .....          | §584        |
| C. Offences .....                                     | §587        |
| D. Evidence and procedure.....                        | §589        |
| 5. Transitional Provisions .....                      | §590        |
| <b>V. Excise Act .....</b>                            | <b>§591</b> |
| 1. General .....                                      | §591        |
| (a) Scope of Act.....                                 | §591        |
| (b) Application of Act to Crown.....                  | §593        |
| (c) Licences .....                                    | §594        |
| (d) Books and Returns .....                           | §598        |
| (e) Annual Inventory .....                            | §599        |
| (f) Bonding and Warehousing .....                     | §600        |
| (g) Ascertainment and Payment of Duties .....         | §602        |
| (h) Powers and Duties of Officers .....               | §607        |
| (i) Protection of Officers.....                       | §609        |
| (j) Recovery of Duties and Penalties .....            | §611        |
| (k) Seizure and Forfeiture.....                       | §612        |
| (l) Persons Claiming Interest in Articles Seized..... | §617        |
| (m) Offences and Penalties .....                      | §620        |
| 2. Breweries.....                                     | §622        |
| <b>VI. Excise Act, 2001 .....</b>                     | <b>§626</b> |
| 1. Scope of the Act .....                             | §626        |
| 2. Licences and Registrations .....                   | §627        |
| (a) Licences .....                                    | §627        |
| (b) Registrations .....                               | §628        |
| (c) Excise Warehouse Licences.....                    | §629        |
| (d) Duty-free Shops Licence.....                      | §630        |
| (e) Refusal to Issue Licence or Registration.....     | §631        |
| 3. Tobacco Regulation .....                           | §632        |
| (a) Prohibition of Manufacture .....                  | §632        |
| (b) Prohibition of Activities as Tobacco Dealer.....  | §633        |



## CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (c) Unlawful Packaging or Stamping .....  | §634 |
| (d) Unlawful Removal .....  | §635 |
| (e) Unlawful Purchase or Receiving for Sale .....                               | §636 |
| (f) Unlawful Possession, Sale, etc. of Unstamped Raw<br>Leaf Tobacco .....      | §637 |
| (g) Unlawful Possession or Sale of Tobacco Products .....                       | §638 |
| (h) Further Prohibitions.....   | §639 |
| (i) Packaging and Stamping of Imported Tobacco.....                             | §642 |
| (j) Warehousing, etc. of Packaged Tobacco Products .....                        | §644 |
| (k) Removal, Re-working and Destruction of Tobacco .....                        | §646 |
| 4. Duty on Tobacco.....   | §647 |
| (a) Imposition of Duties.....   | §647 |
| (b) Payment and Collection of General and Additional<br>Duty.....               | §648 |
| (c) Duty Relief .....   | §650 |
| (d) Entering Tobacco Product into and Removal from Ex-<br>cise Warehouses ..... | §651 |
| (e) Imposition and Payment of Special Duty .....                                | §654 |
| (f) Special Duty Relief.....  | §655 |
| (g) Tobacco Products Inventory Tax.....   | §656 |
| 5. Alcohol Regulation .....   | §657 |
| (a) General .....   | §657 |
| (b) Prohibitions.....   | §658 |
| (c) Prohibitions and Restrictions Respecting Bulk Alcohol<br>.....              | §662 |
| (d) Responsibility for Bulk Spirits .....                                       | §667 |
| (e) Rules of Responsibility for Bulk Wine .....                                 | §669 |
| 6. Duty on Alcohol .....  | §670 |
| (a) Imposition and Payment of Duties .....                                      | §670 |
| (i) General Duty on Spirits .....   | §670 |
| (ii) Special Duty on Imported Spirits.....                                      | §675 |
| (iii) Duty on Bulk Wine Taken for Use .....                                     | §676 |
| (iv) Duty on Wine Packaged in Canada .....                                      | §677 |
| (b) Liability of Excise Warehouse Licensees and Licensed<br>Users .....         | §678 |
| (c) Non-dutiable Uses and Removals of Alcohol.....                              | §679 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (d) Regulation of Excise Warehouses — Removal of Non-duty-paid Packaged Alcohol ..... | §680 |
| (e) Return of Duty-paid and Non-duty-paid Packaged Alcohol.....                       | §682 |
| (f) Supplying Packaged Alcohol to Retail Stores.....                                  | §683 |
| (g) Removal of Special Container.....   | §684 |
| (h) Removal of Packaged Wine and Spirits from Excise Warehouse.....                   | §685 |
| 7. General Provisions Concerning Duty and Other Amounts                               |      |
| Payable.....  | §686 |
| (a) Fiscal Month.....   | §686 |
| (b) Returns and Payment of Duty and Other Amounts.....                                | §687 |
| (c) Interest.....   | §692 |
| (d) Refunds .....   | §693 |
| (e) Assessments .....   | §698 |
| (f) Objections to Assessment.....   | §701 |
| (g) Records and Information.....  | §706 |
| (h) Bankruptcies and Corporate Reorganizations .....                                  | §711 |
| 8. Enforcement .....  | §716 |
| (a) Offences and punishment.....  | §716 |
| (i) General.....  | §716 |
| (ii) Unlawful Production, Sale, etc., of Tobacco or Alcohol.....                      | §717 |
| (iii) Disposal, Sale, Offering for Sale, etc., of Raw Leaf Tobacco.....               | §718 |
| (iv) Possession, Offer to Sell, Sell, etc., Unstamped Tobacco Products .....          | §719 |
| (v) Offences Relating to Alcohol .....  | §720 |
| (vi) More Serious Alcohol Offences .....  | §721 |
| (vii) Falsifying or Destroying Records.....   | §722 |
| (viii) Obstruction of Officer.....  | §723 |
| (ix) Offence Relating to Confidential Information .....                               | §724 |
| (x) Other Contraventions .....  | §725 |
| (xi) Further Provisions Relating to Serious and More Serious Offences.....            | §726 |
| (b) Proceeds of Crime.....  | §727 |
| (c) Administrative Penalties and Imposition.....                                      | §728 |

## CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (i) Penalties.....  | §728        |
| (ii) Penalty Imposition .....   | §732        |
| (d) Search Warrants .....   | §733        |
| (e) Inspections and Seizure of Records and Things.....  | §734        |
| (f) Return or Disposal of Things Seized.....  | §735        |
| (g) Forfeitures.....  | §736        |
| (h) Review of Imposed Penalty or Seizure.....   | §737        |
| (i) Appeal to Federal Court .....   | §739        |
| (j) Third Party Claims.....   | §740        |
| (k) Appeal.....   | §743        |
| (l) Collection.....   | §745        |
| (i) Procedures Available.....   | §745        |
| (ii) Collection restrictions .....  | §747        |
| (iii) Authorization to Proceed Without Delay.....   | §748        |
| (iv) Certificates.....  | §749        |
| (v) Garnishment.....  | §750        |
| (vi) Deduction or Set-off .....   | §751        |
| (vii) Acquisition of Debtor’s Property .....  | §752        |
| (viii) Money Seized from Debtor .....   | §753        |
| (ix) Seizure of Debtor’s Property .....   | §754        |
| (x) Directors Liability .....   | §755        |
| (xi) Compliance by Unincorporated Bodies.....   | §756        |
| (xii) Liability in Non-arm’s Length Transfers.....  | §757        |
| (m) Evidence and Procedure.....   | §758        |
| 9. Regulations.....   | §759        |
| 10. Transitional Provisions .....   | §760        |
| <b>VII. Export and Import Permits Act.....</b>  | <b>§761</b> |
| 1. Scope of Act .....   | §761        |
| 2. Export Control List.....   | §762        |
| 3. Area Control List.....   | §763        |
| 4. Import Control List.....   | §764        |
| 5. Import Access .....  | §772        |
| 6. Bilateral Emergency Measures: Textiles and Apparel Goods<br>Not Originating in a Free Trade Partner..... | §773        |
| 7. Permits and Certificates.....  | §774        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

8. Offences and Penalties.....\$779  
9. Powers of Officers .....\$782

**Index**

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Courts; Criminal Law — Offences; Crown; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Income Tax; Labour Law — Federal; Liquor Control; Narcotic Control; Practice; Prerogative Remedies; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Sentencing; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada

# DAMAGES

prepared by  
S. Christine Montgomery, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                | §1  |
| 1. General .....                            | §1  |
| 2. Classification of Damages .....          | §4  |
| (a) General and Special Damages .....       | §4  |
| (b) Liquidated Damages .....                | §8  |
| (c) Nominal Damages .....                   | §15 |
| (d) Contemptuous Damages .....              | §17 |
| (e) Aggravated Damages .....                | §18 |
| (f) Punitive or Exemplary Damages .....     | §24 |
| (i) General .....                           | §24 |
| (ii) When Awarded .....                     | §33 |
| A. Breach of Contract .....                 | §33 |
| B. Breach of Duty .....                     | §37 |
| C. Acts Punishable Under Criminal Law ..... | §38 |
| D. Torts .....                              | §41 |
| E. Breach of Statutory Rights .....         | §45 |
| <b>II. General Principles</b> .....         | §46 |
| 1. Remoteness of Damage .....               | §46 |
| (a) General .....                           | §46 |
| (b) Novus Actus Interveniens .....          | §59 |
| 2. Assessment Principles .....              | §64 |

## DAMAGES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .                        | \$64        |
| (b) Time of Assessment . . . . .             | \$68        |
| (c) Continuing Cause of Action . . . . .     | \$72        |
| (d) Difficulty in Assessment . . . . .       | \$75        |
| 3. Interest . . . . .                        | \$78        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                        | \$78        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .               | \$82        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                       | \$89        |
| (d) Ontario . . . . .                        | \$90        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                   | \$97        |
| <b>III. Damages in Contract . . . . .</b>    | <b>\$99</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                         | \$99        |
| 2. Sale of Goods . . . . .                   | \$113       |
| (a) General . . . . .                        | \$113       |
| (b) Buyer's Breach . . . . .                 | \$115       |
| (c) Seller's Breach . . . . .                | \$120       |
| (i) Non-delivery or Delay . . . . .          | \$120       |
| (ii) Breach of Warranty . . . . .            | \$127       |
| 3. Sale of Land . . . . .                    | \$134       |
| (a) General . . . . .                        | \$134       |
| (b) Purchaser's Action for Damages . . . . . | \$138       |
| (c) Vendor's Action for Damages . . . . .    | \$150       |
| 4. Sale of Shares and Securities . . . . .   | \$158       |
| (a) Shares . . . . .                         | \$158       |
| (b) Securities . . . . .                     | \$166       |
| 5. Sale of Business . . . . .                | \$172       |
| 6. Leases . . . . .                          | \$179       |
| (a) Landlord and Tenant . . . . .            | \$179       |
| (i) Tenant's Breach . . . . .                | \$179       |
| (ii) Landlord's Breach . . . . .             | \$185       |
| (b) Equipment . . . . .                      | \$192       |
| 7. Mortgages . . . . .                       | \$193       |
| 8. Building Contracts . . . . .              | \$197       |
| 9. Contracts of Carriage . . . . .           | \$205       |
| 10. Employment Contracts . . . . .           | \$212       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 11. Other Contracts . . . . .   | \$239        |
| (a) Agency . . . . .  | \$239        |
| (b) Associations and Clubs . . . . .  | \$241        |
| (c) Bailment . . . . .  | \$243        |
| (d) Bills of Exchange . . . . .   | \$248        |
| (e) Distributorships and Franchises . . . . .                                       | \$251        |
| (f) Education . . . . .   | \$252        |
| (g) Indemnity . . . . .   | \$253        |
| (h) Mineral Rights . . . . .  | \$254        |
| (i) Promise to Marry . . . . .  | \$259        |
| (j) Service . . . . .   | \$264        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>IV. Damages in Tort . . . . .</b>  | <b>\$266</b> |
| 1. Negligence . . . . .   | \$266        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | \$266        |
| (b) Professional Negligence . . . . .   | \$267        |
| (i) Solicitor’s Negligence . . . . .  | \$267        |
| (ii) Medical Malpractice . . . . .  | \$271        |
| (c) Personal Injury . . . . .   | \$273        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | \$273        |
| (ii) Heads of Damage . . . . .  | \$283        |
| A. General . . . . .  | \$283        |
| B. Pre-Trial Pecuniary Loss . . . . .   | \$285        |
| 1. Special Damages . . . . .  | \$285        |
| 2. Loss of Wages . . . . .  | \$288        |
| C. Non-Pecuniary Loss . . . . .   | \$297        |
| 1. Pain and Suffering, Loss of Amenities,<br>Loss of Expectation of Life . . . . .  | \$297        |
| 2. Nervous Shock . . . . .  | \$316        |
| D. Loss of Earning Capacity . . . . .   | \$323        |
| E. Cost of Future Care . . . . .  | \$349        |
| (iii) Thin Skull Doctrine and Aggravation of Pre-ex-<br>isting Conditions . . . . . | \$360        |
| (iv) Effect of Intervening Events . . . . .   | \$367        |
| (v) Structured Settlements . . . . .  | \$371        |
| (vi) Management Fees . . . . .  | \$373        |

## DAMAGES

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (vii) Collateral Benefits . . . . .                              | \$376 |
| A. Private Insurance . . . . .                                   | \$376 |
| B. Employment Benefits . . . . .                                 | \$378 |
| C. Unemployment Insurance . . . . .                              | \$383 |
| D. Provincial Health Insurance . . . . .                         | \$384 |
| E. Automobile Insurance . . . . .                                | \$387 |
| F. Workers' Compensation . . . . .                               | \$388 |
| G. Welfare . . . . .   | \$389 |
| H. Free or Subsidized Provision of Services . . . . .            | \$390 |
| I. Gifts . . . . .   | \$391 |
| (d) Economic Loss . . . . .                                      | \$392 |
| (e) Injuries to Family Members and Other Third Parties . . . . . | \$396 |
| (i) Loss of Consortium . . . . .                                 | \$396 |
| (ii) Care and Services Provided by Family Members . . . . .      | \$400 |
| (iii) Actions in Nature of Per Quod Servitium Amisit . . . . .   | \$406 |
| (f) Fatal Accidents . . . . .                                    | \$409 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | \$409 |
| (ii) Loss of Pecuniary Benefit . . . . .                         | \$416 |
| A. General . . . . .   | \$416 |
| B. Death of Child . . . . .                                      | \$428 |
| (iii) Loss of Guidance, Care and Companionship . . . . .         | \$430 |
| (iv) Bereavement . . . . .                                       | \$437 |
| (v) Medical Expenses . . . . .                                   | \$441 |
| (vi) Funeral Expenses . . . . .                                  | \$442 |
| (vii) Insurance and Pension Payments . . . . .                   | \$443 |
| (viii) Tax . . . . .   | \$444 |
| (ix) Other Damages . . . . .                                     | \$445 |
| 2. Negligent Misrepresentation . . . . .                         | \$452 |
| 3. Commercial Hosts . . . . .                                    | \$460 |
| 4. Assault and Battery . . . . .                                 | \$461 |
| 5. False Imprisonment . . . . .                                  | \$468 |
| 6. Malicious Prosecution and Abuse of Process . . . . .          | \$471 |
| 7. Defamation . . . . .  | \$473 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 8. Wilful Infliction of Mental Distress . . . . .                          | §484        |
| 9. Fraud, Deceit and Fraudulent Misrepresentation . . . . .                | §485        |
| 10. Interference with Economic Relations . . . . .                         | §488        |
| (a) Inducing Breach of Contract . . . . .                                  | §488        |
| (b) Conspiracy . . . . .   | §491        |
| 11. Invasion of Privacy and Appropriation of Personality . . . . .         | §493        |
| 12. Trespass to Land . . . . .   | §496        |
| 13. Nuisance . . . . .   | §508        |
| 14. Abnormally Dangerous Activities and Substances . . . . .               | §513        |
| 15. Interference with Riparian Rights . . . . .                            | §518        |
| 16. Slander of Title . . . . .   | §520        |
| 17. Damage to Chattels . . . . .   | §525        |
| 18. Damage to Real Property . . . . .                                      | §538        |
| 19. Conversion . . . . .   | §543        |
| 20. Maintenance and Champerty . . . . .                                    | §552        |
| 21. Product Liability . . . . .  | §554        |
| 22. Breach of Statutory Duty . . . . .                                     | §558        |
| 23. Passing-Off and Infringement of Intellectual Property Rights . . . . . | §564        |
| 24. Negligent Design . . . . .   | §567        |
| <b>V. Damages in Equity . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§568</b> |
| <b>VI. Exercise of Statutory Powers . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§580</b> |
| <b>VII. Damages for Breach of Penal Statute . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§590</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §590        |
| 2. Criminal Injuries Compensation Schemes . . . . .                        | §593        |
| <b>VIII. Limitation of Damages . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§599</b> |
| 1. Mitigation . . . . .  | §599        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §599        |
| (b) Personal Injury . . . . .  | §609        |
| (c) Wrongful Dismissal . . . . .   | §617        |
| (d) Libel and Slander . . . . .  | §621        |
| 2. Contributory Negligence . . . . .                                       | §622        |

## DAMAGES

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 3. Contractual Limitations to Damages . . . . .  | \$626        |
| (a) General . . . . .                            | \$626        |
| (b) “Mary Carter” Agreements . . . . .           | \$627        |
| 4. Bars to Recovery of Damages . . . . .         | \$628        |
| (a) Releases, Accord and Satisfaction . . . . .  | \$628        |
| (b) Volenti Non Fit Injuria . . . . .            | \$636        |
| (c) Illegality . . . . .                         | \$638        |
| (d) Limitation Periods . . . . .                 | \$640        |
| (e) Status of Parties . . . . .                  | \$641        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>IX. Review of Damages on Appeal . . . . .</b> | <b>\$642</b> |
| 1. Appeal from Trial Judge . . . . .             | \$642        |
| 2. Appeal from Jury Award . . . . .              | \$653        |
| 3. Appeal from Appellate Court . . . . .         | \$662        |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Agency; Bailment; Building Contracts; Carriers; Conflict of Laws; Contracts; Copyright; Crown; Defamation; Employment Law; Injunctions; Insurance; Landlord and Tenant; Limitation of Actions; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Mortgages; Negligence; Nuisance; Patents of Invention; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land; Shipping; Torts; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada; Trade Marks and Industrial Designs; Trusts; Waters and Watercourses; Wrongful Dismissal; Workers’ Compensation.

# DEBTOR AND CREDITOR

prepared by  
Richard E. Levinson, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and New York Bars*  
Phillip E. Simms  
*Law Clerk and Supervisor, Accounts Receivable,  
Beard Winter, Barristers & Solicitors, Toronto, Ontario*

## **Table of Cases**

## **Table of Statutes**

## **Table of Rules**

## **Table of Regulations**

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>I. Legislative Overview .....</b>           | <b>§1</b>  |
| 1. Federal .....                               | §1         |
| 2. Alberta .....                               | §10        |
| 3. British Columbia .....                      | §16        |
| 4. Manitoba.....                               | §25        |
| 5. Ontario .....                               | §33        |
| 6. Saskatchewan .....                          | §46        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>II. Jurisprudence .....</b>                 | <b>§57</b> |
| 1. Nature of Creditor-Debtor Relationship..... | §57        |
| 2. Determination of Accounts.....              | §67        |
| 3. Loans .....                                 | §72        |
| 4. Debt Repayment.....                         | §74        |
| 5. Demand for Repayment.....                   | §83        |
| 6. Set-off .....                               | §89        |
| 7. Payment to or from Agent.....               | §98        |
| 8. Joint Debtors .....                         | §101       |
| 9. Part Payment .....                          | §103       |
| 10. Application of Payments.....               | §104       |
| 11. Proof of Payment .....                     | §105       |

DEBTOR AND CREDITOR

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 12. Garnishment .....  | §106 |
| (a) Introduction .....   | §106 |
| (b) Prejudgment Garnishment .....                                  | §109 |
| (c) Extraterritorial Garnishment Orders.....                       | §121 |
| (d) Rectification of Irregularities in Garnishee Summons ....      | §122 |
| (e) Trial of Issue.....  | §123 |
| (f) Payment Out of Court .....                                     | §124 |
| (g) Stay of Garnishment Order .....                                | §125 |
| (h) Abuse of Garnishment Process.....                              | §126 |
| (i) Breach of Garnishment Order .....                              | §127 |
| (j) Setting Aside Garnishment Order .....                          | §129 |
| (k) Attachability.....   | §130 |
| (l) Garnishment and Priorities among Creditors and Assignees ..... | §132 |
| 13. Examination of Debtor .....                                    | §133 |
| 14. Interest .....   | §135 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Absentees; Agency; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Business Corporations; Companies Creditors Arrangement Act; Conflict of Laws; Contracts; Distress; Equity; Estoppel; Execution; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Injunctions; Interpleader; Judgments and Orders; Limitation of Actions; Mortgages; Municipal and School Taxation; Parties; Partnership; Personal Property; Receivers; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Sheriffs and Bailiffs

# DEEDS AND DOCUMENTS

prepared by  
Richard Levinson, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and New York Bars*  
and  
David Seidel, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|                                       |      |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....          | §1   |
| 1. Deed Defined .....                 | §1   |
| 2. Intention Essential Element .....  | §3   |
| 3. Testimonium Clause .....           | §4   |
| 4. Consideration.....                 | §5   |
| <br>                                  |      |
| <b>II. Legislative Overview</b> ..... | §7   |
| 1. Introduction .....                 | §7   |
| 2. Statute of Frauds .....            | §8   |
| 3. Alberta Legislation.....           | §9   |
| 4. British Columbia Legislation.....  | §69  |
| 5. Manitoba Legislation .....         | §74  |
| 6. Ontario Legislation .....          | §79  |
| 7. Saskatchewan Legislation .....     | §103 |
| 8. Federal Legislation.....           | §109 |
| <br>                                  |      |
| <b>III. Form: Parties</b> .....       | §111 |
| 1. General .....                      | §111 |
| 2. Misdescription .....               | §112 |
| (a) General .....                     | §112 |

DEEDS AND DOCUMENTS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Deed Executed in Blank .....           | §113        |
| (c) Individuals.....                       | §114        |
| (d) Corporations.....                      | §116        |
| 3. Agents; Partners .....                  | §118        |
| 4. Statutory Forms.....                    | §121        |
| <b>IV. Execution.....</b>                  | <b>§122</b> |
| 1. General .....                           | §122        |
| (a) Definition .....                       | §122        |
| (b) Execution by Some Only.....            | §123        |
| (c) Execution in Part Only.....            | §127        |
| 2. Signature.....                          | §128        |
| (a) General .....                          | §128        |
| (b) Use of Pseudonym .....                 | §130        |
| (c) Location of Signature on Document..... | §131        |
| 3. Sealing .....                           | §134        |
| (a) General .....                          | §134        |
| (b) Form and Material Substance.....       | §136        |
| (c) Sufficient Act of Sealing.....         | §140        |
| (d) Absence of Seal.....                   | §142        |
| (e) Effect of Testimonium Clause .....     | §143        |
| (f) Sealing by Corporation.....            | §145        |
| 4. Delivery .....                          | §152        |
| (a) General .....                          | §152        |
| (b) Incomplete Delivery.....               | §158        |
| (c) Conditional Delivery: Escrow.....      | §161        |
| 5. Non Est Factum .....                    | §170        |
| 6. Agents.....                             | §176        |
| 7. Partners .....                          | §178        |
| <b>V. Operation.....</b>                   | <b>§180</b> |
| 1. Operation in General.....               | §180        |
| 2. Time of Operation.....                  | §181        |
| 3. Merger .....                            | §183        |
| 4. Operation by Estoppel .....             | §186        |
| 5. Irrevocability .....                    | §187        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>VI. Construction of Documents Generally</b> .....                | §193 |
| 1. General Rule: Intention of Parties Determined from Document..... | §193 |
| (a) General.....  | §193 |
| (b) Unambiguous Language Determining Intention .....                | §202 |
| (c) Where Language Not Indicating Intention .....                   | §206 |
| 2. Admissibility of Extrinsic Evidence .....                        | §210 |
| (a) General.....  | §210 |
| (b) Patent and Latent Ambiguities .....                             | §214 |
| (c) Evidence of Conduct.....  | §216 |
| 3. Construction of Conveyances of Land.....                         | §218 |
| (a) General.....  | §218 |
| (b) Construction against Grantor .....                              | §221 |
| (c) Exceptions and Reservations.....                                | §225 |
| (d) Description of Land .....                                       | §226 |
| (e) Falsa Demonstratio Non Nocet.....                               | §229 |
| (f) Expressio Unius Est Exclusio Alterius .....                     | §231 |
| (g) Ut Res Magis Valeat Quam Pereat .....                           | §232 |
| 4. Covenants and Conditions .....                                   | §233 |
| (a) Covenants.....  | §233 |
| (b) Conditions.....   | §238 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>VII. Effect of Alteration</b> .....                              | §243 |
| 1. General: Instrument Void .....                                   | §243 |
| 2. Extent of Rule .....   | §246 |
| 3. Materiality of Alteration .....                                  | §249 |
| 4. Presumption That Alteration Made Before Execution .....          | §254 |
| 5. Ratification .....   | §259 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>VIII. Rectification</b> .....                                    | §263 |
| 1. General .....  | §263 |
| 2. Essential Conditions.....  | §273 |
| (a) Prior Agreement .....   | §273 |
| (b) Continuing Common Intention: Mutual Mistake .....               | §276 |
| (c) Evidence of True Bargain .....                                  | §279 |

DEEDS AND DOCUMENTS

---

(d) Inaccurate Documentation..... §284

3. Evidence Required ..... §288

    (a) General ..... §288

    (b) Burden of Proof..... §289

    (c) Degree of Proof ..... §290

4. Effect of Statute of Frauds ..... §294

5. Equitable Remedy ..... §297

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Boundaries and Surveys; Building Contracts; Contracts; Easements; Equity; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Partnership; Sale of Land; Specific Performance; Wills



# DEFAMATION

prepared by  
Charles N. MacDonald, LL.B., B.A.Sc. (B.A.)  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                         | §1  |
| 1. Defamation Defined .....                     | §1  |
| 2. Libel and Slander Distinguished .....        | §6  |
| 3. Malice .....                                 | §11 |
| 4. Who Can Sue and Be Sued .....                | §15 |
| 5. Charter of Rights and Freedoms .....         | §18 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Defamatory Statements and Acts</b> ..... | §21 |
| 1. General .....                                | §21 |
| 2. Against Public Persons .....                 | §29 |
| 3. Crime .....                                  | §33 |
| 4. Disease .....                                | §38 |
| 5. Business or Profession .....                 | §40 |
| (a) General .....                               | §40 |
| (b) Doctors .....                               | §45 |
| (c) Lawyers .....                               | §49 |
| (d) Newspapers .....                            | §50 |
| (e) Trade Unions and Union Members .....        | §52 |
| 6. Debts and Credit .....                       | §54 |
| 7. Other Imputations .....                      | §57 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>III. Principles of Interpretation</b> .....  | §60 |
| 1. Natural and Ordinary Meaning .....           | §60 |

## DEFAMATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Innuendo . . . . .                               | §71         |
| <b>IV. Reference to Plaintiff . . . . .</b>         | <b>§83</b>  |
| 1. General . . . . .                                | §83         |
| 2. Member of a Class . . . . .                      | §89         |
| <b>V. Publication . . . . .</b>                     | <b>§93</b>  |
| 1. General . . . . .                                | §93         |
| 2. What Constitutes Publication . . . . .           | §96         |
| 3. Repetition and Republication . . . . .           | §112        |
| (a) General . . . . .                               | §112        |
| (b) Liability of Original Publisher . . . . .       | §117        |
| <b>VI. Newspapers and Broadcasts . . . . .</b>      | <b>§124</b> |
| 1. “Broadcasting” . . . . .                         | §124        |
| 2. “Newspaper” . . . . .                            | §127        |
| 3. Privilege . . . . .                              | §130        |
| (a) General . . . . .                               | §130        |
| (b) Political Discussion . . . . .                  | §138        |
| (c) Court Proceedings . . . . .                     | §143        |
| (d) Other Privileged Publications . . . . .         | §154        |
| 4. Disclosure of Sources . . . . .                  | §164        |
| 5. Notice of Proprietor and Publisher . . . . .     | §166        |
| 6. Notice of Action . . . . .                       | §173        |
| (a) General . . . . .                               | §173        |
| (b) Alberta and Manitoba . . . . .                  | §174        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                      | §180        |
| (d) Ontario . . . . .                               | §181        |
| 7. Waiting Period . . . . .                         | §192        |
| 8. Limitation Period . . . . .                      | §193        |
| 9. Damages . . . . .                                | §196        |
| 10. Mitigation of Damages . . . . .                 | §198        |
| (a) Apology . . . . .                               | §198        |
| (b) Special Pleas . . . . .                         | §200        |
| (c) Damages in Other Action or Compromise . . . . . | §206        |
| 11. Actual or Special Damages . . . . .             | §207        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .                                    | §207        |
| (b) Good Faith . . . . .                                 | §210        |
| (c) Public Benefit . . . . .                             | §211        |
| (d) Imputing Commission of Criminal Offence . . . . .    | §212        |
| (e) Mistake or Misapprehension of Facts . . . . .        | §213        |
| (f) Apology and Retraction . . . . .                     | §214        |
| 12. Security for Costs . . . . .                         | §227        |
| 13. Consolidation of Actions . . . . .                   | §232        |
| 14. Place of Trial . . . . .                             | §235        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                                    | §235        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                           | §236        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                                   | §237        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                               | §239        |
| <b>VII. Justification . . . . .</b>                      | <b>§240</b> |
| <b>VIII. Fair Comment . . . . .</b>                      | <b>§255</b> |
| 1. Purpose . . . . .                                     | §255        |
| 2. Elements . . . . .                                    | §256        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                    | §256        |
| (b) Basis of True Fact . . . . .                         | §258        |
| (c) Comment Versus Fact . . . . .                        | §262        |
| (d) Fairness . . . . .                                   | §268        |
| (e) On Matter of Public Interest . . . . .               | §277        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                    | §277        |
| (ii) Examples: Matters of Public Interest . . . . .      | §279        |
| (iii) Examples: Matters Not of Public Interest . . . . . | §293        |
| 3. Malice . . . . .                                      | §297        |
| 4. Judge and Jury . . . . .                              | §303        |
| 5. Burden of Proof . . . . .                             | §305        |
| 6. Rolled-Up Plea . . . . .                              | §306        |
| <b>IX. Absolute Privilege . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§308</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                                | §308        |
| 2. Judicial and Quasi-Judicial Proceedings . . . . .     | §310        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                    | §310        |

## DEFAMATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Protected Courts and Tribunals . . . . .   | §312        |
| (c) Pleadings and Documents . . . . .  | §320        |
| (d) Witnesses . . . . .  | §323        |
| 3. High Executive Communications . . . . .   | §328        |
| 4. Parliamentary Proceedings . . . . .   | §332        |
| 5. Fair and Accurate Newspaper or Broadcast Report of Court<br>Proceedings . . . . . | §336        |
| <b>X. Qualified Privilege . . . . .</b>  | <b>§337</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §337        |
| 2. Criteria for Application . . . . .  | §346        |
| 3. Duty and Interest . . . . .   | §356        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §356        |
| (b) Answering Inquiries . . . . .  | §358        |
| (c) Volunteering Information . . . . .   | §362        |
| (d) Investigation of Crime . . . . .   | §363        |
| (e) Credit Agencies . . . . .  | §364        |
| (f) Statements by Persons in Public Positions . . . . .                              | §365        |
| (g) Statements Concerning Public Persons . . . . .                                   | §370        |
| (h) Statements Made to Public Authorities . . . . .                                  | §375        |
| 4. Common Interest or Communications Pursuant to an Interest . . . . .               | §376        |
| 5. Protection of Interest: Statements Made in Self-Defence . . . . .                 | §386        |
| 6. Publication to Uninterested Parties . . . . .                                     | §391        |
| 7. Communications to General Public . . . . .  | §394        |
| 8. Court Documents . . . . .   | §396        |
| 9. Political Discussion . . . . .  | §397        |
| 10. Extracts from Public Registers . . . . .   | §398        |
| 11. Statutory Categories of Qualified Privilege . . . . .                            | §400        |
| 12. Loss of Privilege: Excess and Malice . . . . .                                   | §401        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §401        |
| (b) Malice . . . . .   | §403        |
| (c) Excess . . . . .   | §415        |
| 13. Judge and Jury . . . . .   | §421        |
| <b>XI. Consent . . . . .</b>   | <b>§425</b> |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**XII. Damages** . . . . . §426

1. Introduction . . . . . §426

2. General Damages . . . . . §434

    (a) Nature . . . . . §434

    (b) Cap on Non-Pecuniary Damages . . . . . §436

    (c) Relation to Pecuniary Loss . . . . . §438

    (d) Comparison to Other Decisions . . . . . §440

    (e) Factors in Assessment . . . . . §444

3. Aggravated Damages . . . . . §462

4. Punitive Damages . . . . . §471

5. Special Damages . . . . . §480

6. Contemptuous Damages . . . . . §487

7. Nominal Damages . . . . . §488

  

**XIII. Injunctions** . . . . . §490

1. General . . . . . §490

2. Interim or Interlocutory Relief . . . . . §496

3. Quia Timet Relief . . . . . §499

4. Relevance of Damages . . . . . §500

  

**XIV. Parties** . . . . . §502

1. General . . . . . §502

2. Corporations . . . . . §505

3. Unincorporated Associations . . . . . §509

4. Partners . . . . . §510

5. Deceased Party . . . . . §512

6. Trustees in Bankruptcy . . . . . §514

  

**XV. Pleadings and Evidence** . . . . . §515

1. General . . . . . §515

2. Publication . . . . . §521

    (a) General . . . . . §521

    (b) Republication . . . . . §526

    (c) Foreign Language . . . . . §529

    (d) Particulars . . . . . §530

DEFAMATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (e) Evidence . . . . .                          | §533        |
| 3. Words Complained of . . . . .                | §537        |
| (a) Pleading Words Verbatim . . . . .           | §537        |
| (b) Exact Words Unknown . . . . .               | §542        |
| (c) Television Programming . . . . .            | §543        |
| (d) Foreign Language . . . . .                  | §545        |
| (e) Context . . . . .                           | §546        |
| (f) Obscene Material . . . . .                  | §548        |
| (g) Meaning of Words . . . . .                  | §549        |
| (h) Proving Words Alleged . . . . .             | §558        |
| 4. Reference to Plaintiff . . . . .             | §561        |
| 5. True Innuendo . . . . .                      | §566        |
| 6. Facts Making Slander Actionable . . . . .    | §568        |
| 7. Evidence of Previous Libel . . . . .         | §569        |
| 8. Justification . . . . .                      | §572        |
| 9. Fair Comment . . . . .                       | §584        |
| 10. Rolled-Up Plea . . . . .                    | §587        |
| 11. Privilege . . . . .                         | §595        |
| 12. Malice . . . . .                            | §604        |
| 13. Evidence of Plaintiff's Character . . . . . | §613        |
| 14. Special Damages . . . . .                   | §617        |
| 15. Mitigation of Damages . . . . .             | §621        |
| 16. Counterclaim . . . . .                      | §627        |
| 17. Particulars . . . . .                       | §628        |
| 18. Amendment of Pleadings . . . . .            | §633        |
| 19. Embarrassing Pleas . . . . .                | §642        |
| 20. Striking Out Pleadings . . . . .            | §649        |
| <b>XVI. Practice . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§650</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                            | §650        |
| 2. Joinder and Consolidation . . . . .          | §655        |
| (a) Consolidation Under Statute . . . . .       | §655        |
| (b) Consolidation By Rules . . . . .            | §657        |
| (c) Joinder of Causes of Action . . . . .       | §658        |
| (d) Joinder of Parties . . . . .                | §662        |
| (e) Misjoinder and Severance . . . . .          | §665        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 3. Discovery                                    | §667 |
| 4. Security for Costs                           | §686 |
| 5. Venue  | §688 |
| 6. Payment into Court                           | §689 |
| 7. Trial by Jury                                | §691 |
| 8. Judge and Jury                               | §692 |
| 9. General and Special Verdicts                 | §702 |
| 10. Costs                                       | §704 |
| 11. Agreement for Indemnity                     | §711 |
| 12. Effect of Recovery Against Joint Publishers | §712 |
| <b>XVII. Appeals</b>                            | §713 |
| 1. General                                      | §713 |
| 2. Verdict for Defendant                        | §716 |
| 3. Verdict for Plaintiff                        | §719 |
| 4. Damages                                      | §720 |
| <b>XVIII. Other Causes of Action</b>            | §728 |
| 1. Injurious or Malicious Falsehood             | §728 |
| (a) General                                     | §728 |
| (b) Publication                                 | §731 |
| (c) Falsity                                     | §732 |
| (d) Target                                      | §736 |
| (e) Malice                                      | §737 |
| (f) Special Damage                              | §738 |
| 2. Slander of Title                             | §741 |
| 3. Slander of Goods                             | §747 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Business Corporations; Courts; Criminal Law — Offences; Damages; Discovery; Human Rights; Injunctions; Internet Law; Malicious Prosecution And False Imprisonment; Pleadings; Practice; Radio And Television; Torts; Trespass; Trials

# DEVOLUTION OF ESTATES

## DEVOLUTION OF ESTATES

prepared by  
Maria Ruberto, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>I. Scope of Title .....</b>                        | <b>§1</b>  |
| <b>II. History .....</b>                              | <b>§3</b>  |
| 1. General .....                                      | §3         |
| 2. Alberta and Saskatchewan .....                     | §7         |
| 3. British Columbia .....                             | §10        |
| 4. Manitoba .....                                     | §12        |
| <b>III. Real Property Vesting as Personalty .....</b> | <b>§15</b> |
| <b>IV. Survivorship .....</b>                         | <b>§19</b> |
| 1. Order of Deaths .....                              | §19        |
| 2. Statutory Presumptions .....                       | §20        |
| (a) General Rule .....                                | §20        |
| (b) Jointly Owned Property .....                      | §25        |
| (c) Substitute Personal Representatives .....         | §26        |
| (d) Contrary Provisions .....                         | §27        |
| (e) Insurance .....                                   | §28        |
| (f) Avoidance of Statutory Presumptions .....         | §29        |
| <b>V. Accounts with Financial Institutions .....</b>  | <b>§31</b> |



DEVOLUTION OF ESTATES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| <b>VI. Rights of Surviving Spouse .....</b>            | <b>§34</b>  |
| 1. Rights to Home Property.....                        | §34         |
| (a) Alberta.....                                       | §34         |
| (i) Temporary Possession of Family Home .....          | §34         |
| (ii) Dower Rights .....                                | §43         |
| (b) British Columbia .....                             | §53         |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                     | §61         |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                  | §70         |
| 2. Matrimonial Property and Other Legislation.....     | §76         |
| (a) Alberta.....                                       | §76         |
| (b) British Columbia .....                             | §84         |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                     | §89         |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                  | §94         |
| 3. Upon Intestacy .....                                | §106        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VII. Rights of Surviving Children .....</b>         | <b>§107</b> |
| 1. Upon Intestacy .....                                | §107        |
| 2. Adopted Children.....                               | §108        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                       | §108        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                             | §113        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                     | §118        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                  | §123        |
| 3. Matters Respecting Legitimacy and Parentage.....    | §128        |
| (a) Common Law .....                                   | §128        |
| (b) Statutory Provisions .....                         | §129        |
| (i) Alberta .....                                      | §129        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                            | §132        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                                    | §134        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                                 | §135        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VIII. Intestate Succession .....</b>                | <b>§137</b> |
| 1. General .....                                       | §137        |
| 2. Determination Date of Classes of Beneficiaries..... | §148        |
| 3. Valuation of Estate .....                           | §149        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 4. Distribution of Estate.....  | §155        |
| (a) Spouse, Adult Interdependent Partner or Common-Law Partner .....                          | §155        |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §155        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §160        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §163        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §167        |
| (b) Issue or Descendants and Spouse, Adult Interdependent Partner or Common Law Partner ..... | §169        |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §169        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §175        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §180        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §186        |
| (c) Next-of-Kin.....  | §190        |
| (i) Parents.....  | §190        |
| (ii) Brothers and Sisters .....   | §191        |
| (iii) Nephews and Nieces.....   | §194        |
| (iv) Next-of-kin .....  | §197        |
| (d) Crown as Heir .....   | §203        |
| (i) Entitlement.....  | §203        |
| (ii) Administration of Estate .....   | §205        |
| A. General.....   | §205        |
| B. Action for Possession.....   | §211        |
| C. Claims Against Estate .....  | §215        |
| D. Proceeds of Disposition .....  | §219        |
| E. Time Limits .....  | §221        |
| 5. Dependants Relief Legislation.....   | §224        |
| 6. Indian Act.....  | §225        |
| 7. Effect of transfers during lifetime.....   | §235        |
| 8. Disclaimer.....  | §241        |
| 9. Lapse.....   | §242        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Loss of Rights.....</b>  | <b>§243</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §243        |
| 2. By Statute.....  | §245        |
| 3. Contracting Out of Rights .....  | §250        |

DEVOLUTION OF ESTATES

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 4. Persons Causing Death .....          | §255 |
| (a) General .....                       | §255 |
| (b) Application of Rule .....           | §257 |
| (c) Civil Proceedings .....             | §259 |
| (d) Insanity .....                      | §262 |
| (e) Effect on Disposition in Will ..... | §264 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Aboriginal Law; Absentees; Charities; Children; Conflict of Laws; Executors and Administrators; Family Law — Divorce; Family Law — General; Family Law — Property; Gifts; Insurance; Limitation of Actions; Mental Incapacity; Pensions — Private; Pensions — Public; Perpetuities and Accumulations; Real Property; Trusts; Wills

# DISCOVERY

prepared by  
Wendy-Anne Berkenbosch, LL.B.  
and  
Robert B. White, Q.C., LL.B.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. General Principles</b> .....               | §1   |
| 1. Right to Discovery .....                      | §1   |
| 2. Purposes of Discovery .....                   | §16  |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>II. Discovery of Documents</b> .....          | §21  |
| 1. General .....                                 | §21  |
| 2. Interpretation .....                          | §23  |
| (a) Documents or Records .....                   | §23  |
| (b) Possession, Control or Power .....           | §30  |
| (c) Relevance .....                              | §39  |
| 3. Scope of Document Discovery .....             | §48  |
| (a) General Principles .....                     | §48  |
| (b) Insurance Policies .....                     | §53  |
| (c) Production from Non-Parties .....            | §55  |
| (i) General .....                                | §55  |
| (ii) Financial Records .....                     | §75  |
| (iii) Hospital Records and Medical Reports ..... | §81  |
| (iv) Employment Records .....                    | §88  |
| 4. Objections to Production .....                | §90  |
| 5. Privilege .....                               | §101 |
| (a) General Principles .....                     | §101 |
| (b) Solicitor-client Privilege .....             | §116 |
| (i) General .....                                | §116 |

DISCOVERY

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (ii) Litigation Privilege.....                                  | §119        |
| (iii) Legal Advice Privilege .....                              | §130        |
| (c) Settlement Negotiations.....                                | §138        |
| (d) Official Documents and Crown Privilege .....                | §146        |
| (e) Waiver or Loss of Privilege.....                            | §151        |
| (f) Determining Privilege .....                                 | §166        |
| (g) Use of Privileged Documents .....                           | §167        |
| 6. List or Affidavit of Documents.....                          | §168        |
| (a) General .....   | §168        |
| (b) Deponent.....   | §169        |
| (c) Timing.....   | §174        |
| (d) Contents .....  | §180        |
| (e) Bundling of Documents .....                                 | §188        |
| 7. Continuing Obligation.....                                   | §191        |
| 8. Inspection and Production of Documents.....                  | §198        |
| 9. Effect of Production.....                                    | §215        |
| 10. Remedies for Failure to Disclose or Produce.....            | §217        |
| (a) General .....   | §217        |
| (b) Effect of Failure to Disclose or Produce Documents.....     | §228        |
| <b>III. Examination for Discovery by Written Questions.....</b> | <b>§236</b> |
| 1. General Principles .....                                     | §236        |
| 2. Scope and Limits on Discovery by Written Questions.....      | §239        |
| 3. Procedure for Providing Questions and Answers.....           | §251        |
| 4. Objections.....  | §258        |
| <b>IV. Examination for Discovery or Questioning.....</b>        | <b>§262</b> |
| 1. Right to Examination for Discovery .....                     | §262        |
| 2. Persons Subject to Examination.....                          | §271        |
| (a) Individual and Corporate Parties .....                      | §271        |
| (b) Corporate Officers and Employees.....                       | §284        |
| (c) Persons Providing Services to a Corporation.....            | §289        |
| (d) The Crown.....  | §290        |
| (e) Assignees and Assignors.....                                | §293        |
| (f) Trustees and Bankrupts.....                                 | §295        |
| (g) Auditors and Former Auditors.....                           | §297        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (h) Partners and Former Partners .....                      | §298        |
| (i) Persons Under Disability .....                          | §301        |
| (j) Guardians and Infants .....                             | §306        |
| (k) Nominal Parties .....                                   | §310        |
| (l) Experts .....   | §316        |
| (m) Non-parties .....                                       | §320        |
| (n) Person out of Jurisdiction .....                        | §326        |
| 3. Duty of Person to Inform Self .....                      | §331        |
| 4. Purpose and Scope of Examination .....                   | §339        |
| (a) General Principles.....                                 | §339        |
| (b) Opinion .....   | §359        |
| (c) Questions of Law .....                                  | §364        |
| (d) Names of Witnesses.....                                 | §366        |
| (e) Incriminating Questions .....                           | §369        |
| (f) Communications Between Spouses.....                     | §370        |
| 5. Time for and Order of Examination .....                  | §371        |
| 6. Place of Examination.....                                | §380        |
| 7. Procedure on Oral Examination .....                      | §384        |
| (a) Securing Attendance of Person to be Examined.....       | §384        |
| (b) Who May Attend.....                                     | §390        |
| (c) Examination under Oath.....                             | §395        |
| (d) Recording of Examination .....                          | §398        |
| (e) Production of Documents.....                            | §404        |
| (f) Examination and Re-examination.....                     | §412        |
| (g) Objections .....  | §416        |
| (h) Limits on Examination.....                              | §424        |
| 8. Undertakings.....  | §430        |
| 9. Divided Discovery .....                                  | §435        |
| 10. Multiple Examinations.....                              | §441        |
| 11. Costs of Examination.....                               | §448        |
| 12. Continuing Obligation.....                              | §457        |
| 13. Failure to Attend, Failure to Answer or Misconduct..... | §461        |
| <b>V. Inspection of Property .....</b>                      | <b>§470</b> |
| <b>VI. Physical Examinations .....</b>                      | <b>§477</b> |

DISCOVERY

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1. Availability .....                       | §477        |
| 2. Who May be Present .....                 | §480        |
| 3. Scope of Examination.....                | §485        |
| 4. Preparation and Provision of Report..... | §491        |
| 5. Costs .....                              | §495        |
| 6. Failure to Comply .....                  | §498        |
| <b>VII. Use of Discovery Evidence .....</b> | <b>§501</b> |
| 1. General .....                            | §501        |
| 2. Implied or Deemed Undertaking.....       | §528        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Administrative Law; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Business Corporations; Conflict of Laws; Contempt of Court; Costs; Criminal Law — Procedure; Damages; Defamation; Evidence; Executors and Administrators; Family Law — Divorce; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Hospitals; Insurance; Interpleader; Mines and Minerals; Negligence; Nuisance; Parties; Partnership; Patents; Pleadings; Practice; Shipping; Trials

# DISTRESS

prepared by  
Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.,  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Nature of Distress</b> .....  | §1  |
| 1. Definition.....  | §1  |
| 2. General .....  | §2  |
| 3. At Common Law .....  | §7  |
| 4. By Contract .....  | §8  |
| 5. By Statute.....  | §10 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Distress for Rent and Conditions Precedent to Exercise of Remedy</b> ..... | §11 |
| 1. General .....  | §11 |
| 2. Relationship of Landlord and Tenant Essential.....                             | §13 |
| 3. Rent Must be Certain.....  | §21 |
| 4. Rent Must be in Arrears.....   | §24 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>III. Who May Distrain</b> .....  | §27 |
| 1. General .....  | §27 |
| (a) Landlord .....  | §27 |
| (b) Assignee of Reversion .....   | §29 |
| (c) Infants.....  | §30 |
| (d) Guardians .....   | §31 |
| (e) Agents and Receivers .....  | §32 |
| (f) Executors and Administrators of Estates .....                                 | §35 |
| (g) Annuitants.....   | §36 |



DISTRESS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (h) Trustees .....   | \$37        |
| 2. Mortgagees under Attornment Clause in Mortgage of Land....      | \$38        |
| 3. Attornment Clauses in Agreements for Sale of Land.....          | \$40        |
| 4. Mortgagees Under Agreement Other Than Attornment<br>Clause..... | \$41        |
| <b>IV. When Distress May Be Made .....</b>                         | <b>\$44</b> |
| 1. Rent Must Be Due .....  | \$44        |
| 2. Accelerated Rent .....  | \$45        |
| 3. Within Six Months of Termination of Tenancy.....                | \$49        |
| 4. Earliest Time for Distress.....                                 | \$50        |
| 5. Previous Distress.....  | \$51        |
| <b>V. Where Distress May Be Made.....</b>                          | <b>\$52</b> |
| <b>VI. What May Be Distrained.....</b>                             | <b>\$55</b> |
| 1. Goods in Custody of Law .....                                   | \$55        |
| 2. Trade Privileges .....  | \$56        |
| 3. Fixtures .....  | \$57        |
| 4. Crops.....  | \$58        |
| 5. Statutory Exemptions .....                                      | \$59        |
| 6. Goods of Strangers .....  | \$61        |
| 7. Intangible Property.....  | \$76        |
| <b>VII. Loss of Right of Distress.....</b>                         | <b>\$77</b> |
| 1. Agreement .....   | \$77        |
| 2. Refusal of Rent .....   | \$78        |
| 3. Abandonment .....   | \$79        |
| 4. Attachment .....  | \$80        |
| 5. Removal of Goods from Demised Premises .....                    | \$81        |
| 6. Non-Compliance with Statutory Formalities .....                 | \$84        |
| 7. Cancellation of Lease .....                                     | \$85        |
| 8. Lapse of Time.....  | \$91        |
| 9. Parting with Reversion .....                                    | \$92        |
| 10. Set-Off or Deduction .....                                     | \$93        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>VIII. Levying Distress</b> .....                                    | §94  |
| 1. Procedure for Seizure .....   | §94  |
| (a) Warrant.....   | §94  |
| (b) Bailiffs .....   | §95  |
| (c) Entry.....   | §97  |
| (d) Seizure .....  | §100 |
| (e) Impounding Distress.....   | §101 |
| 2. Proceedings Between Seizure and Sale .....                          | §103 |
| 3. Sale by Distress.....   | §107 |
| 4. Other Procedures.....   | §111 |
| (a) Second Distress.....   | §111 |
| (b) Expenses of Distress .....   | §113 |
| (c) Fraudulent Removal .....   | §114 |
| (d) Pound Breach and Rescue .....                                      | §116 |
| (e) Obstructing Distress .....   | §118 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>IX. Wrongful Distress and Tenant’s Remedies</b> .....               | §119 |
| 1. Conduct Rendering Distress Wrongful .....                           | §119 |
| (a) Illegal Distress .....   | §119 |
| (b) Irregular Distress .....   | §120 |
| (c) Excessive Distress .....   | §122 |
| (d) Effect of Surrender.....   | §123 |
| (e) Effect of Forfeiture.....  | §124 |
| 2. Action for Damages for Illegal Distress.....                        | §126 |
| 3. Action for Trespass.....  | §129 |
| 4. Action for Damages in Conversion.....                               | §133 |
| 5. Replevin.....   | §135 |
| 6. Injunction.....   | §136 |
| 7. Summary Proceedings.....  | §137 |
| 8. Measure of Damages .....  | §138 |
| 9. Costs .....   | §143 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>X. Effect of Bankruptcy, Executions and Chattel Mortgages</b> ..... | §144 |
| 1. Effects of Various Procedures.....                                  | §144 |
| (a) Winding Up .....   | §144 |

DISTRESS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Bankruptcy or Insolvency .....                        | §145        |
| 2. Priorities .....                                       | §162        |
| (a) Generally .....                                       | §162        |
| (b) Execution Creditors .....                             | §163        |
| (c) Chattel Mortgagees and Conditional Vendors .....      | §165        |
| (d) Employees of Tenant .....                             | §169        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XI. Distress for Damage Feasant .....</b>              | <b>§170</b> |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XII. Distress for Rates and Taxes .....</b>            | <b>§175</b> |
| 1. When Distress for Taxes May be Made .....              | §175        |
| 2. Effect of Irregularities .....                         | §178        |
| 3. Goods of Third Parties .....                           | §180        |
| 4. Priorities .....                                       | §182        |
| 5. Liability for Illegal Distress for Taxes .....         | §184        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XIII. Distress under Summary Convictions Act .....</b> | <b>§185</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Animals; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Crown; Debtor and Creditor; Execution; Interpleader; Judgments and Orders; Landlord and Tenant; Mortgages; Municipal and School Taxation; Municipal Corporations; Personal Property; Receivers; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Sheriffs and Bailiffs

# DRAINAGE

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Drainage at Common Law</b> . . . . .                 | §1  |
| 1. Right to Drain Land . . . . .                           | §1  |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §1  |
| (b) Removal of Obstructions . . . . .                      | §3  |
| (c) Easements . . . . .                                    | §4  |
| 2. Right to Block Drainage . . . . .                       | §9  |
| 3. Measure of Damages . . . . .                            | §13 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Statutory Undertakings and Common Law</b> . . . . . | §17 |
| 1. Causes of Action . . . . .                              | §17 |
| (a) Nuisance . . . . .                                     | §17 |
| (b) Trespass . . . . .                                     | §21 |
| (c) Negligence . . . . .                                   | §22 |
| (d) Rylands v. Fletcher . . . . .                          | §24 |
| (e) Ultra Vires . . . . .                                  | §25 |
| (f) Damages for Non-Repair . . . . .                       | §26 |
| 2. Who May Sue . . . . .                                   | §27 |
| 3. Pleadings and Evidence . . . . .                        | §28 |
| 4. Defences . . . . .                                      | §30 |
| (a) Consent . . . . .                                      | §30 |
| (b) Vis Major . . . . .                                    | §31 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>III. Drains Auxiliary to Other Works</b> . . . . .      | §32 |
| 1. Roads . . . . .   | §32 |

DRAINAGE

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 2. Railways . . . . .                                  | §36        |
| <b>IV. Statutes Governing Drainage Works . . . . .</b> | <b>§42</b> |
| 1. Alberta . . . . .                                   | §42        |
| (a) Water Act . . . . .                                | §42        |
| (b) Municipal Government Act . . . . .                 | §52        |
| (i) Rights and Duties of Municipal Council . . . . .   | §52        |
| (ii) Liability of Municipality . . . . .               | §58        |
| (iii) Offences . . . . .                               | §60        |
| (c) Drainage Districts Act . . . . .                   | §61        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                  | §61        |
| (ii) Formation and Organization of Districts . . . . . | §62        |
| (iii) Board of Trustees . . . . .                      | §66        |
| (iv) Drainage Council . . . . .                        | §74        |
| (v) Drainage Works . . . . .                           | §75        |
| (vi) Drainage Rates . . . . .                          | §80        |
| (vii) Assessment . . . . .                             | §81        |
| (viii) Recovery of Rates . . . . .                     | §91        |
| (ix) Dissolution of District . . . . .                 | §94        |
| (x) Obstruction of Drainage . . . . .                  | §95        |
| (xi) Appeals . . . . .                                 | §96        |
| (xii) Forms and Regulations . . . . .                  | §97        |
| (xiii) Offences . . . . .                              | §98        |
| (d) Public Highways Development Act . . . . .          | §99        |
| (e) Land Titles Act . . . . .                          | §100       |
| (f) Public Health Act . . . . .                        | §102       |
| (g) Pipeline Act . . . . .                             | §103       |
| 2. British Columbia . . . . .                          | §104       |
| (a) Water Act . . . . .                                | §104       |
| (i) Licensing and Approval . . . . .                   | §104       |
| (ii) Duties of Licensee . . . . .                      | §108       |
| (iii) Offences . . . . .                               | §110       |
| (b) Local Government Act . . . . .                     | §112       |
| (c) Community Charter . . . . .                        | §128       |
| (d) Drainage, Ditch and Dike Act . . . . .             | §134       |
| (i) Function of Commissioners . . . . .                | §134       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (ii) Changes to District Boundaries; Dissolution . . . . .   | §140 |
| (iii) Transfer of Duties to Inspector of Dikes . . . . .     | §146 |
| (iv) Interference With Drainage Works . . . . .              | §147 |
| (e) Dike Maintenance Act . . . . .                           | §148 |
| (f) Other Statutes . . . . .                                 | §151 |
| 3. Manitoba . . . . .  | §163 |
| (a) Water Rights Act . . . . .                               | §163 |
| (b) Municipal Act . . . . .                                  | §166 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §166 |
| (ii) Local Improvements and Special Services . . . . .       | §172 |
| (iii) Inter-Municipal Drainage . . . . .                     | §176 |
| (iv) Liability of Municipality . . . . .                     | §177 |
| (v) Offences and Enforcement . . . . .                       | §182 |
| (c) Water Resources Administration Act . . . . .             | §186 |
| (d) Other Statutes . . . . .                                 | §189 |
| 4. Saskatchewan . . . . .                                    | §209 |
| (a) The Saskatchewan Water Corporation Act . . . . .         | §209 |
| (b) The Saskatchewan Watershed Authority Act, 2005 . . . . . | §214 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §214 |
| (ii) Application for Permit . . . . .                        | §226 |
| (iii) Obligations of Permittee . . . . .                     | §232 |
| (iv) Cancellation of Permit . . . . .                        | §234 |
| (v) Complaint Procedure . . . . .                            | §235 |
| (vi) Protection of Authorities . . . . .                     | §246 |
| (vii) Offences and Enforcement . . . . .                     | §247 |
| (viii) Non-Compliance with Orders of Corporation . . . . .   | §248 |
| (c) The Municipalities Act . . . . .                         | §251 |
| (d) The Cities Act . . . . .                                 | §262 |
| (e) Other Statutes . . . . .                                 | §275 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agriculture; Easements; Environmental Law; Highways and Streets; Municipal and School Taxes; Municipal Corporations; Negligence; Nuisance; Professions and Occupations; Public Utilities; Railways; References and Inquiries; Trespass; Waters and Watercourses.

# EASEMENTS

prepared by  
Austin F. Marshall, B. Comm, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and Northwest Territories Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Nature and Characteristics of Easements</b> .....      | §1  |
| 1. General .....   | §1  |
| (a) Definition of Easement.....                              | §1  |
| (b) Characteristics of an Easement.....                      | §3  |
| (i) General.....   | §3  |
| (ii) Dominant and Servient Tenement.....                     | §5  |
| (iii) Must Accommodate Dominant Tenement .....               | §8  |
| (iv) Dominant and Servient Owners must be<br>Different ..... | §11 |
| (v) Easement as an Interest in Land .....                    | §13 |
| 2. Classification of Easements.....                          | §17 |
| (a) Positive Easements and Negative Easements.....           | §17 |
| (b) Continuous and Apparent Easements .....                  | §24 |
| (c) Easement of Necessity .....                              | §30 |
| (d) Quasi-easements .....                                    | §31 |
| (e) Easements in Futuro.....                                 | §34 |
| (f) Equitable Easements .....                                | §36 |
| 3. Easement Distinguished from other Rights .....            | §38 |
| (a) Profits à Prendre .....                                  | §38 |
| (b) Licence.....   | §43 |
| (c) Rights in Gross .....                                    | §46 |
| (d) Restrictive Covenants.....                               | §51 |
| (e) Fences and Repair .....                                  | §61 |
| 4. Cases in Which an Easement has Been Found .....           | §64 |
| 5. Cases in Which an Easement has not Been Found.....        | §65 |

## EASEMENTS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>II. Creation and Acquisition of Easements</b> .....             | §66  |
| 1. General .....   | §66  |
| 2. Creation of Easements in Equity.....                            | §71  |
| 3. By Express Grant, Reservation or Agreement .....                | §76  |
| (a) Duration and Extent .....                                      | §76  |
| (b) Manner of Creation .....                                       | §81  |
| (c) Language .....   | §87  |
| (d) Ancillary Rights Included .....                                | §91  |
| (e) Extent and Nature of Easement .....                            | §93  |
| (f) Reservation and Exception .....                                | §101 |
| (g) Equity .....   | §109 |
| (h) Parol Evidence.....  | §112 |
| (i) General.....   | §112 |
| (ii) Building Schemes and Sales According to Registered Plan ..... | §113 |
| 4. Under Doctrine of Prescription .....                            | §121 |
| (a) General .....  | §121 |
| (i) Nature and Definition .....                                    | §121 |
| (ii) Methods of Claiming Prescriptive Title.....                   | §124 |
| (iii) Prescription is Based Upon Presumed Grant.....               | §126 |
| (iv) Presumption in Favour of Long User .....                      | §127 |
| (b) Prescription at Common Law .....                               | §129 |
| (c) Prescription under Doctrine of Lost Modern Grant.....          | §130 |
| (i) Origin of Doctrine.....  | §130 |
| (ii) Length of User From Which Lost Grant is Presumed.....         | §135 |
| (iii) When Presumption will be Made.....                           | §136 |
| (iv) Nature and Evidence of User .....                             | §140 |
| (v) Illegality or Impossibility.....                               | §143 |
| (d) Prescription under Statute .....                               | §146 |
| (i) Object of Statutory Prescription .....                         | §146 |
| (ii) Enjoyment for 20 Years or 40 Years.....                       | §154 |
| (iii) Persons Under Disability .....                               | §156 |
| (iv) Reversioners .....  | §157 |
| (v) Enjoyment Must be as of Right .....                            | §158 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (vi) Burden of Proof and Nature of User .....                                 | §170        |
| (vii) Effect of Unity of Possession of Dominant and<br>Servient Tenement..... | §178        |
| (viii) Necessity for Continuous Enjoyment.....                                | §185        |
| (ix) Interruption .....   | §191        |
| (x) Extent of Right Acquired by Prescription.....                             | §193        |
| (xi) Adverse Possession .....   | §200        |
| (xii) Acquisition of Easements by Prescription<br>Against the Crown .....     | §208        |
| 5. By Implication.....  | §210        |
| (a) Doctrine of Implied Grant.....  | §210        |
| (b) Distinction Between Implied Grant and Implied<br>Reservation .....        | §214        |
| (c) Easements Implied on Severance of Tenements.....                          | §216        |
| (d) Apparent Accommodations .....   | §224        |
| (e) Ways of Necessity .....   | §227        |
| (f) Reciprocal and Mutual Easements .....                                     | §237        |
| 6. Easements Under Statute .....  | §238        |
| (a) General .....   | §238        |
| (b) Alberta .....   | §246        |
| (c) British Columbia.....   | §248        |
| (d) Manitoba .....  | §254        |
| (e) Ontario .....   | §258        |
| (i) Land Titles Act .....   | §258        |
| (ii) Registry Act and Notice .....  | §261        |
| (f) Saskatchewan .....  | §276        |
| <b>III. Extinguishment and Loss of Easements .....</b>                        | <b>§279</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §279        |
| 2. Extinguishment by Release.....   | §283        |
| (a) Express and Presumed Release.....   | §283        |
| (b) Abandonment.....  | §289        |
| 3. Extinguishment by Unity of Ownership .....                                 | §306        |
| 4. Extinguishment by Statute.....   | §312        |
| 5. Duration.....  | §318        |

EASEMENTS

---

**IV. Disturbance of Easements** ..... §326

    1. Nuisance and Disturbance ..... §326

    2. What Constitutes Disturbance ..... §330

        (a) General ..... §330

        (b) Rights of Way ..... §331

        (c) Other easements..... §338

    3. Remedies ..... §342

        (a) Abatement ..... §342

        (b) Relief by Action ..... §344

            (i) General..... §344

            (ii) Damages ..... §347

            (iii) Injunction..... §358

  

**V. Particular Easements** ..... §365

    1. Right-of-way..... §365

        (a) Characteristics ..... §365

        (b) right-of-way by Implication ..... §368

        (c) right-of-way by Doctrine of Prescription ..... §372

        (d) Extent of Right to the User of a right-of-way..... §379

        (e) Interference with the Right-of-way..... §391

        (f) Location of Way ..... §396

        (g) Private and Public Rights of Way..... §402

        (h) Repair..... §404

        (i) Abandonment..... §406

        (j) Drainage Pipes..... §407

    2. Right to Air ..... §411

    3. Right to Light..... §415

    4. Rights in Respect of Water ..... §426

        (a) Watercourses ..... §426

        (b) Navigable Rivers ..... §429

        (c) Surface Water ..... §430

        (d) Riparian Rights..... §434

        (e) Right to Flood Lands ..... §441

        (f) Underground Water..... §443

    5. Rights of Support and Party Walls ..... §445

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (a) Easement of Support and Right of Support Distinguished ..... | §445 |
| (b) Adjoining Landowners .....                                   | §446 |
| (c) Support of Buildings .....                                   | §453 |
| (d) Party Walls .....  | §461 |
| 6. Other Easements .....   | §467 |
| (a) Overhanging Eaves .....                                      | §467 |
| (b) Emission of Sounds .....                                     | §468 |
| (c) Reservation of Minerals .....                                | §469 |
| (d) Right of Burial .....  | §470 |
| (e) Right to Create a Nuisance .....                             | §471 |
| (f) Right to Prospect or Privacy .....                           | §472 |
| (g) Jus Spatiandi .....  | §473 |
| (h) Right to Light .....   | §474 |
| (i) Right to Water from a Well .....                             | §475 |
| (j) Right to Make Repairs .....                                  | §476 |
| (k) Right to Ornament and Shade .....                            | §477 |
| (l) Right to Park Cars .....                                     | §478 |
| (m) Right to Swimming Pool .....                                 | §479 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Boundaries And Surveys; Condominums; Contracts; Crown; Deeds And Documents; Drainage; Estoppel; Highways And Streets; Injunctions; Limitation Of Actions; Mines And Minerals; Mortgages; Municipal Corporations; Nuisance; Perpetuities And Accumulations; Real Property; Sale Of Land; Telecommunications; Waters And Watercourses

# EDUCATION

prepared by  
Stephen D. Hillier, B.A., LL.B., Q.C.  
*of the Alberta Bar;*  
James T. Casey, B.Comm., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*  
*and*  
Kimberley E. Palichuk, B.A., M.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                 | §1  |
| <b>II. Constitutional Jurisdiction</b> ..... | §2  |
| <b>III. Ministry of Education</b> .....      | §3  |
| 1. Alberta .....                             | §3  |
| 2. British Columbia .....                    | §4  |
| 3. Manitoba.....                             | §5  |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                        | §6  |
| <b>IV. Public Schools</b> .....              | §7  |
| 1. School Districts and Divisions .....      | §7  |
| (a) Formation .....                          | §7  |
| (i) Alberta .....                            | §7  |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                  | §9  |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                          | §12 |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                       | §14 |
| (b) Alteration and Dissolution .....         | §16 |
| (i) Alberta .....                            | §16 |

## EDUCATION

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §17        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §18        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §21        |
| 2. School Premises .....  | §23        |
| (a) Choice of Site .....  | §23        |
| (b) School Buildings .....  | §26        |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §26        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §27        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §29        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §30        |
| (c) School Closings .....   | §31        |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §31        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §32        |
| (iii) Saskatchewan .....  | §36        |
| <b>V. Separate Schools.....</b>   | <b>§44</b> |
| 1. Constitutional Guarantees .....  | §44        |
| 2. Formation .....  | §50        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | §50        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | §52        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §53        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | §54        |
| 3. Assessment .....   | §56        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | §56        |
| (b) Saskatchewan.....   | §57        |
| <b>VI. Charter Schools.....</b>   | <b>§60</b> |
| <b>VII. Liability of School Boards, Administrators and Teachers .....</b> | <b>§64</b> |
| 1. Legislative Provisions .....   | §64        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | §64        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | §69        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §75        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | §82        |
| 2. Activities.....  | §92        |
| 3. Premises.....  | §94        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 4. Playground and Gymnasium.....              | §98         |
| 5. After School .....                         | §108        |
| 6. Conveying Pupils .....                     | §111        |
| 7. Miscellaneous .....                        | §114        |
| <b>VIII. Students.....</b>                    | <b>§121</b> |
| 1. General .....                              | §121        |
| (a) Legislation.....                          | §121        |
| (i) Alberta .....                             | §121        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                   | §124        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                           | §127        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                        | §129        |
| (b) Case Law .....                            | §132        |
| (i) Mandamus.....                             | §132        |
| (ii) Religion Issues .....                    | §134        |
| (iii) Health Regulations.....                 | §135        |
| (iv) School Board Powers .....                | §136        |
| 2. Compulsory Attendance.....                 | §139        |
| (a) Alberta.....                              | §139        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                    | §150        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                            | §155        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                         | §159        |
| 3. Transportation.....                        | §164        |
| (a) Alberta.....                              | §164        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                    | §165        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                            | §166        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                         | §169        |
| 4. Religious Instruction and Exercises .....  | §172        |
| (a) Alberta.....                              | §172        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                    | §173        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                            | §175        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                         | §178        |
| (e) Charter and Human Rights Guarantees ..... | §179        |
| 5. Corporal Punishment.....                   | §182        |
| (a) Criminal Code.....                        | §182        |
| (b) Provincial Legislation.....               | §188        |

## EDUCATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 6. Suspension and Expulsion .....                                | \$190        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | \$190        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                       | \$195        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | \$198        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | \$199        |
| (e) Miscellaneous.....   | \$204        |
| <b>IX. Teachers .....</b>  | <b>\$207</b> |
| 1. Qualifications and Teachers' Professional Organizations ..... | \$207        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | \$207        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                       | \$214        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | \$223        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | \$227        |
| (e) Charter and Human Rights Guarantees .....                    | \$237        |
| 2. Contracts and Collective Agreements .....                     | \$242        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | \$242        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                       | \$258        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | \$265        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | \$275        |
| (e) Cases from Other Provinces .....                             | \$286        |
| 3. Teachers' Duties and Responsibilities .....                   | \$290        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | \$290        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                       | \$291        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | \$292        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | \$293        |
| (e) Miscellaneous.....   | \$295        |
| 4. Termination of Employment and Discipline.....                 | \$296        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | \$296        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                       | \$312        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | \$325        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | \$336        |
| (e) Cases From Other Provinces.....                              | \$359        |
| <b>X. Parents .....</b>  | <b>\$376</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....   | \$376        |
| 2. British Columbia .....  | \$387        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Manitoba.....                                | §394        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                           | §395        |
| <b>XI. Special Education Programs .....</b>     | <b>§397</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....                                | §397        |
| 2. British Columbia .....                       | §401        |
| 3. Manitoba.....                                | §404        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                           | §405        |
| 5. Cases from other Provinces.....              | §408        |
| <b>XII. Minority Language Education.....</b>    | <b>§412</b> |
| 1. Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms..... | §412        |
| 2. Alberta .....                                | §413        |
| 3. British Columbia .....                       | §416        |
| 4. Manitoba.....                                | §418        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                           | §423        |
| <b>XIII. Colleges and Universities.....</b>     | <b>§426</b> |
| 1. Organization and Status.....                 | §426        |
| (a) General .....                               | §426        |
| (b) Office of the Visitor.....                  | §430        |
| (i) General.....                                | §430        |
| (ii) Alberta .....                              | §433        |
| (iii) British Columbia .....                    | §434        |
| (iv) Manitoba .....                             | §435        |
| (v) Saskatchewan.....                           | §436        |
| (c) Governors.....                              | §437        |
| (d) Officers .....                              | §439        |
| 2. Professors .....                             | §440        |
| (a) Dismissal and Discipline.....               | §440        |
| (b) Tenure .....                                | §449        |
| (c) Mandatory Retirement.....                   | §456        |
| (d) Miscellaneous .....                         | §460        |
| 3. Students .....                               | §462        |
| (a) Admission and Grades .....                  | §462        |
| (b) Student Fees and Loans .....                | §469        |



## EDUCATION

---

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Arbitration; Children; Constitutional Law; Courts; Criminal Law — Defences; Elections; Employment Law; Municipal and School Taxation; Negligence; Prerogative Remedies; Professions and Occupations; Religious Institutions; Wrongful Dismissal

# ELECTIONS

prepared by  
Joan E. Dunlop, B.A., LL.B.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Constitutional Considerations</b> . . . . .         | §1  |
| 1. General . . . . .                                      | §1  |
| 2. Qualifications for Voting . . . . .                    | §10 |
| 3. Eligibility of Candidates and Office Holders . . . . . | §17 |
| 4. Restrictions on Political Activity . . . . .           | §20 |
| 5. Duration of Legislative Bodies . . . . .               | §23 |
| 6. Electoral Boundaries . . . . .                         | §25 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Federal Elections</b> . . . . .                    | §28 |
| 1. Election Officials . . . . .                           | §28 |
| (a) Chief Electoral Officer . . . . .                     | §28 |
| (b) Returning Officer . . . . .                           | §33 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                     | §33 |
| (ii) Opening of Office . . . . .                          | §34 |
| (c) Deputy Returning Officers and Poll Clerks . . . . .   | §36 |
| (d) Liability of Election Officers . . . . .              | §40 |
| 2. Candidates . . . . .                                   | §41 |
| (a) Nominations . . . . .                                 | §41 |
| (b) Eligibility . . . . .                                 | §42 |
| (c) Disqualifications . . . . .                           | §43 |
| (d) Withdrawal of Candidate . . . . .                     | §46 |
| (e) Death of Candidate . . . . .                          | §47 |
| (f) Return by Acclamation . . . . .                       | §48 |
| (g) Agents of Candidates . . . . .                        | §49 |

## ELECTIONS

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (h) Expenses of Candidates . . . . .  | \$56  |
| (i) General . . . . .   | \$56  |
| (ii) Executory Contracts . . . . .  | \$58  |
| (iii) Deposits . . . . .  | \$59  |
| 3. Register of Electors . . . . .   | \$60  |
| (a) Preparation and Maintenance . . . . .   | \$60  |
| (b) Revision of List . . . . .  | \$70  |
| (c) Residence . . . . .   | \$75  |
| 4. Polling of Votes . . . . .   | \$76  |
| (a) Eligibility to Vote . . . . .   | \$76  |
| (b) Polling Stations . . . . .  | \$80  |
| (c) Voting by Persons Who Require Assistance . . . . .                              | \$81  |
| (d) Secrecy of Voting . . . . .   | \$82  |
| (e) Transfer Certificates . . . . .   | \$83  |
| (f) Advance Polls . . . . .   | \$85  |
| 5. Validity of Ballots . . . . .  | \$88  |
| (a) General . . . . .   | \$88  |
| (b) Ink or Pencil . . . . .   | \$90  |
| (c) Necessity for Cross . . . . .   | \$91  |
| (d) Position of Cross . . . . .   | \$92  |
| (e) Identifying Words or Marks . . . . .  | \$93  |
| (f) Ballots with Counterfoils Still Attached . . . . .                              | \$94  |
| (g) Ballots not Initialled by Deputy Returning Officer . . . . .                    | \$95  |
| (h) Ballots on which Deputy Returning Officer has put<br>Writing or Marks . . . . . | \$96  |
| (i) Torn Ballots . . . . .  | \$97  |
| (j) Mistake or Misconduct by Deputy Returning Officer . . . . .                     | \$98  |
| (k) Electronic Vote Counting Equipment . . . . .                                    | \$99  |
| 6. Recounts . . . . .   | \$100 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | \$100 |
| (b) Equality of Votes . . . . .   | \$106 |
| (c) Failure or Refusal of Judge to Comply with Act . . . . .                        | \$107 |
| 7. Complaints About Conduct of Election . . . . .                                   | \$109 |
| 8. Campaign Contributions and Expenditures . . . . .                                | \$110 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | \$110 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (b) Registration of Political Parties . . . . .                | §111 |
| (c) Registration of Agents . . . . .                           | §113 |
| (d) Contributions . . . . .                                    | §115 |
| (e) Limitation of Expenses . . . . .                           | §117 |
| (i) Registered Parties . . . . .                               | §117 |
| (ii) Candidates . . . . .                                      | §118 |
| (f) Auditor . . . . .  | §119 |
| (g) Reimbursement in Respect of Candidate's Expenses . . . . . | §122 |
| 9. Campaign Publicity . . . . .                                | §123 |
| (a) Charter Considerations . . . . .                           | §123 |
| (b) Political Broadcasts . . . . .                             | §124 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §124 |
| (ii) Free Broadcasting Time . . . . .                          | §126 |
| 10. Offences . . . . .   | §128 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §128 |
| (b) Corrupt Practices . . . . .                                | §129 |
| (i) Corrupt Inducement of Electors . . . . .                   | §129 |
| A. Bribery Generally . . . . .                                 | §129 |
| B. Donations and Subscriptions . . . . .                       | §135 |
| C. Treating . . . . .  | §136 |
| D. Paying Electors' Travelling Expenses . . . . .              | §137 |
| E. Payments to Election Workers . . . . .                      | §138 |
| (ii) Personation, and Voting Where not Qualified . . . . .     | §139 |
| (iii) Undue Influence or Intimidation . . . . .                | §140 |
| (iv) Disorderly Interference with Public Meetings . . . . .    | §142 |
| (v) Violations of Advertising Restrictions . . . . .           | §143 |
| (c) Other Offences . . . . .                                   | §144 |
| (d) Criminal Offences . . . . .                                | §155 |
| (e) Personal Guilt in Corrupt or Illegal Practices . . . . .   | §158 |
| (f) Consequences of Committing Offences . . . . .              | §160 |
| (i) Fines and Imprisonment . . . . .                           | §160 |
| (ii) Disqualification . . . . .                                | §161 |
| (iii) Void Election . . . . .                                  | §162 |
| 11. Controverted Elections . . . . .                           | §166 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §166 |
| (b) Status of Petitioner . . . . .                             | §169 |

## ELECTIONS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Jurisdiction of Court . . . . .                    | §171        |
| (d) Application . . . . .                              | §173        |
| (e) Service of Petition . . . . .                      | §179        |
| (f) Trial of Petition . . . . .                        | §184        |
| (g) Appeals . . . . .                                  | §198        |
| <b>III. Provincial Elections . . . . .</b>             | <b>§204</b> |
| 1. Commencement and Duration of Election . . . . .     | §204        |
| 2. Election Officers . . . . .                         | §209        |
| 3. Candidates . . . . .                                | §210        |
| (a) Nominations . . . . .                              | §210        |
| (b) Eligibility of Candidates . . . . .                | §212        |
| (c) Withdrawal or Death of Candidate . . . . .         | §218        |
| (d) Return by Acclamation . . . . .                    | §219        |
| (e) Agents of Candidates . . . . .                     | §220        |
| 4. Registration of Political Parties . . . . .         | §224        |
| 5. Voters Lists . . . . .                              | §225        |
| (a) Preparation of List . . . . .                      | §225        |
| (b) Who May Be Registered as an Elector . . . . .      | §230        |
| (c) Residence . . . . .                                | §232        |
| (d) Conclusiveness of Voters List . . . . .            | §235        |
| 6. Polling of Votes . . . . .                          | §237        |
| (a) Right to Vote . . . . .                            | §237        |
| (b) Voting by Persons Who Require Assistance . . . . . | §238        |
| (c) Voting by Proxy . . . . .                          | §240        |
| (d) Absentee Voting . . . . .                          | §241        |
| (e) Mobile Polls . . . . .                             | §243        |
| (f) Secrecy of Voting . . . . .                        | §244        |
| (g) Voting Pursuant to Transfer Certificates . . . . . | §245        |
| (h) Advance Polls . . . . .                            | §246        |
| (i) Casting Deciding Vote . . . . .                    | §247        |
| 7. Validity of Ballots . . . . .                       | §248        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                  | §248        |
| (b) Necessity for Cross . . . . .                      | §251        |
| (c) Position of Cross . . . . .                        | §252        |
| (d) Identifying Words or Marks . . . . .               | §253        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (e) Ballots with Counterfoils Still Attached . . . . .          | §255 |
| (f) Ballots Not Initialled by Deputy Returning Officer . . . .  | §256 |
| (g) Ballots Marked by Deputy Returning Officer . . . . .        | §257 |
| (h) Torn Ballots . . . . .                                      | §258 |
| (i) Mistake or Misconduct by Deputy Returning Officer . . . . . | §259 |
| 8. Recounts . . . . .   | §260 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §260 |
| (b) Failure of Judge to Discharge Duties . . . . .              | §268 |
| (c) Appeals . . . . .   | §269 |
| 9. Campaign Contributions and Expenditures . . . . .            | §270 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .   | §270 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                                  | §274 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .  | §276 |
| (d) Ontario . . . . .   | §279 |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                      | §282 |
| (f) Campaign Publicity — Charter Considerations . . . . .       | §283 |
| 10. Corrupt Practices and Offences . . . . .                    | §284 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §284 |
| (b) Bribery . . . . .   | §286 |
| (c) Treating . . . . .  | §287 |
| (d) Vote Buying . . . . .                                       | §288 |
| (e) Undue Influence or Intimidation . . . . .                   | §289 |
| (f) Paying Travelling Expenses . . . . .                        | §290 |
| (g) Personation or Suborning Personation . . . . .              | §291 |
| (h) Voting Without Right . . . . .                              | §292 |
| (i) Betting . . . . .   | §293 |
| (j) Ballot Tampering . . . . .                                  | §294 |
| (k) Refusing Voting Time to Employees . . . . .                 | §295 |
| (l) Interference with Posted Documents . . . . .                | §296 |
| (m) Improper Use of Proxy . . . . .                             | §297 |
| (n) Polling-day Offences . . . . .                              | §298 |
| (o) Personal Liability of Candidate . . . . .                   | §301 |
| (p) Criminal Offences . . . . .                                 | §302 |
| (q) Consequences of Corrupt Practices and Offences . . . . .    | §303 |
| (i) Penalties . . . . .   | §303 |

## ELECTIONS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (ii) Disqualifications and Void Elections . . . . .    | §304 |
| A. Alberta . . . . .                                   | §304 |
| B. British Columbia . . . . .                          | §307 |
| C. Manitoba . . . . .                                  | §311 |
| D. Ontario . . . . .                                   | §313 |
| E. Saskatchewan . . . . .                              | §314 |
| 11. Controverted Elections . . . . .                   | §318 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                  | §318 |
| (b) Jurisdiction of Courts . . . . .                   | §319 |
| (c) Rules of Practice . . . . .                        | §322 |
| (d) Commencement of Proceedings . . . . .              | §324 |
| (i) Status . . . . .                                   | §324 |
| (ii) Institution of Proceedings . . . . .              | §327 |
| (iii) Form and Sufficiency of Petition . . . . .       | §328 |
| (iv) Service of Petition . . . . .                     | §329 |
| (v) Preliminary Objections . . . . .                   | §333 |
| (vi) Particulars . . . . .                             | §336 |
| (vii) Amendment of Petition . . . . .                  | §339 |
| (viii) Withdrawal or Abandonment of Petition . . . . . | §341 |
| (ix) Substituting Petitioner or Plaintiff . . . . .    | §344 |
| (x) Abatement of Petition or Action . . . . .          | §345 |
| (e) Disclaimer . . . . .                               | §346 |
| (f) Trial of Petition or Action . . . . .              | §347 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                  | §347 |
| (ii) Time of Trial . . . . .                           | §348 |
| (iii) Adjournments . . . . .                           | §352 |
| (iv) Evidence . . . . .                                | §353 |
| A. General . . . . .                                   | §353 |
| B. Secrecy . . . . .                                   | §358 |
| C. Burden of Proof . . . . .                           | §359 |
| (g) Curative Provisions . . . . .                      | §362 |
| (h) Judgment . . . . .                                 | §364 |
| (i) Disposition and Judge's Report . . . . .           | §365 |
| (j) Appeals . . . . .                                  | §370 |
| (k) Costs . . . . .                                    | §376 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                  | §376 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(ii) Security for Costs .....\$379  
(l) Inquiry .....\$381  
12. Senatorial Selection .....\$382

**IV. Municipal Elections .....\$383**

1. General .....\$383  
2. Election Officers .....\$386  
3. Candidates .....\$390  
    (a) Eligibility .....\$390  
    (b) Nominations .....\$395  
    (c) Withdrawal or Death of Candidate .....\$400  
    (d) Election by Acclamation .....\$401  
    (e) Agents of Candidates .....\$403  
4. Electors .....\$404  
    (a) Eligibility .....\$404  
        (i) General .....\$404  
        (ii) Residence .....\$405  
    (b) Preparation of Voters List .....\$409  
    (c) Conclusiveness of Voters List .....\$412  
    (d) Voting by Proxy .....\$413  
5. Polling of Votes .....\$414  
    (a) Right to Vote .....\$414  
    (b) Voting by Persons Who Require Assistance .....\$419  
    (c) Secrecy of Voting .....\$420  
6. Validity of Ballots .....\$421  
    (a) General .....\$421  
    (b) Pencil or Ink .....\$424  
    (c) Necessity for Cross .....\$425  
    (d) Position of Cross .....\$426  
    (e) Ballots Not Initialled by Deputy Returning Officer . . . \$427  
    (f) Mistakes or Misconduct by Deputy Returning Officer . . . .  
        .....\$428  
7. Election Results and Recounts .....\$430  
    (a) Equality of Votes .....\$430  
    (b) Recounts .....\$431  
8. Campaign Contributions and Expenses .....\$445



## ELECTIONS

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 9. Offences                                   | §447 |
| (a) General                                   | §447 |
| (b) Bribery                                   | §450 |
| (c) Undue Influence or Intimidation           | §451 |
| (d) Paying Travelling Expenses                | §452 |
| (e) Personation                               | §453 |
| (f) Voting Without Right                      | §454 |
| (g) Other Offences                            | §455 |
| (h) Personal Liability of Candidate           | §456 |
| (i) Curative Provisions                       | §457 |
| (j) Consequences of Offences                  | §462 |
| (i) General                                   | §462 |
| (ii) Disqualification                         | §463 |
| 10. Controverted Elections                    | §468 |
| (a) General                                   | §468 |
| (b) Jurisdiction of Courts                    | §472 |
| (c) Rules of Practice                         | §473 |
| (d) Commencement of Proceedings               | §474 |
| (i) Status                                    | §474 |
| (ii) Form and Sufficiency of Petition         | §478 |
| (iii) Substitution of Petitioner or Plaintiff | §484 |
| (iv) Amendment of Petition                    | §485 |
| (v) Institution of Proceedings                | §486 |
| (vi) Abatement of Petition or Action          | §488 |
| (e) Disclaimer                                | §489 |
| (f) Trials                                    | §493 |
| (i) Evidence                                  | §493 |
| (ii) Burden of Proof                          | §495 |
| (iii) Secrecy                                 | §500 |
| (g) Disposition                               | §501 |
| (h) Costs                                     | §507 |
| (i) General                                   | §507 |
| (ii) Security for Costs                       | §508 |
| (i) Appeals                                   | §510 |
| 11. Senatorial Selection                      | §511 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**V. Referenda** .....\$512

**Index**

*Related titles:* Courts; Municipal Corporations; Parliament and Legislature

# EMPLOYMENT INSURANCE

prepared by  
Karen L. Rudner, B.A., B.C.L., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>I. Scope of Work .....</b>   | <b>§1</b>  |
| <b>II. Introduction .....</b>   | <b>§3</b>  |
| 1. Legislative History .....  | §3         |
| 2. Intent of Former Unemployment Insurance Act and Present<br>Employment Insurance Act..... | §8         |
| 3. Administration.....  | §10        |
| 4. Financing .....  | §14        |
| <b>III. Coverage .....</b>  | <b>§22</b> |
| 1. Insurable Employment .....   | §22        |
| 2. Absence from Canada.....   | §27        |
| 3. Special Classes .....  | §32        |
| (a) Introduction.....   | §32        |
| (b) Farmers .....   | §34        |
| (c) Fishers .....   | §43        |
| (d) Inmates.....  | §50        |
| (e) Professional Athletes .....   | §51        |
| (f) Teachers.....   | §52        |
| 4. Qualifications .....   | §67        |
| (a) Eligibility .....   | §67        |
| (b) Insurability of Employment .....  | §77        |
| (c) Commencement Date .....   | §84        |

EMPLOYMENT INSURANCE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (d) Interruption of Earnings .....   | §86         |
| (e) Earnings .....   | §92         |
| (i) General.....   | §92         |
| (ii) Interruption of Earnings.....   | §109        |
| (iii) Non-Pecuniary Income .....   | §113        |
| 5. Allocation of Earnings.....   | §119        |
| (a) General .....  | §119        |
| (b) Allocation of Earnings from Self-Employment .....  | §124        |
| (c) Commissions.....   | §125        |
| (d) By Reason of Separation or Layoff .....  | §126        |
| (e) Allocation of Moneys from Judgment, Settlement .....   | §138        |
| (f) Allocation of Sickness and Disability Payments.....  | §141        |
| (g) Allocation of Money in Lieu of Lay-Days, and Pay-<br>ments for Returning/Commencing Work ..... | §142        |
| <b>IV. Claims.....</b>   | <b>§146</b> |
| 1. Claim for Benefits.....   | §146        |
| (a) General .....  | §146        |
| (b) Time of Claim .....  | §151        |
| 2. Duration of Benefit Period .....  | §156        |
| 3. Waiting Period .....  | §161        |
| 4. Rate of Benefit.....  | §163        |
| (a) General .....  | §163        |
| (b) Family Supplement.....   | §164        |
| 5. Week of Unemployment Defined .....  | §165        |
| (a) General .....  | §165        |
| (b) Annual Contracts.....  | §171        |
| 6. Antedate.....   | §172        |
| (a) General .....  | §172        |
| (b) Belief that Still Employed .....   | §184        |
| (c) Expecting Indemnity.....   | §185        |
| (d) Expecting Work.....  | §186        |
| (e) Belief Documentation Required.....   | §188        |
| (f) Pregnancy, Incapacity, Illness .....   | §189        |
| (g) Family Obligations .....   | §190        |
| (h) Negligence .....   | §191        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(i) Misinformation from Commission ..... §193  
(j) Misinformation from Others ..... §195  
7. Cancellation of Benefit Period ..... §196  
8. Sickness Benefits ..... §197  
9. Maternity Benefits ..... §206  
10. Parental Benefits ..... §215  
11. Adoption ..... §218  
12. Compassionate Care Benefits ..... §221  
13. Jury Service ..... §223  
14. Entitlement ..... §224  
    (a) General ..... §224  
    (b) Availability ..... §225  
        (i) General ..... §225  
        (ii) Job Search ..... §230  
        (iii) Absence ..... §234  
        (iv) Restrictions on Geographical Area ..... §244  
        (v) Moving to Region of Limited Opportunities ..... §247  
        (vi) Moving to Region of Limited Opportunities to  
            Follow Spouse ..... §248  
        (vii) Wages ..... §249  
        (viii) Part-Time Work ..... §251  
        (ix) Unions ..... §256  
        (x) Awaiting Recall ..... §258  
        (xi) Restricted Shifts or Hours ..... §260  
        (xii) Domestic Circumstances ..... §262  
        (xiii) Attendance at Course of Instruction ..... §265  
            A. Authorized Courses ..... §265  
            B. Unauthorized Courses ..... §266  
        (xiv) Failure to Register and Report ..... §271  
        (xv) Self-Employment ..... §272  
        (xvi) Temporary Employment ..... §276  
        (xvii) Work permit ..... §280  
        (xviii) Jury duty ..... §281  
    (c) Capability ..... §282  
    (d) Evidence ..... §284  
    (e) Suitable Employment ..... §289

## EMPLOYMENT INSURANCE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 15. Disqualification and Disentitlement .....                   | §297 |
| 16. Labour Disputes .....                                       | §307 |
| (a) General .....   | §307 |
| (b) Loss of Employment .....                                    | §317 |
| (c) Place of Employment .....                                   | §324 |
| (d) Dispute .....   | §329 |
| (e) Parties to the Dispute .....                                | §334 |
| (f) Matters in Dispute.....                                     | §337 |
| (g) Stoppage of Work .....                                      | §340 |
| (h) Status of Worker .....                                      | §345 |
| (i) Participation .....   | §347 |
| (j) Financing .....   | §354 |
| (k) Direct Interest .....                                       | §356 |
| (l) Ratification of Labour Agreements .....                     | §362 |
| (m) Several Labour Agreements in Dispute .....                  | §363 |
| (n) Employment Governed by Legislation.....                     | §364 |
| (o) Contractual Clauses .....                                   | §365 |
| (p) Disputes over Union Affiliation .....                       | §366 |
| (q) Employment of Certain Workers.....                          | §367 |
| (r) Termination of Labour Dispute Disentitlement.....           | §368 |
| (s) Resumption of Operations.....                               | §369 |
| (t) Regularly Engaged Elsewhere in Insurable<br>Employment..... | §373 |
| (u) Settlement of Dispute.....                                  | §376 |
| (v) Discontinuance of Business .....                            | §377 |
| 17. Voluntary Leaving .....                                     | §378 |
| (a) General .....   | §378 |
| (b) Health and Safety .....                                     | §394 |
| (c) Early Retirement.....                                       | §396 |
| (d) Wages.....  | §398 |
| (e) Possibility of Bankruptcy of Employer .....                 | §401 |
| (f) Working Hours or Shifts .....                               | §402 |
| (g) Overtime .....  | §403 |
| (h) Working Conditions .....                                    | §404 |
| (i) Nature of Work .....  | §406 |
| (j) Change of Work.....   | §407 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (k) Discrimination .....  | §414 |
| (l) Harassment .....  | §415 |
| (m) Other Conditions .....  | §416 |
| (i) General.....  | §416 |
| (ii) Transportation.....  | §421 |
| (iii) Union Relations.....  | §422 |
| (iv) Transfer.....  | §423 |
| (v) Moral Objections .....  | §424 |
| (vi) Illegal Acts .....   | §425 |
| (vii) Living Expenses .....   | §426 |
| (viii) Employment Amenities.....  | §427 |
| (ix) Obligation to Accompany Spouse .....                                     | §428 |
| (x) Obligation to Care for Child or Member of Im-<br>mediate Family .....     | §432 |
| (xi) Disqualification Period.....   | §437 |
| 18. Misconduct .....  | §438 |
| (a) General .....   | §438 |
| (b) Criminal Offences Committed Outside Work Hours .....                      | §455 |
| (c) Absences .....  | §464 |
| (d) Carelessness, Negligence or Mistakes.....                                 | §466 |
| (e) Insubordination .....   | §467 |
| (f) Impairment — Alcoholic Beverages.....                                     | §473 |
| (g) Union Activities .....  | §475 |
| 19. Appeals .....   | §477 |
| (a) Boards of Referees .....  | §477 |
| (b) Umpires.....  | §508 |
| (c) Tax Court of Canada.....  | §529 |
| (d) Federal Court of Appeal .....   | §530 |
| 20. Overpayments and Offences.....  | §532 |
| (a) False or Misleading Statements .....                                      | §532 |
| (b) Overpayments .....  | §543 |
| (c) Violations .....  | §548 |
| 21. Repayment of Benefits .....   | §555 |
| <b>V. Agreements with Self-Employed Persons Relating to Benefits</b><br>..... | §556 |

## EMPLOYMENT INSURANCE

---

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Damages; Employment Law; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Insurance; Labour Law; Public Health and Welfare; Workers' Compensation; Wrongful Dismissal



# EMPLOYMENT LAW

prepared by  
Juliet S. Robin, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the British Columbia and Ontario Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Constitutional and Policy Considerations</b> . . . . . | § 1  |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                                    | § 1  |
| 2. Constitutional Competence . . . . .                       | § 2  |
| (a) General . . . . .  | § 2  |
| (b) Federal . . . . .  | § 7  |
| (c) Provincial . . . . .                                     | § 19 |
| (d) Litigated Subjects . . . . .                             | § 26 |
| (i) Aeronautics . . . . .                                    | § 26 |
| (ii) Atomic Energy . . . . .                                 | § 35 |
| (iii) Banking . . . . .                                      | § 37 |
| (iv) Broadcasting . . . . .                                  | § 40 |
| (v) Construction . . . . .                                   | § 45 |
| (vi) Customs Brokers . . . . .                               | § 48 |
| (vii) Defence . . . . .                                      | § 49 |
| (viii) Delivery by Manufacturer . . . . .                    | § 51 |
| (ix) Ferries . . . . .                                       | § 52 |
| (x) Fisheries . . . . .                                      | § 53 |
| (xi) Freight Forwarding . . . . .                            | § 55 |
| (xii) Governments and Crown Corporations . . . . .           | § 57 |
| (xiii) Grain Elevators and Mills . . . . .                   | § 59 |
| (xiv) Highways . . . . .                                     | § 61 |
| (xv) Indians . . . . .                                       | § 62 |
| (xvi) Insurance Companies . . . . .                          | § 64 |

EMPLOYMENT LAW

---

(xvii) Longshoring . . . . . §65  
(xviii) Office Workers . . . . . §66  
(xix) Parimutuels . . . . . §67  
(xx) Piloting of Ships . . . . . §68  
(xxi) Pipelines and Refineries . . . . . §69  
(xxii) Postal Service . . . . . §70  
(xxiii) Railways . . . . . §71  
(xxiv) Road Transportation . . . . . §75  
(xxv) Shipbuilding, Ship Repair and Chandlery . . . . . §79  
(xxvi) Shipping and Navigation . . . . . §82  
(xxvii) Telephones and Telecommunications . . . . . §86  
(xxviii) Trade Unions and Employers' Organizations . . . . . §90  
(xxix) Underwater Exploration . . . . . §91  
(xxx) Warehousing . . . . . §92  
(e) Objections to Jurisdiction . . . . . §93  
(f) Changing Constitutional Character . . . . . §98  
(g) Extraterritoriality . . . . . §101  
3. National Goals and International Commitments . . . . . §103  
    (a) Canada Labour Code . . . . . §103  
    (b) International Labour Organization . . . . . §106  
    (c) International Labour Code . . . . . §110  
    (d) Major Conventions and Treaties . . . . . §113  
    (e) Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms . . . . . §117  
  
**II. Common Law and Contracts of Employment . . . . . §122**  
    1. Common Law of Employment . . . . . §122  
        (a) Introduction . . . . . §122  
            (i) History . . . . . §122  
            (ii) Sources of Modern Employment Relationship . . . . . §127  
        (b) Nature of Employment Relationship . . . . . §129  
            (i) General . . . . . §129  
            (ii) Employee . . . . . §130  
                A. Definition . . . . . §130  
                B. Distinction From Other Relationships . . . . . §137  
                    1. Independent Contractor . . . . . §137

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 2. Dependent Contractor . . . . .                 | §142 |
| 3. Agent . . . . .                                | §144 |
| 4. Partner . . . . .                              | §147 |
| 5. Joint Venturer . . . . .                       | §149 |
| 6. Shareholder, Officer or Director . . . . .     | §150 |
| 7. Office-Holder . . . . .                        | §153 |
| 8. Apprentice . . . . .                           | §157 |
| (iii) Employer . . . . .                          | §158 |
| A. General . . . . .                              | §158 |
| B. Servant of One as Servant of Another . . . . . | §159 |
| C. Transfer to Related Corporation . . . . .      | §163 |
| D. Receivership . . . . .                         | §165 |
| E. Purchase or Sale of Corporation . . . . .      | §166 |
| (c) Elements of Employment Relationship . . . . . | §169 |
| (i) Duties of Employer to Employee . . . . .      | §169 |
| A. General . . . . .                              | §169 |
| B. Payment for Work . . . . .                     | §172 |
| 1. General . . . . .                              | §172 |
| 2. Profit-Sharing Contracts . . . . .             | §178 |
| 3. Priorities . . . . .                           | §181 |
| 4. Proceedings to Recover . . . . .               | §182 |
| C. Notice of Termination . . . . .                | §186 |
| D. Discipline . . . . .                           | §189 |
| E. Safety . . . . .                               | §191 |
| 1. General . . . . .                              | §191 |
| 2. Equipment . . . . .                            | §196 |
| 3. Exposure to Danger . . . . .                   | §197 |
| 4. Superintendence and Regulation . . . . .       | §200 |
| 5. Instructions and Warnings . . . . .            | §205 |
| F. Provision of Work . . . . .                    | §210 |
| G. Lay-off . . . . .                              | §212 |
| H. Expenses and Gratuities . . . . .              | §213 |
| I. Sick Pay . . . . .                             | §215 |
| J. Training . . . . .                             | §218 |
| K. Provision of References . . . . .              | §219 |
| (ii) Duties of Employee to Employer . . . . .     | §220 |

EMPLOYMENT LAW

---

A. General . . . . . §220  
B. Duty to Work . . . . . §222  
C. Obedience . . . . . §228  
D. Competence . . . . . §234  
E. Morality . . . . . §239  
F. Good Faith and Fidelity . . . . . §240  
    1. General . . . . . §240  
    2. Fiduciary Duties . . . . . §248  
    3. Use of Confidential Information . . . . . §257  
    4. Accounting of Employee Profits . . . . . §260  
G. Indemnification for Negligence . . . . . §261  
(d) Implications of Employment Relationship . . . . . §262  
    (i) Vicarious Liability of Employer . . . . . §262  
        A. Doctrine of Respondeat Superior . . . . . §262  
        B. Course of Employment . . . . . §264  
            1. General . . . . . §264  
            2. Motor Vehicles . . . . . §275  
            3. Other . . . . . §277  
        C. Vicarious Liability . . . . . §281  
            1. General . . . . . §281  
            2. Wilful Acts — General . . . . . §286  
            3. Wilful Acts — Assaults . . . . . §288  
            4. Negligence . . . . . §290  
            5. Other Acts . . . . . §297  
            6. Indemnification . . . . . §302  
        D. Independent Contractors . . . . . §303  
    (ii) Liability of Employer for Injury to Employees . . . §306  
        A. Liability . . . . . §306  
            1. General . . . . . §306  
            2. Doctrine in Rylands v. Fletcher . . . . . §313  
            3. Assaults by Third Parties . . . . . §314  
            4. Indemnification by Employer . . . . . §315  
            5. Liability of Temporary Employer . . . . . §316  
            6. Employer Breaching Statutory Duty . . . . . §317  
        B. Defences . . . . . §319  
            1. Workers' Compensation . . . . . §319

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 2. Violation of Rules of Employer . . . . .                         | §321 |
| 3. Employee's Contributory Negligence . . . . .                     | §323 |
| 4. Voluntary Assumption of Risk . . . . .                           | §326 |
| 5. Common Employment . . . . .                                      | §335 |
| (iii) Right to Earnings or Profits . . . . .                        | §343 |
| A. General . . . . .  | §343 |
| B. Inventions by Employees . . . . .                                | §345 |
| C. Ownership of Copyright . . . . .                                 | §346 |
| D. Testimonials . . . . .   | §348 |
| (iv) Quantum Meruit, Unjust Enrichment and<br>Restitution . . . . . | §349 |
| (v) Relationship to Third Parties . . . . .                         | §353 |
| A. Rights of Employer Against Third Parties . . . . .               | §353 |
| 1. Per Quod Servitium Amisit . . . . .                              | §353 |
| 2. Inducing Breach of Contract . . . . .                            | §359 |
| B. Liability of Employee to Third Parties . . . . .                 | §363 |
| (e) Termination and Dismissal . . . . .                             | §367 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §367 |
| (ii) By Agreement . . . . .   | §368 |
| A. General . . . . .  | §368 |
| B. Fixed Term . . . . .   | §371 |
| C. Retirement . . . . .   | §381 |
| (iii) Resignation . . . . .   | §386 |
| A. General . . . . .  | §386 |
| B. Employer's Remedies . . . . .                                    | §395 |
| (iv) Lay-Off . . . . .  | §398 |
| (v) Company Dissolved or in Receivership . . . . .                  | §404 |
| (vi) Probationary Employees . . . . .                               | §406 |
| (vii) Elimination of Position . . . . .                             | §413 |
| (viii) Repudiation or Breach of Contract . . . . .                  | §414 |
| (ix) Frustration of Contract . . . . .                              | §418 |
| (x) Constructive Dismissal . . . . .                                | §423 |
| A. General . . . . .  | §423 |
| B. Demotion . . . . .   | §428 |
| C. Change in Remuneration or Benefits . . . . .                     | §432 |
| D. Change in Responsibilities . . . . .                             | §438 |

EMPLOYMENT LAW

---

- E. Change in Location of Work . . . . . §442
- F. Other Factors . . . . . §445
- G. Condonation . . . . . §451
- H. Mitigation . . . . . §453
- I. Employee’s Remedies . . . . . §454
- (xi) Express Dismissal . . . . . §457
  - A. Notice or Pay in Lieu of Notice . . . . . §457
    - 1. General . . . . . §457
    - 2. Form of Notice . . . . . §464
    - 3. Reasonable Notice . . . . . §471
  - B. Summarily for Cause . . . . . §472
    - 1. General . . . . . §472
    - 2. Determining Cause . . . . . §476
    - 3. Condonation . . . . . §478
- 2. Written Employment Contracts . . . . . §479
  - (a) General . . . . . §479
  - (b) Duration of Contract . . . . . §483
  - (c) Voidable and Illegal Contracts . . . . . §485
  - (d) Validity of Contract . . . . . §486
  - (e) Termination . . . . . §495
  - (f) Remedies . . . . . §505
  - (g) Restrictive Covenants . . . . . §509
    - (i) General . . . . . §509
    - (ii) Justification for Restrictive Covenant . . . . . §511
    - (iii) Reasonableness of Restraint . . . . . §514
    - (iv) Consideration . . . . . §519
    - (v) Onus of Proof . . . . . §521
    - (vi) Severance of Contract . . . . . §522
    - (vii) Remedy for Breach . . . . . §524
    - (viii) Effect of Wrongful Dismissal . . . . . §526
    - (ix) Distinction Between Employer-Employee and  
Vendor-Purchaser Relationship . . . . . §528
- III. Legislative Regulation . . . . . §532**
  - 1. Introduction . . . . . §532
  - 2. Employment Standards . . . . . §535

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (a) General . . . . .                                     | §535 |
| (b) Application . . . . .                                 | §536 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                     | §536 |
| (ii) Definition of “Employee” . . . . .                   | §539 |
| (iii) Definition of “Employer” . . . . .                  | §542 |
| (c) Contracting Out of Act . . . . .                      | §544 |
| (d) Civil Remedies . . . . .                              | §546 |
| (e) Hiring . . . . .                                      | §548 |
| (i) Employment Agency . . . . .                           | §548 |
| (ii) Labour Contractor . . . . .                          | §557 |
| (iii) Canada Employment and Immigration Centres . . . . . | §559 |
| (iv) Advertising . . . . .                                | §561 |
| A. Misrepresentation . . . . .                            | §561 |
| B. Human Rights . . . . .                                 | §563 |
| C. Notice to Treat . . . . .                              | §566 |
| D. Negligent Misstatement . . . . .                       | §567 |
| (v) Legal Capacity to be Employer or Employee . . . . .   | §568 |
| A. Mental Incompetence . . . . .                          | §568 |
| B. Children . . . . .                                     | §573 |
| (vi) Minimum Age of Employment . . . . .                  | §577 |
| A. Federal . . . . .                                      | §577 |
| B. Alberta . . . . .                                      | §578 |
| C. British Columbia . . . . .                             | §584 |
| D. Manitoba . . . . .                                     | §588 |
| E. Saskatchewan . . . . .                                 | §594 |
| (vii) Testing, Interviewing and Investigating . . . . .   | §596 |
| (viii) Information Requirements on Hiring . . . . .       | §603 |
| (f) Conditions of Employment . . . . .                    | §605 |
| (i) Wages . . . . .                                       | §605 |
| A. General . . . . .                                      | §605 |
| B. Minimum Wage . . . . .                                 | §608 |
| C. Liability For Wages . . . . .                          | §613 |
| (ii) Hours of Work . . . . .                              | §615 |
| (iii) Overtime Pay . . . . .                              | §620 |
| (iv) Public Holidays . . . . .                            | §625 |
| (v) Vacation With Pay . . . . .                           | §631 |

EMPLOYMENT LAW

---

(g) Equal Pay . . . . . §637

(h) Leave from Employment . . . . . §643

    (i) Pregnancy Leave . . . . . §643

    (ii) Parental Leave . . . . . §646

    (iii) Adoption Leave . . . . . §649

    (iv) Bereavement Leave . . . . . §652

    (v) Family Responsibility Leave . . . . . §655

    (vi) Voting and Political Office . . . . . §656

    (vii) Jury Duty . . . . . §658

    (viii) Duties of Employer . . . . . §659

        A. Reinstatement . . . . . §659

        B. No Termination . . . . . §660

        C. Employment Deemed Continuous . . . . . §661

    (ix) Compassionate Care Leave . . . . . §662

    (x) Reservists' Leave . . . . . §663

(i) Employment Records . . . . . §664

(j) Sale, etc., of Business . . . . . §666

(k) Termination of Employment . . . . . §667

    (i) Notice . . . . . §667

    (ii) Lay-Off . . . . . §677

    (iii) Exceptions . . . . . §680

(l) Administration and Enforcement . . . . . §681

    (i) General . . . . . §681

    (ii) Complaint and Investigation . . . . . §682

        A. General . . . . . §682

            1. Alberta . . . . . §682

            2. British Columbia . . . . . §684

            3. Manitoba . . . . . §688

            4. Saskatchewan . . . . . §692

        B. Powers on Inspection, Inquiry or Investigation . . . . . §693

            1. Alberta . . . . . §693

            2. British Columbia . . . . . §696

            3. Manitoba . . . . . §698

            4. Saskatchewan . . . . . §701

    (iii) Settlement and Mediation . . . . . §703



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| A. Alberta . . . . .                         | §703 |
| B. British Columbia . . . . .                | §706 |
| C. Manitoba . . . . .                        | §708 |
| D. Saskatchewan . . . . .                    | §709 |
| (iv) Orders and Determinations . . . . .     | §711 |
| A. Alberta . . . . .                         | §711 |
| B. British Columbia . . . . .                | §723 |
| C. Manitoba . . . . .                        | §730 |
| D. Saskatchewan . . . . .                    | §734 |
| (v) Appeal . . . . .                         | §736 |
| A. General . . . . .                         | §736 |
| 1. Alberta . . . . .                         | §736 |
| 2. British Columbia . . . . .                | §741 |
| 3. Manitoba . . . . .                        | §743 |
| 4. Saskatchewan . . . . .                    | §745 |
| B. Powers and Procedure . . . . .            | §748 |
| 1. Alberta . . . . .                         | §748 |
| 2. British Columbia . . . . .                | §755 |
| 3. Manitoba . . . . .                        | §763 |
| 4. Saskatchewan . . . . .                    | §768 |
| (vi) Enforcement and Wage Recovery . . . . . | §773 |
| A. General . . . . .                         | §773 |
| 1. Alberta . . . . .                         | §773 |
| 2. British Columbia . . . . .                | §776 |
| 3. Manitoba . . . . .                        | §779 |
| 4. Saskatchewan . . . . .                    | §782 |
| B. Third-party Demand . . . . .              | §785 |
| 1. Alberta . . . . .                         | §785 |
| 2. British Columbia . . . . .                | §789 |
| 3. Manitoba . . . . .                        | §792 |
| 4. Saskatchewan . . . . .                    | §795 |
| (m) Offences and Penalties . . . . .         | §799 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agency; Arbitration; Associations And Not-For-Profit Corporations; Business Corporations; Children; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Damages; Education; Employment Insurance; Evi-

## EMPLOYMENT LAW

---

dence; Hotels; Human Rights; Income Tax; Injunctions; Labour Law; Municipal Corporations; Parties; Partnership; Patents; Pensions And Retirement Benefits; Professions And Occupations; Public Authorities And Public Officers; Railways; Religious Institutions; Restitution; Shipping; Torts; Trade And Commerce And Foreign Investment In Canada; Workers' Compensation; Wrongful Dismissal.

# ENVIRONMENTAL LAW

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. Liability for Environmental Damage</b> .....                                    | \$1  |
| 1. Common Law.....  | \$1  |
| (a) Nuisance.....   | \$1  |
| (i) General.....  | \$1  |
| (ii) Public Nuisance.....   | \$6  |
| (b) Strict Liability.....   | \$9  |
| (c) Riparian Rights.....  | \$10 |
| (d) Trespass.....   | \$13 |
| (e) Negligence.....   | \$14 |
| (f) Extension of Limitation Period for Civil Actions.....                             | \$15 |
| 2. Prosecutions Under Environmental Statutes.....                                     | \$16 |
| <b>II. Legislation of General Application</b> .....                                   | \$18 |
| 1. Canada.....  | \$18 |
| (a) General.....  | \$18 |
| (b) Canadian Environmental Protection Act.....  | \$21 |
| (i) Regulation of Toxic Substances.....   | \$21 |
| (ii) Environmental Protection Action.....   | \$28 |
| (iii) Pollution Prevention Plans.....   | \$36 |
| (iv) Animate Products of Biotechnology.....   | \$38 |
| (v) Protection of the Marine Environment from<br>Land-Based Sources of Pollution..... | \$40 |
| (vi) Offences and Penalties.....  | \$41 |

ENVIRONMENTAL LAW

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (vii) Inspections, Seizure and Forfeiture .....  | \$43 |
| (c) Canadian Environmental Assessment Act .....  | \$44 |
| (i) General .....  | \$44 |
| (ii) Timing of Assessment .....  | \$45 |
| (iii) Environmental Assessment Process .....   | \$46 |
| (iv) General Duties for Assessment — Panel Re-<br>views and Screening .....                        | \$47 |
| (v) Orders and Injunctions .....   | \$54 |
| (vi) Agreements and Arrangements .....   | \$55 |
| (vii) Public Access to Information .....   | \$56 |
| (viii) Minister’s Powers .....   | \$57 |
| (ix) Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency .....  | \$58 |
| 2. Alberta .....   | \$59 |
| (a) General .....  | \$59 |
| (b) Emergency Powers .....   | \$62 |
| (c) Enforcement Orders .....   | \$63 |
| (d) Approvals and Certificates under Environmental Pro-<br>tection and Enhancement Act .....       | \$65 |
| (e) Orders under Environmental Protection and Enhance-<br>ment Act .....                           | \$70 |
| (f) Appeals under Environmental Protection and En-<br>hancement Act .....                          | \$74 |
| (g) Environmental Assessment Process under Environ-<br>mental Protection and Enhancement Act ..... | \$84 |
| (h) Investigations and Inspections under Environmental<br>Protection Enhancement Act .....         | \$85 |
| (i) Limitation of Actions under Environmental Protec-<br>tion and Enhancement Act .....            | \$86 |
| (j) Disclosure of Information under Environmental Pro-<br>tection and Enhancement Act .....        | \$87 |
| (k) Injunctions, Offences and Penalties .....  | \$88 |
| 3. British Columbia .....  | \$89 |
| (a) General .....  | \$89 |
| (i) Powers of Minister .....   | \$89 |
| (ii) Environmental Appeal Board .....  | \$90 |
| (iii) Environmental Assessment and Inquiries .....   | \$91 |
| A. Environmental Management Act .....  | \$91 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| B. Environmental Assessment Act .....                            | §93  |
| (iv) Environmental Protection Orders .....                       | §94  |
| (v) Environmental Management Plans .....                         | §95  |
| (vi) Emergency Measures .....                                    | §96  |
| (vii) Offences and Penalties.....                                | §97  |
| (viii) Powers of Entry and Seizure.....                          | §99  |
| (ix) Protection of Authorities.....                              | §100 |
| (x) Certificates as Evidence .....                               | §101 |
| (b) Waste Management Act.....                                    | §102 |
| (i) Prohibitions.....  | §102 |
| (ii) Permits .....   | §103 |
| (iii) Storage and Disposal of Waste .....                        | §109 |
| (iv) Transportation of Waste.....                                | §110 |
| (v) Spill Prevention and Reporting.....                          | §111 |
| (vi) Remediation Orders.....                                     | §115 |
| (vii) Appeals .....  | §117 |
| (viii) Enforcement .....   | §119 |
| (ix) Offences and Penalties.....                                 | §124 |
| (c) Environment and Land Use Act .....                           | §127 |
| (d) Sustainable Environment Fund Act.....                        | §128 |
| (e) Energy Efficiency Act.....                                   | §129 |
| 4. Manitoba.....   | §130 |
| (a) Environment Act.....   | §130 |
| (i) Administration of Legislation .....                          | §130 |
| (ii) Powers of Environment Officers.....                         | §137 |
| (iii) Approvals of Proposals and Prescription of<br>Limits ..... | §139 |
| (iv) Appeals .....   | §140 |
| (v) Abatement Projects.....                                      | §141 |
| (vi) Limitation of Undertakings.....                             | §142 |
| (vii) Sustainable Development Innovations Fund.....              | §143 |
| (viii) Offences and Penalties.....                               | §144 |
| (b) Public Health Act.....                                       | §147 |
| (c) Workplace Safety and Health Act.....                         | §150 |
| (d) Transboundary Pollution Reciprocal Access Act.....           | §151 |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....  | §152 |

## ENVIRONMENTAL LAW

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) Environmental Management and Protection Act .....                      | §152        |
| (i) General.....   | §152        |
| (ii) Environmental Spills.....   | §153        |
| (iii) Enforcement Powers and Liability.....                                | §156        |
| (b) Environmental Assessment Act .....                                     | §161        |
| (i) General.....   | §161        |
| (ii) Ministerial Approvals.....  | §163        |
| (iii) Offences and Penalties.....  | §169        |
| (iv) Civil Liability .....   | §170        |
| (c) Natural Resources Act.....   | §171        |
| <b>III. Regulation of Specific Undertakings.....</b>                       | <b>§172</b> |
| 1. Nuisances and Nuisance Trades.....                                      | §172        |
| 2. Mining and Mineral Industries .....                                     | §175        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §175        |
| (b) British Columbia .....   | §177        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §183        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | §188        |
| 3. Oil and Gas Industries .....  | §190        |
| (a) Federal Legislation .....  | §190        |
| (b) Alberta .....  | §195        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §201        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | §203        |
| 4. Hydro and Electric Power .....  | §204        |
| 5. Shipping.....   | §207        |
| (a) General.....   | §207        |
| (b) Pollution Prevention Officers and Pollution Response<br>Officers ..... | §208        |
| (c) Detention.....   | §209        |
| (d) Response Measures .....  | §210        |
| (e) Offences .....   | §211        |
| (f) Prosecutions.....  | §212        |
| <b>IV. Air Pollution.....</b>  | <b>§216</b> |
| 1. Federal Legislation.....  | §216        |
| (a) Canadian Environmental Protection Act .....                            | §216        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (b) Regulation of Specific Sources.....         | \$219        |
| 2. Alberta .....                                | \$221        |
| (a) General Prohibition.....                    | \$221        |
| (b) Ozone-depleting Substances.....             | \$222        |
| 3. British Columbia.....                        | \$223        |
| 4. Manitoba.....                                | \$225        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                           | \$228        |
| (a) Clean Air Legislation .....                 | \$228        |
| (i) Regulation and Prohibition .....            | \$228        |
| (ii) Permits .....                              | \$232        |
| (iii) Control Orders.....                       | \$234        |
| (iv) Offences and Penalties.....                | \$235        |
| (b) Halocarbons .....                           | \$237        |
| <b>V. Noise and Vibration.....</b>              | <b>\$240</b> |
| 1. General .....                                | \$240        |
| 2. Specific Sources of Noises.....              | \$242        |
| (a) Aircraft .....                              | \$242        |
| (b) Motor Vehicles.....                         | \$243        |
| <b>VI. Water Pollution.....</b>                 | <b>\$244</b> |
| 1. Federal Legislation.....                     | \$244        |
| (a) Fisheries Act .....                         | \$244        |
| (i) Depositing Deleterious Substances.....      | \$244        |
| (ii) Civil Liability .....                      | \$253        |
| (iii) Regulation of Undertakings.....           | \$255        |
| (iv) Unusual Occurrences.....                   | \$257        |
| (v) Powers of Fisheries Officers.....           | \$259        |
| (b) Navigable Waters Protection Act .....       | \$260        |
| (c) Migratory Birds Convention Act .....        | \$263        |
| (d) Canadian Environmental Protection Act ..... | \$264        |
| (i) Prohibition .....                           | \$264        |
| (ii) Disposal Permits.....                      | \$266        |
| (iii) Detention, Seizure and Forfeiture .....   | \$267        |
| (iv) Civil Liability .....                      | \$268        |

ENVIRONMENTAL LAW

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (v) International Water Pollution.....            | \$269        |
| (e) Canada Water Act .....                        | \$272        |
| (f) International Boundary Waters Treaty Act..... | \$273        |
| (g) Criminal Code .....                           | \$275        |
| (h) Canada National Parks Act.....                | \$277        |
| (i) Northwest Territories Waters Act .....        | \$279        |
| 2. Alberta - General Prohibitions .....           | \$280        |
| 3. British Columbia.....                          | \$282        |
| 4. Manitoba.....                                  | \$284        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                             | \$289        |
| (a) General.....                                  | \$289        |
| (b) Ground Water .....                            | \$293        |
| <b>VII. Waste Management.....</b>                 | <b>\$296</b> |
| 1. Sewage.....                                    | \$296        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                  | \$296        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                        | \$298        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                | \$304        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                             | \$306        |
| (i) Sewage Works.....                             | \$306        |
| (ii) Effluent Disposal.....                       | \$307        |
| (iii) Shoreland Development Areas .....           | \$308        |
| (iv) Municipal Sewage Systems .....               | \$309        |
| 2. Waste Disposal Sites.....                      | \$310        |
| (a) British Columbia.....                         | \$310        |
| (b) Manitoba .....                                | \$313        |
| (c) Saskatchewan.....                             | \$316        |
| 3. Solid Waste Management.....                    | \$317        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                  | \$317        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                        | \$323        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                | \$330        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                             | \$334        |
| 4. Control of Movement of Hazardous Waste.....    | \$336        |
| <b>VIII. Hazardous Goods.....</b>                 | <b>\$339</b> |



## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 1. Federal Legislation.....                                     | §339 |
| (a) Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act.....                  | §339 |
| (i) Application .....   | §339 |
| (ii) Prohibitions.....  | §340 |
| (iii) Penalties.....  | §341 |
| (iv) Defences .....   | §344 |
| (v) Inspectors .....  | §345 |
| (vi) Other Duties Under the Act.....                            | §346 |
| (vii) Powers of Minister.....                                   | §350 |
| (b) Hazardous Products Act.....                                 | §351 |
| (i) Prohibitions.....   | §351 |
| (ii) Disclosure of Information.....                             | §352 |
| (iii) Inspectors and Analysts .....                             | §353 |
| (iv) Penalties.....   | §354 |
| (c) Hazardous Materials Information Review Act.....             | §355 |
| (d) Canada Labour Code.....                                     | §356 |
| 2. Alberta .....  | §357 |
| (a) Dangerous Goods Transportation and Handling Act....         | §357 |
| (i) Prohibitions.....   | §357 |
| (ii) Offences.....  | §359 |
| (iii) Inspectors.....   | §362 |
| (iv) Remedial Measures .....                                    | §363 |
| (v) Regulations .....   | §364 |
| (b) Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act .....          | §365 |
| (c) Occupational Health and Safety Act .....                    | §366 |
| 3. British Columbia.....  | §367 |
| (a) Transport of Dangerous Goods Act.....                       | §367 |
| (i) Prohibitions.....   | §367 |
| (ii) Inspectors.....  | §368 |
| (iii) Offences.....   | §370 |
| (iv) Regulations and Bylaws.....                                | §371 |
| (b) Hazardous Materials in the Workplace .....                  | §372 |
| 4. Manitoba.....  | §373 |
| (a) The Dangerous Goods Handling and Transportation<br>Act..... | §373 |
| (i) Prohibitions .....  | §373 |

ENVIRONMENTAL LAW

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (ii) Registration.....   | §374        |
| (iii) Applications.....  | §375        |
| (iv) Manifests.....  | §376        |
| (v) Director’s Powers.....   | §377        |
| (vi) Inspectors.....   | §378        |
| (vii) Appeals.....   | §380        |
| (viii) Environmental Accidents.....  | §381        |
| (ix) Offences and Penalties.....   | §382        |
| (x) Regulations.....   | §383        |
| 5. Saskatchewan.....   | §384        |
| (a) Dangerous Goods Transportation Act.....                                | §384        |
| (i) Prohibitions.....  | §384        |
| (ii) Permits.....  | §385        |
| (iii) Emergency Plans.....   | §386        |
| (iv) Inspectors.....   | §387        |
| (v) Reporting.....   | §389        |
| (vi) Offences and Penalties.....   | §390        |
| (vii) Regulations.....   | §391        |
| <b>IX. Plants and Pests.....</b>   | <b>§392</b> |
| 1. Agricultural Chemicals.....   | §392        |
| (a) Federal Legislation.....   | §392        |
| (i) Pest Control Products Act.....   | §392        |
| (ii) Pesticide Residue Compensation Act.....                               | §401        |
| (b) Alberta.....   | §403        |
| (c) British Columbia.....  | §405        |
| (i) General.....   | §405        |
| (ii) Licenses.....   | §407        |
| (iii) Certificates.....  | §408        |
| (iv) Permits.....  | §409        |
| (v) Pest Management Plans, Pesticide Use Notices<br>and Confirmations..... | §410        |
| (vi) Administrator.....  | §411        |
| (vii) Inspectors.....  | §414        |
| (viii) Seizure.....  | §415        |
| (ix) Appeals.....  | §416        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (x) Municipalities .....  | \$418        |
| (xi) Offences .....   | \$419        |
| (xii) Use, Containment, Transport, Storage, Sale,<br>Record Keeping and Reporting ..... | \$423        |
| (xiii) Application .....  | \$424        |
| (d) Manitoba .....  | \$425        |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....  | \$430        |
| 2. Plant Protection .....   | \$435        |
| 3. Noxious Weeds .....  | \$442        |
| <b>X. Land Conservation and Reclamation .....</b>                                       | <b>\$444</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....  | \$444        |
| (a) Soil Conservation Act .....   | \$444        |
| (b) Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act .....                                  | \$451        |
| (c) Public Lands Act .....  | \$452        |
| 2. British Columbia .....   | \$453        |
| 3. Manitoba .....   | \$456        |
| <b>XI. Land Planning for Environmental Protection .....</b>                             | <b>\$459</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....  | \$459        |
| 2. British Columbia .....   | \$460        |
| 3. Manitoba .....   | \$461        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....   | \$463        |
| <b>XII. Special Areas Legislation .....</b>   | <b>\$464</b> |
| 1. National Parks .....   | \$464        |
| 2. Forests .....  | \$468        |
| 3. Alberta .....  | \$469        |
| 4. British Columbia .....   | \$479        |
| (a) Ecological Reserves .....   | \$479        |
| (b) Greenbelt Land .....  | \$481        |
| (c) Provincial Forests .....  | \$485        |
| (d) Provincial Parks .....  | \$488        |
| 5. Manitoba .....   | \$495        |
| 6. Saskatchewan .....   | \$505        |

**XIII. Weather Modification** .....§512

**Index**

*Related titles:* Aviation; Fish and Wildlife; Municipal Corporations; Negligence; Nuisance; Timber; Trespass; War and Emergency; Waters and Watercourses

# EQUITY

prepared by  
Elizabeth Portman, *B.A., LL.B.*  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....  | §1  |
| 1. Equitable Jurisdiction of Courts .....  | §1  |
| (a) General .....  | §1  |
| (b) Declaratory Orders .....   | §3  |
| (c) Relief Against Penalties .....   | §4  |
| (d) Damages Instead of Injunction or Specific Performance . . . .<br>.....       | §6  |
| (e) Vesting Orders .....   | §8  |
| (f) Bill of Discovery .....  | §9  |
| (g) Rectification Orders .....   | §10 |
| 2. Rules of Equity to Prevail Over Common Law Rules .....                        | §11 |
| 3. Relief on Equitable Grounds .....   | §13 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Doctrines of Equity</b> .....   | §16 |
| 1. General .....   | §16 |
| 2. Subrogation .....   | §17 |
| 3. Equitable Conversion .....  | §21 |
| 4. Contribution .....  | §25 |
| 5. Election .....  | §27 |
| 6. Waiver .....  | §31 |
| (a) Waiver Defined .....   | §31 |
| (b) Waiver and Election .....  | §34 |
| (c) Manner of Exercising Waiver Where Vested Right or<br>Interest Existing ..... | §36 |

EQUITY

---

(d) Statutory Benefits . . . . . §37

7. Satisfaction and Ademption . . . . . §38

8. Marshalling of Assets . . . . . §39

9. Relief Against Penalties and Forfeitures . . . . . §46

    (a) General . . . . . §46

    (b) Reservation of Existing Right, Distinguished from  
        Penalty . . . . . §51

10. Constructive Notice . . . . . §52

11. Priorities Between Equitable Claims . . . . . §61

12. Laches and Acquiescence . . . . . §64

13. Unconscionable Transactions or Unjust Enrichment . . . . . §80

**III. Maxims of Equity . . . . . §88**

    1. Looking On That as Done Which Ought to Be Done . . . . . §88

    2. Those Who Come Into Equity Must Come With Clean Hands . . . .  
        . . . . . §93

    3. Those Seeking Equity Must Do Equity . . . . . §97

    4. Equity Will Not Suffer a Wrong to Be Without a Remedy . . . . .  
        . . . . . §99

    5. Equity Looks to the Intent Rather Than to the Form . . . . . §100

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Agency; Building Contracts; Business Corporations; Contracts; Costs; Debtor and Creditor; Deeds and Documents; Estoppel; Executors and Administrators; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Insurance; Landlord and Tenant; Mines and Minerals; Mortgages; Negligence; Parties; Partnership; Real Property; Restitution; Sale of Land; Trusts; Wills

# ESTOPPEL

prepared by  
Paul H. Starkman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. General — Terminology</b> . . . . .  | §1  |
| <b>II. Estoppel in Pais (by Conduct or Representation)</b> . . . . .                                 | §4  |
| 1. Definition . . . . .  | §4  |
| 2. Estoppel at Common Law . . . . .  | §5  |
| 3. Estoppel in Equity . . . . .  | §6  |
| 4. Nature of Estoppel . . . . .  | §8  |
| 5. Application of Doctrine . . . . .   | §14 |
| 6. Elements of Estoppel . . . . .  | §15 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §15 |
| (b) Representation Must Be of Existing Fact . . . . .  | §16 |
| (c) Making Representation Good . . . . .   | §18 |
| (d) Representation Need Not Be Untrue to Knowledge of<br>Person Estopped . . . . .                   | §19 |
| (e) Loss Complained of Need Not Be Necessary and Direct<br>Result of Conduct Complained of . . . . . | §20 |
| (f) Estoppel Must Be Precise in Its Nature . . . . .   | §21 |
| (g) Ignorance of Representee of True Situation . . . . .   | §22 |
| 7. Operation of Estoppel . . . . .   | §24 |
| 8. Party Alleging Estoppel Must Have Been Prejudiced . . . . .                                       | §25 |
| 9. Intention . . . . .   | §29 |
| 10. To Whom Representation Made . . . . .  | §31 |
| (a) Mutuality . . . . .  | §31 |
| (b) Parties and Persons Claiming Through Them . . . . .  | §33 |
| 11. Estoppel by Agreement . . . . .  | §34 |

## ESTOPPEL

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 12. Estoppel by Convention . . . . .   | §35  |
| 13. Representation by Conduct . . . . .  | §38  |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §38  |
| (b) Inaction . . . . .   | §41  |
| (c) Silence . . . . .  | §43  |
| (d) Permitting Another to Expend Money for Own Benefit . . . . .               | §47  |
| (e) Encouragement . . . . .  | §50  |
| (f) Non-assertion of Rights to Prejudice of Another . . . . .                  | §53  |
| (g) Negligence . . . . .   | §54  |
| (h) Delay . . . . .  | §57  |
| (i) Holding Out . . . . .  | §60  |
| (i) Clothing Third Person With Apparent Ownership of Property . . . . .        | §60  |
| (ii) Misrepresentation of Status or Occupation . . . . .                       | §65  |
| 14. Deprivation of Legal as Compared with Equitable Rights . . . . .           | §66  |
| (a) Knowledge of Rights . . . . .  | §66  |
| (b) Acquiescence . . . . .   | §68  |
| (c) Laches . . . . .   | §72  |
| (d) Waiver . . . . .   | §77  |
| 15. Inconsistency . . . . .  | §78  |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §78  |
| (b) Approbation and Reprobation . . . . .                                      | §80  |
| (c) Estoppel by Election . . . . .   | §82  |
| 16. Persons to Whom Doctrine Applies . . . . .                                 | §87  |
| (a) Crown . . . . .  | §87  |
| (b) Municipal Corporations . . . . .   | §88  |
| (c) Husband and Wife . . . . .   | §94  |
| (d) Infants . . . . .  | §95  |
| 17. The Doctrine in Relation to Public Rights and Acts of Parliament . . . . . | §98  |
| 18. Proceedings Under Penal Statutes . . . . .                                 | §102 |
| 19. Pleading . . . . .   | §103 |
| (a) Estoppel by Pleading . . . . .   | §103 |
| (b) Estoppel Must Be Pleaded . . . . .   | §104 |
| (c) Amendment of Pleading . . . . .  | §107 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 20. Estoppel by Statements of Counsel in Court . . . . .    | §108        |
| 21. Onus of Proof . . . . .                                 | §109        |
| 22. Admissions . . . . .                                    | §110        |
| 23. Agency . . . . .  | §111        |
| (a) Ostensible Authority; Estoppel of Principal . . . . .   | §111        |
| (b) Undisclosed Principal . . . . .                         | §112        |
| (c) Estoppel by Ratification . . . . .                      | §113        |
| (d) Absence of Authority . . . . .                          | §114        |
| (e) Estoppel of Third Person as Against Principal . . . . . | §115        |
| 24. Arbitration . . . . .                                   | §116        |
| 25. Bailment . . . . .                                      | §117        |
| 26. Banker and Customer . . . . .                           | §118        |
| 27. Bills of Exchange and Negotiable Instruments . . . . .  | §119        |
| 28. Building Schemes, Plans and Boundaries . . . . .        | §122        |
| 29. Companies . . . . .                                     | §125        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                       | §125        |
| (b) Books and Records . . . . .                             | §127        |
| (c) Debentures . . . . .                                    | §128        |
| 30. Estoppel in Relation to Contract . . . . .              | §129        |
| 31. Conversion . . . . .                                    | §133        |
| 32. Insurance . . . . .                                     | §134        |
| 33. Landlord and Tenant . . . . .                           | §136        |
| 34. Partnership . . . . .                                   | §143        |
| 35. Patents . . . . .                                       | §145        |
| 36. Receipts and Payments . . . . .                         | §146        |
| 37. Sale of Land . . . . .                                  | §149        |
| 38. Trespass . . . . .                                      | §150        |
| <b>III. Equitable or Promissory Estoppel . . . . .</b>      | <b>§154</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §154        |
| 2. Proprietary Estoppel . . . . .                           | §155        |
| 3. Promissory Estoppel . . . . .                            | §156        |
| <b>IV. Estoppel by Deed . . . . .</b>                       | <b>§163</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §163        |
| 2. Forged Documents . . . . .                               | §167        |

ESTOPPEL

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 3. Grantor and Grantee . . . . .                                 | §168        |
| 4. Recitals . . . . .  | §169        |
| 5. Parties and Privies . . . . .                                 | §172        |
| 6. Collateral Matters . . . . .                                  | §174        |
| 7. Receipts . . . . .  | §176        |
| 8. After-Acquired Title (Estate by Estoppel) . . . . .           | §178        |
| 9. Estoppel Against Estoppel . . . . .                           | §181        |
| 10. Infants . . . . .  | §182        |
| 11. Fraud, Misrepresentation, Duress . . . . .                   | §183        |
| <b>V. Estoppel by Matter of Record or Res Judicata . . . . .</b> | <b>§187</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §187        |
| 2. Extent of Principle . . . . .                                 | §188        |
| 3. Rule of Evidence . . . . .                                    | §195        |
| 4. Foundation of Doctrine of Res Judicata . . . . .              | §196        |
| 5. Identity of Issue . . . . .                                   | §198        |
| 6. Cause of Action . . . . .                                     | §200        |
| 7. Necessity for Adjudication on the Merits . . . . .            | §206        |
| 8. Effect of Oath . . . . .                                      | §207        |
| 9. Conclusiveness of Judgment . . . . .                          | §208        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §208        |
| (b) Duration of Res Judicata . . . . .                           | §210        |
| (c) Habeas Corpus . . . . .                                      | §211        |
| (d) Mandamus . . . . .   | §212        |
| (e) Action for Specific Performance . . . . .                    | §213        |
| (f) Unappealed Judgment . . . . .                                | §214        |
| (g) New Trial . . . . .  | §215        |
| 10. Jurisdiction . . . . .                                       | §216        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §216        |
| (b) Award Made Without Jurisdiction . . . . .                    | §217        |
| (c) Court Must Be Properly Constituted . . . . .                 | §218        |
| (d) Submitting to Jurisdiction . . . . .                         | §219        |
| (e) Bankruptcy . . . . .   | §220        |
| (f) Comity: Same Principle of Law . . . . .                      | §221        |
| 11. Finality . . . . .   | §222        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §222        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(b) Review by Same Court .....§223  
(c) Interlocutory Judgment .....§226  
(d) Consent Judgments and Orders .....§228  
(e) Judgments by Default .....§230  
(f) Confession .....§231  
(g) Arbitrator’s Decision .....§232  
(h) Acceptance of Decree or Order .....§233  
(i) Repealed Statute .....§234  
(j) Order of Discontinuance .....§235  
(k) Court Equally Divided .....§236  
(l) Erroneous Judgment .....§237  
(m) Release .....§238  
(n) Payment of Damages Recovered .....§239  
12. What Judgment Determines .....§240  
13. Ascertainment of What Judgment Determines .....§241  
    (a) Final Decree in General Terms .....§241  
    (b) Court May Examine Pleadings and Proceedings .....§242  
    (c) Judge’s Remarks .....§243  
    (d) Observations by Court during Hearing .....§244  
14. Judgment Obtained by Fraud - Collusive Suit .....§245  
15. Judgments in Rem .....§247  
    (a) General .....§247  
    (b) Effect of Action in Personam on Action in Rem .....§248  
16. Foreign Judgments .....§249  
    (a) General .....§249  
    (b) Pending Foreign Suit .....§250  
17. Change of Parties’ Rights Since Former Judgment .....§251  
    (a) Removal of Estoppel before Adjudication .....§251  
    (b) New Cause of Action since Prior Decision .....§252  
    (c) Certification of Class Proceedings .....§254  
18. Parties .....§255  
    (a) General .....§255  
    (b) Mutuality .....§258  
19. Merger .....§259  
20. Alternative Claim - Plaintiff Must Elect Which Party to Sue ...  
    .....§262

## ESTOPPEL

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 21. Recovery Against One of Two Joint Debtors or Joint Wrong-Doers . . . . . | §264 |
| 22. Different Causes of Action . . . . .                                     | §268 |
| 23. Two Distinct Demands . . . . .   | §269 |
| 24. Defence of Res Judicata Must be Plead . . . . .                          | §270 |
| 25. The Crown . . . . .  | §271 |
| 26. Pleading . . . . .   | §272 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §272 |
| (b) Question of Law Raised for First Time in Court of Last Resort . . . . .  | §274 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Arbitration; Bailment; Banking; Bills of Exchange; Boundaries and Surveys; Business Corporations; Carriers; Conflict of Laws; Contracts; Courts; Crown; Debtor and Creditor; Deeds and Documents; Easements; Equity; Infants and Children; Insurance; Judgments and Orders; Landlord and Tenant; Oil and Gas; Partnership; Patents; Personal Property; Pleadings; Prerogative Remedies; Sale of Land; Trespass; Wills.

# EVIDENCE

prepared by  
Peter Sankoff, LL.M.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Codes of Professional Conduct**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Foundational Principles in the Law of Evidence</b> .....        | §1  |
| 1. General Nature and Purpose of the Law of Evidence .....            | §1  |
| (a) Scope of the Law of Evidence .....                                | §1  |
| (b) Development of the Law of Evidence .....                          | §2  |
| (c) Purposes of the Law of Evidence.....                              | §4  |
| (d) Sources of the Law of Evidence .....                              | §6  |
| 2. Fundamental Conditions of Admissibility .....                      | §8  |
| (a) Introduction.....   | §8  |
| (b) Relevance.....  | §9  |
| (c) Judicial Discretion to Exclude .....                              | §17 |
| (i) General.....  | §17 |
| (ii) Probative Value .....  | §18 |
| (iii) Prejudicial Effect.....   | §20 |
| (iv) The Threshold for Exclusion .....                                | §21 |
| 3. Circumstantial Evidence .....                                      | §24 |
| (a) Distinguishing Between Direct and Circumstantial<br>Evidence..... | §24 |
| (b) Important Examples of Circumstantial Evidence.....                | §25 |
| (i) General.....  | §25 |
| (ii) Motive.....  | §26 |
| (iii) Consciousness of Guilt or Innocence.....                        | §32 |
| (iv) Opportunity and Alibi Evidence.....                              | §42 |

EVIDENCE

---

4. Admissibility of Evidence ..... §48

    (a) General ..... §48

    (b) Limited Admissibility..... §50

    (c) Conditional Admissibility..... §51

    (d) Curative Admissibility ..... §53

    (e) Admissibility by Consent ..... §54

    (f) Procedural Issues Regarding Admissibility ..... §57

        (i) Objections to Admissibility ..... §57

        (ii) Failure to Object ..... §59

    (g) Voir Dire..... §61

        (i) Purpose ..... §61

        (ii) Procedure ..... §62

        (iii) Issue Estoppel and Res Judicata ..... §65

5. Formal Admissions ..... §66

    (a) Civil Proceedings..... §66

    (b) Criminal Proceedings ..... §70

6. Application of the Law of Evidence..... §74

    (a) General ..... §74

    (b) Discovery ..... §75

    (c) Custody and Child Protection Hearings ..... §76

    (d) Small Claims Court ..... §77

    (e) Arbitrations ..... §78

    (f) Administrative Tribunals ..... §80

    (g) Criminal Proceedings ..... §82

        (i) General..... §82

        (ii) Extradition Hearings ..... §83

        (iii) Bail Hearings..... §84

        (iv) Preliminary Hearings..... §86

        (v) Sentencing..... §89

        (vi) Other Criminal Proceedings..... §93

**II. Burdens of Proof and Presumptions ..... §97**

    1. Introduction ..... §97

    2. Legal Burden of Proof..... §98

        (a) Burdens of Proof Generally ..... §98

        (b) The Evidential Burden of Proof ..... §101

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (i) Criminal Cases .....  | §101        |
| (ii) Civil Cases .....  | §105        |
| (iii) Evidential Burdens upon the Defendant .....                           | §110        |
| (c) Ultimate Burden of Proof .....  | §115        |
| 3. Presumptions .....   | §121        |
| (a) General .....   | §121        |
| (b) Presumptions of Fact.....   | §122        |
| (c) Rebuttable Presumptions .....   | §123        |
| (d) Presumptions and the Canadian Charter of Rights and<br>Freedoms.....    | §125        |
| <b>III. Competence and Compellability of Witnesses.....</b>                 | <b>§128</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....   | §128        |
| 2. Incompetence by Rule of Law .....  | §131        |
| (a) Oaths and Affirmations .....  | §131        |
| (i) Oaths at Common Law .....   | §131        |
| (ii) Oaths: Statutory Requirements .....                                    | §135        |
| (iii) Affirmation .....   | §138        |
| (iv) Exceptions.....  | §141        |
| (b) Incapacity Owing to Mental Deficiency .....                             | §142        |
| (c) Children.....   | §146        |
| (i) Introduction.....   | §146        |
| (ii) Unsworn Evidence .....   | §149        |
| (iii) Promising to Tell the Truth.....                                      | §152        |
| (iv) Presumption of Competence .....  | §155        |
| (v) The Inquiry .....   | §158        |
| (d) Incompetence Arising from the Commission of Prior<br>Criminal Acts..... | §162        |
| (e) Incompetence by Interest in the Proceeding .....                        | §163        |
| (f) Spousal Incompetence.....   | §164        |
| (i) Application of the Rule .....   | §164        |
| (ii) Exceptions .....   | §167        |
| (iii) Incompetence Rule Extends to Out-of-Court<br>Testimony .....          | §170        |
| (g) Judges, Jurors and Counsel.....   | §171        |
| 3. Compellability .....   | §173        |

## EVIDENCE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) Introduction .....                                  | §173        |
| (b) State Officials .....                               | §174        |
| (i) Crown Officials and Members of Parliament .....     | §174        |
| (ii) Foreign Officials .....                            | §177        |
| (iii) Judges .....                                      | §178        |
| (iv) Board and Tribunal Members.....                    | §180        |
| (v) Ombudsmen, Investigators and Mediators .....        | §183        |
| (c) Parties and Spouses: Civil Cases.....               | §184        |
| (d) Parties and Spouses: Criminal Cases .....           | §185        |
| (i) The Defendant .....                                 | §185        |
| (ii) Spouses .....                                      | §191        |
| (iii) Comment on the Failure to Testify.....            | §192        |
| (e) Opposing Counsel.....                               | §196        |
| <b>IV. Calling and Questioning Witnesses .....</b>      | <b>§197</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....                                   | §197        |
| 2. Calling and Failing to Call Witnesses .....          | §199        |
| (a) Parties in Civil Cases .....                        | §199        |
| (b) The Prosecution.....                                | §202        |
| (c) The Defence in Criminal Cases.....                  | §205        |
| (d) The Trial Judge .....                               | §208        |
| 3. Exclusion of Witnesses.....                          | §212        |
| 4. Witness Testimony and Language .....                 | §222        |
| 5. Examination-in-Chief .....                           | §226        |
| 6. Cross-Examination .....                              | §228        |
| 7. Failure to Cross-Examine a Witness.....              | §233        |
| 8. The Judge's Role in Questioning Witnesses .....      | §238        |
| 9. Re-Examination.....                                  | §241        |
| 10. Communicating with Witnesses During Testimony ..... | §243        |
| 11. Evidence in Rebuttal.....                           | §248        |
| (a) Criminal Cases.....                                 | §248        |
| (b) Civil Cases.....                                    | §254        |
| 12. Re-Opening the Case .....                           | §257        |
| (a) Civil Cases.....                                    | §257        |
| (b) Criminal Cases .....                                | §261        |
| 13. Evidence on Appeal.....                             | §266        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>V. Refreshing Witness’s Memory</b> .....                | §275 |
| 1. Introduction .....                                      | §275 |
| 2. Present Memory Revived .....                            | §276 |
| 3. Past Recollection Recorded .....                        | §279 |
| 4. Procedure in Using Testimonial Aids .....               | §286 |
| (a) Memory Refreshed Outside of Court .....                | §286 |
| (b) Refreshing Memory in Court.....                        | §289 |
| 5. Use of Hypnosis to Revive Memory .....                  | §292 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>VI. Credibility</b> .....                               | §296 |
| 1. Introduction .....                                      | §296 |
| 2. Demeanour .....   | §299 |
| 3. Limits on Enhancing Credibility .....                   | §301 |
| (a) The Rule Against Self-Serving Evidence.....            | §301 |
| (i) General.....   | §301 |
| (ii) Defendants in Criminal Cases .....                    | §303 |
| (b) Prior Consistent Statements .....                      | §304 |
| (i) Generally.....   | §304 |
| (ii) Recent Fabrication .....                              | §306 |
| (iii) Prior Identification .....                           | §311 |
| (iv) Adoption of Video Recording .....                     | §312 |
| (v) Recent Complaint and the Narrative .....               | §316 |
| (vi) Exculpatory Statements Made upon Arrest.....          | §321 |
| 5. Attacking Credibility of Party’s Own Witness.....       | §323 |
| (a) General Prohibition.....                               | §323 |
| (b) Attacking by Contradiction .....                       | §325 |
| (c) The Hostile Witness .....                              | §326 |
| (d) The Adverse Witness .....                              | §331 |
| (i) Generally.....   | §331 |
| (ii) Impeachment by Prior Inconsistent Statement.....      | §333 |
| (iii) Permissible Use of Prior Inconsistent Statement....  | §335 |
| (e) Adverse Party as Witness .....                         | §339 |
| 6. Attacking Credibility of Opposing Party’s Witness ..... | §345 |
| (a) Introduction .....                                     | §345 |
| (b) Limits on Cross-Examination .....                      | §346 |

## EVIDENCE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Question Must Be Relevant to Credibility.....                  | §346        |
| (ii) Good Faith Basis.....   | §348        |
| (iii) Prior Sexual Experience .....                                | §351        |
| (iv) Prior Judicial Findings on Credibility .....                  | §359        |
| (v) Special Rules Regarding Defendants in Criminal<br>Trials ..... | §360        |
| (c) The Collateral Fact Rule.....                                  | §365        |
| (d) Exceptions to the Collateral Fact Rule .....                   | §369        |
| (i) Prior Conviction .....   | §369        |
| (ii) Prior Inconsistent Statements.....                            | §378        |
| (iii) Bias or Interest in the Outcome .....                        | §383        |
| (iv) General Reputation for Veracity .....                         | §384        |
| (v) Lack of Testimonial Qualifications .....                       | §386        |
| <b>VII. Real Evidence .....</b>                                    | <b>§387</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....  | §387        |
| 2. Physical Objects.....   | §388        |
| 3. Appearance .....  | §390        |
| 4. Photographs .....   | §391        |
| 5. Film and Videotape.....   | §392        |
| 6. Audio Recording .....   | §394        |
| 7. View .....  | §397        |
| 8. Experiments and Demonstrations .....                            | §400        |
| 9. Video and Computer Reconstructions.....                         | §401        |
| <b>VIII. Documentary Evidence .....</b>                            | <b>§402</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....  | §402        |
| 2. Best Evidence Rule.....   | §403        |
| (a) Introduction.....  | §403        |
| (b) Modern Application .....                                       | §404        |
| (c) Exceptions.....  | §408        |
| (i) General.....   | §408        |
| (ii) Primary Evidence Lost or Destroyed.....                       | §409        |
| (iii) Document Possessed or Controlled by Other<br>Party .....     | §410        |
| (iv) Document Possessed by Third Party.....                        | §411        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (v) Production Inconvenient or Impossible.....   | §412        |
| (vi) Judicial and Public Records.....            | §413        |
| (vii) Business Records .....                     | §416        |
| (viii) Banker’s Book or Records .....            | §418        |
| (ix) Electronic Records .....                    | §419        |
| 3. Authentication .....                          | §421        |
| (a) Generally.....                               | §421        |
| (b) Authentication Not Required .....            | §424        |
| (c) Attested Document .....                      | §427        |
| <b>IX. Opinion Evidence.....</b>                 | <b>§429</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....                            | §429        |
| 2. Lay Witness Opinion .....                     | §432        |
| 3. Expert Witness Opinion.....                   | §434        |
| (a) Introduction.....                            | §434        |
| (b) Relevance.....                               | §438        |
| (i) Logical Relevance .....                      | §438        |
| (ii) Probative Value and Prejudicial Effect..... | §439        |
| (iii) Reliability .....                          | §445        |
| (c) Necessity .....                              | §453        |
| (i) Introduction.....                            | §453        |
| (ii) Ultimate Issue.....                         | §456        |
| (d) Exclusionary and Procedural Rules .....      | §459        |
| (i) Limiting Number of Experts .....             | §459        |
| (ii) Notice Requirements.....                    | §462        |
| (e) Qualification of the Expert .....            | §464        |
| (i) General.....                                 | §464        |
| (ii) Expertise in the Specialized Area .....     | §465        |
| (iii) Independence.....                          | §468        |
| (f) Factual Foundation.....                      | §471        |
| (g) Court Appointed Experts .....                | §477        |
| (h) Opinion as to Particular Matters.....        | §478        |
| (i) General.....                                 | §478        |
| (ii) Credibility of a Witness.....               | §479        |
| (iii) Providing Context to Human Behaviour.....  | §482        |
| (iv) Disposition Evidence.....                   | §485        |

EVIDENCE

---

(v) Law ..... §488  
(i) Weight of an Expert Opinion ..... §491

**X. Character Evidence** ..... §493

1. Generally ..... §493

2. Criminal Proceedings ..... §495

(a) The Defendant: Evidence of Good Character ..... §495

(b) The Defendant: Evidence of Bad Character ..... §498

(i) General Rule ..... §498

(ii) Defendant Putting Character in Issue ..... §502

(iii) Types of Permissible Evidence where Character  
in Issue ..... §506

(iv) Effect of Character Evidence ..... §510

(c) Character of Co-Defendant ..... §511

(d) Character of Third Party Suspect ..... §513

(e) Character of Deceased Victim ..... §514

(f) Character of Other Witnesses ..... §518

3. Civil Proceedings ..... §519

(a) Character as Material Fact ..... §519

(b) Character of Litigant ..... §521

(c) Character of Non-Litigant ..... §522

**XI. Similar Fact Evidence** ..... §523

1. Introduction ..... §523

2. Criminal Proceedings ..... §526

(a) Balancing Probative Value and Prejudicial Effect ..... §526

(i) Generally ..... §526

(ii) Requisite Degree of Similarity ..... §528

(iii) Link to Defendant ..... §529

(iv) Probative Value ..... §530

(v) Prejudice ..... §533

(b) Similar Acts to Establish Identity ..... §538

(c) Similar Facts to Establish Motive ..... §541

(d) Instructing the Jury ..... §542

(e) Timing ..... §546

3. Civil Proceedings ..... §548

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>XII. Hearsay</b> .....   | §549 |
| 1. Definition of the Rule.....                                    | §549 |
| 2. Statements Covered by the Rule.....                            | §554 |
| 3. Non-Hearsay Statements.....                                    | §558 |
| (a) Generally.....  | §558 |
| (b) Verbal Acts.....  | §562 |
| (c) State of Mind or Knowledge of Speaker.....                    | §564 |
| (d) State of Mind of Listener.....                                | §567 |
| (e) Implied Assertions.....                                       | §569 |
| 4. Approach to Hearsay Exceptions.....                            | §571 |
| 5. Double Hearsay.....  | §575 |
| 6. Exceptions to the Rule.....                                    | §578 |
| (a) Dying Declaration.....  | §578 |
| (b) Declarations Against Interest.....                            | §583 |
| (c) Res Gestae.....   | §591 |
| (i) General.....  | §591 |
| (ii) Spontaneous or Excited Utterance.....                        | §592 |
| (iii) Statement Accompanying and Explaining Fact in<br>Issue..... | §596 |
| (iv) Statement of Contemporaneous Physical<br>Sensation.....      | §598 |
| (v) Statement of Contemporaneous State of Mind.....               | §601 |
| (d) Business Records.....   | §607 |
| (i) General.....  | §607 |
| (ii) Common Law.....  | §608 |
| (iii) Canada Evidence Act.....                                    | §614 |
| (iv) Provincial Legislation.....                                  | §621 |
| (v) Banking Records.....  | §626 |
| (e) Official Records.....   | §627 |
| (i) Convictions and Judgments of a Prior Court.....               | §627 |
| (ii) Public Documents.....  | §632 |
| (f) Statements in a Document.....                                 | §636 |
| (g) Historical Declarations.....                                  | §637 |
| (i) Reputation Evidence.....                                      | §637 |
| (ii) Ancient Documents.....                                       | §641 |

## EVIDENCE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iii) Aboriginal Histories .....                         | §643        |
| (iv) Declarations as to Pedigree or Family History ..... | §644        |
| (h) Testimony in Prior Proceedings .....                 | §647        |
| (i) General .....  | §647        |
| (ii) Civil Cases .....                                   | §648        |
| (iii) Criminal Cases .....                               | §651        |
| (i) Admissions by a Party .....                          | §655        |
| (i) General .....  | §655        |
| (ii) Express Admissions .....                            | §656        |
| (iii) Adoptive Admission .....                           | §660        |
| (iv) Vicarious Admission .....                           | §664        |
| (v) Effect of a Party's Admission Against Others .....   | §669        |
| (j) Co-Conspirator's Statements .....                    | §670        |
| 7. Principled Exception to the Hearsay Rule .....        | §679        |
| (a) Introduction .....                                   | §679        |
| (b) Reliability .....                                    | §680        |
| (i) General Meaning .....                                | §680        |
| (ii) Acceptable Indicators of Reliability .....          | §681        |
| (iii) Necessity .....                                    | §690        |
| <b>XIII. Confessions .....</b>                           | <b>§695</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....                                    | §695        |
| 2. The Exclusionary Rule .....                           | §699        |
| (a) Scope .....  | §699        |
| (b) Voluntariness .....                                  | §702        |
| (i) Generally .....                                      | §702        |
| (ii) Fear of Prejudice/Hope of Advantage .....           | §704        |
| (iii) Oppression .....                                   | §710        |
| (iv) Operating Mind .....                                | §712        |
| (v) Tricks and Misinformation .....                      | §714        |
| (vi) Young Persons .....                                 | §716        |
| (c) Person in Authority .....                            | §719        |
| (d) Onus of Proof .....                                  | §723        |
| (e) Police Warning .....                                 | §727        |
| (f) Derived Confessions .....                            | §728        |
| (g) Evidence Revealed by an Involuntary Confession ..... | §730        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 3. Functions of the Judge and Jury .....   | §732        |
| 4. The Voir Dire.....  | §735        |
| 5. The Right to Silence.....   | §739        |
| <b>XIV. Improperly Obtained Evidence.....</b>  | <b>§742</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....  | §742        |
| 2. Common Law.....   | §743        |
| 3. Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms.....                                      | §746        |
| (a) Introduction.....  | §746        |
| (b) Court of Competent Jurisdiction.....   | §748        |
| (c) Standing .....   | §751        |
| (d) Obtained in Manner to Bring Administration of Justice into Disrepute .....       | §752        |
| (e) Burden of Proof and Procedural Issues.....                                       | §756        |
| (f) Bringing the Administration of Justice into Disrepute:<br>General Framework..... | §759        |
| (g) Seriousness of the Charter Infringing Conduct.....                               | §762        |
| (i) Introduction.....  | §762        |
| (ii) Good Faith.....   | §763        |
| (iii) Gravity of the Breach .....  | §768        |
| (iv) Urgency.....  | §771        |
| (v) Systemic Concerns .....  | §773        |
| (vi) Deceit or Falsehoods by Police.....   | §774        |
| (vii) Pattern of Disregard.....  | §775        |
| (h) Impact on the Defendant's Interests.....   | §777        |
| (i) General.....   | §777        |
| (ii) Statements.....   | §778        |
| (iii) Bodily Evidence.....   | §780        |
| (iv) Non-Bodily Physical Evidence.....   | §781        |
| (v) Derivative Evidence .....  | §783        |
| (i) Society's Interest in an Adjudication on the Merits.....                         | §784        |
| (j) Appellate Review .....   | §787        |
| (k) Section 24(2) and Exclusion of Evidence in Civil<br>Cases .....                  | §791        |
| (l) Exclusion under Section 24(1) of the Charter .....                               | §795        |

EVIDENCE

---

**XV. Privilege** ..... §797

1. Introduction ..... §797

2. Privilege Against Self-Incrimination ..... §799

    (a) General ..... §799

    (b) Common Law and Statutory Privileges ..... §800

    (c) Section 13 of the Charter ..... §804

    (d) Section 7 of the Charter ..... §808

3. Legal Advice Privilege ..... §814

    (a) Generally ..... §814

    (b) Required Elements ..... §819

        (i) Communication Between Lawyer and Client ..... §819

        (ii) Communication Made in Confidence ..... §823

        (iii) Communication Made in Course of Seeking Legal Advice ..... §826

    (c) Waiver ..... §829

        (i) The Right to Waive ..... §829

        (ii) Express Waiver ..... §831

        (iii) Implied Waiver ..... §834

        (iv) Compelled Disclosure ..... §837

        (v) Accidental Disclosure ..... §838

    (d) Exceptions to the Privilege ..... §840

        (i) Furtherance of Crime/Fraud ..... §840

        (ii) Public Safety ..... §844

        (iii) Innocence at Stake ..... §845

        (iv) Limitation by Statute ..... §849

4. Litigation Privilege ..... §851

    (a) Rationale ..... §851

    (b) Created for Dominant Purpose of Actual or Contemplated Litigation ..... §854

    (c) Limitations to Litigation Privilege ..... §860

        (i) Statutory Intervention ..... §860

        (ii) The End of Litigation ..... §864

        (iii) Waiver and Exceptions ..... §866

5. Settlement Privilege ..... §870

    (a) Scope and Rationale ..... §870

    (b) Exceptions ..... §876



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Waiver.....  | §876        |
| (ii) Threats and Fraud .....                                 | §877        |
| (iii) Separate Proceedings .....                             | §880        |
| 6. Class Privileges Involving Confidential Information ..... | §883        |
| (a) Marital Communications .....                             | §883        |
| (b) Juror Deliberations .....                                | §886        |
| (c) Adultery .....   | §889        |
| (d) Personal Records in Sexual Offence Proceedings .....     | §891        |
| (e) Informer Privilege.....                                  | §896        |
| (i) Rationale .....  | §896        |
| (ii) Scope of the Privilege.....                             | §898        |
| (iii) Waiver and Exceptions .....                            | §902        |
| (iv) Procedure .....   | §906        |
| 7. Common Law Privilege.....                                 | §907        |
| (a) Introduction.....  | §907        |
| (b) Operation of the Privilege.....                          | §909        |
| (i) Confidentiality .....                                    | §909        |
| (ii) Valuable Relationship .....                             | §910        |
| (iii) Balancing Inquiry.....                                 | §911        |
| 8. Public Interest Immunity .....                            | §912        |
| (a) Introduction.....  | §912        |
| (b) Information in the Public Interest.....                  | §914        |
| (i) Balancing Test.....                                      | §914        |
| (ii) Manner of the Objection.....                            | §916        |
| (iii) Jurisdiction and Procedure.....                        | §917        |
| (c) Special Information .....                                | §920        |
| (i) Type of Information Covered.....                         | §920        |
| (ii) Procedure .....   | §921        |
| (d) Cabinet Confidences.....                                 | §925        |
| <b>XVI. Corroboration.....</b>                               | <b>§929</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....  | §929        |
| 2. Civil Proceedings .....                                   | §932        |
| (a) Specific Instances Requiring Corroboration.....          | §932        |
| (i) Breach of Promise of Marriage.....                       | §932        |

## EVIDENCE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (ii) Action By or Against a Deceased Person's Estate .....   | §935        |
| (iii) Action By or Against a Mentally Disordered Person..... | §941        |
| (iv) Unsworn Evidence of a Child .....                       | §943        |
| (v) Other cases .....  | §946        |
| (b) Approach to Corroboration in Civil Cases .....           | §949        |
| 3. Criminal Proceedings .....                                | §953        |
| (a) Approach to Corroboration .....                          | §953        |
| (b) Corroboration Where Required by the Criminal Code ...    | §956        |
| (c) The Corroboration Warning .....                          | §966        |
| (i) Rationale and Application.....                           | §966        |
| (ii) Is a Warning Required?.....                             | §968        |
| (iii) Form of the Judge's Warning .....                      | §975        |
| (iv) Reviewing Cautions on Appeal.....                       | §980        |
| <b>XVII. Judicial Notice .....</b>                           | <b>§984</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §984        |
| 2. Judicial Notice of Fact.....                              | §986        |
| (a) Standard of Proof Required .....                         | §986        |
| (b) Types of Fact That May Be Judicially Noted .....         | §990        |
| (c) Facts Capable of Authoritative Demonstration .....       | §998        |
| 3. Judicial Notice of Law .....                              | §999        |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Arbitration; Bailment; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Children; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Conflict of Laws; Constitutional Law; Contempt; Conspiracy; Contracts; Courts; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Offences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Damages; Discovery; Elections; Employment Law; Executors and Administrators; Expropriation; Family Law — Divorce; Family Law — General; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Gifts; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Motor Vehicles; Narcotic Control; Nuisance; Practice; Prisons; Railways; References and Inquiries; Sale of Land; Shipping; Statutes; Telecommunications; Trials; Vital Statistics; Weights and Measures; Wills

# EXECUTION

prepared by  
Jay D. Winans, B.A., J.D.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| <b>I. Scope</b> .....             | §1  |
| <b>II. Introduction</b> .....     | §2  |
| 1. General .....                  | §2  |
| 2. Definitions .....              | §5  |
| (a) Alberta .....                 | §5  |
| (b) British Columbia .....        | §6  |
| (c) Manitoba .....                | §7  |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....            | §8  |
| (e) Federal Court .....           | §9  |
| 3. Writs Available .....          | §10 |
| (a) Alberta .....                 | §10 |
| (b) British Columbia .....        | §11 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                | §12 |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....            | §13 |
| (e) Federal Court .....           | §14 |
| 4. Writ of Possession .....       | §16 |
| 5. Writ of Sequestration .....    | §20 |
| 6. Writ of Extent .....           | §24 |
| <b>III. Issuing of Writ</b> ..... | §25 |
| 1. General .....                  | §25 |
| 2. When Writ May Issue .....      | §27 |

EXECUTION

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 3. Irregular Issue . . . . .   | §30        |
| <b>IV. Form and Contents . . . . .</b>   | <b>§42</b> |
| <b>V. Persons Entitled to Execution . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>§47</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §47        |
| 2. Judgment Creditors . . . . .  | §49        |
| 3. Recipient of Arbitration Award . . . . .  | §50        |
| 4. Assignee of Judgment Creditor . . . . .   | §51        |
| 5. Recipient of Maintenance Order . . . . .  | §53        |
| 6. Personal Representative of Deceased Judgment or Execution<br>Creditor . . . . . | §54        |
| 7. Recipient of Decree for Specific Performance . . . . .                          | §55        |
| <b>VI. Persons against Whom Writ May Issue . . . . .</b>                           | <b>§56</b> |
| 1. Partnerships . . . . .  | §56        |
| 2. Corporate Bodies . . . . .  | §58        |
| 3. Trade Unions . . . . .  | §60        |
| 4. Personal Representative of Deceased Debtor . . . . .                            | §61        |
| 5. Agents of Crown . . . . .   | §62        |
| 6. Joint Tenants . . . . .   | §63        |
| <b>VII. Property and Interests Subject to Execution . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§64</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §64        |
| 2. Interest in Land . . . . .  | §70        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §70        |
| (b) Interest in Joint Tenancy . . . . .  | §74        |
| (c) Mortgages . . . . .  | §77        |
| (d) Agreements for Sale . . . . .  | §80        |
| (i) Vendor's Interest . . . . .  | §80        |
| (ii) Purchaser's Interest . . . . .  | §85        |
| 3. Goods and Chattels . . . . .  | §87        |
| (a) Conditional Sales and Chattel Mortgages . . . . .                              | §87        |
| (b) Vessels . . . . .  | §88        |
| (c) Registered Retirement Savings Plans . . . . .                                  | §89        |
| (d) Mining Interests . . . . .   | §90        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 4. Fixtures . . . . .  | §91         |
| 5. Growing Crops . . . . .                                   | §94         |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §94         |
| (b) Transfers to Defeat Creditors . . . . .                  | §98         |
| (c) Crop Payment Agreements . . . . .                        | §102        |
| 6. Money and Securities for Money . . . . .                  | §106        |
| 7. Company Shares . . . . .                                  | §113        |
| 8. Patent Rights . . . . .                                   | §126        |
| 9. Book Debts and Choses in Action . . . . .                 | §127        |
| <b>VIII. Exemptions . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§128</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                                    | §128        |
| 2. Examples of Exempt Property . . . . .                     | §130        |
| (a) Goods . . . . .  | §130        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §130        |
| (ii) Goods Subject to Conditional Sales Agreements . . . . . | §135        |
| (iii) Effect of Chattel Mortgages . . . . .                  | §136        |
| (iv) Tools or Implements of Trade . . . . .                  | §139        |
| (b) Lands . . . . .  | §149        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §149        |
| (ii) Requirements as to Residence and Occupation . . . . .   | §158        |
| (iii) Residence and Business Premises Combined . . . . .     | §163        |
| (iv) Rents and Profits of Homestead . . . . .                | §165        |
| (c) Partnership Property . . . . .                           | §168        |
| 3. Nature and Extent of Exemptions . . . . .                 | §171        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §171        |
| (b) Persons Entitled to Benefit of Exemptions . . . . .      | §181        |
| (c) Exceptions . . . . .                                     | §185        |
| (d) Right to Select Exempt Goods . . . . .                   | §191        |
| (e) Burden of Proof . . . . .                                | §195        |
| 4. Transfer or Mortgage of Exempt Property . . . . .         | §200        |
| (a) Goods . . . . .  | §200        |
| (b) Lands . . . . .  | §202        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §202        |

EXECUTION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (ii) Where Prior Registered Judgment or Execution . . . . .        | §208        |
| (c) Fraudulent Transfer or Preference . . . . .                    | §210        |
| (i) Goods . . . . .  | §210        |
| (ii) Lands . . . . .   | §211        |
| (d) Assignment for Benefit of Creditors . . . . .                  | §218        |
| 5. Death of Debtor . . . . .                                       | §220        |
| <b>IX. Execution as Lien . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§226</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §226        |
| 2. Registration of Execution . . . . .                             | §234        |
| 3. Property Bound by Execution . . . . .                           | §237        |
| 4. Loss of Lien . . . . .  | §245        |
| <b>X. Seizure under Execution . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§250</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §250        |
| 2. Sufficiency of Seizure . . . . .                                | §259        |
| (a) Goods . . . . .  | §259        |
| (b) Lands . . . . .  | §266        |
| 3. Abandonment . . . . .   | §272        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §272        |
| (b) Effect of Abandonment . . . . .                                | §278        |
| (c) Abandonment as against Third Parties . . . . .                 | §279        |
| 4. Goods in Custody of Law . . . . .                               | §281        |
| 5. Effect of Seizure . . . . .                                     | §284        |
| 6. Powers and Duties of Sheriff . . . . .                          | §289        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §289        |
| (b) What Sheriff May Seize . . . . .                               | §301        |
| (c) Entry upon Land . . . . .                                      | §305        |
| 7. Liability of Sheriffs and Officers . . . . .                    | §308        |
| 8. Sheriff's Fees, Expenses and Poundage . . . . .                 | §315        |
| 9. Wrongful Seizure . . . . .                                      | §325        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §325        |
| (b) Liability of Execution Creditor for Wrongful Seizure . . . . . | §326        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>XI. Sheriff's Return</b> . . . . .                                    | §331 |
| <b>XII. Sale under Execution</b> . . . . .                               | §339 |
| 1. Personal Property . . . . .   | §339 |
| 2. Land . . . . .  | §353 |
| 3. Powers and Duties of Sheriff . . . . .                                | §366 |
| 4. Right and Title of Purchase . . . . .                                 | §375 |
| 5. Purchase by Execution Creditor . . . . .                              | §382 |
| 6. Irregular Sale . . . . .  | §384 |
| 7. Void Sale . . . . .   | §385 |
| <b>XIII. Duration of Execution</b> . . . . .                             | §386 |
| 1. Expiry and Renewal . . . . .  | §386 |
| 2. Satisfaction . . . . .  | §393 |
| (a) By Payment . . . . .   | §393 |
| (b) By Seizure . . . . .   | §395 |
| (c) By Release of Seizure . . . . .                                      | §396 |
| <b>XIV. Stay of Execution</b> . . . . .                                  | §398 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §398 |
| 2. Stay Pending Appeal . . . . .   | §407 |
| (a) Jurisdiction of Court . . . . .                                      | §407 |
| (b) When Granted . . . . .   | §412 |
| (c) Terms and Conditions . . . . .                                       | §415 |
| (d) To Supreme Court of Canada . . . . .                                 | §418 |
| (e) Stay Pending Reference . . . . .                                     | §420 |
| 3. Creditor Withdrawing Writ . . . . .                                   | §421 |
| <b>XV. Distribution and Priority among Execution Creditors</b> . . . . . | §422 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §422 |
| 2. Money Not Levied Out of Debtor's Property . . . . .                   | §441 |
| 3. Funds in Court . . . . .  | §446 |
| 4. Garnishment Proceedings . . . . .                                     | §448 |
| 5. Interpleader Proceedings . . . . .                                    | §450 |
| 6. Priority as to Costs . . . . .  | §452 |
| 7. Priority as to Wages . . . . .  | §455 |

EXECUTION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>XVI. Priorities between Execution Creditors and Third Persons . . . .</b> |      |
| . . . . .  | §457 |
| 1. Personal Property . . . . .   | §457 |
| 2. Lands . . . . .   | §472 |
| 3. Effect of Proceedings in Insolvency . . . . .                             | §487 |
| <b>XVII. Equitable Execution . . . . .</b>                                   | §490 |
| <b>XVIII. Examination in Aid of Execution . . . . .</b>                      | §496 |
| 1. Right to Examination of Debtor . . . . .                                  | §496 |
| 2. Persons Subject to Examination . . . . .                                  | §504 |
| 3. Procuring Attendance of Debtor . . . . .                                  | §509 |
| 4. Conduct of Examination . . . . .  | §510 |
| 5. Nature and Range of Examination . . . . .                                 | §516 |
| 6. Committal . . . . .   | §529 |
| 7. Costs . . . . .   | §539 |
| 8. Use of Examination in Other Proceedings . . . . .                         | §541 |
| <b>XIX. Prejudgment Remedies . . . . .</b>                                   | §543 |
| 1. Attachment of Property . . . . .  | §543 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §543 |
| (b) When Available . . . . .   | §545 |
| (c) Practice and Procedure . . . . .   | §547 |
| (d) Attacking Attachment . . . . .   | §556 |
| 2. Mareva Injunction . . . . .   | §558 |
| <b>XX. Garnishment . . . . .</b>   | §564 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §564 |
| 2. When Available . . . . .  | §576 |
| (a) After Judgment . . . . .   | §576 |
| (b) Before Judgment . . . . .  | §579 |
| 3. What is Attachable . . . . .  | §590 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §590 |
| (b) Claim for Damages . . . . .  | §602 |
| (c) Money in Bank . . . . .  | §603 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (d) Funds Held by Solicitor . . . . .                      | §613 |
| (e) Insurance Moneys . . . . .                             | §615 |
| (f) Legacies . . . . .                                     | §618 |
| (g) Mortgage Moneys . . . . .                              | §621 |
| (h) Moneys Due under Agreement for Sale . . . . .          | §622 |
| (i) Bills of Exchange . . . . .                            | §624 |
| (j) Rent . . . . .   | §625 |
| (k) Agent's Commission . . . . .                           | §627 |
| (l) Building Contracts . . . . .                           | §628 |
| (m) Maintenance Payments . . . . .                         | §631 |
| (n) Wages . . . . .  | §633 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                      | §633 |
| (ii) Public Service Employees . . . . .                    | §645 |
| (o) Indians and Bands . . . . .                            | §647 |
| (p) Conditional Debts . . . . .                            | §650 |
| (q) Future Unascertained or Non-assignable Debts . . . . . | §651 |
| (r) Promissory Notes . . . . .                             | §653 |
| (s) Joint and Partnership Debts . . . . .                  | §656 |
| (t) Money in Court . . . . .                               | §660 |
| (u) Taxes . . . . .  | §661 |
| (v) Trust Moneys . . . . .                                 | §662 |
| (w) Other Cases . . . . .                                  | §670 |
| 4. Rights and Liabilities of Garnishee . . . . .           | §685 |
| (a) Effect of Order . . . . .                              | §685 |
| (b) Status of Garnishee . . . . .                          | §688 |
| (c) Appearance or Non-appearance of Garnishee . . . . .    | §689 |
| (d) Payment into Court . . . . .                           | §693 |
| (e) Garnishee Disputing Liability . . . . .                | §698 |
| (f) Discharge . . . . .                                    | §704 |
| (g) Chattel Mortgagee . . . . .                            | §707 |
| 5. Procedure . . . . .                                     | §708 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §708 |
| (b) Affidavit . . . . .                                    | §715 |
| (c) Joinder of Parties . . . . .                           | §736 |
| (d) Payment Out . . . . .                                  | §738 |
| (e) Trial of Issue . . . . .                               | §746 |

EXECUTION

---

(f) Territorial Jurisdiction . . . . .§748  
(g) Stay Pending Appeal . . . . .§751  
(h) Costs . . . . .§752  
6. Priorities . . . . .§756  
    (a) Between Garnishing Creditor and Other Creditors . . . . .§756  
    (b) Assignee of Debt . . . . .§765  
    (c) Winding-up . . . . .§767  
    (d) Banker's Lien . . . . .§768  
    (e) Insolvency Proceedings . . . . .§769  
7. Setting Aside Attachment . . . . .§771  
    (a) Jurisdiction . . . . .§771  
    (b) Motion to Set Aside . . . . .§772  
        (i) General . . . . .§772  
        (ii) Grounds . . . . .§778  
        (iii) Form of Proceedings . . . . .§798  
        (iv) Payment Out Following Rescission of Order . . . . .§801  
8. Charging Orders . . . . .§802  
  
**XXI. Arrest and Imprisonment of Debtors . . . . .§807**

**Index**

*Related titles:* Debtor and Creditor; Distress; Interpleader; Judgments and Orders; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Sheriffs and Bailiffs.

# EXECUTORS AND ADMINISTRATORS

prepared by  
Linda M. Sherwood, B.A. LL.B.  
*of the Alberta and British Columbia Bars*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. General</b> .....   | §1   |
| 1. Appointment .....  | §1   |
| 2. Acceptance of Office by Executor .....                       | §11  |
| 3. Executor According to the Tenor .....                        | §15  |
| 4. Renunciation of Executor or Administrator .....              | §16  |
| 5. Executor de son Tort .....                                   | §23  |
| 6. Foreign Executors and Administrators .....                   | §28  |
| 7. Infant Executors .....                                       | §35  |
| 8. Removal of Executors or Administrators .....                 | §37  |
| 9. Discharge of Executors or Administrators .....               | §51  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>II. Grant of Probate or Letters of Administration</b> .....  | §56  |
| 1. Jurisdiction .....   | §56  |
| 2. Application for Grant of Probate or Administration .....     | §64  |
| (a) General .....   | §64  |
| (b) Inventory .....   | §79  |
| (c) Probate Fees .....  | §82  |
| 3. Persons Entitled to Grant of Probate or Administration ..... | §84  |
| (a) General .....   | §84  |
| (b) Official Administrator .....                                | §108 |
| 4. Testator or Intestate Domiciled Abroad .....                 | §115 |
| 5. Necessity for Grant .....                                    | §118 |

EXECUTORS AND ADMINISTRATORS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 6. Effect of Grant of Probate or Letters of Administration . . . . .   | §123        |
| 7. Grant of Administration with Will Annexed . . . . .                 | §130        |
| 8. Administrator Pendente Lite . . . . .                               | §138        |
| 9. Resealing Letters Probate and Letters of Administration . . . . .   | §143        |
| 10. Limited Grant . . . . .  | §160        |
| 11. Removal of Cause from Surrogate Court . . . . .                    | §169        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>III. Title of Executor or Administrator . . . . .</b>               | <b>§172</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §172        |
| 2. Revocation of Probate or Administration . . . . .                   | §179        |
| 3. Revocation of Will . . . . .  | §193        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IV. Duties and Powers of Executors and Administrators . . . . .</b> | <b>§195</b> |
| 1. Duties . . . . .  | §195        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §195        |
| (b) Standard of Duty . . . . .   | §205        |
| (c) Realization of Estate . . . . .                                    | §208        |
| (d) Selling and Converting . . . . .                                   | §211        |
| (e) Duties to Tenant for Life and to Remainderman . . . . .            | §214        |
| (f) Insurance . . . . .  | §217        |
| (g) Repairs and Improvements . . . . .                                 | §219        |
| 2. Powers . . . . .  | §220        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §220        |
| (b) Administration and Management . . . . .                            | §227        |
| (c) Trust Companies . . . . .  | §232        |
| (d) Exercise of Powers . . . . .                                       | §234        |
| (e) Powers Distinguished from Trusts . . . . .                         | §241        |
| (f) Appointment of Agent . . . . .                                     | §242        |
| (g) Funeral Expenses and Monuments . . . . .                           | §245        |
| (h) Powers in Respect of Mortgages . . . . .                           | §251        |
| (i) Compromise of Claims . . . . .                                     | §254        |
| (j) Seeking Advice of Court . . . . .                                  | §261        |
| (k) Carrying on Business . . . . .                                     | §283        |
| (l) Payment of Debts . . . . .   | §288        |
| (m) Sale of Land . . . . .   | §310        |
| (n) Leases . . . . .   | §330        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (o) Sale of Personal Estate . . . . .                                    | §336        |
| (p) Investment of Funds . . . . .  | §337        |
| (q) Borrowing of Money . . . . .   | §353        |
| (r) Distribution of Estate . . . . .                                     | §359        |
| (s) Corpse . . . . .   | §381        |
| <b>V. Breaches of Trust . . . . .</b>                                    | <b>§382</b> |
| <b>VI. Actions by and against Executors and Administrators . . . . .</b> | <b>§395</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §395        |
| 2. Parties . . . . .   | §397        |
| 3. Practice . . . . .  | §417        |
| 4. Actions in Tort . . . . .   | §434        |
| 5. Recovery of Debts . . . . .   | §444        |
| 6. Enforcement of Contracts . . . . .                                    | §450        |
| 7. Executor or Administrator in Foreign Jurisdiction . . . . .           | §454        |
| 8. Limitation of Actions . . . . .                                       | §458        |
| 9. Judgment and Execution . . . . .                                      | §476        |
| 10. Costs . . . . .  | §491        |
| <b>VII. Claims against Estate . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§531</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §531        |
| 2. Evidence . . . . .  | §547        |
| <b>VIII. Compensation of Executors and Administrators . . . . .</b>      | <b>§557</b> |
| 1. Right to Compensation . . . . .                                       | §557        |
| 2. Measure of Compensation . . . . .                                     | §582        |
| 3. How Borne . . . . .   | §615        |
| 4. Jurisdiction to Determine Compensation . . . . .                      | §617        |
| <b>IX. Valuation of Estate . . . . .</b>                                 | <b>§620</b> |
| <b>X. Passing of Accounts . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>§624</b> |
| <b>XI. Representative of Deceased Representative . . . . .</b>           | <b>§647</b> |

EXECUTORS AND ADMINISTRATORS

---

**XII. Administrator Ad Litem** .....§652

**XIII. Executor as Beneficiary** .....§670

**XIV. Right of Retainer** .....§675

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Barristers and Solicitors; Burial and Cremation; Conflict of Laws; Evidence; Limitation of Actions; Parties; Trusts.

# EXPROPRIATION

prepared by  
Susan Lloyd, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.  
*of the Alberta and Manitoba Bars*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                 | §1  |
| 1. Reform Legislation . . . . .                  | §1  |
| 2. Definitions . . . . .                         | §3  |
| (a) General . . . . .                            | §3  |
| (b) Federal . . . . .                            | §6  |
| (c) Provincial . . . . .                         | §7  |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                            | §7  |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                  | §8  |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                         | §9  |
| (iv) Ontario . . . . .                           | §10 |
| (v) Saskatchewan . . . . .                       | §11 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Statutory Authority</b> . . . . .         | §12 |
| 1. Statutory Power to Take Land . . . . .        | §12 |
| (a) History . . . . .                            | §12 |
| (b) General Authority . . . . .                  | §14 |
| (c) Strict Compliance with Legislation . . . . . | §18 |
| (d) Federal Legislation . . . . .                | §25 |
| (e) Alberta Legislation . . . . .                | §27 |
| (f) British Columbia Legislation . . . . .       | §30 |
| (g) Manitoba Legislation . . . . .               | §35 |
| (h) Ontario Legislation . . . . .                | §39 |

## EXPROPRIATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (i) Saskatchewan Legislation . . . . .                            | §45         |
| 2. Statutory Right to Compensation . . . . .                      | §52         |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §52         |
| (b) Federal . . . . .   | §57         |
| (c) Provincial . . . . .  | §58         |
| 3. Principles of Construction of Expropriation Statutes . . . . . | §61         |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §61         |
| (b) Authorization . . . . .                                       | §62         |
| (c) Expropriation Not To Be Implied . . . . .                     | §66         |
| (d) Compliance with Purpose of Expropriation . . . . .            | §68         |
| (e) Compliance with Statutory Procedure . . . . .                 | §69         |
| (f) Payment of Compensation . . . . .                             | §72         |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>III. What May Be Expropriated . . . . .</b>                    | <b>§77</b>  |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §77         |
| 2. Federal . . . . .  | §80         |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .  | §87         |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .                                     | §89         |
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .   | §92         |
| 6. Ontario . . . . .  | §96         |
| 7. Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §97         |
| 8. Applicability of Legislation . . . . .                         | §106        |
| (a) Federal . . . . .   | §106        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .   | §111        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                                    | §116        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .  | §118        |
| (e) Ontario . . . . .   | §122        |
| (f) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §124        |
| (i) Expropriation Procedure Act . . . . .                         | §124        |
| (ii) Municipal Expropriation Act . . . . .                        | §126        |
| (iii) Expropriation Act . . . . .                                 | §127        |
| (iv) Other Statutes . . . . .                                     | §128        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IV. Expropriation Procedure . . . . .</b>                      | <b>§129</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §129        |
| (a) Pre-Expropriation . . . . .                                   | §129        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (b) Post-Expropriation . . . . .                        | §130 |
| 2. Federal . . . . .                                    | §131 |
| (a) Pre-Expropriation . . . . .                         | §131 |
| (i) Notice of Intention to Expropriate . . . . .        | §131 |
| (ii) Filing of Objection . . . . .                      | §137 |
| (iii) Public Hearing . . . . .                          | §139 |
| A. General . . . . .                                    | §139 |
| B. Dispensing with Hearing . . . . .                    | §144 |
| (iv) Confirmation of Intention to Expropriate . . . . . | §146 |
| (v) Registration of Confirmation . . . . .              | §149 |
| (vi) Abandonment of Intention to Expropriate . . . . .  | §153 |
| (vii) Entry for Survey . . . . .                        | §161 |
| (b) Post-Expropriation . . . . .                        | §162 |
| (i) Entry for Appraisal . . . . .                       | §162 |
| (ii) Statutory Offer of Compensation . . . . .          | §163 |
| (iii) Clarification of State of Title . . . . .         | §174 |
| (iv) Possession . . . . .                               | §176 |
| (v) Warrant for Possession . . . . .                    | §179 |
| (vi) Negotiation of Compensation . . . . .              | §180 |
| (vii) Procedure in Federal Court . . . . .              | §186 |
| 3. Alberta . . . . .                                    | §187 |
| (a) Pre-Expropriation . . . . .                         | §187 |
| (i) Notice of Intention to Expropriate . . . . .        | §187 |
| (ii) Filing Objection . . . . .                         | §190 |
| (iii) Public Inquiry . . . . .                          | §191 |
| A. General . . . . .                                    | §191 |
| B. Dispensing with Inquiry . . . . .                    | §203 |
| (iv) Approval of Intention to Expropriate . . . . .     | §206 |
| (v) Registration of Certificate of Approval . . . . .   | §210 |
| (vi) Abandonment . . . . .                              | §216 |
| (vii) Entry for Survey . . . . .                        | §220 |
| (viii) Agreement in Lieu of Expropriation . . . . .     | §222 |
| (b) Post-Expropriation . . . . .                        | §227 |
| (i) Notice of Expropriation . . . . .                   | §227 |
| (ii) Determination of Interest in Land . . . . .        | §229 |
| (iii) Proposed Payment . . . . .                        | §231 |

## EXPROPRIATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (iv) Possession . . . . .                                  | §242 |
| (v) Land Compensation Board Procedure . . . . .            | §244 |
| (vi) Divesting . . . . .                                   | §246 |
| 4. British Columbia . . . . .                              | §250 |
| (a) Pre-Expropriation . . . . .                            | §250 |
| (i) Expropriation Notice . . . . .                         | §250 |
| (ii) Request for Inquiry . . . . .                         | §253 |
| (iii) Inquiry . . . . .                                    | §254 |
| A. General . . . . .                                       | §254 |
| B. Dispensing with Inquiry . . . . .                       | §259 |
| (iv) Approval . . . . .                                    | §260 |
| (v) Abandonment . . . . .                                  | §261 |
| (vi) Entry for Survey . . . . .                            | §262 |
| (vii) Agreement in Lieu of Expropriation . . . . .         | §263 |
| (b) Post-Expropriation . . . . .                           | §267 |
| (i) Advance Payment . . . . .                              | §267 |
| (ii) Vesting and Possession . . . . .                      | §270 |
| (iii) Injunction . . . . .                                 | §274 |
| (iv) Compensation Procedures . . . . .                     | §275 |
| (v) Divesting After Expropriation . . . . .                | §276 |
| 5. Manitoba . . . . .                                      | §278 |
| (a) Pre-Expropriation . . . . .                            | §278 |
| (i) Declaration of Expropriation . . . . .                 | §278 |
| (ii) Notice of Intention to Expropriate . . . . .          | §280 |
| (iii) Application to Quash Declaration . . . . .           | §284 |
| (iv) Inquiry . . . . .                                     | §285 |
| A. General . . . . .                                       | §285 |
| B. Dispensing with Inquiry . . . . .                       | §290 |
| (v) Confirmation of Declaration of Expropriation . . . . . | §291 |
| (vi) Registration of Declaration . . . . .                 | §293 |
| (vii) Abandonment . . . . .                                | §302 |
| (viii) Entry for Survey . . . . .                          | §305 |
| (ix) Extension of Time . . . . .                           | §306 |
| (x) Agreement . . . . .                                    | §311 |
| (b) Post-Expropriation . . . . .                           | §312 |
| (i) Notice of Expropriation . . . . .                      | §312 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (ii) Entry for Appraisal . . . . .                                | §313 |
| (iii) Statutory Offer of Compensation . . . . .                   | §314 |
| (iv) Possession . . . . .   | §318 |
| (v) Procedure Before Land Value Appraisal<br>Commission . . . . . | §322 |
| 6. Ontario . . . . .  | §332 |
| (a) Pre-Expropriation . . . . .                                   | §332 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §332 |
| (ii) Objection . . . . .  | §334 |
| (iii) Public Inquiry . . . . .                                    | §335 |
| A. General . . . . .  | §335 |
| B. Dispensing with Inquiry . . . . .                              | §340 |
| (iv) Certificate of Approval . . . . .                            | §341 |
| (v) Registration of Plan . . . . .                                | §344 |
| (vi) Abandonment of Intention to Expropriate . . . . .            | §350 |
| (vii) Compensation of \$1,000 or Less . . . . .                   | §354 |
| (b) Post-Expropriation . . . . .                                  | §355 |
| (i) Notice of Expropriation . . . . .                             | §355 |
| (ii) Right of Entry for Appraisal . . . . .                       | §356 |
| (iii) Statutory Offer of Compensation . . . . .                   | §357 |
| (iv) Possession . . . . .   | §361 |
| (v) Procedure Before Board of Negotiation . . . . .               | §362 |
| (vi) Procedure Before Ontario Municipal Board . . . . .           | §367 |
| (vii) Setting Aside or Quashing Proceedings . . . . .             | §373 |
| 7. Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §374 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §374 |
| (b) Expropriation Procedure Act . . . . .                         | §375 |
| (i) Restriction on Expropriation . . . . .                        | §375 |
| (ii) Notice of Intention to Enter Upon Land . . . . .             | §376 |
| (iii) Public and Private Rights Board . . . . .                   | §377 |
| (iv) Declaration of Expropriation . . . . .                       | §379 |
| (v) Notice of Possession or Dedication . . . . .                  | §384 |
| (vi) Notice of Compulsory Acquisition . . . . .                   | §385 |
| (vii) Abandonment . . . . .                                       | §386 |
| (viii) Warrant for Possession . . . . .                           | §388 |
| (ix) Statutory Offer of Compensation . . . . .                    | §390 |

EXPROPRIATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (x) Tender . . . . .  | §391        |
| (xi) Appraisal . . . . .  | §394        |
| (xii) Action for Compensation . . . . .                                 | §397        |
| (xiii) Mines and Minerals . . . . .                                     | §403        |
| (c) Expropriation Act . . . . .   | §405        |
| (i) Preliminary Procedure . . . . .                                     | §405        |
| (ii) Arbitration . . . . .  | §412        |
| (iii) Payment into Court . . . . .                                      | §415        |
| (iv) Adjudication of Claims . . . . .                                   | §418        |
| (v) Proceedings in Case of Resistance . . . . .                         | §419        |
| (d) Municipal Expropriation Act . . . . .                               | §422        |
| (i) Expropriation By-Law . . . . .                                      | §422        |
| (ii) Notice to Owners . . . . .   | §423        |
| (iii) Possession and Warrant for Possession . . . . .                   | §425        |
| (iv) Survey . . . . .   | §426        |
| (v) Vesting of Title . . . . .  | §429        |
| (vi) Compensation Claims . . . . .                                      | §430        |
| (vii) Payment into Court . . . . .                                      | §434        |
| (viii) Abandonment . . . . .  | §435        |
| <b>V. Validity of Expropriation . . . . .</b>                           | <b>§436</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §436        |
| 2. Failure to Make Reasonable Effort to Negotiate with Owner . . . . .  | §438        |
| 3. Improper Purpose . . . . .   | §440        |
| 4. Non-Compliance with Statutory Provisions . . . . .                   | §442        |
| 5. Bad Faith . . . . .  | §444        |
| 6. Estoppel . . . . .   | §445        |
| <b>VI. Surface Rights of Entry and Easements: Partial Takings . . .</b> | <b>§446</b> |
| 1. Surface Rights of Entry . . . . .                                    | §446        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §446        |
| (b) Provincial . . . . .  | §449        |
| 2. Pipeline Easements and Other Rights-of-Way . . . . .                 | §456        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §456        |
| (b) Federal . . . . .   | §457        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Alberta . . . . .   | §463        |
| (d) British Columbia . . . . .  | §465        |
| (e) Manitoba . . . . .  | §468        |
| (f) Ontario . . . . .   | §471        |
| (g) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §482        |
| 3. Compensation for Partial Takings . . . . .                                 | §483        |
| (a) Role of Statutory Boards and Courts on Appeal . . . . .                   | §483        |
| (b) Approaches to Valuation . . . . .   | §484        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §484        |
| (ii) Surface Rights of Entry . . . . .  | §485        |
| (c) Land Value . . . . .  | §488        |
| (d) Loss of Use . . . . .   | §489        |
| (e) General Disturbance . . . . .   | §490        |
| (f) Adverse Effect . . . . .  | §491        |
| (g) Global Awards . . . . .   | §492        |
| (h) Individual Settlements; Pattern of Dealings; Area<br>Agreements . . . . . | §493        |
| (i) Pipeline Easements and Other Rights-of-Way . . . . .                      | §496        |
| (j) Residual and Reversionary Value . . . . .                                 | §501        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Determination of Compensation . . . . .</b>                           | <b>§504</b> |
| 1. Tribunals and Courts . . . . .   | §504        |
| (a) Federal . . . . .   | §504        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .   | §505        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .  | §508        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .  | §509        |
| (e) Ontario . . . . .   | §510        |
| (f) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §511        |
| 2. Date of Valuation . . . . .  | §515        |
| (a) Federal . . . . .   | §515        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .   | §519        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .  | §521        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .  | §522        |
| (e) Ontario . . . . .   | §523        |
| (f) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §526        |
| 3. Market Value . . . . .   | §527        |

## EXPROPRIATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (a) Federal .....  | §527 |
| (b) Alberta .....  | §528 |
| (c) British Columbia .....                                   | §529 |
| (d) Manitoba .....   | §530 |
| (e) Ontario .....  | §531 |
| (f) Saskatchewan .....                                       | §532 |
| (g) Highest and Best Use .....                               | §534 |
| (i) General .....  | §534 |
| (ii) Special Adaptability and Special Suitability .....      | §538 |
| (h) Factors to be Excluded in Determining Market Value ..... | §540 |
| (i) Value to Taker .....                                     | §540 |
| (ii) Illegal Use .....                                       | §544 |
| (iii) Development of Other Land .....                        | §546 |
| (iv) Land Use By-law .....                                   | §547 |
| (v) Improvements After Expropriation Notice .....            | §548 |
| (i) Co-operative Developments .....                          | §549 |
| (j) “Before-and-After” Method .....                          | §550 |
| 4. Valuation Approaches .....                                | §551 |
| (a) General .....  | §551 |
| (b) Direct Sales Comparison Approach .....                   | §552 |
| (c) Income Approach .....                                    | §556 |
| 5. Injurious Affection .....                                 | §560 |
| (a) General .....  | §560 |
| (i) Partial Taking and Severance .....                       | §560 |
| (ii) Remoteness Of Damage .....                              | §575 |
| (iii) Compensation At Common Law .....                       | §576 |
| (b) Federal .....  | §577 |
| (i) General .....  | §577 |
| (ii) Market Value .....                                      | §578 |
| (iii) Decrease in Value of Remaining Land .....              | §579 |
| (c) Alberta .....  | §586 |
| (d) British Columbia .....                                   | §588 |
| (i) Where Land Taken .....                                   | §588 |
| (ii) Where no Land Taken .....                               | §592 |
| (e) Manitoba .....   | §595 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (i) General .....                             | §595        |
| (ii) Where Land Taken .....                   | §597        |
| (iii) Where No Land Taken .....               | §598        |
| (iv) Betterment .....                         | §599        |
| (f) Ontario .....                             | §600        |
| (i) General .....                             | §600        |
| (ii) Where Land Taken .....                   | §606        |
| (iii) Where No Land Taken .....               | §607        |
| (iv) Betterment .....                         | §609        |
| (g) Saskatchewan .....                        | §610        |
| (h) Interference with Access .....            | §612        |
| (i) Duty to Mitigate Loss .....               | §614        |
| 6. Disturbance Damages .....                  | §615        |
| (a) General .....                             | §615        |
| (b) Double Recovery .....                     | §622        |
| (c) Conditions Precedent to Claim .....       | §626        |
| (d) Who May Claim .....                       | §628        |
| (e) Business Loss .....                       | §629        |
| (f) Occupiers and Tenants .....               | §633        |
| (g) Reinstatement .....                       | §635        |
| (i) General .....                             | §635        |
| (ii) Measure of Compensation .....            | §641        |
| A. General .....                              | §641        |
| B. Alternative Accommodation .....            | §643        |
| C. Date of Determination of Value .....       | §649        |
| D. Cost of Moving .....                       | §653        |
| E. Cost Deduction for Improved Position ..... | §655        |
| F. Allowance for Early Possession .....       | §656        |
| (h) “Home-for-a-Home” Provision .....         | §657        |
| 7. Special Economic Advantage .....           | §664        |
| 8. Scope of Appeal .....                      | §667        |
| <b>VIII. Mitigation .....</b>                 | <b>§675</b> |
| 1. Duty to Mitigate Loss .....                | §675        |
| 2. Set-Off .....                              | §680        |
| (a) Federal .....                             | §680        |

EXPROPRIATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Provincial . . . . .                              | §682        |
| <b>IX. Expropriation of Leases . . . . .</b>          | <b>§685</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                  | §685        |
| 2. Market Value . . . . .                             | §690        |
| 3. Disturbance Damages . . . . .                      | §700        |
| 4. Frustration . . . . .                              | §712        |
| <b>X. Expropriation of Secured Property . . . . .</b> | <b>§714</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                  | §714        |
| 2. Outstanding Balance Method . . . . .               | §716        |
| (a) Federal . . . . .                                 | §716        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                 | §716        |
| (ii) Compensation to Mortgagee . . . . .              | §717        |
| (iii) Compensation to Mortgagor . . . . .             | §720        |
| (iv) Discharge of Mortgage . . . . .                  | §722        |
| (b) Manitoba . . . . .                                | §723        |
| (i) Compensation to Security-Holder . . . . .         | §723        |
| (ii) Effect of Expropriation on Security . . . . .    | §728        |
| (c) Ontario . . . . .                                 | §730        |
| (i) Compensation to Security-Holder . . . . .         | §730        |
| (ii) Compensation to Mortgagor . . . . .              | §739        |
| 3. Market Value Method . . . . .                      | §740        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                                 | §740        |
| (i) Separate Valuation . . . . .                      | §740        |
| (ii) Compensation to Security-Holder . . . . .        | §741        |
| (iii) Deficiency Relief . . . . .                     | §743        |
| (iv) Partial Expropriation . . . . .                  | §744        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                        | §745        |
| (i) Valuation . . . . .                               | §745        |
| (ii) Compensation to Security-Holder . . . . .        | §746        |
| (iii) Deficiency Relief . . . . .                     | §747        |
| (iv) Partial Expropriation . . . . .                  | §748        |
| 4. Saskatchewan . . . . .                             | §749        |
| <b>XI. Interest . . . . .</b>                         | <b>§751</b> |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1. Common Law                                       | §751        |
| 2. Federal  | §752        |
| (a) Expropriation Act                               | §752        |
| (b) National Energy Board Act                       | §761        |
| 3. Alberta  | §763        |
| (a) Expropriation Act                               | §763        |
| (b) Surface Rights Act                              | §768        |
| 4. British Columbia                                 | §769        |
| 5. Manitoba   | §773        |
| (a) Expropriation Act                               | §773        |
| (b) Surface Rights Act                              | §777        |
| 6. Ontario  | §778        |
| 7. Saskatchewan                                     | §786        |
| 8. Interest on Compensation for Abandonment         | §787        |
| <b>XII. Costs</b>                                   | <b>§788</b> |
| 1. General  | §788        |
| 2. Federal  | §789        |
| (a) Expropriation Act                               | §789        |
| (b) National Energy Board Act                       | §793        |
| 3. Alberta  | §794        |
| (a) Expropriation Act                               | §794        |
| (b) Surface Rights Act                              | §804        |
| 4. British Columbia                                 | §807        |
| (a) Expropriation Act                               | §807        |
| (b) Petroleum and Natural Gas Act                   | §814        |
| 5. Manitoba   | §815        |
| (a) Expropriation Act                               | §815        |
| (b) Surface Rights Act                              | §819        |
| 6. Ontario  | §821        |
| 7. Saskatchewan                                     | §829        |
| (a) Expropriation Procedure Act                     | §829        |
| (b) Expropriation Act                               | §831        |
| (c) Municipal Expropriation Act                     | §832        |
| (d) Surface Rights Acquisition and Compensation Act | §834        |

**Index**

## EXPROPRIATION

---

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Mines and Minerals; Municipal Corporations; Oil and Gas; Planning and Zoning.

# EXTRADITION

prepared by  
Thomas Beveridge, B.A., LL.B., LL.M. (London)  
*Member of the Law Society of Upper Canada*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Treaties and Related Documents

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Extradition Generally</b> . . . . .                           | §1  |
| 1. Nature and Purpose of Extradition . . . . .                      | §1  |
| 2. The Basis for Extradition from Canada . . . . .                  | §2  |
| (a) Extradition Agreement . . . . .                                 | §2  |
| (b) Specific Agreement . . . . .                                    | §3  |
| (c) Extradition Partner . . . . .                                   | §4  |
| (d) State or Entity . . . . .                                       | §5  |
| (e) Extraditable Conduct . . . . .                                  | §6  |
| (f) Interpretation of Treaties and Statutes . . . . .               | §7  |
| <b>II. Extradition from Canada</b> . . . . .                        | §8  |
| 1. Apprehension of the Person . . . . .                             | §8  |
| (a) Provisional and Straight Arrest . . . . .                       | §8  |
| (b) Approval to Apply for Provisional Arrest Warrant . . . . .      | §10 |
| (c) Issuance by the Court of a Provisional Arrest Warrant . . . . . | §11 |
| (d) Provisional Arrest Time Limits . . . . .                        | §12 |
| (e) Straight Arrest: Authority to Proceed . . . . .                 | §13 |
| (f) Issuance of Summons or Warrant by the Court . . . . .           | §15 |
| (g) Judicial Interim Release . . . . .                              | §17 |
| (h) Review of Judicial Interim Release or Detention . . . . .       | §21 |
| 2. The Extradition Hearing . . . . .                                | §23 |
| (a) The Function of the Authority to Proceed . . . . .              | §23 |

## EXTRADITION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (b) General Principles Applicable to Extradition Hearings . . . . .             | §30  |
| (c) Charter Jurisdiction of Extradition Judge . . . . .                         | §35  |
| (d) Test for Committal — Person Sought for Prosecution . . . . .                | §39  |
| (e) Test for Committal — Persons Already Convicted . . . . .                    | §45  |
| (f) Degree of Proof . . . . .   | §48  |
| (g) Judge’s Report . . . . .  | §50  |
| (h) Property . . . . .  | §52  |
| 3. Evidence at the Extradition Hearing . . . . .                                | §53  |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §53  |
| (b) Record of the Case . . . . .  | §56  |
| (c) Evidence Pursuant to Treaty . . . . .                                       | §61  |
| (d) Evidence on Behalf of the Person Sought . . . . .                           | §66  |
| (e) Authentication . . . . .  | §68  |
| (f) Exclusion of Extradition Partner’s Evidence . . . . .                       | §69  |
| (g) Evidence Unrelated to the Extradition Judge’s Function . . . . .            | §70  |
| 4. Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms . . . . .                            | §71  |
| 5. Minister’s Authority to Surrender . . . . .                                  | §74  |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §74  |
| (b) Timing . . . . .  | §75  |
| (c) Manner in which Decision is Made . . . . .                                  | §78  |
| (d) Refusal to Surrender . . . . .  | §81  |
| (e) Mandatory Refusal . . . . .   | §82  |
| (f) Discretionary Refusal . . . . .   | §84  |
| (g) When Person is Canadian Citizen and could be Prosecuted in Canada . . . . . | §86  |
| (h) Considerations When the Person is a Refugee Claimant . . . . .              | §87  |
| (i) Assurances and Conditions . . . . .   | §88  |
| (j) Surrender Order . . . . .   | §89  |
| 6. Appeals and Judicial Review . . . . .  | §92  |
| (a) Appeals from Committal . . . . .  | §92  |
| (b) Judicial Review of the Minister’s Order . . . . .                           | §98  |
| (c) Appeals to Supreme Court of Canada . . . . .                                | §102 |
| 7. Surrender . . . . .  | §103 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 8. Temporary Surrender . . . . .            | §105        |
| 9. Consents and Waiver . . . . .            | §109        |
| 10. Transit . . . . .                       | §113        |
| <b>III. Extradition to Canada . . . . .</b> | <b>§115</b> |
| 1. Making of Request . . . . .              | §115        |
| 2. Evidence for Request . . . . .           | §117        |
| 3. Effecting Surrender . . . . .            | §118        |
| 4. Temporary Surrender . . . . .            | §119        |
| 5. Specialty . . . . .                      | §121        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* International Law.

# FAMILY LAW — GENERAL

prepared by

Ann C. Wilton, B.A., M.A. (Oxon), LL.B.

*of MacDonald and Partners*

We gratefully acknowledge the contribution of Christine Dobby,  
B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Marriage</b> .....                         | §1  |
| 1. Contract to Marry .....                       | §1  |
| (a) Breach of Promise to Marry .....             | §1  |
| (b) General.....                                 | §9  |
| (c) Damages.....                                 | §13 |
| 2. Marriage Settlements .....                    | §23 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Annulment</b> .....                       | §32 |
| 1. General .....                                 | §32 |
| 2. Jurisdiction .....                            | §35 |
| (a) General .....                                | §35 |
| (b) Domicile.....                                | §36 |
| 3. Validity of Marriage .....                    | §42 |
| (a) General .....                                | §42 |
| (b) Jurisdiction and Authority to Solemnize..... | §43 |
| (c) Formal Validity.....                         | §45 |
| 4. Grounds for Annulment.....                    | §51 |
| (a) Lack of Parental Consent.....                | §51 |
| (b) Absence of Party's Consent.....              | §54 |
| (i) General.....                                 | §54 |
| (ii) Fraud.....                                  | §55 |

FAMILY LAW — GENERAL

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (iii) Immigration Motive .....                            | §57         |
| (iv) Mental Capacity .....                                | §58         |
| (v) Mistake.....  | §61         |
| (vi) Duress .....   | §62         |
| (c) Inability to Consummate .....                         | §66         |
| (d) Consanguinity and Affinity.....                       | §80         |
| (e) Monogamy .....  | §81         |
| 5. Proof of Marriage, Presumption of Marriage .....       | §88         |
| 6. Judgment.....  | §94         |
| (a) Form .....  | §94         |
| (b) Effect.....   | §96         |
| <b>III. Judicial Separation.....</b>                      | <b>§98</b>  |
| <b>IV. Mediation and Arbitration .....</b>                | <b>§101</b> |
| 1. Mediation.....   | §101        |
| (a) General .....   | §101        |
| (b) Statutory Authorization — Divorce Act .....           | §105        |
| (c) Statutory Authorization — Provincial Legislation..... | §107        |
| 2. Arbitration .....                                      | §112        |
| <b>V. Domestic Contracts .....</b>                        | <b>§114</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §114        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | §114        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                | §116        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §118        |
| (d) Ontario .....   | §119        |
| (i) General.....  | §119        |
| (ii) Marriage Contracts .....                             | §123        |
| (iii) Cohabitation Agreements.....                        | §132        |
| (iv) Separation Agreements .....                          | §136        |
| (v) Paternity Agreements .....                            | §157        |
| (vi) Restrictions on Freedom to Contract in Ontario ....  | §161        |
| (vii) Bars to Remarriage .....                            | §168        |
| (viii) Conflict of Laws .....                             | §170        |
| (ix) Application to Existing Contracts .....              | §173        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| A. General.....  | §173        |
| B. Transfer of Property .....                                      | §179        |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....   | §183        |
| 2. Law of Contract .....   | §185        |
| 3. Validity of Contract .....                                      | §189        |
| (a) Common Law Rules.....  | §189        |
| (b) Statutory Provisions .....                                     | §196        |
| (c) Formal Requirements .....                                      | §199        |
| (d) Authority of Counsel to Bind Client.....                       | §206        |
| (e) Capacity of Minors and Incompetent Persons .....               | §210        |
| 4. Effect of Contract .....  | §212        |
| (a) Bar to Claims Under Act .....                                  | §212        |
| (b) Enforcement and Variation .....                                | §216        |
| 5. Termination of Agreement .....                                  | §232        |
| <b>VI. Spousal Support Obligations.....</b>                        | <b>§235</b> |
| 1. Overview .....  | §235        |
| (a) General.....   | §235        |
| (b) Jurisdiction and When Support May be Claimed.....              | §237        |
| 2. Definition of Spouse .....                                      | §242        |
| 3. Impact of Separation Agreement.....                             | §250        |
| 4. Entitlement .....   | §256        |
| 5. Objectives of Support .....                                     | §265        |
| (a) Generally .....  | §265        |
| (b) Recognize Contribution of Each Spouse to<br>Relationship ..... | §266        |
| (c) Prioritize Child Support .....                                 | §267        |
| (d) Promote Self-Sufficiency .....                                 | §268        |
| (e) Relieve Financial Hardship .....                               | §274        |
| 6. Factors in Amount and Duration of Support.....                  | §275        |
| (a) Spousal Support Advisory Guidelines .....                      | §275        |
| (b) Circumstances of Parties.....                                  | §278        |
| (c) Current Assets and Means of Parties .....                      | §280        |
| (d) Future Assets and Means of Parties.....                        | §289        |
| (e) Capacity of Dependant to Contribute to Own Support ...         | §292        |
| (f) Respondent’s Capacity to Provide Support .....                 | §297        |



FAMILY LAW — GENERAL

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (g) Age and Physical and Mental Health of Parties.....                 | §302        |
| (h) Needs of Dependant.....  | §304        |
| (i) Availability of Means of Achieving Self-Sufficiency .....          | §305        |
| (j) Support Obligations of Subject Party to Other Persons...           | §311        |
| (k) Desirability of Parent Remaining at Home to Care for<br>Child..... | §312        |
| (l) Contribution to Realization of Party’s Career Potential...         | §313        |
| (m) Length of Cohabitation .....                                       | §316        |
| 7. Conduct.....  | §317        |
| <b>VII. Orders.....</b>  | <b>§319</b> |
| 1. Lump Sum Orders.....  | §319        |
| 2. Limited Term Orders .....   | §326        |
| 3. Transfer and Charging of Property .....                             | §330        |
| 4. Orders for Possession .....   | §331        |
| 5. Retroactive Payments.....   | §332        |
| 6. Insurance Designation.....  | §334        |
| 7. Pension or Benefit Plan Designation .....                           | §335        |
| 8. Effect of Death.....  | §336        |
| 9. Indexing.....   | §337        |
| 10. Interim Orders .....   | §340        |
| 11. Provisional Orders.....  | §351        |
| 12. Non-Harassment Orders.....   | §353        |
| 13. Review and Variation Orders.....                                   | §354        |
| 14. Financial Disclosure.....  | §360        |
| <b>VIII. Enforcement of Support Orders.....</b>                        | <b>§362</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....   | §362        |
| (a) General .....  | §362        |
| (b) Arrears .....  | §365        |
| 2. British Columbia.....   | §367        |
| (a) General .....  | §367        |
| (b) Arrears .....  | §371        |
| 3. Manitoba.....   | §373        |
| (a) General .....  | §373        |
| (b) Arrears .....  | §376        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 4. Ontario.....   | §380 |
| (a) General.....  | §380 |
| (b) Support Deduction Order.....  | §396 |
| (c) Information.....  | §413 |
| (d) Initiating or Discontinuing Automatic Enforcement.....                              | §415 |
| (e) Striking Out Pleadings.....   | §420 |
| (f) Default Hearing.....  | §421 |
| (g) Security.....   | §428 |
| (h) Imprisonment for Non-Payment of Support.....  | §429 |
| (i) Arrest of Absconding Debtors.....   | §430 |
| (j) Garnishment.....  | §432 |
| (k) Appointment of Receiver.....  | §441 |
| (l) Matrimonial Home.....   | §442 |
| (m) Allocation of Funds.....  | §445 |
| (n) Domestic Contracts.....   | §447 |
| (o) Right to Pledge Credit.....   | §452 |
| (p) Liability for Necessities of Minor.....   | §453 |
| (q) Suspension of Driver’s Licence.....   | §454 |
| 5. Saskatchewan.....  | §461 |
| (a) General.....  | §461 |
| (b) Arrears.....  | §465 |
| 6. Federal.....   | §467 |
| 7. Execution and Sale of Lands.....   | §473 |
| 8. Interjurisdictional Support and Reciprocal Enforcement of<br>Maintenance Orders..... | §474 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Arbitration; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Contracts; Children; Conflict of Laws; Devolution of Estates; Evidence; Family Law — Divorce; Family Law — Property; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Immigration and Refugees; Insurance; Limitation of Actions; Parties; Personal Property; Restitution; Trials; Trusts; Wills

# FAMILY LAW — PROPERTY

prepared by  
Ann C. Wilton, B.A., M.A. (Oxon), LL.B.  
*of MacDonald and Partners*  
We gratefully acknowledge the contribution of  
Christine Dobby, B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>I. Overview of Legislation and Bringing the Application.....</b> | <b>\$1</b>  |
| 1. Alberta .....  | \$1         |
| (a) Overview of Legislation and Who May Apply .....                 | \$1         |
| (b) Conflict of Laws.....   | \$15        |
| 2. British Columbia.....  | \$17        |
| (a) Overview of Legislation and Who May Apply .....                 | \$17        |
| (b) Conflict of Laws.....   | \$26        |
| 3. Manitoba.....  | \$31        |
| (a) Overview of Legislation and Who May Apply .....                 | \$31        |
| (b) Conflict of Laws.....   | \$39        |
| 4. Ontario.....   | \$40        |
| (a) Overview of Legislation and Who May Apply .....                 | \$40        |
| (b) Conflict of Laws.....   | \$62        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....   | \$65        |
| (a) Overview of Legislation and Who May Apply .....                 | \$65        |
| (b) Conflict of Laws.....   | \$74        |
| <b>II. Family Property .....</b>                                    | <b>\$77</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....  | \$77        |
| (a) General Property Subject to Legislation.....                    | \$77        |

FAMILY LAW — PROPERTY

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (b) Divisible Property.....  | §85  |
| (i) Pensions .....   | §85  |
| (ii) Severance Payments.....   | §87  |
| (iii) Gifts .....  | §88  |
| (iv) Debts .....   | §89  |
| (c) Exempt Property .....  | §90  |
| (i) General.....   | §90  |
| (ii) Gifts Received from Third Parties .....   | §93  |
| (iii) Inheritance .....  | §95  |
| (iv) Property Prior to Marriage.....   | §98  |
| (v) Tort Awards.....   | §101 |
| (vi) Insurance Policies.....   | §102 |
| (d) Distributable Property .....   | §103 |
| 2. British Columbia.....   | §108 |
| (a) General Property Subject to Legislation.....                                       | §108 |
| (b) Family Property .....  | §112 |
| (i) Share or Interest in Corporation.....  | §112 |
| (ii) Interest in Business .....  | §113 |
| (iii) Refund or Return .....   | §114 |
| (iv) Moneys in a Financial Institution Account.....                                    | §115 |
| (v) Entitlement Under Annuity, Pension, Retirement<br>Savings Plan or Income Plan..... | §116 |
| (vi) Property Conditionally Disposed of by a<br>Spouse.....                            | §120 |
| (vii) Increase in Value of Excluded Property .....                                     | §121 |
| (viii) Trust Property .....  | §122 |
| (c) Excluded Property .....  | §123 |
| (i) General.....   | §123 |
| (ii) Property Acquired Pre-Relationship.....   | §124 |
| (iii) Gifts or Inheritances .....  | §125 |
| (iv) Settlement or Award of Damages for Injury or<br>Loss .....                        | §126 |
| (v) Money Paid Under an Insurance Policy .....   | §127 |
| (vi) Excluded Trust Property .....   | §128 |
| (vii) Discretionary Trust Property .....   | §129 |
| (viii) Property Derived from Excluded Property .....                                   | §130 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (d) Family Debt.....  | §131        |
| 3. Manitoba.....  | §133        |
| (a) General Property Subject to Legislation.....                | §133        |
| (b) Family Assets versus Commercial Assets.....                 | §138        |
| (c) Debts and Liabilities.....                                  | §143        |
| (d) Excluded Property .....                                     | §145        |
| 4. Ontario.....   | §152        |
| (a) General Property Subject to Legislation.....                | §152        |
| (b) Debts and Liabilities .....                                 | §169        |
| (c) Pre-Marital Property .....                                  | §176        |
| (d) Excluded Property .....                                     | §180        |
| (e) Pensions .....  | §190        |
| (f) Matrimonial Home.....                                       | §199        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....   | §210        |
| (a) General Property Subject to Legislation.....                | §210        |
| (b) Exempt Property .....                                       | §222        |
| <b>III. Valuation of Property .....</b>                         | <b>§235</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....  | §235        |
| (a) General Valuation Principles .....                          | §235        |
| (b) Valuation of Pensions .....                                 | §239        |
| 2. British Columbia.....  | §241        |
| (a) General Valuation Principles .....                          | §241        |
| (b) Valuation of Pensions .....                                 | §242        |
| 3. Manitoba.....  | §243        |
| (a) General Valuation Principles .....                          | §243        |
| (b) Valuation of Pensions .....                                 | §249        |
| 4. Ontario.....   | §252        |
| (a) General Valuation Principles .....                          | §252        |
| (i) Introduction.....   | §252        |
| (ii) Fair Market Value.....                                     | §264        |
| (iii) Nature of the Market: Open Market/Notional<br>Market..... | §276        |
| (iv) Special Purchasers.....                                    | §277        |
| (v) Minority Interest in Business.....                          | §278        |
| (vi) Rateable Value .....                                       | §279        |

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (vii) Going Concern Value .....        | \$280 |
| (viii) Liquidation Value .....         | \$281 |
| (ix) Book Value.....                   | \$282 |
| (x) Market Value/Market Price.....     | \$283 |
| (xi) Intrinsic Value .....             | \$285 |
| (xii) Application of Principles .....  | \$286 |
| (b) Valuation of Pensions .....        | \$293 |
| (i) Post January 1, 2012 Regime .....  | \$293 |
| (ii) Pre January 1, 2012 Regime .....  | \$302 |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                  | \$320 |
| (a) General Valuation Principles ..... | \$320 |
| (b) Valuation of Pensions .....        | \$325 |

**IV. Distribution of Property and Factors Affecting Variation**

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>of Share (Unequal Distribution)</b> .....                          | \$328 |
| 1. Alberta .....  | \$328 |
| (a) Basic Principles Governing Distribution .....                     | \$328 |
| (b) Unequal Distribution — Specific Factors to be<br>Considered ..... | \$340 |
| (i) Contribution to the Marriage and Family .....                     | \$340 |
| (ii) Contribution to Business, Farm or Enterprise .....               | \$341 |
| (iii) Contribution to Property .....                                  | \$344 |
| (iv) Financial Resources.....   | \$346 |
| (v) Length of Marriage .....  | \$350 |
| (vi) Post-Separation Acquisitions .....                               | \$351 |
| (vii) Oral or Written Agreements .....                                | \$352 |
| (viii) Fraudulent Preferences.....                                    | \$354 |
| (ix) Previous Distributions .....                                     | \$357 |
| (x) Prior Orders .....  | \$358 |
| (xi) Tax Consequences of Transfer .....                               | \$359 |
| (xii) Dissipation of Property .....                                   | \$360 |
| (xiii) Any Other Factor .....   | \$361 |
| (c) Division of Pensions.....   | \$364 |
| (d) Application of the Act on Death.....                              | \$367 |
| 2. British Columbia.....  | \$372 |
| (a) Basic Principles Governing Distribution .....                     | \$372 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (b) Unequal Distribution — Specific Factors to be Considered .....                                | §376 |
| (i) Duration of Relationship.....   | §376 |
| (ii) Terms of Agreement Between Spouses .....   | §377 |
| (iii) Spouse’s Contribution to Career .....   | §378 |
| (iv) Family Debt Incurred in Normal Course of Relationship .....                                  | §379 |
| (v) Ability to Pay Debt.....  | §380 |
| (vi) Spouse Caused Change in Value of Property or Debt After Separation .....                     | §381 |
| (vii) Spouse Reduced Value in Property or De-feated or Adversely Affected Interest in Property... | §382 |
| (viii) Tax Liability.....   | §383 |
| (ix) Other Factors .....  | §384 |
| (x) Financial Means and Earning Capacity of Spouse.....   | §385 |
| (c) Division of Excluded Property .....   | §386 |
| (d) Division of Pensions .....  | §387 |
| (e) Application of the Act on Death .....   | §400 |
| 3. Manitoba.....  | §401 |
| (a) Basic Principles Governing Distribution .....   | §401 |
| (b) Unequal Distribution — Specific Factors to be Considered .....                                | §408 |
| (i) General.....  | §408 |
| (ii) Spousal Contracts.....   | §413 |
| (iii) Dissipation of Assets .....   | §415 |
| (c) Division of Pensions.....   | §418 |
| (d) Application of the Act on Death.....  | §422 |
| (i) General.....  | §422 |
| (ii) Limitation Period .....  | §424 |
| (iii) Who May Apply .....   | §425 |
| (iv) Statement of Assets and Liabilities.....   | §427 |
| (v) Assets Subject to Accounting and Equalization ...   | §428 |
| (vi) Exempt Assets .....  | §430 |
| (vii) Closing and Valuation Dates .....   | §431 |
| (viii) Deductions.....  | §432 |
| (ix) Altering Equalization .....  | §433 |

FAMILY LAW — PROPERTY

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (x) Priority and Payment.....   | \$434 |
| (xi) Effect on Other Rights.....                                      | \$436 |
| (xii) Effect on Estate Administration .....                           | \$437 |
| (xiii) Intestate Succession Act .....                                 | \$438 |
| (xiv) Homesteads Act.....   | \$439 |
| (e) Partition and Sale of Property.....                               | \$440 |
| 4. Ontario.....   | \$444 |
| (a) Basic Principles Governing Distribution .....                     | \$444 |
| (b) Unequal Distribution — Specific Factors to be<br>Considered ..... | \$461 |
| (i) Failure to Disclose Debts.....                                    | \$461 |
| (ii) Debts Incurred Recklessly or in Bad Faith .....                  | \$462 |
| (iii) Inter-Spousal Gifts .....                                       | \$463 |
| (iv) Intentional or Reckless Depletion of Assets.....                 | \$464 |
| (v) Cohabitation for Less than Five Years .....                       | \$466 |
| (vi) Disproportionate Incurrence of Debts .....                       | \$467 |
| (vii) Written Agreement that is not a Domestic<br>Contract.....       | \$468 |
| (viii) Other Circumstances .....                                      | \$469 |
| (c) Division of Pensions.....   | \$477 |
| (d) Application of the Act on Death.....                              | \$485 |
| (i) Application by Surviving Spouse .....                             | \$485 |
| (ii) Time for Application .....                                       | \$488 |
| (iii) Election.....   | \$490 |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....   | \$504 |
| (a) Basic Principles Governing Distribution .....                     | \$504 |
| (b) Unequal Distribution — Specific Factors to be<br>Considered ..... | \$507 |
| (i) Where Equal Distribution Unfair .....                             | \$507 |
| (ii) The Family Home .....  | \$521 |
| (iii) Exempt Property .....   | \$526 |
| (iv) Spousal Contracts .....  | \$527 |
| (v) Conduct.....  | \$530 |
| (c) Division of Pensions.....   | \$531 |
| (d) Application of the Act on Death.....                              | \$536 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>V. Interim and Possessory Orders</b> .....                          | \$540 |
| 1. Alberta .....   | \$540 |
| (a) Possession of the Matrimonial Home.....                            | \$540 |
| (b) Definition .....   | \$541 |
| (c) Other Interim Orders .....   | \$542 |
| 2. British Columbia .....  | \$543 |
| (a) Possession of the Matrimonial Home.....                            | \$543 |
| (b) Other Interim Orders .....   | \$550 |
| 3. Manitoba.....   | \$551 |
| (a) Possession of the Family Home .....                                | \$551 |
| (b) Other Interim Orders .....   | \$554 |
| 4. Ontario .....   | \$556 |
| (a) Possession of the Matrimonial Home.....                            | \$556 |
| (i) General.....   | \$556 |
| (ii) Statutory Factors .....   | \$574 |
| (iii) Variation of Possessory Order.....                               | \$581 |
| (iv) Effect of Death.....  | \$582 |
| (v) Restrictions on Alienation.....                                    | \$584 |
| (vi) Right of Forfeiture .....   | \$590 |
| (vii) Applications.....  | \$596 |
| (b) Other Interim Orders.....  | \$604 |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....  | \$606 |
| (a) Possession of the Family Home .....                                | \$606 |
| (b) Other Interim Orders.....  | \$612 |
| <br>   |       |
| <b>VI. Partition and Sale and Title to Property</b> .....              | \$615 |
| 1. Western Provinces.....  | \$615 |
| (a) Partition and Sale .....   | \$615 |
| (b) Personal Property .....  | \$634 |
| (c) Title to Property and Married Women’s Property<br>Legislation..... | \$638 |
| 2. Ontario .....   | \$647 |
| <br>   |       |
| <b>VII. Implementation of Equalization Entitlement</b> .....           | \$665 |
| 1. Alberta .....   | \$665 |
| 2. British Columbia .....  | \$666 |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 3. Manitoba.....   | §681        |
| 4. Ontario.....  | §683        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....  | §690        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VIII. Unjust Enrichment and the Presumptions of Advance-<br/>ment and Resulting Trust .....</b> | <b>§693</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....  | §693        |
| 2. Presumption of Resulting Trust and Presumption of<br>Advancement .....                          | §694        |
| 3. Unjust Enrichment: Imposition of Constructive Trust and<br>Other Remedies .....                 | §701        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IX. Homestead Legislation .....</b>   | <b>§705</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §705        |
| 2. Persons Covered by Homestead Legislation.....   | §708        |
| 3. Termination of Homestead Rights .....   | §710        |
| 4. Definition of “Homestead” .....   | §712        |
| 5. Occupancy, Number, and Duration of Homesteads .....   | §717        |
| 6. Rights Under Homestead Legislation .....  | §720        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Children; Conflict of Laws; Costs; Devolution of Estates; Evidence; Execution; Family Law — Divorce; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Gifts; Judgments and Orders; Pensions — Private; Pensions — Public; Real Property; Trusts; Wills

# FEDERAL AND PROVINCIAL TAXATION

prepared by  
Rick Levinson, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and New York Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                              | \$1  |
| 1. Enabling Legislation with Respect to Revenue..... | \$1  |
| 2. Powers of Taxation.....                           | \$2  |
| (a) Federal.....                                     | \$2  |
| (b) Provincial.....                                  | \$17 |
| (c) Priorities.....                                  | \$22 |
| (d) Limitations on Powers.....                       | \$26 |
| 3. Direct and Indirect Taxation.....                 | \$28 |
| 4. Interpretation of Taxing Statutes.....            | \$35 |
| 5. Recovery of Taxes Paid.....                       | \$43 |
| 6. Foreign Penal or Revenue Laws.....                | \$46 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>II. Federal Taxation</b> .....                    | \$48 |
| 1. Income Tax.....                                   | \$48 |
| 2. Customs Duties.....                               | \$49 |
| 3. Excise Duties.....                                | \$51 |
| 4. Anti-Dumping.....                                 | \$53 |
| 5. Commodity Taxes.....                              | \$55 |
| 6. Other Taxes.....                                  | \$56 |
| (a) Payroll.....                                     | \$56 |
| (b) Oil Export Charges.....                          | \$57 |
| (c) Petroleum and Gas.....                           | \$58 |

FEDERAL AND PROVINCIAL TAXATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (d) Insurance Premiums .....                    | \$59        |
| (e) Air Transportation .....                    | \$60        |
| (f) Telecommunication Programming Services..... | \$63        |
| (g) Telecommunication Services .....            | \$65        |
| (h) Goods and Services Tax .....                | \$66        |
| <b>III. Provincial Taxation .....</b>           | <b>\$80</b> |
| 1. Income Tax .....                             | \$80        |
| (a) General .....                               | \$80        |
| (b) Personal Income .....                       | \$84        |
| (c) Corporate Income .....                      | \$85        |
| 2. Corporation Taxes .....                      | \$89        |
| (a) Capital .....                               | \$89        |
| (b) Insurance Companies .....                   | \$95        |
| 3. Commodity Taxes .....                        | \$98        |
| (a) Retail Sales .....                          | \$98        |
| (b) Motive and Other Fuels .....                | \$109       |
| (c) Tobacco and Liquor .....                    | \$113       |
| (d) Hotel and Motel Rooms.....                  | \$115       |
| (e) Interjurisdictional Vehicles.....           | \$116       |
| 4. Natural Resources Revenues .....             | \$117       |
| (a) Mines and Minerals.....                     | \$117       |
| (b) Oil and Gas.....                            | \$122       |
| (c) Logging .....                               | \$126       |
| 5. Miscellaneous .....                          | \$133       |
| (a) Health Insurance Premiums .....             | \$133       |
| (b) Property Taxes.....                         | \$134       |
| (c) Environmental Taxes.....                    | \$140       |
| (d) Lottery and Gaming Statutes .....           | \$143       |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Banking; Business Corporations; Conflict Of Laws; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Crown; Customs And Excise; Employment Insurance; Income Tax; Insurance; Judgments and Orders; Liens; Liquor Control; Mines and Minerals; Municipal and School Taxation; Municipal Corporations; Oil and Gas; Pensions and Retirement Benefits; Railways; Timber; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada

# FIREARMS, WEAPONS AND EXPLOSIVES

prepared by  
Katherine L. Wood, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Firearms Act</b> .....  | §1  |
| 1. General .....  | §1  |
| 2. Authorizations, Licences and Registration Certificates .....   | §2  |
| 3. Eligibility to Hold Licence .....  | §12 |
| (a) Individuals .....   | §12 |
| (b) Businesses .....  | §19 |
| 4. Eligibility to Hold Registration Certificate .....   | §24 |
| 5. Procedure on Refusal to Issue or Revocation of Licence, Au-<br>thorization or Registration Certificate ..... | §25 |
| 6. Term of Licences, Authorizations and Registration<br>Certificates .....                                      | §34 |
| 7. Storage, Display, Carriage, Transportation and Handling of<br>Firearms and Weapons .....                     | §41 |
| (a) Individuals .....   | §41 |
| (b) Businesses .....  | §53 |
| 8. Authorized Transfers .....   | §58 |
| 9. Authorized Lending .....   | §68 |
| 10. Authorized Exportation and Importation .....  | §70 |
| 11. Canadian Firearms Registration System .....   | §79 |
| 12. Inspection .....  | §81 |
| 13. Offences .....  | §85 |
| 14. Regulations .....   | §97 |
| 15. Transitional Provisions .....   | §99 |

FIREARMS, WEAPONS AND EXPLOSIVES

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>II. Criminal Code</b> .....   | §100 |
| 1. Definitions .....   | §100 |
| (a) Firearms .....   | §100 |
| (i) Firearm .....  | §100 |
| (ii) Imitation Firearm .....   | §112 |
| (iii) Antique Firearm .....  | §113 |
| (iv) Replica Firearm .....   | §114 |
| (v) Automatic Firearm .....  | §115 |
| (vi) Handgun .....   | §117 |
| (vii) Restricted Firearm .....   | §118 |
| (viii) Prohibited Firearm .....  | §119 |
| (b) Weapons and Devices .....  | §120 |
| (i) Weapon .....   | §120 |
| (ii) Prohibited Weapon .....   | §123 |
| (iii) Restricted Weapon .....  | §132 |
| (iv) Prohibited Device .....   | §133 |
| (v) Cross-bow .....  | §135 |
| (c) Ammunition .....   | §136 |
| (i) Ammunition .....   | §136 |
| (ii) Prohibited Ammunition .....   | §137 |
| 2. Offences .....  | §138 |
| (a) Use of Firearm During Commission of Offence .....                                    | §138 |
| (b) Careless Use or Storage .....  | §151 |
| (c) Pointing Firearm .....   | §159 |
| (d) Possession of Weapon for Dangerous Purposes .....                                    | §163 |
| (e) Carrying Weapon at Public Meeting .....  | §177 |
| (f) Carrying Concealed Weapon .....  | §178 |
| (g) Unauthorized Possession of Firearm, Prohibited<br>Weapon, or Restricted Weapon ..... | §184 |
| (h) Unauthorized Possession in Motor Vehicle .....                                       | §192 |
| (i) Possession of Prohibited or Restricted Firearm with<br>Ammunition .....              | §197 |
| (j) Possession of Weapon Obtained by Commission of<br>Offence .....                      | §199 |
| (k) Delivery of Firearm to Unauthorized Person .....                                     | §201 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (l) Weapons Trafficking and Unauthorized Transfers . . . . .             | §204        |
| (m) Assembling Offence . . . . .   | §208        |
| (n) Export and Import Offences . . . . .                                 | §209        |
| (o) Offences Relating to Lost, Destroyed or Defaced<br>Weapons . . . . . | §212        |
| (p) Possession Contrary to Prohibition Order . . . . .                   | §214        |
| 3. Regulations . . . . .   | §215        |
| 4. Other Offences . . . . .  | §216        |
| (a) Unlawful Training . . . . .  | §216        |
| (b) Weapons on Aircraft . . . . .  | §217        |
| (c) Causing Disturbance . . . . .  | §218        |
| (d) Causing Bodily Harm with Intent . . . . .                            | §219        |
| (e) Assault with Weapon . . . . .  | §221        |
| (f) Sexual Assault with Weapon . . . . .                                 | §222        |
| (g) Robbery . . . . .  | §223        |
| (h) Disarming a Peace Officer . . . . .                                  | §225        |
| 5. Exempt Persons . . . . .  | §226        |
| 6. Prohibition Orders . . . . .  | §231        |
| (a) Mandatory Orders . . . . .   | §231        |
| (b) Discretionary Orders . . . . .                                       | §235        |
| (c) Preventive Prohibition Orders . . . . .                              | §237        |
| (d) Duration of Prohibition . . . . .                                    | §241        |
| (e) Lifting Orders . . . . .   | §245        |
| (f) Surrender . . . . .  | §246        |
| (g) Violation . . . . .  | §250        |
| 7. Search, Seizure, Disposal and Forfeiture . . . . .                    | §251        |
| (a) Search . . . . .   | §251        |
| (i) Without Warrant . . . . .  | §251        |
| (ii) With Warrant . . . . .  | §257        |
| (b) Seizure . . . . .  | §260        |
| (c) Forfeiture and Disposal . . . . .                                    | §261        |
| <b>III. Civil Liability from Use of Firearms . . . . .</b>               | <b>§265</b> |
| 1. Assault . . . . .   | §265        |
| 2. Trespass to Land . . . . .  | §266        |
| 3. Negligence . . . . .  | §269        |

## FIREARMS, WEAPONS AND EXPLOSIVES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) Negligent Use or Storage of Firearm . . . . .                    | §269        |
| (b) Contributory Negligence . . . . .                                | §275        |
| (c) Parent's Responsibility for Children . . . . .                   | §276        |
| (d) Negligence of Children . . . . .                                 | §278        |
| (e) Ammunition . . . . .   | §279        |
| (f) Police . . . . .   | §281        |
| (g) Sale of Firearms and Product Liability . . . . .                 | §282        |
| <b>IV. Federal Regulation of Explosives . . . . .</b>                | <b>§285</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §285        |
| 2. Definition . . . . .  | §287        |
| 3. Licences and Permits . . . . .                                    | §290        |
| 4. Inspectors . . . . .  | §293        |
| 5. Inquiries into Accidents . . . . .                                | §297        |
| 6. Duty of Care under Criminal Code . . . . .                        | §299        |
| 7. Offences . . . . .  | §300        |
| 8. Regulations . . . . .   | §305        |
| <b>V. Provincial Regulation of Firearms and Explosives . . . . .</b> | <b>§307</b> |
| 1. Alberta . . . . .   | §307        |
| 2. British Columbia . . . . .  | §315        |
| 3. Manitoba . . . . .  | §320        |
| 4. Ontario . . . . .   | §326        |
| 5. Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §333        |
| <b>VI. Liability for Use of Explosives . . . . .</b>                 | <b>§335</b> |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Armed Forces; Criminal Law- Defences; Criminal Law - Offences; Fires; Fish and Game; Negligence.



# FIRES

prepared by  
Kate Welsh, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Civil Liability</b> .....                  | \$1  |
| 1. General .....                                 | \$1  |
| 2. The Rule in Rylands v. Fletcher .....         | \$3  |
| 3. Liability for Negligence.....                 | \$4  |
| (a) General.....                                 | \$4  |
| (b) Liability for Negligent Acts of Others.....  | \$7  |
| (i) Servants.....                                | \$7  |
| (ii) Independent Contractors .....               | \$11 |
| (c) Liability of Particular Parties.....         | \$12 |
| (i) Bailees.....                                 | \$12 |
| (ii) Landlords and Tenants.....                  | \$15 |
| (iii) Fire Departments.....                      | \$21 |
| (d) Proof of Negligence .....                    | \$24 |
| 4. Statutory Modification of Common Law.....     | \$28 |
| 5. Statutory Authority for Use of Fire .....     | \$33 |
| (a) General.....                                 | \$33 |
| (b) Railways.....                                | \$36 |
| (i) At Common Law.....                           | \$36 |
| (ii) Liability Under Statute.....                | \$38 |
| 6. Use of Fire for Agriculture .....             | \$47 |
| <b>II. Fire Prevention and Suppression</b> ..... | \$49 |
| 1. General .....                                 | \$49 |

## FIRES

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Alberta .....  | §53         |
| (a) Emergency Management Act .....                                      | §53         |
| (b) Safety Codes Act .....  | §56         |
| (c) Forest and Prairie Protection Act .....                             | §61         |
| (d) Municipal Government Act .....                                      | §68         |
| 3. British Columbia .....   | §69         |
| (a) Fire Services Act .....   | §69         |
| (b) Forest and Range Practices Act .....                                | §74         |
| (c) Wildfire Act .....  | §78         |
| (d) Local Government Act .....  | §80         |
| 4. Manitoba .....   | §81         |
| (a) Wildfires Act .....   | §81         |
| (b) Fires Prevention and Emergency Response Act .....                   | §87         |
| (c) Municipal Act .....   | §91         |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....   | §92         |
| (a) Fire Prevention Act, 1992 .....                                     | §92         |
| (b) Prairie and Forest Fires Act, 1982 .....                            | §101        |
| 6. Railway Legislation and Regulations of Transport<br>Commission ..... | §108        |
| <b>III. Criminal Code .....</b>   | <b>§109</b> |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Agriculture; Criminal Law; Firearms, Weapons and Explosives; Hotels; Insurance; Negligence; Nuisance; Professions and Occupations; Railways; Timber; War and Emergency

# FISH AND GAME

prepared by  
Jeff Shulman, B.A.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Wildlife Management</b> . . . . . | §1  |
| 1. Provincial Legislation . . . . .     | §1  |
| (a) General . . . . .                   | §1  |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                   | §1  |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .         | §3  |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                | §5  |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .             | §8  |
| (b) Administration . . . . .            | §10 |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                   | §10 |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .         | §16 |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                | §20 |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .             | §23 |
| (c) Licences . . . . .                  | §29 |
| (d) Hunting . . . . .                   | §32 |
| (e) Game Preserves . . . . .            | §38 |
| (f) Offences . . . . .                  | §42 |
| 2. Application of Federal Law . . . . . | §48 |
| (a) General . . . . .                   | §48 |
| (b) Native People . . . . .             | §50 |
| <b>II. Fisheries</b> . . . . .          | §60 |
| 1. Provincial Jurisdiction . . . . .    | §60 |
| (a) Introductory . . . . .              | §60 |
| (b) Ownership of Fisheries . . . . .    | §62 |

FISH AND GAME

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (c) Provincial Regulation . . . . .                  | §68        |
| 2. Federal Jurisdiction . . . . .                    | §71        |
| (a) Introductory . . . . .                           | §71        |
| (b) Federal Statutes and Regulations . . . . .       | §77        |
| <b>III. Game and Domestic Cervid Farms . . . . .</b> | <b>§96</b> |
| 1. Alberta . . . . .                                 | §96        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                | §96        |
| (b) Licensing . . . . .                              | §97        |
| (c) Operation . . . . .                              | §101       |
| (d) Containment and Liability for Trespass . . . . . | §102       |
| 2. British Columbia . . . . .                        | §104       |
| (a) General . . . . .                                | §104       |
| (b) Licensing . . . . .                              | §105       |
| (c) Containment and Escape of Game . . . . .         | §108       |
| (d) Removal of Antlers . . . . .                     | §110       |
| 3. Manitoba . . . . .                                | §111       |
| (a) General . . . . .                                | §111       |
| (b) Licensing . . . . .                              | §112       |
| (c) Operation . . . . .                              | §114       |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agriculture; Animals; Constitutional Law; Criminal Law (Offences); Environmental Law; Firearms, Weapons and Explosives; Sports.

# FRAUD AND MISREPRESENTATION

prepared by  
Kim G. Yelton, B.Sc., J.D.  
*of Alberta and Texas Bars*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Fraudulent Misrepresentation</b> . . . . .                         | §1  |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §1  |
| 2. Specific Elements . . . . .   | §6  |
| (a) Known Falsity . . . . .  | §6  |
| (b) Recklessness of Truth or Falsity . . . . .                           | §10 |
| (c) Materiality . . . . .  | §15 |
| (d) Inducement . . . . .   | §22 |
| 3. Form . . . . .  | §28 |
| (a) Statement of Existing Fact . . . . .                                 | §28 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §28 |
| (ii) Distinguishing Fact From Opinion . . . . .                          | §37 |
| (b) Statement of Law . . . . .   | §50 |
| (c) Silence and Non-Disclosure . . . . .                                 | §51 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §51 |
| (ii) True Situation Discovered After Initial<br>Representation . . . . . | §54 |
| 4. Particular Relationships . . . . .                                    | §56 |
| (a) Sale of Land . . . . .   | §56 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §56 |
| (ii) Known Falsity . . . . .   | §59 |
| (iii) Recklessness of Truth or Falsity . . . . .                         | §64 |
| (iv) Inducement . . . . .  | §65 |
| (v) Materiality . . . . .  | §72 |
| A. General . . . . .   | §72 |

FRAUD AND MISREPRESENTATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| B. Identity of the Parties . . . . .                                       | §76         |
| (vi) Statement of Existing Fact . . . . .                                  | §77         |
| A. General . . . . .   | §77         |
| B. Distinguishing Fact From Opinion . . . . .                              | §78         |
| (vii) Silence and Non-Disclosure . . . . .                                 | §81         |
| A. General . . . . .   | §81         |
| B. Failure to Disclose Secret Profits . . . . .                            | §83         |
| C. Latent Defects . . . . .  | §86         |
| (b) Sale of Business . . . . .   | §90         |
| (c) Fiduciary Relationship . . . . .                                       | §92         |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §92         |
| (ii) Failure to Disclose . . . . .   | §99         |
| 5. Non Est Factum . . . . .  | §100        |
| <b>II. Innocent Misrepresentation . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§106</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §106        |
| 2. Silence and Non-Disclosure . . . . .                                    | §112        |
| <b>III. Negligent Misrepresentation (Hedley Byrne Principle) . . . . .</b> | <b>§114</b> |
| 1. Nature and Extent of Duty of Care . . . . .                             | §114        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §114        |
| (b) Duty of Public Servant or Authority . . . . .                          | §131        |
| 2. Detrimental Reliance . . . . .  | §133        |
| 3. Particular Relationships . . . . .                                      | §138        |
| (a) Sale of Land . . . . .   | §138        |
| (b) Sale of Business . . . . .   | §144        |
| (c) Fiduciary Relationship . . . . .                                       | §146        |
| 4. Relationship Between Contract and Tort . . . . .                        | §147        |
| 5. Causation . . . . .   | §150        |
| <b>IV. Duress and Undue Influence . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§151</b> |
| 1. Duress . . . . .  | §151        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §151        |
| (b) Duress to the Person . . . . .   | §153        |
| (c) Economic Duress . . . . .  | §162        |
| 2. Undue Influence . . . . .   | §167        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .                                     | §167        |
| (b) Presumption of Undue Influence . . . . .              | §173        |
| (c) Factors to be Considered . . . . .                    | §177        |
| (i) Independent Legal Advice . . . . .                    | §177        |
| (ii) Inequality of Bargaining Power . . . . .             | §180        |
| (iii) Nature of Relationship . . . . .                    | §181        |
| A. Husband and Wife . . . . .                             | §181        |
| B. Parent and Child . . . . .                             | §184        |
| C. Family Members . . . . .                               | §186        |
| D. Health Care Provider and Patient . . . . .             | §187        |
| E. Religious Leader and Follower . . . . .                | §189        |
| F. Debtor and Creditor . . . . .                          | §190        |
| (iv) Ratification or Condonation of Transaction . . . . . | §192        |
| (d) Effect of Undue Influence . . . . .                   | §193        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                     | §193        |
| (ii) When Exercised by or on Third Parties . . . . .      | §195        |
| <b>V. Remedies . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§196</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                      | §196        |
| 2. Rescission . . . . .                                   | §199        |
| (a) Availability of Remedy . . . . .                      | §199        |
| (i) Entitlement Generally . . . . .                       | §199        |
| (ii) Executed contract . . . . .                          | §208        |
| A. Requirement of Fraud . . . . .                         | §208        |
| B. Innocent Misrepresentation . . . . .                   | §211        |
| (b) Recoverable Loss . . . . .                            | §215        |
| (i) Equitable Compensation Generally . . . . .            | §215        |
| (ii) Accounting of Profits . . . . .                      | §216        |
| (iii) Damages . . . . .                                   | §217        |
| 3. Damages . . . . .                                      | §218        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                     | §218        |
| (b) Fraudulent Misrepresentation . . . . .                | §224        |
| (c) Negligent Misrepresentation . . . . .                 | §229        |
| (d) Innocent Misrepresentation . . . . .                  | §235        |
| (e) Costs . . . . .                                       | §237        |
| 4. Rectification . . . . .                                | §239        |

FRAUD AND MISREPRESENTATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 5. Burden of Proof . . . . .   | §240        |
| <b>VI. Defences . . . . .</b>  | <b>§248</b> |
| 1. Election to Affirm . . . . .  | §248        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §248        |
| (b) Delay in Repudiating Agreement . . . . .   | §251        |
| (c) Ratification . . . . .   | §259        |
| (d) Knowledge of Fraud . . . . .   | §262        |
| 2. Exclusionary Clauses . . . . .  | §264        |
| 3. Failure to Inspect or Investigate . . . . .   | §267        |
| 4. Contributory Negligence . . . . .   | §268        |
| 5. Impossibility of Restitution as Bar to Rescission . . . . .                               | §270        |
| 6. Miscellaneous Defences . . . . .  | §271        |
| (a) Assignment of Contract . . . . .   | §271        |
| (b) Accord and Satisfaction . . . . .  | §272        |
| (c) Statute of Frauds . . . . .  | §273        |
| (d) Expiry of Limitation Period . . . . .  | §274        |
| <b>VII. Fraud or Misrepresentation as a Defence . . . . .</b>                                | <b>§275</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §275        |
| 2. Rebuttal of Defence . . . . .   | §277        |
| <b>VIII. Pleadings . . . . .</b>   | <b>§278</b> |
| 1. Pleading Fraud and Misrepresentation . . . . .  | §278        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §278        |
| (b) Sufficiency . . . . .  | §282        |
| (i) Specific Form of Pleading . . . . .  | §282        |
| (ii) Request for Particulars . . . . .   | §286        |
| (iii) Striking out Statement of Claim for Absence of<br>Reasonable Cause of Action . . . . . | §287        |
| (c) Amendment of Pleadings . . . . .   | §289        |
| 2. Pleading Fraud on Appeal . . . . .  | §292        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Bills of Exchange; Business Corporations; Children; Contracts; Costs; Deeds and Documents; Evidence; Executors and Administrators; Fraudulent Conveyances; Gifts; Guarantee, Indemnity and Stand-by Letters of Credit; Insurance; Judgments



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

and Orders; Landlord and Tenant; Medicine; Partnership; Pleadings; Practice; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land; Specific Performance; Wills.

# GAMING

prepared by  
Patrick Leech, LL.B., M.L.I.S.  
updated by  
Jay D. Winans, B.A., J.D.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                          | §1  |
| 1. Introduction .....                            | §1  |
| 2. Definitions .....                             | §5  |
| <b>II. Legislative Competence</b> .....          | §10 |
| <b>III. Criminal Offences</b> .....              | §16 |
| 1. Betting .....                                 | §16 |
| 2. Lotteries .....                               | §20 |
| 3. Gambling in Differences .....                 | §27 |
| <b>IV. Gambling Rights and Obligations</b> ..... | §30 |
| <b>V. Licensed Activities</b> .....              | §48 |
| 1. Horse Racing and Betting .....                | §48 |
| 2. Lotteries .....                               | §59 |
| 3. Casinos .....                                 | §81 |

## Index

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Criminal Law - Offences; Elections; Sports.

# GIFTS

prepared by  
Joan E. Dunlop, B.A., LL.B

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                      | §1  |
| 1. Introduction .....                        | §1  |
| 2. Inter Vivos .....                         | §2  |
| 3. Mortis Causa .....                        | §16 |
| (a) General .....                            | §16 |
| (b) Evidence .....                           | §24 |
| 4. Testamentary .....                        | §32 |
| <b>II. Delivery</b> .....                    | §34 |
| 1. Necessity for Delivery .....              | §34 |
| 2. Sufficiency of Delivery .....             | §35 |
| <b>III. Presumptions</b> .....               | §46 |
| 1. Acceptance .....                          | §46 |
| 2. Purchase of Land in Name of Another ..... | §47 |
| 3. Between Husband and Wife .....            | §49 |
| 4. Between Parent and Child .....            | §60 |
| 5. Between Strangers .....                   | §71 |
| <b>IV. Evidence</b> .....                    | §72 |
| 1. General .....                             | §72 |
| 2. Requirement for Corroboration .....       | §75 |
| <b>V. Particular Gifts</b> .....             | §81 |
| 1. Choses in Action .....                    | §81 |

## GIFTS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Shares . . . . .   | §83         |
| 3. Deposit-Note or Passbook . . . . .                       | §85         |
| 4. Cheques . . . . .  | §87         |
| 5. Bills of Exchange and Promissory Notes . . . . .         | §90         |
| 6. Money in Joint Account . . . . .                         | §91         |
| 7. Insurance Policies . . . . .                             | §96         |
| 8. Land . . . . .   | §97         |
| 9. Debt Owed Donor . . . . .                                | §104        |
| 10. Family Property . . . . .                               | §108        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VI. Perfecting of Incomplete Gifts . . . . .</b>         | <b>§110</b> |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Revocation and Setting Aside of Gifts . . . . .</b> | <b>§118</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §118        |
| 2. Mental Incapacity . . . . .                              | §124        |
| 3. Undue Influence . . . . .                                | §127        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                       | §127        |
| (b) Burden of Proof . . . . .                               | §136        |
| (c) Necessity of Independent Advice . . . . .               | §143        |
| 4. Gifts in Contemplation of Marriage . . . . .             | §146        |
| 5. Gifts in Fraud of Creditors or Purchasers . . . . .      | §152        |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Annuities; Bankruptcy And Insolvency; Charities; Children; Contracts; Deeds And Documents; Devolution Of Estates; Elections; Equity; Evidence; Executors And Administrators; Family Law — General; Fraud And Misrepresentation; Fraudulent Conveyances And Preferences; Income Tax; Insurance; Perpetuities And Accumulations; Religious Institutions; Restitution; Secured Transactions In Personal Property; Trusts; Wills

# GUARANTEE, INDEMNITY AND STANDBY LETTERS OF CREDIT

prepared by  
Kevin McGuinness, LL.B., LL.M., S.J.D.  
*Steele Raymond Professor of Business Law Bournemouth University,  
England, Member of the Law Society of Upper Canada and the Law  
Society of England and Wales*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                       | §1  |
| <b>II. Nature of Guarantee Obligations</b> .....   | §3  |
| 1. Definition.....                                 | §3  |
| 2. Classes of Suretyship.....                      | §6  |
| 3. Collateral Nature of Guarantee .....            | §7  |
| 4. Rights of Surety Arising by Motion .....        | §11 |
| 5. Substance Rather than Form or Description.....  | §12 |
| 6. Indemnities Distinguished from Guarantees ..... | §13 |
| <b>III. Essential Features of Guarantee</b> .....  | §15 |
| 1. General .....                                   | §15 |
| 2. Separate Legal Personalities .....              | §16 |
| 3. Capacity of Parties.....                        | §18 |
| 4. Corporate Guarantees.....                       | §19 |
| 5. Certainty of Terms.....                         | §20 |
| 6. Illegality and Public Policy .....              | §22 |
| 7. Offer and Acceptance .....                      | §28 |
| (a) General .....                                  | §28 |
| (b) Offer.....                                     | §31 |

GUARANTEE, INDEMNITY AND STANDBY LETTERS OF CREDIT

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Acceptance .....                           | §37         |
| 8. Privity .....                               | §41         |
| 9. Consideration.....                          | §42         |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IV. Vitiating Factors .....</b>             | <b>§55</b>  |
| 1. Duress and Undue Influence .....            | §55         |
| (a) General .....                              | §55         |
| (b) Duress .....                               | §57         |
| (c) Undue Influence .....                      | §62         |
| (i) General.....                               | §62         |
| (ii) Burden of Proof .....                     | §65         |
| (iii) Special Case of Spousal Guarantees ..... | §69         |
| (iv) Independent Legal Advice .....            | §72         |
| (d) Unconscionable Transactions.....           | §74         |
| 2. Duty to Disclose Information.....           | §78         |
| (a) General .....                              | §78         |
| (b) Secret Arrangements .....                  | §86         |
| (c) Fidelity Guarantees.....                   | §90         |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>V. Interpretation of Guarantee .....</b>    | <b>§93</b>  |
| 1. General .....                               | §93         |
| 2. Recitals .....                              | §99         |
| 3. Contra Proferentem Rule .....               | §102        |
| 4. Extent of Guarantee .....                   | §105        |
| 5. Joint and Several Liability.....            | §106        |
| 6. Mistake .....                               | §109        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VI. Requirements as to Form .....</b>       | <b>§110</b> |
| 1. General .....                               | §110        |
| 2. Requirements of Statute of Frauds.....      | §113        |
| 3. Section 8 of Statute of Frauds .....        | §121        |
| (a) General .....                              | §121        |
| (b) Nature of Written Evidence.....            | §125        |
| (c) Signature Requirement .....                | §128        |
| 4. Promises Beyond Scope of Statute .....      | §130        |
| (a) General .....                              | §130        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Solicitors' Undertakings .....                 | §132        |
| (c) Doctrine of Part Performance .....             | §133        |
| (d) Seal.....                                      | §134        |
| 5. Alberta Guarantees Acknowledgment Act.....      | §135        |
| 6. Saskatchewan Farm Security Act.....             | §139        |
| <b>VII. Parol Evidence Rule .....</b>              | <b>§140</b> |
| 1. General .....                                   | §140        |
| 2. Rectification .....                             | §144        |
| 3. Collateral Contract .....                       | §146        |
| <b>VIII. Liability of Surety .....</b>             | <b>§147</b> |
| 1. General .....                                   | §147        |
| 2. Contingent Nature .....                         | §152        |
| 3. Evidentiary Aspects .....                       | §157        |
| 4. Extent.....                                     | §158        |
| 5. Conditions Precedent and Subsequent .....       | §165        |
| 6. Obligations of Creditor.....                    | §177        |
| 7. Continuing Guarantees.....                      | §180        |
| (a) General .....                                  | §180        |
| (b) Limitation upon Amount.....                    | §181        |
| (c) Limitation by Time and Cancellation.....       | §186        |
| 8. Appropriation of Payments.....                  | §190        |
| 9. Fulfilment of Purpose .....                     | §196        |
| (a) General .....                                  | §196        |
| (b) Set-Off .....                                  | §200        |
| (c) Accord and Satisfaction .....                  | §201        |
| 10. Departure from Guarantee .....                 | §204        |
| 11. Bankruptcy of Surety.....                      | §208        |
| 12. Guarantee Proposal in Bankruptcy.....          | §210        |
| <b>IX. Rights of Surety Against Creditor .....</b> | <b>§212</b> |
| 1. General .....                                   | §212        |
| 2. Origin of Rights .....                          | §213        |
| 3. Rights Before Payment.....                      | §215        |
| 4. Rights Rising on Demand for Payment.....        | §217        |

## GUARANTEE, INDEMNITY AND STANDBY LETTERS OF CREDIT

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 5. Specific Rights .....                           | §219        |
| (a) General .....                                  | §219        |
| (b) Subrogation.....                               | §220        |
| (c) Securities in Favour of Creditor .....         | §223        |
| (d) Assignment of Security .....                   | §227        |
| 6. Duty of Care .....                              | §229        |
| 7. Waiver of Rights.....                           | §232        |
| <b>X. Rights of Surety Against Principal.....</b>  | <b>§233</b> |
| 1. General .....                                   | §233        |
| 2. Right to Indemnification.....                   | §234        |
| 3. Compromise of Claim.....                        | §238        |
| 4. Procedural Considerations .....                 | §241        |
| 5. Bankruptcy of Principal.....                    | §243        |
| <b>XI. Rights among Co-sureties .....</b>          | <b>§246</b> |
| 1. General .....                                   | §246        |
| 2. Contribution.....                               | §247        |
| 3. Insolvency.....                                 | §255        |
| 4. Extension of Time.....                          | §257        |
| 5. Recovery.....                                   | §258        |
| (a) General .....                                  | §258        |
| (b) Legal Obligation to Pay.....                   | §261        |
| (c) Costs and Interest .....                       | §262        |
| (d) Securities Held By Surety.....                 | §263        |
| (e) Disputes among Co-sureties.....                | §264        |
| <b>XII. Defences to Guarantee Action .....</b>     | <b>§265</b> |
| 1. General .....                                   | §265        |
| 2. Non-Fulfilment of Condition.....                | §266        |
| 3. Discharge by Conduct of Creditor .....          | §268        |
| (a) General .....                                  | §268        |
| (b) Material Alteration of Terms of Document ..... | §269        |
| (c) Variation of Terms of Principal Contract ..... | §273        |
| (i) General.....                                   | §273        |
| (ii) Materiality .....                             | §281        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (iii) Acceptable Alterations .....  | §284        |
| (iv) Changes Made With Consent of Surety.....                             | §290        |
| (v) Ratification.....   | §293        |
| (vi) Agreement to Give Time to Principal Debtor .....                     | §294        |
| (d) Breach of Principal Contract .....                                    | §303        |
| (e) Laches .....  | §304        |
| (f) Assignment, Seizure in Execution, etc. ....                           | §308        |
| (g) Change in Position of Parties .....                                   | §311        |
| (h) Loss of Security Held by Creditor .....                               | §316        |
| (i) Discharge of Principal Debtor .....                                   | §325        |
| (i) General.....  | §325        |
| (ii) What Amounts to Discharge .....                                      | §327        |
| (iii) Accord and Satisfaction.....  | §329        |
| (iv) Implied Release .....  | §331        |
| (v) Creditor Conniving in Default of Principal .....                      | §332        |
| (j) Discharge Arising by Operation of Law.....                            | §333        |
| (k) No Right of Discharge in Favour of Surety .....                       | §338        |
| (l) Seize or Sue Legislation .....  | §339        |
| (m) Contractual Waiver of Defence .....                                   | §340        |
| <b>XIII. Indemnities .....</b>  | <b>§341</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §341        |
| 2. Contractual Indemnities Distinguished from Similar<br>Obligations..... | §342        |
| (a) General .....   | §342        |
| (b) Right to Damages.....   | §343        |
| (c) Guarantee .....   | §344        |
| (d) Maintenance of Action.....  | §348        |
| (e) Del Credere Agency .....  | §349        |
| 3. Origin of Right of Indemnity .....                                     | §350        |
| (a) General .....   | §350        |
| (b) Implied Term of Contract .....  | §351        |
| (c) Extent of Liability under Contractual Indemnity .....                 | §353        |
| (d) Indemnification against Costs and Expenses .....                      | §355        |
| (e) Statutory Right of Indemnity .....                                    | §358        |
| (f) Indemnities Arising from Law of Restitution .....                     | §359        |

GUARANTEE, INDEMNITY AND STANDBY LETTERS OF CREDIT

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (g) General Principles of Restitutionary Relief .....               | §361 |
| (h) Indemnification for Money Paid under Compulsion of<br>Law ..... | §364 |
| (i) Other Cases for Restitutionary Relief .....                     | §366 |
| (j) Executors and Trustees .....                                    | §368 |
| (k) Directors and Officers of Corporation .....                     | §374 |
| (l) Quasi-Indemnities.....  | §375 |
| (m) Sale and Supply of Goods.....                                   | §376 |
| (n) Negotiable Instruments.....                                     | §377 |
| 4. Indemnity in Respect of Illegal Conduct.....                     | §378 |
| 5. Indemnification Against Own Negligence.....                      | §380 |
| 6. Assignment of Right of Indemnity .....                           | §382 |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| <b>XIV. Letters of Credit .....</b>                | <b>§384</b> |
| 1. General .....                                   | §384        |
| 2. Standardization of International Practice ..... | §385        |
| 3. Definitions .....                               | §387        |
| (a) General.....                                   | §387        |
| (b) Surety Bond.....                               | §388        |
| (c) Letter of Comfort or Letter of Intent .....    | §395        |
| (d) Letter of Credit.....                          | §396        |
| 4. Classes of Letters of Credit.....               | §399        |
| (a) General .....                                  | §399        |
| (b) Commercial Letters of Credit.....              | §400        |
| (c) Documentary Nature of Liability.....           | §412        |
| (d) Standby Letters of Credit.....                 | §420        |
| 5. Anatomy of Letter of Credit .....               | §423        |
| 6. “Autonomous Liability” .....                    | §426        |
| 7. Fraud.....                                      | §429        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Bills of Exchange; Building Contracts; Business Corporations; Companies’ Creditors Arrangement Act; Conflict of Laws; Contracts; Debtor and Creditor; Deeds and Documents; Equity; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Judgments and Orders; Limitation of Actions; Mortgages; Parties; Restitution; Sale of Land; Secured Transactions in Personal Property

# HIGHWAYS AND STREETS

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Definitions</b> .....                            | §1  |
| 1. Highway .....                                       | §1  |
| 2. Other Terms .....                                   | §6  |
| (a) Road Allowance .....                               | §6  |
| (b) Roadway .....                                      | §10 |
| (c) Road .....   | §11 |
| (d) Street .....                                       | §13 |
| (e) Lane.....  | §15 |
| (f) Sidewalk .....                                     | §16 |
| <b>II. Establishment of Highways</b> .....             | §18 |
| 1. By Dedication Generally .....                       | §18 |
| (a) What Must Be Proved.....                           | §18 |
| (b) Acceptance.....                                    | §32 |
| (c) Presumption from User .....                        | §38 |
| (d) Dedication by Crown .....                          | §50 |
| 2. Dedication by Plan.....                             | §58 |
| 3. Dedication Under Statute.....                       | §68 |
| <b>III. Opening and Construction of Highways</b> ..... | §71 |
| 1. General .....                                       | §71 |
| 2. Provincial Legislation .....                        | §76 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                       | §76 |

## HIGHWAYS AND STREETS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) British Columbia .....  | §81         |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §84         |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | §86         |
| 3. Road Allowances and Streets.....   | §88         |
| 4. By-laws.....   | §90         |
| (a) Necessity .....   | §90         |
| (b) Validity .....  | §91         |
| (c) Miscellaneous.....  | §97         |
| 5. Determination of Boundaries.....   | §99         |
| 6. Compensation to Owners of Land .....   | §102        |
| <b>IV. Title to Highways.....</b>   | <b>§103</b> |
| 1. Statutory Provisions .....   | §103        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | §103        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | §108        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §111        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | §114        |
| 2. Common Law.....  | §116        |
| <b>V. Trans-Canada Highway.....</b>   | <b>§123</b> |
| 1. Federal Legislation.....   | §123        |
| 2. Provincial Legislation .....   | §124        |
| <b>VI. Closing, Widening, Altering, Diverting and Improving<br/>    Highways.....</b> | <b>§125</b> |
| 1. By-laws.....   | §125        |
| (a) General .....   | §125        |
| (b) Power to Pass .....   | §126        |
| (c) Necessity .....   | §128        |
| (d) Validity .....  | §129        |
| (e) Notice as Essential to Validity .....   | §135        |
| 2. Closing.....   | §138        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | §138        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | §141        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §143        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | §145        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (e) General .....                                    | \$148 |
| 3. Widening, Altering, Diverting and Improving ..... | \$163 |
| (a) General .....                                    | \$163 |
| (b) Widening.....                                    | \$164 |
| (c) Altering and Diverting .....                     | \$170 |
| (d) Improving.....                                   | \$173 |
| <b>VII. Use of Highways</b> .....                    | \$176 |
| 1. General .....                                     | \$176 |
| 2. By Vehicles .....                                 | \$187 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                     | \$187 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                           | \$191 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                   | \$193 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                | \$194 |
| 3. By Public Utilities.....                          | \$196 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                     | \$196 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                           | \$199 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                   | \$200 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                | \$201 |
| 4. By Railways .....                                 | \$205 |
| 5. Telecommunication Companies.....                  | \$208 |
| 6. Obstructions.....                                 | \$209 |
| 7. Removal of Obstructions .....                     | \$219 |
| <b>VIII. Maintenance and Repair</b> .....            | \$226 |
| 1. Duty to Maintain and Repair.....                  | \$226 |
| (a) Duty of Municipality .....                       | \$226 |
| (b) Duty of Minister.....                            | \$230 |
| (c) Duty of Individuals.....                         | \$234 |
| 2. Extent of Duty.....                               | \$235 |
| 3. Roads to Which Duty Applicable .....              | \$252 |
| 4. Duty to Build or Repair Bridges.....              | \$255 |
| 5. Persons to Whom Duty Owed.....                    | \$268 |
| 6. What Constitutes Non-repair Generally .....       | \$271 |
| 7. Absence of Guard-Rail as Non-Repair .....         | \$282 |
| (a) General .....                                    | \$282 |

HIGHWAYS AND STREETS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Legislation .....   | §283        |
| <b>IX. Injuries from Defects or Obstructions.....</b>                   | <b>§285</b> |
| 1. Liability of Municipality.....                                       | §285        |
| (a) General .....   | §285        |
| (b) Where Statutory Duty to Repair Imposed.....                         | §294        |
| (c) Nuisance Apart from Statutory Duty to Repair .....                  | §300        |
| (d) Negligence Apart from Statutory Duty to Repair .....                | §310        |
| (e) Notice of Defect .....  | §316        |
| (f) Statutory Restrictions on Liability .....                           | §324        |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §324        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §330        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §331        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §332        |
| 2. Liability of Person or Company Causing Obstruction or<br>Danger..... | §335        |
| 3. Liability of Municipality and Other Party .....                      | §346        |
| (a) General .....   | §346        |
| (b) Independent Contractor .....  | §348        |
| (c) Municipality's Remedy Over .....                                    | §350        |
| (d) Contribution between Municipalities.....                            | §352        |
| 4. Injuries from Snow and Ice.....                                      | §354        |
| <b>X. Remedies for Injuries or Obstructions.....</b>                    | <b>§362</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §362        |
| 2. Notice of Claim and Injury .....                                     | §368        |
| (a) Necessity for Notice.....   | §368        |
| (b) Sufficiency of Notice .....   | §372        |
| 3. Limitation of Actions.....   | §380        |
| (a) General .....   | §380        |
| (b) Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms .....                       | §381        |
| 4. Defences .....   | §383        |
| (a) Volenti Non Fit Injuria .....                                       | §383        |
| (b) Contributory Negligence .....                                       | §384        |
| (c) Unlawful Use of Highway .....                                       | §387        |
| (d) Statutory Authority.....  | §390        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**XI. Rights and Obligations of Abutting Owners** ..... §391

- 1. Right of Access..... §391
- 2. Right to Support of Highway..... §399
- 3. Right to Maintenance of Trees..... §400
- 4. Duty to Protect Public ..... §401
- 5. Encroachments ..... §406

**Index**

*Related titles:* Animals; Boundaries and Surveys; Children; Drainage; Easements; Expropriation; Motor Vehicles; Municipal and School Taxes; Municipal Corporations; Negligence; Nuisance; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Public Utilities; Railways; Real Property; Torts; Waters and Watercourses.

# HOSPITALS

prepared by  
Nicky Brink, B.Sc. (O.T.), LL.B.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Establishment and Operation</b> ..... | §1  |
| 1. Hospitals .....                          | §1  |
| (a) Alberta .....                           | §1  |
| (b) British Columbia .....                  | §3  |
| (c) Manitoba .....                          | §7  |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....                      | §9  |
| 2. Other Institutions .....                 | §11 |
| 3. Powers of Hospital Board .....           | §16 |
| 4. Labour Relations .....                   | §17 |
| 5. Patients' Records .....                  | §18 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Medical Staff Privileges</b> .....   | §21 |
| 1. General .....                            | §21 |
| 2. Appointments .....                       | §22 |
| (a) Alberta .....                           | §22 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                  | §24 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                          | §25 |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....                      | §26 |
| 3. Revocation .....                         | §27 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>III. Liability</b> .....                 | §30 |
| 1. Limitation of Actions .....              | §30 |
| 2. Direct Liability .....                   | §36 |
| (a) General .....                           | §36 |



## HOSPITALS

---

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| (b) Occupiers' Liability . . . . .           | §42 |
| (c) Consent . . . . .                        | §47 |
| 3. Vicarious Liability . . . . .             | §53 |
| (a) General . . . . .                        | §53 |
| (b) Doctors, Residents and Interns . . . . . | §54 |
| (c) Nurses . . . . .                         | §58 |
| (d) Others . . . . .                         | §61 |
| (e) Patients . . . . .                       | §62 |
| 4. Patient's Rights . . . . .                | §64 |
| (a) Right to Refuse Treatment . . . . .      | §64 |
| (b) Abortion . . . . .                       | §66 |
| (c) Human Research . . . . .                 | §68 |
| (d) Right to Die . . . . .                   | §69 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Coroners and Medical Examiners; Hospitals and Health Care; Limitation of Actions; Medicine; Mental Incapacity; Negligence; Professions and Occupations; Public Health and Welfare.

# HUMAN RIGHTS

prepared by  
John Gardner, B.A. (Grinnell College), LL.B. (U.B.C.)  
*formerly of the British Columbia Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>I. Introduction: The Concept of Human Rights in Canada.....</b> | <b>\$1</b> |
| 1. Scope of Title.....   | \$1        |
| 2. Human Rights and Civil Liberties .....                          | \$2        |
| 3. Sources of Authority for Canadian Human Rights Law:             |            |
| Constitutional Enactments.....                                     | \$4        |
| 4. Enactment of Federal and Provincial Anti-Discrimination         |            |
| Legislation.....   | \$6        |
| 5. Overview of Prohibited Grounds of Discrimination .....          | \$8        |
| (a) General .....  | \$8        |
| (b) Race .....   | \$9        |
| (i) Prohibitions of Discrimination on the Basis of                 |            |
| Race.....  | \$9        |
| (ii) Definitions of Race .....                                     | \$17       |
| (c) Para-racial Grounds of Discrimination .....                    | \$19       |
| (i) Prohibitions of Discrimination on Para-racial                  |            |
| Grounds.....   | \$19       |
| (ii) Definitions of Para-racial Grounds of                         |            |
| Discrimination.....  | \$27       |
| A. General.....  | \$27       |
| B. Ethnic (Group or Origin) .....                                  | \$28       |
| C. Nationality .....   | \$29       |
| D. Ancestry.....   | \$30       |
| E. Citizenship .....   | \$31       |

## HUMAN RIGHTS

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (d) Religion and Creed.....   | §32  |
| (i) Prohibitions of Discrimination on Grounds of Religion, Religious Belief, and/or Creed ..... | §32  |
| (ii) Definitions of Religion and/or Creed.....  | §40  |
| A. General.....   | §40  |
| B. Religion.....  | §43  |
| C. Creed.....   | §45  |
| (e) Age.....  | §46  |
| (i) Prohibitions of Discrimination Based on Age .....   | §46  |
| (ii) Definition of Age.....   | §53  |
| (f) Sex .....   | §54  |
| (i) Prohibitions of Discrimination Based on Sex.....  | §54  |
| (ii) Definitions of Sex .....   | §61  |
| (g) Sexual Orientation.....   | §63  |
| (i) Prohibitions of Discrimination Based on Sexual Orientation .....                            | §63  |
| (ii) Definition of Sexual Orientation .....   | §70  |
| (h) Gender Identity and Gender Expression .....   | §71  |
| (i) Marital and/or Family Status .....  | §73  |
| (i) Prohibition of Discrimination Based on Marital or Family Status .....                       | §73  |
| (ii) Definition of Marital Status/Family Status .....   | §80  |
| (j) Disability.....   | §81  |
| (i) Prohibition of Discrimination Based on Disability.....                                      | §81  |
| (ii) Definition of Disability.....  | §88  |
| (k) Criminal Conviction(s).....   | §89  |
| (l) Receipt of Social Assistance/Source of Income .....   | §93  |
| (m) Political Association or Activity .....   | §99  |
| (n) Social Disadvantage .....   | §100 |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>II. Concept of Discrimination in Anti-Discrimination Enactments; Foundational Doctrines.....</b> | <b>§102</b> |
| 1. Definitions of Discrimination in Anti-Discrimination Enactments.....                             | §102        |
| (a) Statutory Definitions of Discrimination .....   | §102        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Definitions of Discrimination in Anti-Discrimination<br>Jurisprudence .....  | §105        |
| 2. Definition of a Bona Fide Occupational Requirement (or<br>Qualification) (BFOR/Q).....  | §111        |
| 3. Duty of Reasonable Accommodation Short of Undue<br>Hardship.....  | §114        |
| <b>III. Principles of Interpretation of Anti-Discrimination Enact-<br/>ments; Constitutional Aspects; the Burden of Proof.....</b>                 | <b>§117</b> |
| 1. Principles of Interpretation of Anti-Discrimination<br>Enactments.....  | §117        |
| 2. Constitutional Aspects of Anti-Discrimination Enactments....  | §132        |
| 3. Proof of Discrimination Under Anti-Discrimination<br>Enactments.....  | §141        |
| <b>IV. Discriminatory Practices Under Anti-Discrimination En-<br/>actments: Defences and Exemptions to Allegations of<br/>Discrimination .....</b> | <b>§147</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §147        |
| 2. Canadian Human Rights Act.....  | §148        |
| (a) Discriminatory Practices.....  | §148        |
| (i) General.....   | §148        |
| (ii) Goods, Services, Facilities or Accommodations<br>Customarily Available to the General Public .....  | §149        |
| (iii) Commercial Premises or Residential<br>Accommodations .....   | §153        |
| (iv) Employment.....   | §154        |
| A. General.....  | §154        |
| B. Refusal to Employ.....  | §156        |
| C. Refusal to Continue to Employ Complain-<br>ant in Status Quo Ante .....   | §157        |
| D. Adverse Differentiation Against Employee ....   | §158        |
| E. Employment Application.....   | §159        |
| F. Employment Advertisement or Hiring<br>Interview .....   | §160        |
| G. Employment Policy .....   | §161        |
| H. Discriminatory Agreement.....   | §162        |
| I. Wage Differential .....   | §164        |

## HUMAN RIGHTS

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| J. Harassment (Non-Sexual) .....  | §168 |
| K. Harassment (Sexual) .....  | §169 |
| L. Employee Organizations.....  | §170 |
| M. Retaliation .....  | §171 |
| (v) Notices or Telecommunications.....  | §172 |
| (b) Defences and Exemptions.....  | §174 |
| (i) The BFOR/Q Doctrine .....   | §174 |
| (ii) BFOR/Q-like Defence Open to Service<br>Providers .....   | §179 |
| (iii) Specific Exemptions Under the Canadian<br>Human Rights Act.....   | §180 |
| A. Age Limitation/Exemption.....  | §180 |
| B. Pension Plans.....   | §181 |
| C. Miscellaneous Exemptions.....  | §184 |
| 3. Ontario Human Rights Code .....  | §187 |
| (a) Discriminatory Practices.....   | §187 |
| (i) Concept of Discrimination .....   | §187 |
| (ii) Signs, Symbols, Publications.....  | §194 |
| (iii) Public Services, Goods and Facilities.....  | §195 |
| (iv) Housing Accommodations .....   | §200 |
| (v) Contracts .....   | §206 |
| (vi) Employment.....  | §209 |
| A. General.....   | §209 |
| B. Refusal to Employ Complainant.....   | §210 |
| C. Refusal to Continue to Employ (Including<br>Changes to Complainant's Employment Sta-<br>tus Quo Ante)..... | §211 |
| (vii) Harassment in Employment and<br>Accommodation .....   | §213 |
| (viii) Employment Advertisements, Application<br>Forms or Pre-Employment Inquiries .....                      | §214 |
| (ix) Retaliation.....   | §216 |
| (x) Miscellaneous Prohibitions Affecting Employ-<br>ers' Activities.....                                      | §217 |
| (xi) Discrimination by Employment Agencies.....   | §218 |
| (xii) Discrimination by Vocational Associations .....   | §219 |
| (b) Defences and Exemptions.....  | §220 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (i) BFOR/Q Defence/Exemption .....  | \$220 |
| (ii) BFOR/Q-like Exemptions .....   | \$224 |
| (iii) General Statutory Exemptions Related to<br>Employment.....            | \$226 |
| (iv) Exemption for Special Programs.....                                    | \$229 |
| (v) Public Service Related Statutory Exemptions.....                        | \$231 |
| (vi) Exemptions for Certain Types of Contracts .....                        | \$234 |
| (vii) Exemptions Relating to Accommodations .....                           | \$238 |
| (viii) Where Conduct is Declared Non-<br>Discriminatory .....               | \$241 |
| 4. British Columbia Human Rights Code .....                                 | \$242 |
| (a) Discriminatory Practices.....   | \$242 |
| (i) Concept of Discrimination .....   | \$242 |
| (ii) Notices and Publications.....  | \$248 |
| (iii) Public Services, Goods and Facilities.....                            | \$253 |
| A. General.....   | \$253 |
| B. Definition of Public Services.....                                       | \$254 |
| C. Scope of Public Services .....   | \$257 |
| (iv) Purchase of Property .....   | \$260 |
| (v) Rental of Property .....  | \$262 |
| (vi) Employment Advertisements .....  | \$263 |
| (vii) Wage Differential.....  | \$264 |
| (viii) Employment .....   | \$266 |
| (ix) Unions and Associations.....   | \$270 |
| (x) Retaliation.....  | \$271 |
| (b) Defences and/or Exemptions .....  | \$272 |
| (i) BFOR/Q Defence/Exemption .....  | \$272 |
| (ii) General Exemption for Special Interest<br>Organizations .....          | \$275 |
| (iii) Exemptions for Seniority, Pension Plans or In-<br>surance Plans ..... | \$277 |
| (iv) Exemptions Relating to Public Services and<br>Facilities.....          | \$279 |
| (v) Defences/Exemptions Relating to Tenancy.....                            | \$281 |
| (vi) Exemption for Special Programs.....                                    | \$286 |
| (vii) Miscellaneous Exemption .....   | \$287 |

## HUMAN RIGHTS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 5. Alberta Human Rights Act.....   | §288 |
| (a) Discriminatory Practices.....  | §288 |
| (i) Concept of Discrimination.....   | §288 |
| (ii) Publications and Notices.....   | §292 |
| (iii) Goods and Services.....  | §298 |
| (iv) Tenancy.....  | §300 |
| (v) Equal Pay.....   | §302 |
| (vi) Employment Practices.....   | §303 |
| (vii) Employment Applications and Advertisements ..                            | §305 |
| (viii) Membership in Trade Unions, etc.....                                    | §306 |
| (ix) Retaliation.....  | §307 |
| (b) Exemptions and/or Defences .....   | §308 |
| (i) BFOR/Q and Reasonable and Justifiable Contra-<br>vention Defences .....    | §308 |
| (ii) Defences Applying to Discriminatory<br>Publications.....                  | §311 |
| (iii) Exemptions/Defences Applying to Public Ser-<br>vices and Tenancy .....   | §314 |
| 6. Saskatchewan Human Rights Code.....   | §315 |
| (a) Discriminatory Practices.....  | §315 |
| (i) Concept of Discrimination; Positive Rights.....                            | §315 |
| (ii) Purchase of Property or Property Interest.....                            | §321 |
| (iii) Occupancy of Property .....  | §322 |
| (iv) Public Services and Facilities .....                                      | §323 |
| (v) Publications.....  | §325 |
| (vi) Contracts .....   | §328 |
| (vii) Employment.....  | §330 |
| (viii) Employment Agencies .....   | §332 |
| (ix) Trade Unions .....  | §333 |
| (x) Employment Applications .....  | §335 |
| (xi) Retaliation.....  | §336 |
| (b) Defences and Exemptions.....   | §337 |
| (i) Concept of BFOR/Q .....  | §337 |
| (ii) Exemptions in Respect of the Purchasing and<br>Occupancy of Property..... | §340 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iii) Exemptions in Relation to Public Services and Facilities .....     | §342        |
| (iv) Exemption in Respect of Education .....                             | §344        |
| (v) Exemption in Respect of Publications .....                           | §345        |
| (vi) Exemption in Respect of Contracts .....                             | §346        |
| (vii) Employment .....   | §347        |
| (viii) Special Programs and Measures .....                               | §355        |
| 7. Manitoba Human Rights Code .....                                      | §357        |
| (a) Discriminatory Practices .....                                       | §357        |
| (i) Concept of Discrimination .....                                      | §357        |
| (ii) Provision of Public Services and Facilities .....                   | §361        |
| (iii) Employment .....   | §364        |
| (iv) Employment-Related Activities .....                                 | §367        |
| (v) Contracts .....  | §369        |
| (vi) Rental or Purchase of Property .....                                | §370        |
| (vii) Signs and Statements .....   | §372        |
| (viii) Harassment .....  | §373        |
| (ix) Retaliation/Reprisals .....   | §375        |
| (b) Defences and Exemptions .....  | §376        |
| (i) BFOR/Q and Reasonable Accommodation Doctrines .....                  | §376        |
| (ii) BFOR/Q-like Exemptions: Bona Fide and Reasonable Cause .....        | §380        |
| (iii) Affirmative Action .....   | §383        |
| (iv) Personal Services .....   | §384        |
| (v) Exemptions in Respect of Residential Accommodations .....            | §385        |
| (vi) Miscellaneous Statutory Exemptions .....                            | §386        |
| <b>V. Composition and Jurisdiction of Human Rights Commissions .....</b> | <b>§388</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §388        |
| 2. Canadian Human Rights Commission .....                                | §389        |
| (a) Composition .....  | §389        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....   | §391        |
| 3. Ontario Human Rights Commission .....                                 | §417        |



## HUMAN RIGHTS

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (a) Composition .....   | \$417        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....  | \$419        |
| 4. Alberta Human Rights Commission .....                        | \$427        |
| (a) Composition .....   | \$427        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....  | \$429        |
| 5. Saskatchewan Human Rights Commission .....                   | \$438        |
| (a) Composition .....   | \$438        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....  | \$440        |
| 6. Manitoba Human Rights Commission .....                       | \$449        |
| (a) Composition .....   | \$449        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....  | \$451        |
| <b>VI. Human Rights Adjudicative Bodies .....</b>               | <b>\$462</b> |
| 1. Canadian Human Rights Tribunal .....                         | \$462        |
| (a) Composition .....   | \$462        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....  | \$464        |
| 2. Human Rights Tribunal of Ontario .....                       | \$477        |
| (a) Composition .....   | \$477        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....  | \$480        |
| 3. British Columbia Human Rights Tribunal .....                 | \$496        |
| (a) Composition .....   | \$496        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....  | \$497        |
| 4. Alberta Human Rights Tribunal .....                          | \$513        |
| (a) Composition .....   | \$513        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....  | \$515        |
| 5. Saskatchewan Court of Queen's Bench .....                    | \$522        |
| 6. Manitoba Adjudication Panel .....                            | \$529        |
| (a) Composition .....   | \$529        |
| (b) Jurisdiction .....  | \$530        |
| <b>VII. Offences Under Anti-Discrimination Enactments .....</b> | <b>\$540</b> |
| 1. Canadian Human Rights Act .....                              | \$540        |
| 2. Ontario Human Rights Code .....                              | \$541        |
| 3. British Columbia Human Rights Code .....                     | \$542        |
| 4. Alberta Human Rights Act .....                               | \$543        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

5. Saskatchewan Human Rights Code.....\$544  
6. Manitoba Human Rights Code.....\$546

**Index**

*Related titles:* Aboriginal Law; Administrative Law; Constitutional Law;  
Employment Law; Labour Law; Landlord and Tenant; Mental Incapacity;  
Sale of Land; Sports; Wrongful Dismissal

# IMMIGRATION AND REFUGEES

prepared by  
Patricia Maia, M.A., LL.B  
Rekha McNutt, B.Comm., LL.B  
Jean Munn, B.A., LL.B  
Peter Wong, Q.C.  
*all of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Treaties and Conventions**

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>I. Legislative Powers .....</b>   | <b>§1</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §1        |
| 2. Federal-Provincial Agreements.....  | §2        |
| 3. Quebec Agreement.....   | §3        |
| 4. Statutes .....  | §4        |
| 5. Regulations.....  | §5        |
| 6. Policies .....  | §6        |
| <br>   |           |
| <b>II. Persons Who May Enter or Remain in Canada .....</b>                   | <b>§9</b> |
| 1. Persons Who May Enter Canada as a Right .....                             | §9        |
| (a) Canadian Citizens .....  | §9        |
| (b) Permanent Residents .....  | §10       |
| (c) Status Indians.....  | §16       |
| 2. Other Persons Who May be Authorized to Enter or Remain<br>in Canada ..... | §17       |
| (a) Temporary Resident .....   | §17       |
| (b) Temporary Resident Permit Holders .....                                  | §26       |
| (c) Protected Persons.....   | §30       |
| (d) Persons without Status in Canada .....                                   | §31       |

IMMIGRATION AND REFUGEES

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>III. Persons Who are Inadmissible to Canada</b> .....                                 | §32  |
| 1. Security Grounds and Human Rights Violations .....                                    | §32  |
| 2. Criminal Inadmissibility .....  | §37  |
| (a) General .....  | §37  |
| (b) Serious Criminality and Criminality.....   | §38  |
| (c) Pardons and Rehabilitation.....  | §42  |
| (d) Organized Criminality .....  | §45  |
| 3. Health Grounds .....  | §48  |
| 4. Misrepresentation .....   | §55  |
| 5. Other Grounds of Inadmissibility.....   | §59  |
| 6. Section 77 Security Certificates .....  | §60  |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>IV. Immigration and Refugee Board</b> .....   | §67  |
| 1. General .....   | §67  |
| 2. The Refugee Protection Division .....   | §70  |
| 3. Immigration Division .....  | §73  |
| 4. Immigration Appeal Division .....   | §75  |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>V. Loss of Status and Removal</b> .....   | §79  |
| 1. Report on Inadmissibility .....   | §79  |
| 2. Removal Orders .....  | §82  |
| (a) Removal Orders Made by the Minister without an<br>Admissibility Hearing .....        | §82  |
| (b) Removal Orders Made by the Immigration Division at<br>an Admissibility Hearing ..... | §84  |
| 3. Loss of Status.....   | §89  |
| (a) Permanent Residents.....   | §89  |
| (b) Temporary Residents.....   | §91  |
| 4. Removal Order Procedures.....   | §92  |
| (a) General .....  | §92  |
| (b) Stay of Removal Orders .....   | §95  |
| 5. Detention and Release .....   | §99  |
| (a) Detention.....   | §99  |
| (b) Release .....  | §106 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>VI. Immigration to Canada — Persons Who May Become Permanent Residents in Canada .....</b> | <b>§113</b> |
| 1. Acquiring Permanent Residence.....   | §113        |
| (a) General .....   | §113        |
| (b) Selection of Permanent Residents .....  | §116        |
| (c) Provincial Selection .....  | §117        |
| (d) Humanitarian and Compassionate Considerations .....                                       | §118        |
| 2. General Requirements for Permanent Resident Visas.....                                     | §119        |
| (a) Form and Content of Application.....  | §119        |
| (b) Place of Application for Permanent Resident Visas .....                                   | §120        |
| (c) Return of Application.....  | §122        |
| (d) Document Requirements .....   | §123        |
| (e) Passport or Other Travel Document .....   | §124        |
| (f) Medical Examination Requirement .....   | §126        |
| (g) Examination of Permanent Residents.....   | §127        |
| (h) Requirements of Examination.....  | §128        |
| 3. Federal Skilled Workers .....  | §131        |
| (a) Federal Skilled Worker Class .....  | §131        |
| (b) Minimum Criteria for Federal Skilled Worker Class .....                                   | §132        |
| (c) Selection Criteria for Federal Skilled Workers.....                                       | §136        |
| (d) Minimum Funds Required for Federal Skilled<br>Worker .....                                | §140        |
| (e) Quebec Skilled Worker Class .....   | §141        |
| 4. Provincial Nominees .....  | §142        |
| (a) Provincial Nominee Class .....  | §142        |
| (b) Substituted Evaluations of Provincial Nominees .....                                      | §143        |
| (c) Exclusions Under the Provincial Nominee Class .....                                       | §144        |
| 5. Canadian Experience Class.....   | §145        |
| 6. Business Immigrants .....  | §146        |
| (a) General .....   | §146        |
| (b) Investors.....  | §147        |
| (c) Entrepreneurs .....   | §151        |
| (i) General.....  | §151        |
| (ii) Conditions to be Met After Becoming an<br>Entrepreneur.....                              | §154        |
| (d) Self-employed Persons .....   | §158        |

IMMIGRATION AND REFUGEES

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 7. Live-in Caregiver Class .....   | \$162        |
| 8. Family Class.....   | \$165        |
| 9. Spouse or Common Law Partner in Canada .....  | \$173        |
| 10. Applications for Permanent Residence on Humanitarian<br>and Compassionate Grounds..... | \$175        |
| (a) Generally .....  | \$175        |
| (b) Procedure .....  | \$180        |
| (c) Procedural Fairness.....   | \$182        |
| (d) Best Interests of Children .....   | \$186        |
| <b>VII. Refugee Protection .....</b>   | <b>\$190</b> |
| 1. Conferral of Refugee Protection .....   | \$190        |
| 2. Convention Refugees .....   | \$199        |
| 3. Persons in Need of Protection.....  | \$264        |
| 4. Exclusion .....   | \$312        |
| 5. Cessation and Vacation.....   | \$320        |
| 6. Refugee Protection Determination Procedure.....   | \$328        |
| <b>VIII. Temporary Residents .....</b>   | <b>\$350</b> |
| 1. Entering Canada.....  | \$350        |
| (a) General .....  | \$350        |
| (b) Dual Intent.....   | \$353        |
| (c) Medical Examinations .....   | \$354        |
| 2. Visitors .....  | \$355        |
| (a) General .....  | \$355        |
| (b) Visitor Visas .....  | \$356        |
| (c) Extensions of Visitor Status.....  | \$359        |
| 3. Students .....  | \$360        |
| (a) General .....  | \$360        |
| (b) Renewals, Extensions and Change of Conditions .....                                    | \$367        |
| (c) Work Permits Issued to Students.....   | \$368        |
| 4. Temporary Foreign Workers .....   | \$370        |
| (a) General .....  | \$370        |
| (b) Exemptions from Work Permits.....  | \$375        |
| (c) Procedure .....  | \$376        |
| (d) Renewals/Extensions/Change of Conditions .....   | \$379        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 5. Temporary Resident Permits .....                                       | §380        |
| (a) General .....   | §380        |
| <b>IX. Appeals to the Immigration Appeal Division .....</b>               | <b>§384</b> |
| 1. Generally .....  | §384        |
| 2. Jurisdiction of the Immigration Appeal Division .....                  | §388        |
| 3. Sponsorship Appeals .....  | §392        |
| (a) General .....   | §392        |
| (b) Issues on Sponsorship Appeals .....                                   | §396        |
| (i) Bad Faith Relationships — “Marriage Cases” .....                      | §396        |
| (ii) Financial Responsibility .....                                       | §398        |
| (c) Medical Refusals .....  | §400        |
| 4. Residency Obligation Appeals .....                                     | §403        |
| 5. Removal Order Appeals .....  | §407        |
| 6. Immigration Appeal Division Procedures .....                           | §412        |
| <b>X. Offences under the Immigration and Refugee Protection Act .....</b> | <b>§418</b> |
| <b>XI. Judicial Review by the Federal Court .....</b>                     | <b>§422</b> |
| 1. Generally .....  | §422        |
| 2. Applications for Leave and Judicial Review .....                       | §423        |
| 3. Limitations Periods and Extensions .....                               | §429        |
| 4. Affidavits in the Federal Court .....                                  | §431        |
| 5. Perfecting the Application for Leave .....                             | §432        |
| 6. Standards of Judicial Review .....                                     | §437        |
| 7. Applications for Stays of Removal Orders .....                         | §442        |
| 8. Appeals to the Federal Court of Appeal .....                           | §448        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Citizenship; Constitutional Law; Courts; Criminal Law — Offences; Human Rights; International Law; Judgments and Orders; Practice

# INCOME TAX

prepared by  
Peter W. Hogg, Professor Emeritus, Osgoode Hall Law School,  
York University; Scholar in Residence, Blake, Cassels & Graydon  
LL.P.;;  
Joanne E. Magee, Director, School of Public Policy and  
Administration, York University  
and  
Jinyan Li, Professor, Osgoode Hall Law School, York University

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. Income Tax Law</b> .....            | \$1  |
| 1. Introduction .....                     | \$1  |
| 2. Roles of the Income Tax .....          | \$2  |
| (a) Revenue.....                          | \$2  |
| (b) Redistribution of Income .....        | \$4  |
| (c) Regulation of Private Activity .....  | \$5  |
| 3. Income Tax Law .....                   | \$6  |
| (a) Income Tax Act.....                   | \$6  |
| (i) History .....                         | \$6  |
| (ii) Current Structure.....               | \$9  |
| (iii) Legislative Process.....            | \$17 |
| (b) Income Tax Application Rules Act..... | \$24 |
| (c) Income Tax Regulations.....           | \$25 |
| (d) Tax Treaties .....                    | \$27 |
| (e) Case Law .....                        | \$30 |
| (f) Provincial Income Tax Statutes.....   | \$31 |
| (g) Private Law.....                      | \$32 |
| (h) Administrative Publications .....     | \$33 |
| (i) General.....                          | \$33 |



## INCOME TAX

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (ii) Information Circulars .....            | \$34 |
| (iii) Interpretation Bulletins .....        | \$35 |
| (iv) Advance Rulings .....                  | \$38 |
| 4. Interpreting the Act.....                | \$41 |
| (a) Statutory Interpretation.....           | \$41 |
| (b) Statutory Language.....                 | \$43 |
| (c) Interpretation Tips .....               | \$44 |
| 5. Structure of the Income Tax .....        | \$45 |
| (a) General .....                           | \$45 |
| (b) Liability for Tax .....                 | \$46 |
| (i) "Person" .....                          | \$46 |
| (ii) Tax Unit .....                         | \$47 |
| (iii) Residence.....                        | \$49 |
| (c) Tax Base .....                          | \$50 |
| (i) Concept of Income .....                 | \$50 |
| (ii) Measurement of Income .....            | \$52 |
| (iii) Assignment of Income.....             | \$53 |
| (d) Timing and Accounting Period.....       | \$54 |
| (i) Taxation Year.....                      | \$54 |
| (ii) Income Fluctuation.....                | \$55 |
| (e) Tax Payable .....                       | \$57 |
| (i) Rates .....                             | \$57 |
| (ii) Credits.....                           | \$58 |
| (iii) Computation of Tax Liability.....     | \$59 |
| (iv) Alternative Minimum Tax .....          | \$61 |
| (f) Tax Administration .....                | \$62 |
| (i) The Canada Revenue Agency .....         | \$62 |
| (ii) The Self-Assessment System.....        | \$65 |
| (iii) Resolution of Tax Disputes .....      | \$67 |
| 6. Income Tax Terminology and Concepts..... | \$70 |
| (a) Terminology.....                        | \$70 |
| (i) General.....                            | \$70 |
| (ii) Realization and Recognition.....       | \$71 |
| (iii) Cost and Expense.....                 | \$72 |
| (iv) Business Entities .....                | \$73 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (b) Characterization .....                         | §77        |
| (c) Timing .....                                   | §81        |
| (d) Time Value of Money .....                      | §84        |
| (e) Tax Deferral .....                             | §87        |
| (f) Tax Minimization .....                         | §90        |
| <b>II. History and Policy .....</b>                | <b>§91</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....                              | §91        |
| 2. History .....                                   | §93        |
| (a) Confederation .....                            | §93        |
| (b) Provincial Income Taxes .....                  | §96        |
| (c) Federal Income Tax .....                       | §97        |
| (d) Federal-Provincial Agreements .....            | §98        |
| (e) Tax Reform of 1971 and the Carter Report ..... | §101       |
| (i) The Carter Report .....                        | §101       |
| (ii) Major Changes .....                           | §104       |
| (f) Introduction of Indexing .....                 | §108       |
| (g) Tax Reform of 1988 .....                       | §109       |
| (h) 1988 to 2005 .....                             | §115       |
| (i) 2006 to 2010 .....                             | §122       |
| 3. Policy Objectives .....                         | §130       |
| (a) Overview .....                                 | §130       |
| (b) Equity .....                                   | §131       |
| (i) Ability to Pay Principle .....                 | §131       |
| (ii) Horizontal Equity .....                       | §136       |
| (iii) Vertical Equity .....                        | §138       |
| (c) Neutrality .....                               | §140       |
| (i) Definition .....                               | §140       |
| (ii) Distinguished from Equity .....               | §141       |
| (iii) Deliberate Policies .....                    | §143       |
| (iv) Unintended Effects .....                      | §145       |
| (d) Simplicity .....                               | §146       |
| (e) International Competitiveness .....            | §148       |
| 4. Tax Expenditures .....                          | §150       |
| (a) Concept .....                                  | §150       |

## INCOME TAX

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Public Scrutiny .....   | §151        |
| (c) Measurement of Tax Expenditures .....   | §156        |
| (i) Difficulties of Accounting .....  | §156        |
| (ii) Tax Expenditure Estimates .....  | §159        |
| (d) Different Policy Criteria.....  | §160        |
| 5. Tax Policy-Making .....  | §163        |
| (a) Politics versus Principles.....   | §163        |
| (b) Progressive or Flat Tax Rates.....  | §167        |
| (i) Progressive Rates .....   | §167        |
| (ii) Flat Rate .....  | §172        |
| (iii) Flattening the Rates .....  | §175        |
| <b>III. Residence .....</b>   | <b>§177</b> |
| 1. Jurisdiction to Tax .....  | §177        |
| (a) General .....   | §177        |
| (b) Residence .....   | §178        |
| (c) Source of Income .....  | §181        |
| (d) Theoretical Justifications.....   | §183        |
| 2. Principles of Worldwide Taxation .....   | §188        |
| (a) Legal Basis .....   | §188        |
| (b) International Double Taxation .....   | §191        |
| (c) Avoiding Canadian Tax Through the Use of Foreign<br>Corporations and Trusts ..... | §193        |
| 3. Residence of Individuals.....  | §195        |
| (a) Common Law Residence .....  | §195        |
| (b) Ordinarily Resident .....   | §205        |
| (c) Sojourner .....   | §208        |
| (d) Part-Year Resident .....  | §211        |
| 4. Residence of Corporations.....   | §213        |
| (a) Common Law Residence .....  | §213        |
| (b) Statutory Definition .....  | §221        |
| 5. Residence of Trusts.....   | §222        |
| 6. Provincial Residence.....  | §230        |
| 7. Change in Residence Status .....   | §234        |
| 8. Dual Residency .....   | §237        |
| 9. Deemed Non-Resident .....  | §239        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>IV. Income</b> .....                             | \$240 |
| 1. Section 3.....                                   | \$240 |
| 2. The Concept of Income .....                      | \$242 |
| (a) General .....                                   | \$242 |
| (b) Haig-Simons Theory .....                        | \$245 |
| (c) Carter Commission’s Comprehensive Tax Base..... | \$249 |
| (i) Comprehensive Tax Base .....                    | \$249 |
| (ii) Taxation of Capital Gains.....                 | \$252 |
| (d) Judicial Interpretation.....                    | \$256 |
| (i) Ordinary Meaning .....                          | \$256 |
| (ii) Capital Receipt Distinguished .....            | \$257 |
| (iii) Realization of Income.....                    | \$259 |
| 3. Income from a Source .....                       | \$262 |
| (a) Source Theory.....                              | \$262 |
| (b) Characteristics of an Income Source.....        | \$264 |
| (c) Enumerated Sources .....                        | \$267 |
| (d) Unenumerated Sources.....                       | \$269 |
| (e) Illegal Source.....                             | \$272 |
| 4. Statutory Inclusions and Exclusions .....        | \$275 |
| (a) Capital Gains .....                             | \$275 |
| (b) Other Income.....                               | \$277 |
| (c) Exclusions .....                                | \$279 |
| 5. Gifts and Inheritances .....                     | \$284 |
| (a) Personal Gifts .....                            | \$284 |
| (i) General.....                                    | \$284 |
| (ii) Carter Commission Recommendations .....        | \$285 |
| (iii) Reasons for Exclusion .....                   | \$289 |
| (b) Commercial Gifts .....                          | \$291 |
| (c) Gift of Property .....                          | \$293 |
| 6. Windfalls .....                                  | \$294 |
| (a) Tax Exempt.....                                 | \$294 |
| (b) Distinguished from Business .....               | \$298 |
| 7. Damages and Settlements.....                     | \$299 |
| (a) The Surrogatum Principle .....                  | \$299 |

## INCOME TAX

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Damages for Personal Injury .....                   | §303        |
| (c) Punitive Damages .....                              | §306        |
| 8. Imputed Income .....                                 | §308        |
| (a) Non-Taxation .....                                  | §308        |
| (b) Owner-Occupied Home.....                            | §310        |
| (c) Unpaid Housework .....                              | §312        |
| 9. Computation of Income .....                          | §315        |
| (a) Net Concept .....                                   | §315        |
| (b) Source by Source .....                              | §317        |
| (c) Regular Income v. Taxable Capital Gains .....       | §319        |
| (d) Policy-Based Deductions .....                       | §321        |
| (e) Loss Recognition .....                              | §322        |
| <b>V. Income from Employment .....</b>                  | <b>§324</b> |
| 1. Legislative Scheme and Policy .....                  | §324        |
| (a) Legislative Scheme.....                             | §324        |
| (i) Statutory Provisions .....                          | §324        |
| (ii) Distinct Regime.....                               | §327        |
| (b) Policy .....  | §330        |
| (i) General.....  | §330        |
| (ii) Tax Base Protection .....                          | §331        |
| (iii) Equity .....                                      | §333        |
| (iv) Administrative Efficiency .....                    | §337        |
| (v) Social Policy.....                                  | §340        |
| (vi) Balancing Policy Concerns .....                    | §342        |
| 2. Characterization.....                                | §344        |
| (a) Office and Employment Defined .....                 | §344        |
| (i) Statutory Definitions .....                         | §344        |
| (ii) Office or Employment .....                         | §345        |
| (b) Business or Office.....                             | §348        |
| (c) Business or Employment.....                         | §349        |
| (i) Contract of Services vs. Contract for Services..... | §349        |
| (ii) Control .....                                      | §354        |
| (iii) Economic Reality Test and Other Factors.....      | §358        |
| (iv) Form of Contract.....                              | §359        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (d) Incorporated Employees .....                     | §360 |
| 3. Timing .....                                      | §362 |
| (a) Cash Method .....                                | §362 |
| (b) Receipt .....                                    | §364 |
| (c) Constructive Receipt .....                       | §366 |
| 4. Salary, Wages and Other Remuneration .....        | §368 |
| (a) Salary and Wages .....                           | §368 |
| (b) Other Remuneration .....                         | §369 |
| 5. Benefits — General Scheme .....                   | §370 |
| (a) Inclusion in Income .....                        | §370 |
| (b) Benefit Defined .....                            | §372 |
| (i) Economic Advantage or Material Acquisition ..... | §372 |
| (ii) Convertible into Money .....                    | §376 |
| (c) Relationship to Employment .....                 | §377 |
| (d) Valuation .....                                  | §381 |
| (i) General .....                                    | §381 |
| (ii) Cost to the Employer .....                      | §382 |
| (iii) Fair Market Value .....                        | §385 |
| (iv) Apportionment .....                             | §388 |
| 6. Allowances .....                                  | §390 |
| (a) Inclusion in Income .....                        | §390 |
| (b) Allowance Defined .....                          | §392 |
| (c) Reimbursements Distinguished .....               | §394 |
| 7. Benefits — Specific Items .....                   | §396 |
| (a) Automobiles .....                                | §396 |
| (b) Loans .....                                      | §400 |
| (c) Housing Benefits .....                           | §403 |
| (i) Confusion in the Case Law .....                  | §403 |
| (ii) Statutory Rules .....                           | §409 |
| 8. Compensation for Loss of Employment .....         | §412 |
| 9. Employee Stock Options .....                      | §415 |
| (a) Employee Stock Option Defined .....              | §415 |
| (b) Application of Section 7 .....                   | §416 |
| (c) Tax Consequences .....                           | §419 |
| (i) Taxable Benefit .....                            | §419 |

## INCOME TAX

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (ii) Timing of Inclusion .....                                 | \$420        |
| (iii) Special Deduction .....                                  | \$421        |
| (iv) Adjusted Cost Base of the Shares .....                    | \$424        |
| (d) Preferential Treatment .....                               | \$426        |
| (i) General .....  | \$426        |
| (ii) Capital Gains-Like Taxation .....                         | \$427        |
| (iii) Deferral of Recognition .....                            | \$428        |
| (iv) Policy Justifications .....                               | \$432        |
| 10. Non-Taxable Amounts .....                                  | \$435        |
| 11. Deductions .....   | \$436        |
| (a) Deductions Denied .....                                    | \$436        |
| (b) Deductions Permitted .....                                 | \$437        |
| <b>VI. Income from Business or Property: Profit .....</b>      | <b>\$441</b> |
| 1. Legislative Scheme .....                                    | \$441        |
| 2. Characterization of Business and Property as a Source ..... | \$444        |
| (a) Importance of Characterization .....                       | \$444        |
| (b) Business or Property Defined .....                         | \$446        |
| (i) Statutory Definitions .....                                | \$446        |
| (ii) Common Law .....  | \$448        |
| (iii) Policy Concerns About Potential Abuse .....              | \$455        |
| (c) Personal Endeavours Distinguished .....                    | \$461        |
| (i) Pursuit of Personal Pleasure .....                         | \$461        |
| (ii) Hobbies .....   | \$463        |
| (iii) Personal Elements in Rental Properties .....             | \$464        |
| (iv) Gambling .....  | \$465        |
| (d) Employment Distinguished .....                             | \$468        |
| (e) Capital Gains Distinguished .....                          | \$469        |
| (f) Business Distinguished from Property .....                 | \$471        |
| (i) Level of Activity .....                                    | \$471        |
| (ii) Differential Tax Treatments .....                         | \$475        |
| 3. Concept of Profit .....                                     | \$476        |
| (a) Net Concept .....  | \$476        |
| (b) Financial Accounting versus Tax .....                      | \$477        |
| (c) Question of Law .....                                      | \$489        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 4. Judicial Guidelines .....  | \$491        |
| (a) Canderel .....  | \$491        |
| (b) Accurate Picture of Profit Requirement .....                        | \$492        |
| (i) The Goal .....  | \$492        |
| (ii) Measurement of Accurate Picture .....                              | \$497        |
| (iii) Onus of Proof.....  | \$499        |
| (c) Freedom of Choice of Accounting Methods within<br>Constraints ..... | \$500        |
| (d) Financial Accounting Principles as Interpretive Aids ..             | \$503        |
| 5. Methods of Accounting .....  | \$504        |
| (a) General .....   | \$504        |
| (b) Cash Method.....  | \$505        |
| (c) Accrual Method .....  | \$510        |
| (d) Accounting for Capital Assets .....                                 | \$514        |
| (e) Accounting for Inventory .....                                      | \$517        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>VII. Income from Business or Property: Inclusions.....</b>           | <b>\$518</b> |
| 1. Inclusion Rules.....   | \$518        |
| 2. Characterization.....  | \$519        |
| (a) Income vs. Capital Receipt .....                                    | \$519        |
| (b) Form and Substance of Transactions .....                            | \$522        |
| 3. Timing .....   | \$524        |
| (a) The Realization Principle .....                                     | \$524        |
| (b) Accrual Method of Accounting .....                                  | \$526        |
| (i) Subsection 12(1)(b) .....   | \$526        |
| (ii) "Receivable" .....   | \$530        |
| (iii) Advance Payments for Unearned Items.....                          | \$534        |
| (c) Cash Method of Accounting .....                                     | \$536        |
| 4. Sale of Property .....   | \$537        |
| 5. Services.....  | \$540        |
| (a) General Timing Rule.....  | \$540        |
| (b) Modified Accrual Method.....  | \$542        |
| (c) Professional Services .....   | \$543        |
| 6. Dividends.....   | \$546        |
| 7. Rent and Royalties .....   | \$548        |
| (a) Payments Based on Production or Use .....                           | \$548        |



## INCOME TAX

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Sales Distinguished .....                                   | §550        |
| 8. Interest .....   | §552        |
| (a) Definition .....  | §552        |
| (b) Special Timing Rules .....                                  | §556        |
| (c) Imputed Interest in Blended Payments.....                   | §561        |
| (d) Imputed Interest in Deferred Payments.....                  | §566        |
| (e) Discounts.....  | §567        |
| (f) Position of Creditor.....                                   | §570        |
| <b>VIII. Income from Business or Property: Deductions .....</b> | <b>§576</b> |
| 1. Deduction Rules .....  | §576        |
| (a) General .....   | §576        |
| (b) Deductibility .....   | §578        |
| (c) Timing.....   | §581        |
| 2. Policy Goals .....   | §584        |
| (a) Income Tax Logic .....                                      | §584        |
| (b) Accurate Measurement of Profit.....                         | §588        |
| (c) Certainty and Predictability.....                           | §591        |
| (d) Controlling the Abuse of Business Deductions .....          | §592        |
| (e) Tax Policy as Public Policy.....                            | §593        |
| 3. Income-Earning Purpose.....                                  | §596        |
| 4. Personal and Mixed Expenses.....                             | §601        |
| (a) General.....  | §601        |
| (b) Common Law Tests .....                                      | §602        |
| (c) Child Care Expenses .....                                   | §607        |
| (d) Food and Beverages .....                                    | §612        |
| (e) Entertainment Expenses .....                                | §614        |
| (f) Commuting Expenses .....                                    | §618        |
| (g) Housekeeping Expenses .....                                 | §620        |
| (h) Home-Office Expenses.....                                   | §622        |
| 5. Cost of Illegal or Unethical Activities.....                 | §626        |
| (a) Kickbacks, Bribes and Other Illegal Payments.....           | §626        |
| (b) Fines and Penalties.....                                    | §628        |
| (c) Damages.....  | §636        |
| (d) Expenses of Illegal Businesses .....                        | §638        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| 6. Reasonable Requirement.....                                    | \$641 |
| (a) Section 67 .....  | \$641 |
| (b) Unreasonable Amount Attributable to Personal<br>Elements..... | \$644 |
| (c) Unreasonable Amount in Non-Arm’s Length<br>Payments.....      | \$646 |
| 7. Timing of Deductions .....                                     | \$650 |
| (a) Current Expenses vs. Capital Expenditures.....                | \$650 |
| (b) Current Expenses.....   | \$653 |
| (i) General.....  | \$653 |
| (ii) Expense Incurred.....  | \$654 |
| (iii) Contingent Liabilities.....                                 | \$657 |
| (iv) Contested or Unincurred Liabilities .....                    | \$664 |
| (c) Running Expenses .....  | \$666 |
| (d) Prepaid Expenses.....   | \$670 |
| (e) Reserves .....  | \$676 |
| (i) Special Rules.....  | \$676 |
| (ii) Doubtful Debts Reserve and Bad Debt<br>Writeoffs .....       | \$678 |
| (iii) Deferred Payments Reserve.....                              | \$682 |
| (iv) Unearned Amounts Reserve .....                               | \$687 |
| 8. Inventory.....   | \$691 |
| (a) What is Inventory? .....                                      | \$691 |
| (b) A Matter of Timing.....                                       | \$692 |
| (c) Cost of Goods Sold .....                                      | \$696 |
| (d) Valuation Methods .....                                       | \$699 |
| (e) Tracing Inventories.....                                      | \$703 |
| 9. Interest Expense .....   | \$705 |
| (a) Subsection 20(1)(c).....                                      | \$705 |
| (b) Interest Defined .....  | \$706 |
| (c) Legislative Purpose.....                                      | \$709 |
| (d) Income-Earning Purpose Test.....                              | \$711 |
| (i) General.....  | \$711 |
| (ii) “Any” not “The” Purpose.....                                 | \$714 |
| (iii) “Gross” not “Net” Income.....                               | \$715 |
| (iv) Reasonable Expectation of Gross Income.....                  | \$717 |

## INCOME TAX

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (v) Different Purpose Tests for Interest and Other Expenses .....      | §719        |
| (e) Tracing the Use of Borrowed Money .....                            | §721        |
| (i) Money is Fungible .....  | §721        |
| (ii) Current Use .....   | §724        |
| (iii) Direct Use .....   | §728        |
| (f) Timing of Deduction.....   | §733        |
| 10. Other Costs of Financing.....                                      | §735        |
| (a) Debt Distinguished from Equity .....                               | §735        |
| (b) Borrowing Cost .....   | §737        |
| (c) Foreign Exchange Losses.....                                       | §740        |
| 11. Mismatch and Tax Arbitrage.....                                    | §743        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IX. Income from Business or Property: Capital Expenditures ....</b> | <b>§747</b> |
| 1. A Timing Issue .....  | §747        |
| (a) Capital versus Current Expenditures .....                          | §747        |
| (b) Tax Deferral and the Impact of Capitalizing Expenses .....         | §751        |
| 2. Capital Expenditure Defined .....                                   | §754        |
| (a) Common Law Tests .....   | §754        |
| (i) General.....   | §754        |
| (ii) Enduring Benefit Test.....  | §757        |
| (iii) Recurring Expenditures.....                                      | §762        |
| (iv) Residual Test in Favour of the Taxpayer .....                     | §764        |
| (b) Acquisition of Assets .....  | §765        |
| (c) Repair of Tangible Assets.....                                     | §768        |
| (d) Protection of Intangible Assets.....                               | §772        |
| (e) Websites and Domain Names .....                                    | §778        |
| (f) Corporate Takeovers .....  | §780        |
| (g) Goodwill .....   | §782        |
| (h) Expenses with Respect to a New Business .....                      | §786        |
| 3. Recovery of Capital Expenditures.....                               | §788        |
| (a) General .....  | §788        |
| (b) Statutory Guesswork .....  | §789        |
| (c) Accounting Methods.....  | §792        |
| (i) General.....   | §792        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (ii) Straight-line Method .....               | §793 |
| (iii) Declining-Balance Method .....          | §795 |
| 4. Capital Cost Allowance (CCA).....          | §798 |
| (a) Overview .....                            | §798 |
| (b) Depreciable Property and CCA Rates.....   | §802 |
| (i) Meaning .....                             | §802 |
| (ii) Rate of CCA.....                         | §804 |
| (iii) Accelerated Cost Recovery.....          | §806 |
| (c) Undepreciated Capital Cost (UCC) .....    | §807 |
| (i) Meaning .....                             | §807 |
| (ii) Cumulative Account.....                  | §810 |
| (iii) Class Concept.....                      | §811 |
| (d) Capital Cost .....                        | §814 |
| (i) Meaning .....                             | §814 |
| (ii) Apportionment.....                       | §821 |
| (iii) Timing of Acquisition.....              | §822 |
| (e) Proceeds of Disposition.....              | §823 |
| (i) Meaning .....                             | §823 |
| (ii) Timing .....                             | §826 |
| (f) Half Year Rule.....                       | §829 |
| (g) Example of CCA Computation.....           | §832 |
| (h) Retirement of Depreciable Property .....  | §840 |
| (i) No More Guesswork.....                    | §840 |
| (ii) Recapture .....                          | §845 |
| (iii) Terminal Loss .....                     | §848 |
| (iv) Review Example .....                     | §851 |
| (i) Limitations on CCA Deductions .....       | §852 |
| (i) Tax Shelter Losses .....                  | §852 |
| (ii) Rental Property.....                     | §853 |
| (iii) Leasing Property .....                  | §857 |
| 5. Eligible Capital Expenditures .....        | §861 |
| (a) Amortization of Intangibles .....         | §861 |
| (b) Eligible Capital Expenditure Defined..... | §864 |
| (c) Deduction .....                           | §865 |

INCOME TAX

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>X. Capital Gains</b> .....                      | §868 |
| 1. History .....                                   | §868 |
| 2. Policy .....                                    | §870 |
| (a) Policy Issues .....                            | §870 |
| (b) Equity .....                                   | §871 |
| (c) Neutrality .....                               | §873 |
| (d) Certainty .....                                | §875 |
| (e) Inflationary Gains .....                       | §876 |
| (f) Risk Taking and Investment Disincentives ..... | §881 |
| (g) Tax Subsidies for Certain Investments .....    | §884 |
| 3. Statutory Framework .....                       | §886 |
| (a) Inclusion in Income .....                      | §886 |
| (b) Characterization of Capital Gains .....        | §889 |
| (c) Realization .....                              | §892 |
| 4. Basic Concepts .....                            | §894 |
| (a) Capital Property .....                         | §894 |
| (b) Depreciable Property .....                     | §897 |
| (c) Disposition .....                              | §899 |
| (i) Meaning .....                                  | §899 |
| (ii) Timing .....                                  | §902 |
| (d) Proceeds of Disposition .....                  | §906 |
| (e) Adjusted Cost Base .....                       | §907 |
| 5. Computation of Gain or Loss .....               | §911 |
| (a) Proceeds Due Within the Year .....             | §911 |
| (b) Proceeds Due in a Future Year .....            | §913 |
| (c) Loss .....                                     | §919 |
| 6. Special Events and Deemed Dispositions .....    | §920 |
| (a) Purpose .....                                  | §920 |
| (b) Death .....                                    | §923 |
| (c) Gift .....                                     | §927 |
| (d) Trust .....                                    | §928 |
| (e) Change of Use .....                            | §931 |
| (f) Departure from Canada .....                    | §935 |
| 7. Stop-Loss Rules .....                           | §936 |
| (a) Capital Losses Quarantined .....               | §936 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Superficial Losses.....                     | §941        |
| (c) Personal-Use Property Losses.....           | §945        |
| (d) Listed Personal Property Losses.....        | §950        |
| 8. Principal Residence Exemption.....           | §952        |
| (a) Tax Expenditure .....                       | §952        |
| (b) Principal Residence .....                   | §956        |
| (i) General.....                                | §956        |
| (ii) Ownership.....                             | §957        |
| (iii) Ordinarily Inhabited.....                 | §958        |
| (iv) Surrounding Land.....                      | §960        |
| (v) Designation .....                           | §962        |
| (c) Residence Requirement .....                 | §963        |
| (d) Mechanism of Exemption.....                 | §964        |
| (e) Change of Use Rules.....                    | §972        |
| (i) Deemed Disposition .....                    | §972        |
| (ii) Election .....                             | §974        |
| (iii) Partial Change of Use.....                | §977        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XI. Investing and Trading.....</b>           | <b>§980</b> |
| 1. Capital or Income .....                      | §980        |
| (a) Importance of Characterization.....         | §980        |
| (b) Investing and Trading Distinguished.....    | §984        |
| 2. Trade.....                                   | §987        |
| (a) Frequency of Transactions .....             | §987        |
| (b) Relationship to Taxpayer's Other Work ..... | §989        |
| (c) Inventory .....                             | §990        |
| 3. Adventure in the Nature of Trade.....        | §992        |
| (a) Isolated Transaction.....                   | §992        |
| (b) Intention to Trade.....                     | §994        |
| (i) Intention on Acquisition .....              | §994        |
| (ii) Secondary Intention .....                  | §999        |
| (iii) Differing Intentions.....                 | §1002       |
| (iv) Change of Intention.....                   | §1003       |
| (v) Corporate Intention.....                    | §1007       |
| 4. Typical Transactions .....                   | §1008       |

## INCOME TAX

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (a) Real Estate .....  | §1008        |
| (b) Securities.....  | §1013        |
| (i) General.....   | §1013        |
| (ii) Common Law Principles .....   | §1014        |
| (iii) Canadian Securities Election .....                                 | §1018        |
| (c) Commodities .....  | §1020        |
| (d) Foreign Exchange.....  | §1021        |
| (e) Hedging.....   | §1023        |
| (f) Derivative Financial Instruments.....                                | §1030        |
| <b>XII. Other Income and Deductions .....</b>                            | <b>§1034</b> |
| 1. Legislative Scheme .....  | §1034        |
| (a) Income from Other Sources .....                                      | §1034        |
| (b) Subdivision E Deductions.....  | §1037        |
| 2. Policy Objectives .....   | §1039        |
| 3. Public Pensions .....   | §1041        |
| 4. Tax-Assisted Private Pension Plans .....                              | §1044        |
| (a) Types of Plans .....   | §1044        |
| (b) Tax Assistance.....  | §1045        |
| (i) General.....   | §1045        |
| (ii) Benefit of Tax Deferral .....                                       | §1047        |
| (iii) Policy Implications .....  | §1050        |
| (iv) Design Objectives .....   | §1052        |
| (c) Employer-Sponsored Plans.....  | §1060        |
| (i) Registered Pension Plans (RPPs) .....                                | §1060        |
| (ii) Deferred Profit Sharing Plans (DPSPs) .....                         | §1064        |
| (d) Registered Retirement Savings Plans (RRSPs).....                     | §1066        |
| (i) Definition of RRSP .....   | §1066        |
| (ii) Contributions Based on Earned Income.....                           | §1069        |
| (iii) Withdrawals.....   | §1074        |
| (iv) RRSP Annuities.....   | §1078        |
| (v) Registered Retirement Income Funds (RRIFs)....                       | §1080        |
| (vi) Tax Consequences on Death .....                                     | §1081        |
| (e) Contributions vs. Direct Transfers to RPPs, RRSPs<br>and DPSPs ..... | §1084        |
| 5. Other Tax-Assisted Savings Plans .....                                | §1088        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (a) Tax-Free Savings Accounts (TFSAs) .....           | §1088        |
| (b) Registered Education Savings Plans (RESPs) .....  | §1095        |
| (c) Registered Disability Savings Plans (RDSPs).....  | §1100        |
| 6. Retiring Allowances.....                           | §1101        |
| (a) Meaning of Retiring Allowance .....               | §1101        |
| (b) Tax Treatment .....                               | §1107        |
| 7. Spousal and Child Support.....                     | §1110        |
| (a) Definitions.....                                  | §1110        |
| (b) Deduction-Inclusion System .....                  | §1114        |
| (c) Policy Objectives .....                           | §1115        |
| 8. Other Amounts .....                                | §1119        |
| (a) Scholarships, Bursaries and Awards.....           | §1119        |
| (b) Employment Insurance.....                         | §1121        |
| (c) Worker’s Compensation and Social Assistance ..... | §1122        |
| (d) Universal Child Care Benefit .....                | §1124        |
| (e) Policy Considerations .....                       | §1126        |
| 9. Moving Expenses .....                              | §1129        |
| (a) Deduction .....                                   | §1129        |
| (b) Policy Objectives.....                            | §1131        |
| 10. Child Care Expenses.....                          | §1132        |
| (a) Deduction .....                                   | §1132        |
| (b) Policy Objectives.....                            | §1134        |
| <b>XIII. Income Splitting.....</b>                    | <b>§1137</b> |
| 1. Whose Income?.....                                 | §1137        |
| 2. Legislative Scheme .....                           | §1140        |
| (a) Inviting Income Split.....                        | §1140        |
| (i) General.....                                      | §1140        |
| (ii) Individual as the Tax Unit.....                  | §1142        |
| (iii) Progressive Rates .....                         | §1143        |
| (iv) Separate Taxation of Corporations and Trusts ... | §1144        |
| (v) Explicitly Permitting Income Splitting.....       | §1149        |
| (b) Explicitly Prohibiting Income Splitting.....      | §1150        |
| 3. Policy .....                                       | §1157        |
| (a) Progressivity of Individual Taxation .....        | §1157        |



## INCOME TAX

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (b) Fairness .....  | §1158 |
| (c) Treatment of the Family .....   | §1161 |
| (i) General.....  | §1161 |
| (ii) Equity Between Families.....   | §1163 |
| (iii) Impact on Household Labour and Employment<br>.....                                  | §1170 |
| (iv) Equity Between Families and Unattached<br>Individuals.....                           | §1173 |
| (v) Limited Recognition of the Family .....   | §1174 |
| (d) Sharing Family Wealth .....   | §1176 |
| 4. Non-Arm's Length Transfer of Property .....  | §1178 |
| (a) The Fair Market Value Principle.....  | §1178 |
| (i) General.....  | §1178 |
| (ii) Fair Market Value.....   | §1181 |
| (iii) Arm's Length .....  | §1183 |
| (iv) Symmetrical Application to Gifts.....  | §1186 |
| (v) Asymmetrical Application to Other Transactions<br>.....                               | §1189 |
| (vi) Rollover Exceptions .....  | §1191 |
| (b) Rollovers for Transfers to a Spouse or Common-law<br>Partner .....                    | §1193 |
| (i) Spouse and Common-law Partner Defined .....   | §1193 |
| (ii) Inter-Vivos Transfers .....  | §1194 |
| (iii) Transfers on Death.....   | §1196 |
| (iv) Election.....  | §1198 |
| (c) Rollovers for Transfers of Farming or Fishing Pro-<br>perty or Woodlots to Child..... | §1201 |
| (d) Rollovers for Transfers to Corporation .....  | §1202 |
| 5. Attribution of Income from Property .....  | §1204 |
| (a) Nature of Attribution Rules .....   | §1204 |
| (b) Income from Property or Substituted Property .....                                    | §1208 |
| (c) Transfer or Loan.....   | §1211 |
| (d) Attribution from a Spouse or Common-Law Partner<br>.....                              | §1214 |
| (e) Attribution from a Minor .....  | §1215 |
| (f) Exception for Fair Market Value Transactions .....                                    | §1217 |
| 6. Attribution of Capital Gains.....  | §1219 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 7. Family Trust.....                                    | §1223        |
| 8. Family Corporation.....                              | §1228        |
| 9. Income Diversion.....                                | §1231        |
| (a) General.....  | §1231        |
| (b) Indirect Payment.....                               | §1233        |
| (c) Assignment of Income.....                           | §1238        |
| (d) Interest Free or Low Interest Loans.....            | §1239        |
| 10. Kiddie Tax.....                                     | §1241        |
| (a) Rationale.....                                      | §1241        |
| (b) Application.....                                    | §1242        |
| <b>XIV. Taxable Income and Tax for Individuals.....</b> | <b>§1246</b> |
| 1. Tax for Individuals.....                             | §1246        |
| (a) Computation of Tax Payable.....                     | §1246        |
| (b) Staging Deductions.....                             | §1249        |
| 2. Tax Policy.....                                      | §1254        |
| (a) Ability to Pay.....                                 | §1254        |
| (b) Economic Efficiency and Neutrality.....             | §1255        |
| (c) Stimulation of Private Activities.....              | §1257        |
| 3. Net Income.....                                      | §1260        |
| (a) Utility of Net Income Concept.....                  | §1260        |
| (b) Aggregation of Income from All Sources.....         | §1262        |
| 4. Losses.....  | §1263        |
| (a) Characterization by Nature.....                     | §1263        |
| (b) Attribution of Losses.....                          | §1266        |
| (c) Limitations on Deductions for Losses.....           | §1268        |
| (i) Personal Losses.....                                | §1268        |
| (ii) Quarantined Capital Losses.....                    | §1270        |
| (iii) Farm Losses.....                                  | §1271        |
| (iv) Losses Deemed Nil.....                             | §1276        |
| (d) Current-year Loss.....                              | §1278        |
| (i) Loss from a Source.....                             | §1278        |
| (ii) Allowable capital losses.....                      | §1279        |
| (iii) Allowable Business Investment Losses.....         | §1282        |
| (e) Losses of Other Years.....                          | §1284        |

## INCOME TAX

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 5. Taxable Income.....                                    | §1285        |
| (a) Nature of Division C Deductions .....                 | §1285        |
| (b) Loss Carryovers.....                                  | §1287        |
| (i) Non-Capital-Losses .....                              | §1287        |
| (ii) Net Capital Losses .....                             | §1291        |
| (iii) Allowable Business Investment Losses .....          | §1295        |
| (iv) Farm Losses and Restricted Farm Losses.....          | §1296        |
| (v) Change of Corporate Control .....                     | §1298        |
| 6. Tax Rates.....   | §1304        |
| (a) Rate Structure .....                                  | §1304        |
| (i) Federal Rates .....                                   | §1304        |
| (ii) Provincial Rates .....                               | §1305        |
| (b) Marginal versus Average Rates .....                   | §1308        |
| (c) Progressive, Regressive or Flat Rates .....           | §1312        |
| (d) Indexing for Inflation.....                           | §1317        |
| (i) Effect of Inflation.....                              | §1317        |
| (ii) Indexation Rules.....                                | §1320        |
| 7. Tax Credits .....                                      | §1324        |
| (a) Nature of Tax Credits .....                           | §1324        |
| (b) Non-Refundable Credits.....                           | §1326        |
| (c) Refundable Credits .....                              | §1331        |
| 8. The Alternative Minimum Tax .....                      | §1335        |
| (a) Rationale .....                                       | §1335        |
| (b) Computation of the AMT .....                          | §1338        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>XV. Corporations and Shareholders.....</b>             | <b>§1341</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....                                     | §1341        |
| (a) Scope of Part .....                                   | §1341        |
| (b) Incorporation.....                                    | §1342        |
| (c) Public and Private Corporations .....                 | §1343        |
| (d) Canadian-Controlled Private Corporations.....         | §1345        |
| (e) Corporate Distributions .....                         | §1348        |
| 2. Integration of Corporation and Shareholder Taxes ..... | §1353        |
| (a) Double Taxation of Corporate Income.....              | §1353        |
| (b) History .....   | §1358        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (i) Carter Commission’s Proposals.....                                    | §1358 |
| (ii) Tax Reform of 1971 .....   | §1363 |
| (iii) Subsequent Reforms: 1972 to 2005 .....                              | §1365 |
| (c) Current rules .....   | §1366 |
| 3. Sheltering Income in a Corporation.....                                | §1372 |
| (a) The Problem .....   | §1372 |
| (b) History .....   | §1374 |
| (i) Carter Commission.....  | §1374 |
| (ii) Tax Reform of 1971 .....   | §1375 |
| (iii) Tax Reform of 1988 .....  | §1376 |
| (iv) Reforms in the 1994 and 1995 Budgets .....                           | §1378 |
| (v) Rate Reductions from 2000 to 2006 .....                               | §1381 |
| (c) Rate Reductions for 2007 to 2011.....                                 | §1382 |
| 4. Taxation of Shareholders.....  | §1384 |
| (a) Integration and Imputation .....                                      | §1384 |
| (b) Gross-Up and Credit Procedure.....                                    | §1385 |
| (c) Effect of Gross-up and Credit.....                                    | §1393 |
| 5. Taxation of corporations.....  | §1399 |
| (a) Taxable Income .....  | §1399 |
| (i) General Rule.....   | §1399 |
| (ii) Intercorporate Dividends.....  | §1400 |
| (iii) Charitable Donations.....   | §1403 |
| (b) Tax Rates .....   | §1404 |
| (i) Federal Tax.....  | §1404 |
| (ii) General Rate Reduction .....   | §1406 |
| (iii) Corporate Surtax .....  | §1408 |
| (iv) Large Corporations Tax .....   | §1409 |
| (v) Provincial Abatement .....  | §1412 |
| (vi) Provincial Taxes .....   | §1414 |
| (vii) Standard Corporate Rate.....  | §1417 |
| (c) Investment Income of Canadian-Controlled Private<br>Corporations..... | §1418 |
| (i) Canadian-Controlled Private Corporations.....                         | §1418 |
| (ii) Policy .....   | §1419 |
| (iii) Refundable Dividend Tax on Hand Account .....                       | §1421 |
| (iv) Dividends .....  | §1424 |

## INCOME TAX

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (v) Capital Gains .....  | §1427        |
| (d) Active Business Income of Canadian-Controlled Private Corporations.....  | §1429        |
| (i) Small Business Deduction .....   | §1429        |
| (ii) Active Business Income.....   | §1431        |
| (iii) Investment Income Compared.....  | §1433        |
| (iv) Limits on the Small Business Deduction.....                             | §1434        |
| (e) Manufacturing and Processing Credit.....                                 | §1437        |
| (f) Conclusion.....  | §1439        |
| <b>XVI. Partnerships.....</b>  | <b>§1440</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....  | §1440        |
| 2. Definition of Partnership .....   | §1441        |
| 3. Taxation of Partnership.....  | §1447        |
| 4. Partnership Interest .....  | §1451        |
| 5. Rollovers for the Formation and Dissolution of Canadian Partnerships..... | §1455        |
| <b>XVII. Trusts .....</b>  | <b>§1459</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....  | §1459        |
| 2. Nature of Trusts .....  | §1460        |
| (a) Definition of Trust.....   | §1460        |
| (b) Inter Vivos vs. Testamentary Trusts .....                                | §1462        |
| (c) Personal vs. Commercial Trusts .....                                     | §1466        |
| (d) Discretionary vs. Non-Discretionary Trusts.....                          | §1469        |
| (e) Spousal Trusts.....  | §1470        |
| (f) Alter Ego and Joint Spousal Trusts .....                                 | §1473        |
| 3. Special Features of Taxation.....   | §1476        |
| (a) Legislative Scheme.....  | §1476        |
| (b) Taxed as an Individual.....  | §1477        |
| (c) Rates.....   | §1481        |
| (d) Conduit Treatment of Trusts.....   | §1484        |
| 4. Creation of Trust.....  | §1485        |
| (a) Methods of Creation.....   | §1485        |
| (b) Transfer of Property .....   | §1486        |
| (i) General.....   | §1486        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (ii) Transfer of Property on Death .....                         | §1489        |
| (c) Rollovers .....  | §1490        |
| 5. Income Taxed to the Trust .....                               | §1493        |
| (a) Computation and Designation of Trust's Income .....          | §1493        |
| (b) Deemed Disposition of Trust Property.....                    | §1496        |
| 6. Income Taxed to the Beneficiary .....                         | §1500        |
| (a) Income Paid or Payable in the Year .....                     | §1500        |
| (b) Preferred Beneficiary Election.....                          | §1504        |
| (c) Special Rules for Capital Gains.....                         | §1506        |
| (d) Flow-through Character of Income .....                       | §1508        |
| (e) Tax-free Payments to Beneficiaries .....                     | §1510        |
| 7. Income Taxed to the Settlor.....                              | §1512        |
| (a) Anti-Avoidance Concerns .....                                | §1512        |
| (b) Trusts for Spouses or Related Minors.....                    | §1513        |
| (c) Trusts with Reserved Power of Revocation or<br>Control ..... | §1517        |
| 8. Termination of Trust.....                                     | §1520        |
| 9. Tax Planning with Trusts .....                                | §1528        |
| (a) Reasons for Creating Trusts.....                             | §1528        |
| (b) Planning a Trust .....                                       | §1530        |
| (c) Income Splitting .....                                       | §1536        |
| (d) Estate Freeze.....   | §1537        |
| <b>XVIII. Tax Administration and Ethics .....</b>                | <b>§1543</b> |
| 1. Filing of Tax Returns .....                                   | §1543        |
| 2. Payment of Tax.....   | §1546        |
| (a) General .....  | §1546        |
| (b) Withholding at Source .....                                  | §1547        |
| (c) Instalments .....  | §1549        |
| 3. Assessment .....  | §1553        |
| (a) Notice of Assessment .....                                   | §1553        |
| (b) Examination .....  | §1556        |
| (c) Audit.....   | §1557        |
| (d) Reassessment .....   | §1559        |
| 4. Dispute Resolution .....                                      | §1562        |
| (a) Objection.....   | §1562        |

## INCOME TAX

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (b) Appeal.....  | §1564 |
| (c) Burden of Proof.....                                   | §1568 |
| (d) Settlement.....  | §1573 |
| (e) Remission Order.....                                   | §1577 |
| 5. Confidentiality.....                                    | §1581 |
| 6. Civil Penalties.....                                    | §1583 |
| 7. Criminal Prosecutions.....                              | §1585 |
| (a) Tax Evasion.....                                       | §1585 |
| (b) Investigatory Powers.....                              | §1586 |
| (c) Prosecution.....                                       | §1587 |
| 8. Rectification.....                                      | §1588 |
| 9. Professional Responsibilities of Tax Practitioners..... | §1593 |
| (a) Importance of Professional Ethics.....                 | §1593 |
| (b) Ethical Regulation of the Tax Profession.....          | §1597 |
| 10. Duties to the Client.....                              | §1600 |
| (a) Nature of Relationship with the Client.....            | §1600 |
| (b) Competence.....  | §1603 |
| (c) Honesty and Candour.....                               | §1605 |
| (d) Confidentiality.....                                   | §1607 |
| (e) Solicitor-Client Privilege.....                        | §1610 |
| (f) Loyalty.....   | §1613 |
| 11. Duties to other Parties.....                           | §1614 |
| (a) Duties to the Tribunal.....                            | §1614 |
| (b) Relationship with the CRA.....                         | §1616 |
| (c) Third Parties.....                                     | §1618 |
| (d) Duty to the System.....                                | §1620 |
| 12. Fiduciary Duties.....                                  | §1621 |
| (a) Fiduciary Duties and Public Interest.....              | §1621 |
| (i) Fiduciary Relationship.....                            | §1621 |
| (ii) Public Interest.....                                  | §1624 |
| (b) Loyalty.....   | §1626 |
| (i) Core Duty.....   | §1626 |
| (ii) Notion of Conflict of Interest.....                   | §1627 |
| (iii) Avoidance of Conflicts.....                          | §1631 |
| (c) The Strother case.....                                 | §1632 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (i) Facts and issues.....                       | §1632        |
| (ii) Majority judgment.....                     | §1635        |
| (iii) Dissenting Judgment.....                  | §1641        |
| (iv) Summary of Key Points.....                 | §1642        |
| 13. Ethical Considerations in Tax Practice..... | §1643        |
| (a) Roles of Tax Practitioners.....             | §1643        |
| (b) Compliance.....                             | §1646        |
| (i) Primarily a Role of Accountants.....        | §1646        |
| (ii) Lawyer’s Duty of Honesty and Candour.....  | §1648        |
| (iii) Third Party Civil Penalties.....          | §1650        |
| (c) General Tax Planning and Advice.....        | §1653        |
| (i) Nature of the Practice.....                 | §1653        |
| (ii) The Audit Lottery Issue.....               | §1655        |
| (iii) Advising Multiple Clients.....            | §1657        |
| (d) Aggressive Tax Planning.....                | §1660        |
| (i) Tax is the Business.....                    | §1660        |
| (ii) Shades of Grey.....                        | §1663        |
| (iii) Legal Opinion.....                        | §1667        |
| (iv) Advance Tax Rulings.....                   | §1669        |
| (e) Advocacy and Litigation.....                | §1671        |
| 14. Gatekeepers of the Tax System.....          | §1673        |
| (a) Public Role of Tax Professionals.....       | §1673        |
| (b) Legislative Changes.....                    | §1675        |
| (c) Judicial Developments.....                  | §1677        |
| (d) CRA’s Efforts.....                          | §1679        |
| (e) International Influences.....               | §1681        |
| (f) Advancing Public Interest.....              | §1685        |
| <b>XIX. Statutory Interpretation.....</b>       | <b>§1686</b> |
| 1. Interpretation of the Act.....               | §1686        |
| (a) General.....                                | §1686        |
| (b) Meaning of words.....                       | §1687        |
| (c) Characterization of Facts.....              | §1688        |
| (d) Judicial Doctrines.....                     | §1691        |
| 2. Evolution of Interpretation Principles.....  | §1692        |



## INCOME TAX

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (a) Evolution.....   | §1692 |
| (b) Strict Interpretation.....   | §1694 |
| (i) Literal Meaning.....   | §1694 |
| (ii) Form over Substance.....  | §1696 |
| (iii) The Duke of Westminster Case.....                                | §1697 |
| (iv) Outdated Presumptions about Tax Law.....                          | §1703 |
| (c) Modern Rule.....   | §1706 |
| (i) Purposive Interpretation.....                                      | §1706 |
| (ii) True Commercial and Practical Nature of<br>Transactions.....      | §1710 |
| (iii) The Stubart Case.....  | §1712 |
| (d) Plain Meaning.....   | §1713 |
| (i) Clear and Unambiguous Meaning.....                                 | §1713 |
| (ii) No Recharacterization of Bona Fide Legal<br>Relationships.....    | §1718 |
| (iii) The Singleton Case.....  | §1721 |
| (e) Textual, Contextual and Purposive Interpretation.....              | §1724 |
| (i) Contextual and Purposive Interpretation.....                       | §1724 |
| (ii) Potential Relevance of Economic Substance of<br>Transactions..... | §1727 |
| (iii) The Placer Dome Case.....  | §1728 |
| 3. Statutory Text.....   | §1734 |
| (a) General.....   | §1734 |
| (b) Statutory Definitions.....   | §1736 |
| (c) Ordinary, Technical, or Legal Meaning.....                         | §1740 |
| (d) Ambiguous Meaning.....   | §1742 |
| 4. Context.....  | §1744 |
| (a) Statutory Context.....   | §1744 |
| (b) Legislative Scheme.....  | §1746 |
| (c) The Imperial Oil Case.....   | §1749 |
| (i) Text of Subsection 20(1)(f).....                                   | §1749 |
| (ii) Facts of the Case.....  | §1753 |
| (iii) Majority Decision.....   | §1755 |
| (iv) Dissenting Decision.....  | §1762 |
| 5. Legislative Purpose and Intent.....                                 | §1768 |
| (a) Growing Relevance.....   | §1768 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (b) Purpose or Intent .....                       | §1770        |
| (c) Inferences from Text of the Statute.....      | §1774        |
| (d) Relevance of Extrinsic Materials.....         | §1778        |
| (e) Presumptions .....                            | §1779        |
| 6. Navigating Between Text and Purpose.....       | §1781        |
| (a) General .....                                 | §1781        |
| (b) Special Characteristics of Tax Statutes ..... | §1782        |
| (c) Common Law Traditions .....                   | §1788        |
| (d) Divergent theories .....                      | §1792        |
| (i) General.....                                  | §1792        |
| (ii) Role of Judges.....                          | §1793        |
| (iii) Legislative Supremacy.....                  | §1796        |
| <b>XX. Tax Avoidance .....</b>                    | <b>§1800</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....                             | §1800        |
| (a) General .....                                 | §1800        |
| (b) Tax Evasion Distinguished .....               | §1802        |
| (c) Goals of Tax Avoidance .....                  | §1806        |
| (d) Types of Avoidance Transactions .....         | §1811        |
| (i) Using a Tax Relief.....                       | §1811        |
| (ii) Tax-Efficient Structures .....               | §1814        |
| (iii) Tax Arbitrage .....                         | §1816        |
| (iv) Tax Shelters.....                            | §1818        |
| (v) Anti-Avoidance Karate.....                    | §1820        |
| (e) Abusive Avoidance Distinguished.....          | §1822        |
| (f) Moral and Tax Policy Implications.....        | §1823        |
| 2. Judicial Approach to Tax Avoidance.....        | §1826        |
| (a) Role of the Court.....                        | §1826        |
| (b) Attitude Towards Tax Avoidance.....           | §1832        |
| (c) Interpretive Principles.....                  | §1833        |
| (i) Strict Interpretation .....                   | §1833        |
| (ii) Form over Substance .....                    | §1835        |
| (d) Judicial Anti-Avoidance Doctrines.....        | §1838        |
| (i) General.....                                  | §1838        |
| (ii) Business Purpose.....                        | §1839        |

## INCOME TAX

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (iii) Economic Substance .....                                       | §1844 |
| (iv) Sham .....  | §1853 |
| 3. Specific Anti-Avoidance Rules .....                               | §1859 |
| (a) General Features .....   | §1859 |
| (b) Targeted Transactions .....                                      | §1863 |
| (c) Effectiveness .....  | §1865 |
| (d) Co-existence with the GAAR .....                                 | §1867 |
| 4. General Anti-Avoidance Rule (GAAR).....                           | §1869 |
| (a) Section 245 .....  | §1869 |
| (b) Purposes .....   | §1870 |
| (i) Preventing Abusive Tax Avoidance.....                            | §1870 |
| (ii) Attenuating the Duke of Westminster Principle<br>.....          | §1871 |
| (iii) Measure of Last Resort .....                                   | §1872 |
| (c) No Down-Side Risk for Taxpayers .....                            | §1873 |
| (d) Minister's Discretion.....                                       | §1875 |
| (e) Interpretation Guidelines .....                                  | §1877 |
| (f) GAAR Jurisprudence .....   | §1878 |
| (i) General.....   | §1878 |
| (ii) Canada Trustco.....   | §1879 |
| (iii) Mathew .....   | §1883 |
| (iv) Lipson .....  | §1889 |
| 5. Application of the GAAR .....                                     | §1894 |
| (a) Tax Benefit .....  | §1894 |
| (b) Avoidance Transaction.....                                       | §1903 |
| (i) General.....   | §1903 |
| (ii) Transaction .....   | §1904 |
| (iii) Series of Transactions.....                                    | §1905 |
| (iv) Non-Tax Purpose Test .....                                      | §1908 |
| (c) Abuse or Misuse.....   | §1919 |
| (d) Abusive Tax Avoidance Versus Legitimate Tax<br>Minimization..... | §1925 |
| 6. The Future of the GAAR .....                                      | §1927 |

### **Index**

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

*Related titles:* Annuities; Barristers and Solicitors; Business Corporations; Constitutional Law; Courts; Customs and Excise; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Partnerships; Pensions — Private; Pensions — Public; Professions and Occupations; Statutes; Trusts

# INJUNCTIONS

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Principles Governing Grant</b> .....                       | \$1  |
| 1. Jurisdiction .....  | \$1  |
| 2. Nature of Remedy.....   | \$11 |
| 3. Types of Injunctions .....                                    | \$15 |
| (a) Interim and Interlocutory Injunctions .....                  | \$15 |
| (b) Mandatory Injunctions .....                                  | \$16 |
| (c) Perpetual or Permanent Injunctions .....                     | \$28 |
| (d) Quia Timet Injunctions .....                                 | \$33 |
| (e) Statutory Injunctions.....                                   | \$40 |
| 4. Considerations Affecting Grant.....                           | \$48 |
| (a) Acquiescence .....   | \$48 |
| (b) Delay .....  | \$50 |
| (c) Conduct of Applicant .....                                   | \$52 |
| (d) Policy Considerations.....                                   | \$53 |
| (e) Existence of Other Remedies.....                             | \$58 |
| (f) Contractual Provisions .....                                 | \$64 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>II. Damages in Lieu of or in Addition to Injunction</b> ..... | \$66 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>III. Interim and Interlocutory Injunctions</b> .....          | \$74 |
| 1. General .....   | \$74 |
| 2. Principles Governing Grant .....                              | \$81 |
| (a) General .....  | \$81 |
| (b) Merits of the Case.....                                      | \$87 |

## INJUNCTIONS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) General.....                         | §87         |
| (ii) Prima Facie Case .....              | §92         |
| (iii) Serious Question .....             | §99         |
| (c) Irreparable Harm or Injury.....      | §103        |
| (i) General.....                         | §103        |
| (ii) Evidence .....                      | §123        |
| (d) Balance of Convenience.....          | §128        |
| (e) Preservation of the Status Quo ..... | §144        |
| 3. Duration.....                         | §148        |
| 4. Undertaking as to Damages.....        | §154        |
| (a) General.....                         | §154        |
| (b) Requirement.....                     | §159        |
| (c) Liability.....                       | §163        |
| (d) Enforcement.....                     | §172        |
| (i) Entitlement.....                     | §172        |
| (ii) Procedure .....                     | §181        |
| (iii) Measure of Damages .....           | §184        |
| 5. Continuance or Dissolution .....      | §187        |
| (a) General.....                         | §187        |
| (b) Onus and Burden of Proof.....        | §202        |
| (c) Evidence.....                        | §204        |
| <b>IV. Mareva Injunctions .....</b>      | <b>§207</b> |
| 1. General .....                         | §207        |
| 2. Requirements.....                     | §215        |
| (a) Tests .....                          | §215        |
| (b) Merits of Case .....                 | §217        |
| (c) Disclosure and Evidence .....        | §220        |
| (d) Assets.....                          | §226        |
| (i) General.....                         | §226        |
| (ii) Dealings with Assets.....           | §229        |
| (iii) Ex Juris Assets.....               | §234        |
| (e) Undertaking in Damages.....          | §235        |
| (f) Provisos .....                       | §237        |
| (g) Ancillary Orders .....               | §241        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (h) Discretionary Bars .....                    | §244        |
| <b>V. Anton Piller Orders .....</b>             | <b>§249</b> |
| 1. General .....                                | §249        |
| 2. “Rolling” Orders .....                       | §253        |
| 3. Requirements .....                           | §255        |
| (a) General .....                               | §255        |
| (b) Merits .....                                | §256        |
| (c) Harm .....                                  | §257        |
| (d) Preservation of Evidence .....              | §258        |
| 4. Disclosure .....                             | §261        |
| 5. Conditions .....                             | §262        |
| 6. Concealment or Destruction of Evidence ..... | §264        |
| 7. Setting Aside, Review or Continuation .....  | §266        |
| <b>VI. Proceedings for Injunctions .....</b>    | <b>§272</b> |
| 1. General .....                                | §272        |
| 2. Time for Obtaining Injunction .....          | §277        |
| (a) Before Proceedings Commenced .....          | §277        |
| (b) Once Proceedings Commenced .....            | §279        |
| (c) During Trial .....                          | §281        |
| (d) At Judgment .....                           | §283        |
| (e) After Judgment .....                        | §285        |
| 3. Parties .....                                | §288        |
| 4. Pleadings .....                              | §294        |
| 5. Notice of Motion .....                       | §297        |
| (a) Alberta .....                               | §297        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                      | §300        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                              | §309        |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....                          | §315        |
| (e) Ontario .....                               | §318        |
| (f) Federal Court .....                         | §320        |
| (g) Service Ex Juris .....                      | §321        |
| 6. Affidavits and Materials .....               | §323        |
| (a) General .....                               | §323        |

## INJUNCTIONS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Alberta .....                              | §329        |
| (c) British Columbia.....                      | §336        |
| (d) Manitoba .....                             | §341        |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....                          | §345        |
| (f) Ontario.....                               | §352        |
| (g) Federal Court.....                         | §368        |
| 7. Default Judgment .....                      | §381        |
| 8. Motion for Judgment .....                   | §382        |
| 9. Ex Parte .....                              | §389        |
| 10. Expedited Trial.....                       | §391        |
| 11. Service of Order.....                      | §393        |
| 12. Judicial Review .....                      | §398        |
| 13. Constitutional Challenge.....              | §400        |
| 14. Security for Costs .....                   | §401        |
| 15. Costs .....                                | §402        |
| 16. Appeals .....                              | §412        |
| <b>VII. Injunction Order or Judgment .....</b> | <b>§429</b> |
| 1. Form .....                                  | §429        |
| (a) General.....                               | §429        |
| (b) Enforcement Provisions .....               | §438        |
| 2. Effective Date .....                        | §443        |
| 3. Interpretation .....                        | §449        |
| 4. Duty to Obey.....                           | §451        |
| 5. Suspension of Operation.....                | §458        |
| (a) General.....                               | §458        |
| (b) Pending Appeal .....                       | §459        |
| 6. Breach of Injunction .....                  | §465        |
| 7. Enforcement Proceedings .....               | §468        |
| (a) General .....                              | §468        |
| (b) Alberta .....                              | §486        |
| (c) British Columbia.....                      | §491        |
| (d) Manitoba .....                             | §500        |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....                          | §508        |
| (f) Ontario.....                               | §513        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (g) Federal Court.....                               | §521        |
| (h) Criminal Proceedings .....                       | §527        |
| <b>VIII. Injunctions in Particular Matters .....</b> | <b>§532</b> |
| 1. Actions and Proceedings.....                      | §532        |
| (a) General .....                                    | §532        |
| (b) Anti-Suit Injunctions .....                      | §534        |
| (c) Discovery .....                                  | §544        |
| 2. Arbitration .....                                 | §545        |
| 3. Confidential Information and Trade Secrets.....   | §547        |
| 4. Contracts and Covenants .....                     | §559        |
| (a) General .....                                    | §559        |
| (b) Injunction in Aid of Specific Performance .....  | §564        |
| (c) Personal Services .....                          | §569        |
| (d) Supervision of Performance.....                  | §572        |
| (e) Negative and Affirmative Covenants .....         | §573        |
| (f) Restrictive Covenants Affecting Land .....       | §599        |
| (g) Interfering with Contracts .....                 | §609        |
| 5. Copyright.....                                    | §611        |
| 6. Crimes and Immoral Acts .....                     | §626        |
| 7. Crown .....                                       | §632        |
| 8. Defamation .....                                  | §634        |
| 9. Fiduciary Duties.....                             | §643        |
| 10. Intellectual Property .....                      | §649        |
| 11. Labour Disputes, Picketing and Trade Unions..... | §650        |
| (a) General .....                                    | §650        |
| (b) Ontario .....                                    | §657        |
| (c) Saskatchewan.....                                | §664        |
| 12. Patents.....                                     | §667        |
| 13. Preservation of Property .....                   | §681        |
| 14. Trade-marks and Related Matters .....            | §687        |
| (a) Trade-marks .....                                | §687        |
| (b) Trade names .....                                | §703        |
| (c) Passing Off .....                                | §706        |
| (d) Industrial Designs.....                          | §718        |

## INJUNCTIONS

---

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Associations and Not-for-Profit Corporations; Business Corporations; Conflict of Laws; Conspiracy; Contempt of Court; Contracts; Copyright; Courts; Crown; Damages; Debtor and Creditor; Defamation; Easements; Employment Law; Equity; Execution; Executors and Administrators; Family Law — General; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Judgments and Orders; Labour Law; Landlord and Tenant; Mortgages; Municipal Corporations; Nuisance; Oil and Gas; Parties; Partnership; Patents; Planning and Zoning; Pleadings; Practice; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Real Property; Specific Performance; Sports; Torts; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada; Trade-Marks and Industrial Designs; Trespass; Waters and Watercourses

# **Title 80**

## **INTERNATIONAL LAW**

prepared by

L.C. GREEN, C.M., LL.B., LL.D., F.R.S.C.  
*University Professor Emeritus, Honorary Professor of Law*

### **List of Abbreviations**

### **Table of Cases**

### **Table of Statutes**

### **Table of Treaties and Related Documents**

- I Foundations of International Law, §1**
  - 1. Nature and sources of international law, §1
  - 2. International and national law, §32
  
- II International Personality, §53**
  - 1. Subjects of international law, §53
  - 2. Sovereignty and equality of states, §77
  - 3. Recognition, §93
  - 4. International representation, §113
  - 5. Continuity of international personality, §122
  
- III State Jurisdiction, §135**
  - 1. Forms of state jurisdiction, §135
  - 2. Customary law limitations on state jurisdiction, §149
  - 3. Environment and pollution control, §168
  - 4. Fisheries, canals and water use, §180
  - 5. International economic law, §187
  - 6. International criminal law, §196
  - 7. Protection of minorities, §223
  - 8. Air law, §233
  
- IV Objects of International Law, §246**
  - 1. Territory and land frontiers, §246
  - 2. Maritime frontiers and the high seas, §267
  - 3. Individuals, corporations and ships, §291

INTERNATIONAL LAW

- V International Transactions, §309**
  - 1. Treaties and other international agreements, §309
  - 2. International responsibility, §328
  
- VI The Law of Armed Conflict, §341**
  - 1. The nature of war and the law of armed conflict, §341
  - 2. Military occupation, §362
  - 3. War crimes, §371
  - 4. Non-international armed conflict, §399
  
- VII The Law of International Organizations, §417**
  - 1. International judicial institutions, §417
  - 2. The United Nations and specialized agencies, §431
  - 3. The international civil service, §449

**Index**

# INTERNET LAW

prepared by  
Chantal Bernier, LL.B., LL.M., Counsel, Privacy Law Group,  
Dentons Canada LLP  
*with the assistance of*  
Jawaid Panjwani, B.A., M.A., J.D.,  
Associate, Dentons Canada LLP.  
*on the basis of the work of*  
Sukanya Pillay, B.A., LL.B., LL.M., and Professor Myra Tawfik,  
B.A. (Hons.), LL.B., B.C.L., LL.M.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Treaties**

**Table of Policies**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Overarching Issues</b> .....                                       | \$1  |
| 1. Scope of Title.....   | \$1  |
| 2. Governance .....  | \$2  |
| (a) General .....  | \$2  |
| (b) Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications<br>Commission ..... | \$4  |
| (c) Office of the Privacy Commissioner of Canada .....                   | \$5  |
| 3. Jurisdiction .....  | \$6  |
| (a) Application on the Internet .....                                    | \$6  |
| (b) Situs of the Tort .....  | \$7  |
| (c) Real and Substantial Connection .....                                | \$8  |
| (i) General.....   | \$8  |
| (ii) Jurisdiction in Relation to Domain Names.....                       | \$11 |
| (iii) Jurisdiction Over Defamation on the Internet .....                 | \$12 |
| (iv) Jurisdiction Over Active or Passive Website.....                    | \$14 |

INTERNET LAW

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 4. Internet Evidence .....                                | \$16        |
| (a) Application.....                                      | \$16        |
| (b) Legislation .....                                     | \$19        |
| (c) Admissibility .....                                   | \$21        |
| (d) Authenticity .....                                    | \$34        |
| (e) Best Evidence Rule .....                              | \$35        |
| (f) Electronic Business Records.....                      | \$41        |
| (g) Reliability.....                                      | \$45        |
| (h) Electronic Record Keeping .....                       | \$46        |
| (i) Under the Income Tax Act.....                         | \$46        |
| (ii) Under Business Corporations Acts.....                | \$49        |
| (iii) Uniform Electronic Commerce Act .....               | \$51        |
| 5. Solicitor-Client Privilege .....                       | \$52        |
| 6. Liability .....  | \$53        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>II. E-Commerce .....</b>                               | <b>\$55</b> |
| 1. Online Contracting .....                               | \$55        |
| (a) General .....   | \$55        |
| (b) Validity of Electronic Contract Form.....             | \$56        |
| (i) Application .....                                     | \$56        |
| (ii) Place and Receipt of Contract Information .....      | \$58        |
| (iii) Writing Requirements and Electronic Documents ..... | \$61        |
| (c) Electronic Signatures .....                           | \$62        |
| (i) Validity and Definition .....                         | \$62        |
| (ii) Reliability Test and Exception .....                 | \$67        |
| (iii) Trustworthy Signature.....                          | \$69        |
| (d) Internet Agreements .....                             | \$75        |
| (i) General.....  | \$75        |
| (ii) Offer.....   | \$77        |
| (iii) Acceptance .....                                    | \$78        |
| (e) Mistakes by Electronic Agents .....                   | \$82        |
| (f) Electronic Procedures .....                           | \$84        |
| (g) Onerous Terms — Enforceability .....                  | \$85        |
| 2. Consumer Protection.....                               | \$86        |
| (a) Application of Rules.....                             | \$86        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Manitoba, Saskatchewan and Alberta .....  | §87         |
| (c) Ontario .....   | §88         |
| (d) British Columbia, Prince Edward Island, Yukon,<br>Northwest Territories and Nunavut ..... | §89         |
| (e) Quebec .....  | §90         |
| 3. Spam .....   | §91         |
| (a) Canada's Anti-spam Legislation .....  | §91         |
| (b) Criminal Code of Canada .....   | §101        |
| (c) Telecommunications Act.....   | §102        |
| <b>III. Intellectual Property .....</b>   | <b>§103</b> |
| 1. Domain Names.....  | §103        |
| (a) Definition .....  | §103        |
| (b) Protection .....  | §105        |
| (c) Infringement.....   | §107        |
| (d) Remedies.....   | §109        |
| (i) Interlocutory Injunction.....   | §109        |
| (ii) Order not to Transfer .....  | §110        |
| (iii) Temporary Custody.....  | §112        |
| (iv) Permanent Injunction .....   | §113        |
| (v) Order to Transfer.....  | §114        |
| (vi) Seeking Declaration of Ownership.....  | §115        |
| (e) Torts .....   | §116        |
| (i) Breach of Confidence .....  | §116        |
| (ii) Interference with Economic Relations .....   | §117        |
| (iii) Conspiracy to Injure .....  | §118        |
| (iv) Defamation Through Domain Names .....  | §119        |
| (f) Damages .....   | §121        |
| (i) Lump Sum .....  | §121        |
| (ii) Punitive Damages.....  | §122        |
| (g) Evidence.....   | §123        |
| (h) Disputes .....  | §124        |
| (i) Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and<br>Numbers.....                               | §124        |
| (ii) Canadian Internet Registration Authority .....   | §133        |
| 2. Copyright.....   | §147        |

## INTERNET LAW

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (a) Nature of the Internet and Copyright .....                                  | §147 |
| (b) Protected Online Works .....  | §149 |
| (i) Websites.....   | §149 |
| (ii) Hyperlinks .....   | §152 |
| (iii) Meta Tags.....  | §153 |
| (iv) Online Databases.....  | §154 |
| (c) Primary Infringement .....  | §155 |
| (d) Secondary Infringement .....  | §157 |
| (e) Online Rights.....  | §158 |
| (i) Exclusive Right to Produce or Reproduce the<br>Work .....                   | §158 |
| (ii) Exclusive Right to Communicate to the Public<br>by Telecommunications..... | §159 |
| (iii) Permitted Uses and Defences .....   | §161 |
| A. Implied Licence.....   | §161 |
| B. Private Copying.....   | §163 |
| C. Fair Dealing.....  | §165 |
| (f) Remedies .....  | §166 |
| (i) Pre-judgment Remedies .....   | §166 |
| (ii) Post-judgment Remedies.....  | §167 |
| A. Damages — General.....   | §167 |
| B. Statutory Damages .....  | §168 |
| C. Exemplary Damages.....   | §169 |
| (g) Third-party Liability: Internet Service Providers.....                      | §170 |
| (h) Disclosure .....  | §173 |
| (i) World Intellectual Property Organization Internet<br>Treaties.....          | §174 |
| (i) General Principles .....  | §174 |
| (ii) Making Available Right.....  | §175 |
| (iii) Technology Protection Measures .....                                      | §176 |
| (iv) Digital Rights Management .....  | §177 |
| 3. Patents.....   | §178 |
| 4. Trademarks .....   | §179 |
| (a) Acquisition of Trademark Rights .....                                       | §179 |
| (b) Making Known.....   | §181 |
| (c) Loss of Trademark Rights.....   | §182 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Cancellation for Non-use .....                                 | §182        |
| (ii) Expungement .....   | §183        |
| (d) Registrability of Trademarks in Relation to Internet Use ..... | §184        |
| (e) Infringement of Trademark Rights .....                         | §185        |
| (i) Registered Trademarks .....                                    | §185        |
| (ii) Passing-off: Unregistered Trademarks and Trade Names .....    | §186        |
| (iii) Loss of Distinctiveness .....                                | §187        |
| (f) Remedies .....   | §188        |
| (i) Pre-judgment Remedies .....                                    | §188        |
| A. Interlocutory Injunction .....                                  | §188        |
| B. Order not to Transfer Domain Name Pending Trial .....           | §189        |
| C. Preservation Order .....  | §190        |
| (ii) Post-judgment remedies .....                                  | §191        |
| A. Permanent injunction .....                                      | §191        |
| B. Transfer of Domain Name .....                                   | §192        |
| C. Damages .....   | §193        |
| D. Contempt .....  | §194        |
| (iii) Declaration of Ownership in Trademark .....                  | §195        |
| (g) Practice and Procedure — Internet Evidence .....               | §196        |
| (h) Official Marks .....   | §197        |
| 5. Confidential Information (Trade Secrets) .....                  | §198        |
| (a) General .....  | §198        |
| (b) Quality of Confidence on Internet .....                        | §199        |
| (c) Obligation of Confidence .....                                 | §200        |
| (d) Liability .....  | §204        |
| (e) Remedies .....   | §205        |
| (i) Interlocutory Injunction .....                                 | §205        |
| (ii) Contempt .....  | §206        |
| (f) Damages .....  | §207        |
| <b>IV. Defamation Online .....</b>                                 | <b>§208</b> |
| 1. Differential Impact of the Internet .....                       | §208        |
| 2. Forms of Defamation .....                                       | §209        |

## INTERNET LAW

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 3. Balancing Rights .....                                | \$214        |
| 4. Defences .....  | \$216        |
| (a) Innocent Dissemination .....                         | \$216        |
| (b) Qualified Privilege .....                            | \$217        |
| (c) Journalistic Exception.....                          | \$218        |
| (d) Fair Comment.....                                    | \$219        |
| 5. Remedies .....  | \$220        |
| (a) Anton Piller Orders .....                            | \$220        |
| (b) Interlocutory Injunction.....                        | \$221        |
| (c) Permanent Injunction.....                            | \$223        |
| 6. Damages .....   | \$224        |
| (a) General .....  | \$224        |
| (b) Aggravated Damages .....                             | \$226        |
| 7. Provincial Libel and Slander Laws .....               | \$228        |
| 8. Liability .....                                       | \$231        |
| 9. Procedure.....  | \$233        |
| <b>V. Online Privacy .....</b>                           | <b>\$235</b> |
| 1. Overview .....  | \$235        |
| 2. Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms.....          | \$236        |
| (a) Application to Privacy.....                          | \$236        |
| (b) Reasonable Expectations of Privacy Online .....      | \$238        |
| (c) Requests for Access to Internet Personal Information |              |
| .....  | \$241        |
| (i) Pseudonyms .....                                     | \$241        |
| (ii) Cellphones .....                                    | \$242        |
| (iii) Basic Subscriber Information .....                 | \$243        |
| (iv) Grounds for Authorization to Access.....            | \$245        |
| (v) Conditions for Disclosure .....                      | \$246        |
| (vi) Child Pornography .....                             | \$247        |
| (d) Privacy and Freedom of Expression.....               | \$248        |
| (e) Privacy and Judicial Transparency .....              | \$252        |
| 3. Privacy Legislation .....                             | \$253        |
| (a) Quasi-constitutional Nature .....                    | \$253        |
| (b) Private Sector .....                                 | \$254        |
| (i) Federal .....  | \$254        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| A. Personal Information Protection and Electronic Documents Act .....  | §254        |
| B. Definition of Personal Information Online .....   | §255        |
| C. Scope.....  | §257        |
| D. Online Advertising .....  | §258        |
| E. Transborder Data Flows .....  | §260        |
| (ii) Provincial.....   | §261        |
| A. Substantially Similar Legislation.....  | §261        |
| B. Personal Health Information .....   | §262        |
| (c) Public Sector — Federal.....   | §263        |
| (i) Government Access to Social Media .....  | §263        |
| (ii) Internet Posting of Decisions .....   | §265        |
| (d) Cloud Computing .....  | §266        |
| (i) Definition.....  | §266        |
| (ii) Legal Status .....  | §267        |
| A. Public Sector .....   | §267        |
| B. Private Sector .....  | §268        |
| (iii) Code of Practice for Personally Identifiable Information (PII) in Public Clouds Acting as PII Processors ..... | §271        |
| 4. Common Law.....   | §272        |
| (a) General .....  | §272        |
| (b) Tort of Intrusion Upon Seclusion.....  | §273        |
| (c) Statutory Tort of Invasion of Privacy .....  | §275        |
| 5. Privacy and Other Proceedings .....   | §276        |
| (a) Copyright .....  | §276        |
| (b) Criminal Law.....  | §277        |
| (c) Defamation Law .....   | §280        |
| (d) Employment Law .....   | §281        |
| (e) Family Law .....   | §283        |
| (f) Personal Injury .....  | §284        |
| <b>VI. Online Crimes .....</b>   | <b>§285</b> |
| 1. Hate Speech.....  | §285        |
| (a) General .....  | §285        |
| (b) Online.....  | §286        |

INTERNET LAW

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Harassment and Cyberbullying.....  | §287        |
| (a) Harassment.....   | §287        |
| (b) Cyberbullying .....   | §289        |
| 3. Pornography/Child Pornography Online .....   | §292        |
| (a) Definitions.....  | §292        |
| (b) Distribution .....  | §293        |
| (c) Makes/Prints/Publishes/Possesses .....  | §295        |
| (d) Luring Child by Means of Computer System .....  | §302        |
| (i) General.....  | §302        |
| (ii) Sentencing .....   | §304        |
| 4. Online Fraud .....   | §307        |
| (a) General .....   | §307        |
| (b) Software .....  | §309        |
| (c) Online Gambling .....   | §310        |
| 5. Crimes Against Computer Systems: Hackers, Crackers,<br>Threats.....  | §311        |
| (a) Definitions Related to Hacking.....   | §311        |
| (b) Hacking/Unauthorized Use .....  | §312        |
| (c) Mischief in Relation to Data.....   | §315        |
| (d) Malware and Spyware.....  | §317        |
| 6. Investigative Powers over the Internet.....  | §322        |
| <b>VII. Access to Government Electronic Records.....</b>  | <b>§327</b> |
| <b>Index</b>  |             |
| <i>Related titles:</i> Conflict of Laws; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Copy-<br>right; Criminal Law — Offences; Defamation; Evidence; Injunctions; In-<br>ternational Law; Privacy and Freedom of Information; Radio and Televi-<br>sion; Sale of Goods; Telecommunications; Torts; Trade and Commerce<br>and Foreign Investment in Canada; Trade Marks and Industrial Designs |             |

# INTERPLEADER

prepared by  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**  
**Table of Statutes**  
**Table of Rules**

**I. Nature and Scope of Proceedings . . . . .** §1  
    1. Nature . . . . . §1  
    2. Questions Determinable . . . . . §8  
    3. Rights After Decision . . . . . §24

**II. Jurisdiction . . . . .** §26  
    1. Provincial Courts . . . . . §26  
    2. Federal Court . . . . . §29  
    3. Foreign Judgments . . . . . §30

**III. Right to Interplead . . . . .** §32  
    1. General . . . . . §32  
    2. Stakeholders . . . . . §37  
    3. Bailees . . . . . §43  
    4. Garnishees . . . . . §46  
    5. Assigned Debts . . . . . §48  
    6. Solicitors . . . . . §49  
    7. Crown . . . . . §51  
    8. Sheriff . . . . . §52

**IV. Practice and Procedure . . . . .** §68  
    1. Application . . . . . §68  
        (a) By Stakeholder . . . . . §68

INTERPLEADER

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (b) By Sheriff . . . . .                             | §74  |
| 2. Disposal of Goods Seized . . . . .                | §79  |
| (a) Sale Before Trial . . . . .                      | §79  |
| (b) Security by Claimant . . . . .                   | §83  |
| 3. Parties Failing to Appear or Abandoning . . . . . | §84  |
| 4. Interpleader Issue . . . . .                      | §87  |
| (a) Form and Settling of Issue . . . . .             | §87  |
| (b) Party to be Plaintiff . . . . .                  | §94  |
| (c) Burden of Proof . . . . .                        | §101 |
| 5. Discovery and Examination on Affidavits . . . . . | §112 |
| 6. Summary Disposition . . . . .                     | §115 |
| 7. Trial of Issue . . . . .                          | §117 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                | §117 |
| (b) Effect of Judgment . . . . .                     | §123 |
| 8. Appeals . . . . .                                 | §125 |
| 9. Costs . . . . .                                   | §136 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                | §136 |
| (b) Sheriff's Costs . . . . .                        | §142 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Debtor and Creditor; Execution; Sheriffs and Bailiffs.

# JUDGMENTS AND ORDERS

prepared by  
Kathleen Maragh, B.A., B.S.W., LL.B

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                                   | §1   |
| 1. What Constitutes .....                                 | §1   |
| 2. Distinction Between Judgments and Orders .....         | §12  |
| 3. Discretionary Orders .....                             | §14  |
| 4. Drawing Up and Settling Judgments and Orders.....      | §15  |
| 5. Signing and Entering .....                             | §22  |
| 6. Further Directions .....                               | §30  |
| 7. Conditional Orders.....                                | §32  |
| 8. Time of Recovery .....                                 | §33  |
| 9. Date of Judgments and Orders; Time when Effective..... | §34  |
| 10. Judgment in Rem.....                                  | §41  |
| 11. Different Relief from that Claimed.....               | §43  |
| 12. Service of Judgments and Orders .....                 | §45  |
| 13. Abandonment of Judgments and Orders.....              | §46  |
| 14. Compliance with Judgments and Orders .....            | §47  |
| 15. Reasons for Judgment.....                             | §51  |
| 16. Currency in which Judgment to be Paid .....           | §61  |
| 17. Whether Judgment May Be Void or Voidable.....         | §64  |
| <b>II. Consent Judgments</b> .....                        | §72  |
| <b>III. Judgments on Admissions</b> .....                 | §105 |

JUDGMENTS AND ORDERS

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>IV. Judgments on Counterclaims, Crossclaims, Third Party Claims and in Class Actions</b> ..... | §111 |
| <b>V. Declaratory Judgments</b> .....   | §119 |
| 1. Jurisdiction .....   | §119 |
| 2. General Principles .....   | §127 |
| 3. Specific Parties.....  | §147 |
| 4. Specific Actions .....   | §150 |
| (a) Sale of Land .....  | §150 |
| (b) Sale of Goods .....   | §153 |
| (c) Matrimonial Causes .....  | §154 |
| (d) Other Actions .....   | §157 |
| <b>VI. Final and Interlocutory Judgments</b> .....  | §161 |
| 1. Final.....   | §161 |
| (a) General Principles.....   | §161 |
| (b) Particular Actions .....  | §171 |
| 2. Interlocutory .....  | §186 |
| <b>VII. Default Judgments</b> .....   | §206 |
| 1. General .....  | §206 |
| 2. Debt or Liquidated Demand.....   | §242 |
| 3. Strict Compliance Required.....  | §247 |
| <b>VIII. Summary Judgments</b> .....  | §267 |
| 1. General .....  | §267 |
| 2. Availability .....   | §268 |
| 3. Urgent Motions and Delay .....   | §292 |
| 4. Evidence .....   | §294 |
| 5. Court's Powers .....   | §314 |
| 6. Effect of Summary Judgment.....  | §347 |
| <b>IX. Ex Parte Orders</b> .....  | §348 |
| <b>X. Reservations in Judgments and Orders</b> .....  | §357 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>XI. Amending and Varying Judgments and Orders</b> .....   | §362 |
| 1. General .....   | §362 |
| 2. Before Judgment Entered .....                             | §366 |
| 3. After Judgment Entered .....                              | §376 |
| (a) General Inability .....                                  | §376 |
| (b) Errors of Inadvertence .....                             | §379 |
| (c) Fraud or New Facts .....                                 | §390 |
| (d) Consent of all Parties .....                             | §391 |
| (e) Party Failing to Appear .....                            | §392 |
| (f) Varying as to Costs .....                                | §393 |
| (g) Claims Not Adjudicated .....                             | §395 |
| 4. Particular Orders .....                                   | §398 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>XII. Collateral Attacks on Judgments and Orders</b> ..... | §405 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>XIII. Actions on Judgments and Orders</b> .....           | §413 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>XIV. Interest on Judgments</b> .....                      | §420 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>XV. Judgment as Bar to Further Action</b> .....           | §446 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>XVI. Satisfaction of Judgments</b> .....                  | §482 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>XVII. Setting Aside Judgments and Orders</b> .....        | §488 |
| 1. General Principles .....                                  | §488 |
| 2. Grounds .....   | §505 |
| (a) Fraud or Perjury .....                                   | §505 |
| (b) Evidence Subsequently Discovered .....                   | §520 |
| (c) Irregularity and Procedural Errors .....                 | §525 |
| 3. Default Judgments and Orders .....                        | §533 |
| (a) General .....  | §533 |
| (b) Affidavit of Merits .....                                | §569 |
| (c) Delay in Applying .....                                  | §575 |
| (d) Amount of Judgment Excessive .....                       | §579 |
| 4. Other Judgments and Orders .....                          | §583 |

JUDGMENTS AND ORDERS

---

**XVIII. Appeals from Judgments and Orders.....** §601

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Arbitration; Conflict of Laws; Courts; Distress; Estoppel; Execution; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Injunctions; Practice; Prerogative Remedies; Trusts

# LABOUR LAW — ALBERTA

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Information Bulletins**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                               | §1  |
| <b>II. Regulatory Agencies, Officials and Courts</b> . . . . . | §6  |
| 1. Labour Relations Board . . . . .                            | §6  |
| (a) Composition . . . . .                                      | §6  |
| (b) Tenure . . . . .   | §10 |
| (c) Remuneration of Members . . . . .                          | §12 |
| (d) Business . . . . .   | §13 |
| (e) Meetings . . . . .   | §14 |
| (f) Quorum . . . . .   | §17 |
| (g) Decisions and Orders . . . . .                             | §20 |
| (h) Liability . . . . .  | §27 |
| (i) Service of Documents . . . . .                             | §28 |
| (j) Notice . . . . .   | §48 |
| (k) Particulars of Application or Complaint . . . . .          | §56 |
| (l) Replies . . . . .  | §64 |
| (m) Procedural Irregularity . . . . .                          | §66 |
| (n) Jurisdiction and Review of Orders . . . . .                | §69 |
| (o) Powers . . . . .   | §79 |
| (p) Investigations . . . . .                                   | §85 |
| (q) Investigating Officer's Reports . . . . .                  | §96 |
| (r) Hearings . . . . .   | §98 |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (s) Evidence . . . . .  | §122        |
| (t) Attendance of Witnesses and Production of Documents . . . . .   | §127        |
| (u) Settlement of Differences . . . . .                             | §146        |
| (v) Supervised Votes . . . . .                                      | §167        |
| 2. Minister . . . . .   | §170        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §170        |
| (b) Multi-Sector Advisory Council . . . . .                         | §174        |
| (c) Round-Table Conference . . . . .                                | §177        |
| (d) Disputes Inquiry Boards . . . . .                               | §178        |
| (i) Notice of Establishment . . . . .                               | §178        |
| (ii) Appointment of Members . . . . .                               | §182        |
| (iii) Referral of Disputes . . . . .                                | §185        |
| (iv) Meetings . . . . .   | §186        |
| (v) Proceedings . . . . .   | §187        |
| (vi) Evidence . . . . .   | §190        |
| (vii) Attendance of Witnesses and Production of Documents . . . . . | §191        |
| (viii) Recommendations . . . . .                                    | §193        |
| (ix) Reconvening of Board . . . . .                                 | §200        |
| 3. Jurisdiction of Courts . . . . .                                 | §201        |
| 4. Compellability of Witnesses . . . . .                            | §213        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>III. Protected Freedoms . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§214</b> |
| 1. Generally . . . . .  | §214        |
| 2. Prohibited Employer Conduct . . . . .                            | §217        |
| (a) Interference or Participation . . . . .                         | §217        |
| (b) Contributing Support . . . . .                                  | §224        |
| (c) Discrimination . . . . .  | §227        |
| (d) Intimidation . . . . .  | §240        |
| (e) Yellow Dog Contract . . . . .                                   | §245        |
| (f) Denial of Insurance and Pension Rights or Benefits . . . . .    | §248        |
| 3. Prohibited Trade Union Conduct . . . . .                         | §249        |
| (a) Interference or Participation . . . . .                         | §249        |
| (b) Organizing During Working Hours . . . . .                       | §250        |
| (c) Coercion or Intimidation . . . . .                              | §252        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>IV. Parties Defined Under the Labour Relations Code</b> . . . . .    | §253 |
| 1. Employee . . . . .   | §253 |
| (a) Generally . . . . .   | §253 |
| (b) Management Functions . . . . .                                      | §260 |
| (c) Confidential Information . . . . .                                  | §263 |
| (d) Professional Employees . . . . .                                    | §265 |
| (e) Agricultural Employees . . . . .                                    | §267 |
| (f) Domestic Employees . . . . .  | §270 |
| (g) Police Officers . . . . .   | §271 |
| (h) Public Service Employees . . . . .                                  | §272 |
| (i) Other Exempted Employees . . . . .                                  | §273 |
| 2. Employer . . . . .   | §274 |
| 3. Trade Union . . . . .  | §279 |
| 4. Employers' Organization . . . . .                                    | §286 |
| 5. Registered Employers' Organization . . . . .                         | §289 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>V. Acquiring Bargaining Rights</b> . . . . .                         | §293 |
| 1. Voluntary Recognition . . . . .                                      | §293 |
| 2. Filing Constitutions and Bylaws . . . . .                            | §304 |
| (a) Trade Unions . . . . .  | §304 |
| (b) Registered Employers' Organization . . . . .                        | §310 |
| 3. Certification . . . . .  | §312 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §312 |
| (b) Bars to Certification . . . . .                                     | §331 |
| (i) Timeliness and Other Bars . . . . .                                 | §331 |
| (ii) Strike Or Lockout . . . . .  | §355 |
| (iii) Collective Agreement Under Federal Statute . . . . .              | §359 |
| (iv) Settlement . . . . .   | §360 |
| (v) Voluntary Recognition . . . . .                                     | §361 |
| (vi) Employer-Dominated Trade Union . . . . .                           | §362 |
| (vii) Recognition Picketing . . . . .                                   | §364 |
| (c) 40 Per Cent Support . . . . .                                       | §367 |
| (d) Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of<br>Employment . . . . . | §377 |
| (e) Representation Votes . . . . .                                      | §387 |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (f) Appropriate Bargaining Unit . . . . .   | §417        |
| (i) Generally . . . . .   | §417        |
| (ii) Hospital and Nursing Home Units For Non-Regional Health Authorities . . . . .            | §440        |
| (iii) Regional Health Authority Units . . . . .   | §449        |
| (iv) Aging-In-Place Facilities . . . . .  | §456        |
| (v) Construction Industry Units . . . . .   | §457        |
| (vi) Firefighter Units . . . . .  | §466        |
| (g) Mandatory Certification . . . . .   | §467        |
| (h) Discretionary Certification . . . . .   | §469        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VI. Multi-employer Certification . . . . .</b>   | <b>§471</b> |
| 1. Declaration of Single Employer . . . . .   | §471        |
| 2. Construction Industry Registration of Employers' Organization . . . . .                    | §490        |
| (a) Application For Registration . . . . .  | §490        |
| (b) Certificate . . . . .   | §511        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Effect of Certification and Voluntary Recognition . . . . .</b>                       | <b>§532</b> |
| 1. Bargaining Agents' Exclusive Authority . . . . .   | §532        |
| 2. Duty to Bargain . . . . .  | §535        |
| 3. Duty of Fair Representation . . . . .  | §537        |
| (a) Generally . . . . .   | §537        |
| (b) Scope of Duty . . . . .   | §542        |
| (c) Remedies . . . . .  | §575        |
| 4. Registered Employers' Organizations Duty . . . . .   | §581        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VIII. Successor Rights and Obligations . . . . .</b>                                       | <b>§582</b> |
| 1. Trade Union Reorganization . . . . .   | §582        |
| 2. Sale of Employer . . . . .   | §588        |
| 3. Governing Body Reorganization . . . . .  | §613        |
| 4. Merger, Amalgamation or Transfer of Rights of Registered Employers' Organization . . . . . | §615        |
| 5. Bankruptcy . . . . .   | §617        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Modifying and Revoking Bargaining Rights . . . . .</b>                                 | <b>§618</b> |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Modifying Bargaining Units . . . . .  | §618        |
| 2. Revoking Bargaining Rights . . . . .  | §627        |
| (a) Certified Bargaining Agents . . . . .  | §629        |
| (i) Employee Choice . . . . .  | §629        |
| (ii) By Trade Union . . . . .  | §647        |
| (iii) By Employer . . . . .  | §649        |
| (iv) Board Initiative . . . . .  | §652        |
| (v) Change in Bargaining Agent . . . . .   | §655        |
| (vi) Effect of Revocation . . . . .  | §656        |
| (b) Cancellation of Registration Certificate of Employers’<br>Organization . . . . . | §659        |
| (i) Application for Cancellation . . . . .   | §659        |
| (ii) Effect of Cancellation . . . . .  | §668        |
| <b>X. Collective Bargaining . . . . .</b>  | <b>§669</b> |
| 1. Notice to Bargain . . . . .   | §669        |
| (a) After Certification . . . . .  | §669        |
| (b) Prior to Expiration of Collective Agreement . . . . .                            | §671        |
| 2. Form of Notice . . . . .  | §673        |
| 3. Service During Collective Bargaining . . . . .                                    | §684        |
| 4. Appointment of Representatives for Collective Bargaining . . . . .                | §687        |
| 5. Duty to Meet and Exchange Proposals . . . . .                                     | §696        |
| 6. Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of Employment . . . . .                  | §701        |
| 7. Prohibited Bargaining Relationships . . . . .                                     | §714        |
| 8. Good Faith Bargaining . . . . .   | §717        |
| 9. Term, Content, Filing and Effect of Collective Agreement . . . . .                | §748        |
| (a) Writing and Parties . . . . .  | §748        |
| (b) Signature . . . . .  | §749        |
| (c) Term . . . . .   | §754        |
| (d) Other Terms . . . . .  | §761        |
| (e) Filing . . . . .   | §766        |
| (f) Effect . . . . .   | §767        |
| (g) Void Agreements . . . . .  | §769        |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 10. Construction Industry Coordinated Collective Bargaining . . . . .              | §771 |
| <b>XI. Collective Agreements Relating to Major Construction Projects</b> . . . . . | §773 |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .   | §773 |
| 2. Application . . . . .   | §777 |
| 3. Collective Bargaining . . . . .   | §781 |
| <b>XII. Union Security, Dues Deduction and Religious Objections</b> . . . . .      | §795 |
| <b>XIII. Mediation</b> . . . . .   | §802 |
| <b>XIV. Votes on Proposals</b> . . . . .   | §816 |
| <b>XV. Economic Conflict</b> . . . . .   | §825 |
| 1. Recommendations of Disputes Inquiry Board . . . . .                             | §825 |
| 2. Strike and Lockout Votes . . . . .  | §828 |
| 3. Strike . . . . .  | §870 |
| 4. Lockout . . . . .   | §876 |
| 5. Timeliness . . . . .  | §879 |
| (a) Strike . . . . .   | §879 |
| (b) Lockout . . . . .  | §883 |
| 6. Settlement of Strike or Lockout Involving Employers' Organization . . . . .     | §885 |
| 7. Court Regulation . . . . .  | §897 |
| 8. Board Regulation . . . . .  | §903 |
| 9. Regulated Activity . . . . .  | §917 |
| (a) Prohibited Employer Conduct . . . . .  | §917 |
| (b) Protected Refusal to do Struck Work . . . . .                                  | §924 |
| (c) Prohibited Refusal to Do Work . . . . .  | §925 |
| (d) Protected Insurance and Pension Rights and Benefits . . . . .                  | §927 |
| (e) Prohibited Dispute-Related Misconduct . . . . .                                | §931 |
| (f) Protected Refusal to Participate in Illegal Work Stoppage . . . . .            | §933 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (g) Reinstatement of Employees . . . . .                                 | §935         |
| (h) Measures During Illegal Strike or Lockout . . . . .                  | §939         |
| 10. Offences and Penalties . . . . .                                     | §960         |
| 11. Picketing . . . . .  | §968         |
| 12. Emergencies . . . . .  | §981         |
| <b>XVI. Construction Industry Collective Bargaining . . . . .</b>        | <b>§992</b>  |
| <b>XVII. Arbitration . . . . .</b>                                       | <b>§1020</b> |
| 1. Voluntary Interest Arbitration . . . . .                              | §1020        |
| 2. Compulsory Arbitration: Firefighters and Hospital Employees . . . . . | §1027        |
| (a) Generally . . . . .  | §1027        |
| (b) Compulsory Arbitration Board . . . . .                               | §1030        |
| (c) Arbitration . . . . .  | §1035        |
| (d) Awards . . . . .   | §1039        |
| 3. Disputes Resolution Tribunals . . . . .                               | §1045        |
| (a) Generally . . . . .  | §1045        |
| (b) Appointment . . . . .  | §1046        |
| (c) Remuneration . . . . .   | §1053        |
| (d) Undue Delay . . . . .  | §1055        |
| (e) Meetings . . . . .   | §1056        |
| (f) Procedure . . . . .  | §1059        |
| (g) Evidence . . . . .   | §1064        |
| (h) Award . . . . .  | §1065        |
| (i) Review . . . . .   | §1067        |
| 4. Collective Agreement Arbitration . . . . .                            | §1070        |
| (a) Settlement Without Work Stoppage . . . . .                           | §1071        |
| (b) Appointment of Arbitrator . . . . .                                  | §1081        |
| (c) Speeding Up the Decision . . . . .                                   | §1088        |
| (d) Powers of Arbitrator or Board . . . . .                              | §1092        |
| (e) Witnesses and Production of Documents . . . . .                      | §1110        |
| (f) Decisions . . . . .  | §1112        |
| (g) Enforcement of Award . . . . .                                       | §1114        |
| (h) Appeal of Award . . . . .  | §1116        |
| (i) Filing and Publication of Decisions . . . . .                        | §1135        |

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <b>XVIII. Work Jurisdiction Disputes in the Construction Industry . . .</b>                  | <b>§1138</b> |
| <b>XIX. Employee, Employer and Internal Union Affairs . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§1148</b> |
| 1. Denial of Trade Union Membership, Suspension, Expulsion<br>and Other Discipline . . . . . | §1148        |
| (a) Prohibitions . . . . .   | §1148        |
| (b) Timeliness . . . . .   | §1159        |
| 2. Loss of Employment as a Result of Loss of Union<br>Membership . . . . .                   | §1162        |
| 3. Suspension, Expulsion and Other Discipline by Employers’<br>Organization . . . . .        | §1165        |
| <b>XX. Health, Welfare and Pension Trusts . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§1166</b> |
| <b>XXI. Unfair Labour Practice Complaints . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§1168</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §1168        |
| 2. Deferral to Arbitration . . . . .   | §1176        |
| 3. Remedies . . . . .  | §1178        |
| <b>XXII. Enforcement and Prosecution . . . . .</b>   | <b>§1202</b> |
| 1. Common Law . . . . .  | §1202        |
| 2. Interference with Process . . . . .   | §1204        |
| 3. Compliance Orders . . . . .   | §1207        |
| 4. Judicial Enforcement of Board Orders . . . . .  | §1209        |
| 5. Offences . . . . .  | §1211        |
| 6. Consent to Prosecute . . . . .  | §1217        |
| <b>XXIII. Internal Review of Board Orders . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§1218</b> |
| 1. Generally . . . . .   | §1218        |
| 2. Application for Reconsideration . . . . .   | §1221        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Contempt of Court; Employment Law; Injunctions; Wrongful Dismissal.

# LABOUR LAW — BRITISH COLUMBIA

prepared by  
James E. Dorsey, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the British Columbia Bar; Former Vice-Chairman,  
Canada Labour Relations Board and*  
Ib Petersen, M.Sc., LL.B.  
*of the British Columbia Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>1. Introduction</b> . . . . .                              | §1  |
| <b>2. Regulatory Agencies, Officials and Courts</b> . . . . . | §3  |
| (a) Labour Relations Board . . . . .                          | §3  |
| (i) Composition . . . . .                                     | §3  |
| (ii) Purposes of the Labour Relations Code . . . . .          | §10 |
| (iii) Tenure . . . . .  | §13 |
| (iv) Oath of Office . . . . .                                 | §14 |
| (v) Meetings . . . . .  | §15 |
| (vi) Panels . . . . .   | §16 |
| (vii) Quorum . . . . .  | §23 |
| (viii) Practice and Procedure . . . . .                       | §24 |
| A. Procedural and Ancillary Powers . . . . .                  | §24 |
| B. General Guidelines . . . . .                               | §27 |
| C. Rules and Forms . . . . .                                  | §30 |
| D. Applications and Proceedings . . . . .                     | §33 |
| E. Filing of Documents . . . . .                              | §51 |
| F. Withdrawal of Applications . . . . .                       | §55 |
| G. Service and Delivery of Documents . . . . .                | §57 |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| H. Technicalities, Amendment and Consolidation . . . .               | §64         |
| I. Extending Time . . . . .  | §68         |
| J. Adjournment . . . . .   | §73         |
| K. Scheduling and Adjournment of Expedited<br>Applications . . . . . | §79         |
| L. Adding Parties . . . . .  | §85         |
| M. Hearing . . . . .   | §90         |
| N. Investigations . . . . .  | §106        |
| O. Summonses and Discovery of Documents . . . . .                    | §112        |
| P. Evidence . . . . .  | §116        |
| Q. Decisions . . . . .   | §130        |
| R. Declaratory Opinion . . . . .                                     | §134        |
| S. Votes . . . . .   | §135        |
| T. Posting Notices . . . . .   | §138        |
| U. Costs . . . . .   | §140        |
| V. Non-suit . . . . .  | §141        |
| (ix) Annual Report . . . . .   | §142        |
| (b) Lieutenant Governor in Council . . . . .                         | §144        |
| (c) Minister . . . . .   | §146        |
| (i) General Responsibility . . . . .                                 | §146        |
| (ii) Committee of Special Advisors . . . . .                         | §149        |
| (iii) Industry Advisory Council . . . . .                            | §150        |
| (iv) Industrial Inquiry Commission . . . . .                         | §151        |
| (v) Special Officer . . . . .  | §157        |
| <b>3. Protected Freedoms . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§165</b> |
| (a) Generally . . . . .  | §165        |
| (b) Right to Communicate . . . . .                                   | §167        |
| (c) Protection from Coercion and Intimidation . . . . .              | §168        |
| (d) Trade Union Access to Employees . . . . .                        | §171        |
| (e) Prohibited Employer Conduct . . . . .                            | §183        |
| (i) Interference or Participation . . . . .                          | §183        |
| (ii) Employer Speech . . . . .                                       | §186        |
| (iii) Discrimination or Intimidation . . . . .                       | §191        |
| (iv) Use of Replacement Workers . . . . .                            | §213        |
| (v) Yellow Dog Contract . . . . .                                    | §214        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (f) Prohibited Trade Union Conduct . . . . .                             | §217        |
| (g) Effect of the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms . . .          | §220        |
| <b>4. Parties Defined Under the Labour Relations Code . . . . .</b>      | <b>§222</b> |
| (a) Employee . . . . .   | §222        |
| (i) Generally . . . . .  | §222        |
| (ii) Dependent Contractor . . . . .                                      | §238        |
| (iii) Management Function . . . . .                                      | §243        |
| (iv) Confidential Capacity . . . . .                                     | §257        |
| (b) Employer . . . . .   | §262        |
| (c) Trade Union . . . . .  | §268        |
| (d) Council of Trade Unions . . . . .                                    | §291        |
| (e) Employers' Organization . . . . .                                    | §293        |
| (f) Person . . . . .   | §294        |
| <b>5. Acquiring Bargaining Rights . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§295</b> |
| (a) Voluntary Recognition . . . . .                                      | §295        |
| (b) Certification . . . . .  | §301        |
| (i) Application . . . . .  | §301        |
| (ii) Bars to Certification . . . . .                                     | §309        |
| A. Prohibited Employee Associations . . . . .                            | §309        |
| B. Strike or Lockout . . . . .   | §311        |
| C. Timeliness . . . . .  | §312        |
| (iii) Automatic Certification and Representation Vote . . . .            | §330        |
| A. Representation Vote . . . . .   | §330        |
| B. General . . . . .   | §337        |
| C. Union Membership . . . . .  | §340        |
| D. Employee Standing . . . . .   | §361        |
| E. Voting . . . . .  | §368        |
| (iv) Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of<br>Employment . . . . . | §379        |
| (v) Appropriate Bargaining Unit . . . . .                                | §388        |
| A. General Provisions . . . . .  | §388        |
| B. Determination of Appropriate Units . . . . .                          | §394        |
| C. Craft Groups . . . . .  | §428        |
| D. Particular Employees . . . . .  | §437        |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| E. Particular Industries . . . . .   | §448        |
| (vi) Discretionary Certification . . . . .   | §465        |
| (vii) Conditions . . . . .   | §473        |
| <b>6. Multi-Employer Certification . . . . .</b>   | <b>§474</b> |
| (a) Declaration of a Single Employer . . . . .   | §474        |
| (b) Council of Trade Unions . . . . .  | §504        |
| (c) Accreditation of Employers' Organization . . . . .                                       | §513        |
| <b>7. Effect of Certification, Accreditation and Voluntary<br/>    Recognition . . . . .</b> | <b>§519</b> |
| <b>8. Successor Rights and Obligations . . . . .</b>   | <b>§527</b> |
| (a) Trade Union Reorganization . . . . .   | §527        |
| (b) Employer Sales . . . . .   | §532        |
| (i) Legislative Provisions . . . . .   | §532        |
| (ii) Basic Principle . . . . .   | §542        |
| (iii) What Constitutes a Transfer . . . . .  | §546        |
| (iv) Significance of Transfer . . . . .  | §563        |
| <b>9. Modifying Bargaining Units . . . . .</b>   | <b>§576</b> |
| <b>10. Revoking Bargaining Rights . . . . .</b>  | <b>§607</b> |
| (a) Employee Choice . . . . .  | §607        |
| (i) Representation Vote . . . . .  | §607        |
| (ii) Eligibility to Vote . . . . .   | §618        |
| (iii) Discretion to Refuse Revocation . . . . .  | §624        |
| (b) Trade Union Abandonment . . . . .  | §628        |
| (c) Certification of Another Unit . . . . .  | §631        |
| (d) Loss of Trade Union or Employer Status . . . . .   | §632        |
| (e) Effect of Cancellation . . . . .   | §633        |
| (f) Dissolution of Councils and Withdrawal of Trade Unions . . . . .                         | §637        |
| (g) Deaccreditation of Employers' Organization . . . . .                                     | §640        |
| <b>11. Collective Bargaining . . . . .</b>   | <b>§643</b> |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) Notice to Bargain . . . . .   | §643        |
| (i) After Certification . . . . .                                       | §643        |
| (ii) Prior to Expiry of Collective Agreement . . . . .                  | §645        |
| (b) Form of Notice . . . . .  | §646        |
| (c) Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of Employment . . . . .    | §648        |
| (d) Duty to Commence Bargaining . . . . .                               | §659        |
| (e) Good Faith Bargaining . . . . .                                     | §660        |
| (i) Legislative Provisions . . . . .                                    | §660        |
| (ii) When Duty Arises . . . . .   | §664        |
| (iii) Authority to Bargain . . . . .                                    | §668        |
| (iv) What Constitutes Good Faith Bargaining . . . . .                   | §670        |
| (v) Remedies for Failure to Bargain in Good Faith . . . . .             | §702        |
| (f) Employee Ratification . . . . .                                     | §706        |
| (g) Term, Content, Filing and Effect of Collective Agreements . . . . . | §708        |
| (i) Writing and Parties . . . . .                                       | §708        |
| (ii) Term . . . . .   | §728        |
| (iii) Dismissal and Discipline . . . . .                                | §733        |
| (iv) Refusal to Trade . . . . .   | §738        |
| (v) Strikes and Lockouts . . . . .                                      | §740        |
| (vi) Other Provisions . . . . .   | §742        |
| (vii) Filing . . . . .  | §743        |
| (viii) Effect . . . . .   | §744        |
| (h) Union Security, Rand Formula and Religious Objections . . . . .     | §757        |
| (i) Compulsory Union Membership . . . . .                               | §757        |
| (ii) Compulsory Dues Deduction . . . . .                                | §760        |
| (iii) Religious Objections . . . . .                                    | §763        |
| <b>12. Joint Consultation and Adjustment Plan . . . . .</b>             | <b>§775</b> |
| (a) Joint Consultation . . . . .  | §775        |
| (b) Adjustment Plan . . . . .   | §779        |
| <b>13. Dispute Resolution . . . . .</b>                                 | <b>§785</b> |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §785        |
| (b) Mediation Services . . . . .  | §786        |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) First Collective Agreement . . . . .             | §791        |
| (d) Final Offer Vote . . . . .                       | §798        |
| (e) Essential Services . . . . .                     | §806        |
| (f) Fact Finding . . . . .                           | §817        |
| (g) Facilitator . . . . .                            | §822        |
| (h) Special Mediator . . . . .                       | §823        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>14. Economic Conflict . . . . .</b>               | <b>§827</b> |
| (a) Notification of Chair . . . . .                  | §827        |
| (b) Timeliness . . . . .                             | §828        |
| (c) Strike . . . . .                                 | §831        |
| (d) Lockout . . . . .                                | §838        |
| (e) Pre-Strike Voting and Notice . . . . .           | §844        |
| (f) Pre-Lockout Voting and Notice . . . . .          | §856        |
| (g) Professional Strike Breakers . . . . .           | §859        |
| (h) Replacement Workers . . . . .                    | §860        |
| (i) Continuation of Benefits . . . . .               | §866        |
| (j) Picketing . . . . .                              | §868        |
| (i) Definition of Terms . . . . .                    | §868        |
| (ii) Information Pickets . . . . .                   | §880        |
| (iii) Permitted Activity . . . . .                   | §881        |
| (iv) Jurisdiction of Board and Courts . . . . .      | §892        |
| (k) Declarations and Other Economic Action . . . . . | §902        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>15. Arbitration . . . . .</b>                     | <b>§913</b> |
| (a) General . . . . .                                | §913        |
| (b) Settlement Without Stoppage of Work . . . . .    | §926        |
| (c) Unworkable Provisions . . . . .                  | §929        |
| (d) Arbitration Boards . . . . .                     | §930        |
| (i) Appointment of Arbitrators . . . . .             | §930        |
| (ii) Mandate . . . . .                               | §933        |
| (iii) Powers . . . . .                               | §934        |
| (iv) Authority . . . . .                             | §948        |
| A. Generally . . . . .                               | §948        |
| B. Remedial . . . . .                                | §952        |
| (v) Decisions . . . . .                              | §970        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (vi) Enforcement . . . . .  | §976         |
| (vii) Reference to Labour Relations Board . . . . .                   | §977         |
| (viii) Fees And Costs . . . . .                                       | §978         |
| (e) Expedited Arbitration . . . . .                                   | §979         |
| (f) Consensual Mediation-Arbitration . . . . .                        | §986         |
| (g) Appeal to Labour Relations Board . . . . .                        | §991         |
| (i) Jurisdiction Of Board . . . . .                                   | §991         |
| (ii) Right to Appeal . . . . .  | §995         |
| (iii) Procedure . . . . .   | §1009        |
| (iv) Grounds for Appeal . . . . .                                     | §1017        |
| A. Denial of Fair Hearing . . . . .                                   | §1017        |
| 1. Generally . . . . .  | §1017        |
| 2. What Constitutes Denial of a Fair Hearing . . . . .                | §1028        |
| 3. Bias of Arbitration Board Nominees . . . . .                       | §1045        |
| 4. Arbitration Board Determination of Decision . . . . .              | §1052        |
| B. Inconsistent with Labour Relations Principles . . . . .            | §1057        |
| 1. Arbitrability . . . . .  | §1057        |
| 2. Improper Delegation . . . . .                                      | §1061        |
| 3. Error in Interpreting Agreement . . . . .                          | §1062        |
| 4. Error in Application of Statute . . . . .                          | §1076        |
| 5. Inadequacy of Reasons . . . . .                                    | §1100        |
| 6. Functus Officio . . . . .  | §1102        |
| (h) Appeal to Court of Appeal . . . . .                               | §1108        |
| (i) Referral to Settlement Officer . . . . .                          | §1121        |
| <b>16. Individuals and Internal Union and Employer Organizations'</b> |              |
| <b>Affairs . . . . .</b>  | <b>§1122</b> |
| (a) Duty of Fair Representation . . . . .                             | §1122        |
| (i) Nature of Duty . . . . .  | §1122        |
| A. Generally . . . . .  | §1122        |
| B. Arbitrary Conduct . . . . .  | §1132        |
| C. Discriminatory Conduct . . . . .                                   | §1138        |
| D. Bad Faith . . . . .  | §1142        |
| (ii) Application of Duty . . . . .                                    | §1146        |

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| A. Generally . . . . .   | §1146        |
| B. Collective Bargaining . . . . .                                       | §1150        |
| (iii) Breach of Duty . . . . .   | §1155        |
| A. What Constitutes Breach . . . . .                                     | §1155        |
| B. Remedies . . . . .  | §1164        |
| (b) Duty of Fair Referral . . . . .                                      | §1175        |
| (c) Internal Union Affairs . . . . .                                     | §1178        |
| (d) Denial of Membership and Other Discipline . . . . .                  | §1182        |
| (e) Loss of Employment Due to Loss of Union Membership . . . . .         | §1189        |
| (f) Financial Statements . . . . .                                       | §1190        |
| (g) Trusteeship Over Local Unions . . . . .                              | §1195        |
| (h) Individual Employers and Employers’ Organizations . . . . .          | §1197        |
| <b>17. Unfair Labour Practice Complaints . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§1198</b> |
| (a) Generally . . . . .  | §1198        |
| (b) Timeliness . . . . .   | §1205        |
| (c) Burden of Proof . . . . .  | §1207        |
| (d) Deferral to Arbitration . . . . .                                    | §1216        |
| (e) Discharge Hearing . . . . .  | §1220        |
| (f) Consent Order . . . . .  | §1222        |
| (g) Interim Order . . . . .  | §1223        |
| (h) Equitable Refusal of Remedy . . . . .                                | §1228        |
| (i) Remedies . . . . .   | §1229        |
| (i) Jurisdiction Generally . . . . .                                     | §1229        |
| (ii) Summary Dismissal . . . . .   | §1232        |
| (iii) Rectification . . . . .  | §1237        |
| (iv) Reinstatement and Back Pay . . . . .                                | §1243        |
| A. Reinstatement . . . . .   | §1243        |
| B. Back Pay . . . . .  | §1247        |
| (v) Reinstatement of Union Membership . . . . .                          | §1252        |
| (vi) Freeze on Wages and Terms and Conditions of<br>Employment . . . . . | §1253        |
| (vii) Compensation — “Make Whole” Remedial Order . . . . .               | §1254        |
| A. Nature of Order . . . . .   | §1254        |
| B. When Granted . . . . .  | §1259        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| C. Expenses or Costs for which Compensation Paid . . . . . | §1262        |
| . . . . .  |              |
| D. Interest . . . . .                                      | §1264        |
| E. Compensation to Unions or Employees . . . . .           | §1265        |
| F. Mitigation . . . . .                                    | §1268        |
| (viii) Residual Remedial Authority . . . . .               | §1270        |
| (ix) Imposition of Conditions . . . . .                    | §1271        |
| (x) Costs . . . . .  | §1273        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>18. Review of Board Orders . . . . .</b>                | <b>§1279</b> |
| (a) Internal . . . . .                                     | §1279        |
| (b) Judicial Review . . . . .                              | §1310        |
| <br>   |              |
| <b>19. Enforcement and Prosecution . . . . .</b>           | <b>§1328</b> |

**Index**

# LABOUR LAW — FEDERAL

prepared by  
Ib Petersen, Cand. Scient. Pol., M.Sc., LL.B.  
*of the British Columbia Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Private Sector Regulation</b> .....          | §1  |
| 1. General .....                                   | §1  |
| 2. Regulatory Agencies, Officials and Courts ..... | §5  |
| (a) Canada Industrial Relations Board .....        | §5  |
| (i) Composition .....                              | §5  |
| (ii) Tenure .....                                  | §7  |
| (iii) Representation .....                         | §9  |
| (iv) Eligibility for Membership .....              | §10 |
| (v) Reappointment of Members .....                 | §13 |
| (vi) Removal for Cause and Inquiries .....         | §14 |
| (vii) Completion of Duties .....                   | §25 |
| (viii) Former Members Appearing Before Board ..... | §26 |
| (ix) Remuneration of Members and Employees .....   | §27 |
| (x) Head Office .....                              | §29 |
| (xi) Decisions and Panels .....                    | §30 |
| (xii) Chief Executive Officer .....                | §40 |
| (xiii) Regulation-making .....                     | §44 |
| (xiv) Procedural and Ancillary Powers .....        | §46 |
| A. General .....                                   | §46 |
| B. Initiation of Proceedings Generally .....       | §49 |
| C. Abridge or Enlarge Time .....                   | §52 |
| D. Applications, Replies and Interventions .....   | §54 |
| E. Expedited Process .....                         | §58 |

|   |      |
|---|------|
| F. Adjournment . . . . .  | §60  |
| G. Review and Rehear . . . . .  | §62  |
| H. Interim Decision and Orders . . . . .                                | §66  |
| I. Application of orders . . . . .                                      | §69  |
| J. Incidental or Autonomous Powers and Compliance Orders . . . . .      | §70  |
| K. Confidentiality of Documents . . . . .                               | §73  |
| L. Application to Withdraw . . . . .                                    | §74  |
| (xv) Contempt of Board . . . . .  | §75  |
| (xvi) Administrative Style . . . . .                                    | §76  |
| (xvii) Public Hearings . . . . .  | §79  |
| (xviii) Prehearing Preparations . . . . .                               | §85  |
| (b) Minister . . . . .  | §88  |
| (i) General Responsibility . . . . .                                    | §88  |
| (ii) Referring Questions to Canada Industrial Relations Board . . . . . | §97  |
| (iii) Industrial Inquiry Commission . . . . .                           | §98  |
| (c) Federal Court of Canada . . . . .                                   | §105 |
| (d) Provincial and Territorial Superior Courts . . . . .                | §110 |
| (e) Evidence . . . . .  | §113 |
| 3. Protected Freedoms . . . . .   | §116 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §116 |
| (b) Trade Union Access to Employees . . . . .                           | §119 |
| (c) Prohibited Employer Conduct . . . . .                               | §131 |
| (i) Interference or Participation . . . . .                             | §131 |
| (ii) Employer Speech . . . . .  | §140 |
| (iii) Contributing Support . . . . .                                    | §144 |
| (iv) Discrimination . . . . .   | §148 |
| (v) Replacement Workers . . . . .                                       | §155 |
| (vi) Yellow Dog Contract . . . . .                                      | §156 |
| (vii) Denial of Benefits after Prohibited Dismissal . . . . .           | §158 |
| (d) Prohibited Trade Union Conduct . . . . .                            | §160 |
| (e) General Prohibition . . . . .                                       | §162 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §162 |
| (ii) Complaint to Canada Industrial Relations Board . . . . .           | §163 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (iii) Prosecution . . . . .                                     | §164 |
| 4. Parties Defined Under Canada Labour Code . . . . .           | §165 |
| (a) Employee . . . . .  | §165 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §165 |
| (ii) Management Functions . . . . .                             | §170 |
| (iii) Confidential Capacity . . . . .                           | §178 |
| (iv) Part-time Employees . . . . .                              | §180 |
| (v) Private Constables . . . . .                                | §181 |
| (vi) Dependent Contractors . . . . .                            | §184 |
| A. Truckers . . . . .   | §184 |
| B. Fishers . . . . .  | §185 |
| C. Others . . . . .   | §186 |
| D. Generally . . . . .  | §187 |
| (vii) Professional Employees . . . . .                          | §192 |
| (b) Employer . . . . .  | §195 |
| (c) Trade Union . . . . .                                       | §198 |
| (d) Council of Trade Unions . . . . .                           | §202 |
| (e) Employers' Organization . . . . .                           | §208 |
| 5. Application of Canada Labour Code . . . . .                  | §210 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §210 |
| (b) Crown Corporations . . . . .                                | §213 |
| (c) Federal Government Employees . . . . .                      | §218 |
| 6. Acquiring Bargaining Rights . . . . .                        | §220 |
| (a) Voluntary Recognition . . . . .                             | §220 |
| (b) Certification . . . . .                                     | §230 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §230 |
| (ii) Bars to Certification . . . . .                            | §235 |
| A. Timeliness . . . . .   | §235 |
| B. Collective Agreement . . . . .                               | §247 |
| C. Employer-dominated Trade Union . . . . .                     | §251 |
| D. Discriminatory Trade Union Membership<br>Practices . . . . . | §254 |
| (iii) Majority Support . . . . .                                | §257 |
| A. Union Membership . . . . .                                   | §257 |
| B. Membership as Evidence of Employees'<br>Wishes . . . . .     | §260 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| C. Date for Determining Employees' Wishes . . .  | §268 |
| D. Representation Votes . . . . .  | §271 |
| E. Employer's Interest in Employees' Wishes . . .  | §286 |
| (iv) Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of<br>Employment . . . . .                       | §287 |
| (v) Appropriate Bargaining Unit . . . . .  | §299 |
| (vi) Mandatory Certification . . . . .   | §322 |
| (vii) Automatic Certification . . . . .  | §324 |
| 7. Multi-Employer Certification . . . . .  | §325 |
| (a) Declaration of a Single Employer . . . . .   | §325 |
| (b) Employers' Organization as Employer . . . . .  | §346 |
| (c) Employers' Agent in Longshoring and Other Industries . . . . .                             | §353 |
| 8. Effect of Certification and Voluntary Recognition . . . . .                                 | §375 |
| (a) Bargaining Agents' Exclusive Authority . . . . .   | §375 |
| (b) Duty to Bargain . . . . .  | §381 |
| (c) Duty of Fair Representation . . . . .  | §382 |
| (i) Standard . . . . .   | §382 |
| (ii) Remedy . . . . .  | §384 |
| 9. Successor Rights and Obligations . . . . .  | §385 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §385 |
| (b) Trade Union Reorganization . . . . .   | §386 |
| (c) Sale of Employer . . . . .   | §392 |
| (d) Public Sector Reorganization . . . . .   | §405 |
| (e) Successor Contracts for Services in Air Transportation<br>or Designated Industry . . . . . | §410 |
| 10. Modifying Bargaining Units . . . . .   | §412 |
| 11. Revoking Bargaining Rights . . . . .   | §429 |
| (a) Certified Bargaining Agents . . . . .  | §429 |
| (i) Employee Choice . . . . .  | §429 |
| (ii) Trade Union Choice . . . . .  | §432 |
| (iii) Fraud . . . . .  | §433 |
| (iv) Change of Bargaining Unit . . . . .   | §436 |
| (v) Reorganization of Bargaining Unit . . . . .  | §437 |
| (vi) Council of Trade Unions . . . . .   | §438 |
| (vii) Time of Application . . . . .  | §439 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (viii) Reasonable Efforts to Enter Into a Collective Agreement . . . . . | §447 |
| (ix) Procedures . . . . .  | §454 |
| (b) Voluntarily Recognized Bargaining Agent . . . . .                    | §457 |
| (c) Board Decision-making . . . . .                                      | §460 |
| 12. Collective Bargaining . . . . .                                      | §463 |
| (a) Notice to Bargain . . . . .  | §463 |
| (i) After Certification . . . . .  | §463 |
| (ii) Prior to Expiration of Collective Agreement . . . . .               | §465 |
| (iii) During Term of Collective Agreement . . . . .                      | §466 |
| (iv) New Bargaining Agent . . . . .                                      | §468 |
| (v) By Consent of Board . . . . .  | §470 |
| (b) Form of Notice . . . . .   | §471 |
| (c) Duty to Meet . . . . .   | §473 |
| (d) Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of Employment . . . . .     | §476 |
| (e) Prohibited Bargaining Relationships . . . . .                        | §481 |
| (f) Good Faith Bargaining . . . . .                                      | §487 |
| (g) Vote Employer's Offer . . . . .                                      | §504 |
| (h) Term, Content, Filing and Effect of Collective Agreements . . . . .  | §505 |
| (i) Writing and Parties . . . . .  | §505 |
| (ii) Term . . . . .  | §507 |
| (iii) Other Terms . . . . .  | §512 |
| (iv) Filing . . . . .  | §514 |
| (v) Effect . . . . .   | §516 |
| (i) Union Security, Rand Formula and Religious Objections . . . . .      | §517 |
| (i) Compulsory Union Membership . . . . .                                | §517 |
| (ii) Compulsory Dues Deduction . . . . .                                 | §520 |
| (iii) Religious Objections . . . . .                                     | §522 |
| (j) Major Projects . . . . .   | §524 |
| 13. Technological Change . . . . .                                       | §525 |
| (a) Definition . . . . .   | §525 |
| (b) Notice . . . . .   | §526 |
| (c) Contents of Notice . . . . .   | §527 |
| (d) Further Details . . . . .  | §529 |



|   |      |
|---|------|
| (e) Significant Number . . . . .  | §530 |
| (f) Application to Serve Notice to Bargain . . . . .                        | §531 |
| (g) Substantial and Adverse Effect . . . . .                                | §532 |
| (h) Effect of Application to Canada Industrial Relations<br>Board . . . . . | §533 |
| (i) Failure to Give Required Notice . . . . .                               | §534 |
| (j) Exemptions . . . . .  | §538 |
| 14. Imposed First Collective Agreements . . . . .                           | §539 |
| 15. Conciliation . . . . .  | §554 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §554 |
| (b) Notice of Dispute . . . . .   | §556 |
| (c) Ministerial Options . . . . .   | §559 |
| (d) Conciliation Officer and Conciliation Commissioner . . . . .            | §561 |
| (e) Conciliation Board . . . . .  | §562 |
| (f) Dispute . . . . .   | §570 |
| (g) Duties . . . . .  | §571 |
| (i) Conciliation Officer . . . . .  | §571 |
| (ii) Conciliation Commissioner or Conciliation Board . . . . .              | §574 |
| (h) Powers of Conciliation Commissioner and Conciliation<br>Board . . . . . | §578 |
| (i) Procedure of Conciliation Board . . . . .                               | §580 |
| (j) Quorum of Conciliation Board . . . . .                                  | §581 |
| (k) Reconsideration and Release of Report . . . . .                         | §583 |
| (l) Binding Report . . . . .  | §585 |
| (m) Remuneration and Expenses . . . . .                                     | §586 |
| (n) Judicial Proceedings . . . . .  | §588 |
| 16. Economic Conflict . . . . .   | §592 |
| (a) Obligations regarding strikes or lockouts . . . . .                     | §592 |
| (b) Essential services . . . . .  | §597 |
| (c) Longshoring or Related Industries . . . . .                             | §606 |
| (d) Timeliness . . . . .  | §608 |
| (e) Participation in a Strike . . . . .                                     | §610 |
| (f) Strike or Lockout During Dissolution of Parliament . . . . .            | §611 |
| (g) Strike . . . . .  | §613 |
| (h) Lockout . . . . .   | §618 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (i) Canada Industrial Relations Board and Court Regulation . . . . .       | §620 |
| (i) Board Strike Declaration and Order . . . . .                           | §620 |
| (ii) Board Lockout Declaration and Order . . . . .                         | §625 |
| (iii) Terms and Duration of Board Orders . . . . .                         | §626 |
| (iv) Supplementary Board Orders . . . . .                                  | §629 |
| (v) Applications to Board . . . . .  | §630 |
| (vi) Court Regulation . . . . .  | §633 |
| (j) Regulated Activity . . . . .   | §635 |
| (i) Prohibited Employer Discrimination . . . . .                           | §635 |
| (ii) Protected Refusal to Do Strike Work . . . . .                         | §642 |
| (iii) Replacing Striking Employees . . . . .                               | §645 |
| (iv) Protected Pension and Other Benefits . . . . .                        | §648 |
| (v) Protected Refusal to Participate in Illegal Work<br>Stoppage . . . . . | §652 |
| (k) Offences and Penalties . . . . .                                       | §655 |
| (l) Picketing . . . . .  | §660 |
| 17. Arbitration . . . . .  | §661 |
| (a) Settlement Without Stoppage of Work . . . . .                          | §661 |
| (b) Powers of Arbitrator or Arbitration Board . . . . .                    | §667 |
| (c) Decision of Arbitration Board . . . . .                                | §676 |
| (d) Filing and Publication of Decisions . . . . .                          | §677 |
| (e) Costs, Fees and Expenses . . . . .                                     | §678 |
| (f) Time Limit for Making Decision . . . . .                               | §679 |
| (g) Referral to Canada Industrial Relations Board . . . . .                | §681 |
| (h) Enforcing Orders and Decisions . . . . .                               | §685 |
| (i) Judicial Review . . . . .  | §687 |
| 18. Individuals and Internal Union Affairs . . . . .                       | §693 |
| (a) Duty of Fair Representation . . . . .                                  | §693 |
| (i) Duty . . . . .   | §693 |
| (ii) Canada Industrial Relations Board and the Courts . . . . .            | §696 |
| (iii) Timeliness . . . . .   | §698 |
| (iv) Voluntary Recognition . . . . .                                       | §703 |
| (v) Former Employees . . . . .   | §704 |
| (vi) Employer a Party . . . . .  | §705 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (vii) Burden of Proof . . . . .  | §707 |
| (viii) Standard . . . . .  | §708 |
| (ix) Collective Bargaining . . . . .   | §731 |
| (x) Remedies . . . . .   | §733 |
| (b) Duty of Fair Referral . . . . .  | §737 |
| (i) Duty . . . . .   | §737 |
| (ii) Jurisdiction . . . . .  | §739 |
| (iii) Timeliness . . . . .   | §741 |
| (iv) Referral Rules . . . . .  | §742 |
| (v) Role of Canada Industrial Relations Board . . . . .                            | §749 |
| (vi) Remedies . . . . .  | §750 |
| (c) Denial of Membership, Suspension, Expulsion, and<br>Other Discipline . . . . . | §751 |
| (i) Prohibitions . . . . .   | §751 |
| (ii) Timeliness . . . . .  | §762 |
| (iii) Remedies . . . . .   | §764 |
| (d) Loss of Employment as Result of Loss of Union<br>Membership . . . . .          | §765 |
| 19. Financial Statements . . . . .   | §769 |
| 20. Unfair Labour Practice Complaints . . . . .                                    | §774 |
| (a) Generally . . . . .  | §774 |
| (b) Timeliness . . . . .   | §775 |
| (c) Parties . . . . .  | §777 |
| (d) Burden of Proof . . . . .  | §778 |
| (e) Deferral to Arbitration . . . . .  | §782 |
| (f) Settled Disputes . . . . .   | §785 |
| (g) Remedies . . . . .   | §786 |
| (h) Mitigation . . . . .   | §794 |
| (i) Costs . . . . .  | §795 |
| (j) Interest . . . . .   | §796 |
| 21. Enforcement and Prosecution . . . . .  | §797 |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .   | §797 |
| (b) Interference With Process . . . . .  | §798 |
| (c) Compliance Orders . . . . .  | §800 |
| (d) Contempt . . . . .   | §801 |
| (e) Judicial Enforcement of Board Orders . . . . .                                 | §802 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (f) Offences . . . . .   | §809        |
| (g) Consent to Prosecute . . . . .                                   | §813        |
| 22. Review of Board Orders . . . . .                                 | §816        |
| (a) Internal . . . . .   | §816        |
| (b) External . . . . .   | §827        |
| <b>II. Public Sector Regulation . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§835</b> |
| 1. Regulatory Agencies, Courts, and Evidence . . . . .               | §835        |
| (a) Public Service Labour Relations Board . . . . .                  | §835        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §835        |
| (ii) Mandate and Functions . . . . .                                 | §836        |
| (iii) Composition and Structure of Board . . . . .                   | §840        |
| (iv) Powers and procedure . . . . .                                  | §849        |
| (v) Role of Chairperson . . . . .                                    | §860        |
| (vi) Advisory Board . . . . .  | §862        |
| (b) Federal Court of Canada . . . . .                                | §863        |
| (c) Evidence . . . . .   | §865        |
| 2. Protected Freedoms and Unfair Labour Practices . . . . .          | §867        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §867        |
| (b) Prohibited Employer Conduct . . . . .                            | §869        |
| (i) Interference or Participation . . . . .                          | §869        |
| (ii) Discrimination and Intimidation . . . . .                       | §871        |
| (c) Prohibited Conduct — Employee Organizations . . . . .            | §876        |
| (d) Complaints and Offences . . . . .                                | §878        |
| 3. Employees, Employers and Employee Organizations . . . . .         | §879        |
| (a) Employees . . . . .  | §879        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §879        |
| (ii) Exclusions . . . . .  | §881        |
| A. Appointees to Statutory Positions . . . . .                       | §881        |
| B. Locally Engaged Persons . . . . .                                 | §882        |
| C. Part-time, Casual, and Term Employment . . . . .                  | §883        |
| D. Persons Employed by Certain Agencies or<br>Institutions . . . . . | §887        |
| E. Managerial or Confidential Position . . . . .                     | §893        |
| F. Other . . . . .   | §896        |
| (b) Employer . . . . .   | §898        |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (c) Employee Organizations . . . . .                             | §904 |
| 4. Acquiring Bargaining Rights . . . . .                         | §910 |
| (a) Application for Certification . . . . .                      | §910 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §910 |
| (ii) Conditions for Certification . . . . .                      | §916 |
| (iii) Evidence . . . . .   | §918 |
| (iv) Appropriate Bargaining Unit . . . . .                       | §924 |
| (b) Bars to Certification . . . . .                              | §927 |
| (i) Timeliness . . . . .   | §927 |
| (ii) Previous Unsuccessful Application . . . . .                 | §930 |
| (iii) Employer-dominated Trade Union . . . . .                   | §931 |
| (iv) Discriminatory Practices . . . . .                          | §932 |
| 5. Effect of Certification . . . . .                             | §933 |
| 6. Changes to Certification . . . . .                            | §935 |
| (a) Review of Bargaining Units . . . . .                         | §935 |
| (b) Managerial or Confidential Positions . . . . .               | §936 |
| 7. Successor Rights and Obligations . . . . .                    | §937 |
| (a) Trade Union . . . . .  | §937 |
| (b) Employer Changes . . . . .                                   | §938 |
| 8. Revoking Bargaining Rights . . . . .                          | §943 |
| (a) Displacement by Another Bargaining Agent . . . . .           | §943 |
| (b) Employee Choice . . . . .                                    | §944 |
| (c) Bargaining Agent Choice . . . . .                            | §946 |
| (d) Ceasing to Act as Bargaining Agent . . . . .                 | §947 |
| (e) Prohibited Activities . . . . .                              | §949 |
| (f) Fraud . . . . .  | §950 |
| (g) Council of Employee Organizations . . . . .                  | §951 |
| (h) Procedure for Revocation of Certification . . . . .          | §952 |
| (i) Effect . . . . .   | §958 |
| (j) Status of Applicant . . . . .                                | §962 |
| 9. Choice of Process for Bargaining Dispute Resolution . . . . . | §963 |
| 10. Collective Bargaining and Collective Agreements . . . . .    | §965 |
| (a) Negotiation of Collective Agreements . . . . .               | §965 |
| (i) Parties . . . . .  | §965 |
| (ii) Notice to Bargain Collectively . . . . .                    | §966 |
| (iii) Effect of Notice . . . . .                                 | §968 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

- (iv) Mediation . . . . . §971
- (v) Collective Bargaining for Two or More Units . . . . §972
- (vi) Two-tier Bargaining . . . . . §973
- (b) Collective Agreements . . . . . §974
  - (i) Definition . . . . . §974
  - (ii) Authority to Enter into Agreement . . . . . §975
  - (iii) Duration and Effect . . . . . §976
  - (iv) Amendments . . . . . §979
  - (v) Terms and Scope . . . . . §980
- 11. Bargaining Impasses . . . . . §985
  - (a) General . . . . . §985
  - (b) Mediation . . . . . §987
  - (c) Arbitration . . . . . §988
    - (i) General . . . . . §988
    - (ii) Request for Arbitration . . . . . §989
    - (iii) Establishment of Arbitration Board . . . . . §992
    - (iv) Referral to Arbitration . . . . . §997
    - (v) Duty and Powers . . . . . §999
    - (vi) Making of Arbitral Award . . . . . §1005
    - (vii) Duration and Operation of Arbitral Award . . . . §1009
    - (viii) Matters Not Dealt With . . . . . §1013
    - (ix) Amending Award . . . . . §1014
  - (d) Conciliation . . . . . §1015
    - (i) General . . . . . §1015
    - (ii) Request for Conciliation . . . . . §1016
    - (iii) Establishment of Public Interest Commission . . . §1017
    - (iv) Powers and Functions . . . . . §1024
    - (v) Report . . . . . §1028
  - (e) Alternate Dispute Resolution Process . . . . . §1034
  - (f) Vote on Employer's Offer . . . . . §1036
  - (g) Strikes . . . . . §1038
    - (i) General . . . . . §1038
    - (ii) Strike votes . . . . . §1040
  - (h) Essential Services . . . . . §1041
    - (i) General . . . . . §1041
    - (ii) Essential Services Agreements . . . . . §1044

LABOUR LAW — FEDERAL

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| A. Creation of agreement . . . . .                         | §1044 |
| B. Amendment of agreement . . . . .                        | §1049 |
| C. Replacement positions . . . . .                         | §1053 |
| D. Notification of employees . . . . .                     | §1054 |
| E. Duty to observe terms and conditions . . . . .          | §1055 |
| (i) Lockouts . . . . .                                     | §1057 |
| 12. Complaints, Prohibitions and Enforcement . . . . .     | §1058 |
| (a) Complaints . . . . .                                   | §1058 |
| (b) Prohibitions and Enforcement . . . . .                 | §1064 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                      | §1064 |
| (ii) Prohibitions relating to Strikes . . . . .            | §1065 |
| (iii) Prohibition Relating to Essential Services . . . . . | §1070 |
| (iv) Offences and Punishment . . . . .                     | §1071 |
| 13. Grievances . . . . .                                   | §1077 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §1077 |
| (b) Individual Grievances . . . . .                        | §1082 |
| (i) Presentation . . . . .                                 | §1082 |
| (ii) Reference to Adjudication . . . . .                   | §1087 |
| (iii) Representation . . . . .                             | §1090 |
| (c) Group Grievances . . . . .                             | §1092 |
| (i) Presentation . . . . .                                 | §1092 |
| (ii) Reference to Adjudication . . . . .                   | §1096 |
| (iii) Withdrawal from Group Grievance . . . . .            | §1097 |
| (d) Policy Grievances . . . . .                            | §1098 |
| (i) Presentation . . . . .                                 | §1098 |
| (ii) Reference to Adjudication . . . . .                   | §1101 |
| (e) Adjudication . . . . .                                 | §1102 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Arbitration; Armed Forces; Aviation; Banking; Business Corporations; Constitutional Law; Contempt of Court; Courts; Customs and Excise; Employment Insurance; Employment Law; Estoppel; Gaming; Hospitals and Health Care; Hospitals; Insurance; Parties; Radio and Television; Railways; Shipping; Workers' Compensation.

# LABOUR LAW — MANITOBA

prepared by  
James E. Dorsey, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the British Columbia Bar;*  
*Former Vice-Chairman, Canada*  
*Labour Relations Board, and*  
Ib Petersen, M.Sc., LL.B.  
*of the British Columbia Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>1. Labour Relations Act</b> .....                      | §1  |
| <b>2. Regulatory Agencies, Officials and Courts</b> ..... | §6  |
| (a) Manitoba Labour Board .....                           | §6  |
| (i) Composition .....                                     | §6  |
| (ii) Tenure .....   | §8  |
| (iii) Selection .....                                     | §9  |
| (iv) Reappointment of Members .....                       | §11 |
| (v) Full-Time and Part-Time Appointments .....            | §12 |
| (vi) Oath of Office .....                                 | §13 |
| (vii) Completion of Duties .....                          | §14 |
| (viii) Disqualification of Board Members .....            | §15 |
| (ix) Salary and Expenses .....                            | §16 |
| (x) Annual Report .....                                   | §18 |
| (xi) Meetings .....                                       | §20 |
| (xii) Substitute Chair .....                              | §21 |
| (xiii) Panels .....                                       | §22 |
| (xiv) Quorum .....  | §26 |
| (xv) Decisions .....                                      | §27 |
| (xvi) Practice and Procedure .....                        | §30 |



|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (xvii) Public Hearings . . . . .                                   | §32         |
| (xviii) Witnesses . . . . .  | §35         |
| (xix) Evidence . . . . .   | §40         |
| (xx) Power to Investigate . . . . .                                | §46         |
| (xxi) Summary Dismissal . . . . .                                  | §50         |
| (xxii) Deferral to Arbitration . . . . .                           | §51         |
| (xxiii) Settlement Efforts . . . . .                               | §52         |
| (xxiv) Procedural and Ancillary Powers . . . . .                   | §54         |
| (xxv) Determination of Questions . . . . .                         | §59         |
| (xxvi) Review of Orders . . . . .                                  | §62         |
| (xxvii) Compellability . . . . .                                   | §70         |
| (xxviii) Limitation on Liability . . . . .                         | §71         |
| (xxix) Applications and Notices . . . . .                          | §72         |
| (xxx) Service of Notices and Documents . . . . .                   | §73         |
| (xxxi) Defect or Technical Irregularity . . . . .                  | §77         |
| (b) Minister . . . . .   | §78         |
| (i) General Responsibilities . . . . .                             | §78         |
| (ii) Industrial Inquiry Commissions . . . . .                      | §80         |
| (c) Courts . . . . .   | §84         |
| <b>3. Protected Freedoms . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§92</b>  |
| (a) Generally . . . . .  | §92         |
| (b) Trade Union Access to Employees . . . . .                      | §96         |
| (c) Prohibited Employer Conduct . . . . .                          | §109        |
| (i) Interference or Participation . . . . .                        | §109        |
| (ii) Employer Speech . . . . .                                     | §113        |
| (iii) Discrimination . . . . .                                     | §115        |
| (iv) Yellow Dog Contract . . . . .                                 | §119        |
| (v) Interrogation . . . . .  | §121        |
| (d) Prohibited Union Conduct . . . . .                             | §122        |
| (e) General Prohibition . . . . .                                  | §123        |
| <b>4. Parties Defined Under the Labour Relations Act . . . . .</b> | <b>§125</b> |
| (a) Employee . . . . .   | §125        |
| (i) Generally . . . . .  | §125        |
| (ii) Management Functions . . . . .                                | §128        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iii) Confidential Capacity . . . . .                                    | §129        |
| (iv) Professional Employee . . . . .                                     | §130        |
| (b) Individual . . . . .   | §132        |
| (c) Employer . . . . .   | §133        |
| (d) Union . . . . .  | §138        |
| (e) Employers' Organization . . . . .                                    | §140        |
| <b>5. Acquiring Bargaining Rights . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§141</b> |
| (a) Voluntary Recognition . . . . .                                      | §141        |
| (b) Certification . . . . .  | §142        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §142        |
| (ii) Bars to Certification . . . . .                                     | §145        |
| A. Timeliness . . . . .  | §145        |
| B. Employer Influence . . . . .  | §160        |
| (iii) Joint Applications . . . . .                                       | §161        |
| (iv) Majority Support . . . . .  | §162        |
| A. Deemed Support . . . . .  | §162        |
| B. Employee Standing . . . . .   | §164        |
| C. Union Membership . . . . .  | §168        |
| D. Voting . . . . .  | §173        |
| E. Results of Vote . . . . .   | §177        |
| (v) Employer Standing . . . . .  | §183        |
| (vi) Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of<br>Employment . . . . . | §184        |
| (vii) Appropriate Bargaining Unit . . . . .                              | §185        |
| (viii) Discretionary Certification . . . . .                             | §198        |
| <b>6. Effect of Certification and Voluntary Recognition . . . . .</b>    | <b>§199</b> |
| (a) Bargaining Agent's Exclusive Authority . . . . .                     | §199        |
| (b) Duty to Bargain . . . . .  | §203        |
| (c) Duty of Fair Representation . . . . .                                | §206        |
| (i) Standard . . . . .   | §206        |
| (ii) Remedy . . . . .  | §210        |
| <b>7. Successor Rights and Obligations . . . . .</b>                     | <b>§212</b> |
| (a) Trade Union Reorganization . . . . .                                 | §212        |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Sale of Employer . . . . .  | §215        |
| <b>8. Modifying or Revoking Bargaining Rights . . . . .</b>             | <b>§230</b> |
| (a) Modifying Bargaining Units . . . . .                                | §230        |
| (b) Revoking Bargaining Rights . . . . .                                | §231        |
| (i) Certified Bargaining Agents . . . . .                               | §231        |
| A. Abandonment . . . . .  | §231        |
| B. Employee Choice . . . . .  | §233        |
| C. Fraud . . . . .  | §240        |
| (ii) Voluntarily Recognized Bargaining Agents . . . . .                 | §242        |
| (iii) Board Discretion to Dismiss . . . . .                             | §244        |
| (iv) Effect of Revocation . . . . .                                     | §245        |
| <b>9. Collective Bargaining . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§246</b> |
| (a) Notices to Bargain . . . . .  | §246        |
| (i) After Certification . . . . .                                       | §246        |
| (ii) Prior to Expiration of Collective Agreement . . . . .              | §248        |
| (iii) During the Term of Collective Agreement . . . . .                 | §250        |
| (iv) By Board Order . . . . .   | §251        |
| (b) Duty to Meet . . . . .  | §252        |
| (c) Termination of Collective Agreement . . . . .                       | §254        |
| (d) Employer Disclosure of Information . . . . .                        | §258        |
| (e) Suspension of Collective Bargaining . . . . .                       | §263        |
| (f) Good Faith Bargaining . . . . .                                     | §264        |
| (g) Term, Content, Filing and Effect of Collective Agreements . . . . . | §266        |
| (i) Writing and Parties . . . . .                                       | §266        |
| (ii) Term . . . . .   | §270        |
| (iii) Other Terms . . . . .   | §274        |
| A. Final Settlement of Disputes . . . . .                               | §274        |
| B. Just Cause to Discipline or Dismiss . . . . .                        | §279        |
| C. Fair Administration . . . . .  | §283        |
| D. Ongoing Consultations . . . . .                                      | §285        |
| E. Other Provisions . . . . .   | §287        |
| (iv) Filing . . . . .   | §288        |
| (v) Public Inspection . . . . .   | §289        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (h) Prohibited Bargaining Relationship . . . . .                                | §291        |
| (i) Union Security, Compulsory Check-Off and Religious<br>Objections . . . . .  | §294        |
| (i) Union Security . . . . .  | §294        |
| (ii) Compulsory Check-off . . . . .   | §296        |
| (iii) Religious Objections . . . . .  | §300        |
| (j) Agreed Interest Arbitration . . . . .                                       | §303        |
| (k) Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of Employment . . . .<br>. . . . . | §305        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>10. Technological Change . . . . .</b>                                       | <b>§309</b> |
| (a) Defined . . . . .   | §309        |
| (b) Notice . . . . .  | §310        |
| (c) Notice to Bargain . . . . .   | §312        |
| (d) Arbitration of Effect . . . . .   | §313        |
| (e) Failure to Serve Notice . . . . .   | §315        |
| (f) Exemptions . . . . .  | §317        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>11. Imposed First Collective Agreements . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§319</b> |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>12. Settlement of Subsequent Agreements . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§328</b> |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>13. Conciliation and Mediation . . . . .</b>                                 | <b>§333</b> |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §333        |
| (b) Conciliation Officer . . . . .  | §334        |
| (c) Report . . . . .  | §339        |
| (d) Conciliation Board . . . . .  | §342        |
| (e) Failure to Co-operate . . . . .   | §354        |
| (f) Mediation . . . . .   | §356        |
| (g) Conciliation Board and Mediator Proceedings . . . . .                       | §363        |
| (i) Purpose . . . . .   | §363        |
| (ii) Remuneration . . . . .   | §364        |
| (iii) Procedure . . . . .   | §366        |
| (iv) Report . . . . .   | §376        |
| (v) Enforcement of Recommendations . . . . .                                    | §383        |
| (vi) Limitation of Liability . . . . .  | §384        |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (h) Final Offer Selection .....                                    | §385        |
| <b>14. Ratification Vote .....</b>                                 | <b>§387</b> |
| <b>15. Economic Conflict .....</b>                                 | <b>§399</b> |
| (a) Timeliness .....   | §399        |
| (b) Prohibited Strike and Lockout .....                            | §401        |
| (c) Participation in a Strike .....                                | §404        |
| (d) Strike .....   | §406        |
| (e) Lockout .....  | §407        |
| (f) Strike Vote .....  | §408        |
| (g) Regulated Activity .....                                       | §413        |
| (i) Prohibited Discrimination .....                                | §413        |
| (ii) Hiring Permanent Replacement Workers .....                    | §414        |
| (iii) Professional Strikebreaker .....                             | §415        |
| (iv) Strike-Related Misconduct .....                               | §417        |
| (v) Protected Refusal to Facilitate Struck Employer .....          | §419        |
| (vi) Protected Refusal to Do Struck Work .....                     | §430        |
| (vii) Protected Pension and Other Benefits .....                   | §431        |
| (viii) Protected Refusal to Participate in an Illegal Strike ..... | §433        |
| (ix) Reinstatement After Strike or Lockout .....                   | §434        |
| (h) Offences and Penalties .....                                   | §440        |
| (i) Picketing .....  | §445        |
| <b>16. Arbitration and Grievance Mediation .....</b>               | <b>§450</b> |
| (a) Arbitration .....  | §450        |
| (i) Exclusion of Arbitration Act .....                             | §450        |
| (ii) Presentation of Personal Grievance .....                      | §451        |
| (iii) Appointment of Arbitrator .....                              | §452        |
| (iv) Quorum .....  | §462        |
| (v) Jurisdictional Objection .....                                 | §463        |
| (vi) Powers of Arbitrator or Board .....                           | §465        |
| (vii) Witnesses .....  | §473        |
| (viii) Public Hearings .....                                       | §475        |
| (ix) Decision Making .....   | §477        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (x) Time Limit for Making Decision . . . . .                                      | §479        |
| (xi) Real Substance of Matter in Dispute . . . . .                                | §483        |
| (xii) Remedial Authority . . . . .  | §484        |
| (xiii) Retaining Jurisdiction . . . . .   | §486        |
| (xiv) Expenses . . . . .  | §487        |
| (xv) Filing and Publication of Decisions . . . . .                                | §488        |
| (xvi) Enforcing Order and Decisions . . . . .                                     | §489        |
| (xvii) Judicial Review . . . . .  | §490        |
| (b) Grievance Mediation . . . . .   | §497        |
| (i) Referral to Mediator . . . . .  | §497        |
| (ii) Referral to Board and Arbitration . . . . .                                  | §500        |
| (iii) Report by Mediator . . . . .  | §508        |
| (iv) Decision of Arbitrator . . . . .   | §509        |
| <b>17. Individuals and Internal Union Affairs . . . . .</b>                       | <b>§517</b> |
| (a) Membership . . . . .  | §517        |
| (b) Denial of Membership, Suspension, Expulsion and Other<br>Discipline . . . . . | §518        |
| (c) Loss of Employment . . . . .  | §520        |
| (d) Liability of Union and Individual Members . . . . .                           | §522        |
| <b>18. Unfair Labour Practice Complaints . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§523</b> |
| (a) Generally . . . . .   | §523        |
| (b) Timeliness . . . . .  | §526        |
| (c) Parties . . . . .   | §527        |
| (d) Settlement Efforts . . . . .  | §528        |
| (e) Hearings . . . . .  | §530        |
| (f) Refusal to Take Action . . . . .  | §532        |
| (g) Interim Order . . . . .   | §533        |
| (h) Final Finding . . . . .   | §534        |
| (i) Burden of Proof . . . . .   | §535        |
| (j) Remedies . . . . .  | §536        |
| <b>19. Enforcement and Prosecution . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>§546</b> |
| (a) Interference with Process . . . . .   | §546        |
| (b) Compliance Order . . . . .  | §547        |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Judicial Enforcement of Board Orders . . . . . | §548        |
| (d) Offences . . . . .                             | §550        |
| (e) Consent to Prosecution . . . . .               | §556        |
| <b>20. Action for Damages . . . . .</b>            | <b>§561</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Courts.

# LABOUR LAW — SASKATCHEWAN

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.,  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>I. Introduction.....</b>   | <b>§1</b> |
| <b>II. Regulatory Agencies, Officials, Courts and Evidence.....</b> | <b>§8</b> |
| 1. Labour Relations Board.....                                      | §8        |
| (a) Composition.....  | §8        |
| (b) Remuneration.....   | §10       |
| (c) Oath of Office.....   | §11       |
| (d) Quorum.....   | §12       |
| (e) Decisions.....  | §13       |
| (f) Executive Officer.....  | §17       |
| (g) General Dispute Resolution.....                                 | §19       |
| (h) Ex Parte Applications to Board.....                             | §22       |
| (i) Procedural and Ancillary Powers.....                            | §23       |
| (i) Generally.....  | §23       |
| (ii) Amendment of Proceedings.....                                  | §33       |
| (iii) Incidental Powers and Compliance Orders.....                  | §39       |
| (iv) Power to Find Party in Contempt.....                           | §44       |
| (j) Public Hearings.....  | §46       |
| (k) Witness Fees.....   | §49       |
| (l) Evidence.....   | §50       |
| (m) Administrative Procedures.....                                  | §60       |
| (i) Notices.....  | §60       |
| (ii) Forms.....   | §61       |



LABOUR LAW — SASKATCHEWAN

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (iii) Filing.....   | \$62         |
| (iv) Dating and Distribution.....                                       | \$65         |
| (v) Replies .....   | \$68         |
| (vi) Time Limits .....  | \$73         |
| (n) Amendment or Appeal of Decisions .....                              | \$75         |
| (o) Annual Report .....   | \$78         |
| 2. Minister.....  | \$79         |
| 3. Courts .....   | \$89         |
| 4. Compellability .....   | \$96         |
| <b>III. Protected Freedoms.....</b>                                     | <b>\$98</b>  |
| 1. Generally .....  | \$98         |
| 2. Rights of Unionized Employers in Construction Industry.....          | \$99         |
| 3. Trade Union Access to Employees.....                                 | \$100        |
| 4. Prohibited Employer Conduct .....                                    | \$101        |
| (a) Interference or Participation.....                                  | \$101        |
| (b) Employer Speech.....  | \$130        |
| (c) Contributing Support .....  | \$140        |
| (d) Yellow Dog Contract .....   | \$145        |
| (e) Denial of Benefits.....   | \$146        |
| 5. Prohibited Conduct by Unions, Employees and Others.....              | \$149        |
| 6. Effect of the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms .....          | \$160        |
| <b>IV. Parties Defined Under the Saskatchewan Employment Act</b>        |              |
| .....   | \$165        |
| 1. Employee.....  | \$165        |
| (a) Generally .....   | \$165        |
| (b) Management Functions .....  | \$172        |
| (c) Confidential Capacity .....   | \$177        |
| 2. Employer .....   | \$178        |
| 3. Supervisory Employee .....   | \$187        |
| 4. Labour Organization .....  | \$189        |
| 5. Union .....  | \$190        |
| <b>V. Parties Defined Under the Construction Industry Division.....</b> | <b>\$201</b> |
| 1. Trade Division.....  | \$201        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 2. Unionized Employee.....  | \$202        |
| 3. Unionized Employer .....   | \$203        |
| 4. Representative Employers' Organization .....   | \$205        |
| 5. Minister.....  | \$206        |
| 6. Labour Relations Board.....  | \$207        |
| <b>VI. Acquiring Bargaining Rights .....</b>  | <b>\$208</b> |
| 1. Voluntary Recognition .....  | \$208        |
| 2. Certification.....   | \$209        |
| (a) Application.....  | \$209        |
| (b) Bars to Certification .....   | \$210        |
| (i) Timeliness.....   | \$210        |
| (ii) Employer Interference.....   | \$218        |
| (c) Majority Support.....   | \$220        |
| (i) Board Determination .....   | \$220        |
| (ii) Representation Vote .....  | \$228        |
| (iii) Voting Procedure .....  | \$241        |
| (d) Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of<br>Employment.....                      | \$254        |
| (e) Appropriate Bargaining Unit.....  | \$256        |
| <b>VII. Bargaining Rights in Construction Industry.....</b>                             | <b>\$281</b> |
| 1. Appropriate Trade Division.....  | \$281        |
| 2. Representative Employers' Organizations .....  | \$282        |
| <b>VIII. Effect of Certification and Voluntary Recognition.....</b>                     | <b>\$288</b> |
| 1. Bargaining Agent's Exclusive Authority .....   | \$288        |
| 2. Duty to Bargain.....   | \$291        |
| (a) Nature of Duty.....   | \$291        |
| (b) Breach of Duty .....  | \$301        |
| 3. Duty of Fair Representation .....  | \$323        |
| <b>IX. Effect of Determination or Designation in Construction<br/>    Industry.....</b> | <b>\$336</b> |
| 1. Representative Employers' Organization .....   | \$336        |
| 2. Councils of Local Unions.....  | \$344        |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 3. Project Agreements .....  | §348        |
| 4. Pre-job Conferences .....                                       | §349        |
| <b>X. Health Sector Bargaining .....</b>                           | <b>§350</b> |
| <b>XI. Firefighters .....</b>                                      | <b>§354</b> |
| <b>XII. Successor Rights and Obligations .....</b>                 | <b>§359</b> |
| 1. Union Reorganization .....                                      | §359        |
| 2. Sale of Employer .....  | §361        |
| <b>XIII. Modifying Bargaining Rights .....</b>                     | <b>§386</b> |
| <b>XIV. Rescission of Bargaining Rights .....</b>                  | <b>§406</b> |
| 1. Abandonment .....   | §406        |
| 2. Board Order.....  | §409        |
| 3. Fraud.....  | §424        |
| <b>XV. Collective Bargaining .....</b>                             | <b>§428</b> |
| 1. Notice to Bargain.....  | §428        |
| 2. Effect of Notice.....   | §434        |
| 3. Duty to Bargain.....  | §435        |
| 4. Statutory Freeze on Terms and Conditions of Employment<br>..... | §439        |
| 5. Prohibited Bargaining Relationships .....                       | §445        |
| 6. First Collective Bargaining Agreements .....                    | §446        |
| 7. Term, Content and Effect of Collective Agreements.....          | §447        |
| (a) Writing and Parties.....                                       | §447        |
| (b) Term.....  | §450        |
| (c) Other Provisions .....   | §453        |
| (d) Filing .....   | §454        |
| 8. Union Security, Dues Collection and Religious Objections ..     | §455        |
| (a) Union Security .....   | §455        |
| (b) Dues Collection .....  | §467        |
| (c) Religious Objections.....                                      | §470        |
| 9. Ratification .....  | §474        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 10. Employer's Final Offer.....  | \$476        |
| <b>XVI. Technological and Organizational Change .....</b>              | <b>\$477</b> |
| 1. Defined .....   | \$477        |
| 2. Significant Number .....  | \$481        |
| 3. Notice .....  | \$483        |
| <b>XVII. Labour Relations Officer .....</b>                            | <b>\$491</b> |
| <b>XVIII. Conciliation.....</b>  | <b>\$492</b> |
| <b>XIX. Mediation .....</b>  | <b>\$497</b> |
| <b>XX. Economic Conflict .....</b>                                     | <b>\$500</b> |
| 1. Timeliness.....   | \$500        |
| 2. Strike Vote .....   | \$507        |
| 3. Notice .....  | \$514        |
| 4. Strike and Lockout.....   | \$518        |
| 5. Regulated Activity .....  | \$526        |
| (a) Prohibited Employer Discrimination .....                           | \$526        |
| (b) Preservation of Employee Status.....                               | \$529        |
| (c) Protected Pension and Other Benefits .....                         | \$533        |
| 6. Hiring Replacements.....  | \$536        |
| 7. Picketing .....   | \$537        |
| 8. Strikes and Lockouts in Construction Industry .....                 | \$543        |
| <b>XXI. Arbitration .....</b>  | <b>\$545</b> |
| <b>XXII. Grievance Mediation.....</b>                                  | <b>\$563</b> |
| <b>XXIII. Individuals and Internal Union Affairs.....</b>              | <b>\$564</b> |
| 1. Duty of Fair Representation .....                                   | \$564        |
| 2. Fair Procedure Under Constitution .....                             | \$571        |
| 3. Denial of Membership .....  | \$575        |
| 4. Loss of Employment as a Result of Loss of Union<br>Membership ..... | \$578        |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 5. Financial Statement of Unions .....   | §581 |
| <b>XXIV. Unfair Labour Practice Complaints</b> .....   | §582 |
| 1. Generally .....   | §582 |
| 2. Timeliness.....   | §588 |
| 3. Burden of Proof .....   | §591 |
| 4. Deferral to Other Forums .....  | §601 |
| 5. Remedies .....  | §607 |
| <b>XXV. Enforcement and Prosecution</b> .....  | §627 |
| <b>XXVI. Labour Management Actions (Temporary Measures<br/>    During an Election)</b> ..... | §635 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Alternative Dispute Resolution; Business Corporations; Constitutional Law; Contempt of Court; Courts; Employment Law; Estoppel; Hospitals; Parties; Injunctions; Workers Compensation; Wrongful Dismissal

# LANDLORD AND TENANT

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Creation of Relationship</b> .....          | §1  |
| 1. General .....                                  | §1  |
| 2. Parties .....                                  | §12 |
| (a) General .....                                 | §12 |
| (b) Unincorporated Bodies .....                   | §16 |
| (c) Agents .....                                  | §19 |
| (d) Infants .....                                 | §21 |
| (e) Mortgagees and Mortgagors .....               | §24 |
| (i) Mortgagee's Power to Lease .....              | §24 |
| (ii) Mortgagor's Power to Lease .....             | §28 |
| (f) Trustee in Bankruptcy .....                   | §31 |
| (i) Trustee as Landlord .....                     | §31 |
| (ii) Trustee as Tenant .....                      | §32 |
| (g) Family Arrangements .....                     | §35 |
| (h) Non-citizens .....                            | §39 |
| (i) Discriminatory Practices .....                | §43 |
| 3. Lease and Licence Distinguished .....          | §44 |
| 4. Lease and Profit à Prendre Distinguished ..... | §51 |
| 5. Tenancy by Attornment .....                    | §52 |
| 6. Tenancy by Estoppel .....                      | §57 |
| 7. Forms of Tenancy .....                         | §66 |
| (a) Tenancy at Sufferance .....                   | §66 |
| (b) Tenancy at Will .....                         | §70 |

LANDLORD AND TENANT

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Tenancy for Years . . . . .                                  | §76         |
| (d) Tenancy from Year to Year . . . . .                          | §77         |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §77         |
| (ii) Implied Tenancy . . . . .                                   | §82         |
| (e) Periodic Tenancies Less Than a Year . . . . .                | §89         |
| 8. Tenant's Right to Possession . . . . .                        | §93         |
| (a) Rights Before Entry . . . . .                                | §93         |
| (b) Entry Under Lease . . . . .                                  | §95         |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>II. Application of Landlord and Tenant Statutes . . . . .</b> | <b>§97</b>  |
| 1. Alberta . . . . .   | §97         |
| (a) Residential Tenancies . . . . .                              | §97         |
| (b) Mobile Home Sites Tenancies . . . . .                        | §99         |
| (c) Contracting Out . . . . .                                    | §103        |
| (d) Legislation Binding on Crown . . . . .                       | §104        |
| (e) Regulations . . . . .  | §105        |
| 2. British Columbia . . . . .                                    | §109        |
| (a) Non-residential and Residential Tenancies . . . . .          | §109        |
| (b) Contracting Out . . . . .                                    | §114        |
| (c) Regulations . . . . .  | §115        |
| 3. Manitoba . . . . .  | §116        |
| (a) Non-residential and Residential Tenancies . . . . .          | §116        |
| (b) Legislation Binding on Crown . . . . .                       | §121        |
| (c) Regulations . . . . .  | §122        |
| (d) Life Leases Act . . . . .                                    | §123        |
| 4. Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §125        |
| (a) Non-residential and Residential Tenancies . . . . .          | §125        |
| (b) Contracting Out . . . . .                                    | §130        |
| (c) Regulations . . . . .  | §132        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>III. Leases and Tenancy Agreements . . . . .</b>              | <b>§133</b> |
| 1. Nature of Lease . . . . .                                     | §133        |
| 2. Interpretation . . . . .                                      | §137        |
| 3. Content . . . . .   | §152        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §152        |
| (b) Identity of Parties . . . . .                                | §154        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Lease of Premises . . . . .                            | §158        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                      | §158        |
| (ii) Appurtenances . . . . .                               | §163        |
| (d) Commencement and Duration of Term . . . . .            | §170        |
| (e) Reservation of Rent . . . . .                          | §179        |
| (f) Covenants . . . . .                                    | §180        |
| (i) Condition Distinguished . . . . .                      | §180        |
| (ii) Dependent and Independent Covenants . . . . .         | §181        |
| (iii) Usual Covenants . . . . .                            | §185        |
| (iv) Implied Covenants . . . . .                           | §187        |
| A. Covenants Implied at Common Law . . . . .               | §187        |
| B. Covenants Implied by Statute . . . . .                  | §193        |
| C. Covenants Implied by Construction of Lease . . . . .    | §200        |
| (v) Covenants Permitted in Residential Tenancies . . . . . | §207        |
| 4. Requisites of Form . . . . .                            | §210        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §210        |
| (b) Statutory Requirements . . . . .                       | §211        |
| (i) Writing . . . . .                                      | §211        |
| (ii) Sealing . . . . .                                     | §215        |
| (iii) Giving Effect to Defective Lease . . . . .           | §216        |
| (c) Statutory Forms of Lease . . . . .                     | §220        |
| (i) Short Forms of Lease . . . . .                         | §220        |
| (ii) Leases Under the Land Titles System . . . . .         | §224        |
| (iii) Residential Tenancy Agreements . . . . .             | §226        |
| 5. Copy to Tenant . . . . .                                | §229        |
| 6. Registration . . . . .                                  | §230        |
| 7. Rectification . . . . .                                 | §233        |
| <b>IV. Agreements for Lease . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§238</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §238        |
| 2. Requisites of Valid Agreement . . . . .                 | §241        |
| <b>V. Obligations of Landlord . . . . .</b>                | <b>§246</b> |
| 1. Notice of Landlord . . . . .                            | §246        |
| 2. Fitness and Habitability . . . . .                      | §247        |



LANDLORD AND TENANT

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) Unfurnished Premises . . . . .                      | §247        |
| (b) Furnished Premises . . . . .                        | §252        |
| (c) Residential Premises . . . . .                      | §256        |
| 3. Covenant for Quiet Enjoyment . . . . .               | §258        |
| (a) Nature of Covenant . . . . .                        | §258        |
| (b) Implied and Express Covenants . . . . .             | §260        |
| (c) Breach of Covenant . . . . .                        | §263        |
| (d) Remedies for Breach . . . . .                       | §270        |
| (i) Action for Damages . . . . .                        | §270        |
| (ii) Suspension of Rent . . . . .                       | §275        |
| (iii) Injunction . . . . .                              | §277        |
| 4. Access to Residential Premises . . . . .             | §280        |
| 5. Locks and Security Devices . . . . .                 | §287        |
| 6. Provision of Essential Services . . . . .            | §291        |
| (a) Breach of Covenant at Common Law . . . . .          | §291        |
| (b) Statutory Obligations . . . . .                     | §292        |
| 7. Repairs and Maintenance . . . . .                    | §296        |
| (a) Non-residential premises . . . . .                  | §296        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                   | §296        |
| (ii) Common Means of Access . . . . .                   | §303        |
| (b) Residential Premises . . . . .                      | §307        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                                   | §307        |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                         | §310        |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                                | §316        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .                             | §320        |
| 8. Alterations and Improvements . . . . .               | §322        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §322        |
| (b) Covenant to Pay . . . . .                           | §324        |
| 9. Relocation . . . . .                                 | §328        |
| <b>VI. Obligations of Tenant . . . . .</b>              | <b>§329</b> |
| 1. Repairs and Maintenance . . . . .                    | §329        |
| (a) Obligation of Tenant-like User . . . . .            | §329        |
| (b) Covenant to Repair . . . . .                        | §334        |
| (i) Exception for Reasonable Wear and Tear . . . . .    | §334        |
| (ii) Exception for Fire, Lighting and Tempest . . . . . | §340        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iii) Repair of Fixtures . . . . .           | §344        |
| (iv) Covenant to Leave in Repair . . . . .   | §345        |
| (v) Particular Forms of Covenant . . . . .   | §349        |
| (vi) Notice to Repair . . . . .              | §353        |
| (vii) Landlord's Right to Remedy . . . . .   | §354        |
| (viii) Damages for Breach . . . . .          | §358        |
| (c) Residential Premises . . . . .           | §361        |
| 2. Waste . . . . .                           | §364        |
| (a) General . . . . .                        | §364        |
| (b) Voluntary and Permissive Waste . . . . . | §367        |
| 3. Husband-like Cultivation . . . . .        | §374        |
| (a) General . . . . .                        | §374        |
| (b) Covenant to Summer Fallow . . . . .      | §379        |
| (c) Other Covenants . . . . .                | §385        |
| 4. Restrictions on User . . . . .            | §388        |
| (a) Restrictive Covenants . . . . .          | §388        |
| (b) Prohibited Uses . . . . .                | §406        |
| (i) Criminal Code . . . . .                  | §406        |
| (ii) Statutory Forms of Lease . . . . .      | §407        |
| (iii) Residential Tenancies . . . . .        | §409        |
| 5. Locks and Security Devices . . . . .      | §412        |
| 6. Covenant to Pay Taxes . . . . .           | §413        |
| 7. Covenant to Insure . . . . .              | §421        |
| <b>VII. Rent . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§425</b> |
| 1. Nature of Rent . . . . .                  | §425        |
| 2. Obligation to Pay . . . . .               | §435        |
| 3. Enforceability of Covenant . . . . .      | §444        |
| 4. Apportionment . . . . .                   | §451        |
| 5. Manner and Place of Payment . . . . .     | §457        |
| 6. Time for Payment . . . . .                | §459        |
| 7. Acceleration Clauses . . . . .            | §461        |
| 8. Post-Dated Cheques . . . . .              | §465        |
| 9. Allowances and Deductions . . . . .       | §466        |
| 10. Suspension of Rent . . . . .             | §470        |
| (a) Suspension on Eviction . . . . .         | §470        |

LANDLORD AND TENANT

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Destruction of Premises . . . . .                 | §474        |
| 11. Landlord's Priority . . . . .                     | §478        |
| (a) Bankruptcy of Tenant . . . . .                    | §478        |
| (b) Crop Payments . . . . .                           | §481        |
| 12. Notice of Increase . . . . .                      | §486        |
| 13. Action to Recover . . . . .                       | §492        |
| 14. Recovery for Use and Occupation . . . . .         | §495        |
| 15. Security Deposits . . . . .                       | §499        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VIII. Assignment and Subletting . . . . .</b>      | <b>§506</b> |
| 1. Assignment by Operation of Law . . . . .           | §506        |
| (a) Assignment on Death . . . . .                     | §506        |
| (b) Assignment on Bankruptcy . . . . .                | §510        |
| 2. Assignment of Reversion . . . . .                  | §515        |
| 3. Tenant Parting with Premises . . . . .             | §524        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §524        |
| (b) Assignment and Sublease Distinguished . . . . .   | §528        |
| (c) Non-residential Tenancies . . . . .               | §534        |
| (d) Residential Tenancies . . . . .                   | §551        |
| (e) Withholding of Consent . . . . .                  | §553        |
| (f) Remedies . . . . .                                | §565        |
| 4. Assignment by Trustee in Bankruptcy . . . . .      | §571        |
| 5. Covenants Running with Land or Reversion . . . . . | §573        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §573        |
| (b) Express Covenants . . . . .                       | §577        |
| (c) Implied Covenants . . . . .                       | §585        |
| (d) Collateral Covenants . . . . .                    | §586        |
| (e) Security Deposits . . . . .                       | §589        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Renewals and Options . . . . .</b>             | <b>§590</b> |
| 1. Renewal by Acceptance of Rent . . . . .            | §590        |
| 2. Right to Renew . . . . .                           | §594        |
| (a) Tenancies in General . . . . .                    | §594        |
| (b) Residential Tenancies . . . . .                   | §603        |
| 3. Renewal by Absentees . . . . .                     | §605        |
| 4. Enforceability of Option to Renew . . . . .        | §606        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 5. Terms of Renewal . . . . .                              | §622        |
| 6. Options to Purchase . . . . .                           | §627        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §627        |
| (b) Enforceability . . . . .                               | §637        |
| (c) Damages for Breach . . . . .                           | §642        |
| <b>X. Merger and Surrender . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§643</b> |
| 1. Merger . . . . .  | §643        |
| 2. Surrender of Lease . . . . .                            | §644        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §644        |
| (b) Surrender by Deed . . . . .                            | §651        |
| (c) Surrender by Operation of Law . . . . .                | §655        |
| (d) Surrender of Sublease . . . . .                        | §677        |
| (e) Effect of Surrender . . . . .                          | §679        |
| 3. Effect of Merger or Surrender on Subtenancies . . . . . | §681        |
| <b>XI. Forfeiture and Re-entry . . . . .</b>               | <b>§683</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §683        |
| 2. Disclaimer by Tenant . . . . .                          | §691        |
| 3. Disclaimer by Trustee in Bankruptcy . . . . .           | §692        |
| 4. Court Leaning Against Forfeiture . . . . .              | §693        |
| 5. Right to Effect Re-Entry . . . . .                      | §695        |
| 6. Election to Forfeit . . . . .                           | §702        |
| (a) Landlord's Right . . . . .                             | §702        |
| (b) Evidence of Election . . . . .                         | §703        |
| (c) Retraction . . . . .                                   | §715        |
| 7. Waiver of Forfeiture . . . . .                          | §717        |
| 8. Notice of Breach . . . . .                              | §728        |
| (a) Non-payment of Rent . . . . .                          | §728        |
| (b) Breach of Covenant . . . . .                           | §729        |
| (c) Sufficiency of Notice . . . . .                        | §734        |
| 9. Relief Against Forfeiture . . . . .                     | §739        |
| (a) Power of the Court . . . . .                           | §739        |
| (b) Relief for Non-payment of Rent . . . . .               | §748        |
| (c) Relief for Breach of Covenant . . . . .                | §755        |
| (d) Relief After Re-entry . . . . .                        | §765        |

LANDLORD AND TENANT

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (e) Practice . . . . .                               | §766        |
| <b>XII. Abandonment . . . . .</b>                    | <b>§769</b> |
| 1. Common Law Remedies . . . . .                     | §769        |
| 2. Residential Premises . . . . .                    | §778        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                                | §778        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                       | §784        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                               | §786        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                           | §788        |
| <b>XIII. Termination by Notice to Quit . . . . .</b> | <b>§791</b> |
| 1. Non-Residential Tenancies . . . . .               | §791        |
| (a) Where No Notice Required . . . . .               | §791        |
| (b) Period of Notice . . . . .                       | §794        |
| (i) Reasonable Notice . . . . .                      | §794        |
| (ii) Stipulation for Notice . . . . .                | §799        |
| (iii) Statutory Provisions . . . . .                 | §803        |
| (c) Form and Content . . . . .                       | §804        |
| (d) Waiver . . . . .                                 | §814        |
| 2. Residential Tenancies . . . . .                   | §822        |
| (a) Period of Notice . . . . .                       | §822        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                                | §822        |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                      | §833        |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                             | §839        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .                          | §847        |
| (b) Form and Content . . . . .                       | §850        |
| 3. Giving and Receiving Notice . . . . .             | §854        |
| <b>XIV. Statutory Remedies . . . . .</b>             | <b>§865</b> |
| 1. Alberta . . . . .                                 | §865        |
| 2. British Columbia . . . . .                        | §877        |
| (a) Commercial Tenancies . . . . .                   | §877        |
| (i) Overholding Tenant . . . . .                     | §877        |
| (ii) Remedy for Breach of Covenant . . . . .         | §885        |
| (iii) Distress . . . . .                             | §889        |
| (b) Residential Tenancies . . . . .                  | §891        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Jurisdiction . . . . .                             | §891        |
| (ii) Procedure . . . . .                               | §897        |
| 3. Manitoba . . . . .                                  | §902        |
| (a) Non-residential Tenancies . . . . .                | §902        |
| (i) Overholding Tenant . . . . .                       | §902        |
| (ii) Proceedings for Non-payment of Rent . . . . .     | §910        |
| (b) Residential Tenancies . . . . .                    | §914        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                  | §914        |
| (ii) Overholding Tenant . . . . .                      | §916        |
| (iii) Mediation by Rentalsman . . . . .                | §918        |
| 4. Saskatchewan . . . . .                              | §926        |
| (a) Non-residential Tenancies . . . . .                | §926        |
| (b) Residential Tenancies . . . . .                    | §942        |
| <b>XV. Fixtures . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§951</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                   | §951        |
| 2. Chattels Becoming Fixtures . . . . .                | §952        |
| 3. Landlord's Fixtures and Tenant's Fixtures . . . . . | §956        |
| 4. Provisions in Lease . . . . .                       | §958        |
| 5. Right to Remove Fixtures . . . . .                  | §963        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Children; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Deeds and Documents; Human Rights; Insurance; Mines and Minerals; Mortgages; Oil and Gas; Real Property; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada.

# LIENS

prepared by  
Marlene J. Barchuk, LL.B.  
*of the Alberta, British Columbia  
and Saskatchewan Bars*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                | §1  |
| <b>II. Common Law Liens</b> .....           | §2  |
| 1. Defined .....                            | §2  |
| (a) In General .....                        | §2  |
| (b) General Liens .....                     | §3  |
| (c) Particular Liens .....                  | §6  |
| 2. Creation .....                           | §7  |
| (a) Introduction .....                      | §7  |
| (b) Agreement.....                          | §8  |
| (c) Trade Usage or Custom .....             | §12 |
| (d) Operation of Law .....                  | §15 |
| (i) Introduction.....                       | §15 |
| (ii) Receivers of Goods.....                | §16 |
| (iii) Labourers, Artisans or Repairers..... | §19 |
| (iv) Sureties .....                         | §23 |
| 3. Nature of Possession.....                | §24 |
| (a) Generally .....                         | §24 |
| (b) Acquiring Possession .....              | §25 |
| (c) Loss of Possession.....                 | §31 |
| 4. Rights and Remedies .....                | §34 |

## LIENS

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 5. Obligations and Liabilities.....                         | §44        |
| 6. Loss of Lien .....                                       | §48        |
| (a) Loss of Possession.....                                 | §48        |
| (b) Satisfaction of Claim.....                              | §49        |
| (c) Other Means .....                                       | §50        |
| <b>III. Equitable Liens .....</b>                           | <b>§51</b> |
| 1. Defined .....  | §51        |
| 2. Creation .....   | §52        |
| 3. Rights and Remedies .....                                | §54        |
| 4. Loss of Lien .....                                       | §58        |
| <b>IV. Liens Distinguished from Other Transactions.....</b> | <b>§59</b> |
| 1. Liens and Pledges .....                                  | §59        |
| 2. Liens and Chattel Mortgages.....                         | §61        |
| 3. Liens and Lien Notes.....                                | §62        |
| 4. Liens and Security Interests .....                       | §65        |
| <b>V. Statutory Liens .....</b>                             | <b>§69</b> |
| 1. In General.....  | §69        |
| 2. Garagemen’s Liens .....                                  | §71        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | §71        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                  | §78        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §83        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                       | §85        |
| <b>VI. Concurrent Liens .....</b>                           | <b>§96</b> |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Agriculture; Animals; Bailment; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Builders’ Liens; Business Corporations; Carriers; Companies’ Creditors Arrangement Act; Condominiums; Crown; Family Law — General; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Hotels; Mines and Minerals; Mortgages; Municipal and School Taxation; Oil and Gas; Personal Property; Pledges; Sale Of Goods; Sale Of Land; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Securities and Stock Exchanges; Sheriffs and Bailiffs; Shipping; Timber; Workers’ Compensation.



# LIMITATION OF ACTIONS

prepared by  
Daphne A. Dukelow, B.Sc., LL.B., LL.M.  
*of the British Columbia Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....   | \$1  |
| 1. Scope of Title.....   | \$1  |
| 2. Purpose of Limitations.....   | \$2  |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>II. What Limitation Period Applies</b> .....                        | \$4  |
| 1. General .....   | \$4  |
| 2. Limitation Statutes .....   | \$5  |
| 3. Specific Limitation Periods .....                                   | \$6  |
| 4. Conflicts Between Provincial and Federal Limitation<br>Periods..... | \$8  |
| 5. Equitable Limitations .....   | \$9  |
| (a) General .....  | \$9  |
| (b) Laches and Acquiescence .....                                      | \$10 |
| (c) Analogy to Statute.....  | \$16 |
| 6. Ultimate Limitation Periods .....                                   | \$17 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>III. General Rules</b> .....  | \$23 |
| 1. Interpretation .....  | \$23 |
| 2. Pleading .....  | \$27 |
| 3. Burden of Proof .....   | \$29 |
| 4. Computation of Time.....  | \$31 |
| 5. Multiple Limitation Periods.....                                    | \$37 |
| 6. Conflicting Limitation Periods .....                                | \$40 |

## LIMITATION OF ACTIONS

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 7. Amendment of Legislation .....   | §41        |
| 8. Constitutional Issues .....  | §49        |
| 9. Vicarious Liability .....  | §59        |
| 10. Notice of Claim.....  | §60        |
| 11. Notices and Conditions Precedent.....   | §61        |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>IV. Commencement of the Limitation Period .....</b>                                | <b>§62</b> |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>V. Interruption of the Limitation Period .....</b>                                 | <b>§73</b> |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>VI. Termination of the Limitation Period .....</b>                                 | <b>§74</b> |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>VII. Extending, Suspending, Postponing or Avoiding the Limitation Period .....</b> | <b>§75</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §75        |
| 2. Extension of Period.....   | §76        |
| 3. Suspension .....   | §92        |
| (a) Persons Under Legal Disability .....  | §92        |
| (i) Commencement of Period.....   | §92        |
| (ii) Interruption of Limitation Period by Onset of Disability .....                   | §103       |
| (b) During Bankruptcy and Insolvency .....  | §104       |
| 4. Postponement .....   | §105       |
| 5. Interruption of Period .....   | §109       |
| 6. Absentees.....   | §110       |
| 7. Joint Sureties and Joint Debtors.....  | §112       |
| 8. Fraud and Concealment .....  | §113       |
| (a) Fraud or Misleading Conduct .....   | §113       |
| (b) Concealment .....   | §114       |
| (c) Generally .....   | §115       |
| 9. Agreement .....  | §121       |
| 10. Acknowledgment and Part Payment .....   | §123       |
| (a) General .....   | §123       |
| (b) Title and Mortgages .....   | §124       |
| (c) Sale and Lease of Goods .....   | §127       |
| (d) Debts and Claims .....  | §128       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(e) Interest.....§140  
(f) Security Agreements .....§141  
(g) Trustees.....§142  
(h) During Bankruptcy and Insolvency .....§143  
11. Negotiations for Settlement or Attempted Resolution .....§144  
12. Estoppel and Waiver.....§147

**VIII. Amendment of Claim Following Expiration of Limitation Period** .....§150  
1. Where New Cause is Set Up .....§150  
2. Adding or Changing Parties After Expiration .....§154

**IX. Tort Actions**.....§161  
1. Length of Period .....§161  
2. Commencement of Period — the Discoverability Rule .....§167  
    (a) General .....§167  
    (b) Alberta .....§172  
        (i) General.....§172  
        (ii) Basic Two-Year Period.....§174  
        (iii) Ultimate Ten-Year Period.....§176  
    (c) British Columbia.....§177  
    (d) Manitoba .....§179  
    (e) Ontario .....§182  
    (f) Saskatchewan .....§183  
3. Termination of Limitation Period .....§184  
4. Actions Between Joint Tortfeasors .....§185  
5. Slander and Libel.....§187  
6. Actions for Compensation for Death or Injury of Family Members .....§188  
7. Motor Vehicles.....§195  
    (a) Damages Occasioned by Motor Vehicle .....§195  
    (b) Owner’s Liability .....§197  
8. Medical .....§198  
    (a) Practitioners .....§198  
    (b) Health Profession Corporation.....§204  
    (c) Hospitals.....§205

## LIMITATION OF ACTIONS

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 9. Torts Based on Conduct of a Sexual Nature or by Related Persons .....     | \$207        |
| 10. Barristers and Solicitors.....   | \$212        |
| <b>X. Contract Actions.....</b>  | <b>\$216</b> |
| 1. Length of Period .....  | \$216        |
| (a) Simple Contracts.....  | \$216        |
| (b) Insurance Policies.....  | \$218        |
| (c) Interest on Debt .....   | \$219        |
| 2. Commencement of Period .....  | \$220        |
| (a) Generally .....  | \$220        |
| (b) Contingency or Condition Precedent to Repayment.....                     | \$222        |
| (c) Promissory Notes.....  | \$223        |
| (d) Insurance Policies.....  | \$226        |
| 3. Termination of Limitation Period .....                                    | \$227        |
| <b>XI. Property .....</b>  | <b>\$228</b> |
| 1. Real Property.....  | \$228        |
| (a) Recovery of Land .....   | \$228        |
| (i) Generally.....   | \$228        |
| (ii) When Right Accrues.....   | \$231        |
| (A) General.....   | \$231        |
| (B) Dispossession or Discontinuance of Possession or Receipt of Profits..... | \$232        |
| (C) Succession on Death of Predecessor .....                                 | \$233        |
| (D) Alienation.....  | \$234        |
| (E) Forfeiture or Breach of Condition .....                                  | \$235        |
| (F) Future Estates .....   | \$236        |
| (G) Landlord and Tenant .....  | \$240        |
| (H) Fraud .....  | \$242        |
| (I) Acknowledgment of Title .....  | \$243        |
| (b) Adverse Possession .....   | \$244        |
| (i) Nature of Possession .....   | \$244        |
| (ii) Actual Possession: Sufficiency of Acts .....                            | \$245        |
| (iii) Limited Estates.....   | \$248        |
| (iv) Acknowledgment.....   | \$251        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (v) Tax Deed .....  | §252        |
| (vi) Lands Exempt.....  | §253        |
| (vii) Bona Fide Purchaser from Registered Owner .....                                   | §254        |
| (c) Easements and Profits .....   | §255        |
| (d) Actions Relating to Mortgages and Charges on Land<br>.....                          | §257        |
| (i) General.....  | §257        |
| (ii) When Mortgage Action is Action for Recovery<br>of Land.....                        | §267        |
| (iii) When Right Accrues.....   | §270        |
| (e) Agreement for Sale of Land .....  | §278        |
| (f) Compensation for Expropriation .....  | §280        |
| (g) Landlord and Tenant .....   | §281        |
| (i) Recovery of Possession of Land .....  | §281        |
| (ii) Recovery of Rent or Damages in Respect of<br>Arrears of Rent.....                  | §282        |
| 2. Personal Property .....  | §285        |
| (a) Sale and Lease of Goods .....   | §285        |
| (b) Mortgages of Personal Property .....  | §286        |
| (c) Claim Against Purchaser for Value .....   | §289        |
| <b>XII. Trusts and Estates.....</b>   | <b>§290</b> |
| 1. Survival of Actions .....  | §290        |
| 2. Actions Against Estate.....  | §295        |
| 3. Actions Against Trustees.....  | §296        |
| (a) Generally .....   | §296        |
| (b) Fraud, Fraudulent Breach of Trust and Conversion<br>of Property by the Trustee..... | §300        |
| 4. Actions of Account.....  | §301        |
| <b>XIII. Other Proceedings .....</b>  | <b>§302</b> |
| 1. General Provisions .....   | §302        |
| 2. Family Law Proceedings .....   | §303        |
| 3. Actions on Judgments.....  | §306        |
| (a) Domestic Judgments.....   | §306        |
| (b) Foreign Judgments .....   | §310        |

## LIMITATION OF ACTIONS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 4. Actions for Penalty or Damages Under Statute .....                                   | §313        |
| 5. Actions for Indemnity and Contribution.....  | §314        |
| 6. Actions for Recovery of Money .....  | §317        |
| 7. Actions of Account.....  | §318        |
| 8. Actions Grounded on Accident, Mistake or Other Equita-<br>ble Ground of Relief ..... | §319        |
| 9. Actions by Aboriginal Persons.....   | §321        |
| 10. Arbitrations.....   | §322        |
| 11. Environmental Claims.....   | §323        |
| <b>XIV. Crown and Public Authorities .....</b>  | <b>§324</b> |
| 1. Crown .....  | §324        |
| (a) Generally .....   | §324        |
| (b) Federal Crown .....   | §328        |
| (c) Defence Available .....   | §329        |
| (d) Notice Provisions .....   | §331        |
| (e) Subrogated Claim .....  | §332        |
| 2. Public Authorities and Public Officers .....   | §333        |
| (a) Persons Protected.....  | §333        |
| 3. Municipalities .....   | §336        |
| (a) Generally .....   | §336        |
| (b) Notice Provisions .....   | §337        |
| (c) Reasonable Excuse .....   | §340        |
| <b>XV. Proceedings with No Limitation Period .....</b>                                  | <b>§343</b> |

### Index

*Related titles:* Actions; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Children; Crown; Estoppel; Executors and Administrators; Hospitals; Hospitals and Health Care; Insurance; Medicine; Mental Incapacity; Motor Vehicles; Municipal Corporations — By-laws, Permits and Legal Proceedings; Negligence; Parties; Pleadings; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Torts; Trespass; Trusts

# LIQUOR CONTROL

prepared by  
Debra MacGregor, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Legislative Scheme</b> .....  | §1  |
| 1. Federal Legislation.....   | §1  |
| (a) Importation of Intoxicating Liquors Act .....                                     | §1  |
| (b) Excise Act.....   | §2  |
| 2. Provincial Legislation .....   | §3  |
| 3. Constitutional Jurisdiction .....  | §5  |
| (a) Intoxicating Liquors .....  | §5  |
| (i) Powers of Parliament .....  | §5  |
| (ii) Powers of Provinces to Restrict and Prohibit.....                                | §6  |
| (iii) Powers of Provinces to License Brewers, etc.,<br>Holding Federal Licences ..... | §12 |
| <b>II. Federal Control and Offences</b> .....   | §13 |
| 1. Liquor Transportation Offences .....   | §13 |
| 2. Importation and Inter-Provincial Shipments .....                                   | §14 |
| 3. Railway Employees.....   | §17 |
| 4. Native People .....  | §18 |
| 5. Operation of a Still .....   | §20 |
| 6. Other Offences .....   | §22 |
| <b>III. Provincial Control and Offences</b> .....                                     | §25 |
| 1. General .....  | §25 |
| 2. Intoxicating Liquor Defined .....  | §26 |

LIQUOR CONTROL

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Liquor Plebiscites.....                              | §28         |
| 4. Medical or Religious Purposes.....                   | §30         |
| 5. Minors.....  | §32         |
| 6. Illegal Possession .....                             | §34         |
| 7. Illegal Consumption.....                             | §41         |
| 8. Illegal Sale and Unauthorized Keeping for Sale ..... | §43         |
| 9. Illegal Purchase .....                               | §47         |
| 10. Duties of Licensees.....                            | §49         |
| 11. Drunkenness in Public Places .....                  | §57         |
| 12. Soliciting, Canvassing and Advertising .....        | §60         |
| <b>IV. Administration .....</b>                         | <b>§61</b>  |
| 1. General .....  | §61         |
| 2. Exercise of Discretion.....                          | §64         |
| 3. Hearings.....  | §66         |
| 4. Reviews and Appeals.....                             | §68         |
| <b>V. Search, Seizure and Forfeiture.....</b>           | <b>§71</b>  |
| 1. Search .....   | §71         |
| (a) General .....                                       | §71         |
| (b) Search with Warrant.....                            | §72         |
| (c) Search Without Warrant.....                         | §75         |
| 2. Seizure .....  | §79         |
| 3. Forfeiture .....                                     | §85         |
| (a) General .....                                       | §85         |
| (b) Forfeiture of Vehicle.....                          | §88         |
| (c) Relief from Forfeiture .....                        | §91         |
| <b>VI. Evidence .....</b>                               | <b>§97</b>  |
| 1. General .....  | §97         |
| 2. Mens Rea.....  | §98         |
| 3. Onus of Proof.....                                   | §101        |
| 4. Certificate of Analyst.....                          | §104        |
| <b>VII. Procedure .....</b>                             | <b>§105</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §105        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 2. Time Limit for Prosecutions .....                             | \$106        |
| 3. Parties .....   | \$109        |
| 4. Penalties.....  | \$112        |
| <b>VIII. Civil Liability .....</b>                               | <b>\$115</b> |
| 1. Rights and Liabilities of Licensees.....                      | \$115        |
| 2. Illegality of Consideration for Prohibited Transactions ..... | \$121        |
| 3. Return of Seized Goods.....                                   | \$122        |
| <b>IX. Arbitrary Detention.....</b>                              | <b>\$125</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Courts; Criminal Law — Offences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Customs and Excise; Evidence; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Gaming; Hotels; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada

# MALICIOUS PROSECUTION AND FALSE IMPRISONMENT

prepared by  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Distinctions Between Causes of Action</b> .....      | §1  |
| <b>II. Malicious Prosecution</b> .....                     | §7  |
| 1. Introduction .....                                      | §7  |
| (a) Nature of Action .....                                 | §7  |
| (b) Actionable Proceedings .....                           | §9  |
| (i) General .....  | §9  |
| (ii) Bankruptcy Proceedings .....                          | §15 |
| (iii) Professional Disciplinary Proceedings .....          | §18 |
| 2. Public Policy, Privileges and Immunities .....          | §19 |
| (a) General .....  | §19 |
| (b) Crown Immunity .....                                   | §22 |
| (c) Witness Immunity .....                                 | §23 |
| (d) Police Informer Privilege .....                        | §25 |
| (e) Professional Disciplinary Bodies .....                 | §27 |
| 3. Elements of Actionable Claim .....                      | §28 |
| 4. Proceedings Instituted or Continued by Defendant .....  | §29 |
| 5. Termination of Proceedings in Favour of Plaintiff ..... | §34 |
| (a) Criminal Proceedings .....                             | §34 |
| (b) Civil Proceedings .....                                | §45 |
| (c) Exceptions .....                                       | §47 |
| 6. Want of Reasonable and Probable Cause .....             | §48 |
| (a) General .....  | §48 |

MALICIOUS PROSECUTION AND  
FALSE IMPRISONMENT

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (b) Onus of Proof . . . . .   | §54  |
| (c) Issue for Judge . . . . .   | §56  |
| (d) Honest and Reasonable Belief . . . . .                            | §57  |
| (e) Inquiries Regarding Plaintiff . . . . .                           | §63  |
| (f) Result of Original Proceedings . . . . .                          | §67  |
| (g) Advice of Counsel . . . . .                                       | §71  |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §71  |
| (ii) Necessity of Full Disclosure . . . . .                           | §75  |
| (h) Advice of Justice . . . . .                                       | §79  |
| (i) Advice of Crown Attorney . . . . .                                | §81  |
| (j) Advice of Police Officer . . . . .                                | §83  |
| (k) Other Evidence . . . . .  | §87  |
| 7. Malice . . . . .   | §93  |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §93  |
| (b) Onus of Proof . . . . .   | §104 |
| (c) Issue for Jury . . . . .  | §106 |
| (d) Bad Faith or Lack of Honest Belief in Plaintiff's Guilt . . . . . | §107 |
| (e) Absence of Reasonable and Probable Cause . . . . .                | §110 |
| (f) Other Evidence . . . . .  | §114 |
| 8. Damages . . . . .  | §118 |
| (a) General Damages . . . . .   | §118 |
| (b) Special Damages . . . . .   | §120 |
| (c) Aggravated, Punitive or Exemplary Damages . . . . .               | §122 |
| (d) Nominal Damages . . . . .   | §126 |
| (e) Excessive or Insufficient Award . . . . .                         | §127 |
| 9. Vicarious Liability . . . . .                                      | §129 |
| 10. Practice and Procedure . . . . .                                  | §135 |
| (a) Jurisdiction of Courts . . . . .                                  | §135 |
| (b) Pleadings . . . . .   | §137 |
| (c) Burden of Proof . . . . .   | §142 |
| (d) Proving Record in Criminal Case . . . . .                         | §144 |
| (e) Discretion as to Costs . . . . .                                  | §146 |
| 11. Jury Trials . . . . .   | §149 |
| (a) Demand or Direction for Jury Trial . . . . .                      | §149 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Respective Functions of Judge and Jury . . . . .          | §150        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §150        |
| (ii) Reasonable and Probable Cause . . . . .                  | §153        |
| (iii) Malice . . . . .  | §159        |
| (c) Instructions to Jury . . . . .                            | §161        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §161        |
| (ii) Reasonable and Probable Cause . . . . .                  | §162        |
| (iii) Malice . . . . .  | §166        |
| (iv) Damages . . . . .  | §168        |
| (d) Setting Aside Verdict on Appeal . . . . .                 | §169        |
| (e) Ordering New Trial . . . . .                              | §171        |
| (i) Misdirection . . . . .                                    | §171        |
| (ii) Other Grounds . . . . .                                  | §174        |
| 12. Limitation of Actions . . . . .                           | §175        |
| 13. Related Actions . . . . .                                 | §177        |
| (a) Malicious Arrest for Debt . . . . .                       | §177        |
| (b) Malicious Issue and Execution of Search Warrant . . . . . | §185        |
| (c) Malicious Abuse Of Process . . . . .                      | §189        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §189        |
| (ii) Elements of Cause of Action . . . . .                    | §193        |
| A. General . . . . .  | §193        |
| B. Improper Purpose . . . . .                                 | §197        |
| C. Overt Conduct . . . . .                                    | §202        |
| D. Damages . . . . .  | §203        |
| (iii) Defences . . . . .                                      | §205        |
| (d) Vexatious Use Of Process . . . . .                        | §207        |
| <b>III. False Imprisonment and False Arrest . . . . .</b>     | <b>§208</b> |
| 1. Public Policy . . . . .                                    | §208        |
| 2. False Imprisonment . . . . .                               | §211        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §211        |
| (b) Deprivation of Liberty . . . . .                          | §216        |
| (c) Defendant Causing Deprivation of Liberty . . . . .        | §224        |
| 3. False Arrest . . . . .                                     | §231        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §231        |
| (b) Arrest by Peace Officer . . . . .                         | §234        |

MALICIOUS PROSECUTION AND  
FALSE IMPRISONMENT

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (i) With Warrant . . . . .                           | §234 |
| (ii) Without Warrant . . . . .                       | §240 |
| (c) Arrest by Private Citizen . . . . .              | §246 |
| (d) Obligations Upon Arrest . . . . .                | §251 |
| (i) Charter Rights . . . . .                         | §251 |
| (ii) Warrant or Reasons for Arrest . . . . .         | §252 |
| (iii) Delivery to Peace Officer . . . . .            | §256 |
| (iv) Release . . . . .                               | §257 |
| (e) Wrongful Arrest in Civil Actions . . . . .       | §261 |
| 4. Vicarious Liability . . . . .                     | §263 |
| (a) Business Corporations . . . . .                  | §263 |
| (b) Municipal Corporations . . . . .                 | §265 |
| 5. Defences . . . . .                                | §268 |
| (a) Reasonable and Probable Cause . . . . .          | §268 |
| (i) Onus of Proof . . . . .                          | §268 |
| (ii) Proof . . . . .                                 | §271 |
| (b) Justification . . . . .                          | §274 |
| 6. Protection of Defendants from Liability . . . . . | §280 |
| (a) Judicial Officials . . . . .                     | §280 |
| (b) Police Officers . . . . .                        | §290 |
| (c) Mental Health Legislation . . . . .              | §298 |
| 7. Damages . . . . .                                 | §299 |
| (a) Introduction . . . . .                           | §299 |
| (b) General Damages . . . . .                        | §300 |
| (c) Aggravated Damages . . . . .                     | §306 |
| (d) Punitive Damages . . . . .                       | §307 |
| (e) Special Damages . . . . .                        | §308 |
| 8. Practice . . . . .                                | §309 |
| (a) Roles of Judge and Jury . . . . .                | §309 |
| (b) Onus of Proof . . . . .                          | §312 |
| (c) Jurisdiction of Court . . . . .                  | §315 |
| (d) Costs . . . . .                                  | §317 |
| (e) Limitation Periods . . . . .                     | §318 |
| 9. Related Criminal Offences . . . . .               | §321 |

**Index**

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

*Related titles:* Actions; Administrative Law; Agency; Bankruptcy And Insolvency; Business Corporations; Courts; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Offences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Damages; Defamation; Evidence; Judgments And Orders; Mental Incapacity; Municipal Corporations; Pleadings; Police; Prisons; Public Authorities And Public Officers; Torts; Trespass

# MEDICINE

prepared by  
Cheryl Belkin-Epstein, B.A., LL.B.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Regulation of the Profession</b> ..... | § 1  |
| 1. Governing Bodies .....                    | § 1  |
| (a) Statutory Authority .....                | § 1  |
| (b) Nature of Governing Body .....           | § 11 |
| 2. Right To Practice .....                   | § 12 |
| (a) Registration and Licensing .....         | § 12 |
| (i) Registration Requirements .....          | § 12 |
| (ii) Appeals .....                           | § 24 |
| (b) Use of Titles .....                      | § 29 |
| (c) Practicing Medicine .....                | § 30 |
| (d) Unlawful Practice .....                  | § 38 |
| (e) Emergency Medical Treatment .....        | § 43 |
| 3. Discipline .....                          | § 45 |
| (a) Statutory Authority .....                | § 45 |
| (b) Nature of Disciplinary Body .....        | § 46 |
| (i) Procedure .....                          | § 46 |
| (ii) Duties and Powers .....                 | § 50 |
| (iii) Appeals .....                          | § 68 |
| (c) Fitness to Practice .....                | § 76 |
| (d) Misconduct .....                         | § 82 |
| (e) Criminal Offences .....                  | § 84 |
| 4. Professional Corporations .....           | § 89 |
| (a) Right to Practice .....                  | § 89 |
| (b) Corporate Requirements .....             | § 91 |

MEDICINE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Application of the Relevant Statute.....        | §95         |
| (d) Relationship to Patients.....                   | §99         |
| (e) Liability.....                                  | §103        |
| (f) Loss of Right to Practice as a Corporation..... | §106        |
| <b>II. The Professional Relationship.....</b>       | <b>§110</b> |
| 1. Nature of the Relationship.....                  | §110        |
| 2. Duties of the Doctor.....                        | §114        |
| (a) Duty to Act.....                                | §114        |
| (b) Duty of Confidentiality.....                    | §116        |
| 3. Consent.....                                     | §117        |
| (a) General.....                                    | §117        |
| (b) Express or Implied.....                         | §121        |
| (c) Requirements for Valid Consent.....             | §123        |
| (d) Informed Consent.....                           | §125        |
| (e) Emergencies.....                                | §133        |
| 4. Medical Records.....                             | §134        |
| 5. Compensation.....                                | §138        |
| (a) General.....                                    | §138        |
| (b) Health Insurance Plans.....                     | §141        |
| <b>III. Medical Malpractice.....</b>                | <b>§146</b> |
| 1. Criminal Liability.....                          | §146        |
| (a) General.....                                    | §146        |
| (b) Defences.....                                   | §151        |
| 2. Civil Liability.....                             | §152        |
| (a) Negligence.....                                 | §152        |
| (i) General.....                                    | §152        |
| (ii) Duty of Care.....                              | §157        |
| (iii) Standard of Care.....                         | §161        |
| A. General.....                                     | §161        |
| B. General Practitioners.....                       | §168        |
| C. Specialists.....                                 | §170        |
| D. Reliance on Others.....                          | §171        |
| E. Prescribing and Administering Drugs.....         | §173        |
| F. Operations.....                                  | §176        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (iv) Res Ipsa Loquitur.....                   | §177 |
| (b) Battery and Assault.....                  | §178 |
| (i) General.....                              | §178 |
| (ii) Burden of Proof.....                     | §180 |
| (c) Defences.....                             | §181 |
| (i) Approved Practice.....                    | §181 |
| (ii) Error of Judgment.....                   | §184 |
| (iii) Contributory Negligence of Patient..... | §185 |
| (iv) Expiry of Limitation Period.....         | §187 |
| (d) Mode of Trial.....                        | §192 |
| 3. Liability for Acts of Others.....          | §194 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Damages; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Hospitals; Limitation of Actions; Negligence; Partnership; Professions and Occupations; Public Health and Welfare; Torts; Trespass.

# MENTAL INCAPACITY

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

## **I. Admission of Mentally Disordered to Designated Mental**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>Health Facilities</b> .....           | \$1  |
| 1. Definition of “Mental Disorder” ..... | \$1  |
| 2. Voluntary Admission .....             | \$6  |
| (a) Alberta.....                         | \$6  |
| (b) British Columbia .....               | \$8  |
| (c) Manitoba .....                       | \$12 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                    | \$15 |
| 3. Involuntary Admission.....            | \$17 |
| (a) Alberta.....                         | \$17 |
| (i) Designated Facilities .....          | \$17 |
| (ii) Admission for Examination .....     | \$18 |
| (iii) Formal Admission.....              | \$31 |
| (iv) Community Treatment Orders .....    | \$37 |
| (b) British Columbia .....               | \$47 |
| (i) Designated Facilities .....          | \$47 |
| (ii) Formal Admission .....              | \$48 |
| (iii) Emergency Admission .....          | \$58 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                       | \$62 |
| (i) Designated Facilities .....          | \$62 |
| (ii) Formal Admission.....               | \$63 |
| (iii) Apprehension for Examination.....  | \$74 |

## MENTAL INCAPACITY

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iv) Criminal Code Admission.....                              | §78         |
| (v) Correctional Facility Transfer.....                        | §80         |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | §81         |
| (i) Designated Facilities.....                                 | §81         |
| (ii) Apprehension and Admission for Examination.....           | §82         |
| (iii) Community Treatment Orders.....                          | §95         |
| 4. Criminal Justice Provisions.....                            | §97         |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>II. Rights of Patients in Mental Health Facilities.....</b> | <b>§113</b> |
| 1. Right to be Informed.....                                   | §113        |
| (a) Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms.....               | §113        |
| (b) Alberta.....   | §115        |
| (c) British Columbia.....                                      | §119        |
| (d) Manitoba.....  | §122        |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....  | §126        |
| 2. Review.....   | §135        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §135        |
| (b) British Columbia.....                                      | §146        |
| (c) Manitoba.....  | §158        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | §165        |
| 3. Habeas Corpus.....  | §173        |
| 4. Discharge.....  | §177        |
| (a) General.....   | §177        |
| (b) Alberta.....   | §179        |
| (c) British Columbia.....                                      | §183        |
| (d) Manitoba.....  | §188        |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....  | §192        |
| 5. Action for False Imprisonment.....                          | §193        |
| (a) Statutory Protection.....                                  | §193        |
| (b) Limitation of Actions.....                                 | §196        |
| 6. Consent to Medical Treatment.....                           | §203        |
| (a) Involuntary Patients.....                                  | §203        |
| (i) Alberta.....   | §203        |
| (ii) British Columbia.....                                     | §212        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....  | §213        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | \$224        |
| (v) Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms.....                          | \$225        |
| (b) Voluntary Patients.....   | \$226        |
| 7. Communications.....  | \$232        |
| (a) Federal Legislation.....  | \$232        |
| (b) Provincial Legislation.....   | \$233        |
| 8. Personal Security.....   | \$235        |
| 9. Confidentiality and Health Records.....                                | \$238        |
| (a) Confidentiality.....  | \$238        |
| (i) General.....  | \$238        |
| (ii) Alberta.....   | \$239        |
| (iii) British Columbia.....   | \$245        |
| (iv) Manitoba.....  | \$247        |
| (v) Saskatchewan.....   | \$248        |
| (b) Patients' Access to Records.....                                      | \$249        |
| (i) Common Law.....   | \$249        |
| (ii) Alberta.....   | \$250        |
| (iii) British Columbia.....   | \$258        |
| (iv) Manitoba.....  | \$265        |
| (v) Saskatchewan.....   | \$268        |
| 10. Hospital Charges.....   | \$269        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | \$269        |
| (b) British Columbia.....   | \$272        |
| (c) Manitoba.....   | \$273        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | \$274        |
| <b>III. Civil Rights and Liabilities of the Mentally Incompetent.....</b> | <b>\$275</b> |
| 1. Contracts.....   | \$275        |
| (a) General.....  | \$275        |
| (b) Necessaries.....  | \$288        |
| (c) Agency.....   | \$290        |
| (d) Power of Attorney.....  | \$292        |
| 2. Property.....  | \$293        |
| (a) Gifts Inter Vivos.....  | \$293        |
| (b) Dower.....  | \$296        |

## MENTAL INCAPACITY

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Mines and Minerals .....   | §301        |
| 3. Succession .....  | §302        |
| (a) Testamentary Capacity .....  | §302        |
| (i) General.....   | §302        |
| (ii) Evidence of Incapacity.....   | §314        |
| (iii) Solicitor's Duty .....   | §323        |
| (b) Life Insurance Beneficiaries .....   | §325        |
| (c) Testamentary Witnesses .....   | §326        |
| (d) Ademption by Act of Committee .....  | §328        |
| (e) Dependants Relief Legislation .....  | §329        |
| 4. Tort .....  | §336        |
| (a) Intentional Torts .....  | §336        |
| (b) Negligence .....   | §339        |
| 5. Domestic Relations .....  | §341        |
| (a) Marriage .....   | §341        |
| (i) Capacity to Marry .....  | §341        |
| (ii) Restrictions on Solemnizing Marriages .....                                       | §347        |
| (iii) Breach of Promise to Marry.....  | §350        |
| (b) Divorce.....   | §352        |
| (i) Adultery .....   | §352        |
| (ii) Cruelty .....   | §353        |
| (iii) Separation .....   | §356        |
| 6. Elections .....   | §359        |
| (a) General .....  | §359        |
| (b) Federal Elections .....  | §361        |
| (c) Provincial Elections .....   | §362        |
| 7. Jury Service.....   | §367        |
| 8. Immigration .....   | §369        |
| 9. Discrimination .....  | §375        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IV. Guardianship of the Person and Estate of the Mentally<br/>Incompetent .....</b> | <b>§378</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §378        |
| 2. Alberta .....   | §379        |
| (a) Trusteeship and Guardianship by Court Order .....                                  | §379        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (i) Application for Trusteeship or Guardianship Order .....                 | \$379 |
| (ii) Rights and Duties of Trustees .....                                    | \$397 |
| (iii) Rights and Duties of Guardians .....                                  | \$408 |
| (iv) Temporary Protection Orders .....                                      | \$417 |
| (v) Appeal and Review of Trusteeships and Guardianships .....               | \$423 |
| (vi) Discharge of Trusteeships and Guardianships .....                      | \$429 |
| (b) Supported Decision-Making.....  | \$431 |
| (c) Co-Decision-Making.....   | \$436 |
| (d) Rights and Duties of the Public Trustee.....                            | \$444 |
| 3. British Columbia.....  | \$445 |
| (a) Appointment of Committees .....   | \$445 |
| (b) Rights and Duties of Committees.....                                    | \$465 |
| (c) Termination of Committeeship and Discharge of Committees .....          | \$481 |
| 4. Manitoba.....  | \$488 |
| (a) General .....   | \$488 |
| (b) Committeeship of Mentally Incapacitated Persons and their Estates ..... | \$489 |
| (i) Committeeship by Certificate of Incompetence.....                       | \$489 |
| (ii) Committeeship by Certificate of Incapacity .....                       | \$495 |
| (iii) Committeeship by Court Appointment .....                              | \$505 |
| A. Appointment of Committees.....   | \$505 |
| B. Powers of Committees of Property .....                                   | \$522 |
| C. Duties of Committees of Property.....                                    | \$524 |
| D. Powers and Duties of Committees of Both Property and Personal Care ..... | \$537 |
| E. General Provisions re Committees .....                                   | \$543 |
| F. Variation, Replacement and Termination of Committeeship .....            | \$545 |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....   | \$552 |
| (a) General .....   | \$552 |
| (b) Personal Guardianship.....  | \$555 |
| (i) Types of Personal Guardians.....  | \$555 |
| (ii) Appointment .....  | \$560 |
| (iii) Duties.....   | \$571 |

MENTAL INCAPACITY

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (c) Property Guardianship.....  | \$576        |
| (i) Types of Property Guardians.....                                      | \$576        |
| (ii) Property Decision-Makers by Court Order.....                         | \$579        |
| (iii) Testamentary Nomination and Confirmation.....                       | \$606        |
| (iv) Review and Discharge of Guardianship.....                            | \$609        |
| (v) Property Decision Maker by Certificate of<br>Incompetence .....       | \$614        |
| (vi) Termination of Appointment of Public Guard-<br>ian and Trustee ..... | \$618        |
| <b>V. Litigation Involving the Mentally Incompetent .....</b>             | <b>\$620</b> |
| 1. Authority to Commence or Defend Proceedings.....                       | \$620        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | \$620        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | \$627        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | \$641        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | \$649        |
| 2. Service .....  | \$663        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | \$663        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | \$665        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | \$666        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | \$669        |
| 3. Proceedings in Default.....  | \$672        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | \$672        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | \$673        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | \$675        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | \$677        |
| 4. Limitation Periods.....  | \$678        |
| 5. Examination For Discovery.....   | \$679        |
| (a) Alberta and Saskatchewan .....  | \$679        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | \$680        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | \$681        |
| 6. Competency of Witness.....   | \$682        |
| 7. Restrictions on Settlement .....                                       | \$686        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | \$686        |
| (b) British Columbia .....  | \$687        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | \$690        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(d) Saskatchewan.....\$692

8. Payment into Court of Money Obtained on Behalf of  
Mentally Incompetent Persons.....\$694

**VI. Enduring Powers of Attorney, Personal and Health Care**

**Directives and Other Aids**.....\$695

1. Powers of Attorney.....\$695

2. Enduring Powers of Attorney.....\$696

    (a) General.....\$696

    (b) Alberta.....\$697

    (c) British Columbia.....\$704

    (d) Manitoba.....\$710

    (e) Saskatchewan.....\$730

3. Personal and Health Care Directives.....\$749

    (a) Alberta.....\$749

        (i) General.....\$749

        (ii) Requirements for Validity.....\$751

        (iii) Effectiveness.....\$753

        (iv) Agents' Authority and Duties.....\$755

        (v) Remuneration.....\$763

        (vi) Revocation.....\$764

    (b) British Columbia.....\$765

        (i) General.....\$765

        (ii) Formalities.....\$771

        (iii) Effect of Representation Agreement.....\$774

        (iv) Appointment of Representatives.....\$775

        (v) Duties and Responsibilities of Representatives.....\$777

        (vi) Monitors.....\$784

        (vii) Powers and Duties of Monitors.....\$787

        (viii) Removal and Replacement of Monitors.....\$788

        (ix) Amendment and Termination of Representation  
            Agreements.....\$790

        (x) Objections and Investigations.....\$793

    (c) Manitoba.....\$796

        (i) General.....\$796

        (ii) Capacity.....\$798



## MENTAL INCAPACITY

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (iii) Requirements for Valid Directive .....                                | §800 |
| (iv) Effectiveness.....   | §802 |
| (v) Proxies .....   | §804 |
| (vi) Revocation .....   | §815 |
| (vii) Existing Rights and Presumptions.....                                 | §816 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | §818 |
| (i) General.....  | §818 |
| (ii) Capacity .....   | §819 |
| (iii) Requirements for Valid Directive .....                                | §820 |
| (iv) Effectiveness.....   | §822 |
| (v) Health Care Decisions by Proxies, Personal<br>Guardians and Others..... | §826 |
| (vi) Proxies .....  | §828 |
| (vii) Nearest Relative .....  | §835 |
| (viii) Proxies, Nearest Relatives and Personal<br>Guardians .....           | §839 |
| (ix) Revocation .....   | §841 |
| (x) Entitlements .....  | §842 |
| 4. Non Financial Personal Assistance .....                                  | §843 |
| (a) General .....   | §843 |
| (b) Alberta .....   | §844 |
| (c) British Columbia.....   | §845 |
| (d) Manitoba .....  | §852 |
| (i) General.....  | §852 |
| (ii) Support Services.....  | §856 |
| (iii) Protective Action.....  | §858 |
| (iv) Substitute Decision Making.....  | §865 |
| A. General.....   | §865 |
| B. Appointment of Substitute Decision Makers<br>for Personal Care.....      | §867 |
| 1. General .....  | §867 |
| 2. Eligibility .....  | §869 |
| 3. Terms of Appointment.....  | §871 |
| C. Powers of Substitute Decision Makers for<br>Personal Care.....           | §873 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| D. Duties of Substitute Decision Makers for<br>Personal Care.....  | §878 |
| E. Appointment of Substitute Decision Makers<br>for Property.....  | §882 |
| 1. General .....   | §882 |
| 2. Eligibility .....   | §884 |
| 3. Terms of Appointment.....   | §887 |
| 4. Effect on Enduring Power of Attorney....  | §891 |
| F. Powers of Substitute Decision Makers for<br>Property.....   | §892 |
| G. Duties of Substitute Decision Makers for<br>Property.....   | §896 |
| 1. General .....   | §896 |
| 2. Accounting .....  | §900 |
| 3. Standards of Care.....  | §906 |
| 4. Liability .....   | §908 |
| H. Appointment of Substitute Decision Makers<br>for Property for Persons Not Residing in<br>Manitoba ..... | §909 |
| I. General Provisions Regarding Substitute De-<br>cision Makers.....                                       | §910 |
| J. Emergency Appointments .....  | §913 |
| K. Emergency Suspensions and Temporary<br>Appointments.....  | §918 |
| L. Emergency Variations .....  | §922 |
| M. Variation, Termination and Replacement of<br>Appointments.....  | §924 |
| 1. General .....   | §924 |
| 2. Variation .....   | §926 |
| 3. Termination .....   | §928 |
| 4. Replacement .....   | §929 |
| N. Reviews and Renewals of Appointments.....   | §932 |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....  | §940 |
| 5. Financial Assistance.....   | §941 |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §941 |
| (b) British Columbia .....   | §948 |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §955 |

MENTAL INCAPACITY

---

(d) Saskatchewan.....§958

**Index**

*Related titles:* Absentees; Agency; Contracts; Constitutional Law; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Family Law — Divorce; Family Law — General; Gifts; Hospitals; Human Rights; Limitation of Actions; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Medicine; Negligence; Parties; Prerogative Remedies; Prisons; Public Health and Welfare; Restitution; Sentencing; Trusts; Wills; Youth Criminal Justice

# MILITARY LAW

prepared by  
Colonel Michel W. Drapeau, O.M.M, C.D., LL.L, LL.B.,  
*Law Society of Upper Canada and Adjunct Law Professor, Faculty  
of Law, University of Ottawa*  
and  
Ashlee Barber, B.A. (Hon.)

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Orders and Directives**

**Table of Queen's Regulations and Orders**

**Table of Treaties and Conventions**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Military Law</b> .....   | §1  |
| 1. Military Law Defined .....  | §1  |
| 2. Law of Armed Conflict Defined .....   | §3  |
| 3. Legislative Authority .....   | §5  |
| (a) General .....  | §5  |
| (b) National Defence Act.....  | §6  |
| (c) Other Defence Statutes.....  | §9  |
| (i) Canadian Forces Members and Veterans Re-estab-<br>lishment and Compensation Act..... | §9  |
| (ii) Canadian Forces Superannuation Act .....  | §10 |
| (iii) Defence Production Act.....  | §11 |
| (iv) Defence Services Pension Continuation Act.....                                      | §12 |
| (v) Visiting Forces Act .....  | §13 |
| (d) Queen's Regulations and Orders .....   | §15 |
| (e) Other Defence Regulations .....  | §19 |
| (i) Defence Services Pension Part V Regulations .....                                    | §19 |
| (ii) Defence Controlled Access Area Regulations .....                                    | §20 |

## MILITARY LAW

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (iii) Defence Services Pension Continuation Regulations .....                   | §21        |
| (iv) Defence Clothing and Equipment Loan Order .....                            | §22        |
| (v) Defence Floating Equipment Rental Order.....                                | §23        |
| (vi) Defence Maps and Charts Transfer Order.....                                | §24        |
| (vii) Defence Materiel and Equipment Loaned to Contractors Order .....          | §25        |
| (viii) Defence Materiel Loan Regulations.....                                   | §26        |
| (ix) Defence Materiel Loan or Transfer for Test and Evaluation Regulations..... | §27        |
| (x) Defence Survival Training Indemnity Order .....                             | §28        |
| (xi) Defence Production and Development Sharing Remission Order.....            | §29        |
| (xii) Defence Research Board Employees Regulations .....                        | §30        |
| (xiii) Visiting Forces Regulations.....   | §31        |
| (xiv) Visiting Forces Attachment and Serving Together Regulations .....         | §32        |
| 4. Status of Forces Agreement .....   | §33        |
| 5. Related Orders, Directives and Policies.....                                 | §35        |
| (a) Ministerial Organization Orders.....  | §35        |
| (b) Canadian Forces Organization Orders.....                                    | §36        |
| (c) Defence Administrative Orders and Directives.....                           | §37        |
| (d) Canadian Forces Administrative Orders.....                                  | §38        |
| <b>II. Organization .....</b>   | <b>§39</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §39        |
| 2. Unification of the Armed Forces .....  | §40        |
| 3. Department of National Defence.....  | §41        |
| (a) Canadian Forces Support Personnel Agency .....                              | §41        |
| (b) Communications Security Establishment .....                                 | §42        |
| (c) Canadian Forces Grievance Board .....                                       | §43        |
| (d) Canadian Forces Military Police Complaints Commission .....                 | §44        |
| (e) Canadian Forces Housing Agency.....   | §45        |
| (f) Defence Research and Development Canada .....                               | §46        |
| 4. Canadian Forces .....  | §47        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (a) General .....  | §47        |
| (b) Regular .....  | §48        |
| (c) Reserves .....                                       | §49        |
| (d) Special Force .....                                  | §51        |
| (e) Cadets .....   | §52        |
| 5. Organizational Structure of the Canadian Forces ..... | §53        |
| (a) National Defence Headquarters .....                  | §53        |
| (b) Canada Command .....                                 | §54        |
| (c) Canadian Expeditionary Force Command .....           | §55        |
| (d) Canadian Special Operations Forces Command .....     | §56        |
| (e) Standing Contingency Task Force .....                | §57        |
| (f) Canadian Operational Support Command .....           | §58        |
| (g) Military Personnel Command .....                     | §59        |
| 6. Exercise of Authority .....                           | §60        |
| <b>III. Key Appointments .....</b>                       | <b>§62</b> |
| 1. Governor General .....                                | §62        |
| 2. Minister of National Defence .....                    | §63        |
| 3. Deputy Minister .....                                 | §65        |
| 4. Chief of Defence Staff .....                          | §66        |
| 5. Vice Chief of Defence Staff .....                     | §67        |
| 6. DND/CF Legal Advisor .....                            | §68        |
| 7. Judge Advocate General .....                          | §69        |
| (a) General .....  | §69        |
| (b) Director of Military Prosecutions .....              | §70        |
| (c) Director of Defence Counsel Services .....           | §71        |
| 8. Office of the DND/CF Ombudsman .....                  | §73        |
| 9. Chief Military Judge .....                            | §77        |
| (a) General .....  | §77        |
| (b) Court Martial Administrator .....                    | §79        |
| <b>IV. Ranks .....</b>                                   | <b>§80</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §80        |
| 2. Substantive Rank .....                                | §90        |
| 3. Temporary Rank .....                                  | §91        |
| 4. Acting Rank .....                                     | §92        |

## MILITARY LAW

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 5. Honorary Rank .....                         | §93         |
| <b>V. Military Service .....</b>               | <b>§94</b>  |
| 1. Enrolment .....                             | §94         |
| 2. Officers and Non-Commissioned Members.....  | §97         |
| 3. Terms of Service.....                       | §100        |
| 4. Promotions.....                             | §103        |
| 5. Pay and Allowances.....                     | §104        |
| 6. Leave .....                                 | §110        |
| (a) General .....                              | §110        |
| (b) Long Leave.....                            | §111        |
| (c) Short Leave.....                           | §112        |
| (d) Withholding of and Recall from Leave ..... | §113        |
| 7. Releases .....                              | §114        |
| 8. Annuities.....                              | §118        |
| 9. Pensions.....                               | §122        |
| <b>VI. Human Rights and the Military .....</b> | <b>§140</b> |
| 1. Universality of Service .....               | §140        |
| 2. Disabilities .....                          | §141        |
| 3. Religion .....                              | §143        |
| 4. Common-Law Relationships.....               | §144        |
| 5. Sexual Orientation.....                     | §146        |
| 6. Other Human Rights Cases .....              | §147        |
| <b>VII. Military Administrative Law .....</b>  | <b>§151</b> |
| 1. Administrative Investigations .....         | §151        |
| 2. Exemption from Jury Service.....            | §156        |
| 3. Exemptions from Tolls .....                 | §157        |
| 4. Non-Public Fund .....                       | §158        |
| 5. Salvages.....                               | §159        |
| 6. Elections .....                             | §160        |
| 7. Wills .....                                 | §161        |
| 8. Service Estates .....                       | §162        |
| 9. Claims by or Against the Crown .....        | §163        |
| 10. Limitation of Civil Liabilities .....      | §169        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 11. Actions Barred .....                                  | §174        |
| 12. Political Activities.....                             | §175        |
| <b>VIII. Operational Law .....</b>                        | <b>§176</b> |
| 1. Crimes Against Humanity and War Crimes .....           | §176        |
| 2. Placing Forces on Active Service .....                 | §181        |
| 3. Manoeuvres .....                                       | §182        |
| 4. Aid to Civil Power.....                                | §183        |
| 5. Ships in Convoy.....                                   | §184        |
| <b>IX. Grievances.....</b>                                | <b>§185</b> |
| 1. Right to Grieve .....                                  | §185        |
| 2. Manner and Conditions for Submitting a Grievance ..... | §186        |
| 3. Initial Grievance Authority.....                       | §188        |
| 4. Canadian Forces Grievance Board.....                   | §189        |
| 5. Final Authority .....                                  | §191        |
| 6. Judicial Review .....                                  | §193        |
| <b>X. Military Police .....</b>                           | <b>§196</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §196        |
| 2. Peace Officers .....                                   | §198        |
| 3. Canadian Forces National Investigative Service .....   | §201        |
| 4. Complaints Against Military Police Officer .....       | §202        |
| <b>XI. Code of Service Discipline (CSD).....</b>          | <b>§203</b> |
| 1. Jurisdiction .....                                     | §203        |
| (a) General .....   | §203        |
| (b) Persons Subject to the CSD.....                       | §205        |
| (c) Persons Accompanying the CF.....                      | §207        |
| (d) Dependants.....                                       | §209        |
| (e) Territorial Limitation .....                          | §210        |
| (f) Period of Liability.....                              | §212        |
| (g) Offences not Triable by Service Tribunals .....       | §213        |
| 2. Service Offences .....                                 | §214        |
| 3. Service Tribunals .....                                | §216        |
| (a) General .....   | §216        |



MILITARY LAW

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Right to Elect Court Martial.....                   | §218        |
| (c) Right to Elect Type of Court Martial.....           | §219        |
| 4. Disciplinary Investigations .....                    | §222        |
| 5. Searches and Inspections .....                       | §225        |
| 6. Arrests.....   | §228        |
| 7. Pre-trial Procedure .....                            | §230        |
| 8. Fitness to Stand Trial.....                          | §231        |
| 9. Forensic DNA Analysis.....                           | §232        |
| 10. Laying of Charges.....                              | §233        |
| 11. Punishments.....                                    | §234        |
| <b>XII. Summary Trials.....</b>                         | <b>§236</b> |
| 1. Trials by Commanding Officers.....                   | §236        |
| 2. Trials by Delegated Officers .....                   | §238        |
| 3. Trials by Superior Commanders .....                  | §239        |
| 4. Referral of Charges.....                             | §241        |
| 5. Summary Trial Procedures .....                       | §245        |
| 6. Judicial Review .....                                | §251        |
| 7. Non-Judicial Review by Departmental Authorities..... | §252        |
| <b>XIII. Court Martial.....</b>                         | <b>§255</b> |
| 1. Right to be Represented .....                        | §255        |
| 2. Initiation of Proceedings.....                       | §256        |
| 3. General Court Martial.....                           | §261        |
| 4. Standing Court Martial .....                         | §262        |
| 5. Pre-Trial Matters .....                              | §263        |
| 6. Trial Procedures .....                               | §267        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §267        |
| (b) Objection to Constitution of Court Martial.....     | §272        |
| (c) Evidence.....                                       | §273        |
| (d) Adjournments.....                                   | §276        |
| 7. Findings and Sentences.....                          | §278        |
| 8. Appeals .....  | §282        |
| 9. Release Pending Appeal .....                         | §284        |
| 10. Review by Departmental Authorities.....             | §286        |
| 11. Royal Prerogative of Mercy .....                    | §288        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>XIV. Court Martial Appeal Court</b> .....                            | §289 |
| 1. Right to Appeal.....   | §289 |
| 2. Dispositions of Appeals.....   | §291 |
| 3. Rules of Appeal Procedures.....                                      | §301 |
| <b>XV. Supreme Court of Canada</b> .....                                | §302 |
| <b>XVI. Criminal Records Act</b> .....                                  | §304 |
| <b>XVII. Review</b> .....   | §305 |
| 1. Review of Findings and Punishments by Department<br>Authorities..... | §305 |
| 2. Authority to Quash or Substitute Findings.....                       | §306 |
| 3. Authority to Substitute Punishment.....                              | §307 |
| 4. Right to Petition for New Trial.....                                 | §309 |
| <b>XVIII. Service Prisons and Detention Barracks</b> .....              | §310 |
| 1. General.....   | §310 |
| 2. Suspension of Imprisonment or Detention.....                         | §311 |
| 3. Committal.....   | §315 |
| 4. Rules of Penitentiaries and Civil Prisons.....                       | §316 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Courts; Criminal Law - Offences; Crown; Firearms, Weapons and Explosives; Human Rights; International Law; Pensions and Retirement Benefits; Police; Prisons; Sentencing; War and Emergency; Wills.

# MINES AND MINERALS

prepared by  
Brenda-Jean Currie, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Definitions</b> .....                                     | §1  |
| 1. Principles of Construction .....                             | §1  |
| 2. Statutory Definitions .....                                  | §10 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Ownership and Reservation</b> .....                      | §13 |
| 1. Private Ownership .....                                      | §13 |
| 2. Crown Ownership .....  | §24 |
| (a) Alberta, Manitoba, Saskatchewan .....                       | §24 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                      | §29 |
| 3. Native Ownership .....                                       | §31 |
| 4. Title .....  | §33 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>III. Acquisition of Title under Mining Legislation</b> ..... | §40 |
| 1. Free Entry System .....                                      | §40 |
| (a) Introduction .....  | §40 |
| (b) Right to Enter Lands .....                                  | §42 |
| (i) Prospector's Licence .....                                  | §42 |
| (ii) Loss of Licence .....                                      | §46 |
| (iii) Lands Open for Prospecting and Staking .....              | §48 |
| (c) Right to Stake Claim .....                                  | §53 |
| (i) Staking Requirements .....                                  | §53 |
| (ii) Internet-based Map Selection System .....                  | §62 |
| (iii) Recording of Claim .....                                  | §64 |

MINES AND MINERALS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iv) Registration of Claims in British Columbia . . . . .            | §72         |
| (v) Substantial Compliance . . . . .                                 | §74         |
| (vi) Nature of Interest under Claim . . . . .                        | §88         |
| (vii) Priority of Claims . . . . .                                   | §93         |
| (viii) Renewal and Working of Claim . . . . .                        | §98         |
| (ix) Surrender of Claim . . . . .                                    | §107        |
| (x) Forfeiture of Claim . . . . .                                    | §110        |
| (d) Right to Obtain Lease . . . . .                                  | §121        |
| (i) Acquisition . . . . .  | §121        |
| (ii) Rights and Duties of Lessee . . . . .                           | §126        |
| (iii) Nature of Interest under Lease . . . . .                       | §130        |
| (iv) Renewal of Lease . . . . .                                      | §132        |
| (v) Surrender of Lease . . . . .                                     | §135        |
| (vi) Forfeiture of Lease . . . . .                                   | §136        |
| 2. Discretionary System . . . . .                                    | §145        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §145        |
| (b) Mineral Exploration Permits . . . . .                            | §156        |
| <b>IV. Resolution of Disputes under Mining Legislation . . . . .</b> | <b>§164</b> |
| <b>V. Transfer of Mineral Interests under Legislation . . . . .</b>  | <b>§179</b> |
| 1. Formal Requirements . . . . .                                     | §179        |
| 2. Recording a Transfer . . . . .                                    | §189        |
| 3. Effect of Recording . . . . .                                     | §197        |
| <b>VI. Mining Agreements . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§203</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §203        |
| 2. Agreements for Sale . . . . .                                     | §204        |
| 3. Private Leases . . . . .  | §219        |
| 4. Option Agreements . . . . .                                       | §225        |
| 5. Partnerships . . . . .  | §236        |
| 6. Grubstaking Agreements . . . . .                                  | §244        |
| 7. Joint Ventures . . . . .  | §246        |
| 8. Royalty Agreements . . . . .                                      | §251        |
| <b>VII. Lien Claims . . . . .</b>                                    | <b>§259</b> |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Registration of Lien . . . . .                  | §259        |
| 2. Lienable Interests . . . . .                    | §263        |
| 3. Lien Claimants . . . . .                        | §268        |
| <b>VIII. Surface Rights . . . . .</b>              | <b>§271</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                               | §271        |
| (a) Instrument of Severance . . . . .              | §271        |
| (b) Right of Working . . . . .                     | §273        |
| 2. Statutory Provisions . . . . .                  | §282        |
| (a) Acquisition of Surface Rights . . . . .        | §282        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                              | §282        |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                    | §285        |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                           | §293        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .                        | §298        |
| (b) Compensation . . . . .                         | §300        |
| (i) Right to Compensation . . . . .                | §300        |
| (ii) Measure of Compensation . . . . .             | §306        |
| <b>IX. Liability of Mining Operators . . . . .</b> | <b>§325</b> |
| 1. Mine Safety . . . . .                           | §325        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                              | §325        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                     | §327        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                             | §330        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                         | §333        |
| 2. Criminal Liability . . . . .                    | §335        |
| 3. Environmental Liability . . . . .               | §341        |
| (a) General . . . . .                              | §341        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .                              | §343        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                     | §350        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .                             | §358        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                         | §362        |
| <b>X. Mining Taxation . . . . .</b>                | <b>§365</b> |
| 1. Liability to Taxation . . . . .                 | §365        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                              | §365        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                     | §367        |

## MINES AND MINERALS

---

|                                      |             |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| (i) Mineral Production . . . . .     | §367        |
| (ii) Mineral Land . . . . .          | §372        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .               | §374        |
| (i) Mineral Production . . . . .     | §374        |
| (ii) Mining Claims . . . . .         | §375        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .           | §376        |
| (i) Mineral Production . . . . .     | §376        |
| (ii) Mineral Rights . . . . .        | §378        |
| (e) Generally . . . . .              | §380        |
| 2. Constitutional Validity . . . . . | §382        |
| <b>XI. Miscellaneous . . . . .</b>   | <b>§385</b> |
| 1. Placer Mining . . . . .           | §385        |
| 2. Water Rights . . . . .            | §393        |
| 3. Coal . . . . .                    | §398        |
| 4. Uranium . . . . .                 | §414        |
| 5. Tailings . . . . .                | §416        |
| 6. Trespass . . . . .                | §418        |
| 7. General . . . . .                 | §421        |

### Index

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Contracts; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Income Tax; Oil and Gas; Partnership; Environmental Law; Waters and Watercourses.

# MORTGAGES

prepared by  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**  
**Table of Statutes**  
**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                      | §1  |
| 1. Scope of Title.....                       | §1  |
| 2. Mortgage Under General Law.....           | §2  |
| (a) Nature.....                              | §2  |
| (b) Mortgage Distinguished from Trust.....   | §4  |
| (c) Mortgage as Personalty.....              | §5  |
| 3. Statutory Mortgage in Torrens System..... | §6  |
| 4. Form.....                                 | §8  |
| (a) General.....                             | §8  |
| (b) Land Titles Mortgage.....                | §10 |
| 5. Mortgage or Absolute Conveyance.....      | §14 |
| (a) General Presumption.....                 | §14 |
| (b) Where Transaction Absolute in Form.....  | §15 |
| (i) Burden of Proof.....                     | §15 |
| (ii) Consideration.....                      | §17 |
| (iii) Sale with Right of Repurchase.....     | §18 |
| (iv) Rights of Parties.....                  | §22 |
| (c) Admissibility of Parol Evidence.....     | §24 |
| 6. Subject Matter.....                       | §26 |
| (a) Fixtures.....                            | §26 |
| (b) Emblements.....                          | §38 |
| (c) After-Acquired Property.....             | §39 |

## MORTGAGES

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>II. Equitable Mortgages</b> .....                          | §43  |
| 1. General .....  | §43  |
| 2. Creation of Equitable Mortgage.....                        | §45  |
| (a) Deposit of Title Documents.....                           | §45  |
| (b) Agreement to Mortgage .....                               | §51  |
| (c) Defective Legal Mortgage.....                             | §57  |
| (d) Misdescription of Subject Matter .....                    | §58  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>III. Merger</b> .....                                      | §59  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>IV. Priorities</b> .....                                   | §64  |
| 1. General .....  | §64  |
| 2. Unregistered Interest .....                                | §68  |
| (a) Caveats .....   | §68  |
| (b) Notice.....   | §73  |
| 3. Modification of Mortgage Subsequent to Registration .....  | §79  |
| 4. Marshalling.....   | §82  |
| 5. Subrogation.....   | §86  |
| 6. Priority of Advances Made Subsequent to Registration ..... | §91  |
| (a) General .....   | §91  |
| (b) Postponement Agreements .....                             | §100 |
| 7. Executions and Judgments.....                              | §103 |
| 8. Dower .....  | §106 |
| 9. Builders' and Mechanics' Liens.....                        | §110 |
| 10. Other Statutory Liens.....                                | §117 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>V. Change of Ownership of Mortgage</b> .....               | §125 |
| 1. Assignment .....   | §125 |
| (a) Statutory Provisions.....                                 | §125 |
| (b) Rights of Assignee .....                                  | §129 |
| 2. Transfer.....  | §139 |
| (a) Statutory Provisions.....                                 | §139 |
| (b) Rights of Transferee.....                                 | §142 |
| 3. Seizure and Sale.....                                      | §145 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>VI. Payment</b> .....                                      | §146 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 1. Recipient of Payment.....                       | \$146        |
| 2. Manner of Payment.....                          | \$147        |
| (a) General.....                                   | \$147        |
| (b) Oral Agreement Inconsistent with Mortgage..... | \$152        |
| 3. Tendering Payment.....                          | \$153        |
| (a) General.....                                   | \$153        |
| (b) Conditions on Tender.....                      | \$155        |
| 4. Mortgagee's Right to Costs.....                 | \$157        |
| <b>VII. Redemption.....</b>                        | <b>\$159</b> |
| 1. General.....                                    | \$159        |
| 2. Who May Redeem.....                             | \$160        |
| 3. Price of Redemption.....                        | \$164        |
| 4. Clog on Equity of Redemption.....               | \$166        |
| (a) General.....                                   | \$166        |
| (b) Option to Purchase.....                        | \$168        |
| (c) Power of Sale.....                             | \$170        |
| (d) Uncertainty of Amount of Debt.....             | \$171        |
| (e) Insurance Premiums.....                        | \$172        |
| (f) Other Conditions.....                          | \$173        |
| 5. Consolidation.....                              | \$176        |
| 6. Loss of Right to Redeem.....                    | \$178        |
| (a) By Subsequent Bargain.....                     | \$178        |
| (b) By Acquiescence.....                           | \$179        |
| 7. Payment Before Date for Redemption.....         | \$180        |
| (a) General.....                                   | \$180        |
| (b) Effect of Interest Act.....                    | \$184        |
| 8. Redemption After Foreclosure.....               | \$193        |
| (a) General.....                                   | \$193        |
| (b) After Order Absolute for Foreclosure.....      | \$194        |
| (c) After Sale.....                                | \$195        |
| <b>VIII. Discharge.....</b>                        | <b>\$197</b> |
| 1. General.....                                    | \$197        |
| 2. Discharge by Court.....                         | \$207        |

MORTGAGES

---

**IX. Sale or Transfer of Land by Mortgagor** ..... §212

    1. Rights Between Mortgagee and Purchaser ..... §212

        (a) General ..... §212

        (b) Right to Assume Mortgage..... §216

    2. Rights Between Mortgagee and Mortgagor..... §217

    3. Rights Between Mortgagor and Purchaser ..... §220

    4. Implied Covenants of Purchaser for Payment and Indemnification ..... §223

        (a) General ..... §223

        (b) Mortgagee’s Position..... §230

        (c) Mortgagor’s Position ..... §234

        (d) Implied Covenant Negatived ..... §235

        (e) Transfer of Part of Mortgagor’s Interest..... §245

    5. Rights with Respect to Other Parties..... §246

**X. Sale by Mortgagee Under Contractual Power** ..... §247

    1. General ..... §247

        (a) Under Torrens System..... §247

        (b) Nature of Power ..... §252

    2. When Power may be Exercised ..... §255

    3. When Sale Deemed in Exercise of Power..... §256

    4. Duty and Liability of Mortgagee Generally ..... §258

    5. Sale on Credit ..... §263

    6. Who may Purchase ..... §264

    7. Notice of Exercise of Power ..... §266

    8. Powers and Duties of Registrar..... §272

    9. Setting Aside Sale..... §276

    10. Surplus on Sale ..... §279

**XI. Foreclosure** ..... §280

    1. General ..... §280

    2. Relief Available to Mortgagee ..... §284

    3. Right to Foreclose..... §285

        (a) General ..... §285

        (b) Leave of Court ..... §300

        (c) Foreclosure against Insolvent Farmer..... §305

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 4. Conduct of Action.....                    | §307 |
| 5. Sale in Foreclosure Proceedings .....     | §316 |
| (a) Alberta.....                             | §316 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                   | §317 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                           | §321 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                        | §322 |
| (i) General.....                             | §322 |
| (ii) Saskatchewan Farm Security Act.....     | §323 |
| (e) Practice.....                            | §326 |
| (i) General.....                             | §326 |
| (ii) Failure of Defendant to Appear .....    | §331 |
| (f) Method and Conduct of Sale.....          | §333 |
| (i) General.....                             | §333 |
| (ii) Who May Purchase.....                   | §341 |
| A. General.....                              | §341 |
| B. Mortgagee — Rice Order .....              | §345 |
| (g) Sale of Part of Mortgaged Property ..... | §350 |
| (h) Conditions of Sale.....                  | §351 |
| (i) Advertising Sale .....                   | §355 |
| (j) Deposit.....                             | §360 |
| (k) Confirmation of Sale.....                | §361 |
| (l) Setting Aside Sale.....                  | §376 |
| (m) Rights of Purchaser.....                 | §378 |
| (n) Surplus on Sale.....                     | §382 |
| (i) General.....                             | §382 |
| (ii) Payment and Distribution .....          | §383 |
| (o) Liability of Mortgagor after Sale .....  | §388 |
| 6. Parties .....                             | §390 |
| (a) General .....                            | §390 |
| (b) Plaintiffs.....                          | §392 |
| (c) Defendants .....                         | §394 |
| (i) Prior Encumbrancers .....                | §394 |
| (ii) Mortgagor .....                         | §396 |
| (iii) Deceased Mortgagor .....               | §397 |
| (iv) Infants .....                           | §398 |
| (v) Spouse of Mortgagor or Owner.....        | §399 |

## MORTGAGES

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (vi) Transferee of Mortgaged Land .....                     | §400        |
| (vii) Receiver .....  | §402        |
| (viii) Lessees or Tenants of Mortgagor.....                 | §403        |
| (ix) Subsequent Encumbrancers.....                          | §405        |
| (x) Crown.....  | §407        |
| 7. Judgment or Order Nisi .....                             | §408        |
| (a) General .....   | §408        |
| (b) Statutory Stay of Foreclosure Against Farmland.....     | §415        |
| (c) Amending or Varying Order Nisi.....                     | §421        |
| (d) Setting Aside Order Nisi.....                           | §426        |
| (e) Summary Judgment .....                                  | §431        |
| 8. Taking Accounts .....                                    | §435        |
| (a) General .....   | §435        |
| (b) Change in State of Accounts .....                       | §439        |
| 9. Time for Redemption.....                                 | §442        |
| (a) General .....   | §442        |
| (b) Shortening of Time: Immediate Sale or Foreclosure ..... | §444        |
| (c) Extension of Time: Statutory Relief.....                | §453        |
| (i) General.....  | §453        |
| (ii) Application by Subsequent Mortgagee .....              | §472        |
| (iii) Appeal.....   | §475        |
| 10. Final Order .....                                       | §478        |
| (a) Application for Final Order .....                       | §478        |
| (b) Effect of Final Order.....                              | §485        |
| (c) Reopening Final Order .....                             | §489        |
| (i) General.....  | §489        |
| (ii) For Irregularities.....                                | §491        |
| (iii) By Mortgagee.....                                     | §494        |
| (iv) On Equitable Grounds to Permit Redemption .....        | §496        |
| (v) After Sale by Mortgagee.....                            | §503        |
| (vi) After New Certificate of Title Issued .....            | §506        |
| <b>XII. Action on Covenant .....</b>                        | <b>§512</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §512        |
| 2. Statutory Restrictions .....                             | §520        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | §520        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) General Rule.....  | §520        |
| (ii) Exceptions .....  | §524        |
| (b) Manitoba .....   | §529        |
| (c) Saskatchewan .....   | §531        |
| 3. Joint Debtors .....   | §535        |
| 4. Modification of Mortgage Agreement .....                                | §539        |
| 5. After Sale .....  | §543        |
| 6. After Foreclosure .....   | §550        |
| (a) General .....  | §550        |
| (b) Restoration of Mortgaged Property .....                                | §552        |
| (c) Under Land Titles Statutes .....                                       | §557        |
| 7. Proceedings by Prior Mortgagee .....                                    | §560        |
| 8. Proceedings by Subsequent Mortgagee.....                                | §564        |
| 9. Tax Sales .....   | §566        |
| 10. Statutory Conditions Precedent: Prior Realization of<br>Security ..... | §570        |
| <b>XIII. Possession.....</b>   | <b>§572</b> |
| 1. Mortgagee not in Possession .....                                       | §572        |
| (a) General .....  | §572        |
| (b) Position of Mortgagor in Possession.....                               | §575        |
| (c) Waste: Impairment of Security .....                                    | §576        |
| (i) General.....   | §576        |
| (ii) Right of Mortgagee Against Third Parties .....                        | §577        |
| 2. Right of Mortgagee to Possession.....                                   | §579        |
| (a) General .....  | §579        |
| (b) Power to Lease .....   | §582        |
| (c) Under Land Titles System .....   | §584        |
| 3. When Mortgagee Deemed in Possession.....                                | §587        |
| 4. Mortgagor's Tenant in Possession .....                                  | §590        |
| 5. Rights and Liabilities of Mortgagee in Possession .....                 | §596        |
| (a) Liability to Account .....   | §596        |
| (i) General.....   | §596        |
| (ii) Mismanagement.....  | §597        |
| (iii) Waste .....  | §600        |
| (iv) Occupation Rent.....  | §603        |

## MORTGAGES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Allowance to Mortgagee.....                            | §604        |
| (i) General.....   | §604        |
| (ii) Improvements.....                                     | §605        |
| 6. Action for Possession.....                              | §607        |
| <b>XIV. Rights and Remedies Generally.....</b>             | <b>§608</b> |
| 1. Concurrent Remedies.....                                | §608        |
| (a) General.....   | §608        |
| (b) Collateral Security.....                               | §615        |
| (i) General.....   | §615        |
| (ii) Promissory Notes and Guarantees.....                  | §621        |
| (iii) Chattel Mortgages.....                               | §631        |
| 2. Mortgagor's Covenant to Execute Further Assurances..... | §634        |
| 3. Receiver.....   | §635        |
| (a) General.....   | §635        |
| (b) Rights and Duties.....                                 | §647        |
| 4. Accounting.....   | §653        |
| (a) General.....   | §653        |
| (b) Consideration.....                                     | §654        |
| (i) General.....   | §654        |
| (ii) Advances by Mortgagee.....                            | §655        |
| (c) Application of Payments.....                           | §658        |
| (d) Set-Off and Counterclaim.....                          | §660        |
| 5. Interest.....   | §662        |
| (a) General.....   | §662        |
| (b) Bonus or Prepayment Penalties.....                     | §676        |
| (c) Penalty on Default.....                                | §680        |
| (d) Blended Payments.....                                  | §685        |
| (e) After Maturity.....                                    | §690        |
| (f) Compound Interest.....                                 | §692        |
| 6. Costs.....  | §694        |
| (a) Foreclosure and Redemption.....                        | §694        |
| (i) General.....   | §694        |
| (ii) Solicitor-and-Client Costs.....                       | §701        |
| (iii) Misconduct by Mortgagee.....                         | §710        |
| (iv) Apportionment and Contribution.....                   | §717        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|                                     |       |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| (v) Disclaimer .....                | \$718 |
| (vi) Reopening Foreclosure.....     | \$719 |
| (b) Costs and Expenses of Sale..... | \$720 |
| 7. Acceleration.....                | \$722 |
| 8. Attornment and Distress .....    | \$738 |
| (a) General .....                   | \$738 |
| (b) Reservation of Rent.....        | \$748 |
| (c) Third Parties .....             | \$750 |
| 9. Insurance.....                   | \$753 |
| 10. Taxes.....                      | \$761 |
| 11. Other Rights and Remedies.....  | \$768 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agriculture; Auctions; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Builders' Liens; Building Contracts; Business Corporations; Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act; Condominiums; Conflict Of Laws; Contracts; Damages; Debtor and Creditor; Distress; Easements; Equity; Execution; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters Of Credit; Injunctions; Insurance; Judgments and Orders; Landlord and Tenant; Liens; Limitation of Actions; Parties; Personal Property; Pledges; Real Property; Receivers; References and Inquiries; Sale Of Land; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Sheriffs and Bailiffs; Shipping; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment In Canada.

# MOTOR VEHICLES

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                      | §1  |
| 1. Statutory Construction .....                   | §1  |
| 2. Constitutional Validity .....                  | §2  |
| 3. Application of Provincial Legislation .....    | §3  |
| 4. Effect of Non-Compliance with Legislation..... | §5  |
| (a) Breach as Evidence of Negligence .....        | §5  |
| (b) Breach as Bar to Action .....                 | §6  |
| <b>II. Definitions</b> .....                      | §7  |
| 1. Highway .....                                  | §7  |
| 2. Motor Vehicle .....                            | §12 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                  | §12 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                        | §13 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                | §14 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                             | §15 |
| 3. Specific Motor Vehicles .....                  | §16 |
| <b>III. Registration</b> .....                    | §18 |
| 1. Certificates of Registration.....              | §18 |
| 2. Licence Plates .....                           | §25 |
| 3. Drivers' Licences .....                        | §29 |
| 4. Driving Instructors' Licences .....            | §36 |



MOTOR VEHICLES

---

5. Driver Training Schools and Driver Examiners ..... §37

**IV. Suspensions** ..... §38

1. Licence Suspensions Following Criminal Code Convictions ..... §38

2. Licence Suspensions for Contravention of the Act..... §44

    (a) Alberta..... §44

    (b) British Columbia ..... §50

    (c) Manitoba ..... §72

    (d) Saskatchewan..... §73

3. 24-Hour Suspension ..... §74

4. Driving While Suspended..... §75

5. Demerit Point System ..... §81

6. Suspension for Failure to Pay Judgments..... §82

**V. Equipment** ..... §83

1. Lights ..... §83

    (a) General ..... §83

    (b) Headlights ..... §86

    (c) Dazzling Lights..... §88

    (d) Driving within Range of Lights ..... §89

    (e) Rear Lights and Clearance Lights ..... §91

2. Brakes ..... §95

    (a) General ..... §95

    (b) Defective Brakes ..... §97

    (c) Brake Fluid ..... §100

3. Windshield Wipers..... §101

4. Windows..... §102

5. Rearview Mirror..... §103

6. Mudguards ..... §104

7. Tires ..... §105

8. Speedometer ..... §108

9. Odometer ..... §109

10. Noise and Fumes..... §110

    (a) General ..... §110

    (b) Sounding Horn ..... §111

11. Television Sets ..... §116

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 12. Radar Warning Devices.....                             | §117        |
| 13. Trailer Attachments.....                               | §118        |
| 14. Bumpers.....   | §119        |
| 15. Vehicle Inspection.....                                | §120        |
| (a) Police Powers of Inspection.....                       | §120        |
| (b) Provincial Powers of Investigation and Inspection..... | §121        |
| (c) Unsafe Vehicles.....                                   | §122        |
| (i) Alberta.....   | §122        |
| (ii) British Columbia.....                                 | §124        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....  | §125        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                                     | §126        |
| 16. Helmets.....   | §128        |
| 17. Federal Safety Standards.....                          | §129        |
| 18. Seat Belt Assemblies.....                              | §131        |
| <b>VI. Load and Dimensions.....</b>                        | <b>§135</b> |
| 1. General.....  | §135        |
| 2. Overhanging Loads.....                                  | §137        |
| 3. Weight.....   | §138        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §138        |
| (b) British Columbia.....                                  | §140        |
| (c) Manitoba.....  | §141        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                      | §143        |
| 4. Overweight Permits.....                                 | §144        |
| 5. Powers of Police to Inspect.....                        | §145        |
| 6. Penalties.....  | §146        |
| <b>VII. Rate of Speed.....</b>                             | <b>§147</b> |
| 1. Speed Limits.....                                       | §147        |
| 2. General.....  | §152        |
| 3. Signs.....  | §157        |
| 4. Radar.....  | §160        |
| 5. Physical Proof of Speed.....                            | §165        |
| 6. Slow Driving.....                                       | §166        |
| 7. Excessive Speed as Negligence.....                      | §167        |
| 8. Careless Driving.....                                   | §172        |

MOTOR VEHICLES

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General .....                                     | §172        |
| (b) Informations .....                                | §177        |
| (c) Nature of Offence .....                           | §178        |
| <b>VIII. Rules of the Road .....</b>                  | <b>§182</b> |
| 1. Traffic Direction By Police and Flag Persons ..... | §182        |
| 2. Right of Way .....                                 | §184        |
| (a) Nature of Right of Way .....                      | §184        |
| (i) General .....                                     | §184        |
| (ii) First Into Intersection .....                    | §186        |
| (b) Reliance on Right of Way .....                    | §189        |
| (c) At Traffic Lights .....                           | §192        |
| (d) Through Highways .....                            | §194        |
| 3. Stop Signs .....                                   | §196        |
| 4. Yield Signs .....                                  | §202        |
| 5. Private Road .....                                 | §203        |
| 6. Turns .....  | §204        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §204        |
| (b) Left Turns .....                                  | §206        |
| (c) Signalling Turns .....                            | §207        |
| (d) U-turns .....                                     | §211        |
| 7. Traffic Lights .....                               | §212        |
| 8. Meeting and Overtaking .....                       | §217        |
| 9. Traffic Lanes .....                                | §230        |
| 10. Backing Prohibited .....                          | §231        |
| 11. Following Too Closely .....                       | §232        |
| 12. Towing .....                                      | §234        |
| 13. Interference with Driver .....                    | §235        |
| 14. Railway Crossings .....                           | §236        |
| 15. Opening Doors .....                               | §242        |
| 16. Parking .....                                     | §243        |
| (a) Statutory Provisions .....                        | §243        |
| (b) Park or Leave Standing .....                      | §248        |
| (c) Parking on Travelled Portion .....                | §251        |
| (d) Disabled Vehicles .....                           | §252        |
| (e) Flares .....                                      | §253        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (f) Unlighted Vehicles.....                             | §254        |
| (g) Precautions Against Being Set in Motion.....        | §256        |
| 17. Pedestrians.....                                    | §258        |
| (a) Walking along Roadway.....                          | §258        |
| (i) Duty of Pedestrian.....                             | §258        |
| (ii) Duty of Motorist.....                              | §261        |
| (b) Crossing Roadway.....                               | §265        |
| (i) At Traffic Lights.....                              | §265        |
| (ii) At Intersections.....                              | §270        |
| (iii) Not at Intersection.....                          | §272        |
| 18. Racing and Stunting.....                            | §276        |
| 19. Riding on Outside of Vehicle.....                   | §278        |
| 20. School Buses.....                                   | §280        |
| 21. Signs.....  | §281        |
| 22. Removal of Damaged Vehicle.....                     | §285        |
| 23. Abandoned Vehicles.....                             | §286        |
| 24. Riding in Trailers.....                             | §287        |
| 25. Litter on Highway.....                              | §288        |
| 26. Air Cushion Vehicles.....                           | §289        |
| 27. Emergency Vehicles.....                             | §290        |
| 28. Construction and Maintenance Vehicles.....          | §294        |
| 29. Funeral Processions.....                            | §296        |
| <b>IX. Civil Actions.....</b>                           | <b>§298</b> |
| 1. Negligence.....                                      | §298        |
| 2. Standard of Care.....                                | §304        |
| (a) General.....  | §304        |
| (b) Disabilities of Driver.....                         | §312        |
| (i) Skill and Experience.....                           | §312        |
| (ii) Other Disabling Factors (Inevitable Accident)..... | §315        |
| (c) Special Factors Affecting Duty.....                 | §322        |
| (i) Visibility.....                                     | §322        |
| A. Weather Conditions.....                              | §322        |
| B. Dazzling Lights.....                                 | §325        |
| (ii) Dangerous Highways.....                            | §327        |
| (d) Emergencies.....                                    | §329        |

MOTOR VEHICLES

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (e) Keeping a Lookout .....                           | §332        |
| (f) To Cyclists .....                                 | §338        |
| (g) To Animals and Persons .....                      | §342        |
| 3. Liability for Loss or Damage .....                 | §347        |
| 4. Meaning of “Owner” .....                           | §350        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §350        |
| (b) Nature and Extent of Liability .....              | §356        |
| 5. Consent to Possession .....                        | §364        |
| 6. Limited Consent .....                              | §369        |
| (a) Limitation of Purpose .....                       | §369        |
| (b) Limitation on Person .....                        | §371        |
| 7. Passengers .....                                   | §375        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §375        |
| (b) Passenger’s Contributory Negligence .....         | §378        |
| (i) General .....                                     | §378        |
| (ii) Acceptance of Risk Volenti Non Fit Injuria ..... | §386        |
| 8. Ex Turpi Causa .....                               | §391        |
| 9. Evidence .....                                     | §392        |
| (a) Res Ipsa Loquitur .....                           | §392        |
| (b) Inferences from Physical Facts .....              | §393        |
| (c) Statutory Onus .....                              | §395        |
| (i) General .....                                     | §395        |
| (ii) Collision Between Vehicles .....                 | §401        |
| (iii) Nature and Discharge of Onus .....              | §402        |
| (iv) Contributory Negligence .....                    | §404        |
| <b>X. Municipal By-laws .....</b>                     | <b>§405</b> |
| <b>XI. Records and Reporting of Accidents .....</b>   | <b>§410</b> |
| 1. General .....                                      | §410        |
| 2. Duty of Motorist .....                             | §411        |
| 3. Admissibility of Statements .....                  | §412        |
| 4. Remaining at Scene .....                           | §417        |
| 5. Report of Damage .....                             | §420        |
| 6. Report by Police .....                             | §421        |
| 7. Repair of Damaged Vehicle .....                    | §422        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 8. False Statements.....  | §423        |
| <b>XII. Limitation of Actions.....</b>                              | <b>§424</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §424        |
| 2. Application of Section Limiting Actions.....                     | §427        |
| 3. Damages Occasioned by Motor Vehicle.....                         | §428        |
| 4. Running of Time.....   | §431        |
| <b>XIII. Arrests and Penalties .....</b>                            | <b>§436</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §436        |
| 2. Recovery.....  | §437        |
| 3. Procedure.....   | §438        |
| 4. Report on Conviction.....  | §448        |
| 5. Evidence .....   | §449        |
| 6. General Penalty.....   | §452        |
| 7. Power of Police to Stop Vehicle.....                             | §454        |
| 8. Arrests.....   | §457        |
| 9. Seizure of Vehicles .....  | §458        |
| <b>XIV. Compulsory Automobile Insurance.....</b>                    | <b>§463</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....  | §463        |
| 2. British Columbia .....   | §466        |
| 3. Manitoba.....  | §470        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....   | §472        |
| <b>XV. Motor Vehicle Accident Claims .....</b>                      | <b>§475</b> |
| 1. Uninsured Vehicle.....   | §475        |
| 2. Claim Against Fund Without Judgment .....                        | §477        |
| 3. Undefended Actions.....  | §486        |
| 4. Claim Against Fund After Judgment .....                          | §489        |
| 5. Payment of Judgments.....  | §492        |
| 6. Judgments Not Payable.....                                       | §495        |
| 7. Unknown Owner or Operator.....                                   | §500        |
| (a) Right to Bring Action Against Administrator or<br>Insurer ..... | §500        |
| (b) Limitation and Notice Periods .....                             | §504        |

MOTOR VEHICLES

---

(c) Right to Jury Trial..... §505  
(d) Defences..... §506  
(e) Adding Defendants After Action Commenced ..... §508  
(f) Settlement of Action..... §510  
(g) Reasonable Efforts to Ascertain Identity ..... §511  
8. Limits on Payment..... §515  
9. Non-Residents and Governments ..... §527  
10. Costs ..... §529

**Index**

*Related titles:* Carriers; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Offences; Highways and Streets; Insurance; Negligence; Railways; Statutes.

# MUNICIPAL AND SCHOOL TAXATION

prepared by  
Brenda Jean Currie, B.A., LL.B.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                      | §1  |
| 1. Legislative Jurisdiction .....                 | §1  |
| 2. Scope of Municipal Authority.....              | §4  |
| (a) Jurisdiction .....                            | §4  |
| (b) Discrimination .....                          | §7  |
| 3. Construction of Statutes.....                  | §9  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Property Assessment and Taxation</b> ..... | §11 |
| 1. General .....                                  | §11 |
| 2. Land and Improvements .....                    | §15 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                  | §15 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                        | §17 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                | §19 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                             | §23 |
| (e) Categorization of Specific Items.....         | §25 |
| 3. Exemptions .....                               | §27 |
| (a) General .....                                 | §27 |
| (b) Crown Lands .....                             | §31 |
| (i) General.....                                  | §31 |
| (ii) Specific Legislative Provisions.....         | §40 |
| A. Alberta .....                                  | §40 |
| B. British Columbia .....                         | §43 |
| C. Manitoba .....                                 | §45 |



MUNICIPAL AND SCHOOL TAXATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| D. Saskatchewan.....                             | \$46         |
| (c) Aboriginal Property .....                    | \$47         |
| (d) Municipal Lands.....                         | \$49         |
| (e) Educational Facilities .....                 | \$52         |
| (i) Alberta .....                                | \$52         |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                      | \$55         |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                              | \$58         |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                           | \$61         |
| (f) Churches and Places of Worship .....         | \$65         |
| (i) Alberta .....                                | \$65         |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                      | \$66         |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                              | \$68         |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                           | \$70         |
| (g) Cemeteries .....                             | \$72         |
| (h) Hospitals .....                              | \$77         |
| (i) Charities and Non-Profit Organizations ..... | \$81         |
| (j) Agricultural Lands and Property .....        | \$88         |
| (i) Alberta .....                                | \$88         |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                      | \$92         |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                              | \$95         |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                           | \$97         |
| (k) Other Exemptions.....                        | \$100        |
| (i) Alberta .....                                | \$100        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                      | \$107        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                              | \$116        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                           | \$121        |
| 4. Taxation in Respect of Exempt Property.....   | \$126        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                 | \$126        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                       | \$128        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                               | \$132        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                            | \$134        |
| <b>III. Business Assessment.....</b>             | <b>\$136</b> |
| 1. Nature of Tax.....                            | \$136        |
| 2. Character of Occupancy .....                  | \$139        |
| 3. Liability Irrespective of Profit.....         | \$143        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 4. Imposition of Tax .....                   | \$145        |
| (a) General .....                            | \$145        |
| (b) Statutory Provisions .....               | \$146        |
| (i) Alberta .....                            | \$146        |
| (ii) Manitoba.....                           | \$153        |
| <b>IV. Assessment Process.....</b>           | <b>\$159</b> |
| 1. Necessity for Assessment .....            | \$159        |
| 2. Mandatory and Directory Aspects.....      | \$161        |
| 3. Curative Provisions .....                 | \$165        |
| 4. Statutory Procedure.....                  | \$167        |
| (a) Alberta.....                             | \$167        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                   | \$181        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                           | \$196        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                        | \$206        |
| 5. Valuation of Property .....               | \$217        |
| (a) Determination of Actual Value.....       | \$217        |
| (b) Approaches to Valuation.....             | \$221        |
| (i) Use of Formula .....                     | \$221        |
| (ii) Actual Sales.....                       | \$229        |
| (iii) Comparable Sales.....                  | \$230        |
| (iv) Replacement Cost.....                   | \$232        |
| (c) Factors to be Considered.....            | \$236        |
| (i) General.....                             | \$236        |
| (ii) Statutory Provisions .....              | \$238        |
| A. Alberta .....                             | \$238        |
| B. British Columbia .....                    | \$239        |
| C. Manitoba .....                            | \$241        |
| D. Saskatchewan.....                         | \$243        |
| (iii) Prospects for Development.....         | \$250        |
| (iv) Use of Property .....                   | \$252        |
| (v) Obsolescence and Depreciation .....      | \$255        |
| (d) Valuation of Particular Properties ..... | \$260        |
| (i) Railways .....                           | \$260        |
| (ii) Mines and Minerals .....                | \$272        |
| (iii) Miscellaneous .....                    | \$276        |

MUNICIPAL AND SCHOOL TAXATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (e) Separate Valuation of Land and Improvements.....                    | §280        |
| 6. Business Valuation.....  | §283        |
| 7. Fixed Assessments .....  | §287        |
| 8. Identification of Person Assessed .....                              | §293        |
| (a) Persons Subject to Assessment .....                                 | §293        |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §293        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §295        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §296        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §299        |
| (b) Description of Assessed Person.....                                 | §306        |
| 9. Description of Lands.....  | §307        |
| 10. Notice of Assessment .....  | §311        |
| (a) Requirement of Giving Notice.....                                   | §311        |
| (b) Sufficiency of Notice .....   | §313        |
| (c) Statutory Provisions.....   | §314        |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §314        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §321        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §327        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §328        |
| 11. Assessment Equalization.....  | §335        |
| <b>V. Appeals .....</b>   | <b>§338</b> |
| 1. Initial Appeal.....  | §338        |
| (a) General .....   | §338        |
| (b) Establishment and Constitution of Appeal Boards and<br>Panels ..... | §339        |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §339        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §343        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §345        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §348        |
| (c) Initiation of Appeals.....  | §352        |
| (i) Alberta .....   | §352        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....   | §355        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....   | §358        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....  | §361        |
| (d) Procedure .....   | §368        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (e) Evidence.....  | §369 |
| (i) General.....   | §369 |
| (ii) Burden of Proof .....   | §372 |
| (f) Decision of Board of Revision or Review Panel.....   | §375 |
| (i) Alberta .....  | §375 |
| (ii) British Columbia .....  | §379 |
| (iii) Manitoba.....  | §382 |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....   | §385 |
| 2. Appeals from Boards of Revision or Review Panels.....                                       | §390 |
| (a) General .....  | §390 |
| (b) Alberta .....  | §391 |
| (i) General.....   | §391 |
| (ii) Appeal to Court of Queen’s Bench.....   | §393 |
| (iii) Hearing Before Municipal Government Board.....   | §401 |
| A. Establishment, Constitution and Jurisdiction<br>of Municipal Government Board.....          | §401 |
| B. Initiation of Hearing.....  | §404 |
| (iv) Procedure .....   | §406 |
| (v) Evidence.....  | §407 |
| (vi) Decision of Board .....   | §408 |
| (c) British Columbia.....  | §420 |
| (i) General.....   | §420 |
| (ii) Establishment, Constitution and Jurisdiction of<br>Property Assessment Appeal Board ..... | §422 |
| (iii) Initiation of Hearing .....  | §427 |
| (iv) Procedure .....   | §430 |
| (v) Decision of Board .....  | §431 |
| (vi) Orders for Compliance.....  | §435 |
| (d) Manitoba .....   | §436 |
| (i) General.....   | §436 |
| (ii) Municipal Board.....  | §439 |
| A. Establishment and Constitution .....  | §439 |
| B. Initiation of Hearings .....  | §441 |
| C. Procedure .....   | §443 |
| D. Evidence .....  | §446 |
| E. Decision of Board.....  | §449 |

## MUNICIPAL AND SCHOOL TAXATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iii) Court of Queen's Bench.....                                  | §453        |
| (iv) Appeal from Municipal Board or Court of<br>Queen's Bench..... | §456        |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....  | §461        |
| (i) General.....   | §461        |
| (ii) Establishment and Constitution of Municipal<br>Board.....     | §464        |
| (iii) Initiation of Hearing .....                                  | §466        |
| (iv) Procedure .....   | §471        |
| (v) Evidence.....  | §473        |
| (vi) Decision of Board .....                                       | §475        |
| 3. Appeals by Stated Case.....                                     | §479        |
| (a) Right to Appeal .....  | §479        |
| (b) Procedure and Evidence.....                                    | §486        |
| 4. Other Appeals .....   | §496        |
| 5. Judicial Review of Assessment Process .....                     | §499        |
| (a) Validity and Finality of Assessment Roll .....                 | §499        |
| (b) Effect of Privative Clauses .....                              | §504        |
| (c) Right to Review.....   | §505        |
| (d) Remedies.....  | §509        |
| <b>VI. Rating and the Tax Rolls .....</b>                          | <b>§512</b> |
| 1. Rating .....  | §512        |
| (a) General.....   | §512        |
| (b) Statutory Authority.....                                       | §513        |
| 2. Preparation of Tax Rolls .....                                  | §528        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §528        |
| (b) Manitoba .....   | §532        |
| (c) Saskatchewan.....  | §536        |
| <b>VII. Collection and Payment .....</b>                           | <b>§538</b> |
| 1. Authority of Collector.....                                     | §538        |
| 2. Demand for Payment .....  | §539        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §539        |
| (b) British Columbia .....   | §542        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §544        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | §547     |
| 3. Payment of Taxes .....  | §550     |
| (a) General.....   | §550     |
| (b) Penalties, Discounts and Instalment Payments .....                     | §556     |
| (c) Appropriation and Apportionment of Payments .....                      | §559     |
| (d) Compromise or Abatement.....   | §564     |
| 4. Recovery.....   | §567     |
| (a) Recovery of Taxes by Action.....                                       | §567     |
| (b) Recovery of Taxes Paid.....  | §570     |
| 5. Lien for Taxes.....   | §576     |
| 6. Apportioning Legal Costs of Enforcement.....                            | §581     |
| 7. Taxes on Rental Premises .....  | §582     |
| 8. Tax Certificates.....   | §585     |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §585     |
| (b) British Columbia .....   | §586     |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §589     |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | §590     |
| <br><b>VIII. Distress</b> .....  | <br>§592 |
| 1. Authority to Levy .....   | §592     |
| 2. Property Subject to Distress .....                                      | §593     |
| 3. Liability for Illegal Distress or Loss or Damage to Goods.....          | §604     |
| <br><b>IX. Tax Sales</b> .....   | <br>§607 |
| 1. Alberta .....   | §607     |
| (a) Recovery of Taxes Related to Land — Tax Recovery<br>Notification ..... | §607     |
| (b) Conduct of Sale.....   | §611     |
| (c) Right to Clear Title .....   | §615     |
| (d) Land Not Sold at Auction.....  | §616     |
| (e) Proceeds of Sale .....   | §622     |
| (f) Recovery of Taxes Related to Designated Manufac-<br>tured Homes.....   | §625     |
| 2. British Columbia .....  | §637     |
| (a) Conduct of Sale .....  | §637     |
| (b) Proceeds of Sale.....  | §642     |

MUNICIPAL AND SCHOOL TAXATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Redemption .....                            | §643        |
| (d) Application of Surplus .....                | §646        |
| (e) Registration of Title .....                 | §648        |
| (f) Setting Sale Aside.....                     | §649        |
| 3. Manitoba.....                                | §651        |
| (a) General.....                                | §651        |
| (b) Conduct of Sale.....                        | §652        |
| (c) Registration of Purchaser .....             | §660        |
| (d) Application of Surplus .....                | §662        |
| (e) Setting Sale Aside .....                    | §664        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                           | §667        |
| (a) General.....                                | §667        |
| (b) Tax Lien .....                              | §669        |
| (c) Prevention of Waste .....                   | §673        |
| (d) Redemption.....                             | §674        |
| (e) Application for Title.....                  | §677        |
| (f) Disposition of Lands.....                   | §682        |
| (g) Disposition of Proceeds .....               | §685        |
| 5. Liability for Wrongful Sale .....            | §686        |
| <b>X. School Taxes .....</b>                    | <b>§693</b> |
| 1. General .....                                | §693        |
| 2. Alberta .....                                | §694        |
| (a) Imposition and Collection .....             | §694        |
| (b) Public and Separate School Assessment ..... | §699        |
| (c) Payment of Rates.....                       | §709        |
| 3. British Columbia.....                        | §711        |
| (a) Imposition and Collection .....             | §711        |
| (b) Exemptions .....                            | §717        |
| 4. Manitoba.....                                | §719        |
| (a) Imposition and Collection .....             | §719        |
| (b) Exemptions .....                            | §724        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                           | §726        |
| (a) Imposition and Collection .....             | §726        |
| (b) Public and Separate School Assessment.....  | §736        |
| (c) Remedial Authority of Minister.....         | §739        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**XI. Local Improvement Taxes** ..... §740

**XII. Special Rates** ..... §745

**Index**

*Related titles:* Auctions; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Burial and Cremation; Business Corporations; Conflict of Laws; Constitutional Law; Crown; Debtor and Creditor; Distress; Drainage; Education; Execution; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Highways and Streets; Injunctions; Liens; Mines and Minerals; Municipal Corporations; Oil and Gas; Public Utilities; Railways; Religious Institutions; Statutes



# MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — ADMINISTRATION AND COUNCIL

Adapted from Ian MacF. Rogers’  
*The Law of Canadian Municipal Corporations, 2nd Edition*  
by Todd Desourdie, B.A., M.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|                                       |      |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| <b>I. Council Members</b> .....       | \$1  |
| 1. Status .....                       | \$1  |
| (a) General .....                     | \$1  |
| (b) Trustees .....                    | \$6  |
| (c) Agents or Employees .....         | \$12 |
| 2. Eligibility .....                  | \$13 |
| (a) General .....                     | \$13 |
| (b) Qualifications .....              | \$21 |
| (i) Residence .....                   | \$21 |
| A. General.....                       | \$21 |
| B. Alberta .....                      | \$22 |
| C. British Columbia .....             | \$23 |
| D. Manitoba.....                      | \$24 |
| E. Ontario .....                      | \$25 |
| F. Saskatchewan .....                 | \$26 |
| (ii) Canadian Citizenship .....       | \$27 |
| (iii) Property .....                  | \$28 |
| A. General.....                       | \$28 |
| B. British Columbia .....             | \$30 |
| C. Manitoba .....                     | \$32 |
| (c) Declaration of Qualification..... | \$34 |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — ADMINISTRATION AND  
COUNCIL

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (i) General.....                             | \$34 |
| (ii) Alberta .....                           | \$37 |
| (iii) British Columbia .....                 | \$38 |
| (iv) Manitoba .....                          | \$39 |
| (v) Ontario .....                            | \$40 |
| (d) Grounds for Disqualification .....       | \$42 |
| (i) General.....                             | \$42 |
| A. Introduction .....                        | \$42 |
| B. Alberta .....                             | \$48 |
| C. British Columbia .....                    | \$49 |
| D. Manitoba.....                             | \$51 |
| E. Ontario .....                             | \$52 |
| F. Saskatchewan .....                        | \$55 |
| (ii) Arrears of Taxes.....                   | \$56 |
| (iii) Incompatible Offices.....              | \$59 |
| A. General.....                              | \$59 |
| B. Alberta .....                             | \$66 |
| C. British Columbia .....                    | \$67 |
| D. Manitoba.....                             | \$68 |
| E. Ontario .....                             | \$69 |
| F. Saskatchewan .....                        | \$74 |
| (iv) Interest in Contract or Matter .....    | \$75 |
| A. General.....                              | \$75 |
| B. Alberta .....                             | \$86 |
| C. Ontario .....                             | \$87 |
| D. Saskatchewan.....                         | \$89 |
| (v) Claim Against Municipality.....          | \$90 |
| A. Alberta .....                             | \$90 |
| B. Ontario .....                             | \$91 |
| C. Saskatchewan.....                         | \$92 |
| (vi) Other Grounds for Disqualification..... | \$93 |
| A. General.....                              | \$93 |
| B. Alberta .....                             | \$94 |
| C. British Columbia .....                    | \$95 |
| D. Manitoba.....                             | \$96 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (e) Notice of Disqualification .....           | §97  |
| 3. Election .....                              | §100 |
| (a) General .....                              | §100 |
| (b) Declaration of Office .....                | §101 |
| (i) Alberta .....                              | §101 |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                    | §102 |
| (iii) Manitoba .....                           | §103 |
| (iv) Ontario .....                             | §104 |
| (v) Saskatchewan .....                         | §107 |
| (c) Disclaimer .....                           | §108 |
| (i) General .....                              | §108 |
| (ii) Alberta .....                             | §110 |
| (iii) Manitoba .....                           | §111 |
| (iv) Ontario .....                             | §112 |
| (v) Saskatchewan .....                         | §116 |
| (d) Disqualification After Election .....      | §117 |
| (i) General .....                              | §117 |
| A. Introduction .....                          | §117 |
| B. Alberta .....                               | §121 |
| C. British Columbia .....                      | §122 |
| D. Manitoba .....                              | §123 |
| E. Ontario .....                               | §124 |
| F. Saskatchewan .....                          | §127 |
| (ii) Disclosure of Conflict of Interest .....  | §128 |
| A. Statutes .....                              | §128 |
| B. Duty to Disclose .....                      | §131 |
| C. Not to Vote, Participate or Influence ..... | §132 |
| D. Record of Disclosure .....                  | §136 |
| E. Pecuniary Interest .....                    | §137 |
| F. Corporations .....                          | §142 |
| G. Employees .....                             | §144 |
| H. Relatives .....                             | §145 |
| I. Closely Connected Individuals .....         | §146 |
| J. Community of Interest .....                 | §147 |
| K. Insignificant Interest .....                | §151 |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — ADMINISTRATION AND  
COUNCIL

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| L. Proceedings to Unseat Member .....          | §152 |
| M. Exculpatory Provisions.....                 | §158 |
| (iii) Voting Illegally .....                   | §160 |
| A. Alberta .....                               | §160 |
| B. British Columbia .....                      | §161 |
| C. Manitoba .....                              | §162 |
| D. Ontario .....                               | §163 |
| E. Saskatchewan .....                          | §166 |
| (iv) Bribery and Corrupt Practices .....       | §167 |
| A. Alberta .....                               | §167 |
| B. British Columbia .....                      | §168 |
| C. Ontario .....                               | §169 |
| D. Saskatchewan.....                           | §170 |
| 4. Vacancies.....                              | §171 |
| (a) General .....                              | §171 |
| (i) Manitoba .....                             | §171 |
| (ii) Ontario .....                             | §172 |
| (iii) Saskatchewan .....                       | §177 |
| (b) Vacancy Declared by Council .....          | §178 |
| (i) General.....                               | §178 |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                    | §181 |
| (iii) Ontario .....                            | §182 |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                         | §186 |
| (c) Declaring Seat Vacant by Court Order ..... | §188 |
| (i) Alberta .....                              | §188 |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                    | §189 |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                            | §190 |
| (iv) Ontario .....                             | §192 |
| (v) Saskatchewan.....                          | §194 |
| (d) Vacancy Created by Resignation.....        | §195 |
| (i) General.....                               | §195 |
| (ii) Alberta .....                             | §199 |
| (iii) British Columbia .....                   | §200 |
| (iv) Manitoba .....                            | §201 |
| (v) Ontario .....                              | §202 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (vi) Saskatchewan.....                              | §203 |
| 5. Filling Vacancies.....                           | §204 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §204 |
| (b) Holding a By-Election .....                     | §205 |
| (i) General.....                                    | §205 |
| (ii) Alberta .....                                  | §206 |
| (iii) British Columbia.....                         | §207 |
| (iv) Manitoba .....                                 | §208 |
| (v) Ontario .....                                   | §210 |
| (vi) Saskatchewan.....                              | §213 |
| (c) Election by Council.....                        | §215 |
| (i) Alberta .....                                   | §215 |
| (ii) Manitoba.....                                  | §217 |
| (iii) Ontario.....                                  | §218 |
| (d) New Election or Awarding Seat to Runner-Up..... | §222 |
| 6. Personal Liability .....                         | §224 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §224 |
| (i) Introduction.....                               | §224 |
| (ii) Alberta .....                                  | §229 |
| (iii) British Columbia.....                         | §230 |
| (iv) Manitoba .....                                 | §231 |
| (v) Ontario .....                                   | §233 |
| (vi) Saskatchewan.....                              | §234 |
| (b) Liability for Wrongful Act of Corporation.....  | §235 |
| (c) Liability on Notes and Contracts.....           | §236 |
| (d) Protection from Actions .....                   | §237 |
| (e) Costs of Proceedings.....                       | §239 |
| 7. Enforcement of Statutory Duty .....              | §243 |
| 8. Libel and Slander Actions .....                  | §246 |
| 9. Remuneration .....                               | §250 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §250 |
| (b) Alberta .....                                   | §254 |
| (c) British Columbia.....                           | §255 |
| (d) Manitoba .....                                  | §256 |
| (e) Ontario .....                                   | §257 |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — ADMINISTRATION AND  
COUNCIL

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (f) Saskatchewan .....                   | §262 |
| 10. Contracts With the Corporation ..... | §263 |
| (a) General .....                        | §263 |
| (b) Alberta .....                        | §264 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                       | §265 |
| (d) Ontario .....                        | §266 |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....                   | §267 |
| <b>II. The Municipal Council</b> .....   | §268 |
| 1. General .....                         | §268 |
| 2. Status .....                          | §276 |
| 3. Functions .....                       | §283 |
| 4. Organization .....                    | §293 |
| 5. Composition .....                     | §296 |
| (a) General .....                        | §296 |
| (b) Specific Provisions .....            | §303 |
| (i) Alberta .....                        | §303 |
| (ii) British Columbia .....              | §304 |
| (iii) Manitoba .....                     | §305 |
| (iv) Ontario .....                       | §306 |
| A. Upper-tier Councils .....             | §306 |
| B. Regional Municipalities .....         | §309 |
| C. Local Municipalities .....            | §310 |
| D. Police Villages .....                 | §314 |
| (v) Saskatchewan .....                   | §315 |
| 6. Meetings .....                        | §316 |
| <b>III. Officers and Employees</b> ..... | §317 |
| 1. Definitions .....                     | §317 |
| (a) Officers .....                       | §317 |
| (b) Officers and Employees .....         | §326 |
| 2. Power to Create Offices .....         | §329 |
| 3. Appointment .....                     | §330 |
| (a) General .....                        | §330 |
| (b) Appointing Authority .....           | §335 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Manner of Appointment .....                               | §337        |
| (d) Filling Vacancies .....                                   | §340        |
| (e) Declaration of Office.....                                | §341        |
| 4. Tenure.....  | §342        |
| 5. Termination of Service .....                               | §346        |
| (a) Dismissal or Removal .....                                | §346        |
| (b) Suspension .....  | §361        |
| (c) Manner of Exercise .....                                  | §362        |
| (d) Resignation .....   | §364        |
| (e) Quo Warranto .....  | §366        |
| 6. Remuneration .....   | §367        |
| 7. Authority.....   | §374        |
| 8. Duties, Liabilities and Immunities .....                   | §379        |
| (a) Duties .....  | §379        |
| (b) Liabilities .....   | §383        |
| (c) Immunities .....  | §385        |
| (d) Misrepresentation by Officials.....                       | §387        |
| (e) Surety Bonds.....   | §388        |
| (f) Certification.....  | §389        |
| 9. Various Officers.....                                      | §390        |
| (a) Clerk.....  | §390        |
| (b) Treasurer .....   | §392        |
| (c) Auditor .....   | §397        |
| <b>IV. Revenues, Expenditures and Fiscal Management .....</b> | <b>§398</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §398        |
| 2. Expenditures .....   | §405        |
| (a) General .....   | §405        |
| (b) Mode of Exercise .....                                    | §410        |
| (c) Statutory Authority .....                                 | §412        |
| (d) Under Special Statutory Authority .....                   | §415        |
| (e) By Outgoing Council After Election.....                   | §416        |
| (f) Statutory Restrictions.....                               | §417        |
| (g) Ultra Vires Expenditures.....                             | §421        |
| (i) General.....  | §421        |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — ADMINISTRATION AND  
COUNCIL

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (ii) Extra-Territorial Expenditures .....          | \$425        |
| (iii) Grants to Organizations and Individuals..... | \$427        |
| (iv) Payments to Council Representatives .....     | \$432        |
| (v) Travelling and Entertainment Expenses .....    | \$434        |
| (vi) Court Costs .....                             | \$436        |
| (vii) Miscellaneous .....                          | \$438        |
| (h) Injunction to Restrain Illegal Payments .....  | \$439        |
| (i) Recovery of Funds Illegally Paid Out .....     | \$444        |
| 3. Accounts .....                                  | \$446        |
| 4. Municipal Audits.....                           | \$450        |
| 5. Sinking Funds .....                             | \$455        |
| (a) General .....                                  | \$455        |
| (b) Rates.....                                     | \$459        |
| (c) Deficits and Surpluses.....                    | \$460        |
| (d) Investments .....                              | \$462        |
| (e) Diversion.....                                 | \$463        |
| 6. Reserve Funds .....                             | \$465        |
| 7. Investigation .....                             | \$466        |
| 8. Receivership .....                              | \$468        |
| <b>V. Borrowing and Debentures .....</b>           | <b>\$475</b> |
| 1. Power to Incur Debts.....                       | \$475        |
| (a) General .....                                  | \$475        |
| (b) Restrictions .....                             | \$480        |
| (c) Purposes .....                                 | \$483        |
| (d) Debt Limit .....                               | \$484        |
| 2. Power to Borrow.....                            | \$489        |
| (a) General .....                                  | \$489        |
| (b) Statutory.....                                 | \$494        |
| (c) Limits .....                                   | \$499        |
| (d) Statutory Conditions.....                      | \$505        |
| (e) Power to Guarantee .....                       | \$508        |
| 3. Money By-Laws.....                              | \$509        |
| (a) General .....                                  | \$509        |
| (b) Statutory Recitals and Contents.....           | \$512        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (i) General.....                                    | §512 |
| (ii) Amount of Debt Created .....                   | §514 |
| (iii) Object .....                                  | §516 |
| (iv) Amount of Rateable Property .....              | §518 |
| (v) Approval of Provincial Authorities .....        | §520 |
| (c) Period of Loan.....                             | §522 |
| (d) Effective Date.....                             | §525 |
| (e) Provision for Repayment and Special Rates ..... | §527 |
| (f) Ratification of Ratepayers .....                | §537 |
| (i) General.....                                    | §537 |
| (ii) Exemptions Respecting Submission.....          | §540 |
| (g) Approval of Provincial Authority.....           | §542 |
| (h) Repeal .....                                    | §553 |
| (i) Amendment.....                                  | §555 |
| (j) Registration.....                               | §562 |
| (k) Validation.....                                 | §566 |
| (i) By Promulgation .....                           | §566 |
| (ii) By Registration.....                           | §567 |
| (iii) By Approval of Provincial Board .....         | §570 |
| (iv) By Payment of Interest and Principal .....     | §578 |
| (l) Invalidity.....                                 | §581 |
| 4. Bonds and Debentures .....                       | §584 |
| (a) General.....                                    | §584 |
| (b) Power to Issue Debentures .....                 | §591 |
| (c) Negotiability.....                              | §596 |
| (d) Purposes and Objects .....                      | §598 |
| (e) Interest and Interest Coupons .....             | §600 |
| (f) Repayment.....                                  | §605 |
| (i) General.....                                    | §605 |
| (ii) Time and Place of Payment .....                | §609 |
| (iii) Medium of Payment .....                       | §611 |
| (g) Redemption and Refunding .....                  | §617 |
| (h) Form.....                                       | §619 |
| (i) General.....                                    | §619 |
| (ii) Execution .....                                | §622 |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — ADMINISTRATION AND  
COUNCIL

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (i) Issue and Sale.....                           | §624        |
| (j) Date.....                                     | §629        |
| (k) Validation.....                               | §630        |
| (l) Rights and Obligations of Holders.....        | §636        |
| (i) Holders for Value.....                        | §636        |
| (ii) Rights of Holders Inter Se.....              | §642        |
| (iii) Transfer.....                               | §644        |
| (iv) Contract to Take Debentures .....            | §646        |
| (v) Remedies on Default.....                      | §648        |
| (vi) Modification of Rights.....                  | §653        |
| (m) Guarantees .....                              | §656        |
| (n) Hypothecation.....                            | §658        |
| (o) Right to Receive and Disburse Monies.....     | §661        |
| (i) General.....                                  | §661        |
| (ii) Surplus .....                                | §665        |
| 5. Temporary Borrowing.....                       | §668        |
| (a) General .....                                 | §668        |
| (b) Power to Make Promissory Notes.....           | §670        |
| (c) In Anticipation of Revenue.....               | §680        |
| (i) General.....                                  | §680        |
| (ii) Purposes.....                                | §686        |
| (iii) Limitation on Amount .....                  | §687        |
| (iv) Validity or Invalidity.....                  | §691        |
| (d) To Finance Capital Expenditures .....         | §695        |
| (e) Bank Overdraft .....                          | §699        |
| <b>VI. Municipal Contracts.....</b>               | <b>§701</b> |
| 1. General .....                                  | §701        |
| (a) Capacity to Contract.....                     | §701        |
| (b) Natural Person Powers.....                    | §708        |
| (c) Statutory Restrictions and Limitations .....  | §709        |
| (d) Formal Requisites Essentials of Contract..... | §712        |
| (i) General.....                                  | §712        |
| (ii) Writing.....                                 | §714        |
| (iii) Seal .....                                  | §715        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (e) Estoppel.....   | §722        |
| 2. Power Of Officers And Agents To Bind Corporation .....         | §724        |
| (a) General .....   | §724        |
| (b) Officers .....  | §725        |
| (c) Municipal Employees .....                                     | §727        |
| (d) Statutory Agents .....  | §728        |
| (e) Committees .....  | §730        |
| (f) Ratification of Unauthorized Contract .....                   | §731        |
| 3. Ultra Vires, Invalid and Illegal Contracts.....                | §733        |
| (a) General .....   | §733        |
| (b) Contracts Requiring Electoral or Government<br>Approval ..... | §737        |
| (c) Recovery of Money Paid .....                                  | §739        |
| (d) Contracts Restricting Legislative Powers.....                 | §741        |
| (e) Contracts with Council Members .....                          | §744        |
| 4. Authorization: By-Law or Resolution.....                       | §747        |
| (a) General .....   | §747        |
| (b) Executed Contracts .....                                      | §753        |
| (c) Contract in Performance of Statutory Duty .....               | §757        |
| (d) Ratification of Unauthorized Contract .....                   | §758        |
| 5. Contracts Unsupported By Available Funds.....                  | §759        |
| (a) General .....   | §759        |
| (b) Executed Contracts.....                                       | §762        |
| 6. Rescission by Repeal of By-Law or Resolution .....             | §763        |
| 7. Statutory Validation Of Agreements.....                        | §764        |
| 8. Enforcement of Obligations in Favour of Inhabitants .....      | §767        |
| 9. Construction Agreements.....                                   | §770        |
| (a) Bids and Tenders.....   | §770        |
| (b) Extra Work .....  | §784        |
| (c) Engineer Acting as Arbitrator.....                            | §785        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Corporate Property.....</b>                               | <b>§786</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §786        |
| (a) Power to Hold Land.....                                       | §786        |
| (b) Power to Hold in Trust or on Condition .....                  | §788        |
| (c) Lack of Power to Acquire or Dispose.....                      | §789        |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — ADMINISTRATION AND  
COUNCIL

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (d) Mode of Acquisition and Disposal.....                            | §790        |
| (e) Land Defined .....   | §795        |
| 2. Acquisition .....   | §797        |
| (a) Extent of Power.....   | §797        |
| (b) Purpose of Acquisition.....                                      | §800        |
| (c) Land Outside Municipal Limits.....                               | §804        |
| (d) Provision for Payment.....                                       | §806        |
| (e) Extent of Judicial Control.....                                  | §807        |
| (f) Registration of Documents .....                                  | §808        |
| 3. Right to Erect Buildings.....                                     | §809        |
| 4. Use and Change of Use.....  | §811        |
| (a) General .....  | §811        |
| (b) Lands Held Subject to a Trust.....                               | §813        |
| (c) Lands Held Subject to a Condition .....                          | §815        |
| (d) Remedy for Breach of Trust or Condition.....                     | §816        |
| (e) Public Use of Municipal Lands and Buildings .....                | §817        |
| 5. Disposal of Municipal Property .....                              | §820        |
| (a) Power of Alienation — General.....                               | §820        |
| (b) Leasing of Municipal Real Property .....                         | §824        |
| (c) Mode of Sale and Price.....                                      | §826        |
| (d) Judicial Review .....  | §831        |
| (e) Prescriptive Rights.....   | §833        |
| <b>VIII. Administration of Justice, Policing and Inquiries .....</b> | <b>§835</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §835        |
| 2. Court House and Jail Expenditures.....                            | §838        |
| (a) General .....  | §838        |
| (b) Erection and Maintenance of Buildings .....                      | §839        |
| (c) Maintenance of Prisoners .....                                   | §840        |
| 3. Investigation by Judge .....                                      | §842        |
| <b>IX. Municipal Arbitrations .....</b>                              | <b>§849</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §849        |
| (a) Definitions.....   | §849        |
| (b) Compulsory Arbitration .....                                     | §852        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (c) Power to Arbitrate .....   | \$854 |
| (d) Applicability of Statutes.....                                   | \$858 |
| (e) Arbitration under the Ontario Municipal Arbitrations<br>Act..... | \$862 |
| 2. Procedure .....   | \$865 |
| (a) General .....  | \$865 |
| (b) Qualifications of Arbitrators .....                              | \$869 |
| (c) Appointment of Arbitrator .....                                  | \$871 |
| 3. Expropriation of or Damage to Land.....                           | \$875 |
| 4. The Award.....  | \$876 |
| (a) Effect of Award on Expropriation.....                            | \$876 |
| (b) Power to Allow Interest.....                                     | \$878 |
| (c) Statement in Writing .....                                       | \$880 |
| (d) Reasons .....  | \$881 |
| (e) Power to Amend.....  | \$882 |
| (f) Enforcement of Award .....                                       | \$884 |
| (g) Cost of Municipal Arbitrations.....                              | \$886 |
| 5. Review of and Appeals From .....                                  | \$887 |
| (a) General .....  | \$887 |
| (b) Limitation for .....   | \$890 |
| (c) Appeals upon Quantum of Award.....                               | \$892 |
| (d) Appeals on Question of Law .....                                 | \$893 |
| (e) Remission of Award.....  | \$894 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Alternate Dispute Resolution; Administrative Law; Agency; Building Contracts; Contracts; Criminal Law — Offences; Elections; Employment Law; Expropriation; Labour Law; Municipal and School Taxation; Personal Property; Police; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Real Property; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land; Wrongful Dismissal

# MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — BY-LAWS, PERMITS AND LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

Adapted from Ian MacF. Rogers’  
*The Law of Canadian Municipal Corporations, 2nd Edition*  
by Todd Desourdie, B.A., M.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

## Table of Regulations

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>I. By-Laws General .....</b>             | <b>§1</b> |
| 1. Definitions .....                        | §1        |
| (a) By-Law.....                             | §1        |
| (b) Resolution .....                        | §9        |
| 2. Form and Content .....                   | §13       |
| (a) General .....                           | §13       |
| (b) Subject Matter and Title .....          | §17       |
| (c) Plurality of Matters.....               | §18       |
| (d) Recitals.....                           | §20       |
| (e) Definitions.....                        | §23       |
| (f) Authority to Enact.....                 | §26       |
| (g) Enacting Clause .....                   | §30       |
| (h) Statutory Exceptions.....               | §31       |
| (i) Sched.s .....                           | §32       |
| (j) Effective Date.....                     | §36       |
| 3. When By-Law Necessary .....              | §40       |
| (a) General .....                           | §40       |
| (b) Statutory Requirements .....            | §42       |
| (c) Exercising Powers Outside the Act ..... | §51       |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — BY-LAWS, PERMITS AND  
LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (d) Estoppel from Pleading No By-Law .....               | §54  |
| 4. When By-Law Unnecessary .....                         | §58  |
| (a) General .....  | §58  |
| (b) Statutory Provisions .....                           | §60  |
| (c) To Express Assent or Leave .....                     | §64  |
| (d) Discharge of Statutory Duty .....                    | §66  |
| (e) Enactment of Certain Regulations .....               | §69  |
| (f) Appointment and Dismissal of Officials.....          | §71  |
| (g) Matters of Detail .....                              | §72  |
| 5. Conditions Precedent to Enactment .....               | §74  |
| (a) General .....  | §74  |
| (b) Curative Provisions .....                            | §81  |
| (c) Presumption of Regularity .....                      | §83  |
| 6. Authority to Enact.....                               | §85  |
| (a) General .....  | §85  |
| (b) Loss of Authority .....                              | §91  |
| 7. Notice of Intention to Pass.....                      | §95  |
| (a) General .....  | §95  |
| (b) Sufficiency of Notice .....                          | §106 |
| (c) Non-Conformity of By-Law with Notice.....            | §113 |
| 8. Authentication — Signing and Sealing .....            | §115 |
| (a) General .....  | §115 |
| (b) Sealing .....  | §119 |
| (c) Time for Sealing.....                                | §121 |
| (d) Signing .....  | §124 |
| (e) Time for Signing .....                               | §127 |
| (f) Duty of Head to Sign .....                           | §129 |
| 9. Operation and Effect.....                             | §132 |
| (a) Date By-Law Comes into Force .....                   | §132 |
| (b) Duration .....                                       | §138 |
| (c) Territorial Effect .....                             | §140 |
| (d) Effect on Persons .....                              | §143 |
| (e) Retroactivity .....                                  | §146 |
| (f) Conflict of By-Laws .....                            | §149 |
| 10. Order of Passing By-Laws Having a Common Object..... | §150 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 11. Enactment .....                                 | §152 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §152 |
| (b) Passing .....                                   | §153 |
| (c) Ratification.....                               | §158 |
| (d) Approval and Assent.....                        | §161 |
| (e) Promulgation.....                               | §166 |
| (f) Publication.....                                | §172 |
| (g) Registration.....                               | §181 |
| 12. Validation .....                                | §187 |
| (a) Curative Provisions.....                        | §187 |
| (b) By Special Legislation .....                    | §198 |
| (c) Suspension of Remedy Pending Validation .....   | §203 |
| 13. Judicial Construction of By-Laws.....           | §205 |
| (a) General.....                                    | §205 |
| (b) Rules of Construction.....                      | §210 |
| (c) By-Laws Restricting Common Law Rights .....     | §212 |
| (d) Building Restriction By-Laws .....              | §213 |
| (e) Local Improvement and Drainage By-Laws .....    | §218 |
| (f) By-Laws Granting Privileges .....               | §219 |
| 14. Enforcement and Sanctions .....                 | §220 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §220 |
| (b) Fine .....                                      | §242 |
| (c) Imprisonment .....                              | §254 |
| (d) Seizure and Forfeiture.....                     | §257 |
| (e) Destruction or Removal of Property.....         | §261 |
| (f) Injunction to Restrain Violation.....           | §266 |
| (g) By Corporation Doing the Thing Required .....   | §270 |
| (h) Right to Enter and Inspect.....                 | §273 |
| (i) General.....                                    | §273 |
| (ii) Alberta .....                                  | §279 |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                                 | §280 |
| (iv) Ontario .....                                  | §281 |
| (v) Saskatchewan.....                               | §282 |
| (i) Creation or Enlargement of Civil Liability..... | §283 |
| 15. Proof of By-Law .....                           | §287 |



MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — BY-LAWS, PERMITS AND  
LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 16. Amendment and Repeal.....                       | §296        |
| (a) Amendment.....                                  | §296        |
| (b) Repeal .....                                    | §299        |
| (i) Power to Repeal.....                            | §299        |
| (ii) Repeal by Implication.....                     | §307        |
| (iii) By-Laws Affecting Vested Rights .....         | §309        |
| (iv) Repeal of Repealing By-Law .....               | §314        |
| (v) Repeal of Enabling Statute on By-Law .....      | §315        |
| (vi) Effect of Annexation or Change of Status ..... | §319        |
| (c) Waiver and Suspension .....                     | §320        |
| <b>II. By-Laws Upon Petition .....</b>              | <b>§323</b> |
| 1. Statutory Petitions in General .....             | §323        |
| 2. Sufficiency of Petition .....                    | §335        |
| (a) Necessity .....                                 | §335        |
| (b) Petitions Having a Common Object.....           | §338        |
| (c) Form and Contents of Petition.....              | §341        |
| (d) Alterations in Petition .....                   | §346        |
| (e) Determination of Sufficiency .....              | §348        |
| (f) Certificate of Sufficiency.....                 | §360        |
| 3. Right to Withdraw .....                          | §367        |
| 4. Procedure.....                                   | §371        |
| 5. By-Law to Conform to Terms of Petition.....      | §376        |
| 6. Duty to Enact or Submit By-Law .....             | §378        |
| <b>III. By-Laws Upon Requisition.....</b>           | <b>§385</b> |
| 1. General .....                                    | §385        |
| 2. Sufficiency of Requisition .....                 | §388        |
| 3. Effect of Non-Compliance By Council.....         | §390        |
| 4. Requisitions for School Purposes.....            | §394        |
| (a) General .....                                   | §394        |
| (b) Reconsideration by Council.....                 | §401        |
| (c) Duty of Council.....                            | §402        |
| 5. Requisitions By Various Boards .....             | §404        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**IV. By-Laws Requiring Approval of External Authority** .....\$405

- 1. General .....\$405
- 2. When Approval to be Secured .....\$411
- 3. Effect of Lack of Consent .....\$414
- 4. Validating Effect .....\$418
- 5. Approval of Government.....\$420
- 6. Approval of Municipal Board or Commission.....\$423

**V. By-Laws Requiring Electoral Assent**.....\$426

- 1. General .....\$426
- 2. Effect of Failure to Submit .....\$439
- 3. Form of Submission.....\$449
- 4. Enforcing Submission .....\$452
- 5. Restraining Submission.....\$454
- 6. Procedure Prior to Taking the Vote.....\$458
  - (a) Time for Taking the Vote .....\$458
  - (b) Necessity for a Separate By-law .....\$462
  - (c) Polling Subdivisions and Places .....\$463
  - (d) Appointment of Scrutineers .....\$464
  - (e) Publication of By-law and Notice of Vote .....\$467
- 7. Non Compliance With Statutory Provisions.....\$478
  - (a) General .....\$478
  - (b) Publication Requirements.....\$484
- 8. Right to Vote on By-laws and Questions.....\$487
  - (a) General .....\$487
  - (b) Money By-laws .....\$492
  - (c) Voters' Lists .....\$493
- 9. Procedure on Voting .....\$496
  - (a) General .....\$496
  - (b) Form of Ballot.....\$501
- 10. Summing Up the Vote.....\$503
  - (a) Duty of Clerk.....\$503
  - (b) Votes Required for Assent.....\$507
  - (c) More Than a Majority.....\$510
  - (d) Equality of Votes .....\$513

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — BY-LAWS, PERMITS AND  
LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 11. Judicial Recount.....                                       | \$514        |
| (a) Right to Recount.....                                       | \$514        |
| (b) Who May Seek a Recount.....                                 | \$516        |
| (c) Finality of Judge’s Findings .....                          | \$517        |
| 12. Enactment of By-law .....                                   | \$518        |
| (a) General .....   | \$518        |
| (b) Premature Passing .....                                     | \$519        |
| (c) Time Within Which to be Passed.....                         | \$521        |
| (d) Duty to Pass By-law for Which There Has Been<br>Assent..... | \$522        |
| (e) Reconsideration of Refusal to Pass .....                    | \$523        |
| (f) By-Law Not to be Amended.....                               | \$524        |
| (g) Restraining Final Passing.....                              | \$526        |
| 13. Submission of Second By-Law After Adverse Vote .....        | \$527        |
| 14. Enquiry Into Vote Upon Motion to Quash.....                 | \$531        |
| 15. Onus of Proof in Attacking By-Law .....                     | \$532        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>VI. Trade Regulation and Licensing By-Laws .....</b>         | <b>\$536</b> |
| 1. Regulatory and Licensing Powers Generally.....               | \$536        |
| (a) Nature and Extent.....                                      | \$536        |
| (b) Source and Scope .....                                      | \$540        |
| (c) Judicial Construction .....                                 | \$551        |
| (d) Right to Prohibit.....                                      | \$553        |
| (e) Prohibition Against Monopoly.....                           | \$562        |
| (f) Manner of Exercise.....                                     | \$566        |
| (i) General.....  | \$566        |
| (ii) Good Faith.....  | \$570        |
| (iii) Equality of Operation .....                               | \$571        |
| (g) To Whom Applicable.....                                     | \$580        |
| 2. Licensing Powers and By-Laws .....                           | \$586        |
| (a) Nature and Extent.....                                      | \$586        |
| (i) General.....  | \$586        |
| (ii) Prohibition Without Licence.....                           | \$594        |
| (iii) Qualifications of Applicant.....                          | \$596        |
| (iv) Limit on Number of Licences .....                          | \$603        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (v) Conditions Attached to Licence .....            | §611 |
| (b) Delegation of Authority .....                   | §616 |
| (c) Right to Grant or Refuse.....                   | §624 |
| (i) General.....                                    | §624 |
| (ii) Grounds of Refusal or Revocation.....          | §634 |
| (iii) Judicial Review of Refusal.....               | §646 |
| (d) Fees .....                                      | §658 |
| (i) General.....                                    | §658 |
| (ii) Limitation on Amount .....                     | §669 |
| (e) Cancellation or Suspension .....                | §673 |
| 3. Early Closing By-Laws.....                       | §682 |
| (a) Nature and Extent of Authority .....            | §682 |
| (b) Exceptions and Exemptions .....                 | §703 |
| (c) By-Laws Passed on Initiative of Council.....    | §708 |
| (d) Petition for Enactment .....                    | §710 |
| (e) Classification of Shops.....                    | §711 |
| (f) Principal Trade .....                           | §715 |
| 4. Particular Calling or Thing.....                 | §716 |
| (a) Amusement Places.....                           | §716 |
| (b) Auctioneers .....                               | §739 |
| (c) Bill Distributors and Sign Painters.....        | §740 |
| (d) Billiard Tables .....                           | §745 |
| (e) Businesses and Professions Generally .....      | §747 |
| (f) Butchers and Slaughter Houses.....              | §751 |
| (g) Cabs, Buses and Drivers .....                   | §752 |
| (h) Heating and Cooking Appliances .....            | §770 |
| (i) Garages and Service Stations .....              | §771 |
| (j) Parking Garages and Parking Lots.....           | §777 |
| (k) Hawkers and Pedlars.....                        | §778 |
| (l) Junk, Second-Hand Shops and Salvage Yards ..... | §785 |
| (m) Restaurants.....                                | §786 |
| (n) Tourist and Trailer Camps.....                  | §788 |
| (o) Transient Traders.....                          | §792 |
| (p) Trucks and Commercial Vehicles.....             | §797 |
| (q) Group Homes .....                               | §803 |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — BY-LAWS, PERMITS AND  
LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (r) Trailers.....                                   | §804        |
| (s) Motor Vehicle Racing .....                      | §805        |
| <b>VII. Building Construction and Permits .....</b> | <b>§806</b> |
| 1. General Principles of Construction Law.....      | §806        |
| 2. The Building Permit System .....                 | §812        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                    | §812        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                          | §813        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                  | §818        |
| (d) Ontario .....                                   | §821        |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....                               | §824        |
| (f) Application for Permit.....                     | §826        |
| (g) Effect of Permit.....                           | §833        |
| (h) Delay or Refusal of Permit.....                 | §848        |
| (i) Revocation of a Permit .....                    | §856        |
| (j) Demolition Permits .....                        | §864        |
| (k) Unsafe and Unsightly Premises .....             | §872        |
| (i) General.....                                    | §872        |
| (ii) Alberta .....                                  | §881        |
| (iii) British Columbia.....                         | §883        |
| (iv) Manitoba .....                                 | §884        |
| (v) Ontario .....                                   | §885        |
| (vi) Saskatchewan.....                              | §888        |
| 3. Mandamus to Compel Issuance.....                 | §889        |
| 4. Building Inspector.....                          | §914        |
| (a) General.....                                    | §914        |
| (b) Inspection.....                                 | §918        |
| (i) General.....                                    | §918        |
| (ii) Alberta .....                                  | §929        |
| (iii) British Columbia.....                         | §930        |
| (iv) Manitoba .....                                 | §931        |
| (v) Ontario .....                                   | §932        |
| (vi) Saskatchewan.....                              | §934        |
| (c) Appeals.....                                    | §935        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
| (d) Liability of Municipality for Faulty Permits or<br>Inspections ..... | \$948         |
| 5. Sign Regulation.....  | \$955         |
| <b>VIII. Fixed Assessment By-Laws and Bonuses .....</b>                  | <b>\$963</b>  |
| 1. General .....   | \$963         |
| (a) Nature of Authority .....  | \$963         |
| (b) Definition of Bonus.....   | \$968         |
| (c) Bonus Prohibited .....   | \$978         |
| 2. Extent of Authority.....  | \$980         |
| (a) Grant of Fixed Assessment or Tax Exemption.....                      | \$980         |
| (b) Limited to Lands Used in Manufacturing.....                          | \$985         |
| (c) Consent of Established Businesses .....                              | \$987         |
| (d) Method of Enactment.....   | \$988         |
| (e) Terms and Conditions of Grant .....                                  | \$990         |
| (f) Business Established Elsewhere .....                                 | \$993         |
| (g) Effect on School and Local Improvement Taxes .....                   | \$995         |
| 3. Judicial Control Over Bonus By-Laws.....                              | \$997         |
| 4. Rights and Liabilities Created Thereby .....                          | \$999         |
| (a) Assignability .....  | \$999         |
| (b) Damages for Breach of Agreement.....                                 | \$1000        |
| (c) Recovery of Remitted Taxes.....                                      | \$1004        |
| (d) Repeal of By-Law .....   | \$1005        |
| 5. Sale of Lease or Lands for Industrial Sites.....                      | \$1006        |
| <b>IX. Local and Other Public Improvements .....</b>                     | <b>\$1008</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$1008        |
| (a) Nature of Authority .....  | \$1008        |
| (b) Judicial Construction.....   | \$1017        |
| 2. Source and Extent of Authority .....                                  | \$1018        |
| (a) Legislation.....   | \$1018        |
| (b) Classes of Local Improvements.....                                   | \$1028        |
| (c) Mode of Exercise .....   | \$1033        |
| (d) Acquisition of Lands.....  | \$1035        |
| 3. Judicial Control.....   | \$1038        |
| (a) General .....  | \$1038        |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — BY-LAWS, PERMITS AND  
LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (b) Non-observance of Statutory Requirements.....          | §1040        |
| (c) Bad Faith.....   | §1041        |
| (d) After Certification of Special Roll .....              | §1043        |
| 4. Works Undertaken on Petition .....                      | §1044        |
| (a) General .....  | §1044        |
| (b) Signatures Required .....                              | §1049        |
| (c) Withdrawal.....  | §1051        |
| (d) Sufficiency .....                                      | §1052        |
| (e) Work to be as Petitioned For.....                      | §1054        |
| 5. Works Undertaken on Council Initiative .....            | §1055        |
| (a) General .....  | §1055        |
| (b) Notice of Intention to Proceed .....                   | §1057        |
| (c) Want of or Irregular Publication or Service .....      | §1061        |
| (d) Counter Petitions .....                                | §1062        |
| 6. Works Constructed on Sanitary Grounds .....             | §1067        |
| 7. Utility Connections and Highway Improvements.....       | §1068        |
| 8. Sewers and Sewage Systems and Works.....                | §1069        |
| (a) General .....  | §1069        |
| (b) Authority to Construct .....                           | §1073        |
| (c) Approval of Water Resources.....                       | §1075        |
| (d) Extension of Sewers into Adjacent Municipalities.....  | §1078        |
| (e) Private Sewer Connections.....                         | §1080        |
| 9. Local Improvement and Other Special Rates .....         | §1081        |
| (a) General .....  | §1081        |
| (b) Extent of Judicial Control.....                        | §1092        |
| 10. Borrowing for Local Improvements and Other Works ..... | §1097        |
| (a) General .....  | §1097        |
| (b) Surplus Funds .....                                    | §1100        |
| 11. Reconstruction .....                                   | §1101        |
| 12. Repairs .....  | §1103        |
| <b>X. Miscellaneous Matters .....</b>                      | <b>§1104</b> |
| 1. Keeping of Animals.....                                 | §1104        |
| 2. Animals Running At Large .....                          | §1109        |
| 3. Cemeteries .....  | §1115        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 4. Dogs: Licensing of and Running at Large ..... | §1122        |
| 5. Explosives and Combustible Substances .....   | §1131        |
| 6. Fences .....                                  | §1133        |
| 7. Garbage.....                                  | §1135        |
| 8. Markets .....                                 | §1148        |
| 9. Noises .....                                  | §1151        |
| 10. Nuisances.....                               | §1161        |
| 11. Offensive and Noxious Trades .....           | §1170        |
| 12. Parks and Recreation Grounds .....           | §1173        |
| 13. Pits and Quarries.....                       | §1181        |
| 14. Plebiscites .....                            | §1187        |
| 15. Privies and Comfort Stations.....            | §1197        |
| 16. Public Health.....                           | §1199        |
| 17. Public Libraries .....                       | §1213        |
| 18. Signs .....                                  | §1217        |
| 19. Smoke Prevention .....                       | §1221        |
| 20. Tree Planting and Trimming By-Laws .....     | §1228        |
| <b>XI. Attacks on By-Laws .....</b>              | <b>§1234</b> |
| 1. Proceedings to Determine Validity .....       | §1234        |
| (a) General .....                                | §1234        |
| (b) Jurisdiction of the Courts.....              | §1236        |
| (c) Burden of Proof.....                         | §1239        |
| (d) Who Can Attack.....                          | §1240        |
| (e) Loss of Right to Attack.....                 | §1244        |
| (f) Acts under Illegal By-laws.....              | §1246        |
| 2. Applications to Quash.....                    | §1248        |
| (a) Nature of Remedy .....                       | §1248        |
| (b) Jurisdiction of Court.....                   | §1253        |
| (c) Right to Apply.....                          | §1255        |
| (d) Right to Oppose Application .....            | §1265        |
| (e) Time for Applying.....                       | §1267        |
| (f) Failure to Apply in Time.....                | §1277        |
| (g) Practice and Procedure.....                  | §1285        |
| (h) Costs.....                                   | §1289        |



MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — BY-LAWS, PERMITS AND  
LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| 3. Other Methods of Attack.....                                 | §1291 |
| (a) General.....  | §1291 |
| (b) Attack in an Action.....                                    | §1300 |
| (i) General.....  | §1300 |
| (ii) Right to Attack.....                                       | §1304 |
| (iii) Estoppel of Enacting Municipality.....                    | §1306 |
| (iv) Necessity of Municipality as Party .....                   | §1307 |
| (v) Attack by Ratepayers’ Action.....                           | §1308 |
| (vi) Suit by Attorney General.....                              | §1309 |
| (c) Attack in Proceedings to Enforce By-Law .....               | §1310 |
| (d) Injunction to Restrain Action .....                         | §1317 |
| (e) Prohibition and Certiorari.....                             | §1319 |
| (f) Mandamus .....  | §1323 |
| (g) Judicial Review .....                                       | §1325 |
| 4. Grounds Of Attack.....                                       | §1327 |
| (a) General .....   | §1327 |
| (b) Illegality: Improper Motive or Object.....                  | §1330 |
| (i) Bad Faith .....   | §1330 |
| (ii) Private Interest .....                                     | §1335 |
| (iii) Violation of Contractual Rights .....                     | §1338 |
| (iv) Evasion of a Statute .....                                 | §1339 |
| (c) Illegality: Ultra Vires .....                               | §1340 |
| (i) General.....  | §1340 |
| (ii) Excess of Territorial Jurisdiction .....                   | §1342 |
| (iii) Excess of Jurisdiction over Property and<br>Persons ..... | §1343 |
| (iv) Unconstitutionality .....                                  | §1345 |
| (v) Conflict with Provincial Statutes.....                      | §1346 |
| (d) Illegality: Non-Observance of Statute .....                 | §1347 |
| (e) Illegality: Others .....                                    | §1349 |
| (i) Discrimination .....  | §1349 |
| (ii) Unreasonableness .....                                     | §1353 |
| 5. Matters Not Constituting Illegality .....                    | §1360 |
| (a) Failure to Observe Internal Procedure.....                  | §1360 |
| (b) By-law Passed by De Facto Council.....                      | §1362 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (c) Uncertainty of Meaning or Application of By-Law ....       | §1363        |
| (d) Contrary to Public Policy or in Restraint of Trade.....    | §1370        |
| 6. Judicial Discretion in Quashing .....                       | §1371        |
| (a) General .....  | §1371        |
| (b) Illegality on Face or Extraneous to By-Law .....           | §1372        |
| (c) Delay in Applying .....                                    | §1377        |
| (d) Spent By-Laws .....  | §1379        |
| (e) Refusal to Exercise Power .....                            | §1380        |
| (f) Discretion to Adjourn Application .....                    | §1381        |
| (g) Severability .....   | §1382        |
| 7. Privative and Curative Provisions .....                     | §1392        |
| <b>XII. Actions By and Against Municipal Corporations.....</b> | <b>§1397</b> |
| 1. Actions Generally .....                                     | §1397        |
| (a) Capacity to Sue and Be Sued .....                          | §1397        |
| (b) Cause of Action.....                                       | §1407        |
| (c) Authority to Sue or Defend .....                           | §1408        |
| (d) Conditions Precedent.....                                  | §1411        |
| (i) General.....   | §1411        |
| (ii) Necessity for Quashing Illegal By-Law.....                | §1414        |
| (e) Limitations .....  | §1417        |
| (f) Parties .....  | §1429        |
| (g) Practice.....  | §1434        |
| (h) Discovery .....  | §1439        |
| (i) Enforcement of Judgments: Executions .....                 | §1445        |
| (j) Compromise and Settlement .....                            | §1449        |
| (k) Costs.....   | §1452        |
| 2. Notice of Action .....                                      | §1454        |
| (a) General .....  | §1454        |
| (b) When Required.....   | §1462        |
| (c) When Not Required.....                                     | §1466        |
| (d) Service and Time .....                                     | §1470        |
| (e) Sufficiency .....  | §1473        |
| (f) Failure to Give Notice .....                               | §1482        |
| (i) General.....   | §1482        |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — BY-LAWS, PERMITS AND  
LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (ii) Reasonable Excuse .....  | §1487 |
| (iii) Prejudice .....   | §1494 |
| (g) Pleading .....  | §1497 |
| 3. Ratepayers' Actions .....  | §1498 |
| (a) General .....   | §1498 |
| (b) Parties.....  | §1503 |
| (c) Classes of Ratepayers' Actions.....                                 | §1505 |
| (i) Restraining Illegal Expenditures.....                               | §1505 |
| (ii) Recovering Funds Illegally Paid Out .....                          | §1506 |
| (iii) To Restrain or Avoid Illegal Contracts .....                      | §1507 |
| 4. Suits By Individual Ratepayer or Inhabitant .....                    | §1508 |
| (a) General .....   | §1508 |
| (b) To Restrain Ultra Vires Acts.....                                   | §1512 |
| (c) To Enforce Municipal Contracts.....                                 | §1513 |
| (d) To Restrain Use or Sale of Public Property .....                    | §1514 |
| (e) Restraining or Compelling Submission or Enactment<br>of By-Law..... | §1515 |
| (f) Enforcement of By-Laws.....   | §1517 |
| (g) Restraining Enforcement of By-Laws .....                            | §1519 |
| (h) Abatement of Nuisance .....   | §1520 |
| 5. Suits By the Attorney General .....                                  | §1521 |
| (a) General .....   | §1521 |
| (b) When Intervention Unnecessary .....                                 | §1524 |
| 6. Mandamus .....   | §1529 |
| (a) General .....   | §1529 |
| (b) Persons Entitled To Apply.....                                      | §1534 |
| (c) Statutory Duty.....   | §1537 |
| (d) Demand and Refusal .....  | §1540 |
| (e) To Whom Directed.....   | §1541 |
| (f) Where Mandamus Will Not Lie.....                                    | §1542 |
| 7. Injunctions .....  | §1546 |
| (a) General .....   | §1546 |
| (b) Principles Governing Grant .....                                    | §1547 |
| 8. Right of Corporation to Indemnity .....                              | §1548 |
| (a) General .....   | §1548 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (b) Statutory Remedy Over.....                                 | §1549        |
| (c) Statutory Procedure .....                                  | §1553        |
| (d) Covenant to Indemnify.....                                 | §1557        |
| 9. Compensation for Injurious Affection .....                  | §1559        |
| (a) General.....   | §1559        |
| (b) Right to Compensation.....                                 | §1560        |
| (c) Right of Action apart from Compensation.....               | §1564        |
| (d) Persons Entitled to Compensation.....                      | §1566        |
| (e) Property Rights for Which Compensation to be<br>Made ..... | §1567        |
| (f) Basis of Compensation .....                                | §1568        |
| <b>XIII. Municipal Wrongs.....</b>                             | <b>§1570</b> |
| 1. General Liability .....                                     | §1570        |
| (a) General.....   | §1570        |
| (b) Statutory Liability.....                                   | §1573        |
| (c) Misfeasance and Nonfeasance .....                          | §1576        |
| (d) Rule of Non-Liability.....                                 | §1578        |
| (e) Defence of Ultra Vires.....                                | §1585        |
| (f) Defence of No By-Law or Resolution.....                    | §1588        |
| (g) Who Can Sue .....  | §1590        |
| 2. Statutory Authority .....                                   | §1592        |
| (a) General.....   | §1592        |
| (b) Proper Exercise of Power .....                             | §1597        |
| (c) Negligent Exercise.....                                    | §1598        |
| (d) Negligence in Choice of Means .....                        | §1599        |
| 3. Nuisance .....  | §1600        |
| (a) General.....   | §1600        |
| (i) What Constitutes .....                                     | §1600        |
| (ii) Nuisance in Exercise of Statutory Power .....             | §1601        |
| (iii) Prescription, Acquiescence or Easement .....             | §1603        |
| (iv) Permitting or Adopting a Nuisance.....                    | §1604        |
| (v) Statutory Limitation of Liability.....                     | §1606        |
| (b) Forms of Municipal Property Nuisances.....                 | §1608        |
| (i) Noise and Vibration .....                                  | §1608        |
| (ii) Public Conveniences .....                                 | §1609        |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — BY-LAWS, PERMITS AND  
LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (iii) Contamination of Water Supply.....                    | §1610 |
| (iv) Pollution of Land, Air and Water by Sewage....         | §1611 |
| (v) Garbage Dumps.....                                      | §1614 |
| (vi) Hospitals and Other Institutions .....                 | §1615 |
| (vii) Maintained on Municipal Property.....                 | §1616 |
| (viii) Flooding.....  | §1617 |
| A. Due to Bridge or Culvert.....                            | §1617 |
| B. Due to Drain or Road Ditch.....                          | §1619 |
| C. Due to Highway Construction or Non-<br>Repair.....       | §1625 |
| D. Due to Overcharged or Defective Sewers ....              | §1629 |
| E. Due to Water Mains and Systems .....                     | §1641 |
| F. Due to Improvement and Diversion of<br>Watercourses..... | §1645 |
| (c) Remedies.....   | §1647 |
| (i) Who May Bring Action.....                               | §1647 |
| (ii) Injunction to Restrain.....                            | §1649 |
| (iii) Damages .....   | §1651 |
| (iv) Indictment .....                                       | §1653 |
| (v) Abatement by Local Boards of Health .....               | §1654 |
| 4. Negligence.....  | §1656 |
| (a) Nature and Extent of Liability.....                     | §1656 |
| (b) Negligence in Protection of Public.....                 | §1658 |
| (i) Defective Gas System .....                              | §1658 |
| (ii) Defective Electric and Lighting System .....           | §1659 |
| (iii) Inadequate Fire Protection.....                       | §1661 |
| (iv) Inadequate Police Protection.....                      | §1667 |
| (v) Non-Repair of Municipal Property.....                   | §1670 |
| (vi) Non-Repair of Municipal Servicing .....                | §1673 |
| (vii) Parks and Recreation Grounds .....                    | §1674 |
| (viii) Failure to Enforce or Enact By-Law .....             | §1681 |
| (ix) Failure to Disclose Geotechnical Information ....      | §1686 |
| (x) Non-Repair of Municipal Highways .....                  | §1687 |
| 5. Wrongful Acts of Third Persons.....                      | §1688 |
| (a) Officers and Servants .....                             | §1688 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(b) Statutory Officers .....§1692  
(c) Boards and Commissions .....§1698  
(d) Council Members .....§1700  
(e) Independent Contractors .....§1701  
(f) Unauthorized Wrongful Acts of Others .....§1704  
6. Liability for Other Torts .....§1705  
    (a) False Imprisonment .....§1705  
    (b) Defamation .....§1706  
    (c) Misrepresentation .....§1707  
    (d) Illegal Distress .....§1718

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Administrative Law; Animals; Building Contracts; Conflict of Laws; Constitutional Law; Damages; Discovery; Drainage; Employment Law; Expropriation; Gifts; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Elections; Highways and Streets; Injunctions; Limitation of Actions; Motor Vehicles; Negligence; Nuisance; Parties; Practice; Prerogative Remedies; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Public Health and Welfare; Statutes; Torts

# MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — GENERAL

Adapted from Ian MacF. Rogers’  
*The Law of Canadian Municipal Corporations, 2nd Edition*  
by Todd Desourdie, B.A., M.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

## Table of Regulations

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. The Municipal Corporation</b> .....                                 | \$1  |
| 1. Definition and Nature .....  | \$1  |
| (a) Definition .....  | \$1  |
| (b) Nature.....   | \$11 |
| (i) Local Self-Government .....   | \$11 |
| (ii) Voluntary Nature.....  | \$19 |
| (iii) Dual Aspect.....  | \$20 |
| (iv) Non-Fiduciary Nature .....   | \$23 |
| (v) Incidents.....  | \$24 |
| (vi) Nature of Municipal Corporations in Canada<br>and Great Britain..... | \$26 |
| 2. Distinguished from Other Entities.....                                 | \$27 |
| (a) The Crown and the Province .....                                      | \$27 |
| (b) Common Law Corporations.....  | \$31 |
| (c) Public and Quasi-Municipal Corporations .....                         | \$32 |
| (d) Distinction Between Public and Private Corporations ....              | \$36 |
| 3. Classification .....   | \$38 |
| (a) General .....   | \$38 |
| (b) Applicability of Legislation .....                                    | \$44 |
| 4. Name.....  | \$47 |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — GENERAL

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 5. Seal .....   | §52        |
| 6. Territory.....   | §56        |
| 7. Inhabitants and Residents .....                              | §65        |
| (a) General .....   | §65        |
| (b) Inhabitants.....  | §68        |
| (c) Residents .....   | §71        |
| (d) Ratepayers.....   | §79        |
| <b>II. Incorporation .....</b>                                  | <b>§81</b> |
| 1. Power to Create.....   | §81        |
| (a) The Crown .....   | §81        |
| (b) Constitutional Aspect .....                                 | §84        |
| 2. Modes of Incorporation .....                                 | §86        |
| (a) General.....  | §86        |
| (b) Special Act or Charter .....                                | §91        |
| (c) Under General Municipal Acts .....                          | §93        |
| (d) Conditions Precedent.....                                   | §95        |
| 3. Incorporation and Erection of Classes of Municipalities..... | §99        |
| (a) General .....   | §99        |
| (b) Powers of Provincial Municipal Board .....                  | §103       |
| (c) Townships .....   | §106       |
| (d) Unions of Townships .....                                   | §109       |
| (e) Villages .....  | §110       |
| (f) Towns .....   | §112       |
| (g) Cities .....  | §114       |
| (h) Rural Municipalities .....                                  | §117       |
| (i) Other Forms of Municipality.....                            | §119       |
| (j) Confederation of Municipalities .....                       | §120       |
| (k) Counties .....  | §121       |
| (l) Regions and Regional Forms.....                             | §126       |
| (m) Municipal Districts.....                                    | §127       |
| (n) Amalgamation.....   | §128       |
| 4. Conditions Upon Incorporation .....                          | §133       |
| 5. Effect of Incorporation and Change of Status.....            | §134       |
| (a) General .....   | §134       |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Effective Date.....                                 | §139        |
| (c) Existing By-Laws .....                              | §142        |
| (d) Jurisdiction of Old Council.....                    | §145        |
| (e) Officers.....                                       | §146        |
| (f) Liabilities and Pending Actions .....               | §147        |
| (g) Unpaid Taxes.....                                   | §150        |
| 6. Adjustment of Assets and Liabilities .....           | §154        |
| (a) General.....  | §154        |
| (b) Method .....  | §158        |
| (c) Assets .....  | §159        |
| (d) Debts .....   | §161        |
| 7. Attacking Incorporation Proceedings .....            | §165        |
| 8. Dissolution, Disestablishment and Revocation.....    | §170        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>III. Corporate Limits and Their Alteration .....</b> | <b>§176</b> |
| 1. Determination of Corporate Limits .....              | §176        |
| (a) General.....  | §176        |
| (b) Description of Limits .....                         | §183        |
| (c) Right to Determine.....                             | §185        |
| (d) Boundaries on Water.....                            | §189        |
| (e) Municipal Surveys.....                              | §195        |
| 2. Alteration of Boundaries.....                        | §196        |
| (a) General.....  | §196        |
| (b) Powers of Ontario Municipal Board .....             | §200        |
| (i) General.....  | §200        |
| (ii) Appeals .....                                      | §204        |
| (c) Procedure on Annexation.....                        | §205        |
| (d) Terms and Conditions .....                          | §209        |
| 3. Effect of Alteration.....                            | §213        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §213        |
| (b) Effective Date.....                                 | §215        |
| (c) Existing By-Laws .....                              | §216        |
| (d) Jurisdiction of Old Council.....                    | §219        |
| (e) Public Works in Progress.....                       | §221        |
| (f) Title to and Jurisdiction Over Streets .....        | §222        |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — GENERAL

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (g) School Sections and Assets .....                                    | §223        |
| (h) Assessments and Taxes .....   | §224        |
| (i) Liabilities and Pending Causes of Actions .....                     | §229        |
| 4. Adjustment of Assets and Liabilities .....                           | §231        |
| (a) General .....   | §231        |
| (b) Method .....  | §233        |
| (c) Real Property and Other Assets .....                                | §234        |
| (d) Debts .....   | §237        |
| (e) Roads .....   | §239        |
| (f) School Property .....   | §241        |
| (g) Public Works .....  | §242        |
| <b>IV. Powers and Duties .....</b>                                      | <b>§243</b> |
| 1. Powers .....   | §243        |
| (a) Source .....  | §243        |
| (i) General .....   | §243        |
| (ii) Extent of Federal Authority .....                                  | §250        |
| (iii) Federal Authority, Aboriginal Peoples and<br>Municipalities ..... | §266        |
| (iv) Extent of Provincial Authority .....                               | §267        |
| A. General .....  | §267        |
| B. Public Health .....  | §272        |
| C. Licensing and Business .....   | §273        |
| D. Early Closing and Sunday Observance .....                            | §283        |
| E. Regulation of Business .....   | §287        |
| F. Police Power and Civil Rights .....                                  | §288        |
| G. Penalties .....  | §298        |
| H. Taxation .....   | §301        |
| I. Courts and Boards .....  | §302        |
| (v) Conferred by Statutory Grant .....                                  | §309        |
| (vi) Conferred by the Ontario Legislation Act, 2006<br>.....            | §312        |
| (vii) Paramountcy of Provincial Legislation .....                       | §314        |
| (b) Nature .....  | §321        |
| (i) General .....   | §321        |
| (ii) Discretionary or Mandatory .....                                   | §326        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (iii) Plenary Character .....                        | §329 |
| (iv) User .....                                      | §331 |
| (v) Right to Amend and Repeal .....                  | §332 |
| (vi) Alienation or Restriction of Powers .....       | §334 |
| (c) Scope and Extent of Municipal Authority .....    | §340 |
| (i) General .....                                    | §340 |
| (ii) Implied Powers .....                            | §349 |
| (iii) Inherent Powers .....                          | §353 |
| (iv) Doctrine of Ultra Vires .....                   | §355 |
| (v) Omnibus Clauses .....                            | §363 |
| (vi) Police Powers .....                             | §371 |
| (d) Extent of Municipal Jurisdiction .....           | §373 |
| (i) Persons and Corporations .....                   | §373 |
| (ii) The Crown .....                                 | §374 |
| (iii) Other Local Authorities .....                  | §378 |
| (iv) Territorial Limitations .....                   | §381 |
| (v) Extra-Territorial Jurisdiction .....             | §390 |
| (e) Delegation of Powers .....                       | §391 |
| (i) General .....                                    | §391 |
| (ii) To Boards and Officials .....                   | §402 |
| (iii) To Others .....                                | §405 |
| (f) Transfer of Powers .....                         | §406 |
| (g) Acquiescence and Estoppel .....                  | §407 |
| 2. Construction of Municipal Statutes .....          | §414 |
| (a) General .....                                    | §414 |
| (b) Interpretation Clauses, Words and Phrases .....  | §420 |
| (c) Conflict Between General and Special Laws .....  | §422 |
| (d) “Shall” and “May”: Imperative or Directory ..... | §425 |
| (e) Particular Classes of Municipal Statutes .....   | §426 |
| (i) Statutes Creating Public Bodies .....            | §426 |
| (ii) Penal Statutes .....                            | §427 |
| (iii) Taxing Statutes .....                          | §428 |
| (iv) Drainage Acts .....                             | §431 |
| (v) Election Acts .....                              | §432 |
| (vi) Expropriation and Forfeiture Statutes .....     | §433 |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — GENERAL

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (vii) Statutes Restricting Common Law Rights .....          | \$434        |
| (viii) Statutes Creating Privileges .....                   | \$435        |
| (ix) Statutes Referring to Agreements .....                 | \$436        |
| (x) Validating Statutes .....                               | \$438        |
| 3. Exercise of Municipal Powers .....                       | \$441        |
| (a) Extent and Limits of Exercise .....                     | \$441        |
| (b) Partial Exercise .....                                  | \$444        |
| (c) Vote of Council .....                                   | \$446        |
| (d) Conditions of Exercise .....                            | \$447        |
| (i) General .....   | \$447        |
| (ii) Public Interest .....                                  | \$450        |
| (iii) Good Faith .....                                      | \$452        |
| (iv) Notice .....   | \$454        |
| (v) Reasonableness .....                                    | \$456        |
| (vi) Impartiality .....                                     | \$459        |
| (vii) Prudence and Good Governance .....                    | \$462        |
| (e) Discretionary Powers .....                              | \$463        |
| (i) General .....   | \$463        |
| (ii) Choice of Means .....                                  | \$466        |
| (iii) Duty to Use Care .....                                | \$467        |
| (f) Mandatory Powers or Duties .....                        | \$470        |
| (i) General .....   | \$470        |
| (ii) Mandamus .....   | \$471        |
| (iii) Remedy by Indictment .....                            | \$472        |
| (iv) Action by Attorney-General .....                       | \$473        |
| (g) Illegal or Negligent Exercise of Authority .....        | \$474        |
| 4. Mode of Exercise .....                                   | \$475        |
| (a) By-law or Resolution .....                              | \$475        |
| (b) Prohibition or Regulation .....                         | \$478        |
| (c) Permits and Licenses .....                              | \$481        |
| 5. Duties .....   | \$486        |
| (a) General .....   | \$486        |
| (b) Enforcement of Duties .....                             | \$488        |
| <b>V. Provincial and Local Boards and Commissions .....</b> | <b>\$492</b> |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 1. General .....  | \$492        |
| (a) Scope of Powers .....   | \$492        |
| (b) Creation and Appointment .....  | \$496        |
| (c) Relationship to Municipality .....                                      | \$502        |
| (d) Status .....  | \$508        |
| (e) Powers and Duties .....   | \$509        |
| 2. Particular Boards and Commissions .....                                  | \$518        |
| (a) Boards of Commissioners of Police and Police Ser-<br>vices Boards ..... | \$518        |
| (b) Local Boards of Health .....  | \$521        |
| (c) Public Library Boards .....   | \$526        |
| (d) Municipal Service Boards .....  | \$529        |
| (e) Planning Boards and Commissions .....                                   | \$531        |
| (f) Others .....  | \$536        |
| 3. Provincial Boards Exercising Municipal Authority .....                   | \$537        |
| (a) Municipal Boards and Commissions .....                                  | \$537        |
| (b) Ontario Electric Power Entities .....                                   | \$538        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>VI. Provincial Municipal Boards .....</b>                                | <b>\$539</b> |
| 1. General .....  | \$539        |
| 2. Status .....   | \$541        |
| 3. Composition .....  | \$547        |
| 4. Practice and Procedure .....   | \$549        |
| (a) General .....   | \$549        |
| (b) Power of Individual Member .....  | \$560        |
| (c) Quorum .....  | \$561        |
| 5. Jurisdiction and Powers .....  | \$562        |
| (a) General .....   | \$562        |
| (b) Municipal Incorporation and Boundary Alteration .....                   | \$566        |
| (c) Railways and Public Utilities .....                                     | \$567        |
| (d) Telephone Systems .....   | \$568        |
| (e) Public Utility Rates .....  | \$569        |
| 6. Approval of By-Laws .....  | \$571        |
| (a) General .....   | \$571        |
| (b) Limited as to Time and to Part .....                                    | \$576        |
| (c) Conditional .....   | \$577        |

MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS — GENERAL

---

(d) Money By-Laws .....\$578  
(e) Zoning By-Laws .....\$581  
7. Orders .....\$584  
    (a) General .....\$584  
    (b) Time of Operation .....\$587  
    (c) Amendment and Rescission .....\$588  
    (d) Enforcement .....\$590  
8. Appeals from Orders.....\$592  
    (a) General .....\$592  
    (b) Question of Fact .....\$598  
    (c) Question of Law .....\$601  
    (d) Stated Case .....\$604

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agency; Boundaries and Surveys; Conflict of Laws; Constitutional Law; Crown; Estoppel; Expropriation; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Municipal and School Taxation; Municipal Corporations — By-laws, Permits and Legal proceedings; Municipal Corporations — Administration and Council; Planning and Zoning; Prerogative Remedies; Statutes

# NARCOTIC CONTROL

prepared by  
Marian E. Bryant, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                            | §1  |
| 1. Historical .....                                | §1  |
| 2. Federal Legislative Power .....                 | §5  |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Legislation</b> .....                       | §9  |
| 1. Scope .....                                     | §9  |
| 2. Prohibited Substances .....                     | §10 |
| 3. Prohibited Activities Generally .....           | §17 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>III. Offences</b> .....                         | §19 |
| 1. General .....                                   | §19 |
| 2. Possession .....                                | §21 |
| (a) General .....                                  | §21 |
| (b) Actual Possession .....                        | §27 |
| (c) Knowledge .....                                | §29 |
| (d) Control .....                                  | §33 |
| (e) Manual Handling .....                          | §34 |
| (f) Joint Possession .....                         | §35 |
| (g) Constructive Possession .....                  | §37 |
| (h) Procedural Matters .....                       | §40 |
| 3. Production: Cultivation and Manufacturing ..... | §47 |
| 4. Importing and Exporting .....                   | §51 |
| 5. Trafficking .....                               | §63 |

NARCOTIC CONTROL

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .                                    | §63         |
| (b) Methods of Trafficking . . . . .                     | §67         |
| (c) Conspiracy to Traffic . . . . .                      | §83         |
| (d) Physicians . . . . .                                 | §84         |
| (e) Procedural Matters . . . . .                         | §86         |
| 6. Possession for Purpose of Trafficking . . . . .       | §91         |
| 7. Instruments for Illicit Drug Use . . . . .            | §96         |
| 8. Proceeds-of-Crime Offences . . . . .                  | §97         |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IV. Search and Seizure . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§98</b>  |
| 1. Search Provisions Generally . . . . .                 | §98         |
| 2. Warrantless Searches . . . . .                        | §101        |
| (a) Places . . . . .                                     | §101        |
| (b) Persons . . . . .                                    | §111        |
| 3. Searches under Warrant . . . . .                      | §119        |
| (a) Application for Warrant . . . . .                    | §119        |
| (b) Attacking the Information . . . . .                  | §128        |
| 4. Seizure, Restoration and Forfeiture . . . . .         | §134        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>V. Procedural Matters . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§150</b> |
| 1. Proof by Certificate of Analysis . . . . .            | §150        |
| 2. Informations and Indictments . . . . .                | §170        |
| 3. Trial . . . . .                                       | §172        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VI. Defences . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§173</b> |
| 1. Absence of Mens Rea . . . . .                         | §173        |
| (a) Mistake of Fact . . . . .                            | §173        |
| (b) Wilful Blindness . . . . .                           | §176        |
| 2. Agent of Purchaser, and Aiding and Abetting . . . . . | §181        |
| 3. De Minimis non Curat Lex . . . . .                    | §188        |
| 4. Double Jeopardy . . . . .                             | §194        |
| 5. Buyer/Seller Conspiracies . . . . .                   | §203        |
| 6. Compulsion . . . . .                                  | §204        |
| 7. Entrapment . . . . .                                  | §205        |
| 8. Licence . . . . .                                     | §212        |
| 9. Possession for Innocent Purpose . . . . .             | §213        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 10. Necessity and Distress . . . . .                          | §214        |
| 11. Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms . . . . .         | §215        |
| (a) Scope . . . . .   | §215        |
| (b) Trial within Reasonable Time . . . . .                    | §216        |
| (c) Freedom of Religion . . . . .                             | §218        |
| (d) Life, Liberty and Security . . . . .                      | §219        |
| (e) Right to Counsel . . . . .                                | §222        |
| <b>VII. Exclusion of Evidence under Charter . . . . .</b>     | <b>§225</b> |
| 1. General Principle . . . . .                                | §225        |
| 2. Infringement of Rights . . . . .                           | §226        |
| 3. Administration of Justice . . . . .                        | §228        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §228        |
| (b) Deprivation of Fair Hearing . . . . .                     | §233        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §233        |
| (ii) Nature of Evidence Obtained . . . . .                    | §234        |
| A. Real Evidence . . . . .                                    | §234        |
| B. Evidence Emanating from Accused . . . . .                  | §235        |
| (iii) Availability of Evidence in Absence of Breach . . . . . | §236        |
| (c) Condonation of Unacceptable Conduct . . . . .             | §237        |
| (d) Effect of Exclusion . . . . .                             | §240        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §240        |
| (ii) Availability of Other Remedies . . . . .                 | §241        |
| 4. Application of General Principle . . . . .                 | §242        |
| <b>VIII. Sentencing . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§243</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §243        |
| 2. Possession . . . . .                                       | §258        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §258        |
| (b) Heroin . . . . .  | §259        |
| (c) Phencyclidine (PCP) . . . . .                             | §260        |
| (d) Cocaine . . . . .   | §261        |
| (e) Lysergic Acid Diethylamide (LSD) . . . . .                | §262        |
| (f) Hashish . . . . .   | §263        |
| (g) Marijuana . . . . .                                       | §265        |

NARCOTIC CONTROL

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 3. Possession for Purpose of Trafficking . . . . .               | §267 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §267 |
| (b) Heroin . . . . .   | §271 |
| (c) Phencyclidine (PCP) . . . . .                                | §272 |
| (d) Cocaine . . . . .  | §273 |
| (e) Lysergic Acid Diethylamide (LSD) . . . . .                   | §275 |
| (f) Hashish . . . . .  | §276 |
| (g) Psilocybin . . . . .   | §277 |
| (h) Marijuana . . . . .  | §278 |
| (i) Talwin (pentazocine) and Ritalin (methylphenidate) . . . . . | §279 |
| 4. Trafficking . . . . .   | §280 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §280 |
| (b) Heroin . . . . .   | §291 |
| (c) Cocaine . . . . .  | §292 |
| (d) Phencyclidine (PCP) . . . . .                                | §298 |
| (e) Methamphetamine (Speed) . . . . .                            | §300 |
| (f) Lysergic Acid Diethylamide (LSD) . . . . .                   | §302 |
| (g) Psilocybin . . . . .   | §303 |
| (h) Hashish . . . . .  | §304 |
| (i) Marijuana . . . . .  | §307 |
| (j) Ecstasy . . . . .  | §308 |
| 5. Importing and Exporting . . . . .                             | §309 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §309 |
| (b) Heroin . . . . .   | §312 |
| (c) Cocaine . . . . .  | §313 |
| (d) Hashish . . . . .  | §314 |
| (e) Marijuana . . . . .  | §315 |
| (f) Ecstasy . . . . .  | §316 |
| 6. Conspiracy . . . . .  | §317 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §317 |
| (b) Heroin . . . . .   | §318 |
| (c) Phencyclidine (PCP) . . . . .                                | §321 |
| (d) Methamphetamine (Speed) . . . . .                            | §322 |
| (e) Cocaine . . . . .  | §323 |
| (f) Lysergic Acid Diethylamide (LSD) . . . . .                   | §325 |
| (g) Hashish . . . . .  | §326 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(h) Marijuana .....§328  
(i) Talwin (pentazocine) and Ritalin (methylphenidate) ... §331  
7. Production .....§332  
    (a) General .....§332  
    (b) Marijuana .....§333  
    (c) Ecstasy .....§335  
8. Instruments for Illicit Drug Use .....§336  
9. Proceeds-of-Crime Offences .....§337  
10. Delaying Parole Eligibility .....§338

**Index**

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Offences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Customs and Excise; Evidence; Sentencing.

# NEGLIGENCE

prepared by  
Richard E. Levinson, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and New York Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. General Principles</b> .....                                    | §1  |
| 1. Nature of Cause of Action .....                                    | §1  |
| 2. Related Actions .....  | §4  |
| (a) Criminal Negligence .....   | §4  |
| (b) Nuisance .....  | §7  |
| (c) Breach of Contract .....  | §8  |
| (d) Trespass to the Person .....                                      | §12 |
| (e) Fatal Accidents .....   | §13 |
| (f) Breach of Fiduciary Duty .....                                    | §23 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Elements of Cause of Action</b> .....                          | §24 |
| 1. General .....  | §24 |
| 2. Damage .....   | §26 |
| 3. Defendant's Conduct Must Cause Plaintiff's Loss .....              | §28 |
| (a) General .....   | §28 |
| (b) Multiple Causes .....   | §32 |
| (c) Single Cause, Multiple Defendants .....                           | §38 |
| (d) Negligent Defendant Materially Increasing Risk of<br>Injury ..... | §41 |
| 4. Standard of Care .....   | §42 |
| (a) The Reasonable Person .....                                       | §42 |
| (i) Introduction .....  | §42 |
| (ii) Characteristics .....  | §48 |
| A. Moral Qualities and Intelligence .....                             | §48 |

## NEGLIGENCE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| B. Control of Children . . . . .                                    | §51  |
| C. Obtaining Expert Advice . . . . .                                | §55  |
| D. Physical Disability . . . . .                                    | §56  |
| E. Mental Disability . . . . .                                      | §58  |
| F. Youth . . . . .  | §63  |
| (b) Unreasonable Risk . . . . .                                     | §68  |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §68  |
| (ii) Magnitude of Risk . . . . .                                    | §69  |
| (iii) Utility of Conduct . . . . .                                  | §77  |
| (iv) Burden of Eliminating Risk . . . . .                           | §81  |
| (c) Custom . . . . .  | §82  |
| (d) Statutory Standards . . . . .                                   | §88  |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §88  |
| (ii) Streets and Highways: Duty to Maintain and<br>Repair . . . . . | §97  |
| (e) Emergencies . . . . .   | §134 |
| (f) Gross Negligence . . . . .                                      | §139 |
| 5. Duty of Care . . . . .   | §145 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §145 |
| (b) Particular Instances . . . . .                                  | §157 |
| (i) Sports Related . . . . .  | §157 |
| (ii) Manufacturers' Liability . . . . .                             | §158 |
| (iii) Negligent Misrepresentation . . . . .                         | §168 |
| (iv) Mental Distress . . . . .                                      | §184 |
| (v) Sexual Abuse . . . . .  | §185 |
| (vi) Negligent Investigation . . . . .                              | §192 |
| (c) Duties of Affirmative Action . . . . .                          | §193 |
| (i) Duty to Rescue . . . . .  | §193 |
| (ii) Gratuitous Undertakings: Reliance . . . . .                    | §196 |
| (iii) Duty to Control Others . . . . .                              | §199 |
| (iv) Statutory Duties . . . . .                                     | §209 |
| (v) Strict Liability: Rule in Rylands v. Fletcher . . . . .         | §229 |
| (vi) Res Ipsa Loquitur . . . . .                                    | §233 |
| (vii) Vicarious Liability . . . . .                                 | §235 |
| (d) Private Law Duty of Care of Public Bodies . . . . .             | §239 |
| 6. Proximate Cause and Remoteness of Damage . . . . .               | §246 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .                                    | §246        |
| (b) The Thin Skull Person . . . . .                      | §256        |
| (c) Rescuers . . . . .                                   | §263        |
| (d) Intervening Forces . . . . .                         | §270        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                    | §270        |
| (ii) Nature . . . . .                                    | §271        |
| (iii) Human Reactions and Rescue . . . . .               | §273        |
| (iv) Children and Inmates . . . . .                      | §274        |
| (v) Third Parties Pursuing Rights . . . . .              | §276        |
| (vi) Falls During Convalescence . . . . .                | §277        |
| (vii) Intervening Negligence . . . . .                   | §278        |
| (viii) Intervening Criminal Conduct . . . . .            | §280        |
| (ix) Intervening Medical Error . . . . .                 | §281        |
| (x) Suicide . . . . .                                    | §282        |
| <b>III. Defences . . . . .</b>                           | <b>§284</b> |
| 1. Inevitable Accident . . . . .                         | §284        |
| 2. Act of God . . . . .                                  | §288        |
| 3. Illegality . . . . .                                  | §289        |
| 4. Volenti Non Fit Injuria . . . . .                     | §292        |
| 5. Contributory Negligence . . . . .                     | §303        |
| (a) Introduction . . . . .                               | §303        |
| (i) Nature of Contributory Negligence . . . . .          | §303        |
| (ii) Related Defences: Volenti Non Fit Injuria . . . . . | §306        |
| (b) Elements of the Defence . . . . .                    | §308        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                    | §308        |
| (ii) Cause in Fact . . . . .                             | §309        |
| (iii) Standard of Care . . . . .                         | §314        |
| A. General . . . . .                                     | §314        |
| B. Children . . . . .                                    | §317        |
| C. Unreasonable Risk . . . . .                           | §322        |
| D. Emergencies . . . . .                                 | §325        |
| (iv) Duty of Care . . . . .                              | §326        |
| (v) Proximate Cause . . . . .                            | §329        |
| (c) Effect of Contributory Negligence . . . . .          | §334        |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                              | §334        |

NEGLIGENCE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (ii) Legislation . . . . .                                  | §336        |
| A. General . . . . .  | §336        |
| B. Survival of Last Clear Chance . . . . .                  | §344        |
| C. Scope . . . . .  | §346        |
| D. Operation of Legislation . . . . .                       | §349        |
| (d) Parties . . . . .                                       | §356        |
| (i) Imputed Negligence . . . . .                            | §356        |
| (ii) Federal Crown . . . . .                                | §361        |
| <b>IV. Occupier's Liability . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§363</b> |
| <b>V. Professional Negligence . . . . .</b>                 | <b>§378</b> |
| <b>VI. Practice and Procedure . . . . .</b>                 | <b>§381</b> |
| 1. Parties . . . . .  | §381        |
| (a) Plaintiffs . . . . .                                    | §381        |
| (b) Defendants, Joint and Independent Tortfeasors . . . . . | §385        |
| 2. Class Action Suits . . . . .                             | §390        |
| 3. Limitation Periods . . . . .                             | §391        |
| (a) General Limitations Legislation . . . . .               | §391        |
| (b) Specific Limitation Periods . . . . .                   | §397        |
| 4. Sufficiency of Pleadings . . . . .                       | §402        |
| 5. Post-Accident Evidence . . . . .                         | §405        |
| 6. Examination of Documents and Parties . . . . .           | §407        |
| 7. Appeals . . . . .  | §408        |
| <b>VII. Remedies . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§410</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Bailment; Barristers and Solicitors; Carriers; Criminal Law — Offences; Damages; Discovery; Employment Law; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Highways and Streets; Hospitals and Health Care; Insurance; Medicine; Motor Vehicles Western; Nuisance; Partnership; Professions and Occupations; Torts; Trespass.

# NUISANCE

prepared by  
Roger W. Proctor, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

revised by  
The Legal Editorial Staff of Carswell

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                            | §1  |
| 1. What Constitutes Nuisance . . . . .                      | §1  |
| 2. Classifications of Nuisance . . . . .                    | §9  |
| (a) General . . . . .                                       | §9  |
| (b) Private Nuisance . . . . .                              | §10 |
| (c) Public Nuisance . . . . .                               | §11 |
| <b>II. Principles</b> . . . . .                             | §15 |
| 1. Character of Neighbourhood as Factor . . . . .           | §15 |
| 2. Plaintiff “Coming to Nuisance” . . . . .                 | §18 |
| 3. Reasonable and Lawful Use; Benefit of Business . . . . . | §19 |
| 4. Easement, or Implied Obligation Not to Object . . . . .  | §21 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                       | §21 |
| (b) Prescriptive Right to Maintain . . . . .                | §23 |
| 5. Nuisance in Exercise of Statutory Powers . . . . .       | §28 |
| 6. Contributory Negligence . . . . .                        | §39 |
| 7. Practice Considerations . . . . .                        | §40 |
| <b>III. Actions</b> . . . . .                               | §42 |
| 1. Grounds of Action Generally . . . . .                    | §42 |
| 2. Persons Liable for Nuisance . . . . .                    | §51 |
| 3. Who May Bring Action . . . . .                           | §59 |



NUISANCE

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (a) Private Nuisance . . . . .                             | §59        |
| (b) Public Nuisance . . . . .                              | §63        |
| <b>IV. Remedies . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§69</b> |
| 1. Common Law Remedies . . . . .                           | §69        |
| (a) Abatement . . . . .                                    | §69        |
| (b) Damages or Injunction . . . . .                        | §73        |
| 2. Statutory Remedies . . . . .                            | §93        |
| 3. Criminal Remedies . . . . .                             | §95        |
| <b>V. Particular Nuisance . . . . .</b>                    | <b>§96</b> |
| 1. Access Obstruction . . . . .                            | §96        |
| 2. Agricultural Operations . . . . .                       | §97        |
| 3. Air Pollution . . . . .                                 | §98        |
| 4. Dangers Adjoining Highways . . . . .                    | §101       |
| 5. Depriving Land of Support . . . . .                     | §102       |
| 6. Fences . . . . .  | §103       |
| 7. Fire Hazard . . . . .                                   | §104       |
| 8. Floodlighting . . . . .                                 | §105       |
| 9. Foreign Substances Invasion . . . . .                   | §106       |
| 10. Harassing Telephone Calls . . . . .                    | §107       |
| 11. Highway Obstruction . . . . .                          | §109       |
| 12. Hospitals . . . . .                                    | §112       |
| 13. Land Flooding . . . . .                                | §113       |
| 14. Light Obstruction . . . . .                            | §116       |
| 15. Loss of View . . . . .                                 | §117       |
| 16. Navigable Water Obstruction . . . . .                  | §118       |
| 17. Noise and Vibration . . . . .                          | §119       |
| 18. Ruinous Structures . . . . .                           | §121       |
| 19. Things Alluring to and Dangerous to Children . . . . . | §123       |
| 20. Trees . . . . .  | §124       |
| 21. Water Flow Disruption . . . . .                        | §126       |
| 22. Water Pollution . . . . .                              | §127       |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Administrative Law; Agriculture; Aviation; Boundaries And Surveys; Courts; Criminal Law — Offences; Crown; Damages;

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

Discovery; Drainage; Easements; Environmental Law; Evidence; Fires; Motor Vehicles; Highways And Streets; Hospitals; Injunctions; Landlord And Tenant; Mines And Minerals; Municipal Corporations; Negligence; Parties; Pleadings; Practice; Public Authorities And Public Officers; Public Health And Welfare; Public Utilities; Railways; Real Property; Shipping; Sports; Torts; Trespass; Trials; Waters And Watercourses

# OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY

prepared by  
Jamie Alyce Jurczak, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Manitoba Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Legislation</b> .....                 | §1  |
| 1. Introduction .....                       | §1  |
| 2. Regulations .....                        | §2  |
| 3. Definitions .....                        | §3  |
| <b>II. Application of Legislation</b> ..... | §12 |
| 1. General .....                            | §12 |
| 2. Self-employed Persons.....               | §16 |
| 3. Exemptions .....                         | §17 |
| 4. Binding on the Crown .....               | §19 |
| 5. Relationship to Other Legislation .....  | §20 |
| <b>III. Duties of Parties</b> .....         | §22 |
| 1. General .....                            | §22 |
| 2. Duties of Employer.....                  | §23 |
| 3. Duties of Owners .....                   | §30 |
| 4. Duties of Supervisors.....               | §31 |
| 5. Duties of Workers/Employees .....        | §34 |
| 6. Duties of Self-Employed Persons .....    | §40 |
| 7. Duties of Prime Contractors .....        | §41 |
| 8. Duties of Contractors .....              | §43 |
| 9. Duties of Directors and Officers .....   | §45 |

OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 10. Duties of Suppliers .....                              | §46         |
| 11. Multiple Functions and Obligations .....               | §48         |
| 12. Hazardous Substances and Controlled Products.....      | §52         |
| <b>IV. Administration, Inspection and Enforcement.....</b> | <b>§53</b>  |
| 1. General Administration.....                             | §53         |
| 2. Investigative Powers and Duties .....                   | §55         |
| 3. Confidentiality .....                                   | §59         |
| 4. Civil Compellability of Officers and Others .....       | §60         |
| 5. Immunity of Officers and Others.....                    | §61         |
| 6. Contravention Orders .....                              | §62         |
| 7. Appeals .....   | §66         |
| (a) General .....  | §66         |
| (b) Federal .....  | §67         |
| (c) Alberta.....   | §71         |
| (d) British Columbia .....                                 | §74         |
| (e) Manitoba .....   | §76         |
| (f) Saskatchewan .....                                     | §80         |
| 8. Medical Examinations.....                               | §84         |
| 9. Power to Make Regulations .....                         | §88         |
| 10. Administrative Penalties .....                         | §89         |
| (a) General .....  | §89         |
| (b) Alberta .....  | §90         |
| (c) British Columbia.....                                  | §91         |
| (d) Manitoba .....   | §96         |
| <b>V. Fatalities and Critical Incidents.....</b>           | <b>§101</b> |
| 1. Notification of Incidents .....                         | §101        |
| (a) General .....  | §101        |
| (b) Federal .....  | §103        |
| (c) Alberta.....   | §104        |
| (d) British Columbia .....                                 | §105        |
| (e) Manitoba .....   | §106        |
| (f) Saskatchewan .....                                     | §107        |
| 2. Non-interference with Incident Scene.....               | §109        |
| 3. Investigation Reports .....                             | §110        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>VI. Health and Safety Representatives and Joint Committees</b> ..... | §111 |
| 1. General .....  | §111 |
| 2. Health and Safety Committee .....                                    | §112 |
| (a) Where Required .....  | §112 |
| (b) Composition of Committee and Selection .....                        | §119 |
| 3. Health and Safety Representative .....                               | §126 |
| (a) Where Required .....  | §126 |
| (b) Appointment Process .....   | §127 |
| 4. Powers and Duties of Committees and Representatives .....            | §129 |
| <b>VII. Right to Refuse or to Stop Work</b> .....                       | §131 |
| 1. General .....  | §131 |
| 2. Refusal Procedure .....  | §137 |
| 3. Workers' Rights During Refusal .....                                 | §141 |
| <b>VIII. Protection of Workers From Reprisals</b> .....                 | §146 |
| 1. Extent of Protection .....   | §146 |
| 2. Burden of Proof .....  | §148 |
| 3. Penalty for Reprisal .....   | §149 |
| <b>IX. Offences, Defences, Penalties and Proceedings</b> .....          | §150 |
| 1. Offences .....   | §150 |
| 2. Imputed Liability .....  | §152 |
| 3. Limitation Periods .....   | §155 |
| 4. Monetary Penalties .....   | §159 |
| (a) General .....   | §159 |
| (b) Federal .....   | §160 |
| (c) Alberta .....   | §161 |
| (d) British Columbia .....  | §164 |
| (e) Manitoba .....  | §167 |
| (f) Saskatchewan .....  | §171 |
| 5. Imprisonment .....   | §176 |
| 6. Injunctive Relief .....  | §177 |
| 7. Sentencing Principles .....  | §181 |
| 8. Defence of Due Diligence .....                                       | §183 |

OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY

---

**X. Federal Regulation of Specific Industries**..... §189

    1. Construction ..... §189

    2. Coal Mining ..... §191

    3. Oil and Gas ..... §194

**Index**

*Related titles:* Employment Insurance; Employment Law; Hospitals; Labour Law (Federal, Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, Saskatchewan); War and Emergency; Workers Compensation

# OIL AND GAS

prepared by  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .  | §1  |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §1  |
| 2. Rule of Capture . . . . .  | §5  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Constitutional Jurisdiction</b> . . . . .                          | §8  |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §8  |
| 2. Ownership of Offshore Minerals . . . . .                               | §11 |
| 3. Pipelines . . . . .  | §15 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>III. Acquisition of Oil and Gas Interests from the Crown</b> . . . . . | §26 |
| 1. Provincial Systems . . . . .   | §26 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .   | §26 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §26 |
| (ii) Licences . . . . .   | §28 |
| (iii) Leases . . . . .  | §31 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .  | §33 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §33 |
| (ii) Application . . . . .  | §34 |
| (iii) Permits . . . . .   | §35 |
| (iv) Leases . . . . .   | §38 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .  | §41 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §41 |
| (ii) Public Sale of Disposition . . . . .                                 | §42 |

## OIL AND GAS

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (iii) Exploration Reservations . . . . .                                       | §43        |
| (iv) Leases . . . . .  | §46        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §48        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §48        |
| (ii) Sales . . . . .   | §49        |
| (iii) Exploration Permits . . . . .  | §50        |
| (iv) Drilling Reservations . . . . .   | §52        |
| (v) Leases . . . . .   | §54        |
| 2. Royalties . . . . .   | §56        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §56        |
| (i) Natural Gas . . . . .  | §56        |
| (ii) Oil . . . . .   | §58        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .   | §60        |
| (i) Natural Gas . . . . .  | §60        |
| (ii) Oil . . . . .   | §61        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .   | §63        |
| (i) Natural Gas . . . . .  | §63        |
| (ii) Oil . . . . .   | §64        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §65        |
| (i) Natural Gas . . . . .  | §65        |
| (ii) Oil . . . . .   | §66        |
| 3. Federal Lands . . . . .   | §67        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §67        |
| (b) Exploration Licences . . . . .   | §69        |
| (c) Significant Discovery Licences . . . . .                                   | §71        |
| (d) Production Licences . . . . .  | §75        |
| (e) Royalties . . . . .  | §79        |
| (f) Registration of Interests . . . . .  | §80        |
| (g) Assignment of Interests . . . . .  | §81        |
| (h) Agreements with Respect to Offshore and Other Lands . . . . .              | §82        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>IV. Acquisition of Oil and Gas Interests from Freehold Owners . . . . .</b> | <b>§89</b> |
| 1. Lease Agents Licensing . . . . .  | §89        |
| 2. Registration of Transfers and Instruments . . . . .                         | §92        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 3. Freehold Leases . . . . .                                       | §93  |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §93  |
| (b) Legal Nature of Lease . . . . .                                | §94  |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §94  |
| (ii) Lease of Real Property . . . . .                              | §99  |
| (c) Formation of Contract . . . . .                                | §103 |
| (i) Statute of Frauds . . . . .                                    | §103 |
| (ii) Offer and Acceptance . . . . .                                | §104 |
| (iii) Seal . . . . .   | §107 |
| (iv) Capacity of Parties . . . . .                                 | §110 |
| A. Personal Representatives . . . . .                              | §110 |
| B. Minors . . . . .  | §114 |
| C. Incapacitated Persons . . . . .                                 | §115 |
| (v) Dower . . . . .  | §121 |
| A. Dower and Curtesy at Common Law . . . . .                       | §121 |
| B. Consent of Spouse . . . . .                                     | §123 |
| C. Form of Consent . . . . .                                       | §130 |
| D. Homestead . . . . .   | §134 |
| E. Dower Affidavit and Certificate of<br>Acknowledgement . . . . . | §140 |
| F. Estoppel . . . . .  | §146 |
| (vi) Defences to Contract . . . . .                                | §147 |
| A. Lack of Essential Terms . . . . .                               | §147 |
| B. Lack of Title . . . . .   | §148 |
| C. Non est factum . . . . .  | §150 |
| D. Unconscionable Transactions . . . . .                           | §153 |
| E. Misrepresentation . . . . .                                     | §154 |
| F. Rule Against Perpetuities . . . . .                             | §156 |
| (vii) Typical Clauses in an Oil and Gas Lease . . . . .            | §163 |
| A. Consideration . . . . .   | §163 |
| B. Granting Clause . . . . .                                       | §168 |
| 1. Leased Substances . . . . .                                     | §168 |
| 2. Express Powers . . . . .  | §171 |
| C. Habendum Clause . . . . .                                       | §172 |
| D. “Unless” Clause . . . . .                                       | §180 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §180 |

OIL AND GAS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 2. Delay Rental: Time of Payment . . . . .                         | §185 |
| 3. Delay Rental: Waiver . . . . .                                  | §187 |
| 4. Delay Rental: Refusal to Accept . . . . .                       | §188 |
| E. Covenant to Drill . . . . .                                     | §189 |
| 1. Commence Drilling . . . . .                                     | §189 |
| 2. Drilling at Expiration of Primary Term . . . . .                | §194 |
| F. Third Proviso . . . . .   | §196 |
| G. Renewal of Term Clause . . . . .                                | §198 |
| H. Royalties . . . . .   | §199 |
| 1. Classification . . . . .  | §199 |
| 2. Fiduciary Duty of Lessee . . . . .                              | §208 |
| 3. Calculation . . . . .   | §209 |
| 4. Calculation Where Lessor Owns Less than<br>Entire Fee . . . . . | §215 |
| 5. Assignment of Royalties . . . . .                               | §216 |
| 6. Entitlement of Holder of Life Estate . . . . .                  | §220 |
| 7. Apportionment . . . . .   | §224 |
| I. Agreement to Supply Gas . . . . .                               | §226 |
| J. Shut-in Clause . . . . .  | §227 |
| K. Pooling Clause . . . . .  | §234 |
| L. Unitization . . . . .   | §239 |
| M. Offset Well Clause . . . . .                                    | §251 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §251 |
| 2. Damages for Failure to Drill Offset Well . . . . .              | §258 |
| 3. Compensatory Royalty . . . . .                                  | §265 |
| N. Encumbrances . . . . .  | §268 |
| O. Payment Clause . . . . .  | §271 |
| P. Surrender Clause . . . . .                                      | §272 |
| Q. Default Clause . . . . .  | §273 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §273 |
| 2. Default in Ontario under Gas and Oil<br>Leases Act . . . . .    | §277 |
| R. Depository . . . . .  | §282 |
| S. Entire Agreement Clause . . . . .                               | §284 |
| T. Force Majeure Clause . . . . .                                  | §287 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (viii) Implied Terms . . . . .   | §288        |
| (ix) Relief from Forfeiture . . . . .  | §290        |
| (x) Confirmation of Validity of Lease . . . . .                                | §293        |
| (xi) Estoppel . . . . .  | §294        |
| (xii) Waiver . . . . .   | §306        |
| (xiii) Accounting for Production From Terminated or<br>Invalid Lease . . . . . | §307        |
| (xiv) Costs Associated with Terminated or Invalid<br>Lease . . . . .           | §308        |
| 4. Top Leases . . . . .  | §312        |
| (a) Top Lease as Interest in Land . . . . .                                    | §312        |
| (b) Amendment of Existing Lease . . . . .                                      | §314        |
| 5. Royalty Trust Agreements . . . . .  | §316        |
| 6. Subsurface Storage . . . . .  | §317        |
| <b>V. Oil and Gas Contracts . . . . .</b>                                      | <b>§318</b> |
| 1. Farmout Agreements . . . . .  | §318        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §318        |
| (b) Letter Agreements . . . . .  | §321        |
| (c) Specific Provisions of Farmout Agreements . . . . .                        | §328        |
| (i) Covenant to Commence Drilling . . . . .                                    | §328        |
| (ii) Seismic and Drilling Information . . . . .                                | §329        |
| (iii) Drilling . . . . .   | §332        |
| (iv) Earning of Interest . . . . .   | §334        |
| (v) Overriding Royalty . . . . .   | §336        |
| (vi) Conversion . . . . .  | §345        |
| (vii) Area of Mutual Interest . . . . .  | §347        |
| (viii) Entire Agreement . . . . .  | §350        |
| (ix) To the Satisfaction of the Farmee or Farmor . . . . .                     | §351        |
| (d) Effect of Subsequent Unitization on Previous<br>Agreement . . . . .        | §352        |
| 2. Operating Agreements . . . . .  | §353        |
| (a) Operator . . . . .   | §353        |
| (b) Specific Provisions of Operating Agreements . . . . .                      | §355        |
| (i) Replacement of Operator: Insolvency . . . . .                              | §355        |
| (ii) Control and Management of Operations . . . . .                            | §359        |

OIL AND GAS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iii) Insurance . . . . .  | §364        |
| (iv) Indemnity and Liability of Operator . . . . .                           | §365        |
| (v) Operator to Pay and Recover from Parties . . . . .                       | §366        |
| A. Interest . . . . .  | §366        |
| B. Commingling of Funds . . . . .  | §367        |
| (vi) Ownership and Disposition of Production . . . . .                       | §368        |
| (vii) Relationship of Parties . . . . .                                      | §371        |
| (viii) Waiver . . . . .  | §374        |
| (ix) Disposition of Interests . . . . .                                      | §375        |
| A. Right of First Refusal . . . . .  | §375        |
| B. Consent to Disposition . . . . .  | §377        |
| 3. Carried Interest Agreements . . . . .                                     | §379        |
| 4. Natural Gas Contracts . . . . .   | §381        |
| 5. Variation of Agreements . . . . .   | §389        |
| <b>VI. Fiduciary Duties . . . . .</b>  | <b>§392</b> |
| 1. Fiduciary Relationships . . . . .   | §392        |
| 2. Fiduciary Duties . . . . .  | §395        |
| 3. Operating and Marketing . . . . .   | §404        |
| 4. Fiduciary Obligations of General Partner In Limited Partnership . . . . . | §408        |
| 5. Associated Corporations . . . . .   | §409        |
| 6. Third Party Liability . . . . .   | §410        |
| 7. Information . . . . .   | §411        |
| <b>VII. Confidential Information . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§412</b> |
| 1. Breach of Confidence . . . . .  | §412        |
| 2. Employees . . . . .   | §414        |
| <b>VIII. Surface Rights . . . . .</b>  | <b>§421</b> |
| 1. Priority of Mineral Estate . . . . .                                      | §421        |
| 2. Compensation For Damage at Common Law . . . . .                           | §423        |
| 3. Surface Rights in Alberta . . . . .                                       | §427        |
| (a) Sand and Gravel . . . . .  | §427        |
| (b) Geophysical Operations in Alberta . . . . .                              | §428        |
| (c) Well Licence . . . . .   | §430        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (d) Hearings Before Surface Rights Board of Alberta . . . .                | §434 |
| (e) Costs of Proceedings Before Surface Rights Board of Alberta . . . . .  | §440 |
| (f) Right of Entry Orders . . . . .  | §444 |
| (g) Entitlement to Compensation: Subsequent Purchasers . . . . .           | §450 |
| (h) Surface Lease: Essential Terms . . . . .                               | §452 |
| (i) Entry Fee . . . . .  | §453 |
| (j) Compensation for Right of Entry . . . . .                              | §455 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §455 |
| (ii) “Four Heads” Approach vs. “Global” Approach to Compensation . . . . . | §459 |
| (iii) Factors in Determining Compensation . . . . .                        | §460 |
| A. Value of Land Generally . . . . .                                       | §460 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §460 |
| 2. Lessees . . . . .   | §462 |
| 3. Small Parcels of Land . . . . .   | §463 |
| 4. Pattern of Dealings . . . . .   | §465 |
| B. Highest Approved Use . . . . .  | §474 |
| C. Loss of Use . . . . .   | §476 |
| D. Adverse Effect . . . . .  | §480 |
| E. Damage to Land . . . . .  | §485 |
| F. Other Factors . . . . .   | §488 |
| G. Residual and Reversionary Value . . . . .                               | §491 |
| (k) Rental Review by Board . . . . .                                       | §494 |
| (l) Appeal of Compensation Orders . . . . .                                | §495 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §495 |
| (ii) Costs of Appeal . . . . .   | §500 |
| (m) Pipelines in Alberta . . . . .   | §505 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §505 |
| (ii) Compensation for Pipeline Right-of-way . . . . .                      | §508 |
| 4. Surface Rights In Saskatchewan . . . . .                                | §509 |
| (a) Hearings Before Board of Arbitration . . . . .                         | §509 |
| (b) Compensation for Right of Entry . . . . .                              | §511 |
| (c) Appeals . . . . .  | §518 |
| (d) Pipelines . . . . .  | §520 |

OIL AND GAS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 5. Surface Rights in British Columbia      | §522        |
| (a) Right of Entry                         | §522        |
| (b) Compensation                           | §526        |
| (c) Appeals                                | §534        |
| (d) Flowlines                              | §535        |
| (e) Pipelines                              | §536        |
| 6. Surface Rights in Manitoba              | §538        |
| (a) Right of Entry                         | §538        |
| (b) Pipelines                              | §542        |
| (c) Geophysical Operations                 | §543        |
| 7. Surface Rights on Federal Lands         | §544        |
| (a) Right of Entry                         | §544        |
| (b) Pipelines                              | §545        |
| <b>IX. Government Regulation</b>           | <b>§558</b> |
| 1. Exploration, Development and Production | §558        |
| (a) General                                | §558        |
| (b) General Development Permits            | §559        |
| (c) Drilling Spacing Units                 | §564        |
| (d) Pooling                                | §566        |
| (e) Unitization                            | §568        |
| (f) Well Licensing                         | §570        |
| (g) Production Regulation                  | §572        |
| (i) Production Spacing Units               | §572        |
| (ii) Allowable Rates of Production         | §575        |
| (iii) Market Demand Prorationing           | §576        |
| (iv) Production of Correlative Rights      | §577        |
| A. Rateable Take of Gas                    | §577        |
| B. Common Carrier                          | §578        |
| C. Common Purchaser                        | §579        |
| D. Common Processor                        | §580        |
| (h) Enhanced Recovery Schemes              | §581        |
| (i) Oil Sands Development and Production   | §582        |
| (j) Natural Gas Processing                 | §584        |
| (k) Export of Natural Gas from a Province  | §585        |
| (l) Compensation                           | §586        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

2. Abandonment and Reclamation .....§589  
    (a) Alberta .....§589  
    (b) British Columbia .....§596  
    (c) Manitoba .....§599  
    (d) Saskatchewan .....§611  
    (e) Federal .....§615  
3. Environmental Issues .....§618  
4. Subsurface Storage .....§621  
5. Pipelines .....§624  
    (a) Pipelines Within Provinces .....§624  
    (b) Interprovincial and International Pipelines .....§625  
        (i) Jurisdiction .....§625  
        (ii) Certificates of Public Convenience and Necessity . . . .  
            .....§627  
        (iii) Traffic, Tolls and Tariffs .....§635  
        (iv) Common Carriers .....§645  
        (v) Procedure of Board .....§647  
        (vi) Apprehension of Bias .....§649  
6. Import and Export of Oil and Gas .....§652

**Index**

*Related titles:* Banking; Builders' Liens; Contracts; Crown; Environmental Law; Estoppel; Expropriation; Federal And Provincial Taxation; Injunctions; Landlord And Tenant; Liens; Mines And Minerals; Municipal And School Taxation; Perpetuities And Accumulations; Public Utilities; Real Property; Sale Of Land; Time; Trade And Commerce And Foreign Investment In Canada; War And Emergency

# PARLIAMENT AND LEGISLATURE

prepared by  
Nancy McCormack, B.A., M.A., M.L.I.S., J.D., LL.M.  
*of the Ontario Bar*  
and  
Melanie R. Bueckert, LL.B., LL.M.  
*of the Manitoba Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Standing Orders**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Parliament of Canada</b> .....                       | \$1  |
| 1. Introduction .....                                      | \$1  |
| (a) Constitution .....                                     | \$1  |
| (b) Governor General .....                                 | \$3  |
| (c) Authority of Parliament .....                          | \$11 |
| (d) Communications within Parliament .....                 | \$14 |
| (e) Parliamentary Library and Poet Laureate .....          | \$18 |
| 2. Senate of Canada .....                                  | \$20 |
| (a) Appointment and Removal .....                          | \$20 |
| (b) Allowances .....                                       | \$23 |
| (c) Conduct of Business .....                              | \$25 |
| (i) Business of Senate .....                               | \$25 |
| (ii) Voting .....  | \$27 |
| (d) Officers of Senate .....                               | \$28 |
| (i) Political Officers .....                               | \$28 |
| (ii) Speaker of the Senate .....                           | \$29 |
| (iii) Speaker pro tempore .....                            | \$31 |
| (e) Procedural Officers and Senior Officials .....         | \$32 |
| (i) Clerk of the Senate and Clerk of the Parliaments ..... | \$32 |



PARLIAMENT AND LEGISLATURE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (ii) Usher of Black Rod .....                            | §35  |
| (iii) Law Clerk and Parliamentary Counsel .....          | §37  |
| (iv) Senate Ethics Officer .....                         | §38  |
| (f) Sittings of Senate and Arrangement of Business ..... | §42  |
| (g) Minutes of Proceedings.....                          | §47  |
| (h) Committees .....                                     | §49  |
| (i) General.....   | §49  |
| (ii) Committee of Whole.....                             | §51  |
| (iii) Standing Committees .....                          | §53  |
| (iv) Special and Legislative Committees .....            | §58  |
| (v) Joint Committees.....                                | §59  |
| (vi) Committee Budget and Expenses.....                  | §60  |
| (vii) Procedure .....                                    | §66  |
| (i) Vacancy, Leave of Absence and Suspension .....       | §71  |
| (j) Conflict of Interest .....                           | §73  |
| 3. House of Commons .....                                | §79  |
| (a) Membership .....                                     | §79  |
| (b) Allowances.....                                      | §82  |
| (c) Representation.....                                  | §86  |
| (i) General.....   | §86  |
| (ii) Redistribution .....                                | §88  |
| (d) Disqualifications for Membership .....               | §93  |
| (e) Vacancy and Retirement .....                         | §97  |
| (f) Conduct of Business .....                            | §99  |
| (g) Speaker of House of Commons.....                     | §102 |
| (h) Committees of the Whole House .....                  | §110 |
| (i) Constitution.....                                    | §110 |
| (ii) Presiding Officer .....                             | §112 |
| (i) Officers in Service of House.....                    | §115 |
| (i) Clerk of the House.....                              | §115 |
| (ii) Sergeant-at-Arms.....                               | §119 |
| (iii) Law Clerk and Parliamentary Counsel .....          | §122 |
| (j) Parliamentary Publications.....                      | §123 |
| (i) Journals .....                                       | §123 |
| (ii) Official Report of Debates .....                    | §128 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (iii) Order Paper and Notice Paper.....                                  | §130 |
| (iv) Projected Order of Business .....                                   | §132 |
| (v) Status of House Business.....  | §133 |
| (vi) Committee Publications .....  | §134 |
| (vii) Bills.....   | §135 |
| (k) Procedure .....  | §136 |
| (i) Unprovided Cases .....   | §136 |
| (ii) Quorum.....   | §137 |
| (iii) Process of Debate .....  | §139 |
| (iv) Divisions .....   | §140 |
| (v) Rules of Debate.....   | §142 |
| (l) Arrangement of Business.....   | §144 |
| (i) Attendance of Members.....   | §144 |
| (ii) Sittings of House.....  | §145 |
| (iii) Interruption of Sittings.....                                      | §147 |
| (iv) Adjournment.....  | §148 |
| (v) Motions to Adjourn on Matters of Urgent Public Importance.....       | §150 |
| (vi) Statements by Members, Oral Questions and Routine Proceedings.....  | §151 |
| (vii) Petitions .....  | §154 |
| (viii) Government Orders.....  | §158 |
| (m) Private Members' Business.....                                       | §160 |
| (n) Committees .....   | §168 |
| (i) Types.....   | §168 |
| (ii) Constitution .....  | §169 |
| (iii) Powers .....   | §171 |
| (iv) Procedure .....   | §178 |
| (v) Reports .....  | §181 |
| (vi) Review of Order in Council Appointments.....                        | §182 |
| (o) Conflict of Interest .....   | §183 |
| (i) Principles .....   | §183 |
| (ii) Conflict of Interest Provisions.....                                | §185 |
| (iii) Conflict of Interest and Ethics Commissioner.....                  | §193 |
| 4. Meeting, Adjournment, Prorogation and Dissolution of Parliament ..... | §197 |

PARLIAMENT AND LEGISLATURE

---

(a) Meeting of Parliament.....§197  
    (i) Summons .....§197  
    (ii) Return of Election Writs.....§199  
    (iii) Oath of Allegiance or Affirmation.....§200  
(b) Proceedings on First Day of New Parliament .....§202  
    (i) Appointment of Speaker of Senate .....§202  
    (ii) Election of Speaker of House of Commons .....§203  
    (iii) Assertion of Commons' Privileges .....§205  
    (iv) Speech From Throne.....§206  
    (v) Business Taken Before Consideration of Throne  
        Speech.....§208  
            A. In Senate.....§208  
            B. In House of Commons .....§209  
(c) Power of Each House to Adjourn .....§212  
(d) Prorogation.....§213  
(e) Dissolution .....§216  
(f) Demise of Crown.....§217  
5. Legislative Work of Parliament .....§218  
    (a) Classification of Legislation.....§218  
    (b) Public Bills .....§219  
        (i) Presentation and First Reading .....§219  
            A. Senate.....§219  
            B. House of Commons.....§222  
        (ii) Second Reading.....§226  
        (iii) Committee Stage .....§228  
            A. Senate.....§228  
            B. House of Commons.....§233  
        (iv) Time Allocation and Closure.....§248  
        (v) Report Stage .....§252  
            A. General.....§252  
            B. Senate.....§254  
            C. House of Commons.....§255  
        (vi) Royal Consent .....§260  
        (vii) Third Reading.....§261  
            A. General.....§261  
            B. Senate.....§262

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| C. House of Commons.....  | §265 |
| (viii) Consideration of Bills by Second House and<br>Conference .....             | §269 |
| (ix) Royal Assent .....   | §273 |
| (x) Publication of Statutes .....   | §276 |
| (c) Private Bills .....   | §280 |
| (i) General.....  | §280 |
| (ii) Parliamentary Agents .....   | §282 |
| (iii) Publication of Parliamentary Rules.....                                     | §283 |
| (iv) Presentation of Petition for Private Bill.....                               | §284 |
| (v) Publication of Notices.....   | §287 |
| (vi) Effect of Compliance or Non-Compliance with<br>Rules or Standing Orders..... | §291 |
| (vii) Fees and Charges .....  | §292 |
| (viii) First Reading .....  | §295 |
| A. General.....   | §295 |
| B. Senate.....  | §296 |
| C. House of Commons.....  | §301 |
| (ix) Second Reading.....  | §304 |
| (x) Committee Stage .....   | §306 |
| (xi) Report Stage .....   | §315 |
| (xii) Third Reading.....  | §316 |
| (xiii) Consideration of Bill by Second House and<br>Conference .....              | §317 |
| (xiv) Royal Assent .....  | §319 |
| (xv) Private Bill Register.....   | §320 |
| (d) Liability for Legislation Passed.....   | §321 |
| 6. Delegated Legislation .....  | §322 |
| 7. Financial Work of Parliament .....   | §332 |
| (a) General .....   | §332 |
| (b) Public Revenue.....   | §335 |
| (c) Business of Ways and Means.....   | §336 |
| (i) Budget.....   | §336 |
| (ii) Ways and Means Motions .....   | §342 |
| (d) Business of Supply.....   | §347 |
| (i) General.....  | §347 |

PARLIAMENT AND LEGISLATURE

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (ii) Allotted Days .....   | \$349 |
| (iii) Main Estimates.....  | \$352 |
| (iv) Supplementary Estimates .....   | \$356 |
| (v) Interim Supply .....   | \$358 |
| (vi) Procedure in Committee .....  | \$359 |
| (vii) Procedure on Last Allotted Day of Supply<br>Period .....                     | \$364 |
| (e) Governor General's Warrants .....  | \$369 |
| (f) Granting of Aids and Supply .....  | \$370 |
| (g) Royal Recommendation .....   | \$374 |
| (h) Public Accounts.....   | \$377 |
| 8. Privileges of Parliament.....   | \$379 |
| (a) Nature of Privilege .....  | \$379 |
| (b) Assertion of Privilege.....  | \$386 |
| (c) Suspension of Privilege .....  | \$387 |
| (d) Rights and Immunities of Members.....  | \$388 |
| (i) Freedom of Speech .....  | \$388 |
| (ii) Freedom from Arrest .....   | \$397 |
| (iii) Freedom from Attendance at Court .....                                       | \$401 |
| (iv) Freedom to Conduct Parliamentary Business<br>Undisturbed.....                 | \$404 |
| (e) Rights of Parliament.....  | \$409 |
| (i) Power to Establish Rules and Regulate Its Own<br>Affairs .....                 | \$409 |
| (ii) Power to Conduct Inquiries and Send for Per-<br>sons, Papers or Records ..... | \$414 |
| (iii) Right to Examine Witnesses on Oath.....                                      | \$416 |
| (iv) Control Over Parliamentary Publications.....                                  | \$422 |
| (v) Power to Exclude Strangers.....  | \$429 |
| (vi) Power to Discipline and Expel Members .....                                   | \$432 |
| (vii) Power to Fill Vacancy in Membership .....                                    | \$436 |
| (viii) Power to Commit for Contempt.....   | \$438 |
| (f) Privileges of Employees of Parliament.....                                     | \$439 |
| (g) Raising Question of Privilege in Parliament.....                               | \$441 |
| (h) Charter of Rights and Freedoms.....  | \$443 |
| 9. Lobbying.....   | \$444 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (a) General .....                            | \$444        |
| (b) Commissioner of Lobbying .....           | \$446        |
| (c) Lobbyists' Code of Conduct .....         | \$449        |
| (d) Types of Lobbyists .....                 | \$453        |
| (e) Registration .....                       | \$455        |
| (f) Types of Public Office Holders .....     | \$458        |
| <b>II. Provincial Legislatures .....</b>     | <b>\$461</b> |
| 1. Introduction .....                        | \$461        |
| (a) Constitution .....                       | \$461        |
| (b) Lieutenant Governor .....                | \$463        |
| (c) Qualifications for Membership .....      | \$468        |
| (i) General .....                            | \$468        |
| (ii) Resignation .....                       | \$471        |
| (iii) Recall .....                           | \$474        |
| (d) Disqualifications for Membership .....   | \$475        |
| (e) Allowances .....                         | \$478        |
| (f) Representation .....                     | \$485        |
| (g) Retirement .....                         | \$486        |
| (h) Conduct of Business .....                | \$488        |
| (i) Speaker of Legislature .....             | \$489        |
| (j) Committees of the Whole House .....      | \$494        |
| (i) Constitution .....                       | \$494        |
| (ii) Presiding Officer .....                 | \$496        |
| (k) Officers in Service of Legislature ..... | \$499        |
| (i) Clerk of the House .....                 | \$499        |
| (ii) Sergeant-at-Arms .....                  | \$500        |
| (iii) Legislative Counsel .....              | \$501        |
| (l) Legislative Publications .....           | \$502        |
| (i) Journals .....                           | \$502        |
| (ii) Official Report of Debates .....        | \$508        |
| (iii) Order Paper and Notices .....          | \$509        |
| (iv) Committee Publications .....            | \$510        |
| (m) Procedure .....                          | \$511        |
| (i) Unprovided Cases .....                   | \$511        |

## PARLIAMENT AND LEGISLATURE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (ii) Quorum .....   | §512 |
| (iii) Process of Debate .....   | §513 |
| (iv) Divisions .....  | §514 |
| (v) Rules of Debate .....   | §519 |
| (n) Arrangement of Business .....   | §521 |
| (i) Attendance of Members .....   | §521 |
| (ii) Sittings of House .....  | §522 |
| (iii) Interruption of Sittings .....                                      | §523 |
| (iv) Adjournment .....  | §524 |
| (v) Motions to Adjourn on Matters of Urgent Public Importance .....       | §525 |
| (o) Statements by Members, Oral Questions and Routine Proceedings .....   | §526 |
| (i) Precedence .....  | §526 |
| (ii) Petitions .....  | §527 |
| (iii) Reports .....   | §530 |
| (p) Orders of the Day .....   | §531 |
| (q) Private Members' Business .....                                       | §533 |
| (r) Committees .....  | §534 |
| (i) Types .....   | §534 |
| (ii) Constitution .....   | §535 |
| (iii) Powers .....  | §537 |
| (iv) Procedure .....  | §541 |
| (v) Reports .....   | §543 |
| (s) Conflict of Interest .....  | §544 |
| (i) Principles .....  | §544 |
| (ii) Conflict of Interest Provisions .....                                | §546 |
| (iii) Commissioner .....  | §554 |
| (t) Legislative Library .....   | §558 |
| 2. Meeting, Adjournment, Prorogation and Dissolution of Legislature ..... | §560 |
| (a) Meeting of Legislature .....  | §560 |
| (i) Summons .....   | §560 |
| (ii) Return of Election Writs .....                                       | §562 |
| (iii) Oath of Allegiance or Affirmation .....                             | §563 |
| (b) Proceedings on First Day of New Legislature .....                     | §565 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (i) Election of Speaker of Legislative Assembly.....                              | \$565 |
| (ii) Assertion of Legislature's Privileges .....                                  | \$568 |
| (iii) Speech From Throne.....   | \$569 |
| (iv) Business Taken Before Consideration of<br>Throne Speech.....                 | \$570 |
| (c) Power of Legislature to Adjourn .....   | \$573 |
| (d) Prorogation.....  | \$574 |
| (e) Dissolution .....   | \$576 |
| (f) Demise of Crown.....  | \$577 |
| 3. Legislative Work of Legislature.....   | \$578 |
| (a) Classification of Legislation.....  | \$578 |
| (b) Public Bills .....  | \$579 |
| (i) Presentation and First Reading.....   | \$579 |
| (ii) Second Reading.....  | \$582 |
| (iii) Committee Stage.....  | \$586 |
| A. Standing or Select Committee.....  | \$586 |
| B. Committee of the Whole House.....  | \$595 |
| (iv) Time Allocation and Closure.....   | \$599 |
| (v) Report Stage .....  | \$601 |
| (vi) Third Reading.....   | \$608 |
| (vii) Royal Assent .....  | \$611 |
| (viii) Publication of Statutes .....  | \$615 |
| (c) Private Bills .....   | \$617 |
| (i) General.....  | \$617 |
| (ii) Parliamentary Agents .....   | \$618 |
| (iii) Publication of Rules of Legislature.....                                    | \$619 |
| (iv) Presentation of Petition for Private Bill.....                               | \$620 |
| (v) Publication of Notices.....   | \$625 |
| (vi) Effect of Compliance or Non-Compliance with<br>Rules or Standing Orders..... | \$627 |
| (vii) Fees and Charges .....  | \$628 |
| (viii) First Reading .....  | \$631 |
| (ix) Second Reading.....  | \$634 |
| (x) Committee Stage .....   | \$635 |
| (xi) Third Reading.....   | \$641 |
| (xii) Royal Assent .....  | \$642 |



## PARLIAMENT AND LEGISLATURE

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (xiii) Private Bill Register.....                      | \$643 |
| (d) Liability for Legislation Passed.....              | \$644 |
| 4. Delegated Legislation .....                         | \$645 |
| 5. Financial Work of Legislature.....                  | \$648 |
| (a) General.....                                       | \$648 |
| (b) Public Revenue.....                                | \$650 |
| (c) Budget.....  | \$651 |
| (d) Business of Supply.....                            | \$652 |
| (e) Estimates .....                                    | \$653 |
| (f) Procedure in Committee .....                       | \$659 |
| (g) Procedure on Last Supply Day.....                  | \$660 |
| (h) Lieutenant Governor's Warrants.....                | \$661 |
| (i) Royal Recommendation .....                         | \$662 |
| (j) Public Accounts.....                               | \$663 |
| 6. Privileges of Legislature .....                     | \$664 |
| (a) Nature of Privilege .....                          | \$664 |
| (b) Rights and Immunities of Members.....              | \$671 |
| (i) Freedom of Speech .....                            | \$671 |
| (ii) Freedom from Arrest .....                         | \$674 |
| (iii) Freedom from Attendance at Court .....           | \$675 |
| (c) Rights of the Legislature.....                     | \$677 |
| (i) Right to Examine Witnesses on Oath.....            | \$677 |
| (ii) Control over Legislative Publications .....       | \$680 |
| (iii) Power to Exclude Strangers .....                 | \$682 |
| (iv) Power to Discipline and Expel Members .....       | \$684 |
| (v) Power to Fill Vacancy in Membership .....          | \$686 |
| (vi) Power to Commit for Contempt.....                 | \$688 |
| (d) Privileges of Employees of Legislature .....       | \$690 |
| (e) Raising Question of Privilege in Legislature ..... | \$691 |
| (f) Charter of Rights and Freedoms .....               | \$692 |
| 7. Lobbying.....                                       | \$693 |
| (a) General.....                                       | \$693 |
| (b) Registrar of Lobbying .....                        | \$696 |
| (c) Limit on Liability .....                           | \$702 |
| (d) Types of Lobbyists.....                            | \$704 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(e) Registration .....§707  
(f) Types of Public Office Holders .....§712

**Index**

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Crown; Elections; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Statutes

# PARTIES

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.,  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**  
**Table of Statutes**  
**Table of Rules**

**I. Introduction**.....\$1

    1. Scope of Title.....\$1

    2. Definitions .....\$2

    3. Style of Cause .....\$8

**II. Capacity and Standing** .....\$9

    1. Persons Under Disability .....\$9

        (a) Representation Required.....\$9

        (b) Infants .....\$18

        (c) Mentally Incapacitated Persons.....\$32

        (d) Appointment and Removal of Guardian or Next Friend .....\$42

        (e) Conduct of Litigation Guardian or Next Friend .....\$55

        (f) Effect of Procedural Irregularities.....\$61

        (g) Liability of Guardian Ad Litem or Next Friend.....\$65

    2. Public Interest Standing.....\$68

        (a) General .....\$68

        (b) Attorney General .....\$92

    3. Crown .....\$111

        (a) Attorney General .....\$111

        (b) Commissions, Statutory Public Boards, Agents of the Crown .....\$125

    4. Municipal Corporations .....\$136

## PARTIES

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 5. Trustees, Executors and Administrators.....                                 | §141        |
| (a) General.....   | §141        |
| (b) Personal Claims.....   | §171        |
| 6. Persons Appointed by Representation Order.....                              | §175        |
| 7. Partnerships.....   | §186        |
| (a) General.....   | §186        |
| (b) Limited Partnerships.....  | §206        |
| 8. Sole Proprietorships.....   | §212        |
| 9. Corporations.....   | §213        |
| (a) General.....   | §213        |
| (b) Derivative Actions and Personal Actions by<br>Shareholders.....            | §224        |
| (c) Receivership, Liquidation, Dissolution, Restoration<br>and Winding-Up..... | §233        |
| (d) Extraprovincial Corporations.....  | §238        |
| 10. Unincorporated Associations.....   | §242        |
| (a) General.....   | §242        |
| (b) Representative Actions.....  | §248        |
| 11. Indian Bands.....  | §256        |
| 12. Trade Unions.....  | §258        |
| (a) General.....   | §258        |
| (b) Representative Action.....   | §266        |
| 13. Miscellaneous Parties.....   | §277        |
| 14. Representative Actions.....  | §287        |
| (a) Nature and Procedure.....  | §287        |
| (b) Purpose and Requirements.....  | §302        |
| 15. Denial of Standing.....  | §334        |
| <b>III. Joinder of Parties.....</b>  | <b>§335</b> |
| 1. Rules of Court.....   | §335        |
| (a) Federal Court.....   | §335        |
| (b) Alberta.....   | §342        |
| (c) British Columbia.....  | §346        |
| (d) Manitoba.....  | §350        |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....  | §355        |
| 2. General.....  | §365        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Misjoinder and Non-joinder .....                       | §380        |
| <b>IV. Third Party Procedure.....</b>                     | <b>§386</b> |
| 1. Rules of Court.....                                    | §386        |
| 2. Nature and Object .....                                | §400        |
| 3. Limitation of Actions.....                             | §405        |
| 4. Jurisdiction of Court .....                            | §413        |
| 5. Availability .....                                     | §420        |
| (a) General .....   | §420        |
| (b) Particular Actions .....                              | §434        |
| 6. Leave to Issue Third Party Notice .....                | §450        |
| 7. Directions by Court.....                               | §458        |
| 8. Rights of Third Parties .....                          | §462        |
| (a) General.....  | §462        |
| (b) Insurers.....   | §466        |
| 9. Setting Aside Third Party Notice.....                  | §471        |
| <b>V. Adding, Substituting and Removing Parties .....</b> | <b>§484</b> |
| 1. General Powers of Amendment .....                      | §484        |
| 2. Addition of Parties .....                              | §492        |
| (a) General .....   | §492        |
| (b) Adding Plaintiffs .....                               | §516        |
| (i) General.....  | §516        |
| (ii) Consent .....  | §527        |
| (c) Adding Defendants .....                               | §533        |
| (i) General.....  | §533        |
| (ii) By Counterclaim .....                                | §558        |
| (d) Intervening Parties.....                              | §566        |
| (i) General.....  | §566        |
| (ii) Appeals in Provincial Courts.....                    | §596        |
| (iii) Attorney General.....                               | §606        |
| (e) Amicus Curiae .....                                   | §616        |
| 3. Substitution of Parties.....                           | §623        |
| (a) General .....   | §623        |
| (b) Misnomer .....  | §638        |

PARTIES

---

(c) Action By or Against Non-Entity.....\$645

4. Death of Party or Devolution of Interest in Proceeding.....\$649

5. Striking Out Parties.....\$670

6. Time for Application .....\$679

    (a) Stage of Proceedings .....\$679

    (b) Intervention of Limitation Period.....\$694

**VI. Proper Parties in Particular Actions .....\$719**

    1. Reference to Substantive Law.....\$719

    2. Assignors and Assignees .....\$720

    3. Contracts.....\$738

    4. Corporations and Shareholders.....\$755

    5. Creditors .....\$769

    6. Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences.....\$775

    7. Guarantors .....\$783

    8. Injunctions .....\$786

    9. Insurance.....\$790

    10. Mortgage Actions.....\$797

    11. Patents and Trade Marks .....\$812

    12. Principal and Agent .....\$817

    13. Specific Performance .....\$825

    14. Tax.....\$835

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Administrative Law; Agency; Associations and Not-for-Profit Corporations; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Business Corporations; Charities; Children; Conflict of Laws; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Crown; Debtor and Creditor; Employment Law; Executors and Administrators; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Injunctions; Insurance; International Law; Judgments and Orders; Limitation of Actions; Mental Incapacity; Mortgages; Municipal Corporations — By-laws, Permits and Legal Proceedings; Negligence; Partnership; Patents; Personal Property; Pleadings; Practice; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Receivers; Religious Institutions; Sale of Land; Specific Performance; Trade Marks and Industrial Designs; Workers Compensation

# PARTNERSHIP

prepared by  
Daryl S. Fridlander, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

and  
Richard E. Levinson, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                                       | §1  |
| 1. Legal Framework .....                                      | §1  |
| 2. “Partnership” Defined .....                                | §4  |
| 3. Nature of Partnership .....                                | §7  |
| (a) General .....   | §7  |
| (b) Sharing Profits and Losses .....                          | §14 |
| (c) Statutory Rules Prescribing Evidence of Partnership . . . | §20 |
| (d) Partnership Distinguished From Other Relationships . . .  | §21 |
| (i) Co-ownership .....  | §21 |
| (ii) Employer-Employee Relationships .....                    | §26 |
| (iii) Sharing Gross Returns .....                             | §29 |
| (iv) Joint Venture .....                                      | §30 |
| (e) Particular Cases .....                                    | §35 |
| (i) Examples of Partnership .....                             | §35 |
| (ii) Examples Where Partnership not Found .....               | §43 |
| 4. Evidence of Formation .....                                | §53 |
| (a) General .....   | §53 |
| (b) Partnership Agreement .....                               | §60 |
| (c) Conduct of Parties .....                                  | §64 |
| 5. Registration .....   | §70 |

PARTNERSHIP

---

(a) Alberta . . . . . \$70  
(b) British Columbia . . . . . \$78  
(c) Manitoba . . . . . \$82  
(d) Saskatchewan . . . . . \$88  
6. Firm Name . . . . . \$94  
7. Applicability of Statute of Frauds . . . . . \$96  
8. Limited Partnerships . . . . . \$102

**II. Relationship Between Partners and Third Parties . . . . . \$103**

1. Power of Partner to Bind Firm . . . . . \$103  
    (a) General . . . . . \$103  
    (b) Acts Outside Partner's Authority . . . . . \$117  
2. Authority to Deal With Negotiable Instruments . . . . . \$123  
3. Authority to Pledge Credit of Firm . . . . . \$132  
4. Joint Liability of Partners . . . . . \$138  
5. Liability of Incoming and Outgoing Partners . . . . . \$144  
6. Holding Out . . . . . \$160  
7. Liability of Firm for Wrongful Acts . . . . . \$167  
    (a) General . . . . . \$167  
    (b) Misapplication of Funds . . . . . \$171  
    (c) Liability of Firm for Torts . . . . . \$176  
    (d) Criminal Liability . . . . . \$179  
8. Revocation of Continuing Guarantee by Change in Firm . . . . \$181

**III. Relationship Between Partners . . . . . \$183**

1. General . . . . . \$183  
2. Rights and Obligations of Partners . . . . . \$194  
    (a) Sharing Profits and Losses . . . . . \$194  
    (b) Introduction and Expulsion of Partners . . . . . \$198  
    (c) Withdrawal from Partnership . . . . . \$199  
    (d) Right to Remuneration . . . . . \$201  
    (e) Right to Indemnity . . . . . \$204  
    (f) Right to Accounting . . . . . \$206  
    (g) Right of Subrogation . . . . . \$225  
3. Partnership Property . . . . . \$226  
    (a) What Constitutes Partnership Property . . . . . \$226



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Nature of Partner's Interest in Assets of Firm . . . . . | §229        |
| (c) Right of Partner to Deal with Assets . . . . .           | §235        |
| (d) Partnership Land . . . . .                               | §240        |
| (e) Partnership Capital . . . . .                            | §250        |
| 4. Assignment of Share in Partnership . . . . .              | §253        |
| <b>IV. Dissolution . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§256</b> |
| 1. What Effects Dissolution . . . . .                        | §256        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §256        |
| (b) Death or Insolvency . . . . .                            | §261        |
| (c) Expiration of Term . . . . .                             | §265        |
| (d) Termination of Adventure . . . . .                       | §268        |
| (e) Notice . . . . .   | §275        |
| (f) Illegality of Business . . . . .                         | §277        |
| (g) Agreement . . . . .                                      | §278        |
| (h) Dissolution by Court . . . . .                           | §281        |
| 2. Date of Dissolution . . . . .                             | §286        |
| 3. Effect of Dissolution . . . . .                           | §297        |
| (a) Rights, Powers and Duties of Partners . . . . .          | §297        |
| (b) Third Parties . . . . .                                  | §305        |
| (c) Death of Partner . . . . .                               | §311        |
| 4. Right to Accounting . . . . .                             | §318        |
| 5. Assets on Dissolution . . . . .                           | §327        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §327        |
| (b) Goodwill . . . . .                                       | §335        |
| (c) Distribution of Assets . . . . .                         | §338        |
| <b>V. Actions by or Against Firms . . . . .</b>              | <b>§345</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §345        |
| 2. Form of Action . . . . .                                  | §362        |
| 3. Execution of Judgment Against Firm or Partner . . . . .   | §369        |
| 4. Appeals . . . . .   | §373        |
| <b>VI. Actions Between Partners . . . . .</b>                | <b>§374</b> |
| 1. Right of Action . . . . .                                 | §374        |
| 2. Appointment of Receiver . . . . .                         | §380        |

PARTNERSHIP

---

3. Restrictive Covenants . . . . . §387  
4. Costs . . . . . §390

**VII. Limited Partnerships . . . . . §391**

1. General . . . . . §391  
    (a) Legal Framework . . . . . §391  
    (b) Partners . . . . . §395

2. Formation and Registration . . . . . §399  
    (a) Initial Formation . . . . . §399  
    (b) Extra-provincial Partnerships . . . . . §401  
    (c) Addition and Substitution of Partners . . . . . §406  
    (d) Amendments to Certificates and Declarations . . . . . §410

3. Firm Name . . . . . §413

4. Contributions of Partners . . . . . §417

5. Rights and Obligations of Partners in Partnership . . . . . §424  
    (a) General Partner . . . . . §424  
    (b) Limited Partner . . . . . §433

6. Relationship Between Limited Partnership and Third Parties . . . . . §439

7. Actions By or Against Limited Partnership . . . . . §444

8. Dissolution of Limited Partnership . . . . . §452

**VIII. Limited Liability Partnerships . . . . . §463**

1. General . . . . . §463  
    (a) Legal Framework . . . . . §463  
    (b) Registration . . . . . §467  
    (c) Amendments to Certificates and Declarations . . . . . §473

2. Extra-provincial Limited Liability Partnerships . . . . . §475

3. Firm Name . . . . . §480

4. Rights and Obligations of Partners in Partnership . . . . . §484  
    (a) Limited Liability for Partners . . . . . §484  
    (b) Distribution of Partnership Property . . . . . §489

5. Dissolution of Limited Liability Partnership . . . . . §493

6. Cancellation of Registration . . . . . §497

**Index**

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

*Related titles:* Agency; Agriculture; Associations and Not-for-profit Corporations; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Builders' Liens; Costs; Debtor and Creditor; Discovery; Estoppel; Execution; Executors and Administrators; Injunctions; Limitation of Actions; Mines and Minerals; Parties; Pleadings; Practice; Professions and Occupations; Receivers.

# PATENTS OF INVENTION

prepared by  
A. David Morrow, B.Sc., LL.B.,  
*of the Ontario Bar*  
and  
Christine N. Genge, B.Eng., LL.B.,  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of Treaties**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....  | §1  |
| 1. General .....  | §1  |
| 2. Historical .....   | §9  |
| 3. The Patent Act Amendments of 1987 .....  | §14 |
| 4. The Patent Act Amendments of 1993 .....  | §20 |
| (a) General .....   | §20 |
| (b) Transitional .....  | §22 |
| (c) Continued Operation of Compulsory Licenses for Patented Medicines .....           | §27 |
| (d) North American Free Trade Agreement and World Trade Organization Amendments ..... | §33 |
| <b>II. Subject-Matter</b> .....   | §34 |
| 1. General .....  | §34 |
| 2. Patentable Subject-Matter .....  | §38 |
| (a) Arts and Processes .....  | §38 |
| (b) Machines .....  | §46 |
| (c) Manufactured Articles .....   | §47 |
| (d) Compositions of Matter .....  | §48 |

PATENTS OF INVENTION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (e) Improvements . . . . .                             | §54         |
| (f) Combinations . . . . .                             | §56         |
| (g) New Uses of Old Subject-Matter . . . . .           | §66         |
| (h) Patented Medicines . . . . .                       | §71         |
| (i) Lower Life Forms . . . . .                         | §72         |
| (j) Cells and Modified DNA . . . . .                   | §74         |
| 3. Unpatentable Matter . . . . .                       | §75         |
| (a) General . . . . .                                  | §75         |
| (b) Illicit Objects . . . . .                          | §81         |
| (c) Principles and Theorems . . . . .                  | §82         |
| (d) Computer Programs . . . . .                        | §91         |
| (e) Higher Life Forms . . . . .                        | §95         |
| (f) Methods of Medical Treatment . . . . .             | §96         |
| (g) Professional Skills and Business Systems . . . . . | §99         |
| (h) Foods and Medicines . . . . .                      | §102        |
| <b>III. Invention . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§105</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                   | §105        |
| 2. Obviousness (Lack of Invention) . . . . .           | §113        |
| 3. Test for Invention . . . . .                        | §120        |
| (a) Standard of Invention . . . . .                    | §120        |
| (b) Prior Art Considered . . . . .                     | §134        |
| (c) Common General Knowledge . . . . .                 | §140        |
| 4. Market Indicators of Invention . . . . .            | §144        |
| (a) Apprehension of a Need . . . . .                   | §144        |
| (b) Commercial Success . . . . .                       | §145        |
| 5. Possibly Inventive Acts . . . . .                   | §154        |
| (a) Selection . . . . .                                | §154        |
| (b) Omission . . . . .                                 | §155        |
| (c) Accidental Discovery . . . . .                     | §156        |
| 6. Non-Inventive Acts . . . . .                        | §157        |
| (a) Mechanical Skill . . . . .                         | §157        |
| (b) Proportions, Size, Shape, Material . . . . .       | §159        |
| (c) Mere Conception Not Invention . . . . .            | §160        |
| 7. Dates Relevant to Invention . . . . .               | §161        |
| (a) Ex Post Facto Analysis . . . . .                   | §161        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Date of Invention . . . . .  | §163        |
| (c) Date For Evaluation of Inventiveness . . . . .                                       | §164        |
| 8. Invention and Novelty . . . . .   | §166        |
| <b>IV. Novelty . . . . .</b>   | <b>§168</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §168        |
| 2. Construction . . . . .  | §174        |
| 3. Pre-1989 Patent Act (Old Act Patents) . . . . .                                       | §177        |
| (a) Prior Knowledge or Use by Others (Section 27(1)(a)) . . . . .                        | §177        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §177        |
| (ii) Same Invention . . . . .  | §179        |
| (iii) Meaning of “Knowledge” . . . . .   | §182        |
| (iv) Prior Accidental Use . . . . .  | §184        |
| (v) Making Available to the Public . . . . .   | §185        |
| (vi) Missed Conflict . . . . .   | §189        |
| (b) Prior Description in a Patent or Printed Publication<br>(Section 27(1)(b)) . . . . . | §191        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §191        |
| (ii) Grace Period . . . . .  | §199        |
| (iii) Sufficiency of Description . . . . .   | §200        |
| (iv) Mosaic of Documents . . . . .   | §207        |
| (v) Combination Patents . . . . .  | §209        |
| (vi) Meaning of “Printed Publication” . . . . .  | §211        |
| (c) Prior Public Use or Sale in Canada (Section 27(1)(c)) . . . . .                      | §216        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §216        |
| (ii) Grace Period . . . . .  | §222        |
| (iii) Sufficiency of Disclosure . . . . .  | §223        |
| (iv) Meaning of “Public” . . . . .   | §224        |
| (v) Prior Experimental Use . . . . .   | §226        |
| (vi) Meaning of “On Sale in Canada” . . . . .  | §231        |
| (d) Prior Patent . . . . .   | §234        |
| (e) Novelty in Part . . . . .  | §235        |
| (f) Analogous Uses . . . . .   | §237        |
| 4. Post-1996 Patent Act (New Act Patents) . . . . .                                      | §240        |

PATENTS OF INVENTION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .   | §240        |
| (b) Prior Disclosure Originating with Applicant . . . . .       | §244        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §244        |
| (ii) Grace Period . . . . .                                     | §245        |
| (iii) Nature of the Disclosure . . . . .                        | §246        |
| (iv) Breach of Confidence . . . . .                             | §247        |
| (c) Prior Disclosure Not Originating with Applicant . . . . .   | §248        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §248        |
| (ii) Nature of Disclosure . . . . .                             | §249        |
| (d) Available to the Public . . . . .                           | §250        |
| (e) Prior Application in Canada . . . . .                       | §252        |
| (f) Later Application with Earlier Claim Date . . . . .         | §253        |
| <b>V. Utility . . . . .</b>                                     | <b>§254</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §254        |
| 2. Definition . . . . .   | §267        |
| 3. Scientific Principles or Abstract Theorems . . . . .         | §273        |
| 4. Commercial Success . . . . .                                 | §274        |
| 5. Degree of Utility . . . . .                                  | §276        |
| <b>VI. The Specification . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§277</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §277        |
| 2. Requirements of the Disclosure . . . . .                     | §282        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §282        |
| (b) Sufficiency of Description . . . . .                        | §285        |
| (c) Good Faith . . . . .  | §297        |
| (d) Intelligibility . . . . .                                   | §303        |
| 3. Construction of the Specification . . . . .                  | §321        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §321        |
| (b) Specification to be Read and Construed as a Whole . . . . . | §324        |
| (c) Date of Construction of Patent . . . . .                    | §326        |
| (d) Impartial Construction . . . . .                            | §328        |
| (e) Interpretation of Language . . . . .                        | §336        |
| 4. Requirements of the Claims . . . . .                         | §340        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §340        |
| (b) Clarity of Language . . . . .                               | §342        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Definition of the Ambit of the Monopoly . . . . .          | §344        |
| 5. Construction of the Claims . . . . .                        | §353        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §353        |
| (b) Reference to Specification . . . . .                       | §356        |
| (c) Claims are Disclaimers . . . . .                           | §360        |
| 6. The Drawings . . . . .                                      | §362        |
| <b>VII. Application for Letters Patent . . . . .</b>           | <b>§365</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §365        |
| 2. Definitions . . . . .                                       | §366        |
| 3. Inventors, Applicants and Ownership . . . . .               | §368        |
| (a) Inventor . . . . .   | §368        |
| (b) Applicants . . . . .                                       | §373        |
| (c) Joint Inventors and Applicants . . . . .                   | §375        |
| (d) Master and Servant . . . . .                               | §382        |
| (e) Caveats . . . . .  | §391        |
| 4. Prosecution . . . . .                                       | §395        |
| (a) Procedure on Application . . . . .                         | §395        |
| (b) Examination and Amendments . . . . .                       | §408        |
| (c) Agents and Representatives . . . . .                       | §412        |
| 5. Priority Issues . . . . .                                   | §414        |
| (a) Foreign and Convention Applications . . . . .              | §414        |
| (b) Conflicting Applications . . . . .                         | §420        |
| (c) Divisional Applications . . . . .                          | §426        |
| (d) Supplementary Disclosures . . . . .                        | §430        |
| 6. Special Applications . . . . .                              | §433        |
| (a) Secret Applications and Patents . . . . .                  | §433        |
| (b) Patent Relating to Atomic Energy . . . . .                 | §434        |
| 7. Refusal to Grant Patents . . . . .                          | §435        |
| 8. Abandonment . . . . .                                       | §445        |
| 9. Restoration and Reinstatement . . . . .                     | §451        |
| 10. Grant . . . . .  | §454        |
| (a) Conditions of Grant . . . . .                              | §454        |
| (b) Limitation . . . . .                                       | §457        |
| (c) Term . . . . .   | §458        |
| 11. Highlights of the 1987 and Subsequent Amendments . . . . . | §460        |



PATENTS OF INVENTION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §460        |
| (b) Absolute Novelty . . . . .                          | §461        |
| (c) First to File System . . . . .                      | §462        |
| (d) Laying Open for Inspection . . . . .                | §465        |
| (e) Maintenance Fees for Pending Applications . . . . . | §469        |
| (f) Protests . . . . .                                  | §473        |
| (g) Requesting Examination . . . . .                    | §475        |
| (h) Maintenance Fees for Issued Patents . . . . .       | §477        |
| <b>VIII. Re-examination . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§480</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §480        |
| 2. Request . . . . .                                    | §481        |
| 3. Re-examination Board . . . . .                       | §484        |
| 4. Substantial New Question of Patentability . . . . .  | §485        |
| 5. Notice and Reply . . . . .                           | §486        |
| 6. Proposed Amendment . . . . .                         | §490        |
| 7. Certificate . . . . .                                | §491        |
| 8. Appeal . . . . .                                     | §496        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §496        |
| (b) Limitation Period . . . . .                         | §498        |
| (c) Procedure . . . . .                                 | §499        |
| <b>IX. The Patent Cooperation Treaty . . . . .</b>      | <b>§500</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §500        |
| 2. International Application . . . . .                  | §504        |
| 3. Entering National Phase . . . . .                    | §516        |
| 4. Fees . . . . .                                       | §522        |
| 5. National Phase . . . . .                             | §523        |
| <b>X. Assignment, Licence and Devolution . . . . .</b>  | <b>§528</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §528        |
| 2. Assignment . . . . .                                 | §530        |
| 3. Licence by Agreement . . . . .                       | §535        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §535        |
| (b) Assignable or Non-Assignable . . . . .              | §538        |
| (c) Revocable or Irrevocable . . . . .                  | §539        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (d) General, Exclusive or Limited . . . . .                   | §540 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §540 |
| (ii) Exclusive . . . . .                                      | §541 |
| (iii) Limited . . . . .                                       | §543 |
| (e) Restrictive Conditions . . . . .                          | §544 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §544 |
| (ii) Time . . . . .   | §545 |
| (iii) Territory . . . . .                                     | §547 |
| (iv) Part of Patented Invention . . . . .                     | §548 |
| (v) Right to Use Patented Invention . . . . .                 | §549 |
| (vi) Resale of Patented Articles . . . . .                    | §550 |
| A. General . . . . .  | §550 |
| B. Price . . . . .  | §551 |
| C. Use . . . . .  | §552 |
| (f) Effect of Restrictive Covenants . . . . .                 | §554 |
| (g) Express or Implied . . . . .                              | §558 |
| (h) Master and Servant . . . . .                              | §559 |
| 4. Compulsory Licences for Food and Medicine . . . . .        | §560 |
| (a) Historical . . . . .                                      | §560 |
| (b) General . . . . .   | §563 |
| (c) Food . . . . .  | §568 |
| (d) Medicine . . . . .  | §569 |
| (e) Scope of Compulsory Licences . . . . .                    | §581 |
| (f) Abuse of Patent Rights . . . . .                          | §584 |
| (g) 1987 Amendments . . . . .                                 | §585 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §585 |
| (ii) Medicines Not Invented and Developed in Canada . . . . . | §586 |
| (iii) Medicines Invented and Developed in Canada . . . . .    | §587 |
| 5. Devolution . . . . .                                       | §588 |
| 6. Joint Owners of Patents . . . . .                          | §591 |
| 7. Registration . . . . .                                     | §593 |
| 8. Execution . . . . .  | §599 |
| 9. Estoppel . . . . .   | §600 |
| 10. Actions to Recover Royalties . . . . .                    | §606 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §606 |

PATENTS OF INVENTION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Revocation of Patent . . . . .                         | §608        |
| (c) Fraud . . . . .  | §611        |
| (d) Expiry . . . . .                                       | §612        |
| 11. Bills of Exchange and Patent Rights . . . . .          | §613        |
| 12. Sale of Goods Act . . . . .                            | §616        |
| <b>XI. Reissue . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§617</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §617        |
| 2. Jurisdiction of Commissioner . . . . .                  | §619        |
| 3. United States Decisions . . . . .                       | §621        |
| 4. Inadvertence, Accident or Mistake . . . . .             | §622        |
| 5. Same Invention . . . . .                                | §625        |
| 6. Effect of Reissue . . . . .                             | §627        |
| 7. Practice . . . . .                                      | §633        |
| <b>XII. Disclaimer . . . . .</b>                           | <b>§637</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §637        |
| 2. Effect . . . . .  | §642        |
| <b>XIII. Infringement . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§647</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §647        |
| 2. Definition . . . . .                                    | §648        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §648        |
| (b) Importance of Claims . . . . .                         | §653        |
| (c) Claim Construction . . . . .                           | §658        |
| (d) Combinations . . . . .                                 | §668        |
| 3. Indirect Activities Constituting Infringement . . . . . | §674        |
| (a) Restricted Sale . . . . .                              | §674        |
| (b) Aiding, Inducing or Procuring Infringement . . . . .   | §675        |
| (c) Import and Export . . . . .                            | §679        |
| 4. Exceptions to Infringement . . . . .                    | §682        |
| (a) Repairs to Patented Articles . . . . .                 | §682        |
| (b) Foreign Vessels, Aircraft and Vehicles . . . . .       | §684        |
| (c) Articles Acquired Prior To Grant . . . . .             | §686        |
| (d) Regulatory Approval . . . . .                          | §688        |
| 5. Reissue . . . . .                                       | §697        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>XIV. Action for Infringement</b> .....   | §698 |
| 1. Jurisdiction .....                       | §698 |
| (a) Provincial Courts .....                 | §698 |
| (b) Federal Court .....                     | §701 |
| 2. Venue .....                              | §704 |
| 3. Proceedings Before Action .....          | §706 |
| 4. Stay of Proceedings .....                | §708 |
| 5. Parties .....                            | §712 |
| (a) Plaintiffs .....                        | §712 |
| (b) Defendants .....                        | §715 |
| 6. Pleadings .....                          | §719 |
| 7. Defences .....                           | §731 |
| 8. Estoppel and res judicata .....          | §734 |
| 9. Interlocutory Proceedings .....          | §737 |
| (a) General .....                           | §737 |
| (b) Particulars .....                       | §740 |
| (i) General .....                           | §740 |
| (ii) Particulars of Breaches .....          | §747 |
| (iii) Particulars of Objections .....       | §751 |
| (iv) First Inventor .....                   | §753 |
| (v) Subject-Matter .....                    | §754 |
| (vi) Invention .....                        | §755 |
| (vii) Novelty .....                         | §756 |
| (viii) Prior Grant .....                    | §758 |
| (ix) Common Knowledge .....                 | §759 |
| (x) Analogous Prior Use .....               | §760 |
| (xi) Prior Knowledge or Use .....           | §761 |
| (xii) Prior Publication .....               | §763 |
| (xiii) Insufficiency .....                  | §765 |
| (xiv) Ambiguity .....                       | §768 |
| (xv) Utility .....                          | §769 |
| (xvi) Comparison With Foreign Patents ..... | §770 |
| (c) Interlocutory Injunction .....          | §771 |
| (d) Inspection .....                        | §781 |
| (e) Discovery .....                         | §782 |

PATENTS OF INVENTION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 10. Evidence at Trial  | §798        |
| (a) Form of Trial  | §798        |
| (b) Expert Evidence  | §800        |
| (c) Particulars  | §806        |
| (d) Proof of Grant and Foreign Patents                         | §807        |
| (e) Infringement   | §808        |
| (f) Validity   | §811        |
| (g) First Inventor   | §812        |
| (h) Invention and Subject-Matter                               | §814        |
| (i) Novelty  | §815        |
| (j) Evidence of Foreign Proceedings                            | §817        |
| (k) Utility  | §819        |
| (l) Sufficiency of Specification                               | §821        |
| (m) Models   | §824        |
| 11. Proceedings After Judgment                                 | §825        |
| (a) Appeal   | §825        |
| (b) Permanent Injunction                                       | §830        |
| (c) Damages or Profits   | §833        |
| (i) General  | §833        |
| (ii) Damages   | §839        |
| A. General   | §839        |
| B. Measure of Damages  | §842        |
| C. Effect of Licences  | §846        |
| D. Sales Plaintiff Would Not Have Made                         | §848        |
| E. Reduction in Price  | §849        |
| F. Articles Partially Infringing                               | §850        |
| G. Master and Servant  | §853        |
| (iii) Reasonable Compensation for Infringement<br>Before Grant | §854        |
| (iv) Account of Profits  | §855        |
| (d) Destruction or Delivery Up of Infringing Articles          | §858        |
| (e) Costs  | §859        |
| (f) Registration of Judgments of Invalidity                    | §867        |
| <b>XV. Action for Declaration of Non-infringement</b>          | <b>§869</b> |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**XVI. Action for Impeachment . . . . .** §878

1. General . . . . . §878

2. Basis of Action . . . . . §882

    (a) General . . . . . §882

    (b) Insufficiency of the Specification . . . . . §883

    (c) Patentee Not Inventor . . . . . §886

    (d) Lack of Subject-Matter . . . . . §887

    (e) Lack of Invention . . . . . §888

    (f) Lack of Novelty . . . . . §889

    (g) Lack of Utility . . . . . §890

    (h) Fraud . . . . . §891

    (i) Foods and Medicine . . . . . §892

    (j) Double Patenting . . . . . §893

3. Person Interested . . . . . §894

4. Practice . . . . . §895

**XVII. Action to Restrain Threats . . . . .** §902

1. General . . . . . §902

2. At Common Law . . . . . §904

3. Under the Statute of Monopolies . . . . . §910

4. Under the Trade-marks Act . . . . . §913

**XVIII. Abuse of Exclusive Rights . . . . .** §914

1. The Patent Act . . . . . §914

    (a) Abuses Classified . . . . . §914

    (b) Particular Abuses . . . . . §917

        (i) General . . . . . §917

        (ii) Failure to Meet Demand . . . . . §918

        (iii) Abuse Relating to Licensing . . . . . §919

        (iv) Unfair Prejudice from Conditions Attached by  
            Patentee . . . . . §926

        (v) Use Prejudicing Supply of Materials . . . . . §927

    (c) Remedies . . . . . §928

        (i) General . . . . . §928

        (ii) Compulsory Licence . . . . . §929

        (iii) Revocation . . . . . §935

PATENTS OF INVENTION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iv) Refusal of Order . . . . .                        | §937        |
| (d) Practice . . . . .                                 | §938        |
| 2. The Competition Act . . . . .                       | §945        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                  | §945        |
| (b) Use of Patents in Restraint of Trade . . . . .     | §946        |
| (c) Matters Reviewable by Tribunal . . . . .           | §949        |
| (d) Offences Relating to Competition . . . . .         | §952        |
| (e) Action for Damages . . . . .                       | §953        |
| (f) Effect on Patent Litigation . . . . .              | §957        |
| <b>XIX. Patents and the Government . . . . .</b>       | <b>§958</b> |
| 1. Government Use of Patented Inventions . . . . .     | §958        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                  | §958        |
| (b) Practice . . . . .                                 | §968        |
| (c) Quantum . . . . .                                  | §970        |
| 2. Inventions by Public Servants . . . . .             | §976        |
| <b>XX. Marking of Patented Articles . . . . .</b>      | <b>§984</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                   | §984        |
| 2. False Marking — Penalties . . . . .                 | §986        |
| 3. Effect on Damages . . . . .                         | §988        |
| <b>XXI. Regulation of Patented Medicines . . . . .</b> | <b>§989</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                   | §989        |
| 2. Scope . . . . .                                     | §993        |
| 3. Patent List . . . . .                               | §994        |
| 4. Submission by Comparison to New Drug . . . . .      | §998        |
| 5. Notice of Allegation . . . . .                      | §1000       |
| 6. Prohibition Proceedings . . . . .                   | §1011       |
| (a) General . . . . .                                  | §1011       |
| (b) Timing . . . . .                                   | §1015       |
| (c) Pleadings . . . . .                                | §1019       |
| (d) Disclosure . . . . .                               | §1024       |
| (e) Parties . . . . .                                  | §1026       |
| (f) Onus . . . . .                                     | §1027       |
| (g) Court Practice . . . . .                           | §1031       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**Index**

*Related titles:* Copyright; Damages; Discovery; Estoppel; Injunctions; Parties; Pleadings; Trade-Marks and Industrial Designs.



# PENSIONS — PRIVATE

prepared by  
Kim Ozubko, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                         | \$1  |
| <b>II. British Columbia</b> .....                    | \$2  |
| 1. Enforcement .....                                 | \$2  |
| 2. Registration under the Act.....                   | \$6  |
| 3. Jurisdictional Issues .....                       | \$9  |
| 4. Administration .....                              | \$11 |
| (a) Identity of the Administrator .....              | \$11 |
| (b) Duty of Care.....                                | \$12 |
| (c) Delegation to Agents.....                        | \$14 |
| (d) Payment of Plan Expenses.....                    | \$15 |
| (e) Minimum Standards .....                          | \$16 |
| (i) Membership and Eligibility .....                 | \$16 |
| (ii) Vesting of Benefits .....                       | \$18 |
| (iii) Locking-in and Portability.....                | \$19 |
| (iv) Retirement.....                                 | \$22 |
| (v) Benefits .....                                   | \$25 |
| (vi) Division of Pensions on Marriage Breakdown..... | \$33 |
| (f) Disclosure of Information.....                   | \$34 |
| (i) Member Statements and Other Information.....     | \$34 |
| (ii) Right of Inspection.....                        | \$35 |
| (g) Funding and Investments .....                    | \$36 |
| (i) Minimum Funding Requirements.....                | \$36 |

PENSIONS — PRIVATE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (ii) Statutory Deemed Trust.....                     | \$38        |
| (iii) Contribution Holidays.....                     | \$39        |
| (iv) Investment of Plan Assets.....                  | \$41        |
| (v) Valuations.....                                  | \$43        |
| (h) Plan Amendments and Wind-ups.....                | \$44        |
| (i) Plan Reorganizations.....                        | \$50        |
| (j) Surplus.....                                     | \$51        |
| (k) Multi-employer and Other Plans.....              | \$54        |
| <b>III. Alberta.....</b>                             | <b>\$55</b> |
| 1. Enforcement.....                                  | \$55        |
| 2. Registration under the Act.....                   | \$59        |
| 3. Jurisdictional Issues.....                        | \$62        |
| 4. Administration.....                               | \$64        |
| (a) Identity of the Administrator.....               | \$64        |
| (b) Duty of Care.....                                | \$65        |
| (c) Delegation to Agents.....                        | \$67        |
| (d) Payment of Plan Expenses.....                    | \$68        |
| (e) Minimum Standards.....                           | \$69        |
| (i) Membership and Eligibility.....                  | \$69        |
| (ii) Vesting of Benefits.....                        | \$71        |
| (iii) Locking-in and Portability.....                | \$72        |
| (iv) Retirement.....                                 | \$75        |
| (v) Benefits.....                                    | \$78        |
| (vi) Division of Pensions on Marriage Breakdown..... | \$87        |
| (f) Disclosure of Information.....                   | \$88        |
| (i) Member Statements and Other Information.....     | \$88        |
| (ii) Right of Inspection.....                        | \$89        |
| (g) Funding and Investments.....                     | \$91        |
| (i) Minimum Funding Requirements.....                | \$91        |
| (ii) Statutory Deemed Trust.....                     | \$93        |
| (iii) Contribution Holidays.....                     | \$95        |
| (iv) Investment of Plan Assets.....                  | \$96        |
| (v) Valuations.....                                  | \$98        |
| (h) Plan Amendments and Wind-ups.....                | \$99        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Plan Reorganizations .....                       | §105        |
| (j) Surplus .....                                    | §106        |
| (k) Multi-employer and Other Plans .....             | §108        |
| <b>IV. Saskatchewan .....</b>                        | <b>§109</b> |
| 1. Enforcement .....                                 | §109        |
| 2. Registration under the Act.....                   | §113        |
| 3. Jurisdictional Issues .....                       | §118        |
| 4. Administration .....                              | §120        |
| (a) Identity of the Administrator .....              | §120        |
| (b) Duty of Care.....                                | §122        |
| (c) Delegation to Agents.....                        | §124        |
| (d) Payment of Plan Expenses.....                    | §125        |
| (e) Minimum Standards .....                          | §126        |
| (i) Membership and Eligibility .....                 | §126        |
| (ii) Vesting of Benefits .....                       | §127        |
| (iii) Locking-in and Portability.....                | §128        |
| (iv) Retirement.....                                 | §130        |
| (v) Benefits .....                                   | §132        |
| (vi) Division of Pensions on Marriage Breakdown..... | §136        |
| (f) Disclosure of Information.....                   | §137        |
| (i) Member Statements and Other Information.....     | §137        |
| (ii) Right of Inspection.....                        | §139        |
| (g) Funding and Investments .....                    | §140        |
| (i) Minimum Funding Requirements.....                | §140        |
| (ii) Statutory Deemed Trust.....                     | §141        |
| (iii) Contribution Holidays.....                     | §142        |
| (iv) Investment of Plan Assets .....                 | §143        |
| (v) Valuations .....                                 | §144        |
| (h) Plan Amendments and Wind-ups .....               | §145        |
| (i) Plan Reorganizations .....                       | §149        |
| (j) Surplus .....                                    | §150        |
| (k) Multi-employer and Other Plans .....             | §152        |
| <b>V. Manitoba.....</b>                              | <b>§153</b> |

PENSIONS — PRIVATE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Enforcement .....                                 | §153        |
| 2. Registration under the Act.....                   | §158        |
| 3. Jurisdictional Issues .....                       | §162        |
| 4. Administration .....                              | §164        |
| (a) Identity of the Administrator .....              | §164        |
| (b) Duty of Care.....                                | §166        |
| (c) Delegation to Agents.....                        | §168        |
| (d) Payment of Plan Expenses.....                    | §169        |
| (e) Minimum Standards .....                          | §170        |
| (i) Membership and Eligibility .....                 | §170        |
| (ii) Vesting of Benefits .....                       | §172        |
| (iii) Locking-in and Portability.....                | §173        |
| (iv) Retirement.....                                 | §176        |
| (v) Benefits .....                                   | §179        |
| (vi) Division of Pensions on Marriage Breakdown..... | §186        |
| (f) Disclosure of Information.....                   | §187        |
| (i) Member Statements and Other Information.....     | §187        |
| (ii) Right of Inspection.....                        | §188        |
| (g) Funding and Investments .....                    | §189        |
| (i) Minimum Funding Requirements.....                | §189        |
| (ii) Statutory Deemed Trust.....                     | §191        |
| (iii) Contribution Holidays.....                     | §192        |
| (iv) Investment of Plan Assets .....                 | §193        |
| (v) Valuations .....                                 | §196        |
| (h) Plan Amendments and Wind-ups .....               | §197        |
| (i) Plan Reorganizations .....                       | §202        |
| (j) Surplus .....                                    | §203        |
| (k) Multi-employer and Other plans.....              | §205        |
| <b>VI. Ontario .....</b>                             | <b>§206</b> |
| 1. Enforcement .....                                 | §206        |
| 2. Registration under the Act.....                   | §211        |
| 3. Jurisdictional Issues .....                       | §217        |
| 4. Administration .....                              | §221        |
| (a) Identity of the Administrator .....              | §221        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Duty of Care.....                                | §222        |
| (c) Delegation to Agents.....                        | §224        |
| (d) Payment of Plan Expenses.....                    | §225        |
| (e) Minimum Standards .....                          | §226        |
| (i) Membership and Eligibility .....                 | §226        |
| (ii) Vesting of Benefits .....                       | §228        |
| (iii) Locking-in and Portability.....                | §230        |
| (iv) Retirement.....                                 | §233        |
| (v) Benefits .....                                   | §236        |
| (vi) Division of Pensions on Marriage Breakdown..... | §243        |
| (f) Disclosure of Information.....                   | §244        |
| (i) Member Statement and Other Information .....     | §244        |
| (ii) Right of Inspection.....                        | §245        |
| (g) Funding and Investments .....                    | §246        |
| (i) Minimum Funding Requirements .....               | §246        |
| (ii) Statutory Deemed Trust.....                     | §247        |
| (iii) Contribution Holidays.....                     | §249        |
| (iv) Investment of Plan Assets .....                 | §250        |
| (v) Valuations .....                                 | §251        |
| (h) Plan Amendments and Wind-ups .....               | §252        |
| (i) Plan Reorganizations.....                        | §258        |
| (j) Surplus .....                                    | §259        |
| (k) Pension Benefits Guarantee Fund.....             | §263        |
| (l) Multi-employer and Other Plans .....             | §264        |
| <b>VII. Federal.....</b>                             | <b>§265</b> |
| 1. Enforcement .....                                 | §265        |
| 2. Registration under the Act.....                   | §269        |
| 3. Jurisdictional Issues .....                       | §274        |
| 4. Administration.....                               | §277        |
| (a) Identity of the Administrator .....              | §277        |
| (b) Duty of Care.....                                | §279        |
| (c) Delegation to Agents.....                        | §281        |
| (d) Payment of Plan Expenses.....                    | §282        |
| (e) Minimum Standards .....                          | §283        |

PENSIONS — PRIVATE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) Membership and Eligibility .....                 | §283        |
| (ii) Vesting of Benefits .....                       | §284        |
| (iii) Locking-in and Portability .....               | §285        |
| (iv) Retirement.....                                 | §288        |
| (v) Benefits .....                                   | §291        |
| (vi) Division of Pensions on Marriage Breakdown..... | §298        |
| (f) Disclosure of Information.....                   | §299        |
| (i) Member Statements and Other Information.....     | §299        |
| (ii) Right of Inspection.....                        | §300        |
| (g) Funding and Investments .....                    | §301        |
| (i) Minimum Funding Requirements .....               | §301        |
| (ii) Statutory Deemed Trust .....                    | §304        |
| (iii) Contribution Holidays .....                    | §305        |
| (iv) Investment of Plan Assets .....                 | §306        |
| (v) Valuations .....                                 | §307        |
| (h) Plan Amendments and Wind-ups .....               | §308        |
| (i) Plan Reorganizations .....                       | §312        |
| (j) Surplus .....                                    | §313        |
| (k) Multi-employer and Other Plans .....             | §315        |
| <b>VIII. Income Tax Act .....</b>                    | <b>§317</b> |
| 1. Enforcement .....                                 | §317        |
| 2. Contributions .....                               | §319        |
| 3. Benefits.....                                     | §325        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Employment Law; Income Tax; Labour Law; Public Health and Welfare; Public Utilities; Wrongful Dismissal

# PENSIONS — PUBLIC

prepared by  
Lisa J. Mills, B.Comm. LL.B.  
*Law Society of Upper Canada*  
and  
Susie S. Taing, B.Comm. M.I.R. LL.B.  
*Law Society of Upper Canada*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                       | \$1  |
| <b>II. Canada Pension Plan</b> .....               | \$2  |
| 1. General .....                                   | \$2  |
| 2. Coverage.....                                   | \$15 |
| 3. Contributions .....                             | \$19 |
| 4. Credit Splitting .....                          | \$38 |
| 5. Benefits.....                                   | \$46 |
| (a) General .....                                  | \$46 |
| (b) Retirement Pensions .....                      | \$52 |
| (i) Retirement Pensions .....                      | \$52 |
| (ii) Post-Retirement Benefits .....                | \$59 |
| (c) Disability Benefits .....                      | \$62 |
| (i) Disability Pension .....                       | \$62 |
| (ii) Benefit for Disabled Contributor’s Child..... | \$72 |
| (d) Survivors’ Benefits.....                       | \$79 |
| (i) General.....                                   | \$79 |
| (ii) Survivor’s Pension .....                      | \$80 |
| (iii) Orphan’s Benefits .....                      | \$90 |
| (e) Death Benefit.....                             | \$95 |
| 6. Application .....                               | \$97 |

PENSIONS — PUBLIC

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 7. Payment .....  | §102        |
| 8. Protection of Personal Information .....                   | §109        |
| 9. Taxation of Canada Pension Plan Benefits .....             | §115        |
| 10. Funding, Valuation and Investment .....                   | §119        |
| 11. Reconsideration and Appeals under Canada Pension Plan ... | §121        |
| (a) Part I — Contributions .....                              | §121        |
| (i) Canada Revenue Agency Rulings .....                       | §121        |
| (ii) Appeal to Minister of National Revenue .....             | §122        |
| (iii) Appeal to Tax Court of Canada .....                     | §125        |
| (b) Part II — Pensions and Supplementary Benefits .....       | §127        |
| (i) Reconsideration by the Minister .....                     | §127        |
| (ii) Appeals .....  | §130        |
| A. General .....  | §130        |
| B. Appeals Filed and Heard before April 1,<br>2013 .....      | §131        |
| 1. General .....  | §131        |
| 2. Review Tribunal .....                                      | §132        |
| 3. Pension Appeals Board .....                                | §135        |
| C. Appeals after April 1, 2013 .....                          | §140        |
| 1. General .....  | §140        |
| 2. Social Security Tribunal — General<br>Division .....       | §145        |
| 3. Social Security Tribunal — Appeal<br>Division .....        | §148        |
| (iii) Judicial Review .....                                   | §151        |
| <b>III. Old Age Security Act .....</b>                        | <b>§153</b> |
| 1. General Provisions .....                                   | §153        |
| 2. Old Age Security Pension .....                             | §164        |
| (a) General .....   | §164        |
| (b) Eligibility Requirements .....                            | §167        |
| (c) Application .....   | §172        |
| (d) Payment .....   | §175        |
| 3. Guaranteed Income Supplement .....                         | §177        |
| (a) General .....   | §177        |
| (b) Eligibility Requirements .....                            | §178        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Application.....   | §179        |
| (d) Payment .....  | §181        |
| 4. Allowances .....  | §193        |
| (a) General .....  | §193        |
| (b) Eligibility Requirements.....  | §194        |
| (c) Application.....   | §197        |
| (d) Payment .....  | §200        |
| 5. Taxation of Old Age Security Benefits .....                                   | §207        |
| 6. Appeals and Reconsiderations under the Old Age Security Act.....              | §209        |
| (a) Reconsideration by the Minister .....  | §209        |
| (b) Appeals .....  | §210        |
| (i) General.....   | §210        |
| (ii) Appeals Filed and Heard before April 1, 2013.....                           | §211        |
| (iii) Appeals after April 1, 2013.....   | §217        |
| A. General.....  | §217        |
| B. Social Security Tribunal — General Division.....                              | §221        |
| C. Social Security Tribunal — Appeal Division .....                              | §224        |
| (iv) Tax Court of Canada .....   | §227        |
| (c) Judicial Review.....   | §229        |
| 7. Reciprocal Agreements .....   | §231        |
| 8. Penalties for Violations.....   | §232        |
| 9. Protection of Personal Information .....                                      | §236        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IV. Provincial and Territorial Pensions and Supplements.....</b>              | <b>§242</b> |
| 1. Saskatchewan Pension Plan.....  | §242        |
| (a) General .....  | §242        |
| (b) Participation .....  | §243        |
| (c) Contributions.....   | §244        |
| (d) Retirement Benefit .....   | §247        |
| (e) Death Benefit.....   | §251        |
| (f) Division of Credits.....   | §254        |
| (g) Saskatchewan Pension Plan Funding, Valuation, Investment and Reporting ..... | §255        |

PENSIONS — PUBLIC

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 2. Provincial and Territorial Seniors Supplements ..... | §257 |
| (a) General .....                                       | §257 |
| (b) Alberta .....                                       | §258 |
| (c) British Columbia.....                               | §270 |
| (d) Manitoba .....                                      | §277 |
| (e) Ontario .....                                       | §287 |
| (f) Saskatchewan .....                                  | §301 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Annuities; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Family Law — Property; Pensions — Private; Public Health and Welfare; Workers' Compensation

# PERPETUITIES AND ACCUMULATIONS

prepared by  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                 | §1  |
| <b>II. Rule Against Perpetuities</b> . . . . .   | §3  |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                         | §3  |
| (a) At Common Law . . . . .                      | §3  |
| (b) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .     | §15 |
| 2. Origin of Rule . . . . .                      | §26 |
| 3. Object of Rule . . . . .                      | §27 |
| 4. Application of Rule . . . . .                 | §28 |
| (a) At Law and in Equity . . . . .               | §28 |
| (b) Disposition by Contract . . . . .            | §29 |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                      | §29 |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .    | §30 |
| (c) Personal Estate . . . . .                    | §32 |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                      | §32 |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .    | §34 |
| (d) Gifts of Income in Perpetuity . . . . .      | §36 |
| (e) Charities and Charitable Trusts . . . . .    | §37 |
| (f) Trusts for Non-charitable Purposes . . . . . | §43 |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                      | §43 |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .    | §44 |
| (g) Contingent Limitations . . . . .             | §47 |
| (h) Determinable Interests . . . . .             | §49 |

PERPETUITIES AND ACCUMULATIONS

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                            | §49        |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .          | §51        |
| (i) Powers of Appointment . . . . .                    | §53        |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                            | §53        |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .          | §59        |
| (j) Trusts for Sale . . . . .                          | §60        |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                            | §60        |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .          | §61        |
| (k) Class Gifts . . . . .                              | §62        |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                            | §62        |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .          | §63        |
| (l) Conditions Subsequent . . . . .                    | §65        |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                            | §65        |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .          | §68        |
| (m) Options . . . . .                                  | §69        |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                            | §69        |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .          | §73        |
| (n) Power of Sale . . . . .                            | §76        |
| (o) Legacy Directed to Accumulate . . . . .            | §78        |
| (p) Miscellaneous Cases . . . . .                      | §80        |
| (q) Rules of Construction . . . . .                    | §84        |
| (i) At Common Law . . . . .                            | §84        |
| (ii) Under Perpetuities Legislation . . . . .          | §88        |
| (r) Estoppel . . . . .                                 | §89        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>III. Practice . . . . .</b>                         | <b>§90</b> |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>IV. Rule Against Double Possibilities . . . . .</b> | <b>§92</b> |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>V. Accumulations . . . . .</b>                      | <b>§96</b> |
| 1. Thellusson Act . . . . .                            | §96        |
| 2. Ontario Accumulations Act . . . . .                 | §98        |
| 3. Other Provinces . . . . .                           | §106       |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Charities; Devolution of Estates; Trusts; Wills.

# PERSONAL PROPERTY

prepared by  
Gloria Mintah, B.A., (Hons.), M.A., LL.M.  
*of the England and Wales, Ghana and Ontario Bars*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                             | §1  |
| 1. Basic Divisions in Property Law . . . . .                 | §1  |
| 2. Personalty . . . . .                                      | §4  |
| (a) Definition . . . . .                                     | §4  |
| (b) Chattels Real . . . . .                                  | §6  |
| (c) Chattels Personal . . . . .                              | §7  |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Choses in Action</b> . . . . .                        | §8  |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .                                     | §8  |
| 2. Location . . . . .  | §10 |
| 3. Examples of Choses in Action . . . . .                    | §11 |
| 4. Assignments — General . . . . .                           | §14 |
| (a) History . . . . .  | §14 |
| (b) Legality . . . . .                                       | §19 |
| (c) Interpretation of Assignments . . . . .                  | §23 |
| (d) Assignment Distinguished From Bill of Exchange . . . . . | §25 |
| (e) Assignable Choses in Action . . . . .                    | §28 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §28 |
| (ii) Contracts of Indemnity . . . . .                        | §30 |
| (iii) Assignments in Favour of Insurers . . . . .            | §31 |
| (iv) Contracts . . . . .                                     | §32 |
| A. General . . . . .   | §32 |
| B. Damages for Breach of Contract . . . . .                  | §35 |

PERSONAL PROPERTY

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (v) Future Choses in Action . . . . .                 | §36  |
| (vi) Partnership Interests . . . . .                  | §43  |
| (vii) Claims Against the Crown . . . . .              | §44  |
| (viii) Miscellaneous . . . . .                        | §46  |
| (f) Unassignable Choses in Action . . . . .           | §50  |
| (i) Claims Founded in Tort . . . . .                  | §50  |
| (ii) Personal Services Contracts . . . . .            | §53  |
| (iii) Salaries . . . . .                              | §54  |
| (iv) Crown Debt . . . . .                             | §57  |
| 5. Equitable Assignments . . . . .                    | §58  |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §58  |
| (b) Writing Not Necessary . . . . .                   | §71  |
| (c) Necessity of Specifying Funds . . . . .           | §76  |
| (d) Consideration . . . . .                           | §80  |
| (e) Notice to Debtor . . . . .                        | §83  |
| (f) Sufficiency of Notice . . . . .                   | §88  |
| (g) Assignment of Part of Claim . . . . .             | §89  |
| (h) Parties to Action . . . . .                       | §90  |
| (i) General . . . . .                                 | §90  |
| (ii) Assignor as Necessary Party . . . . .            | §94  |
| (iii) Right of Assignee to Sue . . . . .              | §97  |
| 6. Assignments Under Statutes . . . . .               | §99  |
| (a) Statutory Provisions . . . . .                    | §99  |
| (b) Effect of Statutes . . . . .                      | §100 |
| (c) Requisites of Statutes . . . . .                  | §108 |
| (i) Debts or Other Choses in Action . . . . .         | §108 |
| A. General . . . . .                                  | §108 |
| B. Future Debts . . . . .                             | §112 |
| C. Part of Chose in Action . . . . .                  | §113 |
| (ii) Absolute Assignments . . . . .                   | §114 |
| (iii) Necessity for Writing . . . . .                 | §123 |
| A. General . . . . .                                  | §123 |
| B. Assignments of Money Due from Government . . . . . | §125 |
| C. Wages . . . . .                                    | §126 |
| (iv) Notice to Debtor . . . . .                       | §127 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| A. Necessity for Notice . . . . .                                | §127        |
| B. Pleading Due Notice . . . . .                                 | §134        |
| C. Effect of Want of Notice . . . . .                            | §135        |
| D. Equities of Parties . . . . .                                 | §139        |
| E. Sufficiency of Notice . . . . .                               | §140        |
| (v) Interpleader or Payment Into Court . . . . .                 | §154        |
| (d) Consideration . . . . .                                      | §155        |
| 7. Equities to Which Assignments Subject . . . . .               | §156        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §156        |
| (b) Settlement by Assignor . . . . .                             | §165        |
| (c) Right of Set-off . . . . .                                   | §172        |
| (d) Equities Against Subsequent Assignee . . . . .               | §189        |
| 8. Priorities . . . . .  | §190        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §190        |
| (b) Between Equitable Assignees . . . . .                        | §191        |
| (c) Between Legal and Equitable Assignees . . . . .              | §197        |
| (d) Between Assignee and Judgment Creditor of Assignor . . . . . | §200        |
| (e) Crown Priority . . . . .                                     | §206        |
| (f) General Rule Inapplicable to Land . . . . .                  | §208        |
| 9. Assignments of Book Debts . . . . .                           | §209        |
| <b>III. Choses in Possession . . . . .</b>                       | <b>§228</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §228        |
| 2. Definition of Possession . . . . .                            | §229        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §229        |
| (b) Factual Possession . . . . .                                 | §230        |
| (c) Legal Possession . . . . .                                   | §231        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §231        |
| (ii) Physical Control . . . . .                                  | §232        |
| (iii) Intention to Possess . . . . .                             | §233        |
| (iv) Degrees of Possession . . . . .                             | §234        |
| (v) Custody . . . . .  | §238        |
| (d) Ownership and Possession Distinguished . . . . .             | §239        |
| 3. Acquisition of Possession . . . . .                           | §241        |
| 4. Loss of Possession . . . . .                                  | §242        |

PERSONAL PROPERTY

---

- (a) General . . . . . §242
- (b) Delivery . . . . . §243
- (c) By Operation of Law . . . . . §244
- (d) Doctrine of Adverse Possession . . . . . §245
- (e) Abandonment . . . . . §246
- 5. Relative Rights of Possessors . . . . . §248
  - (a) Finders and Occupiers of Land . . . . . §248
  - (b) Owners . . . . . §252
  - (c) Jus Tertii . . . . . §253
  
- IV. Conversion . . . . . §254**
  - 1. Introduction . . . . . §254
    - (a) Definition . . . . . §254
    - (b) Subject Matter . . . . . §258
    - (c) Identification of Goods . . . . . §264
  - 2. Requisites of Conversion . . . . . §267
    - (a) Wrongful Act . . . . . §267
    - (b) Knowledge of Purchaser . . . . . §271
    - (c) Demand and Refusal . . . . . §274
      - (i) General . . . . . §274
      - (ii) Qualified Refusal . . . . . §278
      - (iii) Sufficiency . . . . . §279
        - A. Of Demand . . . . . §279
        - B. Of Refusal . . . . . §280
    - (d) Right to Possession . . . . . §281
  - 3. Action for Conversion . . . . . §283
    - (a) Who is Liable . . . . . §283
    - (b) Who May Sue . . . . . §284
    - (c) Remedies . . . . . §287
      - (i) Criminal Prosecution . . . . . §287
      - (ii) Waiver of Tort and Action in Contract . . . . . §288
      - (iii) Damages . . . . . §289
        - A. General Principles . . . . . §289
        - B. Special, Punitive and Exemplary Damages . . . §298
        - C. Where Value Increased . . . . . §300
        - D. Interest . . . . . §301



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| E. Loss of Profits . . . . .   | §302 |
| F. Technical Conversion . . . . .  | §303 |
| G. Duty to Mitigate . . . . .  | §304 |
| (d) Defences . . . . .   | §305 |
| (i) Denial of Conversion . . . . .                                       | §305 |
| (ii) Plaintiff not Entitled to Possession . . . . .                      | §306 |
| (iii) Conduct of Plaintiff . . . . .                                     | §307 |
| (iv) Return of Goods . . . . .   | §308 |
| (v) Lapse of Time . . . . .  | §310 |
| (vi) Knowledge . . . . .   | §311 |
| A. Sale of Goods . . . . .   | §311 |
| B. Negotiable Instruments . . . . .                                      | §312 |
| (vii) Technical Objections . . . . .                                     | §313 |
| 4. Practice and Procedure . . . . .                                      | §314 |
| (a) Jurisdiction . . . . .   | §314 |
| (b) Pleadings . . . . .  | §315 |
| (c) Evidence . . . . .   | §317 |
| (d) Judgment and Costs . . . . .   | §320 |
| 5. Special Classes . . . . .   | §322 |
| (a) Administrator or Executor . . . . .                                  | §322 |
| (b) Agent . . . . .  | §326 |
| (c) Auctioneers . . . . .  | §330 |
| (d) Bailee . . . . .   | §331 |
| (e) Banks . . . . .  | §337 |
| (f) Carrier . . . . .  | §341 |
| (g) Chattel Mortgagees and Mortgagors . . . . .                          | §344 |
| (h) Conditional Sale Agreements . . . . .                                | §352 |
| (i) Creditors and Debtors . . . . .                                      | §357 |
| (j) Crown . . . . .  | §361 |
| (k) Debentures . . . . .   | §362 |
| (l) Employers and Employees . . . . .                                    | §363 |
| (m) Infants . . . . .  | §364 |
| (n) Innocent Purchasers . . . . .  | §367 |
| (o) Joint Conversion . . . . .   | §368 |
| (p) Joint Owners, Tenants in Common or Co-Tenants,<br>Partners . . . . . | §370 |

PERSONAL PROPERTY

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (q) Lessor or Lessee . . . . .                | §375        |
| (r) Licensee . . . . .                        | §382        |
| (s) Lienholder or Pledgee . . . . .           | §383        |
| (t) Mortgagees and Mortgagors . . . . .       | §391        |
| (u) Seller or Buyer . . . . .                 | §393        |
| (v) Sheriffs and Bailiffs . . . . .           | §396        |
| (w) Spouses . . . . .                         | §402        |
| (x) Stockbrokers and Shareholders . . . . .   | §403        |
| (y) Trustees . . . . .                        | §406        |
| (z) Other Cases . . . . .                     | §408        |
| <b>V. Detinue . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§415</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                          | §415        |
| 2. Demand and Refusal . . . . .               | §422        |
| 3. Damages . . . . .                          | §423        |
| 4. Loss of Profits . . . . .                  | §429        |
| 5. Interest . . . . .                         | §430        |
| 6. Defences . . . . .                         | §431        |
| 7. Limitation of Actions . . . . .            | §432        |
| <b>VI. Replevin . . . . .</b>                 | <b>§433</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                     | §433        |
| 2. What May be Replevied . . . . .            | §436        |
| 3. Who can Maintain Replevin . . . . .        | §440        |
| 4. Practice and Procedure . . . . .           | §442        |
| (a) Jurisdiction . . . . .                    | §442        |
| (b) Motion for Recovery of Property . . . . . | §444        |
| (c) Replevin Bond or Security . . . . .       | §448        |
| (i) General . . . . .                         | §448        |
| (ii) Conditions of Bond or Security . . . . . | §451        |
| (iii) Form of Bond . . . . .                  | §454        |
| (iv) Sureties . . . . .                       | §455        |
| (v) Assignment of Bond . . . . .              | §456        |
| (vi) Setting Order Aside . . . . .            | §458        |
| (vii) Duty of Sheriff . . . . .               | §459        |
| (d) Costs . . . . .                           | §460        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

5. Damages .....\$461

**Index**

*Related titles:* Animals; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Bills of Exchange; Contracts; Debtor and Creditor; Distress; Equity; Execution; Insurance; Sale of Goods; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Wills.

# PLANNING AND ZONING

prepared by  
Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                                   | §1   |
| 1. Nature of Authority.....                                    | §1   |
| 2. Judicial Construction of Planning and Zoning Statutes ..... | §4   |
| 3. Exercise of Planning and Zoning Authority .....             | §8   |
| 4. Interest in Land, Right to Sue and Compensation .....       | §26  |
| 5. Judicial Interpretation of Statutory Terms .....            | §33  |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>II. Planning</b> .....                                      | §77  |
| 1. Planning Boards .....                                       | §77  |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §77  |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                     | §82  |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §87  |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....  | §90  |
| 2. Planning Areas, Regions or Districts .....                  | §93  |
| 3. Master Plans and Schemes .....                              | §98  |
| (a) General .....  | §98  |
| (b) Alberta .....  | §101 |
| (c) British Columbia.....                                      | §103 |
| (d) Manitoba .....   | §106 |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....  | §107 |
| (f) Federal .....  | §109 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>III. Subdivision Control</b> .....                          | §112 |

PLANNING AND ZONING

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 1. Nature of Authority.....                             | \$112        |
| 2. Discretion of Approving Officer.....                 | \$122        |
| 3. Reserves.....  | \$130        |
| 4. Leases.....  | \$131        |
| 5. Subdivision Levies and Development Cost Charges..... | \$132        |
| <b>IV. Zoning and Development Control.....</b>          | <b>\$140</b> |
| 1. General.....   | \$140        |
| (a) Definitions.....                                    | \$140        |
| (b) Confiscatory Effect.....                            | \$146        |
| (c) Indirect Zoning.....                                | \$153        |
| (d) Creation of Zones.....                              | \$154        |
| (e) Legal Effect.....                                   | \$155        |
| (f) Restrictive Covenants.....                          | \$158        |
| 2. Legislation.....                                     | \$160        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | \$160        |
| (b) British Columbia.....                               | \$189        |
| (c) Manitoba.....                                       | \$213        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                   | \$225        |
| <b>V. Building Construction.....</b>                    | <b>\$238</b> |
| 1. Legislation.....                                     | \$238        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | \$238        |
| (b) British Columbia.....                               | \$240        |
| (c) Manitoba.....                                       | \$241        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                   | \$243        |
| 2. Building Codes.....                                  | \$244        |
| 3. Building Inspectors.....                             | \$246        |
| 4. Repairs, Alterations and Additions.....              | \$248        |
| 5. Ruinous and Unsafe Buildings.....                    | \$250        |
| 6. Building Permits.....                                | \$251        |
| (a) General.....  | \$251        |
| (i) Nature of Authority.....                            | \$251        |
| (ii) Jurisdiction to Issue.....                         | \$253        |
| (iii) Application For Permit.....                       | \$256        |
| (b) Operation and Effect of Permit.....                 | \$258        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (c) Right to Obtain and Right to Refuse .....   | \$263        |
| (d) Mandamus to Compel Issuance.....  | \$272        |
| (i) General.....  | \$272        |
| (ii) When Rights to be Determined.....  | \$278        |
| (e) Revocation of Permit.....   | \$280        |
| <b>VI. Enforcement .....</b>  | <b>\$282</b> |
| <b>Index</b>  |              |
| <i>Related titles:</i> Administrative Law; Municipal Corporations; Real Property;<br>Sale of Land |              |

# PLEADINGS

prepared by  
Carol J. Robbins, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*  
and updated by  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Form and Arrangement</b> .....                 | §1  |
| 1. General .....                                     | §1  |
| 2. Specific Requirements .....                       | §3  |
| (a) Style of Cause.....                              | §3  |
| (i) General.....                                     | §3  |
| (ii) Particular Proceedings.....                     | §6  |
| A. Representative Actions.....                       | §6  |
| B. Businesses and Partnerships.....                  | §8  |
| C. Persons Under Legal Disability .....              | §13 |
| (b) Contents .....                                   | §19 |
| <b>II. Delivery of Pleadings</b> .....               | §25 |
| 1. General .....                                     | §25 |
| 2. Statement of Claim or Notice of Civil Claim ..... | §28 |
| 3. Statement of Defence.....                         | §29 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                     | §29 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                           | §30 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                   | §31 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                | §33 |
| 4. Reply.....  | §35 |
| 5. Counterclaim .....                                | §37 |

PLEADINGS

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 6. Defence to Counterclaim .....                      | §38        |
| 7. Subsequent Pleadings.....                          | §43        |
| 8. Close of Pleadings .....                           | §45        |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>III. Statement of Material Facts.....</b>          | <b>§49</b> |
| 1. General .....                                      | §49        |
| 2. Pleading of Evidence .....                         | §52        |
| 3. Facts Essential to Success .....                   | §55        |
| 4. Points of Law .....                                | §57        |
| 5. Facts Presumed by Law.....                         | §59        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §59        |
| (b) Res Ipsa Loquitur.....                            | §60        |
| 6. Conditions Precedent .....                         | §61        |
| (a) Necessity of Pleading .....                       | §61        |
| (b) Matters to be Pleaded .....                       | §64        |
| 7. Alleging Notice .....                              | §66        |
| 8. Conditions of Mind.....                            | §67        |
| 9. Documents and Conversations .....                  | §68        |
| 10. Inconsistent Allegations.....                     | §70        |
| 11. Matters Arising Since Commencement of Action..... | §71        |
| 12. Jurisdictional Averments.....                     | §74        |
| (a) Contesting Jurisdiction .....                     | §74        |
| (b) Averments Ousting Jurisdiction.....               | §75        |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>IV. Prayer for Relief.....</b>                     | <b>§77</b> |
| 1. General .....                                      | §77        |
| 2. Claim for Damages.....                             | §79        |
| 3. Alternative Relief.....                            | §82        |
| 4. General or Other Relief.....                       | §88        |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>V. Matters to be Pleaded Specifically.....</b>     | <b>§91</b> |
| 1. General .....                                      | §91        |
| 2. Pleas in Confession and Avoidance.....             | §92        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §92        |
| (b) Estoppel .....                                    | §94        |
| (c) Res Judicata .....                                | §95        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (d) Status or Capacity to Sue .....                  | §96         |
| (i) Representative Capacity .....                    | §96         |
| (ii) Status of Corporation .....                     | §97         |
| 3. Fraud.....  | §99         |
| 4. Misrepresentation .....                           | §100        |
| 5. Illegality.....                                   | §101        |
| 6. Different Version of Facts.....                   | §105        |
| 7. Statutes .....                                    | §106        |
| (a) Pleading Facts.....                              | §106        |
| (b) Reference to Statute .....                       | §108        |
| (c) Limitations Statutes and Statute of Frauds ..... | §110        |
| 8. Damages .....                                     | §111        |
| 9. Other Matters .....                               | §113        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VI. Admissions and Denials .....</b>              | <b>§121</b> |
| 1. Duty to Admit Facts .....                         | §121        |
| 2. Silence as Denial or Admission .....              | §125        |
| 3. Rule Against General Denial.....                  | §126        |
| 4. Manner of Pleading Denial .....                   | §127        |
| (a) General .....                                    | §127        |
| (b) Evasion.....                                     | §129        |
| (c) Specific Denials .....                           | §131        |
| (i) Denial of Contract.....                          | §131        |
| (ii) Action for Money Demand.....                    | §132        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VII. Set-off and Counterclaim .....</b>           | <b>§133</b> |
| 1. Set-off .....                                     | §133        |
| (a) General .....                                    | §133        |
| (b) Exceptions.....                                  | §137        |
| 2. Existing Right of Recovery .....                  | §142        |
| 3. Costs .....                                       | §143        |
| 4. Counterclaim .....                                | §144        |
| (a) Matters of Counterclaim.....                     | §144        |
| (i) General.....                                     | §144        |
| (ii) Counterclaim Against Plaintiff and Others.....  | §146        |
| (b) Right to Counterclaim.....                       | §148        |

PLEADINGS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Addition of Counterclaim after Time for Pleading ..... | §152        |
| (d) Trial of Counterclaim.....                             | §153        |
| <b>VIII. Reply and Defence to Counterclaim .....</b>       | <b>§158</b> |
| 1. Function of Reply .....                                 | §158        |
| 2. Matters to be Plead in Reply.....                       | §159        |
| 3. Departure from Statement of Claim.....                  | §162        |
| 4. Defence to Counterclaim .....                           | §164        |
| <b>IX. Pleadings in Particular Matters.....</b>            | <b>§166</b> |
| 1. Bills of Exchange.....                                  | §166        |
| (a) Statement of Claim.....                                | §166        |
| (b) Statement of Defence .....                             | §169        |
| 2. Fraudulent Conveyances .....                            | §170        |
| (a) Representative Capacity of Plaintiff.....              | §170        |
| (b) Allegations of Indebtedness .....                      | §171        |
| (c) Allegations of Fraud and Insolvency.....               | §172        |
| 3. Malicious Prosecution.....                              | §174        |
| 4. Setting Aside Judgment for Fraud .....                  | §176        |
| <b>X. Particulars .....</b>                                | <b>§179</b> |
| 1. Rules of Court.....                                     | §179        |
| (a) Alberta.....   | §179        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                 | §180        |
| (c) Manitoba .....   | §185        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                      | §186        |
| 2. Practice on Application.....                            | §188        |
| 3. Particulars to be Ordered.....                          | §192        |
| (a) General .....  | §192        |
| (b) Vague or General Allegations .....                     | §194        |
| (c) Particulars of Evidence.....                           | §197        |
| (d) Multiple Parties .....                                 | §198        |
| (e) Specific Matters .....                                 | §200        |
| (i) Damages .....  | §200        |
| (ii) Defamation .....                                      | §203        |
| (iii) Fraud or Misrepresentation.....                      | §206        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 4. For Purposes of Pleading or Purposes of Trial ..... | §209        |
| (a) General .....                                      | §209        |
| (b) Particulars After Close of Pleadings .....         | §210        |
| (c) Postponement Until After Discovery.....            | §211        |
| (i) General.....                                       | §211        |
| (ii) Facts Within Knowledge of Applicant.....          | §214        |
| 5. Refusal of Particulars.....                         | §215        |
| 6. Sufficiency of Particulars Delivered .....          | §219        |
| <b>XI. Amendment of Pleadings .....</b>                | <b>§220</b> |
| 1. Amendment without Leave.....                        | §220        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                       | §220        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                             | §223        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                     | §225        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                  | §227        |
| 2. Leave to Amend.....                                 | §230        |
| (a) Practice on Application .....                      | §230        |
| (b) Amendments at Trial.....                           | §240        |
| 3. Manner of Amending.....                             | §243        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                       | §243        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                             | §245        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                     | §246        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                  | §248        |
| (e) Amendments Made at Trial .....                     | §249        |
| 4. Delivery of Amended Pleading .....                  | §250        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                       | §250        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                             | §253        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                     | §254        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                  | §255        |
| 5. Answer to Amended Pleading.....                     | §256        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                       | §256        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                             | §258        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                     | §259        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                  | §260        |
| 6. Disallowance of Amendment .....                     | §261        |
| 7. Costs of Amendment .....                            | §262        |

PLEADINGS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 8. Discretion of Court .....                           | §264        |
| (a) General .....                                      | §264        |
| (b) Adding New Cause of Action .....                   | §275        |
| (i) General.....                                       | §275        |
| (ii) Cause Accruing Since Commencement of Action ..    | §281        |
| (iii) Effect of Expiry of Limitation Period .....      | §283        |
| (c) New Ground of Defence .....                        | §289        |
| (d) Amendment Affecting Third Persons.....             | §294        |
| (e) Amendment to Withdraw Admission .....              | §296        |
| (f) Amendment to Correct Misdescription of Party ..... | §305        |
| (g) Amendment to Set Up Fraud.....                     | §316        |
| (h) Amendment to Plead Statute .....                   | §318        |
| (i) Amendment to Delete Arbitrated Issues .....        | §320        |
| (j) Amendment at or After Trial.....                   | §321        |
| (i) General.....                                       | §321        |
| (ii) At Conclusion of Trial.....                       | §326        |
| A. General.....  | §326        |
| B. Amendment to Accord with Evidence .....             | §329        |
| C. Amendment on Court's own Motion .....               | §333        |
| D. Amendment to Conform with Verdict .....             | §335        |
| (iii) Amendment after Judgment.....                    | §337        |
| (k) Amendment on Appeal .....                          | §338        |
| 9. Appeal from Allowance or Refusal of Amendment ..... | §347        |
| <b>XII. Striking Out Pleadings .....</b>               | <b>§350</b> |
| 1. No Reasonable Cause of Action or Defence.....       | §350        |
| (a) General .....                                      | §350        |
| (b) Cause of Action.....                               | §358        |
| (i) Grounds for Striking Out.....                      | §358        |
| (ii) Practice on Application.....                      | §369        |
| (c) Defence .....                                      | §374        |
| 2. Frivolous or Vexatious Pleadings .....              | §377        |
| (a) Power of Court .....                               | §377        |
| (b) Multiple Proceedings.....                          | §380        |
| (c) False Plea.....                                    | §384        |
| 3. Embarrassing Pleadings .....                        | §385        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General .....                                   | §385        |
| (b) Prolixity and Matters of Evidence.....          | §388        |
| (c) Obscure or Ambiguous Pleading .....             | §392        |
| (d) Unnecessary Averments .....                     | §393        |
| 4. Scandalous and Irrelevant Pleadings.....         | §395        |
| 5. Abuse of Process.....                            | §397        |
| 6. Lack of Jurisdiction .....                       | §402        |
| 7. Defects in Commencing Proceedings .....          | §403        |
| 8. Practice on Application to Strike Out.....       | §405        |
| 9. Appeal From Order Striking Out Pleadings .....   | §413        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XIII. Pleadings in Federal Court .....</b>       | <b>§414</b> |
| 1. General .....                                    | §414        |
| 2. Form and Arrangement.....                        | §416        |
| 3. Delivery of Pleadings .....                      | §420        |
| (a) General .....                                   | §420        |
| (b) Statement of Claim.....                         | §421        |
| (c) Defence .....                                   | §422        |
| (d) Answer or Reply .....                           | §423        |
| (e) Counterclaims .....                             | §425        |
| (f) Third Party Claims.....                         | §428        |
| (g) Subsequent Pleadings .....                      | §429        |
| (h) Close of Pleadings.....                         | §430        |
| 4. Content of Pleadings.....                        | §432        |
| (a) General .....                                   | §432        |
| (b) Statement of Material Facts.....                | §435        |
| (c) Prayer for Relief.....                          | §442        |
| (d) Points of Law .....                             | §444        |
| (e) Defence of Tender .....                         | §446        |
| (f) Conditions Precedent .....                      | §447        |
| (g) Documents and Conversations.....                | §448        |
| (h) Inconsistent Allegations .....                  | §449        |
| (i) Facts Subsequent to Commencement of Action..... | §450        |
| (j) Matters to be Pleaded Specifically.....         | §451        |
| (k) Admissions and Denials.....                     | §452        |
| (l) Set-off and Counterclaim.....                   | §458        |

PLEADINGS

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 5. Particulars .....  | §461 |
| (a) General .....   | §461 |
| (b) Order for Particulars.....                              | §465 |
| (c) Grounds for Order .....                                 | §467 |
| 6. Amendment of Pleadings.....                              | §474 |
| (a) Amendment Without Leave .....                           | §474 |
| (b) Amendment with Leave .....                              | §478 |
| (i) General.....  | §478 |
| (ii) Discretion of Court .....                              | §480 |
| (iii) Misnomer of Parties.....                              | §490 |
| (iv) Change of Capacity in which Party Sues .....           | §494 |
| (v) Manner of Amending .....                                | §495 |
| (vi) Service of Amended Pleading .....                      | §496 |
| 7. Striking Out Pleadings.....                              | §497 |
| (a) General .....   | §497 |
| (b) No Reasonable Cause of Action or Defence .....          | §504 |
| (c) Immaterial or Redundant Pleadings.....                  | §513 |
| (d) Scandalous, Frivolous or Vexatious Pleadings .....      | §516 |
| (e) Pleadings Tending to Prejudice or Delay Fair Trial..... | §521 |
| (f) Departure from Previous Pleading .....                  | §523 |
| (g) Abuse of Process.....                                   | §525 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Bailment; Builders' Liens; Children; Conspiracy; Copyright; Courts; Defamation; Discovery; Estoppel; Expropriation; Family Law — Divorce; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Injunctions; Interpleader; Judgments and Orders; Limitation of Actions; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Negligence; Nuisance; Parties; Partnership; Patents; Practice; Specific Performance; Statutes; Time; Torts; Trials

# PLEDGES

prepared by  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....  | §1  |
| 1. Definitions .....   | §1  |
| 2. Characteristics of Pledge .....                                 | §6  |
| (a) Delivery of Possession .....                                   | §6  |
| (b) Right to Redeem .....  | §11 |
| (c) Nature of Property Passed .....                                | §12 |
| 3. Pledge Distinguished from other Transactions .....              | §17 |
| (a) Pledge Distinguished from Lien .....                           | §17 |
| (b) Pledge Distinguished from Mortgage .....                       | §20 |
| (c) Pledge Distinguished from Bailments in General .....           | §21 |
| (d) Pledge Distinguished from Trust .....                          | §22 |
| (e) Pledgee Distinguished from Factor .....                        | §23 |
| 4. Examples of Legislation Affecting Pledges .....                 | §24 |
| 5. Severability of Pledge .....                                    | §31 |
| 6. Formalities .....   | §32 |
| (a) Equitable Pledge .....   | §32 |
| (b) Admissibility of Parol Evidence .....                          | §33 |
| <b>II. Rights and Duties of Pledgor and Pledgee Inter Se</b> ..... | §34 |
| 1. Pledgee's Duty of Care .....                                    | §34 |
| (a) General .....  | §34 |
| (b) Onus of Proof .....  | §35 |
| (c) Duty to Preserve Rights of Pledgor .....                       | §36 |

PLEDGES

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (d) Conversion by Pledgee . . . . .                           | §37        |
| 2. Return of Pledge . . . . .                                 | §41        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §41        |
| (b) Time Not of Essence . . . . .                             | §42        |
| (c) Same Property to be Returned . . . . .                    | §43        |
| (d) Repledge by Pledgee . . . . .                             | §44        |
| (e) Transfer by Pledgee to Creditors . . . . .                | §45        |
| (f) Remedy for Failure to Return Pledged Securities . . . . . | §46        |
| (g) Joint Debtors . . . . .                                   | §47        |
| 3. Pledgee's Power of Sale . . . . .                          | §48        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §48        |
| (b) Duty of Care in Exercising Power of Sale . . . . .        | §49        |
| (c) Wrongful Sale . . . . .                                   | §51        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §51        |
| (ii) Ratification by Pledgor . . . . .                        | §53        |
| (iii) Assessment of Damages . . . . .                         | §54        |
| (d) Conduct of Sale . . . . .                                 | §55        |
| (e) Sale of Pledged Debenture . . . . .                       | §57        |
| 4. Damages . . . . .  | §58        |
| (a) Pledgee Unable to Return Pledge . . . . .                 | §58        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §58        |
| (ii) Chose in Action . . . . .                                | §60        |
| (b) Laches of Pledgee . . . . .                               | §62        |
| 5. Right to Insure . . . . .                                  | §63        |
| 6. Right to Interplead . . . . .                              | §64        |
| 7. Pledge of Shares . . . . .                                 | §66        |
| <b>III. Third Parties . . . . .</b>                           | <b>§68</b> |
| 1. Unauthorized Dealing with Pledge . . . . .                 | §68        |
| (a) General Rule . . . . .                                    | §68        |
| (b) Parties with Implied Authority under Common Law . . . . . | §69        |
| (i) Executors . . . . .                                       | §69        |
| (ii) Bankers . . . . .  | §70        |
| (iii) Masters of Ships . . . . .                              | §71        |
| (c) Implied Authority under Statute . . . . .                 | §72        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §72        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (ii) Mercantile Agent . . . . .                                  | §73        |
| (iii) Seller in Possession . . . . .                             | §75        |
| (iv) Buyer in Possession . . . . .                               | §76        |
| (d) Pledgor with Ostensible Authority . . . . .                  | §78        |
| (e) Estoppel by Failure to Act . . . . .                         | §79        |
| (f) Duty of Pledgee to Investigate . . . . .                     | §80        |
| 2. Where Pledgor Having No Title . . . . .                       | §81        |
| 3. Tracing Proceeds . . . . .                                    | §85        |
| 4. Effect of Bankruptcy of Pledgor . . . . .                     | §87        |
| 5. Right of Creditors of Pledgee . . . . .                       | §88        |
| 6. Pledge of Conditional Contract . . . . .                      | §89        |
| <b>IV. Pawnbrokers . . . . .</b>                                 | <b>§90</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §90        |
| 2. The Pawnbrokers Act of Ontario . . . . .                      | §93        |
| (a) Definition . . . . .   | §93        |
| (b) General . . . . .  | §94        |
| 3. The Pawned Property (Recording) Act of Saskatchewan . . . . . | §96        |
| (a) Definition . . . . .   | §96        |
| (b) General . . . . .  | §97        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Bailment; Banking; Business Corporations; Carriers; Damages; Liens; Mortgages; Professions And Occupations; Sale Of Goods; Secured Transactions In Personal Property; Securities And Stock Exchanges; Shipping

# POLICE

prepared by  
Joan Dunlop, B.A., LL.B.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                                     | §1   |
| 1. Definition.....  | §1   |
| 2. Constitutional Authority .....                           | §4   |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>II. Duties and Rights</b> .....                          | §6   |
| 1. General .....  | §6   |
| 2. Civil Process .....                                      | §17  |
| 3. Arrest Without Warrant.....                              | §24  |
| 4. Use Of Force.....  | §41  |
| 5. Searching Premises and Seizure of Property.....          | §55  |
| 6. Interrogation of Prisoners .....                         | §65  |
| 7. Duty to Investigate.....                                 | §68  |
| 8. Obstruction of Peace Officers and Resisting Arrest ..... | §72  |
| (a) Obstruction.....  | §72  |
| (b) Assault on a Peace Officer .....                        | §82  |
| 9. Discretionary Power.....                                 | §86  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>III. Liability and Protection from Liability</b> .....   | §87  |
| 1. Trespass to the Person .....                             | §87  |
| 2. Negligence .....   | §94  |
| 3. Search Warrants .....                                    | §101 |
| 4. Statutory Protection.....                                | §106 |
| 5. Abuse of Process.....                                    | §124 |

POLICE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>IV. Royal Canadian Mounted Police</b> .....         | §125 |
| 1. General .....                                       | §125 |
| 2. Jurisdiction .....                                  | §126 |
| 3. Organization .....                                  | §127 |
| 4. Powers .....  | §128 |
| (a) General .....                                      | §128 |
| (b) Writs of Assistance .....                          | §129 |
| 5. Duties .....  | §131 |
| 6. Protection .....                                    | §132 |
| 7. Discipline .....                                    | §135 |
| 8. Discharge and Pensions .....                        | §151 |
| 9. Labour Relations .....                              | §153 |
| 10. Public Complaints .....                            | §154 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>V. Canadian Security Intelligence Service</b> ..... | §159 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>VI. Provincial Police</b> .....                     | §174 |
| 1. General .....                                       | §174 |
| 2. Alberta .....                                       | §175 |
| 3. Manitoba .....                                      | §183 |
| 4. British Columbia .....                              | §188 |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                                  | §194 |
| 6. Ontario .....                                       | §199 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>VII. Municipal Police</b> .....                     | §207 |
| 1. Statutory Provisions .....                          | §207 |
| (a) Alberta .....                                      | §207 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                             | §225 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                     | §237 |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....                                 | §242 |
| (e) Ontario .....                                      | §255 |
| 2. Appointment and Authority .....                     | §284 |
| 3. Conditions Of Employment And Dismissal .....        | §287 |
| 4. Discipline and Complaints .....                     | §296 |
| (a) General .....                                      | §296 |
| (b) Alberta .....                                      | §308 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Manitoba .....                                      | §323        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                   | §344        |
| (e) British Columbia.....                               | §361        |
| (f) Ontario.....  | §375        |
| 5. Liability For Acts Of Municipal Police.....          | §385        |
| 6. Police Commissions.....                              | §389        |
| <b>VIII. Railway Police.....</b>                        | <b>§391</b> |
| <b>IX. Designated Policing and Law Enforcement.....</b> | <b>§393</b> |
| <b>X. Police Village.....</b>                           | <b>§400</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Offences; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Municipal Corporations; Professions and Occupations; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Trespass; War and Emergency; Wrongful Dismissal

# PRACTICE

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. The Rules of Court</b> .....                    | \$1  |
| 1. Application and Interpretation of Rules.....       | \$1  |
| (a) Application.....                                  | \$1  |
| (b) Interpretation.....                               | \$5  |
| 2. Force and Effect.....                              | \$11 |
| 3. Non-Compliance.....                                | \$14 |
| (a) Nullities and Irregularities.....                 | \$14 |
| (b) Application to Set Aside.....                     | \$16 |
| (c) Remedial Power of Court .....                     | \$19 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>II. Commencing an Action</b> .....                 | \$21 |
| 1. General .....                                      | \$21 |
| 2. Statement of Claim .....                           | \$27 |
| 3. Notice of Civil Claim .....                        | \$29 |
| 4. Service and Renewal of Originating Documents ..... | \$33 |
| (a) General .....                                     | \$33 |
| (b) Effect of Expiry.....                             | \$38 |
| (c) Court's Discretion to Renew.....                  | \$40 |
| 5. Demand for Notice .....                            | \$42 |
| 6. Notice of Intent to Defend .....                   | \$47 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>III. Originating Applications</b> .....            | \$48 |
| 1. Availability of Procedure.....                     | \$48 |

PRACTICE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Rules Governing Procedure.....                       | \$58        |
| <b>IV. Service of Documents.....</b>                    | <b>\$60</b> |
| 1. Personal Service.....                                | \$60        |
| (a) General.....  | \$60        |
| (b) On Individuals.....                                 | \$65        |
| (c) On Infants.....                                     | \$68        |
| (d) On Mentally Disabled Persons.....                   | \$72        |
| (e) On Corporations.....                                | \$76        |
| (f) On Partnerships.....                                | \$80        |
| (g) On Sole Proprietorships.....                        | \$83        |
| (h) On Unincorporated Associations.....                 | \$84        |
| (i) On Boards or Commissions.....                       | \$86        |
| (j) On Non-resident Businesspersons.....                | \$88        |
| (k) Under Terms of Contract.....                        | \$89        |
| (l) Alternatives to Personal Service.....               | \$90        |
| (i) On Solicitors.....                                  | \$90        |
| (ii) By Mail.....                                       | \$93        |
| 2. Documents not Requiring Personal Service.....        | \$96        |
| (a) By Mail or Delivery.....                            | \$96        |
| (b) By Facsimile.....                                   | \$101       |
| (c) By Courier.....                                     | \$104       |
| (d) By Electronic Mail.....                             | \$105       |
| 3. When Service May be Made.....                        | \$109       |
| 4. Time and Proof of Service or Delivery.....           | \$111       |
| (a) General.....  | \$111       |
| (b) When Service Effected.....                          | \$116       |
| (i) Alberta.....  | \$116       |
| (ii) British Columbia.....                              | \$120       |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                                     | \$124       |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                                  | \$125       |
| 5. Setting Aside or Validating Service.....             | \$131       |
| 6. Substituted Service and Dispensing With Service..... | \$139       |
| (a) Discretion of Court.....                            | \$139       |
| (b) Manner of Service.....                              | \$145       |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Setting Aside.....  | §147        |
| 7. Service Ex Juris .....                                     | §149        |
| (a) Where Permitted .....                                     | §149        |
| (i) General.....  | §149        |
| (ii) Proceedings Concerning Property Within<br>Province ..... | §153        |
| (iii) Proceedings Concerning Persons Within<br>Province ..... | §154        |
| (iv) Proceedings Concerning Conduct Within<br>Province .....  | §158        |
| (v) Other Enumerated Circumstances.....                       | §163        |
| (vi) Circumstances Not Enumerated.....                        | §165        |
| (b) Application for Leave .....                               | §169        |
| (c) Manner of Service .....                                   | §177        |
| (d) Setting Aside Service .....                               | §184        |
| <b>V. Interlocutory Proceedings .....</b>                     | <b>§191</b> |
| 1. Notice of Motion.....                                      | §191        |
| 2. Nature of Interlocutory Applications .....                 | §201        |
| 3. Procedure.....   | §202        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | §202        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                    | §206        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §213        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....   | §220        |
| 4. Interlocutory Appeals.....                                 | §229        |
| 5. Ex Parte Applications .....                                | §237        |
| <b>VI. Avoiding Multiplicity of Proceedings.....</b>          | <b>§245</b> |
| 1. Joinder of Causes of Action.....                           | §245        |
| 2. Consolidation of Actions and Joint Trials .....            | §256        |
| <b>VII. Evidence.....</b>                                     | <b>§270</b> |
| 1. Affidavits.....  | §270        |
| (a) Form.....   | §270        |
| (b) Filing and Service .....                                  | §285        |
| (c) Content.....  | §291        |

PRACTICE

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (i) Statements on Information and Belief.....             | §291        |
| (ii) Scandalous Material.....                             | §299        |
| (d) Cross-Examination.....                                | §300        |
| 2. Examination of Witnesses .....                         | §309        |
| 3. Compelling Attendance of Witnesses .....               | §310        |
| 4. Depositions .....                                      | §315        |
| (a) General.....  | §315        |
| (b) Examination of Witnesses Abroad .....                 | §316        |
| (i) General.....  | §316        |
| (ii) Letters Rogatory.....                                | §324        |
| (c) Interrogatories .....                                 | §326        |
| (d) Procedure on Examination .....                        | §332        |
| (e) Assistance to Outside Judicial Authorities .....      | §333        |
| 5. Affidavit Evidence at Trial.....                       | §334        |
| <b>VIII. Payment into Court and Offers to Settle.....</b> | <b>§336</b> |
| 1. Payment into Court.....                                | §336        |
| (a) General .....   | §336        |
| (b) Interest .....  | §341        |
| (c) Notice of Payment In.....                             | §342        |
| (d) Effect of Payment In.....                             | §346        |
| (e) Revocation .....                                      | §347        |
| (f) Acceptance .....                                      | §348        |
| (g) Costs.....  | §349        |
| (i) On Acceptance .....                                   | §349        |
| (ii) On Rejection.....                                    | §350        |
| 2. Effect of Plea of Tender Before Action .....           | §351        |
| 3. Offers to Settle.....                                  | §356        |
| (a) General.....  | §356        |
| (b) Multiple Defendants .....                             | §362        |
| (c) Effect of Offer .....                                 | §365        |
| (d) Revocation and Expiry.....                            | §366        |
| (e) Acceptance .....                                      | §371        |
| (i) General.....  | §371        |
| (ii) Failure to Comply With Offer.....                    | §375        |



## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (f) Costs .....                                    | \$377        |
| (i) Alberta .....                                  | \$377        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                        | \$382        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                                | \$388        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                             | \$390        |
| (v) Discretion of Court.....                       | \$392        |
| <b>IX. Termination of Proceedings .....</b>        | <b>\$394</b> |
| 1. Stay of Proceedings .....                       | \$394        |
| (a) Criminal Proceedings Pending .....             | \$394        |
| (b) Actions in Two Jurisdictions .....             | \$398        |
| (c) Concurrent Actions in Same Jurisdiction .....  | \$402        |
| (d) Non-payment of Costs in Previous Action .....  | \$407        |
| (e) Settlement of Action.....                      | \$410        |
| (f) Stay of Proceedings by Act of Legislature..... | \$411        |
| (g) Proceeding Commenced Without Authority .....   | \$412        |
| (h) During Arbitration Proceedings .....           | \$413        |
| (i) Pending Constitutional Challenges .....        | \$417        |
| (j) General.....                                   | \$419        |
| 2. Nonsuit .....                                   | \$423        |
| 3. Want of Prosecution .....                       | \$434        |
| (a) General .....                                  | \$434        |
| (b) Rules Regarding Delay in Prosecution.....      | \$443        |
| (i) Alberta .....                                  | \$443        |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                        | \$447        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                                | \$450        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan.....                             | \$452        |
| 4. Discontinuance .....                            | \$454        |
| <b>X. Appeals .....</b>                            | <b>\$463</b> |
| 1. Time for Appealing.....                         | \$463        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                   | \$463        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                         | \$466        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                 | \$467        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                              | \$468        |

PRACTICE

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| 2. Extending Time to Appeal .....                    | \$471 |
| 3. Stay of Proceedings Pending Appeal.....           | \$478 |
| (a) General .....                                    | \$478 |
| (b) Stay of Operation of Injunction.....             | \$489 |
| 4. Notice of Appeal.....                             | \$490 |
| (a) Form and Contents .....                          | \$490 |
| (b) Service .....                                    | \$493 |
| 5. Leave to Appeal.....                              | \$497 |
| (a) Jurisdiction .....                               | \$497 |
| (b) Grounds.....                                     | \$499 |
| 6. Refusal to Hear Appeal .....                      | \$513 |
| 7. Cross-appeals.....                                | \$515 |
| 8. Appeal Books.....                                 | \$521 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                     | \$521 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                           | \$526 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                   | \$531 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                | \$532 |
| 9. Facta .....                                       | \$536 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                     | \$536 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                           | \$540 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                   | \$544 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                | \$548 |
| 10. Setting Appeal Down for Hearing .....            | \$554 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                     | \$554 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                           | \$555 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                   | \$557 |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                                | \$558 |
| 11. Termination Without Hearing.....                 | \$564 |
| (a) Discontinuance.....                              | \$564 |
| (b) Abandonment and Dismissal for Delay .....        | \$566 |
| (c) Dismissal of Vexatious Proceedings.....          | \$575 |
| (d) Mootness.....                                    | \$576 |
| 12. Rehearing.....                                   | \$577 |
| 13. Dismissal of Appeal.....                         | \$583 |
| 14. Discretion of Court in Matters of Procedure..... | \$584 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>XI. Supreme Court of Canada</b> .....      | \$586 |
| 1. Rules of General Application .....         | \$586 |
| (a) Appeals under Other Acts .....            | \$586 |
| (b) Presentation of Printed Materials .....   | \$587 |
| (c) Non-Compliance with Rules .....           | \$588 |
| (d) “Gap Rule” .....                          | \$589 |
| (e) Adjournment of Hearing .....              | \$590 |
| (f) Translation .....                         | \$591 |
| (g) Time .....                                | \$592 |
| (i) Extension and Abridgment .....            | \$592 |
| (ii) Computation .....                        | \$595 |
| (h) Office Hours .....                        | \$596 |
| 2. Counsel and Agents .....                   | \$597 |
| (a) Counsel .....                             | \$597 |
| (i) Representation Before Court .....         | \$597 |
| (ii) Change or Withdrawal of Counsel .....    | \$598 |
| (b) Agents .....                              | \$599 |
| 3. Documents .....                            | \$602 |
| (a) Filing .....                              | \$602 |
| (b) Service .....                             | \$604 |
| (i) General .....                             | \$604 |
| (ii) Personal Service .....                   | \$605 |
| (iii) By Mail .....                           | \$606 |
| (iv) By Fax .....                             | \$607 |
| (v) By E-mail .....                           | \$609 |
| (vi) Leaving Copy with Counsel or Agent ..... | \$611 |
| (vii) Date of Service .....                   | \$612 |
| (viii) Substitutional Service .....           | \$613 |
| (ix) Proof of Service .....                   | \$615 |
| 4. Affidavits .....                           | \$616 |
| (a) General .....                             | \$616 |
| (b) Cross-Examination .....                   | \$618 |
| 5. Style of Cause .....                       | \$621 |
| 6. Motions and Applications for Leave .....   | \$622 |

PRACTICE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (a) Motions .....   | §622 |
| (i) General.....  | §622 |
| (ii) Motions Before Judge or Registrar .....                            | §623 |
| (iii) Motions Before Court.....   | §624 |
| (b) Applications for Leave to Appeal .....                              | §625 |
| (i) General.....  | §625 |
| (ii) Time.....  | §628 |
| (iii) Appellant’s Materials .....                                       | §630 |
| (iv) Respondent’s Response.....   | §632 |
| (v) Appellant’s Reply .....   | §633 |
| (vi) Further Materials.....   | §634 |
| (c) Hearing of Applications for Leave and Motions<br>Before Court ..... | §635 |
| (d) Discontinued or Abandoned Applications or Motions<br>.....          | §636 |
| (e) Consent to Reversal of Judgment.....                                | §637 |
| (f) Amendments.....   | §638 |
| 7. Notice of Appeal and Cross-Appeal .....                              | §639 |
| (a) General .....   | §639 |
| (b) Time for Commencement .....   | §642 |
| (c) Notice of Appeal .....  | §643 |
| (d) Security .....  | §645 |
| (e) Stay of Execution .....   | §649 |
| (f) Motion to Quash .....   | §653 |
| (g) Cross-Appeal .....  | §656 |
| (h) References.....   | §660 |
| (i) General.....  | §660 |
| (ii) Evidence on Reference .....  | §661 |
| (iii) Notice of Constitutional Question.....                            | §662 |
| (i) Record.....   | §665 |
| (j) Facta.....  | §671 |
| (i) Contents .....  | §671 |
| (ii) Filing and Serving.....  | §673 |
| (iii) Factum on Cross-Appeal .....                                      | §674 |
| (k) Book of Authorities.....  | §675 |
| (l) Dismissal or Abandonment of Appeal .....                            | §677 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) General.....   | §677        |
| (ii) Failure to Serve and File Materials for Application for Leave ..... | §679        |
| (iii) Failure to Serve and File Notice of Appeal .....                   | §680        |
| (iv) Failure to Serve and File Record and Factum.....                    | §681        |
| (m) Discontinuance .....   | §682        |
| (n) Scheduling Appeals .....   | §684        |
| (o) Hearings and Attendance .....  | §686        |
| 8. Intervenors .....   | §690        |
| 9. Judgments .....   | §693        |
| (a) Obtaining.....   | §693        |
| (b) Variation .....  | §694        |
| (c) Rehearing .....  | §696        |
| (d) Vexatious Proceedings .....  | §702        |
| <b>XII. Federal Courts.....</b>  | <b>§703</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §703        |
| (a) Application, Definitions and Interpretation .....                    | §703        |
| (i) Application .....  | §703        |
| (ii) Definitions .....   | §704        |
| (iii) Interpretation .....   | §705        |
| (iv) “Gap Rule” .....  | §706        |
| (v) Forms .....  | §709        |
| (vi) Practice Directions .....   | §710        |
| (b) Non-Compliance with Rules.....                                       | §711        |
| (i) Motion to Dispense with Compliance.....                              | §711        |
| (ii) Effect of Non-compliance.....                                       | §713        |
| (iii) Attacking Irregularity.....  | §716        |
| (c) Time .....   | §717        |
| (i) Computation .....  | §717        |
| (ii) Extension and Abridgment .....                                      | §718        |
| (iii) Vacations .....  | §722        |
| (d) Court Documents.....   | §723        |
| (i) Form.....  | §723        |
| A. Format.....   | §723        |
| B. Heading and Content.....  | §724        |

PRACTICE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| C. Style of Cause .....  | §725 |
| D. Notice of Constitutional Question.....                      | §726 |
| E. Memorandum of Fact and Law .....                            | §727 |
| (ii) Language .....  | §728 |
| (iii) Filing.....  | §729 |
| (iv) Amendments .....  | §730 |
| (v) Affidavits .....   | §736 |
| A. Form and Content .....                                      | §736 |
| B. Solicitor’s Affidavit.....                                  | §742 |
| C. Cross-Examination on Affidavit .....                        | §744 |
| (vi) Confidential Material .....                               | §750 |
| (e) Examination Out of Court.....                              | §751 |
| (i) General.....   | §751 |
| (ii) Oral Examinations.....                                    | §754 |
| (iii) Written Examinations .....                               | §758 |
| (f) Questions of General Importance.....                       | §759 |
| 2. Commencement of Proceedings .....                           | §760 |
| (a) Originating Documents.....                                 | §760 |
| (b) Representation by Solicitor .....                          | §761 |
| (i) General.....   | §761 |
| (ii) Removal of Solicitor.....                                 | §765 |
| (iii) Solicitor Ceasing to Act .....                           | §767 |
| 3. Service .....   | §768 |
| (a) Personal Service .....                                     | §768 |
| (i) Originating Documents .....                                | §768 |
| (ii) Individual not Under Legal Disability .....               | §770 |
| (iii) Individual Under Legal Disability.....                   | §772 |
| (iv) Corporation or Municipal Corporation.....                 | §773 |
| (v) Partnership .....  | §775 |
| (vi) On Sole Proprietorship.....                               | §776 |
| (vii) Unincorporated Association.....                          | §777 |
| (viii) Crown .....   | §778 |
| (ix) Solicitor.....  | §779 |
| (x) Deemed Personal Service.....                               | §780 |
| (xi) Substitutional Service or Dispensing with<br>Service..... | §781 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (xii) Time for Service .....                                     | §782 |
| (xiii) No Further Service Required.....                          | §783 |
| (xiv) Proof of Service .....                                     | §784 |
| (xv) Validating Service .....                                    | §788 |
| (xvi) Document not Reaching Person Served.....                   | §789 |
| (b) Service Outside Canada .....                                 | §790 |
| (c) Non-personal Service .....                                   | §794 |
| (i) General.....   | §794 |
| (ii) Delivery .....  | §795 |
| (iii) Mail or Fax .....  | §797 |
| 4. Avoiding Multiplicity of Proceedings.....                     | §799 |
| 5. Payment Into and Out of Court .....                           | §802 |
| 6. References .....  | §804 |
| 7. Summary Disposition.....                                      | §807 |
| (a) Discontinuance.....  | §807 |
| (b) Dismissal for Delay.....                                     | §809 |
| (c) Discontinuance where Continuation Impossible .....           | §812 |
| (d) Nonsuit.....   | §813 |
| 8. Stay of Proceedings .....                                     | §814 |
| (a) General.....   | §814 |
| (b) Proceedings Involving the Crown .....                        | §816 |
| 9. Applications.....   | §819 |
| (a) Applicable Rules.....  | §819 |
| (b) General.....   | §820 |
| (i) Commencement and Content of Application.....                 | §820 |
| (ii) Notice of Appearance .....                                  | §821 |
| (iii) Affidavits and Cross-examination .....                     | §822 |
| (iv) Records .....   | §824 |
| (v) Additional Steps .....                                       | §825 |
| (vi) Hearing Date .....  | §826 |
| (c) Materials in Possession of Tribunal .....                    | §828 |
| (d) Procedure for Obtaining Judicial Review .....                | §834 |
| (e) References by Tribunal or Attorney General of<br>Canada..... | §835 |
| (f) Commercial Arbitrations.....                                 | §836 |
| (g) Foreign Judgments and Arbitral Awards .....                  | §837 |

PRACTICE

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 10. Motions.....   | §838 |
| (a) Applicable Rules.....  | §838 |
| (b) Notice of Motion.....  | §841 |
| (c) Hearing Date.....  | §846 |
| (d) Filing and Service Requirements.....                           | §847 |
| (e) Ex Parte Motions.....  | §849 |
| (f) Evidence on Motion.....  | §850 |
| (g) Motion Record.....   | §856 |
| (i) Appellant's.....   | §856 |
| (ii) Respondent's .....  | §857 |
| (iii) Memorandum of Fact and Law; Transcript.....                  | §858 |
| (iv) Documents Filed as Part of Motion .....                       | §859 |
| (h) Motions in Writing.....  | §860 |
| (i) Adjournment.....   | §863 |
| (j) Abandonment.....   | §866 |
| 11. Actions.....   | §867 |
| (a) Applicable Rules.....  | §867 |
| (b) Pleadings.....   | §868 |
| (c) Questions Of Law.....  | §870 |
| (d) Admissions.....  | §875 |
| (e) Simplified Action .....  | §877 |
| 12. Severance and Trial of Issue.....                              | §883 |
| 13. Class Proceedings .....  | §885 |
| (a) Actions and Applications .....                                 | §885 |
| (b) Proceedings that may be Certified as Class<br>Proceedings..... | §886 |
| (c) Motion for Certification .....                                 | §888 |
| (d) Certification .....  | §892 |
| (e) Opting Out and Exclusion.....                                  | §893 |
| (f) Examination for Discovery.....                                 | §894 |
| (g) Judgments .....  | §895 |
| (h) Settlements.....   | §898 |
| (i) Discontinuance .....   | §899 |
| (j) Appeals .....  | §901 |
| (k) Notices .....  | §902 |
| 14. Appeals.....   | §903 |



## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (a) Applicable Rules.....                                 | §903 |
| (b) Commencement .....                                    | §904 |
| (i) Notice of Appeal.....                                 | §904 |
| (ii) Respondent .....                                     | §908 |
| (iii) Service and Filing Requirements .....               | §909 |
| (iv) Solicitor on Record and Address for Service .....    | §910 |
| (v) Notice of Appearance and Cross-appeal .....           | §911 |
| (vi) Appeal Books .....                                   | §914 |
| (vii) Memorandum of Fact and Law .....                    | §917 |
| (viii) Requisition for Hearing .....                      | §919 |
| (ix) Book of Authorities.....                             | §921 |
| (c) Stay of Proceedings Pending Appeal .....              | §922 |
| (d) Reversal or Variation of Judgment.....                | §929 |
| (e) Materials in Possession of Tribunal .....             | §931 |
| (f) Motion for Leave to Appeal.....                       | §932 |
| (g) Leave to Appeal to Supreme Court of Canada .....      | §933 |
| 15. Preservation of Rights Pending Litigation.....        | §936 |
| (a) Applicable Rules.....                                 | §936 |
| (b) Interim and Interlocutory Injunctions.....            | §937 |
| (c) Appointment of Receiver .....                         | §938 |
| (d) Detention, Custody or Preservation of Property .....  | §939 |
| (e) Sale of Perishable Property .....                     | §940 |
| (f) Interpleader.....                                     | §941 |
| 16. Case Management and Dispute Resolution Services ..... | §942 |
| (a) Applicable Rules.....                                 | §942 |
| (b) Case Management .....                                 | §943 |
| (c) Dispute Resolution .....                              | §949 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Business Corporations; Costs; Courts; Discovery; Evidence; Judgments and Orders; Parties; Pleadings; Time; Trials

# PREROGATIVE REMEDIES

prepared by  
Cheryl Belkin, B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. Scope of Title</b> . . . . .                            | § 1  |
| <b>II. Judicial Review of Administrative Action</b> . . . . . | § 4  |
| 1. Types of Decision-Makers Subject to Review . . . . .       | § 4  |
| (a) Inferior Courts . . . . .                                 | § 4  |
| (b) Tribunals . . . . .                                       | § 6  |
| (i) Provincial . . . . .                                      | § 6  |
| (ii) Federal . . . . .  | § 12 |
| 2. Grounds for Review . . . . .                               | § 21 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | § 21 |
| (b) Failure to Observe Natural Justice . . . . .              | § 22 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | § 22 |
| (ii) Right to a Hearing . . . . .                             | § 23 |
| (iii) Bias . . . . .  | § 24 |
| (iv) Statutory Requirements . . . . .                         | § 36 |
| (c) Lack or Excess of Jurisdiction . . . . .                  | § 41 |
| (d) Error of Law on the Face of the Record . . . . .          | § 46 |
| (e) Abuse of Discretion . . . . .                             | § 49 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | § 49 |
| (ii) Irrelevant Considerations . . . . .                      | § 52 |
| (iii) Failure to Exercise Discretion . . . . .                | § 53 |
| (f) Infringement of Constitutional Rights . . . . .           | § 54 |
| <b>III. Certiorari</b> . . . . .                              | § 55 |

PREROGATIVE REMEDIES

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 1. Introduction . . . . .  | §55  |
| (a) Historical . . . . .   | §55  |
| (b) Nature of Proceedings . . . . .                                  | §56  |
| 2. Proceedings Subject to Review . . . . .                           | §59  |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §59  |
| (b) Criminal . . . . .   | §61  |
| 3. Statutory Restrictions as to Availability of Certiorari . . . . . | §73  |
| 4. Discretionary Relief . . . . .                                    | §76  |
| 5. Procedure . . . . .   | §81  |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §81  |
| (b) Criminal . . . . .   | §82  |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §82  |
| (ii) Time and Service of Application . . . . .                       | §83  |
| A. General . . . . .   | §83  |
| B. Alberta . . . . .   | §84  |
| C. British Columbia . . . . .  | §85  |
| D. Manitoba . . . . .  | §86  |
| E. Ontario . . . . .   | §87  |
| (iii) Contents of Notice . . . . .                                   | §88  |
| A. General . . . . .   | §88  |
| B. Alberta . . . . .   | §89  |
| C. British Columbia . . . . .  | §90  |
| D. Manitoba . . . . .  | §91  |
| E. Ontario . . . . .   | §92  |
| F. Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §94  |
| (iv) Return on Notice of Motion or Application . . . . .             | §95  |
| (v) Record . . . . .   | §96  |
| (vi) Powers of Judge . . . . .                                       | §97  |
| (c) Civil . . . . .  | §98  |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §98  |
| (ii) Effect of Service . . . . .                                     | §101 |
| (iii) Affidavit Evidence . . . . .                                   | §102 |
| (iv) Effect of Issuance of Certiorari . . . . .                      | §104 |
| 6. Appeal . . . . .  | §105 |
| (a) Criminal . . . . .   | §105 |
| (b) Civil . . . . .  | §106 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 7. Procedendo . . . . .  | §108        |
| 8. Costs . . . . .   | §109        |
| <b>IV. Prohibition . . . . .</b>                                 | <b>§110</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .  | §110        |
| (a) Historical . . . . .   | §110        |
| (b) Nature of Proceedings . . . . .                              | §112        |
| 2. Proceedings Subject to Review . . . . .                       | §116        |
| (a) Criminal . . . . .   | §116        |
| (b) Civil . . . . .  | §118        |
| 3. Availability . . . . .  | §119        |
| (a) Grounds . . . . .  | §119        |
| (b) Discretion of the Court . . . . .                            | §120        |
| (c) Timing of Application . . . . .                              | §125        |
| (d) Failure to Object to Lack of Jurisdiction . . . . .          | §129        |
| 4. Procedure . . . . .   | §131        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §131        |
| (b) Record . . . . .   | §132        |
| 5. Effect . . . . .  | §133        |
| (a) Service of Application . . . . .                             | §133        |
| (b) Issuance of Order . . . . .                                  | §134        |
| 6. Appeal . . . . .  | §135        |
| 7. Costs . . . . .   | §136        |
| <b>V. Mandamus . . . . .</b>                                     | <b>§137</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .  | §137        |
| (a) Historical . . . . .   | §137        |
| (b) Nature of Proceedings . . . . .                              | §138        |
| 2. Availability . . . . .  | §141        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §141        |
| (b) Clear Right to Performance of Duty . . . . .                 | §145        |
| (c) Proof that Performance of Duty Is Due . . . . .              | §147        |
| (d) Absence of Discretion . . . . .                              | §148        |
| (e) Proof of Demand for Performance of Duty and Refusal. . . . . | §149        |
| 3. Discretionary Remedy . . . . .                                | §150        |

PREROGATIVE REMEDIES

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | \$150        |
| (b) Effect of Alternative Remedies . . . . .            | \$152        |
| 4. Procedure . . . . .                                  | \$153        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | \$153        |
| (b) Service of Notice . . . . .                         | \$155        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                                   | \$155        |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                         | \$156        |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                                | \$157        |
| (iv) Ontario . . . . .                                  | \$158        |
| (v) Saskatchewan . . . . .                              | \$160        |
| (vi) Federal . . . . .                                  | \$161        |
| (c) Status of Applicant . . . . .                       | \$162        |
| (d) Materials Filed in Support of Application . . . . . | \$163        |
| 5. Appeal . . . . .                                     | \$165        |
| 6. Costs . . . . .                                      | \$166        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>VI. Quo Warranto . . . . .</b>                       | <b>\$167</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                               | \$167        |
| (a) Historical . . . . .                                | \$167        |
| (b) Nature of Proceedings . . . . .                     | \$168        |
| 2. Availability . . . . .                               | \$171        |
| (a) Status of Relator . . . . .                         | \$171        |
| (b) Discretion of the Court . . . . .                   | \$172        |
| (c) Grounds . . . . .                                   | \$174        |
| 3. Procedure . . . . .                                  | \$178        |
| (a) Applicant . . . . .                                 | \$178        |
| (b) Time Limitation . . . . .                           | \$179        |
| (c) Materials Used on the Application . . . . .         | \$180        |
| 4. Costs . . . . .                                      | \$183        |
| <br>  |              |
| <b>VII. Habeas Corpus . . . . .</b>                     | <b>\$184</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                               | \$184        |
| (a) Historical . . . . .                                | \$184        |
| (b) Nature of Proceedings . . . . .                     | \$189        |
| 2. Availability . . . . .                               | \$192        |
| (a) Detention . . . . .                                 | \$192        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(b) Application of Habeas Corpus to Criminal Proceedings . . . . . \$201  
    (i) General . . . . . \$201  
    (ii) Review of Detention . . . . . \$204  
    (iii) Review of Sentence . . . . . \$208  
(c) Application of Habeas Corpus to Civil Proceedings . . . \$213  
    (i) Custody of Children . . . . . \$213  
    (ii) Detention for Mental Incompetency . . . . . \$215  
    (iii) Detention for Extradition Purposes . . . . . \$217  
    (iv) Immigration and Deportation . . . . . \$219  
(d) Status to Bring Application . . . . . \$220  
3. Discretionary Relief . . . . . \$221  
    (a) General . . . . . \$221  
    (b) When Discharge Will Be Granted . . . . . \$222  
    (c) When Discharge Will Be Refused . . . . . \$224  
4. Procedure . . . . . \$225  
    (a) Notice and Commencing Application . . . . . \$225  
    (b) Affidavit Material . . . . . \$229  
    (c) Service and Return of Writ in Ontario . . . . . \$230  
    (d) Powers of the Court . . . . . \$235  
    (e) Effect of Order . . . . . \$241  
5. Appeal . . . . . \$242  
    (a) Criminal Matters . . . . . \$242  
    (b) Civil Matters . . . . . \$246  
6. Costs . . . . . \$247  
7. Federal Court of Canada . . . . . \$248

**Index**

# PRISONS

prepared by  
Mary Campbell, LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Imprisonment as Punishment</b> . . . . .   | §1   |
| 1. Basic Principles . . . . .  | §1   |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §1   |
| (b) Criminal Code . . . . .  | §4   |
| (c) Provincial Offences . . . . .  | §13  |
| 2. Sentences . . . . .   | §17  |
| (a) Rules of Sentence Calculation . . . . .  | §17  |
| (b) Provincial Offences . . . . .  | §21  |
| (c) Consecutive or Concurrent Sentence . . . . .   | §28  |
| (d) Suspended Sentences . . . . .  | §40  |
| (e) Intermittent Sentences . . . . .   | §46  |
| (f) Preventive Detention . . . . .   | §54  |
| (g) Disposition on Finding of Not Criminally Responsible<br>on Account of Mental Disorder — Mentally Ill Prisoners . . . . . | §71  |
| 3. Warrants of Committal . . . . .   | §79  |
| <b>II. Penal Institutions</b> . . . . .  | §90  |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §90  |
| 2. Types . . . . .   | §92  |
| 3. Place of Confinement . . . . .  | §95  |
| 4. Reception . . . . .   | §104 |
| 5. Transfers . . . . .   | §110 |
| 6. Reception of Mentally Ill or Diseased Prisoners . . . . .   | §120 |

## PRISONS

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 7. International Transfers . . . . .                 | \$123        |
| 8. Operation and Management . . . . .                | \$136        |
| 9. Responsibilities and Liability . . . . .          | \$140        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                | \$140        |
| (b) Institutional Heads . . . . .                    | \$143        |
| (c) Staff . . . . .                                  | \$150        |
| (d) Investigation and Compensation . . . . .         | \$151        |
| (e) Crown Liability . . . . .                        | \$153        |
| (f) Medical Services . . . . .                       | \$154        |
| (g) Acts of Escapees . . . . .                       | \$155        |
| <b>III. Status and Rights of Prisoners . . . . .</b> | <b>\$156</b> |
| 1. Status . . . . .                                  | \$156        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                | \$156        |
| (b) Visits and Correspondence . . . . .              | \$161        |
| (c) Civil and Political Rights . . . . .             | \$174        |
| (d) Right to Vote . . . . .                          | \$177        |
| (e) Programs . . . . .                               | \$179        |
| (f) Businesses and Penitentiary Industry . . . . .   | \$185        |
| (g) Inmate Trust Funds . . . . .                     | \$189        |
| (h) Medical Care . . . . .                           | \$191        |
| (i) Searches and Contraband . . . . .                | \$199        |
| 2. Remedies . . . . .                                | \$209        |
| (a) Grievances . . . . .                             | \$209        |
| (b) Correctional Investigator . . . . .              | \$211        |
| (c) Access to the Courts . . . . .                   | \$214        |
| <b>IV. Prison Discipline . . . . .</b>               | <b>\$220</b> |
| 1. Federal . . . . .                                 | \$220        |
| 2. Provincial . . . . .                              | \$236        |
| (a) Ontario . . . . .                                | \$236        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .                                | \$242        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                       | \$248        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .                               | \$256        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                           | \$266        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

**V. Escape** .....\$274

**VI. Conditional Release** .....\$282

    1. General .....\$282

    2. Parole .....\$283

        (a) Establishment of Parole Boards .....\$283

            (i) General .....\$283

            (ii) National Parole Board .....\$284

            (iii) Provincial Parole Boards .....\$287

        (b) Powers and Duties of National Parole Board .....\$293

        (c) Parole Eligibility .....\$296

            (i) General .....\$296

            (ii) Special Eligibility Rules for Murder .....\$303

            (iii) Day Parole .....\$320

        (d) Parole Reviews .....\$327

            (i) Day Parole .....\$327

            (ii) Full Parole .....\$328

            (iii) Accelerated Review .....\$331

        (e) Parole Granting .....\$333

            (i) General .....\$333

            (ii) Provincial Parole Board Procedures .....\$341

                A. General .....\$341

                B. Ontario .....\$343

    3. Statutory Release .....\$352

        (a) General .....\$352

        (b) Review Prior to Statutory Release Date .....\$355

    4. Temporary Absence .....\$358

        (a) General .....\$358

        (b) Provincial Temporary Absence .....\$368

            (i) General .....\$368

            (ii) Ontario .....\$374

            (iii) Alberta .....\$378

            (iv) British Columbia .....\$379

            (v) Manitoba .....\$380

            (vi) Saskatchewan .....\$382

    5. Conditions .....\$384

PRISONS

---

6. Suspension, Termination and Revocation .....§393  
    (a) General .....§393  
    (b) Procedure .....§405  
    (c) Termination, Suspension and Revocation by Provincial  
        Boards .....§411  
7. Earned Remission .....§420  
    (a) General .....§420  
    (b) Provincial Systems .....§421

**VII. Pardons** .....§427  
    1. General .....§427  
    2. Effect .....§432  
    3. Disabilities .....§442

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Armed Forces; Criminal Law — Offences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Crown; Evidence; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Mental Incapacity; Narcotic Control; Prerogative Remedies; Sentencing; Youth Criminal Justice.

# PRIVACY AND FREEDOM OF INFORMATION

prepared by  
Colonel Me Michel W. Drapeau, O.M.M., C.D., LL.L., LL.B.,  
*Adjunct Professor, Faculty of Law,  
University of Ottawa, of the Ontario Bar*  
Me Marc-Aurèle Racicot, B.Sc., LL.B., LL.M.,  
*Adjunct Professor, University of Alberta, of the Quebec Bar*  
Ashlee Barber, B.A. (Hon.)

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                             | §1  |
| 1. Purpose .....   | §1  |
| 2. Definitions .....                                     | §5  |
| <b>II. Administration</b> .....                          | §13 |
| 1. Minister.....   | §13 |
| 2. Information and Privacy Commissioner .....            | §20 |
| 3. Administrative Duties .....                           | §31 |
| <b>III. Freedom of Information</b> .....                 | §34 |
| 1. Access to Records.....                                | §34 |
| 2. Exemptions and Other Factors Barring Disclosure ..... | §39 |
| (a) General .....  | §39 |
| (b) Cabinet Records .....                                | §40 |
| (c) Advice to Government .....                           | §44 |
| (d) Law Enforcement .....                                | §48 |
| (e) Government Relations .....                           | §57 |

PRIVACY AND FREEDOM OF INFORMATION

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (f) Defence.....                                 | \$65  |
| (g) Third Party Information.....                 | \$69  |
| (h) Economic and Other Interests.....            | \$78  |
| (i) Testing and Auditing Procedures.....         | \$87  |
| (j) Solicitor-Client Privilege.....              | \$88  |
| (k) Individual Safety.....                       | \$93  |
| (l) Personal Privacy.....                        | \$95  |
| (m) Fish and Wildlife.....                       | \$107 |
| (n) Information Soon to be Published.....        | \$109 |
| (o) Disclosure Harmful to a Heritage Site.....   | \$114 |
| (p) Local Government Confidences.....            | \$115 |
| (q) Abortion Services.....                       | \$116 |
| (r) Interference with Government Operations..... | \$117 |
| 3. Access Procedure.....                         | \$118 |

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| <b>IV. Protection of Privacy in the Public Sector.....</b>            | <b>\$157</b> |
| 1. Collection of Personal Information.....                            | \$157        |
| (a) General.....  | \$157        |
| (b) Manner of Collection.....   | \$164        |
| (c) Retention of Personal Information.....                            | \$169        |
| 2. Protection of Personal Information.....                            | \$170        |
| 3. Personal Information Banks and Index.....                          | \$189        |
| 4. Rights of Individuals to Whom Personal Information<br>Relates..... | \$192        |
| (a) Right of Access.....  | \$192        |
| (b) Right to Correction of Information.....                           | \$193        |
| (c) Procedure.....  | \$195        |
| 5. Exemptions and Other Factors Barring Disclosure.....               | \$202        |
| (a) General.....  | \$202        |
| (b) Confidential Information.....                                     | \$203        |
| (c) Federal-Provincial Affairs.....                                   | \$204        |
| (d) International Affairs and Defence.....                            | \$205        |
| (e) Law Enforcement.....  | \$206        |
| (f) Security Clearance.....   | \$208        |
| (g) Correctional Records.....   | \$209        |
| (h) Individual Safety.....  | \$210        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (i) Prohibited Personal Information .....   | §211        |
| (j) Solicitor-Client Privilege.....   | §212        |
| (k) Medical Records.....  | §213        |
| (l) Cabinet Records .....   | §214        |
| (m) Advice to Government.....   | §215        |
| (n) Third Party Information .....   | §217        |
| (o) Economic and Other Interests.....   | §218        |
| (p) Information Soon to be Published.....   | §219        |
| (q) Personal Privacy .....  | §220        |
| (r) Government Benefits .....   | §221        |
| (s) Educational Institutions and Awards .....   | §222        |
| (t) Statistical and Research Records.....   | §223        |
| (u) Abortion Services .....   | §224        |
| <b>V. Protection of Privacy in the Private Sector.....</b>                                | <b>§225</b> |
| 1. Collection of Personal Information .....   | §225        |
| (a) General .....   | §225        |
| (b) Manner of Collection .....  | §233        |
| (c) Retention of Personal Information.....  | §240        |
| 2. Protection of Personal Information .....   | §241        |
| 3. Rights of Individuals to Whom Personal Information Re-<br>lates: Right of Access ..... | §243        |
| 4. Exemptions and Other Factors Barring Disclosure .....                                  | §244        |
| <b>VI. Review .....</b>   | <b>§248</b> |
| 1. Right of Review.....   | §248        |
| 2. Review Procedure .....   | §250        |
| (a) General .....   | §250        |
| (b) Burden of Proof.....  | §253        |
| (c) Commissioner’s Order.....   | §254        |
| 3. Compliance.....  | §256        |
| 4. Judicial Review .....  | §259        |
| 5. Motor Vehicle Services .....   | §267        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Criminal Law — Procedure; Hospitals; Human Rights; Internet Law; Pensions and Retirement Benefits; Public Au-

PRIVACY AND FREEDOM OF INFORMATION

---

thorities and Public Officers; Public Health and Welfare; Torts; Trials; Workers' Compensation.

# PROFESSIONS AND OCCUPATIONS

prepared by  
Juliet S. Robin, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Scope of Title</b> . . . . .             | §1  |
| <b>II. Regulation Of Professions</b> . . . . . | §2  |
| 1. Definition . . . . .                        | §2  |
| 2. Legislative Framework . . . . .             | §3  |
| 3. Self-Government . . . . .                   | §6  |
| 4. Admission to Practice . . . . .             | §9  |
| 5. Unauthorized Practice . . . . .             | §13 |
| 6. Professional Misconduct . . . . .           | §17 |
| (a) General . . . . .                          | §17 |
| (b) Private Conduct . . . . .                  | §21 |
| (c) Sexual Misconduct . . . . .                | §22 |
| (d) Incompetence and Incapacity . . . . .      | §23 |
| 7. Discipline . . . . .                        | §24 |
| (a) General . . . . .                          | §24 |
| (b) Jurisdiction . . . . .                     | §26 |
| <b>III. Professional Liability</b> . . . . .   | §30 |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                      | §30 |
| 2. Related Actions . . . . .                   | §33 |
| (a) Breach Of Contract . . . . .               | §33 |
| (b) Breach Of Fiduciary Duty . . . . .         | §34 |
| (c) Breach Of Statutory Duty . . . . .         | §37 |
| 3. Professional Negligence . . . . .           | §38 |

PROFESSIONS AND OCCUPATIONS

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| (a) General . . . . .                   | §38 |
| (b) Duty Of Care . . . . .              | §39 |
| (i) Duty to Client . . . . .            | §39 |
| (ii) Duty to Others . . . . .           | §44 |
| (c) Standard Of Care . . . . .          | §52 |
| (i) Reasonable skill and care . . . . . | §52 |
| (ii) Specialists . . . . .              | §60 |
| (d) Reliance On Others . . . . .        | §61 |
| (e) Remuneration . . . . .              | §72 |
| (f) Causation . . . . .                 | §73 |
| (g) Remoteness . . . . .                | §78 |
| (h) Defences . . . . .                  | §79 |
| (i) Limitation of Actions . . . . .     | §79 |
| (ii) Error of Judgment . . . . .        | §80 |
| (iii) Approved Practice . . . . .       | §81 |
| (iv) Contributory Negligence . . . . .  | §84 |
| (i) Evidentiary Standard . . . . .      | §86 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Auctions; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Burial and Cremation; Coroners and Medical Examiners; Courts; Education; Fires; Fish and Game; Hospitals; Hotels; Insurance; Negligence; Pledges; Police; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Public Health and Welfare; Receivers; Religious Institutions; Securities and Stock Exchanges; Sheriffs and Bailiffs; Shipping.



# PUBLIC AUTHORITIES AND PUBLIC OFFICERS

prepared by  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                        | §1  |
| <b>II. Public Authorities</b> .....                 | §2  |
| 1. General .....                                    | §2  |
| 2. Status in Civil Actions.....                     | §3  |
| 3. Forum for Civil Actions .....                    | §11 |
| 4. Status in Criminal Actions .....                 | §12 |
| 5. Review of and Appeals from Statutory Bodies..... | §13 |
| 6. Application of Charter .....                     | §14 |
| 7. Review By Ombudsman .....                        | §16 |
| 8. Access to Information.....                       | §21 |
| 9. Official Languages Act.....                      | §38 |
| 10. Taxation.....                                   | §41 |
| 11. Miscellaneous .....                             | §43 |
| <b>III. Ombudsman</b> .....                         | §44 |
| 1. Appointment .....                                | §44 |
| 2. Powers and Duties .....                          | §46 |
| (a) Investigation.....                              | §46 |
| (b) Notification and Consultation .....             | §53 |
| (c) Power to Obtain Information and Evidence.....   | §54 |
| (d) Confidentiality and Non-Disclosure .....        | §56 |

PUBLIC AUTHORITIES AND PUBLIC OFFICERS

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (e) Recommendations and Reports.....                       | §57        |
| 3. Protection from Review and Liability.....               | §61        |
| 4. Non-Compellability.....                                 | §63        |
| <b>IV. Public Officers.....</b>                            | <b>§64</b> |
| 1. Who are Public Officers.....                            | §64        |
| (a) General.....   | §64        |
| (b) Specific Cases.....                                    | §68        |
| 2. Appointment.....  | §74        |
| (a) Introduction.....                                      | §74        |
| (b) Qualifications.....                                    | §75        |
| (i) Federal.....   | §75        |
| (ii) Alberta.....  | §77        |
| (iii) British Columbia.....                                | §78        |
| (iv) Manitoba.....   | §80        |
| (v) Saskatchewan.....                                      | §81        |
| (c) Selection Standards.....                               | §82        |
| (i) General.....   | §82        |
| (ii) Language Requirements.....                            | §88        |
| (d) Validity of Appointment.....                           | §91        |
| (e) Appeals.....   | §95        |
| 3. Holding Public Office.....                              | §97        |
| (a) Oath of Office.....                                    | §97        |
| (b) Domicile.....  | §98        |
| (c) Provision of Security.....                             | §99        |
| (i) Alberta.....   | §99        |
| (ii) Manitoba.....   | §100       |
| (iii) Saskatchewan.....                                    | §101       |
| (d) Effect of Demise of Crown or Change in Legislation.... | §102       |
| (e) Compensation.....                                      | §105       |
| (f) Superannuation.....                                    | §111       |
| (g) Liability to Taxation.....                             | §112       |
| (h) Leave of Absence.....                                  | §115       |
| (i) Federal.....   | §115       |
| (ii) Provincial.....                                       | §117       |
| (i) Disciplinary Action.....                               | §118       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (j) Lay-Off .....                              | §119 |
| 4. Resignation, Retirement and Dismissal ..... | §120 |
| (a) Resignation.....                           | §120 |
| (b) Retirement.....                            | §121 |
| (c) Dismissal.....                             | §126 |
| (i) General.....                               | §126 |
| (ii) Federal .....                             | §130 |
| (iii) Provincial.....                          | §134 |
| 5. Offences.....                               | §135 |
| (a) Criminal Code.....                         | §135 |
| (b) Public Service Legislation .....           | §136 |
| 6. Conflict of Interest.....                   | §137 |

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>V. Exercise of Authority by Public Authorities and Public Officers</b> ..... | §138 |
| 1. Presumption as to Regularity .....   | §138 |
| 2. Statutory Powers and Duties .....  | §139 |
| 3. Discretion .....   | §151 |
| 4. Delegation of Authority.....   | §154 |

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>VI. Civil Liability and Protection of Public Authorities and Public Officers</b> ..... | §158 |
| 1. Tort .....   | §158 |
| (a) Authority and Duty.....   | §158 |
| (b) Negligence .....  | §168 |
| (c) Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment.....                                     | §175 |
| (d) Trespass .....  | §179 |
| (e) Defamation.....   | §182 |
| (f) Personal Liability .....  | §185 |
| (g) Crown Liability .....   | §189 |
| 2. Contract .....   | §190 |
| 3. Limitation of Actions.....   | §193 |
| (a) General .....   | §193 |
| (b) Public Officers' Protection Legislation .....   | §195 |
| 4. Protection From Liability .....  | §207 |
| (a) General .....   | §207 |

PUBLIC AUTHORITIES AND PUBLIC OFFICERS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Judges, Justices, Magistrates.....                                   | §213        |
| (c) Law Enforcement .....  | §218        |
| 5. Notice Requirements.....  | §235        |
| 6. Security for Costs .....  | §238        |
| 7. Remedies .....  | §239        |
| (a) Damages.....   | §239        |
| (b) Injunction and Specific Performance .....                            | §240        |
| 8. Garnishment and Attachment .....                                      | §242        |
| <b>VII. Criminal Responsibility in Relation to Public Officers .....</b> | <b>§243</b> |
| 1. Law Enforcement.....  | §243        |
| 2. Specific Offences .....   | §244        |
| (a) Bribery .....  | §244        |
| (b) Fraud upon Government .....  | §253        |
| (c) Municipal Corruption .....   | §259        |
| (d) Selling or Purchasing Office.....                                    | §262        |
| (e) Dealing in Offices .....   | §264        |
| (f) Fraud or Breach of Trust.....  | §266        |
| (g) Personating Public Officer .....                                     | §268        |
| (h) Miscellaneous Provisions Regarding Public Officers.....              | §271        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Business Corporations; Coroners and Medical Examiners; Courts; Criminal Law — Defences; Crown; Customs and Excise; Employment Law; Highways and Streets; Injunctions; Limitation of Actions; Malicious Prosecution and False Imprisonment; Municipal Corporations; Negligence; Nuisance; Parliament and Legislature; Police; Privacy and Freedom of Information; Professions and Occupations; Sheriffs and Bailiffs; Torts; Trespass; Trials; Wrongful Dismissal

# PUBLIC HEALTH AND WELFARE

prepared by  
David Keeshan, B.A., LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                                   | §1  |
| 1. Interpretation of Health Laws .....                         | §1  |
| 2. Constitutional Jurisdiction .....                           | §2  |
| 3. Enforcement .....   | §6  |
| (a) General .....  | §6  |
| (b) Authority of Medical Officers .....                        | §7  |
| (c) Offences and Penalties .....                               | §9  |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Federal Public Health and Welfare Legislation</b> ..... | §12 |
| 1. Public Health.....  | §12 |
| 2. Public Welfare.....   | §16 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>III. Provincial Public Health Legislation</b> .....         | §18 |
| 1. Alberta .....   | §18 |
| (a) Central Administration of Public Health.....               | §18 |
| (i) General.....   | §18 |
| (ii) Powers of Minister.....                                   | §21 |
| (b) Chief Medical Officer .....                                | §25 |
| (i) General.....   | §25 |
| (ii) Health Regions.....                                       | §27 |
| (iii) Enforcement .....  | §35 |
| (iv) Public Health Appeal Board.....                           | §40 |
| (c) Communicable Diseases.....                                 | §42 |
| (i) Notification .....   | §42 |

PUBLIC HEALTH AND WELFARE

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (ii) Isolation and Quarantine .....                | \$45  |
| (iii) Treatment.....                               | \$47  |
| (d) Sanitation .....                               | \$50  |
| (i) Nuisance and General Sanitation.....           | \$50  |
| (ii) Buildings.....                                | \$54  |
| (iii) Recreation Areas .....                       | \$55  |
| (iv) Food .....                                    | \$57  |
| (e) Related Health Matters.....                    | \$58  |
| 2. British Columbia.....                           | \$60  |
| (a) Central Administration of Public Health.....   | \$60  |
| (i) General.....                                   | \$60  |
| (ii) Investigation of Public Health Issues.....    | \$61  |
| (b) Local Administration of Public Health .....    | \$63  |
| (i) Health Authorities .....                       | \$63  |
| (ii) Enforcement.....                              | \$68  |
| (iii) Reviewing Orders .....                       | \$74  |
| (c) Communicable Diseases .....                    | \$77  |
| (i) Notification .....                             | \$77  |
| (ii) Isolation and Quarantine.....                 | \$79  |
| (iii) Treatment.....                               | \$82  |
| (d) Sanitation .....                               | \$83  |
| (i) Health Hazards and Sanitation .....            | \$83  |
| (ii) Buildings.....                                | \$85  |
| (iii) Recreation Areas .....                       | \$88  |
| (iv) Food .....                                    | \$89  |
| 3. Manitoba.....                                   | \$92  |
| (a) Central Administration of Public Health.....   | \$92  |
| (i) General.....                                   | \$92  |
| (ii) Powers of Minister.....                       | \$95  |
| (b) Regional Administration of Public Health ..... | \$97  |
| (i) General.....                                   | \$97  |
| (ii) Enforcement.....                              | \$100 |
| (iii) Appeals .....                                | \$104 |
| (c) Communicable Diseases .....                    | \$105 |
| (i) Notification .....                             | \$105 |
| (ii) Isolation and Quarantine.....                 | \$107 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (iii) Treatment.....                                      | §108        |
| (d) Sanitation .....                                      | §113        |
| (i) Nuisance and Sanitation.....                          | §113        |
| (ii) Recreation Areas .....                               | §115        |
| (iii) Food.....   | §117        |
| (e) Related Health Matters .....                          | §118        |
| (i) Ambulance Services.....                               | §118        |
| (ii) X-ray Safety .....                                   | §119        |
| (iii) Health of Non-smokers.....                          | §120        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                                     | §121        |
| (a) Central Administration of Public Health.....          | §121        |
| (b) Local Administration of Public Health .....           | §126        |
| (i) General.....  | §126        |
| (ii) Enforcement.....                                     | §130        |
| (c) Communicable and Non-Communicable Diseases.....       | §136        |
| (i) Notification .....                                    | §136        |
| (ii) Control .....  | §139        |
| (d) Sanitation .....                                      | §140        |
| (i) Nuisance and General Sanitation.....                  | §140        |
| (ii) Buildings.....                                       | §142        |
| (iii) Recreation Areas .....                              | §146        |
| (iv) Food .....   | §147        |
| (e) Related Health Matters.....                           | §151        |
| (i) Ambulance Services.....                               | §151        |
| (ii) Tobacco Control.....                                 | §153        |
| <b>IV. Provincial Public Assistance Legislation .....</b> | <b>§155</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....  | §155        |
| (a) General .....   | §155        |
| (b) Income and Employment Supports Act .....              | §156        |
| (i) General.....  | §156        |
| (ii) Income Support and Benefits .....                    | §157        |
| A. General.....   | §157        |
| B. Eligibility .....                                      | §162        |
| (iii) Health Benefits.....                                | §164        |
| (iv) Training Benefits.....                               | §165        |

PUBLIC HEALTH AND WELFARE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (v) Employment and Training Benefits for Persons<br>with Disabilities ..... | §166 |
| (vi) Application for Benefits.....  | §167 |
| (vii) Review and Recovery of Benefits.....                                  | §168 |
| (c) Handicap Benefits.....  | §171 |
| (i) Eligibility .....   | §171 |
| (ii) Application for Handicap Benefits.....                                 | §172 |
| (iii) Review of Benefit Eligibility .....                                   | §173 |
| (d) Recovery of Benefits.....   | §174 |
| (e) Appeals.....  | §175 |
| (f) Appointment of Financial Administrator .....                            | §176 |
| 2. British Columbia .....   | §177 |
| (a) General .....   | §177 |
| (b) Income and Disability Assistance.....                                   | §179 |
| (i) General.....  | §179 |
| (ii) Time Limits for Income Assistance .....                                | §182 |
| (c) Hardship Assistance .....   | §183 |
| (d) Maintaining Eligibility .....   | §184 |
| (e) Appeals.....  | §190 |
| 3. Manitoba.....  | §191 |
| (a) General .....   | §191 |
| (b) Eligibility .....   | §192 |
| (c) Applications .....  | §196 |
| (d) Review and Recovery of Benefits.....                                    | §198 |
| (e) Appeals.....  | §200 |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....   | §203 |
| (a) General .....   | §203 |
| (b) Eligibility .....   | §204 |
| (c) Appeals.....  | §207 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agriculture; Animals; Charities; Courts; Criminal Law — Offences; Employment Insurance; Environmental Law; Hospitals; Medicine; Municipal Corporations; Nuisance; Planning and Zoning; Privacy and Freedom of Information; Professions and Occupations; Railways; War and Emergency; Waters and Watercourses.



# PUBLIC INQUIRIES

prepared by  
Alastair R. Lucas, B.A., LL.B., LL.M.  
*of the Alberta Bar; Faculty of Law, University of Calgary and*  
Anthony R. Lucas, B.A., LL.B.  
*Alberta Civil Liberties Research Centre, University of Calgary*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. History and Legal Character of Commissions of Inquiry</b> . . . . . | §1  |
| 1. History . . . . .  | §1  |
| 2. Legal Character . . . . .  | §4  |
| <b>II. Constitutional Position</b> . . . . .                              | §12 |
| 1. Division of Powers . . . . .   | §12 |
| 2. Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms . . . . .                      | §18 |
| <b>III. Establishment and Jurisdiction</b> . . . . .                      | §22 |
| 1. Public Inquiries Legislation . . . . .                                 | §22 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §22 |
| (b) Federal Inquiries Act . . . . .                                       | §23 |
| 2. Appointment of Commissioners . . . . .                                 | §24 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §24 |
| (b) Challenge to Appointment . . . . .                                    | §25 |
| (c) Special Law . . . . .   | §26 |
| 3. Terms of Reference . . . . .   | §27 |
| 4. General Powers to Control Proceedings . . . . .                        | §32 |
| <b>IV. Judicial Review</b> . . . . .                                      | §33 |
| <b>V. Procedures and Practice</b> . . . . .                               | §41 |
| 1. Standing . . . . .   | §41 |

PUBLIC INQUIRIES

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 2. Procedural Fairness . . . . .            | §45        |
| (a) Principles of Natural Justice . . . . . | §45        |
| (b) Bias . . . . .                          | §46        |
| (c) Notice . . . . .                        | §47        |
| (d) Fair Opportunity to be Heard . . . . .  | §51        |
| (e) Cross-examination . . . . .             | §54        |
| (f) Right to Counsel . . . . .              | §56        |
| (g) In Camera Proceedings . . . . .         | §58        |
| 3. Stay of Inquiry . . . . .                | §59        |
| 4. Role of Commission Counsel . . . . .     | §60        |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>VI. Evidence . . . . .</b>               | <b>§62</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                        | §62        |
| 2. Discovery . . . . .                      | §65        |
| 3. Subpoena . . . . .                       | §66        |
| 4. Privilege . . . . .                      | §68        |
| (a) Statutory Protection . . . . .          | §68        |
| (b) Self-incrimination . . . . .            | §70        |
| (c) Solicitor-Client Privilege . . . . .    | §71        |
| (d) Public Interest Privilege . . . . .     | §73        |
| (e) Cabinet Secrecy or Solidarity . . . . . | §79        |
| (f) Official Secrets Act . . . . .          | §81        |
| (g) Police Informer Privilege . . . . .     | §82        |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>VII. Contempt . . . . .</b>              | <b>§83</b> |
| 1. Contempt of Inquiry . . . . .            | §83        |
| 2. Contempt by Inquiry . . . . .            | §87        |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>VIII. Defamation . . . . .</b>           | <b>§88</b> |
| <br>  |            |
| <b>IX. Reporting . . . . .</b>              | <b>§89</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles: Administrative Law.*

# PUBLIC UTILITIES

prepared by  
Brian Swartz, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>I. Introductory .....</b>                            | <b>§ 1</b>  |
| 1. Definition.....                                      | § 1         |
| 2. Scope of Title.....                                  | § 10        |
| (a) General .....                                       | § 10        |
| (b) Federal Matters .....                               | § 12        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>II. Public Utilities Commissions and Boards.....</b> | <b>§ 15</b> |
| 1. Appointment, Organization and Duties.....            | § 15        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | § 15        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                              | § 21        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                      | § 27        |
| 2. Commissioners and Board Members .....                | § 31        |
| (a) Salary .....  | § 31        |
| (b) Conflict of Interest .....                          | § 32        |
| (c) Confidentiality .....                               | § 35        |
| (d) Testimony in Civil Actions.....                     | § 36        |
| (e) Personal Liability.....                             | § 37        |
| 3. Jurisdiction .....                                   | § 38        |
| (a) Alberta.....  | § 38        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                              | § 44        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                      | § 47        |
| 4. Powers .....   | § 50        |
| (a) Power to Investigate.....                           | § 50        |
| (b) Power to Hold Inquiry .....                         | § 54        |

PUBLIC UTILITIES

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (c) Power to Set Standards .....                          | §58        |
| (d) Power to Make Orders .....                            | §59        |
| (e) Power to Determine Rates .....                        | §61        |
| 5. Procedure .....  | §66        |
| (a) Evidence .....  | §66        |
| (b) Notice .....  | §70        |
| (c) Orders .....  | §72        |
| (i) General .....   | §72        |
| (ii) Reconsideration .....                                | §75        |
| (iii) Enforcement .....                                   | §76        |
| (d) Service .....   | §80        |
| (e) Costs .....   | §82        |
| 6. Appeals .....  | §84        |
| <b>III. Regulation of Public Utilities .....</b>          | <b>§89</b> |
| 1. Purpose of Legislation .....                           | §89        |
| 2. General Supervision by Commissions and Boards .....    | §90        |
| (a) Alberta .....   | §90        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                | §96        |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §102       |
| 3. Duties and Obligations of Public Utilities .....       | §106       |
| (a) Duties in Commencing and Maintaining Operations ..... | §106       |
| (i) Commencing Operations .....                           | §106       |
| (ii) Obligation to Supply .....                           | §111       |
| (iii) Discrimination in Service .....                     | §118       |
| (iv) Miscellaneous .....                                  | §121       |
| (b) Duties with Respect to Records .....                  | §126       |
| (c) Duties with Respect to Rates .....                    | §128       |
| (d) Encumbrance or Disposition of Property .....          | §133       |
| 4. Rates .....  | §134       |
| (a) Alberta .....   | §134       |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                | §141       |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §146       |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....                                    | §150       |
| (e) General .....   | §151       |
| 5. Offences and Penalties .....                           | §154       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 6. Liability in Tort.....                  | \$160        |
| <b>IV. Franchises .....</b>                | <b>\$168</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....                           | \$168        |
| 2. British Columbia .....                  | \$173        |
| 3. Manitoba.....                           | \$179        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                      | \$184        |
| 5. General .....                           | \$185        |
| <b>V. Electric Power.....</b>              | <b>\$192</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....                           | \$192        |
| 2. British Columbia .....                  | \$207        |
| 3. Manitoba.....                           | \$214        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                      | \$221        |
| 5. Federal Matters .....                   | \$230        |
| <b>VI. Telegraphs and Telephones .....</b> | <b>\$237</b> |
| <b>VII. Gas Utilities.....</b>             | <b>\$238</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....                           | \$238        |
| 2. British Columbia .....                  | \$273        |
| 3. Manitoba.....                           | \$280        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Aviation; Builders' Liens; Constitutional Law; Criminal Law — Offences; Drainage; Expropriation; Highways and Streets; Municipal and School Taxation; Municipal Corporations; Negligence; Nuisance; Oil and Gas; Radio and Television; Railways; Shipping; Telecommunications; Waters and Watercourses.

# RADIO AND TELEVISION

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

## Table of Regulations

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Legislative Authority</b> .....  | §1  |
| <b>II. Statutory Definitions</b> .....                                       | §6  |
| <b>III. Department of Industry</b> .....                                     | §14 |
| 1. Body .....  | §14 |
| (a) General .....  | §14 |
| (b) Powers of Minister .....   | §18 |
| (c) Powers of Governor in Council .....                                      | §19 |
| 2. Licences .....  | §20 |
| (a) Requirement of Licence .....   | §20 |
| (b) Services Authorized by Licences .....                                    | §21 |
| (c) Exceptions to Licence Requirements .....                                 | §22 |
| (d) Radio Operator Certificates .....  | §23 |
| (e) Granting of Licence .....  | §24 |
| (f) Offences .....   | §25 |
| 3. Other Prohibitions .....  | §28 |
| <b>IV. Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission</b> ..... | §35 |
| 1. Body .....  | §35 |
| (a) General .....  | §35 |

## RADIO AND TELEVISION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Mandate .....                                      | §39         |
| (c) Powers .....                                       | §46         |
| (d) Public Reports of Activities and Proceedings.....  | §51         |
| (e) Cabinet Review.....                                | §53         |
| (f) Judicial Review .....                              | §56         |
| (g) Directions.....                                    | §64         |
| 2. Procedure.....                                      | §68         |
| (a) General .....                                      | §68         |
| (b) Application for Licence .....                      | §70         |
| (c) Hearing.....                                       | §71         |
| 3. Subjects.....                                       | §80         |
| (a) Radio .....  | §80         |
| (b) Television.....                                    | §87         |
| (c) Cable .....  | §93         |
| (d) Content Regulations .....                          | §101        |
| <b>V. Canadian Broadcasting Corporation.....</b>       | <b>§105</b> |
| 1. General .....                                       | §105        |
| 2. Mandate .....                                       | §109        |
| 3. Powers .....  | §111        |
| <b>VI. Copyright .....</b>                             | <b>§113</b> |
| <b>VII. Defamation .....</b>                           | <b>§127</b> |
| <b>VIII. Actions By and Against Broadcasters .....</b> | <b>§143</b> |
| <b>IX. Educational Broadcasting.....</b>               | <b>§150</b> |
| <b>X. Aboriginal Broadcasting.....</b>                 | <b>§151</b> |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Constitutional Law; Copyright; Defamation; Internet Law; Labour Law; Public Utilities; Railways; Telecommunications; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada

# RAILWAYS

prepared by  
Elizabeth Portman, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                              | §1  |
| 1. Scope of Title . . . . .                                   | §1  |
| 2. Definitions . . . . .                                      | §2  |
| 3. Applicable Provincial Statutes . . . . .                   | §4  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Division of Powers</b> . . . . .                       | §5  |
| 1. Legislative Jurisdiction: Federal and Provincial . . . . . | §5  |
| 2. Federal Jurisdiction . . . . .                             | §8  |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §8  |
| (b) Railway Works . . . . .                                   | §9  |
| (c) Highway Crossings . . . . .                               | §10 |
| (d) Crossing Protection . . . . .                             | §11 |
| (e) Commuter Trains . . . . .                                 | §13 |
| (f) Exemption from Liability . . . . .                        | §14 |
| 3. Provincial Jurisdiction . . . . .                          | §15 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §15 |
| (b) Builders' Lien Legislation . . . . .                      | §20 |
| (c) Workers' Compensation Legislation . . . . .               | §21 |
| (d) Human Rights Legislation . . . . .                        | §22 |
| (e) Title to Railway Lands . . . . .                          | §23 |
| (f) Non-railway Enterprises . . . . .                         | §25 |
| (g) Delegation to Municipality . . . . .                      | §26 |



## RAILWAYS

---

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>III. Canadian Transportation Agency</b> . . . . .   | §27 |
| 1. General Jurisdiction . . . . .                      | §27 |
| 2. Practice and Procedure . . . . .                    | §31 |
| 3. Orders and Regulations . . . . .                    | §35 |
| 4. Review and Appeal of Orders . . . . .               | §36 |
| 5. Final Offer Arbitration . . . . .                   | §39 |
| 6. Traffic Facilities . . . . .                        | §43 |
| 7. Navigable Waters . . . . .                          | §47 |
| 8. Railway Safety . . . . .                            | §48 |
| 9. Transportation of Disabled Persons . . . . .        | §50 |
| 10. Annual Report . . . . .                            | §51 |
| 11. Powers of Minister of Transport . . . . .          | §52 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>IV. Operation of Railways</b> . . . . .             | §55 |
| 1. Certificate of Fitness . . . . .                    | §55 |
| 2. Powers of Railway Companies . . . . .               | §58 |
| 3. Equipment . . . . .                                 | §60 |
| 4. Liability as Common Carrier . . . . .               | §63 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                  | §63 |
| (b) Carriage of Goods . . . . .                        | §65 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                  | §65 |
| (ii) Improper Packing . . . . .                        | §68 |
| (iii) Delay in Delivery . . . . .                      | §69 |
| (iv) Connecting Carriers . . . . .                     | §70 |
| (v) Privity of Contract . . . . .                      | §71 |
| (vi) Agreements to Furnish Special Equipment . . . . . | §72 |
| (vii) Shipments in Open Cars . . . . .                 | §73 |
| (viii) Shipments in Express Cars . . . . .             | §74 |
| (ix) False Bills of Lading . . . . .                   | §75 |
| (x) Wrongful Delivery . . . . .                        | §76 |
| (xi) Stoppage in Transitu . . . . .                    | §77 |
| (xii) Liability as Warehouseman . . . . .              | §80 |
| (xiii) Measure of Damages . . . . .                    | §83 |
| (c) Carriage of Passengers . . . . .                   | §86 |
| (i) Duty of Care . . . . .                             | §86 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (ii) Who is a Passenger . . . . .                 | §87  |
| (iii) Boarding and Alighting . . . . .            | §89  |
| (iv) Entering and Leaving Moving Trains . . . . . | §90  |
| (v) Accommodation . . . . .                       | §93  |
| (vi) Timetables . . . . .                         | §94  |
| (vii) Tickets . . . . .                           | §95  |
| (viii) Detention of Trains . . . . .              | §96  |
| (ix) Sleeping Cars . . . . .                      | §97  |
| (x) Baggage . . . . .                             | §98  |
| (xi) Ejectment . . . . .                          | §101 |
| 5. Accidents at Highway Crossings . . . . .       | §103 |
| (a) General . . . . .                             | §103 |
| (b) Trains Reversing . . . . .                    | §104 |
| (c) Obstructions to View . . . . .                | §106 |
| (d) Illegal Use of Highway . . . . .              | §108 |
| (e) Excessive Speed . . . . .                     | §109 |
| (f) Duty of Traveller on Highway . . . . .        | §111 |
| (g) Handcars . . . . .                            | §114 |
| (h) Fright of Drivers and Horses . . . . .        | §115 |
| (i) Employee's Unauthorized Tort . . . . .        | §116 |
| 6. Accidents at Private Crossings . . . . .       | §117 |
| 7. Accidents at Stations . . . . .                | §120 |
| 8. Persons on Railway Property . . . . .          | §124 |
| (a) Invitees and Licensees . . . . .              | §124 |
| (b) Trespassers . . . . .                         | §127 |
| (c) Children . . . . .                            | §130 |
| (d) Employees . . . . .                           | §135 |
| 9. Animals . . . . .                              | §137 |
| 10. Limitation of Liability . . . . .             | §144 |
| (a) General . . . . .                             | §144 |
| (b) Notice . . . . .                              | §145 |
| (c) Rules of Construction . . . . .               | §146 |
| (d) Fundamental Breach . . . . .                  | §147 |
| (e) Consequential Loss . . . . .                  | §148 |
| (f) Limitation Period . . . . .                   | §150 |
| (g) Third Party Beneficiaries . . . . .           | §151 |

## RAILWAYS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>V. Location, Construction and Maintenance</b> . . . . .                             | §152 |
| 1. Location and Construction . . . . .   | §152 |
| 2. Apportionment of Construction Costs . . . . .                                       | §154 |
| 3. Crossings . . . . .   | §155 |
| (a) Road and Utility Crossings . . . . .   | §155 |
| (i) Definitions . . . . .  | §155 |
| (ii) Agreements as to Construction, Maintenance or<br>Apportionment of Costs . . . . . | §156 |
| (iii) Maintenance . . . . .  | §159 |
| (b) Private Crossings . . . . .  | §162 |
| 4. Railway Structures . . . . .  | §166 |
| 5. Drainage . . . . .  | §168 |
| 6. Transferring and Discontinuing Operation of Railway Lines . . . . .                 | §170 |
| <b>VI. Tariffs, Rates and Traffic Agreements</b> . . . . .                             | §175 |
| 1. Tariffs and Rates . . . . .   | §175 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §175 |
| (b) Filing and Publication . . . . .   | §177 |
| (c) Recovery of Freight Charges . . . . .  | §179 |
| (d) Joint Tariffs . . . . .  | §181 |
| (e) Confidential Contracts . . . . .   | §182 |
| (f) Competitive Line Rate . . . . .  | §183 |
| 2. Transportation of Western Grain . . . . .   | §184 |
| 3. Interswitching . . . . .  | §187 |
| 4. Running Rights and Joint Track Usage . . . . .                                      | §189 |
| <b>VII. Financial Transactions of Railway Companies</b> . . . . .                      | §192 |
| 1. Deposit of Security Documents . . . . .   | §192 |
| 2. Insolvency . . . . .  | §194 |
| 3. Application of Canada Transportation Act . . . . .                                  | §197 |
| 4. Assessment and Taxes . . . . .  | §199 |
| <b>VIII. Enforcement and Offences</b> . . . . .  | §202 |
| 1. Enforcement Officers . . . . .  | §202 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Railway Constables .....   | §203        |
| 3. Offences and Violations .....  | §204        |
| (a) Offences .....  | §204        |
| (b) Violations .....  | §206        |
| (c) Proceeding with Violation or Offence .....                            | §209        |
| 4. Limitation of Proceedings .....  | §210        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Miscellaneous .....</b>  | <b>§211</b> |
| 1. Accounting Systems for Railways .....                                  | §211        |
| 2. Agreements to Apply Transportation Law to Provincial<br>Railways ..... | §212        |
| 3. Extraordinary Disruptions of Transportation System .....               | §213        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agency; Animals; Business Corporations; Carriers; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Employment Law; Evidence; Expropriation; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Fires; Limitation of Actions; Negligence; Nuisance; Public Utilities; Radio and Television.

# REAL PROPERTY

prepared by  
Jay D. Winans, B.A., J.D.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Interests in Land</b> . . . . .                          | §1  |
| 1. Tenure . . . . .  | §1  |
| 2. Definition of Land . . . . .                                | §4  |
| 3. Possessory and Proprietary Interest in Air Space . . . . .  | §5  |
| 4. Subsurface Rights . . . . .                                 | §10 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §10 |
| (b) Mineral Rights . . . . .                                   | §11 |
| 5. Fixtures . . . . .  | §23 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §23 |
| (b) Effect of Agreement . . . . .                              | §26 |
| (c) Buildings as Fixtures . . . . .                            | §28 |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §28 |
| (ii) Mobile Homes . . . . .                                    | §29 |
| (d) Tenants' Rights and Responsibilities . . . . .             | §30 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Estate in Fee Simple</b> . . . . .                      | §31 |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                                      | §31 |
| 2. Creation of Fee Simple . . . . .                            | §32 |
| (a) Common Law Creation . . . . .                              | §32 |
| (b) Creation of Testamentary Transfers at Common Law . . . . . | §33 |
| (c) Modern Rule . . . . .                                      | §34 |
| 3. Rule in Shelley's Case . . . . .                            | §36 |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .                                       | §36 |

REAL PROPERTY

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (b) Modern Effect of Rule . . . . .                                | §37        |
| <b>III. Estate in Fee Tail . . . . .</b>                           | <b>§38</b> |
| 1. Fee Tail Estates . . . . .                                      | §38        |
| 2. Common Law . . . . .  | §39        |
| <b>IV. Life Estates . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>§40</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .  | §40        |
| 2. Creation of Life Estate . . . . .                               | §41        |
| (a) Generally . . . . .  | §41        |
| (b) Words of Conveyance Sufficient to Create Life Estate . . . . . | §42        |
| (c) Testamentary Creation of Life Estates . . . . .                | §43        |
| 3. Rights and Liabilities of Life Tenants . . . . .                | §50        |
| (a) Obligations and Rights . . . . .                               | §50        |
| (b) Doctrine of Waste . . . . .                                    | §52        |
| (c) Right as to Management and Control of Property . . . . .       | §57        |
| (d) Responsibility for Payment of Taxes . . . . .                  | §58        |
| (e) Responsibility for Repairs . . . . .                           | §59        |
| (f) Responsibility for Payment of Encumbrances . . . . .           | §61        |
| <b>V. Dower and Curtesy . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§62</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .  | §62        |
| 2. Homestead Laws . . . . .  | §63        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §63        |
| (b) Homestead Defined . . . . .                                    | §64        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .  | §64        |
| (ii) Manitoba . . . . .  | §66        |
| (iii) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                       | §69        |
| (iv) Untraditional Homestead Dwellings . . . . .                   | §71        |
| (c) Disposition Defined . . . . .                                  | §72        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .  | §72        |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                                    | §73        |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .   | §74        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §75        |
| (d) Consent . . . . .  | §76        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (e) When Consent Not Required . . . . .  | §84         |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §84         |
| (ii) Legislation Negating Consent Requirement . . . . .                            | §85         |
| A. Alberta . . . . .   | §85         |
| B. Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §86         |
| C. Manitoba . . . . .  | §87         |
| (iii) Court Order Disposing With Consent Requirement . . . . .                     | §88         |
| A. General . . . . .   | §88         |
| B. Alberta . . . . .   | §89         |
| C. British Columbia . . . . .  | §90         |
| D. Manitoba . . . . .  | §91         |
| E. Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §92         |
| (iv) Release of Dower Rights . . . . .   | §93         |
| A. General . . . . .   | §93         |
| B. Alberta . . . . .   | §94         |
| 1. Release . . . . .   | §94         |
| 2. Agreement Releasing Dower Rights . . . . .                                      | §96         |
| C. British Columbia . . . . .  | §97         |
| D. Manitoba . . . . .  | §98         |
| E. Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §99         |
| (f) Life Estate . . . . .  | §100        |
| (g) Protection of Bona Fide Purchaser for Value . . . . .                          | §103        |
| (h) Order for Partition or Sale . . . . .  | §104        |
| (i) Remedies . . . . .   | §105        |
| <b>VI. Interests in Land Arising by Operation of the Statute of Uses . . . . .</b> | <b>§107</b> |
| 1. Common Law . . . . .  | §107        |
| (a) General Rule . . . . .   | §107        |
| (b) Avoidance . . . . .  | §108        |
| (c) Exhaustion of Statute of Uses . . . . .  | §111        |
| 2. Modern Effect of Statute of Uses . . . . .                                      | §112        |
| <b>VII. Conditional Estates . . . . .</b>  | <b>§113</b> |
| 1. Conditions Precedent or Subsequent . . . . .                                    | §113        |

REAL PROPERTY

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) Introduction . . . . .  | §113        |
| (b) True Condition Precedent . . . . .                            | §120        |
| (c) Best Efforts . . . . .  | §123        |
| 2. Defeasible Interests and Determinable Limitations . . . . .    | §130        |
| 3. Repugnancy . . . . .   | §134        |
| 4. Conditions Void on Grounds of Public Policy . . . . .          | §140        |
| 5. Conditions Void Because of Uncertainty . . . . .               | §144        |
| 6. Conditions Void for Impossibility . . . . .                    | §147        |
| 7. Waiver of Conditions . . . . .                                 | §148        |
| 8. Effect of Void Conditions . . . . .                            | §149        |
| <b>VIII. Remainders . . . . .</b>                                 | <b>§150</b> |
| 1. Vested and Contingent Remainders . . . . .                     | §150        |
| 2. Legal Remainder Rules . . . . .                                | §155        |
| (a) Rules Applied to Inter Vivos Transfers . . . . .              | §155        |
| (b) Equitable and Legal Executory Interests . . . . .             | §158        |
| 3. The Rule Against Perpetuities . . . . .                        | §159        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .  | §159        |
| (b) Modern Application of the Rule Against Perpetuities . . . . . | §165        |
| (i) Alberta And British Columbia . . . . .                        | §165        |
| (ii) Manitoba . . . . .   | §171        |
| (iii) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                      | §172        |
| <b>IX. Powers of Appointment . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§175</b> |
| 1. Definition . . . . .   | §175        |
| 2. General and Special Powers Distinguished . . . . .             | §176        |
| 3. Operation, Exercise and Validity of Powers . . . . .           | §179        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .  | §179        |
| (b) Statute . . . . .   | §195        |
| <b>X. Joint Tenancy and Tenancy in Common . . . . .</b>           | <b>§197</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §197        |
| (a) Effect of Grants or Devises to Two or More Persons . . . . .  | §197        |
| (b) Duties of Co-Tenants . . . . .                                | §202        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Joint Tenancy . . . . .                                  | §204        |
| (a) Creation of Joint Tenancy at Common Law . . . . .       | §204        |
| (b) Modern Creation of Joint Tenancy . . . . .              | §209        |
| (c) Severance and Extinguishment of Joint Tenancy . . . . . | §212        |
| (i) Common Law . . . . .                                    | §212        |
| (ii) Modern Severance Rules . . . . .                       | §223        |
| (iii) Lease . . . . .                                       | §227        |
| (iv) Mortgage . . . . .                                     | §229        |
| (v) Writ of Execution . . . . .                             | §230        |
| 3. Tenancy in Common . . . . .                              | §233        |
| (a) Characteristics of Tenancy in Common . . . . .          | §233        |
| (b) Creation of Tenancy in Common . . . . .                 | §235        |
| (c) Rights of Tenants in Common Inter Se . . . . .          | §240        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                       | §240        |
| (ii) Rent . . . . .   | §243        |
| (d) Dissolution of Tenancy in Common . . . . .              | §245        |
| (e) Party Walls . . . . .                                   | §246        |
| 4. Partition . . . . .                                      | §247        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                       | §247        |
| (b) Court's Discretion to Refuse Partition . . . . .        | §249        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                       | §249        |
| (ii) Alberta . . . . .                                      | §250        |
| (iii) British Columbia . . . . .                            | §251        |
| (c) Standing to Seek Partition . . . . .                    | §252        |
| (d) Sale of Property . . . . .                              | §254        |
| (e) Conflict of Laws . . . . .                              | §257        |
| 5. Action for Accounting . . . . .                          | §258        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>XI. Conveyance . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§261</b> |
| 1. Transfer of Freehold Estates Generally . . . . .         | §261        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .                                    | §261        |
| (b) Statutory Scheme . . . . .                              | §265        |
| (i) General . . . . .                                       | §265        |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                             | §271        |
| 2. Parties to Conveyance . . . . .                          | §275        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                       | §275        |

REAL PROPERTY

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Statutory Scheme . . . . .  | §276        |
| 3. Recitals . . . . .   | §281        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .  | §281        |
| (b) Statutory Scheme . . . . .  | §284        |
| 4. Operative Clause of Conveyance . . . . .                                     | §285        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .  | §285        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §285        |
| (ii) Reservations and Exceptions . . . . .                                      | §287        |
| (b) Statutory Scheme . . . . .  | §288        |
| 5. Covenants . . . . .  | §289        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .  | §289        |
| (b) Statutory Scheme . . . . .  | §294        |
| 6. Execution of Conveyance . . . . .  | §296        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §296        |
| (b) Signing . . . . .   | §300        |
| (c) Sealing . . . . .   | §306        |
| (d) Delivery . . . . .  | §310        |
| (i) Common Law . . . . .  | §310        |
| (ii) Statutory Scheme . . . . .   | §314        |
| (e) Form and Alterations . . . . .  | §315        |
| (f) Consideration . . . . .   | §317        |
| (g) Right to Registration . . . . .   | §320        |
| 7. Effect of Conveyance to Grantee with No Knowledge of<br>Conveyance . . . . . | §321        |
| 8. Effect of Conveyance Upon After-acquired Property . . . . .                  | §322        |
| 9. Miscellaneous Provincial Restrictions on Transfer . . . . .                  | §325        |
| 10. Merger . . . . .  | §326        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §326        |
| (b) Merger of Contract in Transfer . . . . .                                    | §328        |
| <b>XII. Registration . . . . .</b>  | <b>§329</b> |
| 1. Definitions . . . . .  | §329        |
| (a) “Instrument” . . . . .  | §329        |
| (b) “Land” . . . . .  | §333        |
| (c) “Registrar” . . . . .   | §334        |
| (d) “Registration” . . . . .  | §335        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 2. Duties of Registrar . . . . .  | §336 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §336 |
| (b) Record Keeping . . . . .  | §337 |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .   | §337 |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .   | §340 |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .  | §342 |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §343 |
| (c) Production of Books and Instruments . . . . .   | §346 |
| (d) Making Searches and Preparing Abstracts of Title . . . . .                                    | §350 |
| (e) Numbering and Dating of Instruments . . . . .   | §353 |
| 3. Powers of Registrar . . . . .  | §354 |
| 4. Liability of Registrar . . . . .   | §372 |
| 5. Investigations of Titles . . . . .   | §375 |
| 6. Purpose and Effect of Registration . . . . .   | §376 |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §376 |
| (b) Right of Purchaser to Demand Conveyance Capable of<br>Registration . . . . .                  | §377 |
| (c) What Constitutes Registration . . . . .   | §380 |
| (d) Registration of Instruments . . . . .   | §384 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §384 |
| (ii) Alberta . . . . .  | §390 |
| (iii) British Columbia . . . . .  | §408 |
| (iv) Manitoba . . . . .   | §427 |
| (v) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §436 |
| (e) Registration of Instruments Not Containing Local<br>Descriptions . . . . .                    | §449 |
| (f) Registration of Judgments, Writs of Enforcement, and<br>Certificates of Lis Pendens . . . . . | §450 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §450 |
| (ii) Alberta . . . . .  | §451 |
| (iii) British Columbia . . . . .  | §453 |
| (iv) Manitoba . . . . .   | §457 |
| (v) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §461 |
| (g) Proof of Execution of Instrument for Registration<br>Purposes . . . . .                       | §464 |
| (h) Priorities . . . . .  | §468 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §468 |

REAL PROPERTY

---

(ii) Notice Depriving Registered Instrument of Priority . . .  
.....\$476

(iii) Notice of Trust . . . . . \$479

7. Notice of Instrument by its Registration . . . . . \$483

8. Failure to Register . . . . . \$488

(a) General . . . . . \$488

(b) Fraud and Purchasers for Value . . . . . \$491

(c) Forgery . . . . . \$496

9. Legal Rights not Arising from Instrument . . . . . \$498

10. Equitable Interests . . . . . \$500

11. Sales Made Under Writs of Execution and Writs of  
Enforcement . . . . . \$502

12. Liens . . . . . \$504

13. Leasehold Interests . . . . . \$505

(a) Alberta . . . . . \$505

(b) British Columbia . . . . . \$506

(c) Manitoba . . . . . \$508

(d) Saskatchewan . . . . . \$509

14. Registration of Unauthorized Instruments . . . . . \$511

15. Fees of Registrars . . . . . \$514

16. Assurance Fund . . . . . \$517

(a) Alberta . . . . . \$517

(b) British Columbia . . . . . \$524

(c) Manitoba . . . . . \$527

(d) Saskatchewan . . . . . \$535

**XIII. Restrictive Covenants . . . . . \$540**

1. Doctrine of Restrictive Covenants . . . . . \$540

2. Creation of Restrictive Covenants . . . . . \$545

(a) Common Law . . . . . \$545

(b) Building Schemes . . . . . \$551

(c) Statute . . . . . \$553

3. Registration . . . . . \$554

(a) Restrictive Covenants Other Than Those Created by  
“Building Scheme” . . . . . \$554

(b) Building Scheme . . . . . \$561

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 4. Discriminatory Covenants . . . . .                        | §565        |
| 5. Discharge or Modification . . . . .                       | §566        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §566        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .  | §568        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                               | §572        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .                                       | §579        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                   | §581        |
| 6. Enforcement or Construction . . . . .                     | §586        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §586        |
| (b) Equitable Defences . . . . .                             | §589        |
| (c) Subsequent Purchasers . . . . .                          | §591        |
| (d) Running With Land . . . . .                              | §592        |
| (e) Construction . . . . .                                   | §593        |
| 7. Procedure . . . . .                                       | §595        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §595        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                               | §596        |
| 8. Application of Rule Against Perpetuities . . . . .        | §599        |
| 9. Words and Phrases Used in Building Restrictions . . . . . | §600        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>XIV. Registration of Subdivision Plans . . . . .</b>      | <b>§605</b> |
| 1. Registration Requirements . . . . .                       | §605        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §605        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .  | §608        |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                               | §611        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .                                       | §620        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                   | §624        |
| 2. Clerical Responsibilities . . . . .                       | §630        |
| 3. Title to Subdivided Land . . . . .                        | §631        |
| 4. Failure to Register . . . . .                             | §638        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>XV. Recovery of Land . . . . .</b>                        | <b>§643</b> |
| 1. Nature of Action . . . . .                                | §643        |
| 2. Who May Recover Possession . . . . .                      | §647        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §647        |
| (i) Common Law . . . . .                                     | §647        |
| (ii) Statute . . . . .                                       | §648        |

REAL PROPERTY

---

- (b) Effect of Prior Possession .....§656
- (c) Estoppel .....§658
- (d) Grantee from Crown .....§659

**Index**

*Related titles:* Absentees; Agency; Annuities; Bailment; Boundaries And Surveys; Builders' Liens; Condominiums; Conflict Of Laws; Contracts; Damages; Devolution Of Estates; Easements; Environmental Law; Equity; Estoppel; Expropriation; Highways And Streets; Injunctions; Insurance; Landlord And Tenant; Limitation Of Actions; Mines And Minerals; Mortgages; Municipal And School Taxation; Nuisance; Oil And Gas; Perpetuities And Accumulations; Planning And Zoning; References And Inquiries; Sale Of Land; Timber; Wills

# RECEIVERS

prepared by  
L. Brian Swartz, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                            | §1  |
| 1. Nature of Receivership .....                    | §1  |
| 2. Method of Appointment .....                     | §6  |
| 3. Receiver-Manager .....                          | §9  |
| <b>II. Equitable Execution</b> .....               | §10 |
| 1. Grant .....                                     | §10 |
| 2. Refusal .....                                   | §16 |
| <b>III. Status of Receiver</b> .....               | §21 |
| 1. Officer of the Court .....                      | §21 |
| 2. Receiver Appointed Out of Court .....           | §27 |
| 3. Interference with Receiver .....                | §28 |
| 4. Attachment of Receiver .....                    | §32 |
| <b>IV. Application for Court Appointment</b> ..... | §34 |
| 1. General .....                                   | §34 |
| 2. Ex Parte Application .....                      | §45 |
| 3. Pending Appeal .....                            | §48 |
| 4. Federal Court of Canada .....                   | §50 |
| 5. By Foreign Court .....                          | §53 |
| <b>V. Person to be Appointed by Court</b> .....    | §54 |

RECEIVERS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. General . . . . .   | §54         |
| 2. Party to the Action . . . . .                               | §57         |
| 3. Trustees . . . . .  | §59         |
| 4. Foreigner, Resident out of the Jurisdiction . . . . .       | §60         |
| <b>VI. When Appointment Made by Court . . . . .</b>            | <b>§61</b>  |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §61         |
| 2. Replacing Trustees and Executors . . . . .                  | §64         |
| 3. Partnership . . . . .                                       | §72         |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §72         |
| (b) To Protect Creditors of a Partner . . . . .                | §81         |
| 4. To Protect Mortgagees . . . . .                             | §82         |
| 5. To Protect Infants . . . . .                                | §90         |
| 6. Interim Receiver in Bankruptcy . . . . .                    | §91         |
| 7. Railways . . . . .  | §93         |
| 8. Security Issuers . . . . .                                  | §96         |
| <b>VII. When Court Appointment Refused . . . . .</b>           | <b>§97</b>  |
| <b>VIII. Order Appointing a Receiver . . . . .</b>             | <b>§105</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §105        |
| 2. Ex Parte Order . . . . .                                    | §108        |
| 3. Receiver's Security . . . . .                               | §109        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §109        |
| (b) Death of Surety . . . . .                                  | §114        |
| (c) Foreign Surety . . . . .                                   | §115        |
| <b>IX. Effects of Appointment . . . . .</b>                    | <b>§117</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §117        |
| 2. As Against Creditors . . . . .                              | §122        |
| 3. Title to Property . . . . .                                 | §127        |
| 4. Possession of Receiver . . . . .                            | §131        |
| <b>X. Powers, Duties and Liabilities of Receiver . . . . .</b> | <b>§139</b> |
| 1. Rights . . . . .  | §139        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §139        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Existing Contracts . . . . .                           | §154        |
| (c) Employment Contracts . . . . .                         | §158        |
| (d) Sale by Receiver . . . . .                             | §160        |
| (e) Distress for Rent . . . . .                            | §174        |
| (f) Solicitor-and-Client Privilege . . . . .               | §176        |
| 2. Standard of Care . . . . .                              | §178        |
| 3. Liability in Tort . . . . .                             | §181        |
| 4. Liability in Contract . . . . .                         | §185        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §185        |
| (b) Interim Receiver . . . . .                             | §188        |
| 5. Liability for Taxes . . . . .                           | §189        |
| 6. Liability Under Environmental Legislation . . . . .     | §190        |
| 7. Misconduct . . . . .                                    | §191        |
| 8. Bankruptcy and Insolvency . . . . .                     | §200        |
| 9. Removal of Receiver . . . . .                           | §207        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>XI. Actions . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§210</b> |
| 1. Receiver as Party . . . . .                             | §210        |
| 2. Actions by Receiver . . . . .                           | §213        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §213        |
| (b) For Debts Due to Estate . . . . .                      | §216        |
| (c) For Debts Due to Receiver . . . . .                    | §220        |
| (d) For Conversion . . . . .                               | §222        |
| 3. Actions Against Receivers . . . . .                     | §223        |
| 4. Costs . . . . .   | §241        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §241        |
| (b) Receiver Out of Jurisdiction . . . . .                 | §246        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>XII. Books and Documents . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§247</b> |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>XIII. Discharge of Receiver . . . . .</b>               | <b>§248</b> |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>XIV. Receiver's Expenses and Remuneration . . . . .</b> | <b>§254</b> |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>XV. Receiver's Accounts . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§272</b> |

## RECEIVERS

---

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Business Corporations; Execution; Executors and Administrators; Injunctions; Judgments and Orders; Trusts.

# REFERENCES AND INQUIRIES

prepared by  
Donna Senniw, LL.B.  
*of the Alberta and British Columbia Bars and*  
Karen J. Kulak, LL.B.  
*of the British Columbia Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                         | §1  |
| 1. Scope of Title.....                               | §1  |
| 2. Introduction of English Procedure to Canada ..... | §2  |
| <b>II. References Generally</b> .....                | §4  |
| 1. Alberta .....                                     | §4  |
| 2. British Columbia .....                            | §7  |
| 3. Manitoba.....                                     | §13 |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                                | §16 |
| 5. Federal Court of Canada .....                     | §21 |
| <b>III. When Reference Available</b> .....           | §26 |
| 1. Purpose of Reference .....                        | §26 |
| 2. Recommended Practice.....                         | §29 |
| 3. Before Judgment .....                             | §31 |
| 4. Material Fact to be Determined .....              | §33 |
| 5. Mixed Law and Fact.....                           | §35 |
| 6. Insufficient Evidence .....                       | §36 |
| <b>IV. References and Referees</b> .....             | §38 |
| 1. Who May Order Reference .....                     | §38 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                     | §38 |

## REFERENCES AND INQUIRIES

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (b) British Columbia .....                    | §39        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                            | §43        |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....                        | §45        |
| (e) Federal Court of Canada .....             | §47        |
| 2. Who may be Referee .....                   | §51        |
| (a) Alberta .....                             | §51        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                    | §52        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                            | §53        |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....                        | §54        |
| (e) Federal Court of Canada .....             | §55        |
| <b>V. Scope of Inquiry .....</b>              | <b>§56</b> |
| 1. General .....                              | §56        |
| (a) Matters Beyond Scope of Reference .....   | §56        |
| (i) Questions of Mixed Law and Fact .....     | §56        |
| (ii) Conflicting Evidence .....               | §59        |
| (iii) Points of Law .....                     | §60        |
| (iv) Issues not Raised by Pleadings .....     | §61        |
| (v) Terms of Reference .....                  | §62        |
| (b) Referring Entire Suit .....               | §63        |
| (c) Adjudicating Rights between Parties ..... | §65        |
| 2. References for Accounting .....            | §66        |
| (a) Scope Generally .....                     | §66        |
| (b) Mortgages .....                           | §68        |
| (c) Partnership .....                         | §69        |
| 3. References as to Damages .....             | §70        |
| 4. References as to Title .....               | §75        |
| <b>VI. Powers of Referee .....</b>            | <b>§76</b> |
| 1. General .....                              | §76        |
| (a) Alberta .....                             | §76        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                    | §78        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                            | §86        |
| (d) Federal Court of Canada .....             | §103       |
| 2. To Remove Solicitor's Lien .....           | §107       |
| 3. Add Parties .....                          | §108       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 4. Rescind Own Order .....                          | §109        |
| 5. Inspection .....                                 | §110        |
| 6. Take Evidence.....                               | §117        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Procedure of Inquiry .....</b>              | <b>§123</b> |
| 1. General .....                                    | §123        |
| 2. Alberta .....                                    | §129        |
| 3. British Columbia .....                           | §137        |
| 4. Manitoba.....                                    | §145        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                               | §151        |
| 6. Federal Court Of Canada.....                     | §156        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VIII. Procedure Following Inquiry .....</b>      | <b>§157</b> |
| 1. The Report.....                                  | §157        |
| (a) Alberta.....                                    | §157        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                          | §160        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                  | §164        |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                               | §174        |
| (e) Federal Court of Canada .....                   | §180        |
| 2. Reports And Certificates.....                    | §182        |
| (a) Difference between Report and Certificate ..... | §182        |
| (b) Reports .....                                   | §184        |
| 3. Confirming Report .....                          | §188        |
| (a) When Required .....                             | §188        |
| (b) Procedure .....                                 | §193        |
| 4. Varying Report.....                              | §201        |
| (a) General .....                                   | §201        |
| (b) Procedure .....                                 | §205        |
| 5. Referring Back Report.....                       | §208        |
| 6. Reopening Report .....                           | §213        |
| 7. Setting Aside Report.....                        | §216        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Appeals.....</b>                             | <b>§219</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....                                    | §219        |
| 2. British Columbia .....                           | §221        |
| 3. Manitoba.....                                    | §229        |

REFERENCES AND INQUIRIES

---

|                                  |              |
|----------------------------------|--------------|
| 4. Saskatchewan .....            | \$233        |
| 5. Federal Court of Canada ..... | \$235        |
| 6. Right of Appeal.....          | \$240        |
| 7. Extending Time.....           | \$246        |
| <b>X. Costs.....</b>             | <b>\$248</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Arbitration; Auctions; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Barristers and Solicitors; Constitutional Law; Costs; Courts; Damages; Drainage; Evidence; Family Law — General; Judgments and Orders; Mortgages; Practice; Public Inquiries; Real Property; Trials

# RELIGIOUS INSTITUTIONS

prepared by  
M.H. Ogilvie, B.A., LL.B., M.A., D. Phil., F.R.S.C.  
*of the Nova Scotia and Ontario Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Constitutional Fundamentals</b> . . . . .                               | §1  |
| 1. Scope of Title . . . . .   | §1  |
| 2. Parliamentary Sovereignty . . . . .  | §2  |
| 3. Religion in the Written Constitution . . . . .                             | §4  |
| 4. Characterization and Interpretation of Constitutional Provisions . . . . . | §10 |
| 5. Specific Constitutional Issues Relating to Religion . . . . .              | §14 |
| (a) Temperance . . . . .  | §14 |
| (b) Sunday Observance . . . . .   | §16 |
| (c) Education . . . . .   | §19 |
| (i) Denominational School Rights . . . . .                                    | §19 |
| (ii) Religion in Public Schools . . . . .                                     | §31 |
| (d) Hate Messages Relating to Religion . . . . .                              | §32 |
| 6. Freedom of Religion Generally . . . . .                                    | §33 |
| <b>II. Criminal Law</b> . . . . .   | §34 |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .   | §34 |
| 2. Sunday Observance . . . . .  | §35 |
| 3. Legal Process on Sunday . . . . .  | §39 |
| 4. Unlawful Assembly . . . . .  | §42 |
| 5. Obstructing Worship . . . . .  | §43 |
| 6. Blasphemy . . . . .  | §50 |
| 7. Offences Against Marriage . . . . .  | §53 |
| (a) Bigamy . . . . .  | §53 |
| (b) Procuring a Feigned Marriage . . . . .                                    | §67 |

RELIGIOUS INSTITUTIONS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Polygamy . . . . .                              | §68         |
| 8. Unlawful Solemnization of Marriage . . . . .     | §70         |
| 9. Adultery . . . . .                               | §71         |
| 10. Incest . . . . .                                | §72         |
| 11. Bestiality . . . . .                            | §73         |
| 12. Suicide . . . . .                               | §74         |
| 13. Abortion . . . . .                              | §75         |
| 14. Duty to Preserve Life . . . . .                 | §77         |
| 15. “Right to Die” . . . . .                        | §78         |
| 16. Injuring Animals . . . . .                      | §79         |
| 17. Witchcraft . . . . .                            | §81         |
| 18. Fortune Telling . . . . .                       | §82         |
| 19. Gaming, Betting and Lotteries . . . . .         | §84         |
| 20. Hate Propaganda . . . . .                       | §85         |
| 21. Criminal Procedure . . . . .                    | §88         |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>III. Public Order . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§92</b>  |
| 1. Solicitation . . . . .                           | §92         |
| 2. Private Meetings . . . . .                       | §94         |
| 3. Public Assemblies and Processions . . . . .      | §95         |
| 4. Wearing a Kirpan . . . . .                       | §97         |
| 5. Religious Rights of Prisoners . . . . .          | §98         |
| 6. Military Service . . . . .                       | §99         |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IV. Evidence . . . . .</b>                       | <b>§100</b> |
| 1. Oaths . . . . .                                  | §100        |
| 2. Privileged Communications . . . . .              | §110        |
| 3. Search Warrants . . . . .                        | §112        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>V. Religious Organizations . . . . .</b>         | <b>§113</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                           | §113        |
| 2. Meaning of “Church” . . . . .                    | §114        |
| 3. Legal Status of Religious Institutions . . . . . | §116        |
| 4. Jurisdiction of Civil Courts . . . . .           | §122        |
| 5. Organization and Church Government . . . . .     | §126        |
| (a) The Anglican Church of Canada . . . . .         | §126        |



## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (i) Rectors and Rectories . . . . .  | §126 |
| (ii) Churchwardens . . . . .   | §133 |
| (b) Other Religious Institutions . . . . .   | §140 |
| (i) Bishops . . . . .  | §140 |
| (ii) Authority and Remuneration of Clergy . . . . .  | §143 |
| (iii) Trustees and Officers . . . . .  | §145 |
| (iv) Congregational Meetings . . . . .   | §161 |
| (v) Congregational Records . . . . .   | §165 |
| 6. Owning and Property . . . . .   | §167 |
| (a) Introduction . . . . .   | §167 |
| (b) Religious Institutions Legislation . . . . .   | §168 |
| (i) Ontario . . . . .  | §168 |
| (ii) Western Provinces . . . . .   | §179 |
| (c) Judicial Interpretation of Religious Institutions Legisla-<br>tion Generally . . . . . | §201 |
| (d) Owning Property . . . . .  | §207 |
| (e) Selling Property . . . . .   | §212 |
| (f) Leasing Property . . . . .   | §218 |
| (g) Borrowing Powers . . . . .   | §222 |
| 7. Changes in Constitutions . . . . .  | §225 |
| 8. Taxation . . . . .  | §227 |
| (a) Municipal Taxes . . . . .  | §227 |
| (b) Income Tax . . . . .   | §236 |
| 9. Zoning . . . . .  | §244 |
| 10. Pension Benefits . . . . .   | §245 |
| 11. Wills and Trusts . . . . .   | §246 |
| (a) Inter Vivos . . . . .  | §246 |
| (b) Bequests . . . . .   | §247 |
| (i) General Religious Purposes . . . . .   | §247 |
| (ii) Specific Religious Purposes . . . . .   | §254 |
| (iii) Generally Beneficial Purposes . . . . .  | §257 |
| (iv) Failure for Uncertainty . . . . .   | §259 |
| (v) Cy-près Applications . . . . .   | §261 |
| (vi) Discriminatory Bequests . . . . .   | §263 |
| 12. Church Property Disputes . . . . .   | §264 |
| 13. Church Union . . . . .   | §275 |

## RELIGIOUS INSTITUTIONS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) Voting Procedures . . . . .                                     | §275        |
| (b) Property Rights . . . . .                                       | §281        |
| (c) Other . . . . .   | §283        |
| <b>VI. Internal Discipline of Religious Organizations . . . . .</b> | <b>§286</b> |
| 1. Civil Jurisdiction to Intervene . . . . .                        | §286        |
| 2. Discipline of Clergy . . . . .                                   | §289        |
| 3. Discipline of Laity . . . . .                                    | §292        |
| 4. Religious Orders . . . . .                                       | §299        |
| <b>VII. Education . . . . .</b>                                     | <b>§302</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .   | §302        |
| 2. Roman Catholic and Other Denominational Schools . . . . .        | §303        |
| (a) Constitutional Status and Protection . . . . .                  | §303        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .   | §303        |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                                     | §305        |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .  | §306        |
| (iv) New Brunswick . . . . .  | §307        |
| (v) Newfoundland . . . . .  | §308        |
| (vi) Ontario . . . . .  | §309        |
| (vii) Quebec . . . . .  | §315        |
| (viii) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                       | §316        |
| (b) Formation of Roman Catholic Separate Schools . . . . .          | §317        |
| (c) Formation of Protestant Separate Schools . . . . .              | §318        |
| (d) Taxation . . . . .  | §319        |
| (e) Zoning . . . . .  | §321        |
| (f) Right to Attend Separate School . . . . .                       | §322        |
| (g) Controls Over Separate School Teachers . . . . .                | §324        |
| 3. Public Schools . . . . .   | §328        |
| (a) Compulsory Attendance . . . . .                                 | §328        |
| (b) School Dress for Students . . . . .                             | §332        |
| (c) Religious Instruction . . . . .                                 | §333        |
| (d) Religious Exercises . . . . .                                   | §334        |
| (e) Controls Over Teachers . . . . .                                | §335        |
| 4. Private Schools . . . . .  | §337        |
| (a) Constitutional Matters . . . . .                                | §337        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(b) School Dress .....§341  
(c) Controls Over Teachers .....§342  
5. Sunday Schools .....§343

**VIII. Family Law** .....§344  
1. Introduction .....§344  
2. Divorce .....§345  
3. Custody and Access .....§348

**IX. Health** .....§358  
1. Introduction .....§358  
2. Refusing Medical Treatment .....§359

**X. Sunday Observance** .....§362  
1. Introduction .....§362  
2. Provincial Common Pause Day Retail Legislation .....§363  
3. Employment .....§372  
    (a) Accommodation of Religious Holy Days .....§372  
    (b) Other Accommodations on Religious Grounds .....§374

**Index**

*Related titles:* Associations And Not-For-Profit Corporations; Burial And Cremation; Business Corporations; Charities; Children; Courts; Criminal Law; Education; Execution; Family Law — Divorce; Family Law — General; Gifts; Hospitals; Human Rights; Income Tax; Employment Law; Municipal and School Taxation; Parties; Professions and Occupations

# RESTITUTION

prepared by  
Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                                      | §1  |
| <b>II. Benefits Conferred Under Mistake</b> .....                 | §8  |
| 1. Money Paid Under Mistake of Fact.....                          | §8  |
| (a) General .....   | §8  |
| (b) Kinds of Mistake.....   | §9  |
| (i) General.....  | §9  |
| (ii) Supposed Legal Liability .....                               | §10 |
| (iii) Supposed Moral Obligation.....                              | §13 |
| (iv) Mistaken Gifts .....   | §14 |
| (c) Causation.....  | §15 |
| (d) Mistake by Agent.....   | §16 |
| (e) Negligence .....  | §17 |
| (f) Proprietary Claims .....                                      | §18 |
| (g) Defences.....   | §19 |
| (i) Voluntary Payment.....  | §19 |
| (ii) Discharge of Liability of Payer or Third Party .....         | §20 |
| (iii) Estoppel .....  | §24 |
| (iv) Change of Position.....                                      | §30 |
| (v) Payment Over by Agent to Principal .....                      | §31 |
| (vi) Payment of Cheque Bearing Forged Drawer's<br>Signature ..... | §32 |
| 2. Money Paid Under Mistake of Law .....                          | §33 |
| (a) General .....   | §33 |

RESTITUTION

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (b) Clearly Not Made in Submission to Honest Claim.....                        | §41        |
| (c) Special Cases .....  | §44        |
| (i) General.....   | §44        |
| (ii) Characterization of Mistake of Law as Mistake<br>of Fact.....             | §45        |
| (iii) Cases Involving Officers of the Court and<br>Trustees .....              | §48        |
| (d) Defences.....  | §50        |
| 3. Services Rendered Under Mistake .....                                       | §53        |
| (a) General .....  | §53        |
| (b) Improvements to Land .....   | §55        |
| (i) Equitable Relief.....  | §55        |
| (ii) Statutory Relief .....  | §62        |
| (c) Improvements to Chattels.....  | §70        |
| (d) Discharge of Another’s Duty.....   | §71        |
| 4. Chattels Transferred Under Mistake .....                                    | §72        |
| 5. Land Transferred Under Mistake .....  | §73        |
| 6. Contracts Entered Into Under Mistake .....                                  | §74        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>III. Benefits Conferred Under Coercion .....</b>                            | <b>§75</b> |
| 1. Duress .....  | §75        |
| (a) Duress of the Person .....   | §75        |
| (b) Duress by Improper Application of Legal Process.....                       | §80        |
| (c) Duress of Goods .....  | §88        |
| (d) Duress Through the Abuse of Some Public or Gov-<br>ernmental Position..... | §94        |
| (i) General.....   | §94        |
| (ii) Duress by Carriers and Public Utilities .....                             | §95        |
| (iii) Duress by Public Officials.....  | §98        |
| (e) Economic Duress.....   | §105       |
| (i) Duress by Threatened Breach of Contract.....                               | §105       |
| (ii) General Economic Duress .....   | §113       |
| (f) Causation .....  | §121       |
| (g) Proprietary Claims.....  | §125       |
| (h) Defences.....  | §126       |
| 2. Undue Influence.....  | §127       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General .....   | §127        |
| (b) Presumption of Undue Influence .....                            | §132        |
| (i) General .....   | §132        |
| (ii) Relationships Giving Rise to Presumption .....                 | §135        |
| (iii) Rebuttal of Presumption .....                                 | §148        |
| (c) Proof Where Presumption Not Applicable .....                    | §152        |
| (d) Undue Influence and Third Parties .....                         | §153        |
| (e) Bars to Rescission .....  | §158        |
| (i) Third Party Rights .....  | §158        |
| (ii) Affirmation .....  | §159        |
| (iii) Delay .....   | §160        |
| (iv) Impossibility .....  | §161        |
| 3. Unconscionability .....  | §162        |
| (a) The Equitable Doctrine .....                                    | §162        |
| (i) General .....   | §162        |
| (ii) Remedies .....   | §173        |
| (b) Statutory Provisions .....                                      | §177        |
| (i) Unconscionable Transactions .....                               | §177        |
| (ii) Unfair Trade Practices .....                                   | §180        |
| 4. Compulsory Discharge of Another's Liability .....                | §181        |
| (a) General .....   | §181        |
| (b) Compellability of Plaintiff .....                               | §184        |
| (c) Officious Exposure to Liability by Plaintiff .....              | §188        |
| (d) Discharge of Primary Liability of Defendant .....               | §192        |
| (e) Extensions of the Principle .....                               | §195        |
| 5. Contribution .....   | §196        |
| (a) Equitable Right to Contribution .....                           | §196        |
| (b) Statutory Right to Contribution .....                           | §200        |
| <b>IV. Benefits Conferred Without Request in an Emergency .....</b> | <b>§208</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §208        |
| 2. Agency of Necessity .....  | §210        |
| 3. Necessitous Intervention by a Stranger .....                     | §217        |
| (a) Direct Conferral of Benefit on Defendant .....                  | §217        |
| (i) Preservation of Defendant's Life or Health .....                | §217        |

RESTITUTION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (ii) Supply of Necessaries to Those Under Legal Incapacity .....  | §220        |
| (iii) Preservation of Defendant's Property .....                  | §224        |
| (b) Indirect Conferral of Benefit on Defendant .....              | §229        |
| (i) Discharge of Another's Private Duty .....                     | §229        |
| (ii) Discharge of Another's Public Duty .....                     | §230        |
| <b>V. Benefits Conferred Under Ineffective Transactions .....</b> | <b>§233</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §233        |
| 2. Contracts Void for Want of Authority.....                      | §239        |
| (a) Money Paid.....   | §239        |
| (b) Services Rendered .....                                       | §240        |
| 3. Contracts Void for Mistake or Uncertainty .....                | §241        |
| (a) General .....   | §241        |
| (b) Money Paid.....   | §242        |
| (c) Goods Supplied or Services Rendered .....                     | §243        |
| 4. Contracts Unenforceable for Lack of Formality .....            | §246        |
| (a) General .....   | §246        |
| (b) Money Paid.....   | §247        |
| (c) Services Rendered .....                                       | §249        |
| (d) Property Transferred.....                                     | §255        |
| (e) Proprietary Claims .....                                      | §256        |
| 5. Illegal Contracts .....  | §257        |
| (a) General Rule .....  | §257        |
| (i) General.....  | §257        |
| (ii) Money Paid .....   | §258        |
| (iii) Property Transferred .....                                  | §259        |
| (iv) Services Rendered .....                                      | §260        |
| (b) Enforcement of Contract.....                                  | §261        |
| (c) Exceptions to General Rule .....                              | §264        |
| (i) General.....  | §264        |
| (ii) Independent Right of Action Untainted by<br>Illegality ..... | §265        |
| (iii) Claimant Not Equally at Fault .....                         | §272        |
| A. General.....   | §272        |
| B. Mistake.....   | §273        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| C. Fraud .....  | §275 |
| D. Undue Pressure.....  | §277 |
| E. Law Invalidating Agreement Designed to<br>Protect Persons in Plaintiff's Position..... | §278 |
| (iv) Opportunity for Repentance.....  | §284 |
| (v) Intervention of Equity .....  | §289 |
| (d) Broader Recognition of Restitutionary Relief.....                                     | §292 |
| (e) Cases Involving Principals and Agents .....   | §294 |
| 6. Contracts Affected by Lack of Capacity .....   | §297 |
| (a) Contracts with the Mentally Incompetent and<br>Drunkards.....                         | §297 |
| (b) Contracts with Minors.....  | §304 |
| (i) Validity of Contract .....  | §304 |
| (ii) Minors' Liability for Necessaries.....   | §308 |
| (iii) Restitutionary Relief in Favour of Minor.....                                       | §310 |
| A. Voidable Contracts.....  | §310 |
| B. Void Contracts.....  | §314 |
| (iv) Restitutionary Relief in Favour of Adult Party .....                                 | §315 |
| A. Voidable Contracts.....  | §315 |
| B. Void Contracts.....  | §325 |
| (v) Reforms in British Columbia.....  | §327 |
| (c) Ultra Vires Contracts.....  | §329 |
| (i) General.....  | §329 |
| (ii) Claims Against Body Acting Ultra Vires .....   | §330 |
| (iii) Claims by Body Acting Ultra Vires .....   | §335 |
| 7. Contracts Terminated for Breach .....  | §338 |
| (a) Recovery of Benefits Acquired from Breach of<br>Contract.....                         | §338 |
| (b) Restitutionary Relief in Favour of Party Not in Breach<br>.....                       | §340 |
| (i) Recovery of Money Paid .....  | §340 |
| (ii) Restitution in Respect of Other Benefits<br>Conferred .....                          | §343 |
| (c) Restitutionary Relief in Favour of Party in Breach.....                               | §347 |
| (i) Recovery of Money Paid.....   | §347 |
| (ii) Restitution in Respect of Other Benefits<br>Conferred .....                          | §353 |



## RESTITUTION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 8. Contracts Discharged Through Frustration .....                           | §361        |
| (a) Common Law Position .....   | §361        |
| (i) Recovery of Money Paid .....  | §361        |
| (ii) Restitution in Respect of Other Benefits<br>Conferred .....            | §362        |
| (iii) Compensation for Expenditures Incurred .....                          | §363        |
| (b) Statutory Relief .....  | §364        |
| (i) General .....   | §364        |
| (ii) Alberta, Manitoba and Ontario .....                                    | §365        |
| (iii) British Columbia .....  | §372        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan .....   | §373        |
| 9. Anticipated Contracts .....  | §374        |
| (a) General .....   | §374        |
| (b) Recovery of Money Paid .....  | §376        |
| (c) Restitution in Respect of Services Rendered and<br>Goods Supplied ..... | §377        |
| 10. Failed Agency Transactions .....  | §385        |
| (a) General .....   | §385        |
| (b) Failure Through Conduct of Principal .....                              | §387        |
| (c) Failure Through Conduct of Third Party .....                            | §389        |
| 11. Services Rendered in a Domestic Context .....                           | §393        |
| (a) General .....   | §393        |
| (b) Applicable Principles .....   | §394        |
| <b>VI. Benefits Acquired Through Wrongful Acts .....</b>                    | <b>§400</b> |
| 1. Waiver of Tort .....   | §400        |
| (a) General .....   | §400        |
| (b) Measure of Defendant's Benefit .....                                    | §404        |
| (c) Advantages of Waiving the Tort .....                                    | §406        |
| (d) Proprietary Claims .....  | §407        |
| 2. Breach of Fiduciary Duty .....   | §408        |
| (a) General .....   | §408        |
| (b) Who Is a Fiduciary? .....   | §411        |
| (c) Some Transactions in Breach of Fiduciary Duty .....                     | §420        |
| (i) Purchase of Trust Property by Fiduciary .....                           | §420        |
| (ii) Sale to Trust of Fiduciary's Own Property .....                        | §424        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (iii) Dealings With Third Parties .....  | §425        |
| (iv) Misuse of Confidential Information .....  | §430        |
| (v) Bribes .....   | §435        |
| (d) Liability of Third Parties .....   | §439        |
| 3. Breach of Confidence .....  | §448        |
| (a) General .....  | §448        |
| (b) Confidential Nature of Information.....  | §451        |
| (c) Communication in Confidence.....   | §455        |
| (d) Unauthorized Use of Information.....   | §457        |
| (e) Third Parties .....  | §459        |
| (f) Remedies .....   | §460        |
| (g) Public Interest Defence .....  | §470        |
| 4. Criminal Acts .....   | §472        |
| (a) General .....  | §472        |
| (b) Direct Benefits.....   | §475        |
| (i) Insurance Proceeds.....  | §475        |
| (ii) Claim Under Will or on Intestacy.....   | §476        |
| (iii) Right of Survivorship .....  | §477        |
| (c) Indirect Benefits .....  | §478        |
| <b>VII. The Remedy of Subrogation.....</b>   | <b>§479</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §479        |
| 2. Established Categories of Subrogation .....   | §487        |
| (a) General .....  | §487        |
| (b) Sureties.....  | §488        |
| (c) Insurers.....  | §490        |
| (d) Creditors of Trust Business .....  | §491        |
| 3. Other Cases .....   | §493        |
| (a) General .....  | §493        |
| (b) Money Paid Under Valid Contract Used by Payee to<br>Discharge Security Interest of Third Party ..... | §494        |
| (c) Money Paid Under Invalid Contract Used by Payee to<br>Discharge Valid Liability to Third Party ..... | §500        |
| (i) General.....   | §500        |
| (ii) Contracts With Mentally Incompetent Persons<br>and Minors.....                                      | §502        |

RESTITUTION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (iii) Contracts With Agents Lacking Authority ..... | §504        |
| (iv) Money Paid Under Ultra Vires Loans .....       | §505        |
| (v) Money Paid Under Other Invalid Contracts .....  | §506        |
| (d) Miscellaneous .....                             | §507        |
| <b>VIII. Proprietary Remedies .....</b>             | <b>§508</b> |
| 1. General .....                                    | §508        |
| 2. The Constructive Trust .....                     | §509        |
| (a) General .....                                   | §509        |
| (b) Determination of Unjust Enrichment .....        | §518        |
| (i) General .....                                   | §518        |
| (ii) Unjust Enrichment or Benefit .....             | §521        |
| (iii) Deprivation .....                             | §531        |
| (iv) Absence of Juristic Reason .....               | §536        |
| (c) Appropriateness of Proprietary Relief .....     | §554        |
| (d) Tracing .....                                   | §569        |
| <b>IX. Defences to Restitutionary Claims .....</b>  | <b>§590</b> |
| 1. Estoppel .....                                   | §590        |
| 2. Change of Position .....                         | §592        |
| 3. Bona Fide Purchase .....                         | §595        |
| 4. Effect of Statute .....                          | §597        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agency; Banking; Burial and Cremation; Children; Contracts; Devolution of Estates; Employment Law; Equity; Estoppel; Executors and Administrators; Family Law — General; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Gifts; Guarantee, Indemnity and Standby Letters of Credit; Insurance; Mental Incapacity; Negligence; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land; Secured Transactions in Personal Property; Securities and Stock Exchanges; Shipping; Torts; Trusts; Wills

# SALE OF GOODS

prepared by  
Richard E. Levinson, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and New York Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Sale of Goods Legislation</b> . . . . .                  | §1  |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                                      | §1  |
| 2. Statutory Definitions . . . . .                             | §2  |
| 3. Interpretation . . . . .                                    | §17 |
| 4. Formation of Contract . . . . .                             | §21 |
| (a) Contract of Sale . . . . .                                 | §21 |
| (b) Capacity to Buy and Sell . . . . .                         | §22 |
| (c) Formalities of Contract . . . . .                          | §23 |
| (d) Enforcement of Contract over \$50 . . . . .                | §24 |
| (e) Subject Matter of Contract . . . . .                       | §25 |
| (f) Perishing of Goods Before Agreement Made . . . . .         | §26 |
| (g) Perishing of Goods Before Risk Passing . . . . .           | §27 |
| (h) Price . . . . .  | §28 |
| 5. Conditions and Warranties . . . . .                         | §30 |
| (a) Stipulation as to Time of Payment . . . . .                | §30 |
| (b) When Contract Subject to Conditions . . . . .              | §31 |
| (c) Implied Conditions and Warranties in Contract . . . . .    | §32 |
| (d) Sale by Description . . . . .                              | §33 |
| (e) Implied Conditions of Quality . . . . .                    | §34 |
| (f) Sale by Sample . . . . .                                   | §46 |
| 6. Effects of Contract . . . . .                               | §47 |
| (a) Transfer of Property as Between Seller and Buyer . . . . . | §47 |
| (b) Time of Transfer . . . . .                                 | §48 |
| (c) Rules for Ascertaining Intention . . . . .                 | §49 |

SALE OF GOODS

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (d) Reservation of Right of Disposal . . . . .                  | §55  |
| (e) Risk Transferred with Property . . . . .                    | §56  |
| 7. Transfer of Title . . . . .                                  | §57  |
| 8. Property in Stolen Goods . . . . .                           | §65  |
| 9. Performance of Contract . . . . .                            | §66  |
| (a) Introduction . . . . .                                      | §66  |
| (b) Delivery of Wrong Quantity . . . . .                        | §69  |
| (c) Instalment Deliveries . . . . .                             | §70  |
| (d) Delivery to Carrier . . . . .                               | §71  |
| (e) Risk when Delivery to Distant Place . . . . .               | §72  |
| (f) Examination of Goods by Buyer . . . . .                     | §73  |
| (g) Acceptance of Goods . . . . .                               | §74  |
| (h) Return of Rejected Goods . . . . .                          | §76  |
| (i) Liability of Buyer for Refusing Delivery of Goods . . . . . | §77  |
| 10. Rights of Unpaid Seller Against Goods . . . . .             | §78  |
| (a) Introduction . . . . .                                      | §78  |
| (b) Rights of Unpaid Seller . . . . .                           | §79  |
| (c) Unpaid Seller's Lien . . . . .                              | §80  |
| (d) Part Delivery . . . . .                                     | §81  |
| (e) Termination of Lien . . . . .                               | §82  |
| (f) Stoppage in Transit . . . . .                               | §83  |
| (g) Exercising Right of Stoppage . . . . .                      | §85  |
| (h) Resale by Buyer or Seller . . . . .                         | §86  |
| (i) Rescinding Contract of Sale . . . . .                       | §87  |
| 11. Actions for Breach of Contract . . . . .                    | §88  |
| (a) Remedies of Seller . . . . .                                | §88  |
| (b) Damages for Non-acceptance . . . . .                        | §89  |
| (c) Remedies of Buyer . . . . .                                 | §90  |
| (d) Specific Performance of Contract . . . . .                  | §91  |
| (e) Remedy for Breach of Warranty . . . . .                     | §92  |
| (f) Interest or Special Damages . . . . .                       | §93  |
| 12. Supplementary . . . . .                                     | §94  |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §94  |
| (b) Sale by Auction . . . . .                                   | §98  |
| (c) Application of Common Law . . . . .                         | §99  |
| (d) Buyer's Lien . . . . .                                      | §100 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>II. Related Legislation</b> .....                   | §101 |
| 1. Provincial .....                                    | §101 |
| (a) General .....                                      | §101 |
| (b) Consumer Protection Legislation .....              | §106 |
| (i) Alberta .....                                      | §106 |
| A. General .....                                       | §106 |
| B. Unfair and Negative Option Practices .....          | §108 |
| C. Direct Sales Contracts .....                        | §119 |
| (ii) British Columbia .....                            | §123 |
| A. General .....                                       | §123 |
| B. Unfair Practices .....                              | §124 |
| C. Direct Sales and Future Performance Contracts . . . | §130 |
| (iii) Manitoba .....                                   | §140 |
| A. Statutory Warranties on Retail Sales .....          | §140 |
| B. Direct Sellers .....                                | §146 |
| (iv) Ontario .....                                     | §151 |
| A. Consumer Rights and Warranties .....                | §151 |
| B. Unfair Practices .....                              | §156 |
| C. Future Performance Agreements .....                 | §162 |
| D. Direct Agreements .....                             | §167 |
| (v) Saskatchewan .....                                 | §169 |
| A. Marketplace Practices .....                         | §169 |
| B. Consumer Products Warranties .....                  | §185 |
| C. Unsolicited Goods .....                             | §205 |
| D. Future Performance Contracts .....                  | §207 |
| 2. Federal .....                                       | §210 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Auctions; Bailment; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Contracts; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Personal Property; Secured Transactions in Personal Property.

# SALE OF LAND

prepared by  
Richard Levinson, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and New York Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

## Table of Regulations

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                                   | §1  |
| 1. Meaning of “Land” . . . . .                                     | §1  |
| 2. Fixtures . . . . .  | §5  |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §5  |
| (b) Particular Articles . . . . .                                  | §9  |
| 3. Sale of Land as Distinguished from Other Transactions . . . . . | §19 |
| (a) From Mortgages . . . . .                                       | §19 |
| (b) From Leases . . . . .  | §20 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. The Contract</b> . . . . .                                  | §22 |
| 1. Parties to Contract; Capacity to Contract . . . . .             | §22 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §22 |
| (b) Agents . . . . .   | §24 |
| (c) Bankrupts . . . . .  | §27 |
| (d) Companies and Corporations . . . . .                           | §28 |
| (e) Executors and Administrators . . . . .                         | §29 |
| (f) Government Entities . . . . .                                  | §30 |
| (g) Homestead Legislation . . . . .                                | §31 |
| (h) Husbands and Wives . . . . .                                   | §32 |
| (i) Infants . . . . .  | §36 |
| (j) Joint Tenants . . . . .  | §39 |
| (k) Mental Incompetents . . . . .                                  | §40 |

SALE OF LAND

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (l) Non-residents . . . . .  | §43         |
| (m) Trustees . . . . .   | §44         |
| 2. Prohibitions Against Discriminatory Practices in Land Sales . . . . .     | §46         |
| 3. Necessity for Offer and Acceptance . . . . .                              | §48         |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §48         |
| (b) Certainty of Terms . . . . .   | §57         |
| (c) Effect of Provision for Further Contract . . . . .                       | §60         |
| 4. Consideration or Seal . . . . .   | §63         |
| 5. Mistake Preventing Formation of Contract . . . . .                        | §66         |
| <b>III. Evidence of Contract . . . . .</b>                                   | <b>§67</b>  |
| 1. Applicability of Statute of Frauds . . . . .                              | §67         |
| 2. Memorandum Required by Statute of Frauds . . . . .                        | §79         |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §79         |
| (b) Object Immaterial . . . . .  | §82         |
| (c) Form . . . . .   | §83         |
| (d) Memorandum in Two or More Documents . . . . .                            | §91         |
| (e) Identification of Parties . . . . .                                      | §95         |
| (f) Description of Land . . . . .  | §104        |
| (g) Inclusion of Material Terms . . . . .                                    | §108        |
| (h) Signature . . . . .  | §116        |
| 3. Effect of Statute . . . . .   | §124        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §124        |
| (b) Variation and Rescission of Contracts within Statute of Frauds . . . . . | §129        |
| 4. Doctrine of Part Performance . . . . .                                    | §131        |
| 5. Pleading of Statute . . . . .   | §141        |
| 6. Other Legislation . . . . .   | §142        |
| <b>IV. Validity and Modification of Contract . . . . .</b>                   | <b>§143</b> |
| 1. Validity of Contract . . . . .  | §143        |
| 2. Rectification . . . . .   | §150        |
| 3. Alteration of Contract . . . . .  | §161        |
| 4. Abandonment of Contract . . . . .   | §164        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>V. Option Contracts</b> .....                                       | §169 |
| 1. Nature .....  | §169 |
| 2. Formation .....   | §179 |
| (a) Consideration .....  | §179 |
| (b) Exercise .....   | §182 |
| 3. Lease with Option to Purchase .....                                 | §197 |
| 4. Assignment .....  | §203 |
| 5. Revocation .....  | §205 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>VI. Interpretation of Contract</b> .....                            | §209 |
| 1. General .....   | §209 |
| 2. As Absolute or Conditional .....                                    | §236 |
| 3. Whether Executed or Executory .....                                 | §239 |
| 4. Title .....   | §242 |
| 5. Identity and Quantity of Land .....                                 | §245 |
| (a) General .....  | §245 |
| (b) Meaning of “More or Less” .....                                    | §255 |
| 6. Reservations and Exceptions .....                                   | §258 |
| (a) General .....  | §258 |
| (b) Minerals .....   | §259 |
| 7. Covenants and Warranties .....                                      | §263 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>VII. Rescission of Contract for Fraud or Misrepresentation</b> .... | §275 |
| 1. General .....   | §275 |
| 2. Fraudulent or Negligent Misrepresentation .....                     | §282 |
| 3. Innocent Misrepresentation .....                                    | §295 |
| (a) General .....  | §295 |
| (b) After Contract Executed .....                                      | §298 |
| 4. Undue Influence and Unconscionable Bargain .....                    | §299 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>VIII. Rights and Liabilities Pending Completion</b> .....           | §304 |
| 1. Vendor’s Lien .....   | §304 |
| (a) General .....  | §304 |
| (b) Parties Against Whom Lien Enforceable .....                        | §312 |
| (c) Priority .....   | §316 |
| (d) Assignment .....   | §318 |

SALE OF LAND

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (e) Waiver or Loss . . . . .                            | §320        |
| 2. Vendor's Take-back Mortgage . . . . .                | §325        |
| 3. Purchaser's Lien . . . . .                           | §326        |
| 4. Deposit and Purchase Money . . . . .                 | §335        |
| 5. Possession of Property . . . . .                     | §336        |
| 6. Waste or Enhancement of Lands . . . . .              | §343        |
| 7. Rents and Profits . . . . .                          | §346        |
| 8. Encumbrances . . . . .                               | §348        |
| 9. Writs of Execution . . . . .                         | §354        |
| 10. Taxes and Development Charges . . . . .             | §355        |
| 11. Improvements and Repairs . . . . .                  | §360        |
| 12. Matters of Adjustment or Allowance . . . . .        | §364        |
| 13. Crop Payments . . . . .                             | §368        |
| <b>IX. Transfer of Rights and Obligations . . . . .</b> | <b>§369</b> |
| 1. Assignment by Purchaser . . . . .                    | §369        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §369        |
| (b) Stipulation Against Assignment . . . . .            | §371        |
| (c) Assignment by Subsale . . . . .                     | §376        |
| (d) Equities to which Assignment Subject . . . . .      | §378        |
| 2. Assignment or Conveyance by Vendor . . . . .         | §379        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §379        |
| (b) Equities to which Assignment Subject . . . . .      | §381        |
| <b>X. Completion of the Contract . . . . .</b>          | <b>§383</b> |
| 1. Obligations of Parties Generally . . . . .           | §383        |
| 2. Terms Imposed by Statute . . . . .                   | §387        |
| 3. Implied Terms . . . . .                              | §389        |
| 4. Dependent or Independent Obligations . . . . .       | §392        |
| 5. Time of Performance . . . . .                        | §395        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §395        |
| (b) Time of Essence . . . . .                           | §399        |
| (c) Waiver as to Time . . . . .                         | §404        |
| 6. Place of Performance . . . . .                       | §415        |
| 7. Grounds for Non-Performance . . . . .                | §417        |
| (a) Impossibility and Frustration . . . . .             | §417        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Fundamental Breach . . . . .                         | §421        |
| (c) Conditions Precedent . . . . .                       | §423        |
| 8. Obligations of Purchaser as to Payment . . . . .      | §430        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                    | §430        |
| (b) Medium of Payment . . . . .                          | §438        |
| (c) Place of Payment . . . . .                           | §440        |
| (d) Time of Payment . . . . .                            | §441        |
| (e) Payment of Interest . . . . .                        | §442        |
| (f) Deposit . . . . .                                    | §444        |
| (g) Acceleration Clause . . . . .                        | §446        |
| 9. Obligations of Vendor as to Conveyance . . . . .      | §451        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                    | §451        |
| (b) Preparation of Conveyance . . . . .                  | §453        |
| (c) Tender of Conveyance . . . . .                       | §458        |
| (d) Sufficiency of Deed . . . . .                        | §461        |
| 10. Obligations of Vendor Regarding Possession . . . . . | §462        |
| 11. Obligations of Vendor as to Title . . . . .          | §466        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                    | §466        |
| (b) Nature of Title Contracted For . . . . .             | §477        |
| (c) Production of Title Documents . . . . .              | §482        |
| (d) Search of Title . . . . .                            | §484        |
| (e) Under Instalment Contract . . . . .                  | §490        |
| (f) Stipulation for Cancellation of Agreement . . . . .  | §492        |
| (g) Particular Defects . . . . .                         | §494        |
| (h) Waiver of Defects of Title . . . . .                 | §505        |
| 12. Vendor and Purchaser Applications . . . . .          | §508        |
| <b>XI. Remedies for Breach of Contract . . . . .</b>     | <b>§515</b> |
| 1. Limitation Periods . . . . .                          | §515        |
| 2. Effect of Contractual Provision . . . . .             | §517        |
| 3. Election . . . . .                                    | §520        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                    | §520        |
| (b) Election by Purchaser . . . . .                      | §527        |
| (c) Election by Vendor . . . . .                         | §528        |
| (d) Election under Agreement for Sale . . . . .          | §531        |
| 4. Rescission . . . . .                                  | §540        |

SALE OF LAND

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .   | §540        |
| (b) By Agreement . . . . .  | §545        |
| (c) For Refusal of or Delay in Performance . . . . .                      | §548        |
| (d) For Failure of or Defects in Title . . . . .                          | §551        |
| (e) Effect of Rescission Generally . . . . .                              | §564        |
| (f) Bars to Rescission Generally . . . . .                                | §566        |
| (g) Necessity for Restitutio In Integrum . . . . .                        | §573        |
| 5. Determination or Cancellation . . . . .                                | §577        |
| 6. Action for Purchase Money . . . . .                                    | §588        |
| 7. Foreclosure . . . . .  | §593        |
| 8. Forfeiture or Recovery of Deposit and Payments . . . . .               | §595        |
| (a) Deposit . . . . .   | §595        |
| (b) Purchase Money . . . . .  | §617        |
| (c) Relief from Forfeiture . . . . .                                      | §619        |
| 9. Damages . . . . .  | §628        |
| (a) General Principles . . . . .  | §628        |
| (b) Purchaser's Action for Damages . . . . .                              | §629        |
| (i) Generally . . . . .   | §629        |
| (ii) The Rule in Bain V. Fothergill . . . . .                             | §631        |
| (c) Considerations in Damage Awards to Purchaser . . . . .                | §638        |
| (d) Vendor's Action for Damages — Generally . . . . .                     | §646        |
| (e) Considerations in Damage Awards to Vendor . . . . .                   | §647        |
| 10. Specific Performance . . . . .  | §656        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §656        |
| (b) Judgment for Specific Performance with Consequential Relief . . . . . | §666        |
| <b>XII. Effect of Completion . . . . .</b>                                | <b>§678</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §678        |
| 2. House Under Construction . . . . .                                     | §686        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §686        |
| (b) Ontario New Home Warranties Plan Act . . . . .                        | §694        |

**Index**

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

*Related titles:* Agency; Builders' Liens; Condominiums; Contracts; Damages; Evidence; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Mines and Minerals; Mortgages; Real Property; Specific Performance.

# SECURITIES AND STOCK EXCHANGES

prepared by  
Jeffrey Read, B.A. (Magna Cum Laude), LL.B.  
*of the British Columbia Bar, the Canadian Bar Association, the  
International Bar Association and the American Bar Association;  
Adjunct professor of securities regulation at the Faculty of Law,  
University of British Columbia*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

**Table of National Instruments**

**Table of By-laws**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Securities Regulation</b> .....                      | §1  |
| 1. Scope .....   | §1  |
| 2. Purposes of Securities Regulation.....                  | §2  |
| 3. Types of Securities Regulation .....                    | §4  |
| 4. Framework of Securities Regulation in Canada.....       | §6  |
| (a) Legislation.....                                       | §6  |
| (b) Administration .....                                   | §8  |
| (c) Self-Regulation .....                                  | §10 |
| (d) Other Related Regulations .....                        | §11 |
| 5. Securities Commissions .....                            | §12 |
| (a) General .....  | §12 |
| (b) Powers and Duties.....                                 | §14 |
| (i) Registrations and Control of Sale and Securities ..... | §14 |
| (ii) Conduct of Hearings .....                             | §20 |
| (iii) Audit .....  | §27 |
| (iv) Appointment of Receiver Manager .....                 | §28 |

SECURITIES AND STOCK EXCHANGES

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (v) Order to Produce Records.....                               | §32  |
| (vi) Extraprovincial Operation.....                             | §34  |
| 6. Investigations.....  | §35  |
| (a) General.....  | §35  |
| (b) Appointment of Investigator.....                            | §40  |
| (c) Powers of Investigator.....                                 | §42  |
| (d) Conduct of Investigation.....                               | §47  |
| (e) Report of Investigator.....                                 | §52  |
| 7. Reviews and Appeals of Decisions.....                        | §54  |
| 8. Registration Requirements.....                               | §62  |
| (a) General.....  | §62  |
| (b) Distribution.....   | §63  |
| 9. Who Must Register.....                                       | §66  |
| (a) General.....  | §66  |
| (b) Dealer.....   | §67  |
| (c) Adviser.....  | §68  |
| (d) Representative.....   | §70  |
| 10. Conditions of Registration.....                             | §71  |
| (a) General.....  | §71  |
| (b) Capital.....  | §72  |
| (c) Bonding and Insurance.....                                  | §73  |
| (d) Contingency Fund Participation.....                         | §74  |
| (e) Report by Auditor.....                                      | §75  |
| (f) Compliance and Business Records.....                        | §76  |
| (g) Dealing with Clients — Know Your Client Rule.....           | §77  |
| (h) Segregation of Funds and Securities.....                    | §79  |
| (i) Statements of Account and Portfolio.....                    | §80  |
| (j) Proficiency Requirements.....                               | §81  |
| 11. Grant of Registration.....                                  | §82  |
| 12. Suspension, Restriction or Termination of Registration..... | §83  |
| 13. Surrender of Registration.....                              | §86  |
| 14. Exemptions from Registration.....                           | §87  |
| 15. Prospectus Requirements.....                                | §89  |
| 16. Exemptions from Prospectus Requirements.....                | §107 |
| 17. Continuous Disclosure.....                                  | §113 |
| (a) General.....  | §113 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (b) Financial Statements.....   | §115 |
| (c) Proxies and Information Circulars.....                                | §118 |
| (d) Insider Reports — Meaning of “Insider” .....                          | §122 |
| (e) Filing Reports .....  | §124 |
| 18. Timely Disclosure .....   | §125 |
| (a) General .....   | §125 |
| (b) “Material Change” Defined .....                                       | §126 |
| (c) Reporting Requirements .....  | §128 |
| (d) “Material Fact” Defined.....  | §131 |
| (e) Confidential Disclosure .....   | §132 |
| 19. Enforcement .....   | §133 |
| 20. Misrepresentation .....   | §135 |
| (a) Meaning of “Misrepresentation” .....                                  | §135 |
| (b) Knowledge of Misrepresentation.....                                   | §137 |
| (c) Penalties .....   | §139 |
| (d) Warrant Issued in Another Province .....                              | §144 |
| (e) Trading in Securities without Registration or a<br>Prospectus .....   | §145 |
| (f) Compliance Orders .....   | §146 |
| (g) Cease Trading Orders.....   | §150 |
| (h) Order that Exemptions Do Not Apply .....                              | §154 |
| (i) Public Policy Orders .....  | §155 |
| (j) Limitation Periods.....   | §156 |
| 21. Civil Liability Offences Under Securities Acts.....                   | §159 |
| (a) Misrepresentation in Prospectus and Other, Similar<br>Documents ..... | §159 |
| (b) Misrepresentation in Takeover Bid or Issuer Bid<br>Circular .....     | §169 |
| (c) Failure to Provide Copy of Offering Document.....                     | §171 |
| (d) Trades in Contravention of Act.....                                   | §172 |
| (e) Contracts Where One Party Having Special Interest.....                | §173 |
| (i) Insider Trading .....   | §173 |
| (ii) Dealer Having Interest in Trade.....                                 | §176 |
| (f) Rescission Rights for Mutual Fund Contracts.....                      | §178 |
| (g) Limitation Periods .....  | §179 |
| 22. Civil Liability for Secondary Market Disclosure .....                 | §181 |



## SECURITIES AND STOCK EXCHANGES

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 23. Interjurisdictional Cooperation .....                      | \$187        |
| <b>II. Securities Offences under the Criminal Code .....</b>   | <b>\$191</b> |
| 1. Fraudulent Manipulation of Stock Exchange Transactions..... | \$191        |
| 2. Theft .....   | \$199        |
| 3. Other Criminal Offences.....                                | \$201        |
| (a) Fraud Affecting Public Market .....                        | \$201        |
| (b) Gaming in Stocks or Merchandise .....                      | \$216        |
| (c) Broker Reducing Stock by Selling on Own Account.....       | \$225        |
| (d) False Prospectus .....                                     | \$226        |
| <b>III. Stock Exchanges in Canada.....</b>                     | <b>\$233</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$233        |
| 2. Requirements of the Securities Acts .....                   | \$234        |
| 3. Toronto Stock Exchange.....                                 | \$239        |
| 4. Canadian National Stock Exchange .....                      | \$242        |
| 5. TSX Venture Exchange .....                                  | \$244        |
| 6. Review of Stock Exchange Decisions .....                    | \$245        |
| 7. Alternative Trading System.....                             | \$247        |
| <b>IV. Derivatives .....</b>                                   | <b>\$249</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$249        |
| 2. Exchange-traded Derivatives in Canada .....                 | \$255        |
| 3. Investigations.....   | \$262        |
| 4. Registration as Exchange or Clearing House .....            | \$264        |
| 5. Review of Decision of Exchange or Clearing House .....      | \$266        |
| 6. Registration for Trading .....                              | \$268        |
| 7. Approval of Contracts.....                                  | \$269        |
| 8. Trading .....   | \$270        |
| 9. Offences and Penalties.....                                 | \$273        |
| <b>V. Relationship Between Broker and Client.....</b>          | <b>\$275</b> |
| 1. General .....   | \$275        |
| 2. Margin Transactions .....                                   | \$276        |
| (a) General .....  | \$276        |
| (b) Broker's and Customer's Undertakings .....                 | \$277        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Broker as Agent .....  | §279        |
| 4. Broker as Creditor.....                                      | §280        |
| 5. Broker as Pledgee .....                                      | §281        |
| <b>VI. Broker's Rights and Duties as Agent .....</b>            | <b>§282</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §282        |
| 2. Duty to Purchase.....  | §283        |
| 3. Duty to Give Notice of Trade .....                           | §286        |
| 4. Duty to Follow Instructions.....                             | §289        |
| 5. Discretion to Disregard Instructions .....                   | §292        |
| 6. Duties Arising from Fiduciary Relationship.....              | §295        |
| 7. Broker Entitled to Commission Only .....                     | §299        |
| 8. Broker's Duty to Account .....                               | §300        |
| 9. Rights and Duties in Margin Transactions .....               | §301        |
| 10. Rights and Duties in Selling Out Customer .....             | §303        |
| 11. Rights and Duties Enlarged by Contract .....                | §305        |
| <b>VII. Broker's Rights and Duties as Creditor .....</b>        | <b>§306</b> |
| 1. Broker's Claim Not Confined to Margin.....                   | §306        |
| 2. Broker's Lien .....  | §307        |
| <b>VIII. Broker's Rights and Duties As Pledgee .....</b>        | <b>§310</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §310        |
| 2. Obligation to Deliver Shares on Demand.....                  | §311        |
| 3. Rightful Use of Pledged Stock.....                           | §313        |
| 4. Tortious Use of Pledged Stock — Wrongful Sale of Stock ..... | §314        |
| 5. Wrongful Repledge of Stock.....                              | §319        |
| 6. Position of New Pledgee .....                                | §321        |
| 7. Broker's Rights and Duties in Short Selling .....            | §322        |
| 8. Borrowing Shares.....  | §323        |
| <b>IX. Customer's Rights and Duties — Broker Solvent .....</b>  | <b>§324</b> |
| 1. Ownership of Shares.....                                     | §324        |
| 2. Profits Belonging to Customer .....                          | §325        |
| 3. Customer to Indemnify Broker .....                           | §327        |
| 4. Unauthorized Transactions .....                              | §328        |

SECURITIES AND STOCK EXCHANGES

---

**X. Customer's Rights and Duties — Broker Insolvency and Bankruptcy** ..... §329

**XI. Actions**..... §336

    1. By the Client..... §336

    2. Discovery Against Brokers..... §341

    3. Limitation of Actions..... §342

    4. By the Broker..... §343

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agency; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Business Corporations; Contracts; Criminal Law — Offences; Liens; Pledges; Professions and Occupations; Restitution; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada; Trusts

# SENTENCING

prepared by  
R. Paul Nadin-Davis, B.A., M. Phil, LL.M.  
*formerly of the Faculty of Law, University of Ottawa*  
updated by  
Brenda Waddle-Lynn, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Framework of Sentencing</b> .....                    | §1  |
| 1. Choice of Emphasis .....                                | §1  |
| (a) Introduction .....                                     | §1  |
| (b) Appropriate Cases for Tariff Sentencing .....          | §19 |
| (c) Appropriate Cases for Individualized Sentencing .....  | §24 |
| (d) Consistency and Disparity .....                        | §27 |
| (i) General Rules .....                                    | §27 |
| (ii) Exceptions .....                                      | §31 |
| (iii) Disparity as Ground of Appeal .....                  | §36 |
| (e) Justifying Sentence: Protecting Public .....           | §38 |
| (i) General.....   | §38 |
| (ii) Retribution .....                                     | §39 |
| (iii) Deterrence.....                                      | §40 |
| (iv) Denunciation.....                                     | §50 |
| (v) Incapacitation.....                                    | §54 |
| (vi) Rehabilitation.....                                   | §55 |
| 2. Mechanics of Tariff Sentencing .....                    | §57 |
| (a) General Principles.....                                | §57 |
| (b) Statutory Maximum Sentences .....                      | §58 |
| (c) Inflation of Sentence Beyond Range: Special Cases..... | §62 |
| <b>II. Factors Considered in Passing Sentence</b> .....    | §66 |

## SENTENCING

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 1. Factors Relating to Offender or Offender’s History .....                                     | §66  |
| (a) Age .....   | §66  |
| (b) Criminal Record .....   | §69  |
| (i) General.....  | §69  |
| (ii) Absence of Previous Criminal Behaviour.....  | §70  |
| (iii) Prior Offences: Special Categories .....  | §72  |
| A. Youth Offences .....   | §72  |
| B. Discharge .....  | §73  |
| C. Pardon .....   | §74  |
| D. Diversion Program .....  | §75  |
| E. Pending Appeal.....  | §76  |
| F. Offender on Bail at Time of Offence Before<br>Court .....                                    | §77  |
| G. Offender on Parole at Time of Offence<br>Before Court.....                                   | §78  |
| H. Offences in Respect of Which Offender not<br>Convicted at Time of Offence Before Court ..... | §79  |
| (iv) Prior Offences .....   | §81  |
| A. Types of Previous Convictions.....   | §81  |
| B. “Gap Principle” .....  | §85  |
| (v) Offences Committed After Offence Before Court....   | §86  |
| (vi) Previous Sentences: “Jump Principle” .....   | §87  |
| (c) Mental Illness .....  | §89  |
| (i) In General.....   | §89  |
| (ii) Effects of Specific Diseases .....   | §92  |
| A. Depression .....   | §92  |
| B. Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder .....   | §93  |
| C. Psychosis.....   | §94  |
| D. Personality Disorder (Psychopathy,<br>Sociopathy) .....                                      | §95  |
| E. Multiple Personality Disorder .....  | §96  |
| F. Mental Handicap.....   | §97  |
| G. Schizophrenia .....  | §98  |
| H. Senile Dementia or Age-Related<br>Degeneration.....  | §99  |
| I. Pedophilia.....  | §100 |
| (d) Physical Health or Disability .....   | §101 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (i) In General .....   | §101 |
| (ii) Alcoholism.....   | §103 |
| (iii) Drug Dependency .....  | §104 |
| (e) Position of Trust.....   | §105 |
| (f) Nationality and Cultural Background .....                                | §116 |
| (g) Characteristics of Accused.....  | §118 |
| (h) Station in Life.....   | §120 |
| (i) Work Record .....  | §121 |
| (j) Motives of Accused .....   | §122 |
| 2. Circumstances Immediately Prior to Commission of<br>Offence .....         | §123 |
| (a) Intoxication by Alcohol or Drugs.....                                    | §123 |
| (b) Personal or Financial Difficulties .....                                 | §125 |
| (c) Necessity .....  | §126 |
| 3. Aspects of Offence .....  | §127 |
| (a) Acting in Concert With or Involving Others .....                         | §127 |
| (b) Motive.....  | §129 |
| (c) Planning and Method of Execution.....                                    | §134 |
| (d) Prevalence of Offence.....   | §136 |
| (e) Profitability, Magnitude and Impact.....                                 | §137 |
| 4. Factors Relating to Victim .....  | §139 |
| (a) Character .....  | §139 |
| (b) Consequences for Victim.....   | §140 |
| (c) Submissions by Victim or Victim's Family.....                            | §141 |
| (d) Forgiveness .....  | §144 |
| (e) Role in Offence .....  | §145 |
| (f) Provocation.....   | §146 |
| (g) Vulnerable Classes .....   | §147 |
| 5. Factors Relating to Period Between Offence and Final<br>Disposition ..... | §148 |
| (a) Passage of Time .....  | §148 |
| (b) Change of Policy or Law.....   | §153 |
| (c) Time Spent in Custody .....  | §154 |
| (i) Pending Trial.....   | §154 |
| (ii) Pending Appeal .....  | §166 |
| (iii) Pending Extradition.....   | §167 |

## SENTENCING

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (d) Acts of Offender.....   | §168 |
| (i) Co-operation with Police .....  | §168 |
| (ii) Voluntary Compensation or Restitution.....                                     | §170 |
| (iii) Further Offences .....  | §171 |
| (iv) Good Behaviour .....   | §172 |
| (v) Refusal of Treatment.....   | §173 |
| (e) Attitude of Offender .....  | §174 |
| (i) Remorse .....   | §174 |
| (ii) Reformation.....   | §175 |
| 6. Trial, Criminal Process and Applicable Law .....                                 | §176 |
| (a) Conduct of Defence.....   | §176 |
| (b) Police or Prosecutorial Improprieties, Entrapment and<br>Charter Breaches ..... | §177 |
| (c) Guilty Plea .....   | §183 |
| (d) Jury's Recommendation .....   | §185 |
| (e) Mistake or Ignorance of Law .....   | §186 |
| (f) Remission and Parole .....  | §187 |
| (g) Test Case .....   | §191 |
| (h) Possibility of Future Changes to Law.....                                       | §192 |
| 7. Factors Relating to Other Effects of Crime, Conviction or<br>Sentence .....      | §193 |
| (a) Other Liabilities or Penalties Incurred .....                                   | §193 |
| (i) Civil Liability and Administrative Penalties.....                               | §193 |
| (ii) Forfeiture of Property .....   | §196 |
| (iii) Penalties in Respect of Same Incident, Involving<br>Other Crimes .....        | §197 |
| (iv) Foreign Criminal Liability .....   | §198 |
| (b) Loss of Reputation .....  | §199 |
| (c) Deportation or Removal from Canada .....  | §200 |
| (d) Loss of Employment or Professional Licence .....                                | §202 |
| (e) Imprisonment Exceptionally Difficult or Dangerous<br>for Offender .....         | §204 |
| (f) Effect on Offender's Family .....   | §207 |
| (g) Public Reaction.....  | §210 |
| (h) New Trial.....  | §212 |
| 8. Other Offences Not Subject of Convictions.....                                   | §213 |
| (a) Taking into Account.....  | §213 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (b) Where Offender May Have Committed Offence More Serious Than Charged..... | §215        |
| (c) Offences Planned but Not Executed.....                                   | §217        |
| (d) Offences Not Proven.....   | §218        |
| <b>III. Quantum of Sentence.....</b>   | <b>§219</b> |
| 1. Public Order Offences .....   | §219        |
| (a) Treason; Offences Against Sovereign; Sedition.....                       | §219        |
| (i) Treason .....  | §219        |
| (ii) Mutiny .....  | §225        |
| (iii) Sedition.....  | §229        |
| (b) Unlawful Assemblies and Riots .....                                      | §230        |
| (i) Riots.....   | §230        |
| (ii) Unlawful Assembly.....  | §231        |
| (iii) Duels.....   | §235        |
| (iv) Forcible Entry.....   | §236        |
| (c) Piracy and Hijacking .....   | §237        |
| (i) Piracy .....   | §237        |
| (ii) Hijacking .....   | §239        |
| (iii) Seizure of Fixed Platform .....  | §240        |
| (iv) Endangering Aircraft.....   | §241        |
| (d) Explosives and Explosions.....   | §242        |
| (e) Terrorism.....   | §244        |
| (f) Weapons Offences .....   | §257        |
| (i) Using Firearm During Commission of Offence .....                         | §257        |
| (ii) Pointing Firearm.....   | §260        |
| (iii) Careless Use and Storage of Firearms and Ammunition .....              | §263        |
| (iv) Possession of Weapon for Purpose Dangerous to Public Peace.....         | §264        |
| (v) Possession of Concealed Weapon .....                                     | §268        |
| (vi) Possession of Prohibited Weapon .....                                   | §269        |
| (vii) Trafficking Offences .....   | §277        |
| (viii) Export and Import Offences .....                                      | §281        |
| (ix) Offences Relating to Lost, Destroyed or Defaced Weapons.....            | §283        |
| 2. Offences Against Administration of Law and Justice .....                  | §287        |



SENTENCING

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (a) Contempt of Court.....                                   | §287 |
| (i) In General.....  | §287 |
| (ii) Contempt in Face of Court.....                          | §288 |
| (iii) Sub Judice Rule.....                                   | §292 |
| (iv) Scandalizing Court.....                                 | §294 |
| (v) Civil Contempt.....                                      | §295 |
| (b) Offences Involving Corruption.....                       | §296 |
| (c) Obstructing Public or Peace Officer; Public Mischief ... | §299 |
| (d) Perjury; Contradictory Evidence.....                     | §300 |
| (e) Attempting to Obstruct Justice.....                      | §302 |
| (f) Offences Involving Escape from Custody.....              | §303 |
| (g) Failing to Appear.....                                   | §306 |
| (h) Breach of Recognizance.....                              | §307 |
| 3. Sexual Offences.....                                      | §308 |
| (a) Sexual Assault.....                                      | §308 |
| (b) Sexual Offences Involving Children.....                  | §326 |
| (i) Sexual Interference; Sexual Touching.....                | §326 |
| (ii) Sexual Exploitation.....                                | §331 |
| (c) Incest.....  | §333 |
| (d) Male Victims.....  | §336 |
| (e) Anal Intercourse.....                                    | §339 |
| (f) Obscenity; Immoral Performances.....                     | §342 |
| (g) Child Pornography.....                                   | §344 |
| (h) Indecent Acts.....                                       | §349 |
| (i) Sex Offender Information Registration Act.....           | §350 |
| 4. Gambling Offences; Disturbances.....                      | §354 |
| (a) Gambling Offences.....                                   | §354 |
| (b) Disturbances.....  | §357 |
| 5. Offences Relating to Prostitution.....                    | §358 |
| (a) Communicating.....                                       | §358 |
| (b) Bawdy Houses; Pimping.....                               | §359 |
| 6. Offences Resulting in Death.....                          | §361 |
| (a) Murder.....  | §361 |
| (b) Infanticide.....   | §362 |
| (c) Manslaughter.....  | §363 |
| (i) In General.....  | §363 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (ii) Domestic Situations Involving Provocation.....                              | §365 |
| (iii) Non-Domestic Situations Involving<br>Provocation .....                     | §368 |
| (iv) Manslaughter Involving Intoxication.....                                    | §369 |
| (v) Involuntary Homicide Arising Out of Assault.....                             | §370 |
| A. Adult Victim.....   | §370 |
| B. Assaults on Children .....  | §371 |
| (vi) Manslaughter in Course of Other Offences .....                              | §372 |
| (d) Causing Death by Criminal Negligence.....                                    | §373 |
| 7. Violent Offences Not Causing Death .....                                      | §376 |
| (a) Criminal Negligence Causing Bodily Harm.....                                 | §376 |
| (b) Attempted Murder .....   | §378 |
| (c) Discharging Firearm with Intent to Wound, etc., or to<br>Prevent Arrest..... | §382 |
| (d) Assault .....  | §383 |
| (e) Assaults Involving Weapons and Bodily Harm.....                              | §389 |
| (f) Aggravated Assault .....   | §393 |
| (g) Criminal Harassment.....   | §396 |
| (h) Administering Poison or Noxious Substance.....                               | §397 |
| (i) Overcoming Resistance to Commission of Offence.....                          | §398 |
| (j) Uttering Threats.....  | §399 |
| (k) Assaulting Peace Officer.....  | §400 |
| (l) Kidnapping and Forcible Confinement .....                                    | §403 |
| (m) Trafficking in Persons.....  | §406 |
| (n) Hostage-Taking and Abduction .....   | §409 |
| (o) Abduction of Child.....  | §410 |
| (p) Abandonment of Child.....  | §411 |
| 8. Driving Offences Not Necessarily Resulting in Death .....                     | §412 |
| (a) Failing to Remain at Scene of Accident .....                                 | §412 |
| (b) Dangerous Driving .....  | §413 |
| (c) Flight .....   | §415 |
| (d) Street Racing .....  | §417 |
| (e) Impaired Driving .....   | §420 |
| (f) Driving “Over 80” .....  | §425 |
| (g) Failure or Refusal to Provide Breath or Blood<br>Sample .....                | §430 |

SENTENCING

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (h) Driving While Disqualified.....                | §434 |
| 9. Theft and Related Offences.....                 | §441 |
| (a) Theft.....                                     | §441 |
| (i) In General.....                                | §441 |
| (ii) Shoplifting and Other Minor Thefts.....       | §442 |
| (iii) Organized Shoplifting.....                   | §443 |
| (iv) Motor Vehicle Theft.....                      | §444 |
| (v) Other Thefts.....                              | §446 |
| (vi) Theft by Person in Position of Trust.....     | §448 |
| (b) Computer Offences.....                         | §450 |
| (c) Credit Card Offences.....                      | §451 |
| (d) Robbery.....                                   | §453 |
| (i) In General.....                                | §453 |
| (ii) Bank Robbery.....                             | §455 |
| (iii) Robbery of Merchants.....                    | §457 |
| (iv) Home Invasions and Violent Burglaries.....    | §460 |
| (v) “Muggings”.....                                | §461 |
| (vi) Drug “Rip-Offs”.....                          | §464 |
| (e) Extortion.....                                 | §465 |
| (f) Breaking and Entering.....                     | §466 |
| (i) In General.....                                | §466 |
| (ii) Dwelling-Houses.....                          | §467 |
| (iii) Other Premises.....                          | §469 |
| (iv) Possession of Break-in Instruments.....       | §470 |
| (g) Possession of Property Obtained by Crime.....  | §471 |
| 10. Forgery, Fraud and Currency Offences.....      | §473 |
| (a) In General.....                                | §473 |
| (b) “Paperhanging” and Related Frauds.....         | §474 |
| (c) Commercial Fraud.....                          | §476 |
| (i) Submission of False Invoices, etc.....         | §476 |
| (ii) Defrauding Financial Institutions.....        | §478 |
| (iii) “Long Firm” Frauds.....                      | §479 |
| (iv) Market Manipulation and Investment Scams..... | §480 |
| (v) Defrauding Insurance Companies.....            | §483 |
| (d) Manufacturing Forged Documents.....            | §484 |
| (e) Forging Testamentary Instruments.....          | §485 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (f) Welfare Fraud .....   | §486        |
| (g) Defrauding Unemployment Insurance .....                                 | §487        |
| (h) Forging Passports and Related Documents .....                           | §488        |
| (i) Currency Offences .....   | §490        |
| 11. Mischief and Arson .....  | §492        |
| (a) Mischief Causing Actual Danger to Life .....                            | §492        |
| (b) Mischief to Property .....  | §493        |
| (c) Arson .....   | §499        |
| 12. Explosive or Other Lethal Device .....                                  | §505        |
| 13. Inchoate Offences .....   | §506        |
| (a) Attempts; Accessories .....   | §506        |
| (b) Counselling .....   | §508        |
| (c) Conspiracies .....  | §509        |
| (d) Criminal Organizations .....  | §512        |
| 14. Trade Offences .....  | §515        |
| (a) Fines and Orders under Competition Act .....                            | §515        |
| (b) Specific Offences .....   | §518        |
| (i) Illegal Conspiracies and Combines .....                                 | §518        |
| (ii) Misleading Advertising .....   | §522        |
| (iii) Price Maintenance .....   | §525        |
| (iv) Pyramid Sales Schemes .....  | §526        |
| (c) Other Trade Offences .....  | §528        |
| 15. Miscellaneous Other Offences .....                                      | §530        |
| (a) Wiretapping .....   | §530        |
| (b) Laundering Proceeds of Crime .....                                      | §531        |
| <b>IV. Types of Sentence .....</b>  | <b>§532</b> |
| 1. Imprisonment .....   | §532        |
| (a) General Considerations .....  | §532        |
| (b) Young Offenders and First Offenders .....                               | §533        |
| (c) Place of Imprisonment .....   | §535        |
| (d) Consecutive and Concurrent Sentences and Principle<br>of Totality ..... | §538        |
| (i) General Principles .....  | §538        |
| (ii) Totality Principle .....   | §546        |
| (iii) Special Rules .....   | §550        |

## SENTENCING

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| A. Offences Committed During Flight.....               | §550 |
| B. Offences Committed While on Bail.....               | §551 |
| C. Conspiracies.....                                   | §552 |
| D. Escape from Custody.....                            | §553 |
| E. Firearms Offences.....                              | §554 |
| F. Offender Serving Life Term.....                     | §555 |
| G. Possession Offences.....                            | §556 |
| H. Offender Subject to Indeterminate Term.....         | §557 |
| (e) Life Imprisonment.....                             | §558 |
| (f) Dangerous Offenders and Long-term Offenders.....   | §566 |
| (i) Preliminary Matters.....                           | §566 |
| (ii) Evidentiary Considerations.....                   | §580 |
| (iii) Formal Preconditions.....                        | §588 |
| (iv) Miscellaneous Other Matters.....                  | §589 |
| (v) Constitutionality and Basic Rights.....            | §590 |
| (g) Power of Court to Delay Parole.....                | §596 |
| (h) Intermittent Sentence.....                         | §600 |
| (i) Eligibility.....                                   | §600 |
| (ii) Form.....   | §604 |
| (iii) Appropriateness.....                             | §609 |
| (i) Conditional Sentences.....                         | §612 |
| 2. Fines.....  | §647 |
| (a) General Principles.....                            | §647 |
| (b) Power to Impose.....                               | §651 |
| (c) Enforcement of Fine Orders.....                    | §655 |
| (i) Loss of Right to Obtain or Renew Licence, etc..... | §655 |
| (ii) Civil Enforcement.....                            | §656 |
| (iii) Issuance of Warrant of Committal.....            | §657 |
| (d) Fine Option Programs.....                          | §660 |
| (e) Victim Surcharge.....                              | §661 |
| (f) Determining Amount of Fine.....                    | §664 |
| (i) Summary Offences.....                              | §664 |
| (ii) Ability to Pay.....                               | §665 |
| (iii) Removing Profits.....                            | §670 |
| (iv) Compensation to Crown.....                        | §672 |
| (g) Time to Pay.....                                   | §673 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (h) Effect of Payment.....  | §676 |
| (i) Fining Corporations.....  | §677 |
| 3. Suspended Sentence and Probation.....                                  | §681 |
| (a) In General .....  | §681 |
| (b) Legal Circumstances for Probation .....                               | §683 |
| (i) Suspension of Sentence.....   | §683 |
| (ii) Conditional Discharge.....   | §685 |
| (iii) In Addition to Fine or Imprisonment.....                            | §686 |
| (iv) In Addition to Intermittent Imprisonment.....                        | §688 |
| (c) Conditions of Probation .....   | §689 |
| (i) General Considerations .....  | §689 |
| (ii) Statutory Conditions.....  | §696 |
| (iii) Optional Conditions .....   | §697 |
| (iv) Potential Conditions .....   | §699 |
| A. Remain Within Jurisdiction of Court; Resi-<br>dency Restrictions ..... | §699 |
| B. Prohibition of Alcohol or Drugs; Drug Test ...                         | §701 |
| C. Support for Dependents .....   | §703 |
| D. Community Service.....   | §704 |
| E. Treatment .....  | §705 |
| F. Curfew .....   | §706 |
| G. Restitution.....   | §707 |
| H. Restrictions on Association .....                                      | §708 |
| I. Driving Prohibition.....   | §709 |
| J. Electronic Monitoring .....  | §710 |
| (d) Form and Procedure.....   | §712 |
| (e) Coming into Force and Continuation of Orders .....                    | §713 |
| (f) Revocation and Variation of Orders .....                              | §714 |
| (g) Transfer of Orders.....   | §719 |
| (h) Breach of Probation .....   | §720 |
| 4. Absolute and Conditional Discharges .....                              | §724 |
| (a) Statutory Preconditions.....  | §724 |
| (b) Policy in Granting Discharges .....                                   | §728 |
| (i) In General.....   | §728 |
| (ii) Best Interests of Accused .....                                      | §730 |
| (iii) Public Interest .....   | §735 |

## SENTENCING

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Discharges and Court of Appeal.....                   | §737        |
| (d) Effect of Subsequent Conviction.....                  | §741        |
| 5. Alternative Measures .....                             | §742        |
| (a) Definition .....                                      | §742        |
| (b) Conditions for Use of Alternative Measures .....      | §743        |
| (c) Effect of Alternative Measures .....                  | §746        |
| (d) Records Relating to Alternative Measures.....         | §747        |
| 6. Forfeiture .....                                       | §754        |
| 7. Restitution.....                                       | §762        |
| (a) Relevant Provisions .....                             | §762        |
| (b) Constitutional Restraints .....                       | §765        |
| (c) Other Matters .....                                   | §769        |
| 8. Restoration.....                                       | §775        |
| 9. Firearms Prohibitions .....                            | §777        |
| 10. Prohibitions in Cases Involving Sexual Offences ..... | §783        |
| 11. Appeals from Various Orders .....                     | §786        |
| 12. Bodily Samples for Forensic DNA Analysis.....         | §787        |
| <b>V. Procedure and Appeals .....</b>                     | <b>§796</b> |
| 1. Trial Court.....                                       | §796        |
| (a) Finding Facts .....                                   | §796        |
| (b) Information Before Court.....                         | §807        |
| (i) Records of Earlier Proceedings .....                  | §807        |
| (ii) Pre-Sentence Reports .....                           | §809        |
| A. Procedural Matters .....                               | §809        |
| B. Contents .....   | §813        |
| (iii) Other Reports .....                                 | §821        |
| (iv) Previous Convictions.....                            | §823        |
| A. Procedural Matters .....                               | §823        |
| B. Escalating Schemes: Special Requirements .....         | §828        |
| (c) Role of Counsel in Sentencing Process.....            | §839        |
| (i) Defence Submissions .....                             | §839        |
| (ii) Crown Submissions.....                               | §840        |
| (iii) Plea Bargaining and Joint Submissions .....         | §842        |
| (d) Right of Offender to be Present and/or Heard .....    | §848        |
| (i) General Rules .....                                   | §848        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (ii) Clear Exceptions .....  | §850 |
| (iii) Right to Counsel .....   | §853 |
| (e) Powers of Sentencing Court .....   | §854 |
| (i) Adjournments and Delays.....   | §854 |
| (ii) Recommendations to Correctional Authorities .....                             | §856 |
| (iii) Non-Communication Order .....  | §857 |
| (iv) Functus Officio.....  | §858 |
| (v) Sentencing for More Than One Offence.....                                      | §863 |
| (vi) Sentencing Circles.....   | §866 |
| 2. Sentence Appeals: Proceedings on Indictment.....                                | §868 |
| (a) Rights of Appeal: Interpretation .....   | §868 |
| (b) Application for Leave .....  | §871 |
| (c) Role of Appeal Court.....  | §874 |
| (d) Special Considerations Affecting Decision on Alteration of Trial Sentence..... | §877 |
| (i) Achieving Purpose of Trial Judge.....  | §877 |
| (ii) New Evidence .....  | §878 |
| (iii) Delay in Appealing.....  | §880 |
| (iv) Size of Disparity: Fines .....  | §881 |
| (v) Position Taken by Crown at Trial: Improprieties...                             | §882 |
| (vi) Reluctance to Interfere in Progress of Previous Disposition .....             | §885 |
| (vii) Original Sentence Already Served .....                                       | §886 |
| (viii) Totality Including Sentences not Subject to Appeal.....                     | §888 |
| (e) Information Before Appeal Court.....   | §889 |
| (i) In General.....  | §889 |
| (ii) Transcripts .....   | §890 |
| (iii) Trial Judge's Report .....   | §891 |
| (iv) New Evidence .....  | §892 |
| A. General Principles .....  | §892 |
| B. Mode of Introduction .....  | §895 |
| (v) Post-Sentence Report .....   | §896 |
| (f) Rights of Offender .....   | §897 |
| (g) Other Powers of Appeal Court in Sentencing Matters...                          | §902 |
| (i) Statutory Powers .....   | §902 |



## SENTENCING

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (ii) Commencement of Sentence .....                       | §909 |
| (iii) Time Served .....                                   | §910 |
| (iv) Return of Case to Trial Judge .....                  | §911 |
| (v) Inherent Powers .....                                 | §912 |
| (h) Appeals to Supreme Court of Canada.....               | §913 |
| 3. Sentence Appeals: Summary Matters .....                | §916 |
| (a) In General .....                                      | §916 |
| (b) Appeal by Defendant, Informant or Attorney General... | §918 |
| (c) Appeals by Trial de Novo.....                         | §920 |
| (d) Appeals to Provincial Court of Appeal.....            | §922 |
| 4. Pardons and Remissions; Disabilities .....             | §923 |
| (a) Pardons.....  | §923 |
| (b) Remission of Fine or Forfeiture .....                 | §925 |
| (c) Disabilities .....                                    | §926 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Armed Forces; Contempt of Court; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Offences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Customs and Excise; Firearms, Weapons and Explosives; Fraudulent Conveyances and Preferences; Gaming; Income Tax; Narcotic Control; Prisons; Youth Criminal Justice.

# SHERIFFS AND BAILIFFS

## SHERIFFS AND BAILIFFS

prepared by  
Joan E. Dunlop, *B.A., LL.B.*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Nature and Tenure of Office</b> . . . . .         | §1  |
| 1. Appointment and Jurisdiction . . . . .               | §1  |
| 2. Security . . . . .                                   | §7  |
| <b>II. Rights, Duties, and Powers</b> . . . . .         | §10 |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §10 |
| 2. Service of Documents . . . . .                       | §21 |
| 3. Execution of Writ and Seizure . . . . .              | §23 |
| 4. Returns . . . . .                                    | §52 |
| 5. Interpleader . . . . .                               | §57 |
| 6. Indemnification . . . . .                            | §60 |
| 7. Sheriff's Sale . . . . .                             | §62 |
| 8. Replevin . . . . .                                   | §67 |
| 9. Attachment and Garnishment Before Judgment . . . . . | §69 |
| <b>III. Liability of Sheriff or Bailiff</b> . . . . .   | §70 |
| 1. General . . . . .                                    | §70 |
| 2. Acts of Others . . . . .                             | §73 |
| 3. Moneys Received . . . . .                            | §74 |
| 4. Negligence . . . . .                                 | §78 |
| 5. Wrongful Seizure and Sale . . . . .                  | §87 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §87 |

SHERIFFS AND BAILIFFS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (b) Damages . . . . .                       | §90         |
| 6. Misconduct . . . . .                     | §93         |
| (a) General . . . . .                       | §93         |
| (b) Damages . . . . .                       | §96         |
| <b>IV. Fees and Other Charges . . . . .</b> | <b>§97</b>  |
| 1. General . . . . .                        | §97         |
| 2. Taxation . . . . .                       | §116        |
| 3. Poundage . . . . .                       | §117        |
| <b>V. Deputies, Bailiffs, etc. . . . .</b>  | <b>§120</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Debtor and Creditor; Distress; Execution; Interpleader; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Secured Transactions in Personal Property.

# SHIPPING

prepared by  
William M. Sharpe  
*of the Bars of Ontario and British Columbia,  
Titulary Member, Comite Maritime*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

## Table of Regulations

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                             | \$1  |
| 1. General .....   | \$1  |
| 2. Canadian Maritime Law .....                           | \$3  |
| (a) General .....  | \$3  |
| (b) Matters Held Within Canadian Maritime Law .....      | \$4  |
| (c) Matters Held Outside Canadian Maritime Law .....     | \$5  |
| (d) Process for Determining Canadian Maritime Law .....  | \$6  |
| <b>II. Overview of Applicable Legislation</b> .....      | \$7  |
| 1. General .....   | \$7  |
| 2. Conventions Given the Force of Law by Statute.....    | \$9  |
| 3. Conventions Given Effect by Regulation .....          | \$10 |
| 4. Application .....                                     | \$15 |
| <b>III. Ships</b> .....                                  | \$18 |
| 1. Definitions .....                                     | \$18 |
| (a) Statutory Definition .....                           | \$18 |
| (b) Case Law .....                                       | \$19 |
| 2. Shipbuilding and Repair .....                         | \$21 |
| (a) Responsibilities of Builders and Repairers.....      | \$21 |
| (b) Responsibilities of Authorized Representatives ..... | \$22 |

## SHIPPING

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (c) Marine Technical Review Board .....                                | \$23        |
| (d) Applicable Law .....   | \$24        |
| (e) Shipbuilding Contracts Generally .....                             | \$27        |
| 3. Purchase of Ships.....  | \$28        |
| 4. National Character of Ships .....                                   | \$30        |
| 5. Registration, Recording and Licensing of Ships .....                | \$31        |
| (a) General .....  | \$31        |
| (b) Registration.....  | \$32        |
| (c) Recording .....  | \$36        |
| (d) Small Commercial Vessel Registry .....                             | \$37        |
| (e) Pleasure Craft Licenses .....                                      | \$38        |
| (f) Application for Registry or Recording .....                        | \$39        |
| (g) Transfer of Ownership .....  | \$42        |
| (h) Suspension, Cancellation and Reinstatement of<br>Registration..... | \$44        |
| (i) Certificates of Registry .....                                     | \$46        |
| (j) Fees .....   | \$47        |
| 6. Title and Ownership of Vessels .....                                | \$48        |
| 7. Transfer of Ship Other Than by Voluntary Sale.....                  | \$50        |
| (a) Transmission of Interest .....                                     | \$50        |
| (b) Judicial Sales .....   | \$51        |
| (c) Sale Under Execution.....  | \$52        |
| 8. Mortgages of Ships .....  | \$55        |
| (a) General .....  | \$55        |
| (b) Power of Sale .....  | \$64        |
| (c) Interpretation of Mortgages.....                                   | \$65        |
| (d) Equitable Charges.....   | \$67        |
| (e) Priorities .....   | \$68        |
| <b>IV. Ship Management .....</b>                                       | <b>\$69</b> |
| 1. Authorized Representative .....                                     | \$69        |
| 2. Duties of Authorized Representatives.....                           | \$70        |
| 3. International Safety Management Code.....                           | \$71        |
| 4. Boat Rental Operators.....  | \$72        |
| 5. Guided Excursions and Human Powered Craft.....                      | \$73        |
| 6. White Water Rafting.....  | \$74        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>V. Crewing</b> .....                               | §75  |
| 1. General .....                                      | §75  |
| 2. Certification.....                                 | §76  |
| 3. Revocation.....                                    | §78  |
| 4. Authorized Representatives' Responsibilities ..... | §81  |
| 5. Masters' Responsibilities — Common Law.....        | §85  |
| 6. Masters' Responsibilities — Statutory .....        | §86  |
| 7. Crewing Agents.....                                | §87  |
| 8. Marine Medical Qualifications .....                | §88  |
| 9. Working Conditions.....                            | §90  |
| 10. Compensation for Death or Injury .....            | §94  |
| 11. Seafarers' Wages.....                             | §96  |
| 12. Wrongful Dismissal .....                          | §97  |
| 13. Pleasure Craft.....                               | §98  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>VI. Discipline on Board</b> .....                  | §99  |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>VII. Safety on Board</b> .....                     | §106 |
| 1. International Safety Management Code.....          | §106 |
| 2. Masters' Duties .....                              | §107 |
| 3. Crew Members' Duties.....                          | §108 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>VIII. Hull Construction and Equipment</b> .....    | §109 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>IX. Loading and Discharging — Regulatory</b> ..... | §116 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>X. Conduct of the Voyage</b> .....                 | §117 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XI. Marine Hazards and Casualties</b> .....        | §122 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XII. Investigation of Shipping Accidents</b> ..... | §129 |
| <br>  |      |
| <b>XIII. Carriage of Passengers</b> .....             | §130 |
| 1. Shipowner's Liability at Common Law.....           | §130 |

## SHIPPING

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 2. Exemptions from Part 4 of Maritime Liability Act .....                      | §132        |
| 3. Application of Part 4 of Maritime Liability Act and Athens Convention ..... | §135        |
| 4. Period of Responsibility .....  | §140        |
| 5. The Athens Convention Liability Regime .....                                | §141        |
| 6. The Monetary Limitation of Liability .....                                  | §145        |
| 7. Limitation Periods .....  | §148        |
| 8. Places Where Action May Be Brought .....                                    | §150        |
| 9. Heads of Damages Recoverable .....  | §151        |
| 10. Marine Passenger Security .....  | §152        |
| 11. Recreational Boating Schools .....   | §154        |
| <b>XIV. Carriage by Water .....</b>  | <b>§155</b> |
| 1. Common Law .....  | §155        |
| 2. General Statutory Duty .....  | §161        |
| 3. Charter-parties .....   | §163        |
| (a) General .....  | §163        |
| (b) Charter-party by Demise .....  | §165        |
| (c) Time Charter-party .....   | §167        |
| (d) Voyage Charter-party .....   | §168        |
| (e) Construction and Interpretation of Charter-party .....                     | §173        |
| (f) Liability of Owner of Chartered Ship .....                                 | §174        |
| (g) Charterer's Undertakings under Voyage Charter .....                        | §176        |
| (h) Deviation .....  | §177        |
| (i) Damages for Breach of Charter-party .....                                  | §178        |
| 4. Carriage under Bills of Lading .....  | §179        |
| (a) General .....  | §179        |
| (b) Types of Bills of Lading .....   | §180        |
| (c) Waybills Distinguished from Bills of Lading .....                          | §181        |
| (d) Hague-Visby Rules .....  | §182        |
| 5. Payment of Hire .....   | §197        |
| 6. Demurrage .....   | §198        |
| 7. Freight .....   | §201        |
| (a) General .....  | §201        |
| (b) Obligation to Pay Freight .....  | §202        |
| (c) Recovery of Freight Overpaid .....   | §203        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (d) Freight Prepaid .....                               | §204 |
| (e) Dead Freight .....                                  | §205 |
| 8. Standing to Assert Cargo Claim .....                 | §206 |
| 9. Where Cargo Claim Proceedings May Be Commenced ..... | §207 |
| 10. Applicable Law .....                                | §208 |
| <b>XV. Towage</b> .....                                 | §209 |
| 1. Towage and Carriage of Goods Distinguished.....      | §209 |
| 2. Obligations at Common Law .....                      | §211 |
| 3. Commencement and Completion of Services.....         | §217 |
| 4. Contractual Modification to Implied Obligations..... | §218 |
| 5. Responsibility for Damage to Outside Parties.....    | §220 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Bailment; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Carriers; Conflict of Laws; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Damages; Environmental Law; Evidence; Insurance; International Law; Negligence; Nuisance; Pledges; War and Emergency; Waters and Watercourses; Workers Compensation



# SPECIFIC PERFORMANCE

prepared by  
Heidi H. Francis, B.A.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> . . . . .  | §1  |
| 1. Jurisdiction . . . . .  | §1  |
| 2. Discretionary Nature of Jurisdiction . . . . .                  | §4  |
| 3. Rectification of Contract and Specific Performance . . . . .    | §17 |
| 4. Conditions Precedent to Relief . . . . .                        | §18 |
| 5. Time as Affecting Right to Performance . . . . .                | §28 |
| 6. Damages in Lieu of Specific Performance . . . . .               | §36 |
| 7. As Alternative Relief . . . . .                                 | §45 |
| 8. Injunction in Aid of Specific Performance . . . . .             | §52 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Grounds for Refusal</b> . . . . .                           | §53 |
| 1. Damages Adequate as Remedy . . . . .                            | §53 |
| 2. Absence or Inadequacy of Consideration . . . . .                | §58 |
| 3. Illegality of Contract . . . . .                                | §59 |
| 4. Statute of Frauds . . . . .                                     | §60 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §60 |
| (b) Doctrine of Part Performance . . . . .                         | §65 |
| (c) Variation and Rescission of Contracts Within Statute . . . . . | §72 |
| (d) Rectification and Specific Performance . . . . .               | §73 |
| 5. Absence of Mutuality . . . . .                                  | §76 |
| 6. Vagueness or Obscurity of Contract . . . . .                    | §81 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §81 |
| (b) Effect of Part Performance . . . . .                           | §86 |
| 7. Want of Equity . . . . .  | §90 |

SPECIFIC PERFORMANCE

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 8. Hardship in Enforcement . . . . .                                     | §93         |
| 9. Inability of Court of Supervise Performance . . . . .                 | §95         |
| 10. Incapacity of Defendant to Perform Contract . . . . .                | §104        |
| 11. Lack of Title . . . . .  | §108        |
| 12. Fraud and Misrepresentation . . . . .                                | §116        |
| (a) Fraud . . . . .  | §116        |
| (b) Misrepresentation . . . . .  | §118        |
| 13. Mistake . . . . .  | §122        |
| 14. Default or Delay by Plaintiff in Performing Contract . . . . .       | §126        |
| 15. Laches in Prosecuting Suit . . . . .                                 | §137        |
| 16. Performance Prejudicial to Third Persons . . . . .                   | §145        |
| 17. Contract Involving Breach of Trust . . . . .                         | §148        |
| 18. Transaction Ultra Vires Corporation . . . . .                        | §149        |
| 19. Transaction Offending Rule Against Perpetuities . . . . .            | §150        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>III. Specific Performance of Contracts for Sale of Land . . . . .</b> | <b>§151</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §151        |
| 2. Mining Claims . . . . .   | §160        |
| 3. Lands Outside Jurisdiction . . . . .                                  | §161        |
| 4. Specific Performance With Compensation . . . . .                      | §162        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IV. Specific Performance of Other Contracts . . . . .</b>             | <b>§171</b> |
| 1. Sales of Chattels . . . . .   | §171        |
| 2. Sales of Shared . . . . .   | §174        |
| 3. Building Contracts . . . . .  | §183        |
| 4. Leasing Contracts . . . . .   | §184        |
| 5. Contracts for Easements or Quasi-Easements . . . . .                  | §185        |
| 6. Personal Contracts . . . . .  | §187        |
| 7. Contracts as to Wills . . . . .                                       | §190        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>V. Enforcement of Trusts and Fiduciary Obligations . . . . .</b>      | <b>§194</b> |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VI. Parties . . . . .</b>   | <b>§195</b> |
| 1. Assignees . . . . .   | §195        |
| 2. Subsequent Purchasers . . . . .                                       | §196        |
| 3. Subpurchasers . . . . .   | §197        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 4. When Owner Estopped . . . . .          | \$198        |
| 5. Agents and Principals . . . . .        | \$199        |
| 6. Trustees . . . . .                     | \$205        |
| 7. Executors and Administrators . . . . . | \$206        |
| 8. The Crown . . . . .                    | \$207        |
| 9. Miscellaneous . . . . .                | \$208        |
| <b>VII. Practice . . . . .</b>            | <b>\$210</b> |
| 1. Pleading . . . . .                     | \$210        |
| 2. Costs . . . . .                        | \$213        |
| 3. The Decree . . . . .                   | \$214        |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Building Contracts; Contracts; Damages; Pleadings; Practice; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land.

# SPORTS

prepared by  
John Barnes, B.A., B.C.L. (Oxon.) of the Middle Temple,  
Barrister at Law

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

## Table of Sports Codes and Rules

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Statutory Regulation</b> .....                                    | §1  |
| 1. General .....  | §1  |
| (a) Jurisdiction .....  | §1  |
| (b) Physical Activity and Sport Act .....                               | §2  |
| (c) Funding of Sports, Fitness and Recreation Programs .....            | §8  |
| 2. Regulation of Sports .....   | §13 |
| (a) Illegal Animal Sports .....   | §13 |
| (b) Combat Sports .....   | §14 |
| (c) Horse Racing .....  | §16 |
| (d) Boating .....   | §21 |
| (e) Swimming .....  | §24 |
| (f) Consumer Protection .....   | §25 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Equality Rights and Discrimination</b> .....                     | §29 |
| 1. General .....  | §29 |
| (a) Application of the Canadian Charter of Rights and<br>Freedoms ..... | §29 |
| (b) Jurisdiction of Human Rights Commissions .....                      | §30 |
| 2. Prohibited Discrimination: Cases and Policies .....                  | §31 |
| (a) Sex .....   | §31 |
| (b) Disability .....  | §34 |
| (c) Age .....   | §35 |

SPORTS

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (d) Aboriginal Peoples .....   | §36        |
| (e) Race and Colour .....  | §37        |
| (f) Nationality .....  | §38        |
| (g) Language.....  | §39        |
| (h) Religion.....  | §40        |
| (i) Sexual Orientation and Transgender Status .....  | §41        |
| <b>III. Association Rules and Procedures: Litigation.....</b>  | <b>§42</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §42        |
| (a) Private Associations .....   | §42        |
| (b) Principles of Review .....   | §43        |
| (c) Types of Dispute and Decision.....   | §45        |
| 2. Rules and Decisions.....  | §46        |
| (a) Eligibility: Residence and Transfer .....  | §46        |
| (b) Eligibility: Duration Rules .....  | §49        |
| (c) Team Selection and Nomination.....   | §50        |
| (d) Discipline .....   | §51        |
| (e) Doping Control .....   | §52        |
| <b>IV. National and International Sport Organizations — Alter-<br/>native Dispute Resolution .....</b> | <b>§55</b> |
| 1. Sport Dispute Resolution Centre of Canada.....  | §55        |
| (a) Legislation and Operations.....  | §55        |
| (b) Canadian Sport Dispute Resolution Code.....  | §57        |
| 2. Decisions .....   | §66        |
| (a) Eligibility .....  | §66        |
| (b) General Selection and Selection of Athletes for<br>Teams.....                                      | §67        |
| (c) Carding and Funding .....  | §72        |
| (d) Discipline .....   | §74        |
| (e) Other Cases.....   | §75        |
| 3. Doping Control .....  | §76        |
| (a) World Anti-Doping Code.....  | §76        |
| (b) Canadian Anti-Doping Program .....   | §79        |
| (c) Procedural Rules for Arbitration.....  | §81        |
| (d) Doping Cases.....  | §85        |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 4. Court of Arbitration for Sport .....                  | §89         |
| (a) General .....  | §89         |
| (b) Canadian Cases .....                                 | §90         |
| <b>V. Professional Sports .....</b>                      | <b>§91</b>  |
| 1. Ownership, Financing and Management of Teams .....    | §91         |
| 2. Sports Broadcasting .....                             | §93         |
| 3. The Competition Act .....                             | §94         |
| 4. Labour Relations and Players' Associations .....      | §99         |
| 5. Service Contract .....                                | §103        |
| (a) General .....  | §103        |
| (b) Contract Negotiation and Duties of Agents .....      | §112        |
| 6. Promotion and Protection of Personality .....         | §113        |
| 7. Ownership of Trophies .....                           | §114        |
| <b>VI. Criminal Liability .....</b>                      | <b>§115</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §115        |
| 2. Criminal Assaults .....                               | §118        |
| 3. Sentencing .....                                      | §123        |
| 4. Sexual Offences in Sports Contexts .....              | §124        |
| <b>VII. Civil Liability for Sports Injuries .....</b>    | <b>§125</b> |
| 1. General .....   | §125        |
| 2. Civil Assaults .....                                  | §126        |
| 3. Occupiers' Liability .....                            | §131        |
| (a) Legislation .....                                    | §131        |
| (b) Statutory Liability .....                            | §135        |
| (i) Injuries to Participants .....                       | §135        |
| (ii) Injuries to Spectators .....                        | §136        |
| (c) Common Law Occupiers' Liability (Saskatchewan) ..... | §137        |
| 4. Negligence .....                                      | §138        |
| (a) Players .....  | §138        |
| (b) Operators .....                                      | §141        |
| (c) Schools and Instructors .....                        | §143        |
| (d) Others .....   | §148        |

SPORTS

---

5. Exclusion of Liability .....§152  
6. Nuisance .....§153  
7. Damages .....§154

**Index**

*Related titles:* Arbitration; Associations and Not-For-Profit Corporations; Contracts; Copyright; Criminal Law — Offences; Damages; Fish and Wildlife; Gaming; Human Rights; Injunctions; Negligence; Nuisance; Shipping; Trade and Commerce and Foreign Investment in Canada; Trade Marks and Industrial Designs; Trespass; Workers' Compensation

# STATUTES

prepared by  
Russell Yurkow, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

Arthur Rappich, O.L.S.

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Scope of Title</b> .....                           | §1  |
| <b>II. Framework of Statutes — Use and Effect</b> .....  | §3  |
| 1. Title .....   | §3  |
| 2. Table of Contents .....                               | §5  |
| 3. Preamble .....  | §6  |
| 4. Headings .....  | §12 |
| 5. Marginal Notes .....                                  | §18 |
| 6. Section and Subsection Numbers .....                  | §20 |
| 7. References to Former Enactments .....                 | §23 |
| 8. Provisos and Exceptions .....                         | §24 |
| 9. Punctuation and Capitals .....                        | §27 |
| 10. Schedules and Agreements .....                       | §33 |
| 11. Forms Prescribed by Statute .....                    | §37 |
| <b>III. Interpretation of Statutes</b> .....             | §40 |
| 1. Duty of Court .....                                   | §40 |
| 2. Statutory Provisions and Aids to Interpretation ..... | §47 |
| (a) Federal Statutory Provisions .....                   | §47 |
| (i) Bill of Rights .....                                 | §47 |
| (ii) Constitution Act, 1982 .....                        | §49 |
| (iii) Federal Interpretation Act .....                   | §55 |
| (b) Provincial Statutory Provisions .....                | §57 |



STATUTES

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (c) Interpretation Acts — Rules of General Application . . .        | §58  |
| (d) Interpretation Clauses . . . . .                                | §61  |
| (e) Bilingual Versions of Statutes . . . . .                        | §66  |
| (f) Speeches in Legislature . . . . .                               | §71  |
| (g) Use of Dictionaries . . . . .                                   | §72  |
| 3. Common Law Rules . . . . .                                       | §74  |
| (a) The Golden Rule: Ordinary Meaning . . . . .                     | §74  |
| (b) Modern or Purposive Approach . . . . .                          | §77  |
| (c) Avoidance of Absurdity, Inconsistency and Repugnancy . . . . .  | §82  |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §82  |
| (ii) Reference to Object . . . . .                                  | §94  |
| (iii) Interpolation and Deletion of Words . . . . .                 | §96  |
| (iv) Correction of Errors . . . . .                                 | §99  |
| (d) Judicial Interpretation . . . . .                               | §101 |
| (e) Regard for Natural Justice . . . . .                            | §102 |
| (f) Regard for Reasonableness . . . . .                             | §103 |
| (g) Regard for Object and Policy of Act . . . . .                   | §107 |
| (h) Regard for Uniformity . . . . .                                 | §116 |
| (i) Regard to Whole Statute . . . . .                               | §122 |
| (j) Origin and History of Statute . . . . .                         | §125 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §125 |
| (ii) Parliamentary Records . . . . .                                | §132 |
| (k) Collocation of Sections . . . . .                               | §142 |
| (l) Ejusdem Generis Rule . . . . .                                  | §143 |
| (m) Expressio Unius Est Exclusio Alterius . . . . .                 | §152 |
| (n) Statutes In Pari Materia . . . . .                              | §155 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §155 |
| (ii) Conflict . . . . .   | §161 |
| (o) Generalia Specialibus non Derogant . . . . .                    | §162 |
| (p) Statutes Incorporating Provisions of Other Statutes . . . . .   | §163 |
| (q) Interpretation as Imperative, Directory or Permissive . . . . . | §165 |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §165 |
| (ii) “Shall” and “May” . . . . .                                    | §175 |
| (iii) “Must” . . . . .  | §182 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(r) Same Words in Different Sense . . . . . §183  
(s) Technical, Scientific and Legal Expressions . . . . . §186  
4. Presumptions in Aid of Construction . . . . . §190  
    (a) General . . . . . §190  
    (b) Presumption in Favour of Validity . . . . . §192  
    (c) Presumption against Legislative Error . . . . . §195  
    (d) Presumption against Surplusage . . . . . §197  
    (e) Presumption from Change in Language or Arrangement . . . . . §198  
    (f) Presumption as to Alteration of Law . . . . . §202  
5. Construction of Classes of Statutes . . . . . §203  
    (a) Liberal Construction and Strict Construction . . . . . §203  
    (b) Statutes Affecting Common Law Rights . . . . . §208  
    (c) Statutes Creating New Causes of Action . . . . . §214  
    (d) Statutes Creating New Rights or Remedies . . . . . §215  
    (e) Statutes Creating Privileges . . . . . §222  
    (f) Statutes Affecting Contracts . . . . . §224  
    (g) Statutes Affecting Jurisdiction of Courts . . . . . §225  
    (h) Expropriation Statutes . . . . . §229  
    (i) Constitutional Enactments . . . . . §232  
        (i) General . . . . . §232  
        (ii) Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms . . . . . §238  
    (j) Codifying and Consolidating Statutes . . . . . §243  
    (k) Fiscal and Taxation Statutes . . . . . §244  
    (l) Penal and Criminal Statutes . . . . . §253  
        (i) General . . . . . §253  
        (ii) Prohibition Implied by Imposition of Penalty . . . . . §256  
        (iii) Strict Construction . . . . . §257  
        (iv) Effect of Repeal of Penal Statutes . . . . . §265  
        (v) Omissions . . . . . §268  
        (vi) Special and General Provisions . . . . . §269  
    (m) Public and Private Acts . . . . . §270  
    (n) Foreign Statutes . . . . . §277  
    (o) Persona Designata . . . . . §278  
    (p) Statutes Affecting Procedural Matters . . . . . §282  
    (q) Human Rights Statutes . . . . . §285

STATUTES

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (r) Family Law Legislation . . . . .  | §286        |
| <b>IV. Operation of Statutes . . . . .</b>  | <b>§287</b> |
| 1. Commencement . . . . .   | §287        |
| (a) Federal Statutes . . . . .  | §287        |
| (b) Provincial Statutes . . . . .   | §290        |
| (c) Rules of General Application . . . . .  | §293        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §293        |
| (ii) Suspension of Operation . . . . .  | §296        |
| 2. Duration . . . . .   | §297        |
| 3. Territorial Operation . . . . .  | §298        |
| 4. Retroactive Effect and Retrospective Effect . . . . .                          | §308        |
| (a) Declaratory Enactments . . . . .  | §308        |
| (b) Retroactive Statutes and Retrospective Statutes — Gen-<br>eral Rule . . . . . | §309        |
| (c) Statutes Relating to Procedure . . . . .                                      | §320        |
| 5. Revised Statutes . . . . .   | §330        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §330        |
| (b) Interpretation of Revised Statutes . . . . .                                  | §331        |
| (c) Effects of Revision . . . . .   | §333        |
| 6. Application of Statutes to Crown . . . . .                                     | §334        |
| <b>V. Enactment, Publication and Citation of Statutes . . . . .</b>               | <b>§338</b> |
| 1. Enactment and Publication . . . . .  | §338        |
| (a) Federal Statutes . . . . .  | §338        |
| (b) Provincial Statutes . . . . .   | §340        |
| 2. Citation of Statutes . . . . .   | §342        |
| <b>VI. Repeal, Amendment and Re-enactment of Statutes . . . . .</b>               | <b>§343</b> |
| 1. Repeal of Statutes . . . . .   | §343        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §343        |
| (b) Expiry of Temporary Act . . . . .   | §344        |
| (c) Repeal and Substitution . . . . .   | §345        |
| (d) Repeal and Re-enactment . . . . .   | §347        |
| (e) Repeal by Implication . . . . .   | §348        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §348        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(ii) General and Special Acts . . . . . §354

(f) Effects of Repeal . . . . . §362

    (i) Common Law Rules . . . . . §362

    (ii) Statutory Provisions Affecting Repeal . . . . . §365

    (iii) Effect on Orders in Council and Regulations . . . . . §372

    (iv) Effect on Amendments . . . . . §373

    (v) Effect on Criminal Statutes and Penalty Provisions . . . . . §375

    (vi) Effect on Regulations . . . . . §379

    (vii) Repeal of Provisions Incorporated by Reference  
        Into Other Acts . . . . . §380

    (viii) Repeal and Retroactivity . . . . . §381

2. Amending Acts . . . . . §382

    (a) General . . . . . §382

    (b) Amendment and Retroactivity . . . . . §386

    (c) Amendment of Limitation Periods . . . . . §391

3. Re-enacted Statutes . . . . . §393

**VII. Regulations and Orders in Council . . . . . §396**

    1. General . . . . . §396

    2. Interpretation of Regulations . . . . . §401

    3. Conflict With Parent Legislation . . . . . §404

    4. Exceeding Scope of Authority . . . . . §406

    5. Repeal of Parent Act . . . . . §409

    6. Filing and Publication — Effect . . . . . §410

**Index**

*Related titles:* Courts; Expropriation; Constitutional Law; Income Tax; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Criminal Law; Human Rights; Crown; Evidence; Conflict of Laws.

# TELECOMMUNICATIONS

prepared by  
Michael H. Ryan, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Scope of Title</b> .....  | §1  |
| <b>II. Federal-Provincial Division of Powers</b> .....                  | §2  |
| <b>III. Federal Legislation</b> .....                                   | §10 |
| 1. General .....  | §10 |
| 2. Telecommunications Act .....   | §11 |
| 3. Special Acts .....   | §14 |
| (a) Bell Canada .....   | §14 |
| (b) Telesat Canada .....  | §18 |
| (c) Teleglobe Canada .....  | §20 |
| <b>IV. Federal Institutions</b> .....                                   | §21 |
| 1. Department of Industry .....   | §21 |
| 2. Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications<br>Commission ..... | §28 |
| (a) Constitution and Organization .....                                 | §28 |
| (b) Jurisdiction, Duties and Powers .....                               | §32 |
| (c) CRTC Proceedings .....  | §40 |
| (d) Reconsideration of Decisions .....                                  | §51 |
| (e) Appeals .....   | §52 |
| (f) Judicial Review .....   | §60 |
| 3. Governor in Council .....  | §62 |

TELECOMMUNICATIONS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) Duties and Functions in Relation to CRTC . . . . .                      | §62         |
| (b) Regulation-making . . . . .   | §65         |
| (c) “Cabinet Appeals” . . . . .   | §67         |
| 4. Commissioner for Complaints for Telecommunications<br>Services . . . . . | §68         |
| <b>V. Regulation of Carriers . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>§69</b>  |
| 1. Scope of Regulation . . . . .  | §69         |
| 2. Authority to Operate . . . . .   | §72         |
| (a) Canadian Ownership and Control . . . . .                                | §72         |
| (b) International Licences . . . . .  | §73         |
| (c) Radiocommunication Licences . . . . .                                   | §76         |
| (d) International Submarine Cable Licences . . . . .                        | §80         |
| 3. Commission’s Regulatory Jurisdiction . . . . .                           | §83         |
| (a) Rates and Tariffs . . . . .   | §83         |
| (b) Non-discrimination . . . . .  | §94         |
| (c) Forbearance . . . . .   | §97         |
| (d) Interconnection . . . . .   | §101        |
| (e) Working Agreements . . . . .  | §102        |
| (f) Installation and Use of Facilities . . . . .                            | §103        |
| (g) Obligation to Serve . . . . .   | §116        |
| (h) Unsolicited Telecommunications . . . . .                                | §121        |
| (i) Other . . . . .   | §124        |
| <b>VI. Liability of Carriers . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>§129</b> |
| 1. Breach of Statute . . . . .  | §129        |
| 2. Liability in Tort and Contract . . . . .                                 | §131        |
| 3. Limitation of Liability . . . . .  | §139        |
| <b>VII. Telecommunications Apparatus . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§147</b> |
| <b>VIII. Offences and Penalties under Federal Legislation . . . . .</b>     | <b>§150</b> |
| 1. Offences and Penalties under the Telecommunications Act . . . . .        | §150        |
| 2. Offences and Penalties under the Radiocommunication Act . . . . .        | §153        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

3. Offences and Penalties under the Criminal Code . . . . . §159

**IX. Provincial Legislation . . . . . §162**

1. General . . . . . §162

2. British Columbia . . . . . §163

3. Manitoba . . . . . §166

4. Saskatchewan . . . . . §168

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Constitutional Law; Criminal Law — Offences; Crown; Easements; Evidence; Expropriation; Internet Law; Municipal Corporations; Public Utilities; Radio And Television; Railways

# TIMBER

prepared by  
Joan Dunlop, LL.B.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                  | § 1  |
| <b>II. Rights in Timber</b> .....             | § 2  |
| 1. Definitions .....                          | § 2  |
| 2. Nature of Rights.....                      | § 10 |
| 3. Statutory Rights.....                      | § 27 |
| (a) Alberta.....                              | § 27 |
| (b) Ontario .....                             | § 28 |
| 4. Reservation of Trees in Crown Grants ..... | § 32 |
| (a) British Columbia.....                     | § 32 |
| (b) Ontario .....                             | § 33 |
| (c) Saskatchewan .....                        | § 40 |
| 5. Tenant for Life.....                       | § 41 |
| 6. Waste .....                                | § 44 |
| 7. Expropriation.....                         | § 47 |
| 8. Assessment .....                           | § 51 |
| 9. Marking .....                              | § 57 |
| (a) British Columbia.....                     | § 57 |
| (b) Canada .....                              | § 59 |
| 10. Security Under the Bank Act.....          | § 72 |
| 11. Shade and Ornamental Trees.....           | § 73 |
| (a) General .....                             | § 73 |
| (b) Ontario .....                             | § 74 |



TIMBER

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>III. Trespass to Timber</b> .....               | §78  |
| 1. Who May Maintain Action .....                   | §78  |
| 2. Rights of Crown.....                            | §83  |
| 3. Rights of Municipalities .....                  | §86  |
| 4. Rights of Licensees.....                        | §95  |
| (a) General.....                                   | §95  |
| (b) Alberta .....                                  | §96  |
| (c) British Columbia.....                          | §97  |
| (d) Manitoba .....                                 | §98  |
| (e) Ontario .....                                  | §99  |
| (f) Saskatchewan .....                             | §102 |
| 5. Measure of Damages .....                        | §107 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>IV. Sales of Timber</b> .....                   | §117 |
| 1. General .....                                   | §117 |
| 2. Interpretation of Contracts.....                | §127 |
| (a) General .....                                  | §127 |
| (b) Time .....                                     | §134 |
| (c) Measurement.....                               | §135 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>V. Timber Licences</b> .....                    | §137 |
| 1. General .....                                   | §137 |
| 2. Legislation .....                               | §141 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                   | §141 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                         | §144 |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                 | §146 |
| (d) Ontario .....                                  | §149 |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....                              | §172 |
| (f) Canada .....                                   | §186 |
| 3. Rights of Licensee .....                        | §187 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>VI. Floating and Driving Timber</b> .....       | §192 |
| 1. Rights in Streams and Rivers.....               | §192 |
| 2. Lakes and Rivers Improvement Act (Ontario)..... | §197 |
| (a) Public Rights.....                             | §197 |
| (b) Tolls .....                                    | §202 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Obstruction.....                                  | §203        |
| <b>VII. Right of Way .....</b>                        | <b>§204</b> |
| <b>VIII. Forestry Workers' Liens .....</b>            | <b>§207</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....                                      | §207        |
| 2. British Columbia .....                             | §215        |
| 3. Manitoba.....                                      | §228        |
| 4. Ontario .....                                      | §233        |
| (a) Scope and Extent Of Legislation.....              | §233        |
| (b) Order of Priority.....                            | §237        |
| (c) Miscellaneous.....                                | §239        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                                 | §244        |
| <b>IX. Conservation and Protection of Trees .....</b> | <b>§250</b> |
| 1. Alberta — Forests Act .....                        | §250        |
| 2. British Columbia .....                             | §251        |
| (a) Forest Act .....                                  | §251        |
| (b) Ministry Of Forests Act.....                      | §255        |
| (c) Forest Stand Management Fund Act.....             | §256        |
| (d) Forest and Range Protection Act.....              | §258        |
| 3. Manitoba — Forest Act.....                         | §270        |
| 4. Ontario .....                                      | §271        |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                                 | §281        |
| 6. Canada .....                                       | §291        |
| <b>X. Logging Tax .....</b>                           | <b>§293</b> |
| <b>XI. Criminal Offences.....</b>                     | <b>§294</b> |
| <b>XII. Forest Fires Prevention .....</b>             | <b>§297</b> |
| 1. Alberta .....                                      | §297        |
| 2. Manitoba.....                                      | §302        |
| 3. Ontario.....                                       | §311        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                                 | §315        |
| <b>Index</b>  |             |

## TIMBER

---

*Related titles:* Contracts; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Offences; Crown; Environmental Law; Expropriation; Federal And Provincial Taxation; Fires; Liens; Real Property; Trespass; Waters And Watercourses

# TIME

prepared by  
Arthur Rappich, O.L.S.

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Divisions of Time</b> .....                    | §1  |
| 1. Year .....  | §1  |
| (a) General .....                                    | §1  |
| (b) Calendar Year .....                              | §3  |
| (c) Dominical Year .....                             | §6  |
| (d) Fiscal Year or Financial Year .....              | §7  |
| (e) School Year .....                                | §8  |
| 2. Divisions of the Year .....                       | §9  |
| (a) Month .....                                      | §9  |
| (b) Week .....                                       | §11 |
| (c) Day .....  | §12 |
| (i) General .....                                    | §12 |
| (ii) Sundays, Holidays, and Non-Juridical Days ..... | §14 |
| (d) Fractions of a Day .....                         | §21 |
| (e) Quarters and Quarter-Days .....                  | §22 |
| <b>II. Expressions of Time</b> .....                 | §23 |
| 1. General .....                                     | §23 |
| 2. Time of Day .....                                 | §25 |
| 3. Within Meaning of Criminal Code .....             | §26 |
| 4. Forthwith .....                                   | §34 |
| 5. Time of the Essence .....                         | §35 |
| 6. As Soon as Possible .....                         | §41 |

TIME

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 7. At Once . . . . .   | §42         |
| 8. Reasonable Time . . . . .                                     | §43         |
| 9. Until . . . . .   | §44         |
| 10. From . . . . .   | §45         |
| 11. At Least . . . . .   | §46         |
| 12. By . . . . .   | §47         |
| 13. At Intervals of . . . . .                                    | §48         |
| 14. Conflicting Expressions of Time . . . . .                    | §49         |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>III. Official Time . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§50</b>  |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IV. Computation of Time . . . . .</b>                         | <b>§62</b>  |
| 1. Calculation of Prescribed Period . . . . .                    | §62         |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §62         |
| (b) Years . . . . .  | §64         |
| (c) Months . . . . .   | §69         |
| (d) Days Included or Excluded . . . . .                          | §74         |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §74         |
| (ii) Holidays Included or Excluded . . . . .                     | §87         |
| (e) Fractions of a Day . . . . .                                 | §97         |
| (f) Court Vacations . . . . .                                    | §98         |
| 2. Age of Person . . . . .                                       | §105        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>V. Abridgment and Extension of Time Limitations . . . . .</b> | <b>§106</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Contracts; Limitation of Actions; Oil and Gas; Pleadings; Practice; Statutes; Trials.

# TORTS

prepared by  
Edwin Durbin, B.Comm., LL.B., LL.M.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                       | §1  |
| 1. Scope of Title . . . . .                            | §1  |
| 2. Nature of Tort Law . . . . .                        | §3  |
| 3. Distinction Between Torts . . . . .                 | §7  |
| 4. Development of New Torts . . . . .                  | §11 |
| 5. Function of Tort Law . . . . .                      | §13 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Principles of Liability</b> . . . . .           | §14 |
| 1. Standard of Liability . . . . .                     | §14 |
| (a) Intention . . . . .                                | §14 |
| (b) Negligence . . . . .                               | §18 |
| (c) Strict Liability . . . . .                         | §19 |
| 2. Volition . . . . .                                  | §20 |
| 3. Motive . . . . .                                    | §23 |
| 4. Mistake . . . . .                                   | §26 |
| 5. Duty to Injured Party . . . . .                     | §28 |
| 6. Interest Harmed . . . . .                           | §30 |
| 7. Burden of Proof . . . . .                           | §33 |
| 8. Concurrent Liability in Contract and Tort . . . . . | §36 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>III. Parties and Status</b> . . . . .               | §41 |
| 1. Plaintiffs . . . . .                                | §41 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                  | §41 |

## TORTS

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (b) Infants and Dependants . . . . .              | §42        |
| (c) Husband and Wife . . . . .                    | §44        |
| (d) Employers . . . . .                           | §45        |
| (e) Corporation . . . . .                         | §46        |
| (f) Partnerships . . . . .                        | §47        |
| (g) Municipal Corporations . . . . .              | §48        |
| (h) Unincorporated Associations . . . . .         | §50        |
| (i) Bankrupts and Receivers . . . . .             | §53        |
| 2. Defendants . . . . .                           | §56        |
| (a) General . . . . .                             | §56        |
| (b) Infants and Dependants . . . . .              | §57        |
| (c) Corporations . . . . .                        | §58        |
| (d) Partnerships . . . . .                        | §59        |
| (e) Municipal Corporations . . . . .              | §60        |
| (f) Unincorporated Associations . . . . .         | §61        |
| (g) Crown . . . . .                               | §62        |
| (h) Bankrupts and Receivers . . . . .             | §64        |
| 3. Vicarious Liability . . . . .                  | §66        |
| (a) General . . . . .                             | §66        |
| (b) Parent and Child . . . . .                    | §67        |
| (c) Husband and Wife . . . . .                    | §69        |
| (d) Employers . . . . .                           | §70        |
| (e) Partnerships . . . . .                        | §72        |
| (f) Principal and Agent . . . . .                 | §73        |
| 4. Joint Torts . . . . .                          | §74        |
| (a) General . . . . .                             | §74        |
| (b) Defining Joint Tortfeasors . . . . .          | §76        |
| (c) Judgments Against Joint Tortfeasors . . . . . | §78        |
| 5. Effect of Death (Survival of Action) . . . . . | §80        |
| (a) Common Law . . . . .                          | §80        |
| (b) Statutory Rights . . . . .                    | §81        |
| 6. Assignment of Cause of Action . . . . .        | §82        |
| <b>IV. Defences . . . . .</b>                     | <b>§85</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                              | §85        |
| 2. Self-Defence and Defence of Property . . . . . | §86        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Necessity . . . . .                                  | §89         |
| 4. Ex Turpi Causa Non Oritur Actio . . . . .            | §90         |
| 5. Volenti non fit injuria . . . . .                    | §95         |
| 6. Consent . . . . .                                    | §97         |
| 7. Official Acts . . . . .                              | §100        |
| 8. Statutory Authority . . . . .                        | §101        |
| 9. Statutes of Limitation . . . . .                     | §103        |
| 10. Res Judicata . . . . .                              | §106        |
| 11. Accord and Satisfaction or Release . . . . .        | §107        |
| <b>V. Remedies . . . . .</b>                            | <b>§108</b> |
| 1. Self-help . . . . .                                  | §108        |
| 2. Damages . . . . .                                    | §109        |
| 3. Declaration . . . . .                                | §112        |
| 4. Injunction . . . . .                                 | §113        |
| <b>VI. Jurisdiction . . . . .</b>                       | <b>§114</b> |
| 1. Intra-Jurisdictional Torts . . . . .                 | §114        |
| 2. In Personam Jurisdiction . . . . .                   | §117        |
| <b>VII. Concurrent Criminal Liability . . . . .</b>     | <b>§120</b> |
| <b>VIII. Constitutional Issues . . . . .</b>            | <b>§124</b> |
| <b>IX. Specific Torts . . . . .</b>                     | <b>§126</b> |
| 1. Invasion of Privacy . . . . .                        | §126        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §126        |
| (b) Common Law . . . . .                                | §128        |
| (c) Statutory Rights . . . . .                          | §130        |
| 2. Appropriation of Personality . . . . .               | §135        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §135        |
| (b) Common Law . . . . .                                | §136        |
| (c) Statutory Rights . . . . .                          | §140        |
| 3. Intentional Infliction of Mental Suffering . . . . . | §142        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §142        |
| (b) Elements of Cause of Action . . . . .               | §144        |



## TORTS

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (c) Defences . . . . .                                     | §147 |
| 4. Inducing Breach of Contract . . . . .                   | §148 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §148 |
| (b) Elements of Cause of Action . . . . .                  | §149 |
| (c) Defences . . . . .                                     | §157 |
| 5. Breach of Confidence . . . . .                          | §159 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §159 |
| (b) Elements of Cause of Action . . . . .                  | §160 |
| (c) Defences . . . . .                                     | §165 |
| (d) Remedies . . . . .                                     | §166 |
| 6. Unlawful Interference With Economic Interests . . . . . | §168 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §168 |
| (b) Elements of Cause of Action . . . . .                  | §169 |
| 7. Champerty and Maintenance . . . . .                     | §172 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §172 |
| (b) Elements of Cause of Action . . . . .                  | §175 |
| 8. Intimidation . . . . .                                  | §181 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §181 |
| (b) Elements of Cause of Action . . . . .                  | §182 |
| 9. Passing Off . . . . .                                   | §191 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §191 |
| (b) Elements of Cause of Action . . . . .                  | §194 |
| 10. Abuse of Process . . . . .                             | §204 |
| (a) General . . . . .                                      | §204 |
| (b) Elements of Cause of Action . . . . .                  | §205 |
| (c) Defences . . . . .                                     | §210 |
| 11. Sexual Harassment . . . . .                            | §212 |
| 12. Interference with Employment Relations . . . . .       | §213 |
| 13. Interference with Domestic Relations . . . . .         | §214 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Administrative Law; Agency; Associations And Not-For-Profit Corporations; Barristers And Solicitors; Business Corporations; Children; Conflict Of Laws; Conspiracy; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Courts; Crown; Damages; Defamation; Employment Law; Estoppel; Family Law — General; Fraud And Misrepresentation; Highways And Streets; Hospitals; Injunctions; Insurance; Internet Law; Judgments And Orders; Limitation Of Actions; Malicious Prosecution And False Imprison-

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

ment; Medicine; Mental Incapacity; Motor Vehicles; Municipal Corporations; Negligence; Nuisance; Parties; Partnership, Personal Property; Pleadings; Practice; Privacy And Freedom Of Information; Public Authorities And Public Officers; Restitution; Secured Transactions In Personal Property; Trade And Commerce And Foreign Investment In Canada; Trade Marks And Industrial Designs; Trespass

# TRADE AND COMMERCE AND FOREIGN INVESTMENT IN CANADA

prepared by  
Richard E. Levinson, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and New York Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Trade and Commerce</b> .....                                | §1  |
| 1. Introduction .....   | §1  |
| 2. Constitutional Principles .....                                | §2  |
| (a) General Principles.....                                       | §2  |
| (b) Historical Perspective.....                                   | §3  |
| (c) Restraints on Expansion of Trade and Commerce .....           | §4  |
| (d) Marketing.....  | §6  |
| (e) Specific Industries Covered under Trade and<br>Commerce ..... | §7  |
| 3. Trade Custom and Usage .....                                   | §8  |
| 4. Restraint of Trade .....                                       | §11 |
| 5. Restrictive Covenants .....                                    | §15 |
| 6. Sale of Business.....  | §17 |
| 7. Combines and Competition Legislation.....                      | §20 |
| 8. Marketing Controls .....                                       | §26 |
| 9. Trade Secrets and Confidential Information.....                | §32 |
| 10. Exports and Imports.....                                      | §42 |
| 11. Commercial Expression .....                                   | §47 |
| 12. Impairment of Extraprovincial Rights.....                     | §51 |
| 13. Mobility — People, Goods and Services .....                   | §53 |
| 14. Government Subsidies and Development Initiatives.....         | §56 |

TRADE AND COMMERCE AND FOREIGN INVESTMENT IN  
CANADA

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>II. Foreign Investment Law in Canada</b> .....              | \$57  |
| 1. Federal Regulation of Particular Economic Sectors.....      | \$57  |
| (a) Banking .....  | \$57  |
| (b) Broadcasting .....   | \$62  |
| (c) Insurance .....  | \$63  |
| (d) Energy .....   | \$68  |
| (i) General.....   | \$68  |
| (ii) Canada Petroleum Resources Act .....                      | \$70  |
| (iii) Canadian Ownership and Control Determination<br>Act..... | \$72  |
| (e) Marketing Schemes .....                                    | \$78  |
| (f) Telecommunications.....                                    | \$79  |
| 2. Key Federal Statutes Affecting Trade and Commerce .....     | \$80  |
| (a) Citizenship Act .....                                      | \$80  |
| (b) Canada Business Corporations Act .....                     | \$81  |
| (c) Criminal Code.....   | \$84  |
| (d) Canada Development Corporation Act.....                    | \$85  |
| (e) Canadian Food Inspection Agency Act.....                   | \$86  |
| (f) Canadian Wheat Board Act.....                              | \$87  |
| (g) Consumer Packaging and Labelling Act.....                  | \$88  |
| (h) Farm Products Agencies Act .....                           | \$89  |
| (i) Hazardous Products Act.....                                | \$90  |
| (j) Investment Canada Act.....                                 | \$91  |
| (k) Meat Inspection Act.....                                   | \$99  |
| (l) Tobacco Act .....  | \$101 |
| (m) Trade Acts .....   | \$102 |
| 3. Federal Statutes Dealing with International Trade.....      | \$104 |
| <b>III. Provincial Regulation</b> .....                        | \$111 |
| 1. Alberta .....   | \$111 |
| (a) Agricultural and Recreational Land Ownership Act.....      | \$111 |
| (b) Alberta Competitiveness Act .....                          | \$115 |
| (c) Business Corporations Act.....                             | \$116 |
| (d) Fair Trading Act.....                                      | \$117 |
| (e) Land Titles Act.....                                       | \$119 |

## TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (f) Gaming and Liquor Act.....                             | §121 |
| (g) Public Lands Act.....                                  | §122 |
| 2. British Columbia.....                                   | §123 |
| (a) Business Practices and Consumer Protection Act.....    | §123 |
| (b) Financial Institutions Act.....                        | §124 |
| (c) Land Act.....  | §125 |
| (d) Liquor Control and Licensing Act.....                  | §126 |
| (e) Mineral Tenure Act.....                                | §127 |
| (f) Securities Act.....                                    | §128 |
| 3. Manitoba.....   | §129 |
| (a) Corporations Act.....                                  | §129 |
| (b) Discriminatory Business Practices Act.....             | §131 |
| (c) Farm Products Marketing Act.....                       | §133 |
| (d) Liquor Control Act.....                                | §134 |
| (e) Securities Act.....                                    | §135 |
| (f) Trade and Investment Corporation Act.....              | §136 |
| 4. Ontario.....  | §137 |
| (a) Business Corporations Act.....                         | §137 |
| (b) Collection Agencies Act.....                           | §138 |
| (c) Discriminatory Business Practices Act.....             | §139 |
| (d) Economic Development and Trade Act.....                | §144 |
| (e) Ontario Transportation Development Corporation Act.... | §146 |
| (f) Paperback and Periodical Distributors Act.....         | §147 |
| (g) Securities Act.....                                    | §148 |
| 5. Saskatchewan.....                                       | §149 |
| (a) Alcohol and Gaming Regulation Act.....                 | §149 |
| (b) Business Corporations Act.....                         | §151 |
| (c) Economic and Co-operative Development Act.....         | §152 |
| (d) Saskatchewan Farm Security Act.....                    | §153 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Agriculture; Banking; Business Corporations; Constitutional Law; Customs and Excise; Employment Law; Federal and Provincial Taxation; Gaming; Injunctions; Insurance; Internet Law; Liquor Control; Mines and Minerals; Mortgages; Oil and Gas; Professions and Occupations; Radio and Television; Real Property; Sale of Goods; Sale of Land; Securities and Stock Exchanges; Telecommunications; Torts; Weights and Measures

# TRADE MARKS AND INDUSTRIAL DESIGNS

prepared by  
Martin P.J. Kratz, B.Sc., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. History and Legislation</b> .....             | §1  |
| 1. Canadian Legislation .....                       | §1  |
| 2. Constitutionality .....                          | §8  |
| 3. International Convention .....                   | §10 |
| <b>II. Administration and General Matters</b> ..... | §13 |
| 1. General .....                                    | §13 |
| 2. The Registrar of Trade Marks .....               | §15 |
| 3. Trade-Mark Agents .....                          | §18 |
| 4. The Register of Trade-marks .....                | §21 |
| <b>III. Definition and General Principles</b> ..... | §28 |
| 1. Definitions .....                                | §28 |
| 2. Proposed Trade-marks .....                       | §32 |
| 3. Certification Marks .....                        | §36 |
| 4. Distinctiveness .....                            | §42 |
| 5. Secondary Meaning .....                          | §50 |
| 6. Proprietor Need Not Be Known .....               | §52 |
| 7. Change of Purpose in Use of a Trade-Mark .....   | §53 |
| <b>IV. Acquisition of Trade-Mark Rights</b> .....   | §54 |

## TRADE MARKS AND INDUSTRIAL DESIGNS

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 1. Adoption . . . . .   | §54        |
| 2. Making Known . . . . .   | §59        |
| 3. Use . . . . .  | §63        |
| 4. Deviating Use . . . . .  | §78        |
| 5. Who May Acquire Trade-Mark Rights . . . . .                                | §80        |
| <b>V. Registrable Trade-marks . . . . .</b>                                   | <b>§83</b> |
| 1. What Trade-marks are Registrable . . . . .                                 | §83        |
| 2. Names or Surnames of Individuals . . . . .                                 | §85        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §85        |
| (b) Names of Historical Characters . . . . .                                  | §90        |
| (c) Fictitious Names . . . . .  | §91        |
| (d) Signatures and Portraits . . . . .  | §92        |
| 3. Descriptive or Deceptively Misdescriptive Trade-marks . . . . .            | §94        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §94        |
| (b) Invented Words . . . . .  | §101       |
| (c) Suggestive Words . . . . .  | §102       |
| (d) Foreign Words . . . . .   | §103       |
| (e) Misspelt Words . . . . .  | §104       |
| (f) Geographical Words . . . . .  | §105       |
| (g) Conditions of or the Persons Employed in Production of<br>Wares . . . . . | §106       |
| (h) Disclaimer . . . . .  | §107       |
| 4. Secondary Meaning . . . . .  | §108       |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §108       |
| (b) Personal Names . . . . .  | §121       |
| (c) Descriptive Words . . . . .   | §122       |
| (d) Geographical Words . . . . .  | §125       |
| (e) Must Be Used in Canada . . . . .  | §126       |
| 5. Names of Wares or Services . . . . .                                       | §127       |
| 6. Confusing Trade-marks . . . . .  | §129       |
| 7. Associated Trade-marks . . . . .   | §131       |
| 8. Distinguishing Guises . . . . .  | §134       |
| 9. Trade-marks Registered Abroad . . . . .                                    | §144       |
| 10. Registration of Concurrent Rights . . . . .                               | §150       |
| 11. Prohibited and Fraudulent Trade-marks . . . . .                           | §153       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 12. Official Marks . . . . .                                      | §158        |
| 13. Domain Names and Telephone Numbers . . . . .                  | §163        |
| <b>VI. Registration of Trade-marks . . . . .</b>                  | <b>§165</b> |
| 1. Persons Entitled to Registration . . . . .                     | §165        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §165        |
| (b) Actual Use or Making Known . . . . .                          | §168        |
| (c) Trade-marks Registered Abroad . . . . .                       | §172        |
| (d) Proposed Trade-marks . . . . .                                | §177        |
| (e) Abandoned Applications and Use . . . . .                      | §182        |
| 2. Applications for Registration . . . . .                        | §184        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §184        |
| (b) Colour . . . . .  | §186        |
| (c) Consideration of Applications by the Registrar . . . . .      | §188        |
| (d) Reply to Official Notices . . . . .                           | §191        |
| (e) Amendment of Applications . . . . .                           | §194        |
| (f) Disclaimer . . . . .  | §198        |
| (g) Advertisement of Applications . . . . .                       | §203        |
| 3. Opposition Proceedings . . . . .                               | §204        |
| 4. Allowance and Registration . . . . .                           | §229        |
| 5. Appeal . . . . .   | §231        |
| 6. Validity and Effect of Registration . . . . .                  | §247        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §247        |
| (b) Incontestability . . . . .                                    | §248        |
| (c) Invalidity . . . . .  | §249        |
| (d) Effect of Registration . . . . .                              | §250        |
| 7. Renewal of Registrations Trade-marks on the Register . . . . . | §254        |
| <b>VII. Confusing Trade-marks . . . . .</b>                       | <b>§255</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §255        |
| 2. The Statutory Criteria . . . . .                               | §256        |
| 3. Inherent Distinctiveness . . . . .                             | §272        |
| 4. Duration of Use . . . . .                                      | §276        |
| 5. The Nature of the Wares, Services or Business . . . . .        | §278        |
| 6. Nature of the Trade . . . . .                                  | §282        |
| 7. Degree of Resemblance . . . . .                                | §289        |



## TRADE MARKS AND INDUSTRIAL DESIGNS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §289        |
| (b) Appearance . . . . .                                | §290        |
| (i) Identical Trade-marks . . . . .                     | §290        |
| (ii) Taking of Essential Features . . . . .             | §291        |
| (iii) Prefixes and Suffixes . . . . .                   | §292        |
| (iv) Colourable Imitation . . . . .                     | §293        |
| (c) Sound . . . . .                                     | §294        |
| (d) Idea . . . . .                                      | §300        |
| (e) Word Marks and Design Marks . . . . .               | §301        |
| 8. Reverse Confusion . . . . .                          | §305        |
| 9. Initial Interest Confusion . . . . .                 | §306        |
| 10. Famous Marks . . . . .                              | §308        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VIII. Assignment and Registered Users . . . . .</b>  | <b>§310</b> |
| 1. Assignment . . . . .                                 | §310        |
| 2. Licences . . . . .                                   | §321        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Determination of Trade-Mark Rights . . . . .</b> | <b>§325</b> |
| 1. Abandonment . . . . .                                | §325        |
| 2. Loss of Distinctiveness . . . . .                    | §329        |
| (a) Improper Assignment . . . . .                       | §329        |
| (b) Improper Licensing . . . . .                        | §331        |
| (c) Common Use of a Trade-Mark . . . . .                | §332        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>X. Amendment of the Register . . . . .</b>           | <b>§334</b> |
| 1. Amendment by the Registrar . . . . .                 | §334        |
| (a) Amendment on Application . . . . .                  | §334        |
| (b) Change of Representative . . . . .                  | §338        |
| (c) Additional Representations . . . . .                | §339        |
| (d) Failure to Renew . . . . .                          | §340        |
| 2. Removal by the Registrar for Non-Use . . . . .       | §342        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                   | §342        |
| (b) Initiating the Procedure . . . . .                  | §346        |
| (c) Evidence . . . . .                                  | §348        |
| (d) Effect of Absence of Use . . . . .                  | §356        |
| (e) Hearing . . . . .                                   | §358        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (f) The Decision . . . . .  | §359        |
| (g) Appeal . . . . .  | §361        |
| 3. Expungement by the Federal Court . . . . .                                 | §364        |
| (a) Jurisdiction . . . . .  | §364        |
| (b) Public Interest . . . . .   | §366        |
| (c) Person Interested . . . . .   | §367        |
| (d) Limitations . . . . .   | §371        |
| (e) Grounds for Expungement . . . . .   | §374        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §374        |
| (ii) Not Registrable . . . . .  | §375        |
| (iii) Not Distinctive . . . . .   | §377        |
| (iv) Abandonment . . . . .  | §379        |
| (v) Entitlement . . . . .   | §380        |
| (vi) Competition Act . . . . .  | §381        |
| (f) Practice . . . . .  | §382        |
| (g) Res Judicata . . . . .  | §391        |
| <b>XI. Infringement . . . . .</b>   | <b>§393</b> |
| 1. Definition . . . . .   | §393        |
| 2. Depreciating the Value of the Goodwill Attaching to a Trade-Mark . . . . . | §397        |
| 3. Infringement and Passing Off Distinguished . . . . .                       | §403        |
| 4. Infringement When Copyright Exists . . . . .                               | §405        |
| 5. Distinguishing Guise . . . . .   | §406        |
| 6. Intention . . . . .  | §409        |
| 7. Adulteration of Wares . . . . .  | §410        |
| 8. Second-Hand Goods . . . . .  | §411        |
| 9. Reconditioned Goods . . . . .  | §412        |
| 10. Spare Parts . . . . .   | §413        |
| 11. Goods of Different Quality . . . . .                                      | §414        |
| 12. Use of Containers . . . . .   | §415        |
| 13. Importation . . . . .   | §416        |
| 14. Export . . . . .  | §417        |
| <b>XII. Passing Off . . . . .</b>   | <b>§418</b> |
| 1. General Principles . . . . .   | §418        |

## TRADE MARKS AND INDUSTRIAL DESIGNS

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (a) Basis of the Action . . . . .                           | §418 |
| (b) Trade-marks Act . . . . .                               | §424 |
| (c) Reputation or Goodwill . . . . .                        | §428 |
| (d) Common Field of Activity . . . . .                      | §432 |
| (e) Misrepresentation . . . . .                             | §434 |
| (f) Intention . . . . .                                     | §438 |
| (g) Confusion . . . . .                                     | §442 |
| (h) Damage . . . . .  | §447 |
| (i) Passing Off and Infringement Distinguished . . . . .    | §449 |
| 2. Types of Passing Off . . . . .                           | §452 |
| (a) Copying Trade-marks . . . . .                           | §452 |
| (i) General . . . . .                                       | §452 |
| (ii) Plaintiff's Own Wares . . . . .                        | §453 |
| (iii) Descriptive Marks . . . . .                           | §454 |
| (iv) Geographical Words . . . . .                           | §461 |
| (v) Loss of Distinctiveness . . . . .                       | §462 |
| (b) Copying Titles of Literary and Artistic Works . . . . . | §463 |
| (i) Names of Literary Works . . . . .                       | §463 |
| (ii) Descriptive Titles . . . . .                           | §466 |
| (c) Copying Dress or Get-up of Goods . . . . .              | §467 |
| (i) General Principle . . . . .                             | §467 |
| (ii) Similarity of Get-Up . . . . .                         | §471 |
| (iii) Functional Aspects . . . . .                          | §474 |
| (iv) Common to the Trade . . . . .                          | §475 |
| (v) Substitution of Goods . . . . .                         | §476 |
| (d) Copying the Trade Name of the Business . . . . .        | §477 |
| (i) Basis of the Right . . . . .                            | §477 |
| (ii) Similarity of Businesses . . . . .                     | §488 |
| (iii) Foreign Traders . . . . .                             | §491 |
| (iv) Descriptive Names . . . . .                            | §495 |
| (v) Geographical Names . . . . .                            | §496 |
| (vi) Personal Names . . . . .                               | §497 |
| A. General . . . . .  | §497 |
| B. Secondary Meaning . . . . .                              | §499 |
| C. Confusion . . . . .                                      | §500 |
| D. Change of Name . . . . .                                 | §501 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| E. Surname and Full Names . . . . .                               | §502        |
| (vii) Intention . . . . .   | §503        |
| (viii) Corporations . . . . .                                     | §506        |
| (ix) Name of Business Location . . . . .                          | §510        |
| (x) Continuation of Business After Assignment . . . . .           | §511        |
| (xi) Domain Name . . . . .  | §514        |
| <b>XIII. Action for Infringement and Passing Off . . . . .</b>    | <b>§515</b> |
| 1. Jurisdiction . . . . .   | §515        |
| 2. Interim Custody in Infringement Actions . . . . .              | §518        |
| 3. Detention by the Minister . . . . .                            | §521        |
| 4. Custody of Domain Names . . . . .                              | §524        |
| 5. Parties . . . . .  | §526        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §526        |
| (b) Joinder of Actions . . . . .                                  | §528        |
| (c) Employees and Directors . . . . .                             | §530        |
| (d) Union Officers . . . . .                                      | §534        |
| 6. Pleadings . . . . .  | §535        |
| 7. Particulars . . . . .  | §540        |
| 8. Discovery . . . . .  | §545        |
| 9. Interlocutory Injunction . . . . .                             | §546        |
| (a) Basis . . . . .   | §546        |
| (b) Breach . . . . .  | §555        |
| 10. Declaratory Relief . . . . .                                  | §556        |
| 11. Defences to an Action for Infringement . . . . .              | §557        |
| (a) Title . . . . .   | §557        |
| (b) Non-Infringement . . . . .                                    | §558        |
| (c) Plaintiff's Own Goods . . . . .                               | §559        |
| (d) Printing of Labels . . . . .                                  | §560        |
| (e) Fraud . . . . .   | §561        |
| (f) Invalidity of the Plaintiff's Registered Trade-Mark . . . . . | §563        |
| 12. Defences to an Action for Passing Off . . . . .               | §564        |
| (a) Distinctiveness . . . . .                                     | §564        |
| (b) Prior Use . . . . .   | §565        |
| (c) Concurrent Right . . . . .                                    | §566        |
| (d) Misrepresentation in the Plaintiff's Mark . . . . .           | §567        |

TRADE MARKS AND INDUSTRIAL DESIGNS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (e) Fraudulent Trade . . . . .                                | §568        |
| 13. Delay and Acquiescence . . . . .                          | §569        |
| 14. Limitation of Action . . . . .                            | §570        |
| 15. Res Judicata . . . . .                                    | §571        |
| 16. Stay of Proceedings . . . . .                             | §572        |
| 17. Evidence at Trial . . . . .                               | §573        |
| (a) Plaintiff's Title in an Action for Infringement . . . . . | §573        |
| (b) Infringement . . . . .                                    | §576        |
| (c) Passing Off . . . . .                                     | §581        |
| (d) Trap Orders . . . . .                                     | §583        |
| 18. Freedom of Expression . . . . .                           | §584        |
| 19. Disclaimer . . . . .                                      | §586        |
| 20. Relief Granted . . . . .                                  | §587        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §587        |
| (b) Permanent Injunction . . . . .                            | §590        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §590        |
| (ii) Laches . . . . .   | §593        |
| (iii) Breach . . . . .  | §594        |
| (c) Delivery up of Offending Wares . . . . .                  | §596        |
| (d) Profits or Damages . . . . .                              | §600        |
| (i) Alternative Remedies . . . . .                            | §600        |
| (ii) Delay . . . . .  | §603        |
| (iii) Proof of Damage . . . . .                               | §604        |
| (iv) Costs . . . . .  | §605        |
| (v) Relevance of Patent Cases . . . . .                       | §606        |
| (vi) Measure of Damages . . . . .                             | §607        |
| (vii) Account . . . . .                                       | §614        |
| (e) Costs . . . . .   | §615        |
| (f) Appeal . . . . .  | §618        |
| <b>XIV. Trade Libel . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§619</b> |
| 1. Statutory Action . . . . .                                 | §619        |
| 2. Common Law Action . . . . .                                | §623        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §623        |
| (b) False Statements . . . . .                                | §625        |
| (c) "Only Genuine" . . . . .                                  | §627        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (d) Statements Comparing Goods . . . . .                        | §629        |
| (e) Legal Proceedings . . . . .                                 | §631        |
| (f) Truth as a Defence . . . . .                                | §633        |
| (g) Injunction . . . . .  | §635        |
| <b>XV. Criminal Offences . . . . .</b>                          | <b>§636</b> |
| 1. Forgery of Trade-marks . . . . .                             | §636        |
| 2. Passing Off and Unfair Trading . . . . .                     | §639        |
| 3. False Descriptions . . . . .                                 | §640        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §640        |
| (b) Advertisements and Containers . . . . .                     | §644        |
| (c) Indication of Origin . . . . .                              | §646        |
| (d) Mode of Manufacture . . . . .                               | §647        |
| (e) Intent . . . . .  | §648        |
| 4. Defacing Trade-marks . . . . .                               | §649        |
| 5. Using Trade-Marked Bottles . . . . .                         | §650        |
| 6. Sale of Used or Reconditioned Goods . . . . .                | §651        |
| 7. Punishment . . . . .   | §652        |
| 8. Forfeiture . . . . .   | §653        |
| 9. Falsely Claiming Royal Warrant . . . . .                     | §654        |
| 10. Additional Offences . . . . .                               | §656        |
| 11. Counterfeiting Government Stamps or Coins . . . . .         | §657        |
| <b>XVI. Domain Names . . . . .</b>                              | <b>§658</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .                                       | §658        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §658        |
| (b) What is a Domain Name . . . . .                             | §674        |
| (c) MetaTags . . . . .  | §676        |
| 2. Top Level and Second Level Domains . . . . .                 | §678        |
| 3. Basis for Claim to a Domain Name . . . . .                   | §680        |
| 4. Registration of Domain Names . . . . .                       | §681        |
| (a) .ca Top Level Domain . . . . .                              | §681        |
| (b) Generic Top Level Domains . . . . .                         | §683        |
| (c) Other Country Code Top Level Domains . . . . .              | §686        |
| 5. Conflict Between Domain Name and Trade-Mark Rights . . . . . | §687        |
| 6. Registrar's Domain Name Dispute Resolution Policy . . . . .  | §689        |

TRADE MARKS AND INDUSTRIAL DESIGNS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (a) General . . . . .   | §689        |
| (b) .ca Top Level Domain . . . . .  | §690        |
| (c) Generic Top Level Domains — Uniform Domain Name<br>Dispute Resolution Policy (UDRP) . . . . . | §692        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §692        |
| (ii) Identical or Confusingly Similar Marks . . . . .   | §696        |
| (iii) Rights and Legitimate Interest . . . . .  | §700        |
| (iv) Bad Faith Conduct . . . . .  | §705        |
| (v) General Rules for a UDRP case . . . . .   | §711        |
| (vi) Dispute Resolution Providers and Supplemental<br>Rules for a UDRP case . . . . .             | §712        |
| (vii) Appeals and Legal Action in the Event of a<br>UDRP Case . . . . .                           | §714        |
| 7. Transfer or Control of Domain Names . . . . .  | §722        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §722        |
| (b) .ca Top Level Domain . . . . .  | §724        |
| (c) Generic Top Level Domains . . . . .   | §725        |
| <b>XVII. Industrial Designs . . . . .</b>   | <b>§727</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .  | §727        |
| 2. Definition and Subject Matter of an Industrial Design . . . . .                                | §728        |
| 3. Industrial Designs and Copyright . . . . .   | §738        |
| 4. Originality . . . . .  | §741        |
| 5. Publication . . . . .  | §749        |
| 6. Marking . . . . .  | §751        |
| 7. Registration . . . . .   | §752        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §752        |
| (b) Term . . . . .  | §753        |
| 8. Proprietor . . . . .   | §754        |
| 9. Assignments and Licences . . . . .   | §756        |
| 10. Amendment of Register . . . . .   | §760        |
| 11. Infringement . . . . .  | §765        |
| (a) General . . . . .   | §765        |
| (b) Jurisdiction . . . . .  | §772        |
| (c) Burden of Proof . . . . .   | §773        |
| (d) Right of Action . . . . .   | §774        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(e) Injunction .....\$777  
12. Delivery up .....\$778  
13. Evidence of Registration .....\$779  
14. Miscellaneous .....\$780  
    (a) General .....\$780  
    (b) Limitations .....\$782

**Index**

*Related titles:* Copyright; Injunctions; Patents.



# TRESPASS

prepared by  
Joan E. Dunlop, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. General</b> .....                         | §1  |
| 1. Nature of Wrong.....                         | §1  |
| 2. Trespass and Case.....                       | §5  |
| 3. Trespass Distinguished from Nuisance.....    | §7  |
| 4. Joint Trespass.....                          | §8  |
| 5. Technical Trespass.....                      | §12 |
| 6. Liability of Person Permitting Trespass..... | §13 |
| 7. Practice.....                                | §14 |
| (a) General.....                                | §14 |
| (b) Limitation of Actions.....                  | §15 |
| (c) Trespass to Property.....                   | §23 |
| (d) Trespass to the Person.....                 | §26 |
| <b>II. Trespass to Land</b> .....               | §29 |
| 1. General.....                                 | §29 |
| 2. Conduct Constituting Trespass.....           | §30 |
| 3. Degree of Possession Required.....           | §41 |
| (a) General.....                                | §41 |
| (b) Mortgagor and Mortgagee.....                | §63 |
| (c) Tenants and Lessees.....                    | §67 |
| (d) Title by Occupancy.....                     | §70 |
| 4. Specific Situations of Trespass.....         | §74 |
| (a) Landlord and Tenant.....                    | §74 |
| (b) Tenants in Common.....                      | §80 |

## TRESPASS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Reversioners .....                                    | §83         |
| (d) Occupiers .....                                       | §84         |
| (e) Trespass by Animals .....                             | §85         |
| (f) Entry to Abate a Nuisance .....                       | §88         |
| (g) Forcible Entry .....                                  | §90         |
| (h) Indian Reserves .....                                 | §92         |
| (i) Removal of Trees .....                                | §95         |
| (j) Trespass Ab Initio .....                              | §102        |
| (k) Other Cases .....                                     | §104        |
| 5. Continuing Trespass .....                              | §113        |
| 6. Duty of Landowner or Occupier Toward Trespassers ..... | §120        |
| 7. Exercise of Statutory Powers .....                     | §124        |
| 8. Defences .....   | §129        |
| (a) Leave and Licence .....                               | §129        |
| (b) Jus Tertii .....                                      | §142        |
| (c) Other Defences .....                                  | §145        |
| 9. Remedies .....   | §153        |
| (a) Injunction .....                                      | §153        |
| (b) Damages .....   | §158        |
| (i) Compensatory Damages .....                            | §158        |
| (ii) Exemplary Damages .....                              | §175        |
| <b>III. Trespass as an Offence .....</b>                  | <b>§179</b> |
| <b>IV. Trespass to Chattels .....</b>                     | <b>§188</b> |
| 1. General .....  | §188        |
| 2. Possession .....                                       | §191        |
| 3. Wrongful Interference .....                            | §195        |
| 4. Trover and Conversion .....                            | §197        |
| 5. Mischief .....   | §199        |
| 6. Wrongful Searches and Seizures .....                   | §200        |
| (a) General .....   | §200        |
| (b) Who is Liable .....                                   | §210        |
| 7. Defences .....   | §212        |
| 8. Remedies .....   | §217        |
| (a) Compensatory Damages .....                            | §217        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(b) Exemplary Damages..... §226

**V. Trespass to the Person** ..... §227

1. Rights of Action..... §227

    (a) General ..... §227

    (b) Assault and Battery ..... §228

    (c) False Imprisonment ..... §252

2. Defences ..... §253

    (a) Self-Defence..... §253

    (b) Justification ..... §259

    (c) Ejection of Visitors..... §269

    (d) Consent ..... §272

    (e) Mental Infirmary ..... §282

    (f) Volenti and Ex Turpi Causa..... §284

    (g) Contributory Negligence ..... §286

    (h) Other Defences ..... §287

3. Remedies ..... §291

    (a) Compensatory Damages ..... §291

    (b) Exemplary Damages..... §297

    (c) Mitigation of Damages..... §300

    (d) Injunctions ..... §302

    (e) Criminal Injuries Compensation ..... §303

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Animals; Bailment; Boundaries And Surveys; Burial And Cremation; Criminal Law; Damages; Defamation; Drainage; Environmental Law; Estoppel; Execution; Hospitals; Injunctions; Interpleader; Limitation Of Actions; Malicious Prosecution And False Imprisonment; Medicine; Mines And Minerals; Negligence; Nuisance; Personal Property; Police; Public Authorities And Public Officers; Sheriffs And Bailiffs; Sports; Timber; Torts; Trusts; Victims Of Crime — Compensation

# TRIALS

prepared by  
Colleen G. Purich, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*  
updated by  
Philip Petraglia, B.A., LL.L.  
*of the Quebec Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. The Nature of a Trial</b> .....            | §1  |
| 1. Definition and Purpose .....                  | §1  |
| 2. Commencement and Conclusion .....             | §4  |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Preliminary Determinations</b> .....      | §6  |
| 1. Place of Trial.....                           | §6  |
| (a) Selection by Plaintiff.....                  | §6  |
| (i) General.....                                 | §6  |
| (ii) Legislative Provisions .....                | §7  |
| (iii) Place Cause of Action Arising.....         | §16 |
| (b) Application to Change Place of Trial .....   | §19 |
| (i) Procedure .....                              | §19 |
| (ii) Balance of Convenience .....                | §23 |
| (iii) Factors Considered.....                    | §26 |
| A. Connection with Proposed Place of Trial ..... | §26 |
| B. Political Considerations.....                 | §28 |
| C. Publicity .....                               | §29 |
| 2. Joinder and Severance of Proceedings.....     | §30 |
| (a) Consolidation or Trial Together .....        | §30 |
| (b) Separate Trials.....                         | §37 |
| (c) Separate Trial of Issues.....                | §43 |

TRIALS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 3. Proceedings on Point of Law .....                | §51         |
| 4. Selection of Trial by Jury.....                  | §57         |
| (a) Alberta.....                                    | §57         |
| (b) British Columbia .....                          | §66         |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                  | §82         |
| (d) Saskatchewan.....                               | §87         |
| (e) Federal Court .....                             | §91         |
| (f) Loss of Right to Jury Trial.....                | §92         |
| <b>III. Setting the Action Down for Trial .....</b> | <b>§93</b>  |
| 1. Alberta .....                                    | §93         |
| (a) Certificate Requirements .....                  | §93         |
| 2. British Columbia .....                           | §99         |
| (a) Notice of Trial .....                           | §99         |
| (b) Service of Notice.....                          | §101        |
| (c) Direction by Court.....                         | §103        |
| (d) Requirements after Entry for Trial .....        | §105        |
| (e) Date of Hearing .....                           | §108        |
| 3. Manitoba.....                                    | §109        |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                               | §113        |
| (a) Pre-trial Conference.....                       | §113        |
| (b) Setting Down for Trial.....                     | §114        |
| 5. Federal Court.....                               | §119        |
| (a) Setting Down for Trial .....                    | §119        |
| (b) Trial Record.....                               | §121        |
| <b>IV. Pre-trial Conference .....</b>               | <b>§122</b> |
| <b>V. General Conduct of Hearing .....</b>          | <b>§132</b> |
| 1. Time of Trial.....                               | §132        |
| (a) General .....                                   | §132        |
| (b) Expedition of Proceedings .....                 | §136        |
| 2. Adjournments .....                               | §140        |
| (a) Discretion of Trial Judge .....                 | §140        |
| (b) Grounds.....                                    | §146        |
| (i) General.....                                    | §146        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (ii) Absence of Witness .....                            | §147 |
| (iii) Absence of Party .....                             | §151 |
| (c) Refusal for Delay .....                              | §153 |
| 3. Language of Proceedings.....                          | §155 |
| 4. Participants at Trial.....                            | §159 |
| (a) Court-appointed Experts.....                         | §159 |
| (b) Amicus Curiae.....                                   | §163 |
| 5. Exclusion of Persons from Hearing .....               | §164 |
| (a) Witnesses .....                                      | §164 |
| (b) Public .....   | §170 |
| 6. Non-appearance of Party .....                         | §182 |
| 7. Opening Remarks.....                                  | §184 |
| 8. Powers and Duties of Trial Judge.....                 | §186 |
| (a) General Supervision of Trial.....                    | §186 |
| (b) Findings on Evidence.....                            | §187 |
| (c) Hearing Witnesses .....                              | §190 |
| (d) Questioning Witnesses .....                          | §192 |
| (e) Interviews in Chambers.....                          | §193 |
| (f) Comments and Remarks .....                           | §194 |
| (g) Inspection of Property.....                          | §197 |
| 9. Leading of Evidence.....                              | §198 |
| (a) Orders of Court.....                                 | §198 |
| (b) Examination of Witnesses.....                        | §203 |
| (i) Testimony in Open Court .....                        | §203 |
| (ii) Examination by Telephone .....                      | §204 |
| (iii) Counsel as Witness .....                           | §210 |
| (iv) Expert Witnesses .....                              | §211 |
| (c) Affidavits, Depositions and Commission Evidence..... | §229 |
| (d) Discovery Evidence.....                              | §233 |
| (e) Evidence from Other Causes .....                     | §243 |
| (f) Demonstrative Evidence .....                         | §246 |
| 10. Cross-Examination .....                              | §249 |
| (a) Rights of Witnesses .....                            | §249 |
| (b) Scope of Questions.....                              | §253 |
| (c) Vexatious Questions .....                            | §256 |
| 11. Evidence in Reply.....                               | §257 |

TRIALS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 12. Objections and Arguments by Counsel.....      | §259        |
| 13. Nonsuit .....                                 | §267        |
| (a) General .....                                 | §267        |
| (b) Joint or Several Defendants.....              | §276        |
| (c) Grant or Refusal of Motion .....              | §278        |
| (d) Effect of Making Motion.....                  | §280        |
| 14. Evidence and Argument After Trial .....       | §282        |
| <b>VI. Jury Trials.....</b>                       | <b>§295</b> |
| 1. Qualifications of Jurors and Exemptions.....   | §295        |
| 2. Application for Relief from Jury Service ..... | §299        |
| 3. Jury Selection.....                            | §303        |
| (a) General .....                                 | §303        |
| (b) Alberta .....                                 | §305        |
| (c) British Columbia.....                         | §307        |
| (d) Manitoba .....                                | §308        |
| (e) Saskatchewan.....                             | §312        |
| 4. Number of Jurors .....                         | §315        |
| 5. Challenges .....                               | §317        |
| (a) General .....                                 | §317        |
| (b) Peremptory Challenges.....                    | §318        |
| (c) Challenges for Cause.....                     | §319        |
| 6. Payment of Expenses.....                       | §325        |
| 7. Discharge of Juror.....                        | §331        |
| 8. Discharge of Jury .....                        | §335        |
| (a) General .....                                 | §335        |
| (b) Improper Conduct of Counsel .....             | §344        |
| 9. Separation of Jury .....                       | §349        |
| 10. View by Jury.....                             | §358        |
| 11. Charge by Trial Judge .....                   | §361        |
| (a) General .....                                 | §361        |
| (b) Differing Functions of Judge and Jury .....   | §362        |
| (c) Misdirection and Non-direction .....          | §368        |
| (i) General.....                                  | §368        |
| (ii) Instances of Misdirection.....               | §374        |
| 12. Verdict .....                                 | §379        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (a) Requirement of Unanimity .....                  | §379 |
| (b) General Verdict .....                           | §382 |
| (c) Questions Put to Jury .....                     | §386 |
| (d) Errors in Verdict.....                          | §395 |
| (e) Refusal to Accept Verdict.....                  | §398 |
| (f) Reconsideration .....                           | §399 |
| <b>VII. New Trials</b> .....                        | §402 |
| 1. Discretion of Court .....                        | §402 |
| 2. Grounds .....                                    | §409 |
| (a) General .....                                   | §409 |
| (b) Erroneous Treatment of Evidence .....           | §416 |
| (c) Discovery of New Evidence .....                 | §422 |
| (d) Misdirection of Jury .....                      | §428 |
| (e) Perverse or Ambiguous Verdict.....              | §434 |
| (f) Improper Assessment of Damages .....            | §436 |
| 3. Practice .....                                   | §440 |
| 4. Conduct of New Trial.....                        | §444 |
| <b>VIII. Expedited and Summary Procedures</b> ..... | §450 |
| 1. British Columbia .....                           | §450 |
| 2. Manitoba.....                                    | §465 |
| 3. Alberta .....                                    | §470 |
| 4. Saskatchewan .....                               | §485 |
| 5. Federal Court.....                               | §490 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Actions; Administrative Law; Barristers and Solicitors; Children; Contempt of Court; Costs; Courts; Criminal Law — Procedure; Damages; Defamation; Discovery; Evidence; Judgments and Orders; Nuisance; Parties; Pleadings; Practice; Privacy and Freedom of Information; Public Authorities and Public Officers; References and Inquiries; Sheriffs and Bailiffs; Time



# TRUSTS

prepared by  
Richard E. Levinson, LL.B.  
*of the Ontario and New York Bars*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

|  |      |
|--|------|
| <b>I. Legislative Overview</b> .....                   | §1   |
| 1. Alberta .....                                       | §1   |
| 2. British Columbia .....                              | §25  |
| 3. Manitoba .....                                      | §45  |
| 4. Ontario .....                                       | §59  |
| 5. Saskatchewan .....                                  | §80  |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>II. General Principles</b> .....                    | §95  |
| 1. Introduction .....                                  | §95  |
| 2. Trusts Distinguished From Other Relationships ..... | §107 |
| 3. Secret Trusts .....                                 | §108 |
| 4. Express Trusts .....                                | §110 |
| 5. The Three Certainties .....                         | §112 |
| 6. Precatory Trusts .....                              | §113 |
| 7. Application of Statute of Frauds .....              | §114 |
| 8. Creation of Express Trust .....                     | §115 |
| 9. Terms Judicially Interpreted .....                  | §121 |
| 10. Rectification and Variation .....                  | §122 |
| 11. Revocation by Settlor .....                        | §124 |
| 12. Termination .....                                  | §125 |
| 13. Rule in Saunders v. Vautier .....                  | §126 |
| <br>   |      |
| <b>III. Constructive Trust</b> .....                   | §127 |

TRUSTS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Introduction . . . . .  | §127        |
| 2. Gains by Fiduciaries . . . . .                                      | §131        |
| 3. Third Person as Constructive Trustee; Trustee De Son Tort . . . . . | §132        |
| 4. Secret Trusts . . . . .   | §133        |
| 5. Profit from Criminal Wrongdoing . . . . .                           | §134        |
| 6. Constructive Trust in Family Law . . . . .                          | §135        |
| 7. Recent Findings of Constructive Trust . . . . .                     | §137        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>IV. Resulting Trusts . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>§138</b> |
| 1. Introduction . . . . .  | §138        |
| 2. Doctrine of Rebuttal Presumption . . . . .                          | §140        |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>V. Practice and Procedure . . . . .</b>                             | <b>§144</b> |
| <br>   |             |
| <b>VI. Administration of Trust . . . . .</b>                           | <b>§151</b> |
| 1. Who are Trustees . . . . .  | §151        |
| 2. Appointment of Trustees . . . . .                                   | §159        |
| (a) Appointment by Settlor . . . . .                                   | §159        |
| (b) Appointment of New Trustees . . . . .                              | §163        |
| (i) Under Express Power . . . . .                                      | §163        |
| (ii) Under Statutory Power . . . . .                                   | §165        |
| (iii) By the Court . . . . .   | §167        |
| (c) Appointment of Judicial Trustees . . . . .                         | §182        |
| (d) Number of Trustees . . . . .                                       | §183        |
| (e) Vesting of Trust Property in Trustees . . . . .                    | §184        |
| (f) Acceptance and Disclaimer of Office . . . . .                      | §188        |
| 3. Death, Retirement and Removal of Trustees . . . . .                 | §197        |
| (a) Death of Trustee . . . . .   | §197        |
| (b) Retirement of Trustee . . . . .                                    | §198        |
| (c) Removal of Trustee . . . . .                                       | §202        |
| 4. Duties and Powers of Trustees . . . . .                             | §213        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §213        |
| (b) Delegation by Trustee . . . . .                                    | §218        |
| (c) Conflict of Interest and Duty . . . . .                            | §225        |
| (i) General . . . . .  | §225        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (ii) Purchase of Trust Property . . . . .                  | §227        |
| (iii) Trustee Selling or Loaning Assets to Trust . . . . . | §234        |
| (iv) Trustee Purchasing from Beneficiary . . . . .         | §235        |
| (v) Acquisition of Benefits from Trust Office . . . . .    | §236        |
| (d) Standard of Care . . . . .                             | §237        |
| (e) Power to Take Beneficially . . . . .                   | §240        |
| (f) Conversion of Assets and Powers of Sale . . . . .      | §242        |
| (g) Powers of Investment . . . . .                         | §253        |
| (h) Power to Borrow . . . . .                              | §262        |
| (i) Duty to Act Impartially . . . . .                      | §263        |
| (j) Duty to Keep Accounts . . . . .                        | §264        |
| (k) Seeking Advice of Court . . . . .                      | §270        |
| (l) Payment into Court . . . . .                           | §274        |
| (m) Discretionary Powers . . . . .                         | §275        |
| (n) Miscellaneous Statutory Powers . . . . .               | §281        |
| 5. Indemnification and Remuneration of Trustees . . . . .  | §283        |
| (a) Indemnification . . . . .                              | §283        |
| (b) Remuneration . . . . .                                 | §289        |
| 6. Termination of Trust . . . . .                          | §300        |
| <b>VII. Rights of Beneficiary . . . . .</b>                | <b>§303</b> |
| 1. Right to Intervene in Administration of Trust . . . . . | §303        |
| 2. Breach of Trust . . . . .                               | §305        |
| (a) Liability of Trustees . . . . .                        | §305        |
| (b) Relief from Liability . . . . .                        | §321        |
| 3. Following Trust Property . . . . .                      | §325        |
| 4. Variation of Trusts . . . . .                           | §342        |
| <b>VIII. Actions By and Against Trustees . . . . .</b>     | <b>§350</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                                       | §350        |
| 2. Limitations and Laches . . . . .                        | §362        |
| 3. Costs . . . . .   | §376        |
| <b>IX. Conflicts of Law . . . . .</b>                      | <b>§381</b> |
| <b>Index</b>   |             |

## TRUSTS

---

*Related titles:* Agency; Banking; Bankruptcy and Insolvency; Business Corporations; Equity; Executors and Administrators; Family Law; Insurance; Limitation of Actions; Municipal Corporations; Partnership; Personal Property; Trespass; Wills.

# VICTIMS OF CRIME — COMPENSATION

prepared by  
Stuart Bailey, B.A., LL.B., LL.M.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> . . . . .                                   | §1  |
| <b>II. Legislative Purpose</b> . . . . .                           | §2  |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §2  |
| 2. Insurance Explanation . . . . .                                 | §3  |
| 3. Moral Worthiness Explanation . . . . .                          | §4  |
| <b>III. Statutory Guidelines</b> . . . . .                         | §5  |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §5  |
| 2. Applicants . . . . .  | §6  |
| 3. Acts Giving Rise to Claim . . . . .                             | §14 |
| 4. Factors Affecting Award . . . . .                               | §18 |
| 5. Limitation Periods . . . . .                                    | §28 |
| 6. Compensation . . . . .  | §30 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §30 |
| (b) Double Recovery . . . . .                                      | §35 |
| (c) Limits on Compensation . . . . .                               | §38 |
| (d) Subrogation . . . . .  | §41 |
| 7. Making of Entitlement Decisions . . . . .                       | §45 |
| <b>IV. Judicial Review, Appeals and Reconsiderations</b> . . . . . | §47 |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §47 |

VICTIMS OF CRIME — COMPENSATION

---

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 2. Grounds . . . . .                     | §57 |
| (a) General . . . . .                    | §57 |
| (b) Tavern Principle . . . . .           | §62 |
| (c) Imprudent Person Principle . . . . . | §63 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Criminal Law — Offences; Damages; Negligence; Trespass.

# VITAL STATISTICS

prepared by  
H. Peter Eccles, B.A., LL.B  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Rules

## Table of Regulations

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                     | \$1   |
| 1. Scope of Title.....                           | \$1   |
| 2. Definitions .....                             | \$4   |
| <b>II. Registration of Births</b> .....          | \$9   |
| 1. General .....                                 | \$9   |
| 2. Name of the Child .....                       | \$38  |
| <b>III. Registration of Stillbirths</b> .....    | \$46  |
| <b>IV. Registration of Adoption Orders</b> ..... | \$52  |
| <b>V. Registration of Marriages</b> .....        | \$64  |
| <b>VI. Registration of Deaths</b> .....          | \$75  |
| <b>VII. Change of Name</b> .....                 | \$100 |
| 1. Common Law.....                               | \$100 |
| 2. Change of Name Legislation.....               | \$102 |
| (a) History.....                                 | \$102 |
| (b) Scope of Legislation.....                    | \$104 |
| (c) Spouses.....                                 | \$108 |

VITAL STATISTICS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (d) Children .....                                       | §115        |
| (e) Making the Application.....                          | §127        |
| (f) Decision of the Director or Registrar General .....  | §129        |
| (g) Office Procedure.....                                | §132        |
| (h) Annulment or Revocation of Change of Name .....      | §144        |
| (i) Appeal.....  | §151        |
| (j) Access to Records in Alberta and Ontario .....       | §157        |
| <b>VIII. Miscellaneous Registration Procedures .....</b> | <b>§159</b> |
| 1. Registration of Transsexual Surgery .....             | §159        |
| 2. Registration of Declaration of Parentage.....         | §165        |
| <b>IX. Administration .....</b>                          | <b>§167</b> |
| <b>X. Offences .....</b>                                 | <b>§190</b> |
| <b>XI. Appeals.....</b>                                  | <b>§197</b> |
| <b>XII. Evidence.....</b>                                | <b>§204</b> |
| <b>XIII. National Census .....</b>                       | <b>§212</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Burial and Cremation; Children; Coroners and Medical Examiners; Evidence; Family Law — General



# WAR AND EMERGENCY

prepared by  
Barbara D. Janusz, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Scope of Title</b> .....                                       | §1  |
| <b>II. Division of Powers</b> .....                                  | §2  |
| 1. Federal and Provincial Powers Generally .....                     | §2  |
| (a) Executive Authority .....  | §2  |
| (b) Legislative Authority .....                                      | §3  |
| 2. Federal/Provincial Jurisdictional Conflict during Emergencies ... |     |
| .....  | §5  |
| <b>III. War and Insurrection</b> .....                               | §7  |
| 1. Existence of State of War .....                                   | §7  |
| 2. Martial Law .....   | §9  |
| 3. Military Law .....  | §11 |
| (a) Definition of Military Law .....                                 | §11 |
| (b) Defence Powers .....   | §12 |
| (c) Emergency Powers Generally .....                                 | §13 |
| (d) Aid of the Civil Power .....                                     | §14 |
| 4. Emergency Preparedness .....                                      | §16 |
| 5. Emergencies Act .....   | §18 |
| (a) Purpose .....  | §18 |
| (b) Public Welfare Emergency .....                                   | §19 |
| (c) Public Order Emergency .....                                     | §26 |
| (d) International Emergency .....                                    | §32 |

## WAR AND EMERGENCY

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| (e) War Emergency . . . . .   | §38        |
| (f) Compensation . . . . .  | §43        |
| (g) Parliamentary Supervision . . . . .                                     | §44        |
| (h) The Emergencies Act and the Charter of Rights and<br>Freedoms . . . . . | §47        |
| 6. Democratic Rights . . . . .  | §50        |
| 7. Aliens . . . . .   | §51        |
| (a) Definition of Alien . . . . .   | §51        |
| (b) Legislative Authority . . . . .   | §52        |
| (c) Personal Rights and Liability in Time of War . . . . .                  | §53        |
| (d) Property Rights and Liability . . . . .                                 | §63        |
| <b>IV. Emergencies . . . . .</b>  | <b>§65</b> |
| 1. The Emergency Doctrine . . . . .   | §65        |
| (a) Generally . . . . .   | §65        |
| (b) Liquor Traffic . . . . .  | §68        |
| (c) War and Wartime Conditions . . . . .                                    | §69        |
| 2. Federal Statutory Law . . . . .  | §70        |
| (a) Emergency Planning . . . . .  | §70        |
| (b) Canadian Security Intelligence Service . . . . .                        | §73        |
| (c) Energy . . . . .  | §75        |
| (d) Prevention of Release of Toxic Substances into<br>Environment . . . . . | §78        |
| (e) Environmental Emergencies . . . . .                                     | §82        |
| (f) International Air Pollution . . . . .                                   | §87        |
| (g) Ocean Dumping . . . . .   | §88        |
| (h) Pollution of Arctic Waters . . . . .                                    | §89        |
| (i) Nuclear Liability . . . . .   | §90        |
| (j) Shipping and Distressed Seamen . . . . .                                | §91        |
| (k) Transportation of Dangerous Goods . . . . .                             | §94        |
| (l) Quarantine . . . . .  | §95        |
| (m) Diseased Plants and Animals . . . . .                                   | §96        |
| (n) Railway Safety . . . . .  | §97        |
| (o) Patents . . . . .   | §98        |
| (p) Aviation Safety . . . . .   | §99        |
| (q) Terrorist Activity . . . . .  | §100       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

3. Provincial Statutory Law on War and Emergency . . . . . §101

    (a) Civil Defence and Disaster Measures . . . . . §101

        (i) Alberta . . . . . §101

        (ii) British Columbia . . . . . §107

        (iii) Manitoba . . . . . §111

        (iv) Ontario . . . . . §118

        (v) Saskatchewan . . . . . §126

    (b) Fire Prevention . . . . . §129

        (i) Alberta . . . . . §129

        (ii) British Columbia . . . . . §131

        (iii) Manitoba . . . . . §133

        (iv) Ontario . . . . . §135

        (v) Saskatchewan . . . . . §139

    (c) Environmental Management and Protection . . . . . §141

        (i) Alberta . . . . . §141

        (ii) British Columbia . . . . . §145

        (iii) Manitoba . . . . . §148

        (iv) Ontario . . . . . §154

        (v) Saskatchewan . . . . . §160

    (d) Public Health . . . . . §164

        (i) Alberta . . . . . §164

        (ii) British Columbia . . . . . §168

        (iii) Manitoba . . . . . §171

        (iv) Ontario . . . . . §176

        (v) Saskatchewan . . . . . §177

    (e) Occupational Health . . . . . §181

        (i) Alberta . . . . . §181

        (ii) British Columbia . . . . . §184

        (iii) Manitoba . . . . . §185

        (iv) Ontario . . . . . §187

        (v) Saskatchewan . . . . . §189

    (f) Control of Pests and Crop and Animal Diseases . . . . . §190

        (i) Alberta . . . . . §190

        (ii) British Columbia . . . . . §191

        (iii) Manitoba . . . . . §194

        (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . . §195

## WAR AND EMERGENCY

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| (g) Law Enforcement . . . . .                           | \$197 |
| (h) Resource Management and Economic Controls . . . . . | \$202 |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                                   | \$202 |
| (ii) Manitoba . . . . .                                 | \$205 |
| (iii) Saskatchewan . . . . .                            | \$207 |
| (i) Terrorist Activity . . . . .                        | \$208 |
| (j) Miscellaneous Emergencies . . . . .                 | \$209 |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                                   | \$209 |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                         | \$213 |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                                | \$215 |
| (iv) Ontario . . . . .                                  | \$217 |
| (v) Saskatchewan . . . . .                              | \$219 |
| 4. Delegation of Powers to Municipality . . . . .       | \$220 |
| (a) Generally . . . . .                                 | \$220 |
| (b) Statutory . . . . .                                 | \$221 |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                                   | \$221 |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .                         | \$222 |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .                                | \$224 |
| (iv) Ontario . . . . .                                  | \$226 |
| (v) Saskatchewan . . . . .                              | \$231 |

### **Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Agriculture; Armed Forces; Aviation; Constitutional Law; Environmental Law; Fires; International Law; Negligence; Oil And Gas; Police; Public Health And Welfare; Shipping

# WATERS AND WATERCOURSES

prepared by  
Joel M. Saltsman, LL.B., LL.M.  
*of the British Columbia Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                       | §1  |
| 1. Scope of Title.....                             | §1  |
| 2. Constitutional Jurisdiction .....               | §2  |
| 3. Definitions .....                               | §5  |
| 4. Nature of Watercourse.....                      | §24 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Rights of Use and Ownership</b> .....       | §27 |
| 1. Crown Ownership of Water and Water Rights ..... | §27 |
| 2. Ownership of Beds .....                         | §33 |
| 3. Domestic Purposes.....                          | §42 |
| 4. Traditional Agricultural Use.....               | §46 |
| 5. Riparian Rights .....                           | §47 |
| (a) “Riparian Owner” .....                         | §47 |
| (b) Nature and Basis of Right .....                | §50 |
| (c) Right of Access to Water.....                  | §55 |
| (d) Accretion and Erosion.....                     | §65 |
| (e) Right to Construct Dam .....                   | §79 |
| (f) Water in Undefined Channel.....                | §84 |
| (g) Remedies for Breach.....                       | §85 |
| (i) General.....                                   | §85 |
| (ii) Effect of Water Rights Legislation .....      | §87 |
| 6. Legislative Control of Water Usage .....        | §93 |
| (a) Alberta.....                                   | §93 |

## WATERS AND WATERCOURSES

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| (i) Administration .....                                      | §93  |
| (ii) Licences .....   | §95  |
| (iii) Priority of Rights .....                                | §106 |
| (iv) Obligations of Licensee .....                            | §108 |
| (v) Licence Running with Land .....                           | §111 |
| (vi) Powers of Inspection and Enforcement.....                | §112 |
| (vii) Amalgamation of Licences .....                          | §117 |
| (viii) Other Crown Rights .....                               | §118 |
| (ix) Regulations .....  | §121 |
| (x) Offences .....  | §122 |
| (xi) Miscellaneous .....                                      | §126 |
| (b) British Columbia .....                                    | §129 |
| (i) General.....  | §129 |
| (ii) Administration .....                                     | §132 |
| (iii) Licences.....   | §135 |
| (iv) Priority of Rights.....                                  | §146 |
| (v) Amendment, Transfer and Apportionment.....                | §147 |
| (vi) Rights and Obligations of Licensee .....                 | §150 |
| (vii) Suspension and Cancellation of Licences.....            | §155 |
| (viii) Expropriation Powers of Licensee .....                 | §157 |
| (ix) Other Powers of Comptroller .....                        | §161 |
| (x) Appeals and Judicial Review.....                          | §163 |
| (xi) Regulations .....  | §165 |
| (xii) Water Users' Communities.....                           | §167 |
| (xiii) Offences.....  | §168 |
| (xiv) Conveyances Affecting Water Rights .....                | §169 |
| (c) Manitoba .....  | §172 |
| (i) Administration .....                                      | §172 |
| (ii) Provincial Waterways and Other Designated<br>Areas ..... | §176 |
| (iii) Riparian Rights Abolished.....                          | §180 |
| (iv) Licences .....   | §181 |
| (v) Priorities.....   | §187 |
| (vi) Permit for Preliminary Work.....                         | §189 |
| (vii) Suspension and Cancellation of Licences.....            | §192 |
| (viii) Removal or Acquisition of Works .....                  | §194 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (ix) Other Powers of Crown .....                        | §195        |
| (x) Regulations .....                                   | §200        |
| (xi) Offences .....                                     | §201        |
| (xii) Protection from Liability .....                   | §202        |
| (xiii) Appeals .....                                    | §203        |
| (xiv) Intergovernmental Agreements .....                | §204        |
| (xv) Ground Water and Water Well Act .....              | §206        |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....                                  | §209        |
| (i) Administration .....                                | §209        |
| (ii) Grant of Water Rights .....                        | §214        |
| (iii) Cancellation and Alteration of Water Rights ..... | §216        |
| (iv) Approval of Works .....                            | §218        |
| (v) Cancellation of Approval .....                      | §223        |
| (vi) Complaints Respecting Works .....                  | §224        |
| (vii) Appeals .....                                     | §227        |
| (viii) Regulations .....                                | §228        |
| (ix) Offences and Enforcement .....                     | §229        |
| (x) Ground Water Conservation Act .....                 | §232        |
| <b>III. Navigable Waters .....</b>                      | <b>§234</b> |
| 1. Test of Navigability .....                           | §234        |
| 2. Legislative Jurisdiction .....                       | §241        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §241        |
| (b) Navigable Waters Protection Act .....               | §243        |
| 3. Ownership of Navigable Waters .....                  | §252        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §252        |
| (b) Ownership of Foreshore .....                        | §256        |
| 4. Right of Navigation .....                            | §259        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §259        |
| (b) Extinction of Right .....                           | §265        |
| 5. Interference with Navigation .....                   | §266        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §266        |
| (b) Public Remedy .....                                 | §275        |
| (c) Private Remedy .....                                | §282        |
| <b>IV. Floatable Waters .....</b>                       | <b>§284</b> |

WATERS AND WATERCOURSES

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>V. Frozen Waters</b> .....                     | \$291 |
| 1. Ownership of Ice and Right to Appropriate..... | \$291 |
| 2. Right of Passage Over Ice.....                 | \$293 |
| 3. Holes in Ice.....                              | \$294 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>VI. Water Power</b> .....                      | \$296 |
| 1. General .....                                  | \$296 |
| 2. Alberta .....                                  | \$297 |
| 3. British Columbia.....                          | \$299 |
| 4. Manitoba and Saskatchewan.....                 | \$300 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>VII. Harbours</b> .....                        | \$303 |
| <br>  |       |
| <b>VIII. Other Federal Legislation</b> .....      | \$307 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Boundaries and Surveys; Drainage; Environmental Law; Fish and Wildlife; Public Utilities; Shipping.



# WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

prepared by  
Barbro E. Stalbecker-Pountney, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

## Table of Regulations

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. Legislation</b> .....                   | §1  |
| <b>II. Units of Measurement</b> .....         | §2  |
| 1. General .....                              | §2  |
| 2. Use of Units of Measurement .....          | §5  |
| 3. Marking of Commodities.....                | §7  |
| 4. Evidence .....                             | §8  |
| 5. Use of Devices.....                        | §9  |
| 6. Regulations.....                           | §11 |
| 7. Reference and Local Standards .....        | §12 |
| 8. Inspection .....                           | §16 |
| (a) Duties and Powers of Inspectors .....     | §16 |
| (b) Fees and Charges .....                    | §20 |
| 9. Offences and Penalties.....                | §21 |
| (a) Offences .....                            | §21 |
| (b) Penalties .....                           | §30 |
| (c) Evidence.....                             | §31 |
| (d) Seizure and Detention.....                | §33 |
| (e) Forfeiture.....                           | §36 |
| <b>III. Standard Weights of Coins</b> .....   | §37 |
| <b>IV. Electrical and Gas Standards</b> ..... | §40 |

WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 1. General .....   | §40        |
| 2. Meters .....  | §43        |
| 3. Duties and Powers of Inspectors.....                      | §47        |
| 4. Offences and Penalties.....                               | §48        |
| (a) General .....  | §48        |
| (b) Particular violations.....                               | §49        |
| 5. Disputes Tests .....                                      | §50        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>V. Grain Standards .....</b>                              | <b>§51</b> |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>VI. Surveys Pursuant to Canada Lands Surveys Act.....</b> | <b>§53</b> |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Agriculture; Boundaries and Surveys; Evidence; Trade And Commerce and Foreign Investment In Canada

# WILLS

prepared by  
Albert Kaprielian, LL.B., M.A.  
*of the Ontario Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>I. The Nature of a Will.....</b>         | <b>\$1</b>  |
| 1. Definition.....                          | \$1         |
| 2. Operation Dependent Upon Death.....      | \$3         |
| 3. Testamentary Intent.....                 | \$4         |
| 4. Types of Wills.....                      | \$5         |
| (a) Statutory Provisions.....               | \$5         |
| (b) Conditional Wills.....                  | \$10        |
| (c) Joint Wills and Mutual Wills.....       | \$15        |
| (d) Multiple Wills.....                     | \$20        |
| 5. Agreements Regarding Wills.....          | \$21        |
| (a) Agreement to Give Property by Will..... | \$21        |
| (b) Secret Trusts.....                      | \$26        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>II. Application of Legislation.....</b>  | <b>\$27</b> |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>III. Power of Disposition.....</b>       | <b>\$32</b> |
| 1. Testamentary Capacity.....               | \$32        |
| (a) Age.....                                | \$32        |
| (i) Alberta.....                            | \$32        |
| (ii) British Columbia.....                  | \$34        |
| (iii) Manitoba.....                         | \$36        |
| (iv) Ontario.....                           | \$37        |

## WILLS

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (v) Saskatchewan.....                                | §38        |
| (b) Mental Capacity .....                            | §39        |
| (i) General.....                                     | §39        |
| (ii) Sound Disposing Mind and Memory .....           | §41        |
| (iii) Impaired Mental Power .....                    | §45        |
| (iv) Delusions .....                                 | §47        |
| (v) Time For Assessing Capacity .....                | §52        |
| (vi) Evidence .....                                  | §54        |
| 2. Property Subject to Disposition.....              | §63        |
| (a) General .....                                    | §63        |
| (b) Effect of Transfers During Lifetime.....         | §66        |
| 3. Benefit Plans .....                               | §75        |
| 4. Powers of Appointment.....                        | §76        |
| 5. Reservation of Power to Dispose.....              | §78        |
| 6. Delegation.....                                   | §79        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>IV. Requirements for a Valid Will .....</b>       | <b>§82</b> |
| 1. General .....                                     | §82        |
| 2. Knowledge and Approval .....                      | §85        |
| (a) General.....                                     | §85        |
| (b) General Burden of Proof.....                     | §86        |
| (c) Suspicious Circumstances .....                   | §87        |
| (d) Undue Influence .....                            | §94        |
| (i) General.....                                     | §94        |
| (ii) Presumptions and Burden of Proof.....           | §97        |
| (iii) Particular Disposition Impugned .....          | §102       |
| (e) Fraud .....                                      | §103       |
| (f) Mistake .....                                    | §104       |
| (g) Solicitor's Duty .....                           | §105       |
| 3. Attested Wills.....                               | §106       |
| (a) Requirement of Writing .....                     | §106       |
| (b) Execution .....                                  | §108       |
| (i) Position of Signature.....                       | §108       |
| (ii) Manner of Signing .....                         | §111       |
| (iii) Presence and Qualifications of Witnesses ..... | §115       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Attestation .....                                 | §128        |
| (i) Presence of Testator .....                        | §128        |
| (ii) Presence of Both Witnesses .....                 | §129        |
| (iii) Signature of Witness .....                      | §130        |
| (d) Presumption of Due Execution .....                | §133        |
| (e) Alterations .....                                 | §134        |
| (i) Formalities .....                                 | §134        |
| (ii) Substitution of Pages .....                      | §141        |
| (iii) Alterations Made Before Execution .....         | §142        |
| (iv) Testamentary Intent .....                        | §146        |
| 4. Holograph Wills .....                              | §147        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §147        |
| (b) Testamentary Intent .....                         | §152        |
| (c) Signature of Testator .....                       | §154        |
| (d) Alterations .....                                 | §158        |
| 5. Privileged Wills .....                             | §161        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §161        |
| (b) “Active Service” .....                            | §167        |
| (c) Wills of Mariners and Seamen .....                | §169        |
| (d) Testamentary Intention .....                      | §170        |
| (e) Admissibility to Probate .....                    | §171        |
| (f) Gifts to Witnesses .....                          | §172        |
| (g) Alteration and Revocation .....                   | §173        |
| 6. Indian Act .....                                   | §175        |
| 7. International Wills .....                          | §180        |
| (a) General .....                                     | §180        |
| (b) Formalities .....                                 | §182        |
| (c) Certificate of Authorized Person .....            | §185        |
| (d) Registration .....                                | §186        |
| (e) Revocation .....                                  | §187        |
| <b>V. Rectification and Curing Deficiencies .....</b> | <b>§188</b> |
| <b>VI. Conflict of Laws .....</b>                     | <b>§196</b> |
| 1. General .....                                      | §196        |

## WILLS

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Formal Validity .....                        | §198        |
| 3. Essential Validity .....                     | §207        |
| 4. Revoking Wills .....                         | §208        |
| 5. Administration of Estate .....               | §209        |
| 6. Construction of Wills.....                   | §210        |
| 7. Powers of Appointment .....                  | §211        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Incorporation by Reference .....</b>    | <b>§212</b> |
| 1. General .....                                | §212        |
| 2. Description of Document.....                 | §213        |
| 3. Words of Futurity .....                      | §215        |
| 4. Document in Existence .....                  | §217        |
| 5. Incorporation by Holograph Will.....         | §219        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VIII. Revocation .....</b>                   | <b>§220</b> |
| 1. Agreement Not to Revoke .....                | §220        |
| 2. Revocation by Operation of Law .....         | §223        |
| (a) Marriage .....                              | §223        |
| (b) Change in Circumstances.....                | §233        |
| 3. Revocation by Act of Testator .....          | §239        |
| (a) Writing Declaring Intention to Revoke ..... | §239        |
| (i) Formalities .....                           | §239        |
| (ii) Words of Intention .....                   | §242        |
| (iii) Undated Wills .....                       | §254        |
| (iv) Lost Wills .....                           | §255        |
| (v) Effect of Revocation .....                  | §256        |
| (vi) Revocation of Mutual Will.....             | §258        |
| (b) Destruction.....                            | §259        |
| (i) The Act of Destroying .....                 | §259        |
| (ii) Partial Destruction.....                   | §262        |
| (iii) Duplicate Wills .....                     | §264        |
| (iv) Intention to Revoke.....                   | §265        |
| (v) Presumption from Mutilated Will.....        | §268        |
| (vi) Presumption from Lost Will.....            | §269        |
| (c) Obliteration of Words.....                  | §272        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (d) Other Act .....                             | §276        |
| 4. Conditional Revocation.....                  | §277        |
| <b>IX. Revival.....</b>                         | <b>§282</b> |
| 1. Formalities .....                            | §282        |
| 2. Intention to Revive .....                    | §286        |
| 3. Effect of Revival.....                       | §294        |
| <b>X. Republication .....</b>                   | <b>§295</b> |
| 1. General .....                                | §295        |
| 2. Effect of Republication.....                 | §297        |
| <b>XI. Interpretation of Wills .....</b>        | <b>§302</b> |
| 1. Jurisdiction of Court .....                  | §302        |
| 2. Process of Construction .....                | §307        |
| (a) Use of Precedent.....                       | §307        |
| (b) Effect of Statutory Amendments .....        | §308        |
| (c) Exclusion of Words .....                    | §309        |
| (d) Supplying Words .....                       | §310        |
| 3. Principles of Construction .....             | §311        |
| (a) General .....                               | §311        |
| (b) Language of Wills.....                      | §322        |
| (c) Presumptions .....                          | §326        |
| (i) Will Speaking from Death.....               | §326        |
| (ii) Construction Against Intestacy .....       | §330        |
| (iii) Construction Against Disinheritance ..... | §333        |
| (iv) Irreconcilable Clauses .....               | §334        |
| (v) Double Legacies .....                       | §335        |
| <b>XII. Description of Beneficiaries .....</b>  | <b>§336</b> |
| 1. “Representatives” .....                      | §336        |
| 2. Gifts to Next-of-Kin .....                   | §337        |
| 3. Gifts to Heirs.....                          | §340        |
| 4. Issue or Descendants.....                    | §342        |
| 5. Gifts to Relatives .....                     | §346        |

## WILLS

---

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (a) Specific Descriptions .....              | §346        |
| (b) Family .....                             | §350        |
| 6. Gifts to Children .....                   | §351        |
| (a) General .....                            | §351        |
| (b) Children Born outside Marriage .....     | §353        |
| (c) Adopted Children .....                   | §358        |
| 7. Gifts to Spouse.....                      | §365        |
| 8. Gifts to Holders of Office .....          | §369        |
| 9. Gifts to Executors .....                  | §370        |
| 10. Gifts to Charity .....                   | §375        |
| 11. Inaccurate Descriptions.....             | §384        |
| 12. Gifts to a Class .....                   | §385        |
| (a) Class Gift Defined.....                  | §385        |
| (b) Class Closing Rules .....                | §390        |
| (i) Prima Facie Rule.....                    | §390        |
| (ii) Postponed Gift to Class .....           | §391        |
| (iii) Conditional Gift to Class.....         | §392        |
| (iv) Words of Survivorship.....              | §393        |
| (v) Gifts to Next-of-Kin.....                | §394        |
| (vi) Gifts to Children .....                 | §395        |
| 13. Concurrent Gifts.....                    | §396        |
| (a) Joint Tenancy and Tenancy in Common..... | §396        |
| (b) Gifts Per Capita or Per Stirpes.....     | §397        |
| <b>XIII. Description of Property .....</b>   | <b>§398</b> |
| 1. Property .....                            | §398        |
| 2. “Interest” .....                          | §400        |
| 3. “Effects” .....                           | §401        |
| 4. Personal Effects.....                     | §402        |
| 5. Chattels .....                            | §404        |
| 6. Devise of Dwelling .....                  | §405        |
| 7. Contents of House.....                    | §406        |
| 8. Money and Cash .....                      | §408        |
| 9. Securities .....                          | §412        |
| 10. Gifts of Income.....                     | §419        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| 11. Residuary Gifts .....                         | \$422 |
| 12. Misdescription of Real Property .....         | \$428 |
| <b>XIV. Classification of Legacies</b> .....      | \$429 |
| 1. Specific .....                                 | \$429 |
| 2. General .....                                  | \$437 |
| 3. Demonstrative.....                             | \$441 |
| <b>XV. Conditional Gifts</b> .....                | \$442 |
| 1. General .....                                  | \$442 |
| 2. Conditions Precedent and Subsequent .....      | \$446 |
| 3. Void Conditions .....                          | \$450 |
| (a) Repugnancy.....                               | \$450 |
| (b) Public Policy.....                            | \$452 |
| <b>XVI. Postponed Gifts</b> .....                 | \$456 |
| 1. Vested or Contingent .....                     | \$456 |
| (a) General Rule .....                            | \$456 |
| (b) Gifts of Intermediate Interest.....           | \$460 |
| 2. Divesting.....                                 | \$463 |
| (a) General Rule .....                            | \$463 |
| (b) Gifts Over.....                               | \$465 |
| (c) Gifts Over on Contingency .....               | \$467 |
| (d) Gifts Over to Children .....                  | \$470 |
| <b>XVII. Restriction of Absolute Estate</b> ..... | \$472 |
| 1. General .....                                  | \$472 |
| 2. Imposition of Trust .....                      | \$474 |
| 3. Rule in Saunders v. Vautier .....              | \$476 |
| <b>XVIII. Powers of Appointment</b> .....         | \$479 |
| 1. Words of Gift.....                             | \$479 |
| 2. General and Special Powers.....                | \$480 |
| 3. Discretion of Donee.....                       | \$483 |
| 4. Exercise of Power .....                        | \$485 |

## WILLS

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| (a) General .....                                      | \$485        |
| (b) Formalities .....                                  | \$489        |
| (c) Failure to Exercise Power .....                    | \$492        |
| <b>XIX. Failure of Gift .....</b>                      | <b>\$495</b> |
| 1. General Legislation .....                           | \$495        |
| 2. Disclaimer by Beneficiary .....                     | \$500        |
| (a) General .....                                      | \$500        |
| (b) Partial Disclaimer .....                           | \$503        |
| 3. Election .....                                      | \$504        |
| (a) Statement of Doctrine .....                        | \$504        |
| (b) Circumstances for Election .....                   | \$507        |
| (c) Election .....                                     | \$508        |
| (d) Election by Beneficiary Lacking Capacity .....     | \$512        |
| (e) Accounting by Electing Beneficiary .....           | \$513        |
| 4. Ineligibility of Beneficiary .....                  | \$514        |
| (a) Gifts to Persons Causing Testator's Death .....    | \$514        |
| (b) Gifts to Witness .....                             | \$520        |
| (c) Gifts to Executor .....                            | \$528        |
| (d) Other Ineligible Beneficiaries .....               | \$529        |
| (e) Solicitor's Duty of Care towards Beneficiary ..... | \$530        |
| 5. Lapse .....   | \$531        |
| 6. Ademption .....                                     | \$538        |
| 7. Surplus Income .....                                | \$545        |
| 8. Satisfaction .....                                  | \$546        |
| 9. Advancement .....                                   | \$548        |
| <b>XX. Payment of Debts and Legacies .....</b>         | <b>\$552</b> |
| 1. Power of Executors and Trustees .....               | \$552        |
| 2. Realty and Personalty .....                         | \$562        |
| 3. Charges on Property .....                           | \$568        |
| 4. Payment of Annuity .....                            | \$572        |
| 5. Taxes .....   | \$576        |
| 6. Set-off of Debt .....                               | \$583        |
| 7. Abatement .....                                     | \$584        |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 8. Interest on Legacies .....                        | §589 |
| <b>XXI. Probate Practice and Procedure</b> .....     | §597 |
| 1. Presumption of Death .....                        | §597 |
| 2. Generally .....                                   | §602 |
| 3. Documents Admissible to Probate .....             | §618 |
| 4. Establishing Due Execution of Will .....          | §622 |
| 5. Costs .....                                       | §625 |
| <b>XXII. Support of Dependants</b> .....             | §633 |
| 1. General .....                                     | §633 |
| 2. Jurisdiction .....                                | §635 |
| 3. Who May Apply .....                               | §642 |
| (a) General .....                                    | §642 |
| (b) “Dependant” Categories .....                     | §646 |
| 4. Procedure .....                                   | §652 |
| 5. Issues on Application .....                       | §655 |
| (a) Support and Maintenance Threshold .....          | §655 |
| (b) Legal and Moral Obligations .....                | §660 |
| (c) Onus of Proof .....                              | §663 |
| (d) Circumstances for Consideration .....            | §665 |
| (i) General .....                                    | §665 |
| (ii) External Factors .....                          | §672 |
| (iii) Dependants’ Circumstances .....                | §673 |
| (iv) Relationship Factors .....                      | §675 |
| (e) Time for Determining Adequacy of Provision ..... | §679 |
| 6. Evidence .....                                    | §680 |
| 7. Valuation of Estate .....                         | §685 |
| 8. Order for Support .....                           | §690 |
| 9. Costs .....                                       | §699 |

**Index**

*Related titles:* Absentees; Annuities; Barristers and Solicitors; Burial and Cremation; Charities; Children; Conflict of Laws; Costs; Deeds and Documents; Devolution of Estates; Equity; Estoppel; Evidence; Executors and Administrators; Family Law — General; Fraud and Misrepresentation; Gifts; Mental Incapacity; Military Law; Perpetuities and Accumulations;

WILLS

---

Personal Property; Real Property; Restitution; Specific Performance;  
Trusts

# WORKERS' COMPENSATION

prepared by  
Douglas R. Mah, B.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Rules**

**Table of Regulations**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>I. History and Purpose</b> .....   | §1  |
| 1. Historic Trade-off .....   | §1  |
| 2. Differences Between Workers' Compensation and Tort .....                         | §2  |
| 3. Constitutionality .....  | §4  |
| (a) Division of Powers .....  | §4  |
| (b) Indian Act and Workers' Compensation .....                                      | §6  |
| (c) Charter Issues .....  | §8  |
| 4. Governing Statute .....  | §10 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>II. Corporate Structure of the Workers' Compensation Board</b> .....             |     |
| .....   | §12 |
| 1. Status as a Corporation .....  | §12 |
| 2. Accountability to Government .....   | §15 |
| 3. Function of the Workers' Compensation Board .....                                | §19 |
| 4. Governing Body .....   | §20 |
| 5. Employees of the Workers' Compensation Board and Decision-making Authority ..... | §23 |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>III. Jurisdiction and Powers</b> .....   | §25 |
| 1. Exclusive Jurisdiction, Privative Clause and Non-interference .....              | §25 |
| .....   | §25 |
| (a) General .....   | §25 |
| (b) Alberta .....   | §27 |

## WORKERS' COMPENSATION

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .   | §28        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .   | §30        |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §33        |
| 2. Powers of the Workers' Compensation Board . . . . .                               | §35        |
| (a) Generally . . . . .  | §35        |
| (b) Powers Regarding Witnesses and Investigation . . . . .                           | §40        |
| (c) Powers Regarding Employers . . . . .   | §42        |
| (d) Policy-making Power . . . . .  | §44        |
| <b>IV. Application of the Workers' Compensation Act . . . . .</b>                    | <b>§47</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §47        |
| 2. Legislation . . . . .   | §48        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §48        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .   | §51        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .   | §52        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §53        |
| 3. Who are "Employers" Under the Acts? . . . . .                                     | §57        |
| 4. Who are "Workers" Under the Acts? . . . . .                                       | §64        |
| (a) Generally . . . . .  | §64        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .  | §64        |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .  | §66        |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .   | §71        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §76        |
| (b) Deemed Workers . . . . .   | §77        |
| (c) Personal Coverage Workers . . . . .  | §85        |
| 5. Voluntary Coverage . . . . .  | §88        |
| 6. Extra-Provincial Coverage . . . . .   | §99        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §99        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .   | §103       |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .   | §106       |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §115       |
| 7. Federal Government Workers/Government Employees Com-<br>pensation Act . . . . .   | §118       |
| 8. Applicability of Provincial Acts to Federal Employers . . . . .                   | §133       |
| 9. What is an "Accident", "Personal Injury" or "Injury" Under<br>the Acts? . . . . . | §134       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 10. Statutory Immunity . . . . .  | §136        |
| 11. Prohibitions and Penalties . . . . .  | §141        |
| (a) British Columbia . . . . .  | §141        |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .   | §142        |
| (c) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §147        |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .  | §149        |
| <b>V. Claims . . . . .</b>  | <b>§151</b> |
| 1. Reporting Requirements and Applications for Compensation . . . . .                     | §151        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .   | §151        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .  | §154        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .  | §158        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §162        |
| 2. Initial Entitlement . . . . .  | §165        |
| (a) Generally . . . . .   | §165        |
| (b) Statutory Presumptions . . . . .  | §176        |
| 3. Compensation Payable . . . . .   | §179        |
| (a) Definition of “Compensation” . . . . .  | §179        |
| (b) Compensation for Disability (Temporary and Permanent<br>Wage Loss Benefits) . . . . . | §180        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .   | §180        |
| (ii) British Columbia . . . . .   | §198        |
| (iii) Manitoba . . . . .  | §217        |
| (iv) Saskatchewan . . . . .   | §227        |
| (c) Occupational disease . . . . .  | §242        |
| (d) Presumption Respecting Firefighters . . . . .   | §256        |
| (e) Medical Aid or Health Care . . . . .  | §269        |
| (f) Vocational Rehabilitation . . . . .   | §281        |
| (g) Fatalities . . . . .  | §286        |
| (i) General . . . . .   | §286        |
| (ii) Funeral and Burial Expenses . . . . .  | §290        |
| (iii) Survivor Benefits . . . . .   | §294        |
| A. Alberta . . . . .  | §294        |
| B. British Columbia . . . . .   | §301        |
| C. Manitoba . . . . .   | §320        |

## WORKERS' COMPENSATION

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| D. Saskatchewan . . . . .   | \$328        |
| (iv) Vocational Rehabilitation . . . . .  | \$341        |
| (h) Adjustments to Compensation . . . . .   | \$345        |
| (i) Remarried Spouses . . . . .   | \$352        |
| <b>VI. Funding . . . . .</b>  | <b>\$356</b> |
| 1. Concept of Accident Fund . . . . .   | \$356        |
| 2. Classification, Underwriting and Rates . . . . .                                 | \$358        |
| 3. Experience Rating . . . . .  | \$365        |
| 4. Payment . . . . .  | \$366        |
| (a) Statutory Priority . . . . .  | \$366        |
| (b) Collection and Enforcement . . . . .  | \$374        |
| (i) Seizure . . . . .   | \$374        |
| (ii) Registration on Municipal Tax Roll<br>(Saskatchewan) . . . . .                 | \$377        |
| (iii) Security . . . . .  | \$378        |
| (iv) Registration and Enforcement . . . . .   | \$381        |
| (v) Statutory Injunction . . . . .  | \$383        |
| (c) Third Party Liability . . . . .   | \$385        |
| (i) Principals, Contractors and Subcontractors . . . . .                            | \$385        |
| (ii) Purchasers' Liability . . . . .  | \$396        |
| (iii) Sale of Primary Timber Products in Alberta . . . . .                          | \$398        |
| (iv) Transactions Between Related Persons in Alberta . . . . .                      | \$399        |
| (v) Change of Ownership of Business in British Co-<br>lumbia and Manitoba . . . . . | \$400        |
| (d) Distribution of Assets in Saskatchewan . . . . .                                | \$402        |
| 5. Special Levies . . . . .   | \$403        |
| (a) Occupational Health and Safety . . . . .  | \$403        |
| (b) Safety Associations . . . . .   | \$410        |
| <b>VII. Employers . . . . .</b>   | <b>\$413</b> |
| 1. Benefits of the System to Employers . . . . .                                    | \$413        |
| (a) Immunity . . . . .  | \$413        |
| (b) Coverage . . . . .  | \$415        |
| (c) Injury Prevention Programs in the Workplace . . . . .                           | \$416        |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2. Obligations .....                                    | §417        |
| (a) Reporting Obligations .....                         | §417        |
| (i) Commencing Business .....                           | §417        |
| (ii) Reporting Insurable Earnings .....                 | §423        |
| (iii) Reporting Accidents .....                         | §432        |
| (b) Duty to Accommodate and Reinstate .....             | §440        |
| (c) Prosecution .....                                   | §441        |
| 3. Transfer of Costs .....                              | §445        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VIII. Appeals and Disclosure .....</b>               | <b>§449</b> |
| 1. Exclusivity and the Courts .....                     | §449        |
| 2. Appeals Within the Workers' Compensation Board ..... | §451        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §451        |
| (b) Alberta .....                                       | §452        |
| (c) British Columbia .....                              | §471        |
| (d) Manitoba .....                                      | §503        |
| (e) Saskatchewan .....                                  | §512        |
| 3. Judicial Appeal .....                                | §517        |
| 4. Representation .....                                 | §523        |
| (a) Alberta .....                                       | §523        |
| (b) British Columbia .....                              | §524        |
| (c) Manitoba .....                                      | §526        |
| (d) Saskatchewan .....                                  | §528        |
| 5. Disclosure .....                                     | §529        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §529        |
| (b) For Appeal Purposes .....                           | §530        |
| (c) For Non-appeal Purposes .....                       | §537        |
| (i) General .....                                       | §537        |
| (ii) Alberta .....                                      | §538        |
| (iii) British Columbia .....                            | §539        |
| (iv) Manitoba .....                                     | §540        |
| (v) Saskatchewan .....                                  | §541        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>IX. Subrogation and Immunity .....</b>               | <b>§542</b> |
| 1. Extent of Subrogation .....                          | §542        |
| (a) General .....                                       | §542        |

## WORKERS' COMPENSATION

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (b) Alberta . . . . .  | §543 |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                                   | §544 |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .   | §548 |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                       | §552 |
| 2. Legal Fees in Subrogated Matters . . . . .                    | §555 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §555 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                                   | §557 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .   | §558 |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                       | §559 |
| 3. Production of Workers' Compensation Board Documents . . . . . | §560 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §560 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                                   | §561 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .   | §562 |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                       | §563 |
| 4. Settlements . . . . .   | §564 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §564 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                                   | §567 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .   | §569 |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                       | §570 |
| 5. Distribution of Proceeds . . . . .                            | §571 |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .  | §571 |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                                   | §573 |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .   | §575 |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                       | §578 |
| 6. Immunity . . . . .  | §579 |
| (a) Extent of Immunity . . . . .                                 | §579 |
| (b) Alberta . . . . .  | §580 |
| (c) British Columbia . . . . .                                   | §583 |
| (d) Manitoba . . . . .   | §584 |
| (e) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                       | §588 |
| 7. Status Determination for Immunity Purposes . . . . .          | §590 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §590 |
| (b) Employers . . . . .  | §591 |
| (c) Workers . . . . .  | §592 |
| 8. Certification of Status . . . . .                             | §594 |
| 9. Striking Out Applications . . . . .                           | §595 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 10. Third Party Notices . . . . .                 | §596        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                             | §596        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                    | §600        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                            | §601        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                        | §602        |
| <b>X. Judicial Review . . . . .</b>               | <b>§603</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .                              | §603        |
| 2. Natural Justice (Procedural Rights) . . . . .  | §605        |
| 3. Standards of Review . . . . .                  | §607        |
| (a) General . . . . .                             | §607        |
| (b) The Patently Unreasonable Test . . . . .      | §609        |
| (c) Reasonableness Simpliciter . . . . .          | §610        |
| (d) Correctness . . . . .                         | §611        |
| 4. Remedies . . . . .                             | §612        |
| 5. Alternatives to Judicial Review . . . . .      | §613        |
| (a) Ombudsman . . . . .                           | §613        |
| (b) Statutory Alternatives . . . . .              | §614        |
| <b>XI. Creditors of a Worker . . . . .</b>        | <b>§615</b> |
| 1. Non-Assignability and Non-Attachment . . . . . | §615        |
| 2. Spousal or Child Maintenance . . . . .         | §617        |
| (a) Alberta . . . . .                             | §617        |
| (b) British Columbia . . . . .                    | §618        |
| (c) Manitoba . . . . .                            | §619        |
| (d) Saskatchewan . . . . .                        | §620        |
| 3. Diversions . . . . .                           | §621        |
| (a) Federal . . . . .                             | §621        |
| (b) Discretionary . . . . .                       | §622        |
| (i) Alberta . . . . .                             | §622        |
| (ii) Manitoba . . . . .                           | §623        |
| (iii) Saskatchewan . . . . .                      | §624        |
| 4. Matrimonial Property . . . . .                 | §625        |
| 5. The Bankrupt Worker . . . . .                  | §627        |

**Index**

## WORKERS' COMPENSATION

---

*Related titles:* Crown; Damages; Execution; Insurance; Wrongful Dismissal.

# WRONGFUL DISMISSAL

prepared by  
David Corry, B.A., M.Sc., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*  
and  
Sharon Cartmill, B.A., M.A., LL.B.  
*of the Alberta Bar*

**Table of Cases**

**Table of Statutes**

**Table of Regulations**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Scope of Title</b> . . . . .   | §1  |
| <b>II. Who May Sue for Wrongful Dismissal</b> . . . . .                                    | §2  |
| 1. Definition of “Employee” . . . . .  | §2  |
| 2. Agents . . . . .  | §8  |
| 3. Bankrupt . . . . .  | §9  |
| 4. Independent Contractors . . . . .   | §10 |
| 5. Part-Time, Casual and Temporary Employees . . . . .                                     | §11 |
| 6. Probationary Employees . . . . .  | §12 |
| 7. Effect of Collective Agreement and Arbitration Procedures on<br>Status to Sue . . . . . | §18 |
| 8. Crown Servants . . . . .  | §24 |
| (a) Inherent Power of Crown . . . . .  | §24 |
| (b) Crown Corporations . . . . .   | §25 |
| (c) Statutory Power . . . . .  | §26 |
| (i) Federal Employees . . . . .  | §26 |
| (ii) Provincial Employees . . . . .  | §29 |
| A. Alberta . . . . .   | §29 |
| B. British Columbia . . . . .  | §30 |
| C. Manitoba . . . . .  | §31 |
| D. Saskatchewan . . . . .  | §32 |

WRONGFUL DISMISSAL

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 9. Employees in the Federal Sector . . . . .                     | §34        |
| 10. Municipal Employees . . . . .                                | §38        |
| 11. Police . . . . .   | §43        |
| 12. Teachers . . . . .   | §46        |
| 13. Wrongful Hiring . . . . .                                    | §48        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>III. The Employer . . . . .</b>                               | <b>§49</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §49        |
| 2. Transfer to Related Corporations . . . . .                    | §54        |
| 3. Receivership . . . . .  | §55        |
| 4. Purchase or Sale of Corporation . . . . .                     | §57        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>IV. Employment Standards Legislation . . . . .</b>            | <b>§60</b> |
| 1. Employment Standards Legislation and the Common Law . . . . . | §60        |
| 2. Federal or Provincial Jurisdiction . . . . .                  | §65        |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §65        |
| (b) Federal . . . . .  | §68        |
| (c) Alberta . . . . .  | §73        |
| (d) British Columbia . . . . .                                   | §75        |
| (e) Manitoba . . . . .   | §80        |
| (f) Saskatchewan . . . . .                                       | §83        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>V. Dismissal . . . . .</b>                                    | <b>§84</b> |
| 1. General . . . . .   | §84        |
| 2. Definite and Indefinite Hiring . . . . .                      | §85        |
| 3. Lay-off Distinguished from Dismissal . . . . .                | §91        |
| 4. Express Dismissal . . . . .                                   | §97        |
| 5. Notice of Dismissal . . . . .                                 | §98        |
| 6. Frustration of the Employment Contract . . . . .              | §100       |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §100       |
| (b) Illness or Disability . . . . .                              | §102       |
| (c) Strikes . . . . .  | §104       |
| 7. Constructive Dismissal . . . . .                              | §105       |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §105       |
| (b) Unilateral Change in Duties . . . . .                        | §107       |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| (c) Unilateral Change in Salary or Benefits . . . . . | §111        |
| (d) Change in Location of Employment . . . . .        | §115        |
| (e) Corporate Reorganization . . . . .                | §118        |
| (f) Condonation by Employee . . . . .                 | §120        |
| (g) Other Factors . . . . .                           | §122        |
| (h) Constructive Dismissal and Mitigation . . . . .   | §123        |
| 8. Resignation . . . . .                              | §124        |
| 9. Repudiation . . . . .                              | §128        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VI. Defences . . . . .</b>                         | <b>§130</b> |
| 1. Just Cause . . . . .                               | §130        |
| (a) General . . . . .                                 | §130        |
| (b) Condonation . . . . .                             | §140        |
| (c) Wilful Disobedience . . . . .                     | §145        |
| (d) Dishonesty . . . . .                              | §151        |
| (e) Sexual Harassment of Other Employees . . . . .    | §155        |
| (f) Incompetence . . . . .                            | §159        |
| (g) Breach of Fiduciary Duty . . . . .                | §164        |
| (h) Drugs and Alcohol . . . . .                       | §168        |
| (i) Personality Conflict . . . . .                    | §174        |
| (j) Failure to Relocate . . . . .                     | §177        |
| (k) Lateness and Absence From Work . . . . .          | §178        |
| (l) Redundancy and Economic Problems . . . . .        | §180        |
| (m) Conduct Outside of Work . . . . .                 | §182        |
| (n) Illness or Disability . . . . .                   | §184        |
| (o) Other Factors . . . . .                           | §187        |
| 2. Near Cause . . . . .                               | §189        |
| 3. Other Defences . . . . .                           | §190        |
| (a) Settlement . . . . .                              | §190        |
| (b) Termination Agreement . . . . .                   | §194        |
| (c) Previous Action or Adjudication . . . . .         | §195        |
| (d) Limitation Period . . . . .                       | §197        |
| <br>  |             |
| <b>VII. Damages . . . . .</b>                         | <b>§201</b> |
| 1. Reasonable Notice . . . . .                        | §201        |
| (a) General Principles . . . . .                      | §201        |

WRONGFUL DISMISSAL

---

|  |      |
|--|------|
| (b) Factors Affecting Notice Period . . . . .                    | §214 |
| (i) Nature of Position . . . . .                                 | §214 |
| (ii) Length of Service . . . . .                                 | §215 |
| (iii) Age of Employees . . . . .                                 | §222 |
| (iv) Availability of Similar Employment . . . . .                | §224 |
| (v) Effect of Recession . . . . .                                | §230 |
| (vi) Specifically Recruited or Relocating Employee . . . . .     | §233 |
| (vii) Probationary and Part-Time Employees . . . . .             | §235 |
| (viii) Industry Standards . . . . .                              | §239 |
| (ix) Bad Faith Discharge . . . . .                               | §240 |
| 2. Heads of Damages . . . . .                                    | §242 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §242 |
| (b) Salary . . . . .   | §251 |
| (c) Fringe Benefits . . . . .                                    | §254 |
| (d) Bonus . . . . .  | §261 |
| (e) Pension Benefits . . . . .                                   | §265 |
| (f) Holidays and Holiday Pay . . . . .                           | §270 |
| (g) Other Special Damages . . . . .                              | §273 |
| (h) Moving Costs and Related Expenses . . . . .                  | §275 |
| (i) Refusal of Reference . . . . .                               | §279 |
| (j) Loss of Reputation . . . . .                                 | §281 |
| (k) Mental Distress . . . . .                                    | §286 |
| (l) Loss of Disability or Other Insurance Benefits . . . . .     | §290 |
| (m) Punitive Damages . . . . .                                   | §291 |
| (n) Negligent Misrepresentation of Job . . . . .                 | §293 |
| 3. Duty to Mitigate . . . . .                                    | §294 |
| (a) General . . . . .  | §294 |
| (b) Starting New Business . . . . .                              | §308 |
| (c) Retraining . . . . .   | §310 |
| (d) Maternity Leave . . . . .                                    | §311 |
| 4. Impact of Legislation and Other Benefits on Damages . . . . . | §312 |
| (a) Employment Standards Legislation . . . . .                   | §312 |
| (b) Employment Insurance Benefits . . . . .                      | §314 |
| (c) Sickness or Disability . . . . .                             | §318 |
| (d) Workers' Compensation . . . . .                              | §319 |



TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(e) Income Tax Considerations .....§320

**VIII. Effect of Written Employment Contracts .....§326**

    1. General .....§326

    2. Validity of Contract .....§331

    3. Termination .....§341

**Index**

*Related titles:* Administrative Law; Constitutional Law; Contracts; Damages; Education; Employment Law; Human Rights; Limitation of Actions; Municipal Corporations; Police; Public Authorities and Public Officers; Workers' Compensation.

# YOUTH CRIMINAL JUSTICE

prepared by  
Marian E. Bryant, B.A. (Hons.), LL.B.  
*of the Alberta and Nunavut Bars*  
*Counsel, Department of Justice Canada, Nunavut*

## Table of Cases

## Table of Statutes

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>I. Introduction</b> .....                                       | §1  |
| 1. Definitions .....   | §1  |
| 2. Principles .....  | §6  |
| 3. Extrajudicial Measures.....                                     | §9  |
| 4. Extrajudicial Sanctions .....                                   | §12 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>II. Organization of the Youth Criminal Justice System</b> ..... | §15 |
| 1. Jurisdiction of Youth Court.....                                | §15 |
| 2. Transfer of Jurisdiction.....                                   | §20 |
| 3. Application of the Criminal Code.....                           | §22 |
| 4. Regulations and Rules of Court .....                            | §24 |
| 5. Youth Justice Committees and Conferences.....                   | §27 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>III. Procedure</b> .....  | §30 |
| 1. Protection and Privacy .....                                    | §30 |
| 2. Contempt .....  | §36 |
| 3. Other Offences Created by the Act .....                         | §41 |
| <br>   |     |
| <b>IV. Charge and Detention</b> .....                              | §43 |
| 1. Prosecutions.....   | §43 |
| 2. Detention .....   | §48 |
| 3. Notice to Parents.....  | §51 |
| 4. Right to Counsel .....  | §55 |

YOUTH CRIMINAL JUSTICE

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>V. Judicial Interim Release</b> .....    | §62  |
| 1. General .....                            | §62  |
| 2. Release to Responsible Person.....       | §74  |
| <b>VI. Appearance</b> .....                 | §82  |
| 1. Reading of Charge .....                  | §82  |
| 2. Crown Election .....                     | §87  |
| 3. Election by Young Person.....            | §88  |
| 4. Medical and Psychological Reports .....  | §91  |
| 5. Referral to Child Welfare Agency .....   | §95  |
| <b>VII. Adult Sentences</b> .....           | §96  |
| 1. Adult Sentence and Election .....        | §96  |
| 2. Adult Sentencing Hearing.....            | §107 |
| <b>VIII. Trial</b> .....                    | §120 |
| 1. Procedure .....                          | §120 |
| 2. Publication Ban .....                    | §131 |
| 3. Witnesses .....                          | §132 |
| <b>IX. Sentencing</b> .....                 | §136 |
| 1. Adjudication .....                       | §136 |
| 2. Pre-Sentence Reports .....               | §139 |
| 3. Sentencing .....                         | §151 |
| 4. Custody.....                             | §167 |
| 5. Custody and Supervision .....            | §178 |
| 6. Fines and Compensation.....              | §185 |
| 7. Other Orders.....                        | §189 |
| 8. Probation.....                           | §191 |
| 9. Reintegration Leave .....                | §194 |
| 10. Effect of Termination of Sentence ..... | §198 |
| 11. Records .....                           | §202 |
| <b>X. Review of Youth Sentences</b> .....   | §208 |
| 1. Youth Sentences Involving Custody .....  | §208 |
| (a) Automatic Review .....                  | §208 |

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION

---

(b) Recommendation of Provincial Director..... §217  
2. Youth Sentences Not Involving Custody..... §220

**XI. Appeals**..... §227  
1. Jurisdiction ..... §227  
2. Supreme Court of Canada ..... §232  
3. Sentence on Review..... §233

**XII. Evidence**..... §234  
1. Statements..... §234  
2. Age ..... §245  
3. Admission of Facts ..... §248  
4. Public Documents ..... §250

**XIII. Provincial Young Offender Acts** ..... §251

**Index**

*Related titles:* Children; Criminal Law — Defences; Criminal Law — Offences; Criminal Law — Procedure; Prerogative Remedies; Prisons; Sentencing.

**CONTENTS**  
*of Research Guide and Key*

**Research Guide**

|    |   |   |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | Introduction . . . . .                                | 1 |
| 2. | Using the Encyclopedia                                |   |
|    | (a) Arrangement and Scope of Titles . . . . .         | 1 |
|    | (b) Classification of Title . . . . .                 | 2 |
|    | (c) Paragraph Numbers . . . . .                       | 2 |
|    | (d) Pagination . . . . .                              | 2 |
|    | (e) Case Law  |   |
|    | (i) Table of Cases . . . . .                          | 2 |
|    | (ii) Citation of Cases . . . . .                      | 2 |
|    | (f) Statute Law                                       |   |
|    | (i) Table of Statutes . . . . .                       | 2 |
|    | (ii) Citation of Statutes . . . . .                   | 3 |
|    | (g) Rules and Regulations . . . . .                   | 3 |
|    | (h) Other Primary Law Materials . . . . .             | 3 |
|    | (i) Index . . . . .                                   | 3 |
|    | (j) Supplements . . . . .                             | 3 |
|    | (i) Using the Supplements . . . . .                   | 4 |
|    | (ii) Currency . . . . .                               | 4 |
|    | (iii) Releases . . . . .                              | 4 |
|    | (k) Replacement Titles . . . . .                      | 4 |
| 3. | Using the Key . . . . .                               | 5 |
|    | (a) List of Titles . . . . .                          | 5 |
|    | (b) Table of Statutes . . . . .                       | 5 |
|    | (c) Table of Rules and Table of Regulations . . . . . | 6 |
|    | (d) Index Key . . . . .                               | 6 |
|    | (e) Updating the Key . . . . .                        | 6 |
| 4. | Using CED With Other Major Reference Services         |   |
|    | (a) Law Reports . . . . .                             | 7 |
|    | (b) Canadian Abridgment Case Law Digests . . . . .    | 7 |
|    | (c) Canadian Case Citations . . . . .                 | 7 |
|    | (d) Canadian Statute Citations . . . . .              | 8 |

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| 5. Relation to Electronic Product . . . . .  | 8        |
| 6. Editorial and Account Inquiries . . . . . | 8        |
| <b>Table of Statutes . . . . .</b>           | <b>1</b> |
| <b>Table of Rules . . . . .</b>              | <b>1</b> |
| <b>Table of Regulations . . . . .</b>        | <b>1</b> |